

EUROPA

SOME YEARES

TRAVELS

Into

AFRICA & ASIA

the Great.

Especially Describing the
Famous Empires of

PERSIA and INDUSTANT.

As also

Divers other Kingdoms in the
Oriental Indies,

and

I'les Adjacent.

The third Edition further enlarged.

By S^r. Tho. Herbert Bar^r.

LONDON

Printed in the year 1677



Tawb yn y Arver



SOME YEARS
TRAVELS
INTO
DIVERS PARTS
OF
AFRICA,
AND
ASIA the Great.

DESCRIBING

More particularly the Empires of *PERSIA* and *INDUSTAN*: Interwoven with such remarkable Occurrences as hapned in those parts during these later Times.

As also, many other rich and Famous Kingdoms in the Oriental INDIA, with the Isles adjacent.

Severally relating their Religion, Language, Customs and Habit:
As also proper Observations concerning them.

In this Fourth Impression are added (by the Author now living) as well many Additions throughout the whole Work, as also several Sculptures, never before Printed.

*Scenius irritant Animos acmissa per Aures,
Quam quæ sunt Oculis subiecta fidelibus, & Quæ
Ipse Sibi præbet Speciator.* Horat.

LONDON,

Printed by R. Everingham, for R. Scot, T. Basset,
J. Wright, and R. Chiswell. 1677.

TO THE
RIGHT HONOURABLE
PHILIP

EARL OF

PEMBROKE and MOUNTGOMERY:

Baron *Herbert of Caerdiff* and *Sherland*: Lord *Parr* and *Ross'* of *Kendall*: Lord *Fitz Hugh*, *Mirmyea* and *Saint Quintin*: Lord Chamberlain of His MAJESTIES most Honourable Household: Lord Lieutenant of *Kent*, *Wiltshire*, &c. Lord Warden of the *Stanneries* in *Corn-Wales* and *Devon*: Knight of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*; and one of His MAJESTIES most Honourable *Privy Council*.

MY LORD,



AVING past the Pikes, I take new courage to come on again. One blow more and I have done. Ten to one it lights on my own pate. But if my head stand free, my hand shall not be guilty of more Intrusion: No more pressure to the press. The Crowd is too strong already: and I will get out by Head and Shoulders rather than fail.

Your Lordship's word may pass for me, and I dare not break it. Greatness hath a great stroke over Men, but Goodness greater: Men choosing to obey for Love rather than Fear. In both You have a strong Interest, and in both sorts of Men they have taken possession, and like Twins grow up together: *Quam bene convenient!* And may their residence be as immovable as Your Constancy to Good: yea, may the Title of plain Dealing

Dealing and honest Man be the worst reproach, Malice or double Dealing can fix upon your Name and Memory, who have gained much honour and ease too in Court and Countrey, by that excellent Dialect and general Belief.

The Dedication like a fair Frontispiece to a mean House, or a beautiful Sign to an ill Lodging hath tempted many Travellers to look in; and make some stay: But, I fear to have used my Readers, as my Host the Guests, that set a mark on the door, to pass by and call in no more. 'Tis my fear only, which being begot of modesty, may serve to invite the best and most ingenuous Company.

To please most is my desire, but my Choice a few: taking the bigger number to be the lesser in Virtue, and swoln only with a tympany of Wind and Water.

The Boat is in your Lordships hand, which steers as you direct. Yours is the greatest interest: You are our Chief: yours is the leading judgement. Do but approve, the Mark is hit, and you make many followers: Which is the request of

Your Lordship's

Humble Servant,

THO. HERBERT.

To my honoured Cousin Sir THOMAS HERBERT.

What! is't the Love thou bear'st the Southern Clime?
Or Care t' instruct us? That the second time
Thou ingagest Fame. Or is't thy Love to pay
Thanks to mild Censures? or thy Friends t' obey?
Or to enlarge, or deck thy Maiden Lines?
Like to a Nurse whose eyes on th'Infant shines.
Which of them all? or all it be: 'Tis well.
Who threatens good-will imparts a part of Hell.

C H. HERBERT.

A ppulit Eois HERBERTUS sospes ab Oris,
Vicit & immensi mille pericla Maris.
Non tulit hic secum Piper, Autum, Balsama, Gemmas,
Costum, Aloen, Myrrbam, Cinnama, Tbura, Crocum.
Rettulit hic Mores Hominumq; Viator, & Urbes,
Regna, habitus, linguas, prælia, jura, deos.
Divite ne posthac queras e Perside gazas,
Anglia nunc Anglis Persia tota domi est.

AR. JONSTONUS Med. Reg.

Descriptio decoris reciproci inter Arborem
Nobilem seu Familiam de HERBERT, & Authorem
vere Ramum ejusdem Arboris seu Familiae.

N IL tantum decorat Ramum quam nobilis Arbor,
Florentem Ramum sic Decus Arbor habet

M A R. B L I V V O O D. Dr. Med.

Uides

URBS quod varias solers vidisset Ulysses.
Et mores Hominum, clarus honore fuit;
Sed inter Phrygiam lscit errans Hesperiamque
Littora Istrorum et per duo Iugra Maris.
Tu sparsis ut saperes immensa emens uies Orbis,
HERBERT E, inque Salo gnavoriter inque Solo.
Comporta unde tibi nova multa & mira Britannis
Candidus impertis veridicisque tuis.
Fallacem hoc Ithacum superaque peritia rerum,
Quod tua candori sit fideique Comes.

WALT. O-QUIN. Armig.

To the READER.

HERE thou at greater ease than he
Mayst behold what he did see:
Thou participat'st his gains,
But he alone reserves the pains.
He travell'd not with lucre footed:
He went for knowledge, and he got it.
Then thank the Author; Thanks is light,
Who hath presented to thy sight
Seas, Lands, Men, Beasts, Fishes and Birds,
The rarest that the World affords.

THO. Lord FAYRMAN
Baron of Camerton.

TRAVELS

Begun Anno 1626.

DESCRIBING

Divers parts of *AFRICK* and *ASIA* the Great;

But principally the two famous Monarchies,

The *MOGUL* and *PERSIAN*.

LON Good Friday, in the Year 1626. we took shipping at *Deal* near *Dover*, having six great and well manned ships in company, all which were bound for the *East-Indies*. In few hours coaling close by the Isle of *Wight* (called so from *Gwydth* a British word, signifying cut off or seen at distance; *Vetus* in *Pliny*, *Velt*: in *Eutropius*;) a sudden borasque or gust assaulted us; which after an hours rage spent it self, and blew us the third day (double so-lemnized that year by being the Feast of Mother and Son) upon the *Lizards* point, the utmost promontory of *Cornwall*, as we passed; from whence to the extremest Cap^e of *Africk*, in this Voyage we compute our Longitude, and not from the *Azores*, albeit the first Meridian.

The wind blew fair, so as the seven and twentieth day failing by *Bilbo* in *Galleria* (which if that called *Terraconensis* was of old a Colony of the *Perſians*) we lanched into the Spanish Ocean, which we no sooner entred but descryed seven tall ships, whom reputing Enemies we bore up to speak with, howbeit they proved Friends, Hollanders out of the *Levant*, who drunk our healths and saluted us as they past with a roaring Culverin, and we in return vomited out a like grateful echo: Thus plowing the liquid Seas in merriness till the nine and twentieth day made us the sport of danger, strugling with such mighty waves and deep Seas as oft-times made us seem to climb up Mountains of salt water, and were straightway precipitated headlong as it were twixt cloven Seas, a good while Heaven and Sea seeming undivided. This put me in mind of the third *Ode* in the first lib. of *Horace*, wherè 'tis said

*A heart of Brass that man had sure,
Who in a Barque durst first endure
The raging waves, not valuing life
Midst fierce South-west and North-winds strife.
The Hyads (who clouds seldom want)
Nor blustering South his br^tit could daunt.*

*Illi robur & æt. triplex
circa pectus erat, qui fragili truci
Commisit pelago ratem —
Primus; nec timuit præcipitem Africum
Decertantem Aquilonibus,
nec tristes Hyadas, nec rabient Noti.*

Howbeit after thirty hours the quarrel twixt wind and Sea ended, for then a serene skye reanimated us, so as we finisht *March* in the chase of a Turkish Pirate whom with top-gallant top-sails and a soft wind we pursued six hours, but being as well fitted for flight as fight he outsaile us. So returning to our course, the first of *April* we cut our *Atlanwick Ocean*, by *Arabs* called *Magribans* faith *Marmolius* (from *Atlas Maurus Japhet's Son*, and Brother to the Star-gazer *Prometheus* a Contemporary with *Moses*) from whom two famous Mountains, one in *Mauritania* the other in *Libya*, are denominated.) Long we had not been in these Seas, but another Barbarian *Sally Man* of War came up, sculking all night in hope to board the first he saw divided; at day-break

we descryed the Pirate, who loth to party in fire and shot, fled amain and left us, who swum so well, that the third of April at *Titan's* first blush we got sight of *Porto Santo*, a holy Port in thirty three deg. (called *Cerne* in *Ptolomy*) commanded by the Spaniard; and also of *Madera* (i.e. Isle of Wood) 12 leagues S.W. from *Porto Santo*; from the *Canaries* distant 70 leagues; the first of which Isles was discouered by *Peregrinus An.* 1419. and given him upon condition that he would people it, which he found difficult, the Canaries in such number resisted by undermining him. The other was found out the same year by *Gonzalvo Zarco* from the encouragement of *Henry Son to John the First King of Portugal*; taken and sakk'd *An. 1596.* by Sir *Amias Preston* our Countryman, as some 'tis presumed yet living there have cause to remember. The holy Port has five and twenty miles compas, fruitful it is in Wheat, Rye, Rice, Oxen, Sheep, Bores, Coni, *Sangus Draconum*, Fruits, Flowers, and Grapes; at eight leagues distance is thus respected us.



The sixth of April by observation we had 27 degrees and a half latit. at that distance descrying the *Canarie*, Isles so called *a multisidine magnorum Canorum* saith *Pliny l. 6. c. 32.* by some taken for the fortunate Islands, and about which has been no small difference amongst Writers. Some placing them at the *Azores*, at the *Hesperides* others, some in our *Britain* as *Tzetzes* in his Comment upon *Lycopron*, others at or near the *Rhodes*; but the Commentator upon *Horace* near the *ultima Thule*, where *Tzetzes* as truly finds the Elyzian Fields; but certain it is they were undiscovered, but more certain uninhabited, till the year 1328. accidentally by one *Machan* an Englishman, from whose relation *Lewis de Cerdas* two years after sailed thither, and by Commission from *Pedro King of Arragon* had liberty of Conquest and Command, but long enjoyed neither, for *John 2. the Castilian King An. 1405.* (which some would have to be the first discovery) displacing him, *Venturatus* snatched them from the *Castilian*; but by *John de Betancour* a well descended Gentleman, Kinsman to *Bracomon* the French Admiral, *Venturatus* is likewise dispossess'd, *An. 1417.* shipping 10000 Volunteers, by whose valour he subdued five of the Isles, namely *La Palma*, *La Gomera*, *Lanzarota*, *Ferro*, and *Fortereventura*, an Atchivement very honourable; yet such vexation possest the ambitious *Gaud* that *Canary* mastered him, as made him entertain death with an useles Complement; his Nephew *Mendanus* being left Heir to what *Betancour* had got, and (has added) his misfortunes; for *Myndus* a haughty Bishop incensing the *Castilian* King, through his power *Mendanus* was soon forced thence, glad of a small composition paid him by *Don Barba* the Bishops Kinsman. *Barba* repents the Purchase, and for a little profit affigns his Property to *Don Fernando Perazzo*, whose brain taking like infection grows weary of Command, and for other Employment confers this upon the Prince of *Castile*, from whom it was soon after torn by *Don Henrico Infant of Spain*, remaining this day fixt under Spanish servitude.

These Isles (perhaps the same *Ptolomy* and *Mela*, mistakenly, call *Deorum currus*; by *Plato*, *Ariosto*, and *Piarch*, the *Atlantides*; by *Pliny*, the *Hesperides*) are from the *Morocco* or *Libyan* continent 20 Leagues, from *Spain* 200. Seven commonly they be numbered (*Cadamasius* imagines ten) by old Authors, as *Ptolomy*, *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and others called *Canaria*, *Capraria*, *Nivaria*, *Tunoma*, *Ombrion*, or *Pluvialis*, *Aprosita* (or *fracta lanaea*) and as *Marianadds* *Casperia*, or *Forutata*. But at this day *Canaria*, *La Palma*, *Teneriffe*, *Lancerota*, *Hierro*, *La Gomera*, and *Fortereventura*. A word of what they were. They knew no God but Nature, were ignorant of the use of Fire, shaved with Flint Stones, gave their Children to be nurst by Goats, cultured the Earth with Horns of Oxen, abominated the slaughter of Beasts.

————— For how can they be good,
Who dare each day embrue their hands in blood?

Uſed

Used Women in common. No *meum* and *tuum*, having neither Law nor Discipline. Lust and carelessness vailing them, so as little difference was twixt them and other Animals, and according to the Custome of the first Age.

*The Woods their dwelling was, the Herbs their diet,
And on the leaves and boughs they slept in quiet*

*Sylva domus erat, cibis
herba.cubilia dormiebat,*

Some glimmering nevertheless one would think they had of the immortality of the Soul; for the dead they wafted and kept erected in a Cave, a Staff in one hand, and a Pail of Milk and Wine set near him to support and comfort him in his Pilgrimage to Elysium.

At this day they are reduced to civility, and become Spanish Christians. The Inquisition affrights those of the reformed persuasion to cohabit with them. *Grand Canary* (almost as broad as long, the Diameter being about fifty miles) usually, is the residence of the Inquisitor, whither all the other Isles ordinarily repair for Justice. It abounds with many good things, as Goats, Bevvies, Alls, Hogs, Barly, Rye, Rice, variety of Flowers, Grapes, and other excellent Fruits; as also with Ingenios, or Sugar-houses, wherein they grind their Canes, and boyl the juice to make it Sugar. This Isle is from *Santa Cruz in Teneriff* 13 Leagues, from *Forte Ventura* 20. from *Lancerota* 18, at the South end iea large Bay, called *Maspalomba*, where fresh water is afforded. The Isle as I took it thus seems at eight leagues distance.

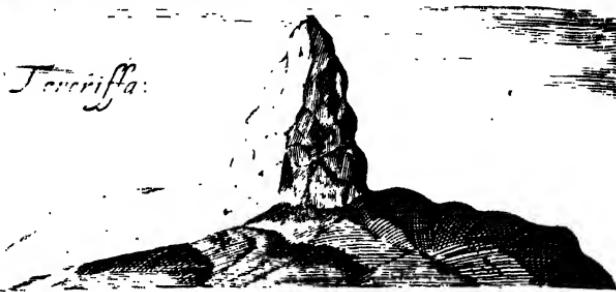


Teneriffa is 50 English miles long, and for multitude of Inhabitants compares with great *Canary*; her chief Towns be *Santa Cruz*, and *Anagana*, or *Laguna*, at the bottom of the Hill called *Garaichas*, which exceeds it in Grapes, yielding yearly, as some say, eight and twenty thousand Buts of Sack; and outrivates not only the rest of the circumjacent Isles, but all the Earth for supereminence: Her high peak *Teyda* towering so loftily into the Air, as seems not only to penetrate the middle Region but to peep into Heaven, from whence *Lerma* metaphorically calls it *Atlas* and *Olympus*, and I may more literally apply that of *Lucan* in his lib. 2.

*Than which no Earthly part doth tower more high,
In any place, or nearer joins the Sky.*

For 'tis by most accounted 15 miles in height, 60 says *Scaliger*, - 70 *Patricius*; yea, one *Nichols* our Countryman who lived here some time, affirms, that it is 17. which height I the more admitt, seeing that Geographers attribute a far less height to the highest Mountain in the World; *Raymundus* allowing but 3, *Varenius* 4, in a Perpendicular, others but 15 furlongs; and no doubt the 54 miles *Theuctus*, and so that *S. marcellinus* tribes, is meant by the oblique, or circular accent. So high nevertheless it is, as in serene weather it is seen 120 English miles, which some double; serving as an excellent Pharo, far exceeding those near *Cyro*: and whence (some presume to say) there is at no time either rain, or wind at the top of it; so supposed, by being elevated above those Regions; it being an Opinion amongst Philosophers, that no Vapors rise above 50 miles into the Air, from the Earths superficies. In ascending this Mountain they usually ride circularly for about 7 leagues space, and are then forced to foot the rest. The lower part of the Hill has plenty of wood; the middle parts, by reason of Snow, is cold; but towards

the top, in regard of the Veins of Brimstone, it inflames so as the Spaniard calls it the Devils Cauldron; and from whence, not only the Canary Isles but the Continent of Africa (if report say true) may be discovered; this high Pico rises from the middle part of the Isle, and of either side has a ledge of Hills which divide the Island. The shape it bare as we Sailed by, is thus presented.



Teneriffa is about 13 leagues West from Grand Canaria, from La Palma 20. from Gomera 5. from Africa 75. from Madera 70. In old times here, as in Grand Canaria, they used to embalm the dead, and in Caves very deep and dark, placed them in several postures; some standing, some lying upon Planks; in which Art they were singular: Dormitories, so venerably reputed, as they were very rarely seen by any, and that but by permission. Hiero or Ferram, appeared very high Land as we pass by it, and bears S. S. W. from Grand Canaria. Gomera is 6 leagues from Teneriffa, and above 8 leagues long; Palma is about 12 leagues from Gomera, and in circuit toward, 20 leagues. Hiero is 16 leagues from La Palma, and not above 6 leagues in compass. Famous is Hiero in one Tree (for it has but one such) which (like the miraculous Rock in the Desert) affords fresh water to all the Inhabitants. The Natives call this Tree Garro; Samo the Spaniard. Some part of the Day 'tis darkned with a cloudy Mist, which casts a Dew upon the Leaves that distills in clear sweet drops, streaming into two large Stone Cisterns, capable for the necessary use, not only of the People, but of all the Cattel in that Island. Sylvester gives it this true and vive description.

In th' Isle of Iron (one of those same seven
Whereas our Elders Happy name have given)
The savage People never drink the Streams
Of Wells and Rivers, as in other Realms.
Their Drunk is in the Air! their gushing Spring,
A weeping Tree out of itself doth wring.
A Tree whose tender bearded Root being spread

In dryest Sand, his sweating Leaf doth shed
A most sweet Liquor; and (like as the Vine
Untimely cut, weeps (at her wound) the Wine
In pearl'd tears,) incessantly distills
A royal Stream, which all their Cisterns fills
Throughout the Island; for all hither hye,
And all these Vessels cannot draw it dry!

Which is very rare; Howbeit in Saint Thoma an Isle under the Line, most of the Trees there have the like property. La Palma is very high and woody, Forteventura is 15 leagues long and 8 broad, and near to Lancerota. Lancerota is less than Teneriffa, it was taken by that English Leonidas the Earl of Cumberland, Anno 1596. and Teneriffa four years after by the Dutch; the first being pillaged, the other burnt; since when, both are better fortified. Twixt Lancerota and Forteventura is another little Isle, called Lobos, also there are two small Isles near Lancerota called Graciosa and Algarica in 28. d. 50. To the East of these Isles be Fezz and Morocco, which are part of Mauritania Tyngitana, so called from Tangier, a strong and considerable Town upon the African Coast, opposite to Gibraltar in Spain, which resemble Dover and Calais, and have like influence upon that narrow Strait.

The month of April we crost the Tropic of Cancer, of like distance from the Equator as the utmost limit of the temperate Zone is from the Pole; called Cancer from Apollo's Crab-like retrogradation, moving back in June from that Sign in the Zodiac: The 12th. day we had the wind high but large, so that in two days fail we made the Sun our Zenith or Vertical point, his declination then being 14 degrees North; where note, that only when we are Nadir to the Sun we have no shadow; the Sun then darting his

beams perpendicularly upon the Earth at right Angles ; as also, whereas to all in the temperate Zone in the Sun's Meridian their shadows cast North, having past the Zenith the *Umbra* becomes quite contrary, which *Lucan* in his 10. lib. observes, saying,

*Those whom the burning Zone
Divides from us, their shadows ever be
South-ward, as ours we North-ward always see.*

Forcing wonder from the Sun-burnt Arabs upon their descent into *Theffaly*. As noted by the same Poet,

*An unknown world (Arabians) you invade !
Wondering to see the Groves yield right-hand shade.*

Ignotum vobis (Arabs) venistis in Orben
Umbras mirati Nemorum non ire sinistras.

And because here we have *nil nisi Pontus* (which nevertheless *Virgil*, *Homer*, and *Orephus* call the Father of Gods, Men, and all other things) and *Aer* to observe upon, we have the more liberty to theorize a little upon that subject. The Inhabitants within this Zone (the torrid we are now in) are called *Amphisces*, in respect they cast their shadows both ways, according as the Sun is in his declination ; and *Afcis* or shadowlets, when *Sol* is Zenith; from which point when it fleets either North or South the shadow ever darts contrarily, as falls out when ever the Gnomon or celestial body is interposed. But the *Perisces* have their shadow circulating, their meridional shadow having no existence from the vertex, but oblique and extended to the plain of the terrestrial Horizon, gloomerating the gnomon or body opacous ; these sorts of people freez in the polar circles (of like distance from the Pole, the Tropicks are from the Aequinoctial) the Pole being their vertex, and the Aequator (being 90 degrees distance) their direct Horizon. The *Heterosces* are such as live in the temperate Zone, whose shadows at noon day turn but one way. The Mathematicks also teach us that the *Heterosces* comprehend 41 parallels, the *Amphisces* seven, the *Perisces* (those in the frozen Zone) half the year. With these go others as they stand comparatively, the *Periaci*, *Antaci*, *Antichones*. The first be such as dwell in two opposite points of a like circle, distant one from the other a semicircle or 180 degrees, so they be numbered after lesser parallels. The *Antaci* are also opposite, but vary neither in Meridian nor æquidistance from the Horizon, reflecting either Hemisphere. The *Antipodes* are such as be feet to feet, a precise straight line passing thorow the Center from one side to another : these differ from the *Perisces* by degrees of a smaller circle ; whence we observe, that such as be to us *Perisces* be *Antaci* to our *Antichones*; each being inverted to other in a perfect contrary. Nor doubt we that there be *Antipodes* (the veil of ignorance being rent away) the *sphericity* of the world, and that every place in the earth (though opposite) is habitable, being now so well known, as nothing seems more familiar. Notwithstanding, it was not so of old, when *Boniface* Bishop of *Menz* (a Clerk well learned in that blockish Age) was excommunicated by Pope *Zachary Anno 745*, for maintaining what was then a Paradox, yea sentenced to be burnt for an Heretic, except he had recanted his opinion : the Pope bringing in *Saint Augustine* against him in his 16. Book *de Civit. Dei*, *Quis Antipodus est f. fabulanter, &c. nullo modo credendum est* : and *Lactantius* (another great Scholar) deriding it in his third Book of Institutions. Very strange, such learned men should be so ill read in *Chorography* : especially, since such a tenet was acknowledged before them by many : as by *Eucleid* in his Elements, by *Cicerio* in his 4. lib. *de Academ. question.* by *Tyberianus* who records an old Letter beginning *Superi inferis Salutem*, by *Strabo* in his Geography, and of all others most ingeniously by *Lucretius* in his first Book.

*When they see Sun, we see the Lamps of night,
And with alternal coursestimes do change,
Dividing equal dark with equal light :
But error vain in fools makes these seem strange.*

Illi cum videant Solem, nos sydera noctis
Cernere, & alternis nobiscum tempora cœli
Dividere, & noctes pariles agitare diebus :
Sed vanus stolidis hac omnia parturit error.

To return : in changing so many parallels, the weather increast from temperate to raging hot, the Sun flaming all the day ; so as it would have been intolerable had it not been compensated by some breezes we had, and by the nights being of equal length, nevertheless *Calentures* begun to vex us. A Sailer also by accident falling from the shrowds into the merciless waves was some aggravation, increased by a sudden and violent gust and storm of wind and rain which in 6 degrees affrighted us ; our squiffe (which was fatidick

faltned to the upper deck) in less than two hours being fill'd with nasty rain, which ended in thunder and flashes, a great while the *Tornado* in that manner amazing us; weather so variable as was admirable; now blowing fresh and fair, and forthwith storming outrageously, the wind in one hour space veering about every point of the Compas, not unlike that mentioned by the Poet.

**Una Fureſq; Notusq; ruui, Zephyrusq; maligno
Iunior, tum Boſcas.** —

*The winds from East, West, North, and South advance
Their force, and urge the frothy waves to dance.*

* But in this confusion, that the wind at one and the same time blew from different Heads or Points of the Compass, I may not say, seeing Aristotle asserts that *Ventos contrarios diametro distantes simul spirare non posse*: Albeit Theophrastus allows the sudden change of winds, *Ventos in contrarios posse mutari, cum Nubes in contrarium locum pulse fuerint*. Which *Uromeritis* gives this reason for, *Ventorum mutatio viuis in alterum, a Solis motu etiam habet, &c.* adding withall in l. 2. *Meteor.* Arist. id falsum appareat, cum Anfrum & Aquilonem simul interduoflare compertum est. Now albeit these airy contests were not a little frightful to us Passengers, who had never seen the like, yet the infectious rains that usually accompany the *Tornados* were what most damned the Sailors, who in those storms are necessitated to be upon the decks to hand in their sails and to abide the brunt, and which is worse, the storm being over they commonly get forthwith into their beds (or hammocks) leaving their wearied bodies in wet nasty cloaths, thereby breeding many diseases, as Feavers, Calentures, Fluxes, Aches, Scurvy, and the like; which doubtless did they moderate their bibing strong waters, and take more care to shift their apparel, might in great measure be prevented. Other unlucky accidents oft-times happen in these Seas, as when (especially in becalmings) men swim in the bearing Ocean, gaged by *Hagen* called *Tuberon* or *Shark*, armed with a double row of venomous teeth purfue them, directed by a little *Rhombus* or *Malculus*, variously streakt and coloured with blew and white, that ituds to and fro to bring the *Shark* intelligence; which Pilot fish as one describes

Mis alius est parvus viu, sed corpore pulchra;
Hunc vilicem vero aut rem nomine dicunt.

*His body is right fair, though seeming small,
And duly him by name of Guido men call.*

The *Shark* for his service suffering him to fuck when he pleaseth. In the History of *Tobit* it is writ, that as he walld himself in the River *Tygris*, a great fish leapt at him with an intent to have devoured him; which (though it have no name) is like enough to have been a *Shark*, to save that, and the *Crocodile*, what other fish are so bold as to dare living men, and to devour them? but some imagine that fish to be the *Scorpio Marinus* or *Callionymus*. Now that this fish was capable of such afeat we have for witness *A. Cillius*, who reports that the *Nicæans* took a *Shark* that weighed 400 pound, in which they found a whole man confid'd; and thence some think *Zorbas* was in a *Sharks* belly; But this we may affirm, that many have been devoured by this ravenous fish, and more have suffered in their members, whole shape (mistaken in the posture by the Ingraver,) take thus resembled.



By this, under 13 degrees North we were parallel with *Sierra Leon*, a Capesland upon the *Libyan* shore, by old Geographers called *Deturum cornu*; *Frons Africa*, *Tagazza*, and *Zanguebai* in *Thevet* and *Marmolius*; strengthened by a Castle built by the Spaniard, famous for refreshing our English *Neptune*, *Drake*, at his return from circum-navigating the body of the whole Earth: and that thence to *Bab-mandal* (the entrance into the Red-sea *Africk*) is no where broader. This Cape is from *Cape de Verd* distant about 100 leagues, from *Rio de Gambia* 25.

The Inhabitants here along the Golden Coast of *Guinea* and *Binnin* bounded with *Tom*, *buh*, *Gualata*, and *Mellis*, and watered by the great River *Niger*, *Cape Palmas*, *Lopez*, *Gonzalo*, &c. but especially in the *Mediterranean* parts know no God, nor are willing to be instructed by Nature. *Sciunt nihil iucundissimum*. Howbeit, the Devil (who will not want his Ceremony) has infused prodigious Idolatry into their hearts, enough to relish his pallat and aggrandize their tortures when he gets power to fry their souls, as the raging Sun has already scorched their cole-black carcasses.

A Saip of ours of late years coasting along and landing for discovery, was so admired by the Salvages as if they never had seen white men nor ship afore. Two of ours adventuring the shore (some Holtages being kept in the boat till they returned) were welcomed by thousands of those naked black skin'd *Ethiopians*, who were so far from doing them any injury, that they presented them with Flowers, Fruits, Toddy, and what else they judged acceptable: after extraordinary admirations returning them safe aboard, all content; but since then have been found more savage.

April the 13. we had 15 degrees, and before the next morn were in height of *Cape de Verd* in 14 degrees, so named by *Florian*, *Hepteron cornu* or *Hepteri ceras* by *Pliny*, *Libya interior*: & *Africa ex remum cornu & promontorium* by *Strabo*, of old called *Surenum & Arinarium*, at this day by the *Ethiopians* *Bjescar* and *Mandangan*, and *Hacdar* by the *Alfarabes*; that which strictly is called *Mauritania* here being terminated to the South adjoin, to *Gambia*. Discovered these were by *Dio Fernandez* or *Antonio di Nole* a Genoan Anno 1455, at the charge of King *Alphonfus* 5. famous especially in the *Hepteron* Garden which was enrich with Golden Apples, conquer'd by *Alcides* his Club in despite of that hundred-headed Dragon that was engendred by *Typhon* on *Eabydna*. A Greek Fable; thereby intending to set forth *Paradise*, for the Moral was this: The Garden was a pleasant Field, the Golden Apples were sheep worth Gold (such sheep and fleece as *Jesu* had; the errour partly arising from the word *λαός* admitting a double construction, the Club was Philosophy, the Dragon concupiscence or a flux of the Sea in form of a Dragon invironing it, branching into 100 sluices: which sheep *Hercules* (to enrich Spain) passed over and exported. These, and not our *Sorlings* or Iles of *Sily* as *Dion*, *Alex.* supposes, nor yet *Berenice* in *Egypt*, nor *Lixu* a Roman Colony near *Tanger* in *Africk* as some imagine, were the *Hepteron*, so named from *Heptera*, whose three Daughters signifying Anger, Voluptuousnes, and Avarice, were *Egle*, *Aretusa*, and *Ihesperita*; now called *Mayo*, *Sal*, and *Bonavista*: There be three other Ilands neighbouring them, the *Atlantides*, which we will but name, the magnifique Fabrick of *Anshus* calling us away to look upon, but alas find nothing extant save memory; a Palace albeit once so stately and capacious as to entertain the Lord of it who by Poets is said to be 70 Cubits high (a dozen ordinary mens proportion) and an excellent Log for *Hercules* to smite at; yet (the Greeks perswade us) his Club could not conquer: nor was he overcome, when by prodigious force *Jesu* Son threw him thrice upon the ground, the Earth his Mother still reanimating him; till being perceiv'd, he strangled him in the helpless Air. But passing by the grecish Fable, for as one says well, *Dicimus Hepteron, proper eximiam loci amenitatem*: It is more worthy our observation to consider, that the Omnipotency of God is most apparent in extremes, seeing that by inanimate things, as heat, storms, and rain he is more formidable than all the puissance of man put together can make; as these parts very notably make out unto us: For example, April 21. not one breath of air comforted us, the Sun over-topping and darting out such fiery beams that the Air inflamed, the Seas seemed warm, our Ship became sulphureous, no decks, no awnings nor invention possible being able to refresh us, so that for 7 days (70 better endured in a Zone more temperate) we swet and broil'd, unable to sleep, rest, eat or drink without much faintnes; in which space our ship made no way (no current being felt far in the Ocean) till the fifth day the billows began to roule and the air troubled (for the air expiring from under the Sea, first causes the waves to rise and the Sea to bubble, the wind not being perceived by sense till there be an eruption of a great quantity, and from thence gets into a body) and then travelling with an abortive cloud which suddenly fell down in form of an inverted Pyramid it became equally wonderful and dangerous. A cloud

cloud exhaled by the Sun (a powerful Magnet) not agitated by the wind, but missing the retentive property in the lower Region, distills not in moderate and condensed drops, but falls so impetuously into the Ocean, that many ships have been dash'd and sunk past all recovery; *Lucan* in his 4. lib. has this ingenious description of it.

*The foggs which India and Arabia make,
Exhal'd under the Sun a place do take.
But being so huge, those clouds can hardly be
Loudly'd in such strait room 'twixt Earth and Skie.
For being so crusht together, not in vain
Contracted in the air, they roul amain
In fearful gushing showers.*

And what's little less formidable, the stinking rain is no sooner in the Sea, but (as a churlish farewell) a whirlwind usually circles with such violence as helps the cloud to lash the murmuring Seas so outrageously, that oft-times the waves rebound top-gallant height, as if it meant to retaliate the air in another Region. *Pliny lib. 2. c. 40.* treating of prodigious kinds of Tempests thus describes it: *Ex eodem genere & in longam veturi fistulam Nubes aquam trahit;* and *Olympiodorus* commenting upon *Arist. meteors*, thus, *Asiotes Typhonem vocat Typonem, quod usque verberet frangaque solida corpora, Naua Typhonem vocant, quia in modum fistula trahat aquam e mari.* God be praised, we mist the rage of rain, albeit the gulf somewhat endangered us; but it contrari'd *Senera's* Philoſophy, *Fmis alterius mali gradus est furi:* a pleasant breeze first, increasing into a prosperous gale, cooled the air and posted us out of those exuberances of Nature: so that on *May-day* we croft under the Equinoctial; a Circle, which passing East and West through the middle of the Earth, is imagined to divide the whole Globe into two equal parts or Hemipheres, from either Pole (in equidistantly) 90 degrees, where we lost sight of the *Syndus salvare*, the Pole-star, a star of a third magnitude fixt in the tip of the little Bears tail: the Sun at this time being in the 19. degree of *Taurus*; in Artick declination 17 degrees 31 minutes. And here we may observe, that by reason of so long a calm the heat became outrageous; nevertheless experience assured us, that the heat is not so insufferable under the Equator as where more remote, and with good reason too, seeing that the breezes be more constant towards *Sun-set*, and greater where the motion of the air has greatest circles. The nights also are equal there in length to the day, and ordinarily dewy, which refrigerates and compensates the heat of the day. Besides the heat is much abated by the two Winters there, and as a learned and noble Person conceives, the extreme heat within the Zodiaque attracts such streams of cold air or Atoms from each Pole into the torrid Zone, as exceedingly qualifies the burning heat, and may peradventure cause the constant breezes which at 9 and 4 seldom fail, as do the rains which ordinarily fall at noon when the beams are hottest.

May 6. We had some thunder and lightning or *corpo sanctos*, such as seem good Omens to the superstitious; at night we past by *Santo-Croce* the holy Crois, every hour expecting the *Mansoon*, an anniversary wind that from one Rhomb constantly blows one way six Months, beginning exactly from the Sun's entrance into a sign of the Zodiac; and the other half year the contrary way, or till the Sun enter into the opposite degree, and (as commonly observed) from 27 to 37 degrees lat'tie for the most part Westerly, which if Sea-men neglect, they go near to lose their passage into *India*.

Now how preposterous the year and wind proved elsewhere I know not; doubtless it is the Emblem of incertainty, experience taught it us; but the weather so long time proved our Antagonist that our passage to the Cape of *good Hope* became six weeks longer than we looked for, so as we were forc't to run into much more longitude than we desired.

May 8. We had 8 degrees 10 minutes Amartick latitude, the *Monomotapa* on the one side, the *Brazilian Coast* on the other, siding us. The *Africk* shore runs on in divers names, *Congo* in 6 degrees, much of which was taught Christy by *Gonsalvo de Sosa* at the command of *John 2. Angoſta* in 9. *Manicongo, Louisa, Monomotapa, Benorotapa*, and *Cafaria*, an Arabick word, signifying men without Law and Religion, full of black-skin'd wretches; rich in Earth, abounding with the best Minerals, and with Elephants, but miserable in demonyomy: The discovery of these parts is attributed to sundry men (the first not agreed upon) some to *Petrus Cavallarius*, others to *Jacobus Carus, Bartholomeo de Dyos, Valco de Gama*, such as *John 2. King of Portugal* employed about it, *Anno 1497.* or thereabouts, this being memorable, that *Dyos* in a Fight he had with the *Angolas* took so many *Negro's* Prisoners, as having cut off their Noſes he fill'd two Butts, and presented



presented them to the King of *Portugal*, unlike *Hannibal*: present after *Varro's* overthrow at *Cumas*. Let one Character serve for all: for colour they may well cry Chimney-sweep; unlike them in this, they are of no profession, except rapine and villany make one. For here *Demonis omnis plena*. Mokilles, fetefors, deformed Idols being indured amongst them, the red Dragon usurping worshipp in a Dragons shape, Goat, Owle, Bat, Snake, Cat, Dog, or what the Witches (*acheronta movebum*) urge them to, and to adore in an infernal posture; gaping, whooping, groveling, soiling, and discolouring their carkasses with juice of herbs, rice, roots, fruits, or what the old Impoltor infatuates them with; and here the female Sex each new Moon dñe pale *Cynthia*, imagining her the cause of their distempers, which to comply with the weaker Sex, the men threaten with their shafts, as if they could reach that Planet, albeit distant from them no less than one hundred and twenty thousand miles, the space between the Earth and the Moon being seventeen times the Diameter of the Earth, if we credit *Ptolomy* and other Astronomers. A Dog was of that value here, that 20 salvages have been exchanged for one of them: but of late years the exchange for Negroes to transport into the *Caribe Iles* and Continent of *America* is become a considerable Trade. Which seeing the gain by their slavery is more aim'd at than the conversion of their souls to Christ, I fear the end proves rather damage than advantage to the Purchaser; nor is this merchandize of Slaves tolerable amongst

amongst Christians, albeit with Mahometans generally practised; and by the Moäic Law, *Patri in necessitate filium vel filiam vendere licet, Exod. 21. 7.* exercised also amongst the Gentiles, as appears by the example of *Joseph* bondage. Their Coin are a sort of Wampom or Shells, Glafs, Beads, Stones, or like trash: they marry not: bury thus; the dead is wash't painted, apparell'd, and laid to sleep in a spacious dormitory, his Armlets, Bracelets, and voluntary shackles accompany him, they circle the Grave with mimic gestures and ejaculations, concluding with the Sacrifice of a hulky Goat.

But in *Loango* (which some put to the North of *Congo*, but under the Equator) and the *Anzigni* (near which *Nilus* draws his course even from *Zayre*, a Lake near the Mountains of the Moon in 12 degrees South) the people (if *Goncalvo Soza* say true) as in colour so in condition are little other than Men Incarnate; for not satisfied with Natures Treasures, as Gold, Precious Stones, and the like; the destruction of men and women neighbouring them doth content them, whole dead carcasses they devour with a Vultures appetite; if they miss, they serve their friends (so they mis-call them) such for very fauce, bewitching them, and thinking they excuse all in a Complement, that they knew no better way to express love, than in making (not two souls) two bodies one by such an union: yea some, as some report, (worn by age, or worm-eaten by the Pox) proffer themselves to the shambles, and accordingly are dis-jointed and set to fail upon the Stalls. *Similis lactuca labia.* And *Juvenal* it seems met with the relation of such Monsters; for says he

*Aspicimus populos, quorum non sufficiunt
Occidisse aliquem: sed pectora, brachia, vultum
Crediderint genus esse cibi.*

*The slaughter of a man doth not suffice
These Cannibals we see: but breasts, arms, eyes,
Like dainty meat they eat.*

And by which we see that these sanguinary Barbarians by this lend and detestable Custom (to the infamy rather than honour of Religion) make mans flesh a common sacrifice or offering, a diet so injurious and loathsome to Nature, as requires the Eaters with the Pox and Leprosie; which last as *Hippocrates* affirmt, says, *if turpitudis magis quam morbus.* Nothing so commendable in them at their Archery, in which they excel; shooting (if true that some report) a dozen shafts ere the first touch ground; their Amazonian Neighbours foring their care and diligence. Their other Arms be Clubs and Darts long and small, and barb'd with Iron, very sharp and bright, but envenomed sometimes with the juice of the *Quacambaba*, a Tree of small growth, that bears few leaves, but those very broad; the wood being soft and easily pierced: the juice of it is not unlike milk, but of a much different quality, for it is white, and the Arrow heads they dip therein very dangerous, and so les pernicious. We have seen the shadow of it, as several *Europeans* (not knowing the quality) have experienced. The *Miconda* is high and thick, 12 fathoms about, as some have measured; yet so porous as renders it unservicable for Canoës, or such uses as Timber to build with, or the like. The only ornament they have, is slashing and pinking their skin and faces. The Sun and Moon are reputed man and wife, the Stars their Children, in their Religion; the Devil is their Oracle. Those parts have store of Gold, and yet use they shells for Coin (as do the *Americans*) they call them *Simbo*; the bell fort are of a shining black and gray colour, and found near the Isle *Luanda* in 8 degrees South, a Shell of small value in other places, but with these *Negros* highly reputed.

May 24. We had 19 degrees and a half, from whence to the thirtieth the wind was large and prosperous, nothing in that great distance observable, save that on the 26. day our Admiral the *Mary* (in which Captain *Hall* commanded) early descried a Sail, which he made after with Harge and Long-boat man'd with 80 men; at two Leagues distance they perceived her a Carrack of 1500 Tun, who not daring to adventure her hulk against our shot made all her Sails draw, so as that night she escaped; to recover her our fleet divided all night, yet saw her not till the 27. day, and but saw her, her velocity so much excelled ours; till the 7. of June she again deluded us, after two hours chase as a phantasma vanishing from our sight, steering towards *Cou*.

Upon *May-day* we crost the Line, and on the last of *May* the Tropic of *Capricorne*, the *Tropicus Capricorni*, utmost limit of *Apoll's* progress towards the Antartick; so as 53 days we sweat within *Junius 1.* the burning Zone, ere we pass under both the Tropiques. The first of *June* our observation was 24 degrees 42 minutes South latitude, the Sun then being in 23 degrees 8 min. North, in the 20 degree of *Gemini*. In which height we had many sudden gusts and storms contrary to our desires, as unable thereby to direct our course as should have been, being driven to Lee-ward 100 Leagues upon the Coast of *Brazzel* to 25 degrees latitude and

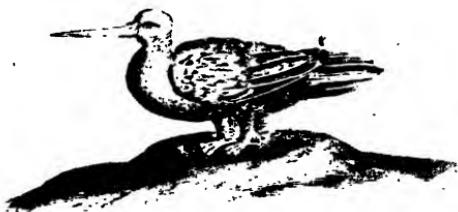
and 27 of longitude from the Lizard. Howbeit, post multos sequitur una serena dies, for on the 13. day, in the first watch, our long lookt for Favonius blew sweetly upon us.

The West wind (most men know)
From the vast Sea is ever felt to blow.

Semper lenis aura Favoni
Spirat ab Oceano.

At which time some *Boobies* pearcht upon the Yard-Arm of our Ship, and suffered our men to take them, an Animal so very simple as becomes a Proverb.

/ Boobie



Long it is not since I told you how favourably the Wind had been unto us, but ere long found that his other adjunct is Inconstancy; for after a short calm we observed the Ocean first to ferment and heave, and then to wrinkle her smooth face, and veering into a contrary romp at length to pull and bluster, yea next day to storm so outrageously, that the Sea men themselves to my apprehension had some fear, and not without reason, the Cape-land being thought (not near enough, and yet in this condition, too near: for four days and nights we were forced to hull, not having the least rag of sail out; but driving whither wind and tide (being near the shore) compelled), during which we were now tost as it were into the Air, and then thrown down into an Abyss, dancing upon the ridge of dreadful waves, others at a greater distance threatening to swallow us; the Air and Ocean contending who should make the greater noise, that it was not possible to behold a fiercer conflict twixt those Elements. Nevertheless hoping in the Lord, and having tis ships, through good providence after sixteen days longer sail (by this late storm having put forth farther to sea) our Fleet which were all dispers'd met joyfully together soon after at the Cape, where I had better leisure to contemplate that ironique Satyr of *Juvenal*,

Go now, and to the winds thy life commit,
Trust the smooth wood four or seven fingers set
From death, the broadest heart of Pine admit.

I nunc & ventis animam committe, dolosa;
Confutis ligno; Digitis à morte remorsus
Quatuor aut septem; si sit latissima tada.

Nevertheless, albeit the waves were extream high in this late storm, they were withal extraordinary long; and experience taught us, that in the narrow Seas (as 'twixt *England* and *France*, or *Wales* and *Ireland*) where the Sea is shallower, the waves are much shorter and break more, whereby they become much more dangerous; for where the Ocean is vast and deep, there it rousls in long waves, and has the flower motion. It may also be remembred, that during this late tufton, lightning was seen to fall and hang like fire, sometimes to skip to and fro about the Yards and Tackling of our Ships. In old times the *Greeks* call'd them *Castor* and *Pollux*, whom they feign'd to be *Leda's* Twins; which some call *Hermes* fire; *Saint Elmo* others; the *French* *Furore*; but the *Portugal* *Corpo São Eló's*; withall believing, that when two are seen, they foretel *Halcyon* weather and safety; if one, it imports danger; but three threaten storm and shipwreck. *Sea non ego credulus illis*, well-knowing that these Meteors are no other than natural Exhalations.

June 24. We rais'd the Pole Antartique six and thirty degrees, at which time our longitude from the Meridian of the *Lizard* was 25 degrees wanting three minutes; variation three degrees, course E.S.E. Suns declination 22 deg. 26 min. and as many seconds North, in the 17. degree of *Gemini*. Where note, that at this same time being Mid-summer in *England*, it was mid winter with us in this South Climat, being near the *Anisopodes*. *July* the 7. betimes in the morning by the *Sargasso* or Sea-weeds we saw floating upon the Sea

the Seamen knew they were near the Cape, and accordingly we descried land betimes next morning, which though threescore miles distant being so high it seemed to be nigh us; howbeit the wind and tide not favouring we could not then reach the Continent, but dropt our Anchor 14 Leagues short of *Soudanis-bay* afore a small Isle call'd *Coney-Isle* through corruption of speech, the proper name of that Isle being *Cain-yne* in Welch. The Isle is three miles about, in which we saw abundance of *Pen-gwines*, in Welch *White-heads*, agreeable to their colour; a Bird that of all other goes most erect in its motion, the wings or fins hanging down like sleeves, covered with down instead of Feathers, their legs serving them better than their wings; they feed on fish at Sea and grafs ashore, and have holes to live in like Conies; a degenerate Duck, for using both sea and shore, it feeds in the one, breeds in the other; is very fat and oily, and some adventure to eat them; for curiosity indeed may invite, seeing *Tetraurus raro flumachus vulgaris temnit*, but to make a meal I cannot advise other than as the Distich directs.

Tots quidem ponatur anas, sed peccore tantum
Et cervice lata; cetera reddite coquio.

Divide the Duck, only the neck and breast,
They savour well; the Cook may take the rest.

A Pen-gwin.



In this little Isle we found also abundance of Conies, not unlike our Cats, but of a larger size, and rammish, as they report that eat such dainties: indeed such food requires good stomachs with hot water to help digestion ere it turn into a reasonable *Chylus*. Here were also great number of *Seals* or *Sea-calves*, which some call *Piscis Marinus*, as big as the greatest sort of Mastives, something like them in visage, and in voice out-bark them, but the consort is rather like the bellowing of Bulls.



There as also *Crocodiles*, *Penguins*, *Oters*, and *Mannaces*, are amphibious Animals, equally using land and water; and albeit easily destroyed if one interpose 'twixt them and the Sea, yet being past have so good a faculty in striking the loose stones with their hinder feet or fins, that the purser is thereby indangered. Bad food they are so oily, but their skins being tan'd are converted into many good uses. Weighing Anchor we next came to *Pen-gwin* Island, so named from that abundance of those Birds we found there; this Isle is about six Leagues N. N. W. from *Soudanis*; and albeit this is so near the main land, yet well I remember that all the way we sail'd 'twixt the last Isle and the Bay we Anchored at, we were disport'd by *Whales*, who in wantonness fuzzing the

the briny Ocean out of those pipes or vents Nature has placed upon their shoulders, like so many floating Islands accompanied us, and after their guize thundred out our welcome into *Ethiopia*. These *Leviathans* are indeed the largest, not only of all Fish in the Sea, but as I think, of all other bodied Creatures. *Pliny*, *Mafferius* and *Nearcetus* report, that some Whales in the Indian Ocean have by measure been found to be some hundred Cubits long. I am even ashamed to say how many. Those we saw (as we conjectur'd) could not be less than three score foot from Head to Tail, the Head being well nigh a fourth, the Mouth little less than ten foot wide, the Tongue proportionable, but the Eyes no bigger than an Apple; the Body is thick and round, which the Savages eat, but Merchants covet them rather for profit, one usually giving twelve tun of Oyl; ingendring, Belly touches Belly, in bringing forth they have but one at a time, therein like that *Bebemus* the Elephant.

July the first we came to an Anchor in *Souldaria* Bay, so call'd from *Antonio Soldaria à Portuguise*, who being by King *Eman* sent with three Ships after *Albuquerque* through straits of wherether was forced into this Bay, which was after named *Aquatio Soldanie*, *Soldaria*'s watring place, *Ofor. l. 3.* It is 12 leagues short of that great Cape which meritoriously is now call'd of good Hope; the former name *Tormentoso* impos'd by *Gama* being advisedly rejected by King *John 2. of Portugal*, from this consideration, that in prosecuting those *Indian* Voyages having attained this place, the half way and greatest danger is vanquished.

This Bay is of a semi-lunary form, both safe and large, and affords good anchorage; towards the shore the Land is low and fruitful, but 5 miles from the Bay appears high and barren, for in a perpendicular as we observed the Mountain which from its resemblance is call'd the Table is no less high than eleven thousand eight hundred and sixty feet; near which is another *Pico* or Hill, which from its sharpness at the top Men usually call the Sugar-loaf; on the other side the Table is another *Pyramidal* Hill call'd *Herbertis* Mount, from the top of any of which we could plainly see this utmost Promontory or *Cape of good Hope*. *Cabo de buona Speranza* the *Portugal* calls it, which is about 12 leagues *S. S. W.* thence; alio *S.* and by *E.* ten leagues thence we have a fair view of *Cape Falso* and *Cape de Aguilas*, which three Promontories are separated from each other by large Bays, but the two last found inconvenient to anchor in; distant they be from one another 10 miles *N.* and *S.* on all sides save to the Sea environed with Mountains which surge so high as they penetrate the middle Region. To the Table lately mentioned Seamen for their recreation ordinarily climb up, the ascent (the height consider'd) not being uneasie, but the Prospect (being once up) fully compensates the labour; for from thence into that Country where higher Hills do not anticipate, is a very noble view and pleasant; and into the Ocean we could see 100 miles and upwards. Into *Souldaria* Bay, a small but moist sweet and wholesome water streams from the Table Mountain which after so long being at Sea was a great refreshing to our scorcht Intrailes. Now albeit *Galen* and others hold that Water hath no Nutritive quality in it self in regard of its coldnes, yet can it not be denyeid that it is so necessary an Ingredient in order to nourishment, that of all Liquors it is by Philosophers stiled the most precious. For from the Creation to *Noah's* Flood it was the only Drink the God of Nature appointed for the refreshment of Man and Beast. Yea the ancient *Romans* for full 500 years after the building of *Rome* used it. And then the age and vigour of Men were much more, than when Wine and other strong Drincks brought with them intemperance, which with luxurious Dyt delighted, yet weakned, Nature. To the North of *rio dulce* ('twixt which are two pretty rising Hills, by Capt. *Fitz-Herbert*, called King *James* and King *Charles's* Mounts, and in whole behalf he laid claim unto that Country) such as land here for refreshment usually pitch their Tents: about half a league thence is a broader stream, but so shallow (near the Bay) as is not Navigable: the *Portuguese* call it *rio de Jaqueline*, which when I tast'd was brackish, and insalubrious; but 'twixt the two other Capes is a larger stream, which springs, as some say, from those Mountains of the Moon, suppoised under the South Tropic, but how truly I know not.

Africa (of which this is part) is a *Peninsula*, where that *Isthmus* of 20 leagues divides the Red from the midland Sea. This great Continent which the Aequinoctial parts in two, and *Homer* well distinguishes by *intra & extra*, is by others into *Major* and *Minor*; either of which is well nigh as big as *Europe*. In length it runs North and South from *Tangier* (a City in the mouth of the *Straits of Gibraltar* heretofore call'd *Julia traducta* and *Tingis Cæsaria*, whence that part of *Mauritania* is called *Tingitana*) to this Promontory *de bona Speranza*; the first being in 35 d. 50 m. North, the other in 34 d. South latitude, computed 4200 English miles, and the greatest breadth (from *Cape Verd* upon the *Aslan-tique*

tique to Cape Guardafui, Aromata of old, in *Ethiopia* near the Red-sea) being about 2000. *Leo* divides all into four, *viz.* *Barbary*, *Nomidia*, *Libya*, and *Nigritarum Terra*, most of which is comprehended within the Tropiques. Howbeit, in old times the whole World was divided but into two, *viz.* *Asia*, and *Europe*; in which last *Afrique* was comprised; for proof whereof we have *Philostratus in Vita Isocratis*, *Lucan l. 9.* and *Virgil En. l. 7.*

Quibus actus uterque
Europe atque Asia fatis concurserit orbis.

In which how fates contrive,
To make both Worlds, Europe and Asia strive.

As also in his 10. lib.

Quæ causa fuit confusione in armis Europamque Asiamque,

In which alarms,
Europe and Asia both were forc'to Arms.

Ovid likewise in that 12. *Eleg. de art. amandi.*

But for which Queen
Europe and Asia in firm peace had been,

By which no doubt the whole World was intimated; those quarrels drawing all parts into their engagements. After which it was called *Libya*, per *Synecdochen*. *Lucan l. 6.*

Europam miseri Libyamque Asiamque timete,
Of Europe, Libya, Asia stand in fear.

Which few Instances may serve for many; but since *America* is the fourth, *Afrique* for grandeur has the second place. The name *Afrique* is as some pretend from *Aphr*, one descended out of the Lous of *Abraham* by *Cisara*, who having first conquered *Libya*, there exercised regal power; others, from the Greek word αφρ and οιαν which signifies without cold; agreeable to which is the *Lynor* of *Ethiopia* αφρ and οιαν which is to scorch the Face; albeit some others f. e. in *En.* *Ethiop.* Son of *Vulcan*, whom some think *Cham*, and the rather, so think the *Horew*, 'tis called *Cham* and *Chus*, which gives the Negro its name and *Phut* *Iaphet* by *L o.*, *Besieath* by the *Indians*, *Atlanta* per *Synecdochen*, and *Eurus* by the *Poets*; for the two last properly comprised *Ethiopia sub Egypto*; and by *Tiezeetus Alkibulan*: Howbeit *Pliny* saith that *Greci tota Africa dicta est Libya*.

But concerning *Ethiopia*, albeit *Laudinus* will not grant that it any where exceeds the Tropicks; Geographers notwithstanding allow in a much larger extent; *Supra dimidiam terræ Africæ pariem, Ethiopia continet*, says a good Author. And *Srabo* avers that anciently the better, or greater part of th. habitable World went under the name of *Ethiopia*. *Ethiopia duplex est. Una in Asia, altera in Africa. Quæ in Africa est, bona India dicitur*, says *Pliny*, a definition followed of by others, having only *Virgil's* verse, *Caramanias & Indos* for authority, and some others from the *East Indies* who here feated, saith *Herodotus*: that in *Africk* which is superior, stretches from the *Equator*, and is confined by *Egypt* to the North, the *Red-sea* to the East, and *Libya* to the West; the inferior thrifly it self from the *Equinoctial* Southerly to this very *Cape of good Hope*, being to the West and East circumcribed with the Ocean. *Ethiopes Eborii & macrobii qui Africam ad australe mare habitant*, saith *Herodotus l. 3.* admitting which, it needs must transcend the Tropicks, with which agrees one of the most ancient Poets, *Od. 13.*

xtemos hominum *Ethiopes*, geminiisque dirumptos
artibus

The utmost sort of People known to Man
Is the divided *Ethiopian*.

And albeit that expression in *Lucan, lib. 3.*

*Ethiopumque solum, quod non premeretur ab illa
gnili regione poli, nisi Ungula Tauri.*

The *Ethiopian Land* sees not at all
The Signs North from the *Equinoctial*,
Excepting *Taurus*.

Probably grounded *Laudinus* in his opinion: To him I oppose that of the Prince of Poets, *lib. 4. En. Ultimus Ethiopum locus.* Explained by another of equal authority whose expression doubtless had reference to this most remote place, in saying,

— *The*

The *Ethiopian ground,*
Which by the Worlds utmost extent is bound.

*Ethiopumque simul, quorum jact extima
Tellus.*

And may serve to prove that *Ethiopia* exceeds the Tropicks. I am not ignorant that the three *Arabias* were also called *Ethiopia Asia*, to which we refer that in *Genesis*, and those *Ethiops* mentioned 2 Chron. 21. 16. but being not under that dominion, I need not speak further of it: yet some there be that will not have it to exceed the Countries possest by *Prefect John*. To return, this famous Cape elevates the Antartick Pole four and thirty degrees and three minutes latitude, has longitude from the meridian of the *Lizard* 28 deg. 48 from the *Azores*; albeit we found the variation Westerly but 1 deg. and 40 min. (but at *Cape de Aguillas* little or no variation at all is of the Needle, the best reason being that the Ocean on both sides is alike, and the Land in equidistantie.) From the Lands-end of *Cornwall* 'tis six thousand six hundred miles English, from the greater *Java* five thousand five hundred and fifty, from *Sarawak* five thousand four hundred, and from *Santa Helena* (which is S. E. thence) one thousand eight hundred, the furthest part South of the old known World, according to that of *Homer* lately mentioned, *Extremos hominum, &c.* and agreeable to what is mentioned in this Distich.

By salt Seas limited; the Worlds-end we
Inhabit. None with us, to trade agree.

Extremique hominum Maris ad Vada salta seorsim
Deginus, ac nobiscum Nemo negotia miscet.

So that all that can well be objected is, seeing this *Cape* or more Southerly part of Africa further than 12 deg. was unknown to *Ptolemy*; and towards the Sea his furthest extent was the *Cape land*, he calls *Praenum*, which is near *Morambiq*; How the other came by the discovery? which in this place is not credited, nor pertinent for enquiry. Albeit this little I may say for satisfaction, that *Herodot. l. 4.* by what I have cited is positive; somewhat also may be gathered from that report he makes, how that *Pharaoh Necho* after the los of a million of men, suffered by his vain attempt in cutting that narrow neck which interposes betwixt the Red and Mid-land Seas, the *Phoenicians* (at that time the most expert in Navigation) receiving encouragement from that *Egyptian* Prince to discover Southward, are laid in three years space from the *Red sea* to surround *Afrique*. *Pomp Melis* has the like tradition of two *Carthaginians*, who at their return reported that they sailed from some part of *India* into the *Atlantique sea*. *Sirabo* the like of one *Eudoxus Cicerenii*, who in the Reign of *Evergetes* the *Egyptian* King doubled this great Cape. Relation is also made of another *Eudoxus*, who upon some offence committed, to avoid the punishment designed by *Ptol. Latyr* another *Egyptian* Prince, imbarke himself in the *Arabian Gulph*, and compalling *South Afrique* came alioate at *Gibraltar* it. *Sp. in. Pliny* reports the like of *Hamo* the *Carthaginian*, who taking ship at *Cades* in *Spain* past through the *Atlantique*, and thence brought his Vessel into *Arabia*; the credit of which I shall not inforse, nor say more herein, save that *Melpomene* suppos'd to be writ 2000 years since by *Herodotus* makes *Afrique* on all sides to be compact with the Sea, except where that *Isthmus* divides the *Red sea* from the *Mediterranean*. Albeit *Ptol.* after him gives no further extundre of land South, than 12 deg. affirming also that the two Oceans had no conjuncture. But leaving this to better inquiry, more certain it is, that the *Portugals* first doubled this Cape in the last Centuries divers years before *Columbus* made his expedition into the *West Indies*. *Lusitanus mare Atlanticum Navigantes cunctam Mauritiam & Ethiopiae oram usque ad magnum illud & vastum promontorium Bonae Spei antiquis geographicis ignoramus, &c.* *Plurimi Amis antequam Cr. Columbus Ligam occidentalem Occasum perlungasset*, says a late good Author. The first we can therefore honour for the first discoverer of this Cape, is *Vasco de Gama* or *Bartolomeo de Dyos*, both of them eminent *Portugals*, who in the year 1497. (says *Osiarius*) by instructions they received from King *John* the second their Sovereign, coasted round about this Cape-land, and so opened the first way by Sea into the Orient.

The Soil here is exceeding good, the Earth being at all times covered with Gras, and diaper'd with Flowers and Herbs in great variety. I well remember that by accident I digged up the root of one that came up like a big *Parship*, which for many days livet a gum or clarify juice that had a very aromaticke smell, and though few roots have *Oris* are odorous, which having a tender dainty heat, vanishes in the Sun and Air, yet this when dry keept its perfume a mouthagogether; the leaf was broad and prickly; something resembling the *holy Thistle*, and grew close to the ground. I also obserued there were of *Agrimony*, *Betony*, *Mint*, *Callamint*, *Sorrell*, *Scabious*, *Spinage*, *Thyme*, *Carduus*

dinus Benedictus, and Coloquintida; with which, and several other beneficial Herbs and Flowers, which the skilful might have better distinguisht, Nature all the year long robes the fruitful Earth as with Tapistry: The *Hebr.* have a Proverb, There is not an Herb upon the Earth but has his Mazzall or Star answering it, and saying, grow. I know not how true that is, but here they prosper. All which is summed up by another as followeth, *Quamvis enim monos aperat, & collibus multis distracta; interim tamen multo valibus, silvis, pratiisque decorata est, gramina & flores suavissime olenes magna copia producit, Gravij, nec feras & leones multo numero nutrit, qua omnia vita & aspectu lange jucundissima existunt: præterea, lymphidissimis fontibus seacta quamplurimis, qui non sine gratissimo susurro, de movibus alia prouincient, fluminibus sese paſſim infundant, & cum eis postmodum in mare excurvantur.* The Rivers yield no less variety, as Trout, Pike, Pickrell, Tench, Eel; and of Shell-fish, Crab, Lobster, Rock-fish, Crayfish, Cockle, Murex, Lympt, Tortoise, which be very small and curiously colour'd, and Oysters (which though they have no discriminate sex) are as good as can be; we see also Thornback, Gudgeon, and other Sea-fish, which sometime are taken in the *Aquamum* of the fresh-water. The Mountains are not without Marquisate and Minerals, which but by search are not to be discerned. The Country affords withal plenty of Beasts of sundry sorts, as Buffalos and Cows, which are large but lean and hunch-backt; Sheep with long Ears, like Hounds, much unlike thoſe in *Europe*; Red-deer, Antilopes as large as Stags, and delightfully headed; Apes and Baboons of extraordinary size and colour, Lions, Panthers, Pards, Jackalls, Wolves, Dogs, Cats, Hares, and Zebrae or Pide-horses; as alio Elephants and Camels, which three last we saw not; and *Garcia ab Hort. Physitian to the Secoy of Goa* reports that he saw Unicorns here headed like a Horse, if the Zebrae deserve him not; and to Birds the change and store is no less, as Hens, Geese, Turkeys, Pengwines, Crows, Gulls, Thrushes, Pheants, Storks, Pellican, Ostrich, Pintados, Altaraces, Vulture, Eagles, Cranes, and Cormorants which some call Sea-crows, which lat upon the Sea, when without ken of land, we saw so numerous, as if related, will scarce be credited, this Bird having a smell equal to the Vulture, after battels have been noted to fly some hundreds of miles by scent to prey upon the Carcasses; here also are store of thoſe beautiful Birds called Passe-llemingos, and may be the same which by the *Arabians* is named Rachama, *avis que rubras habet alas, ad aquile naturam accedit*, as in *Nelr. 5^o.* Albeit these be mixt, for their feathers are crimson and white, as pure as can be imagined, so as above the rest, it inticed my Pen to give you its Figure.



The Natives being propagated from *Cham*, both in their Visages and Nature, seem to inherit his malediction; their stature is but indifferent, their colour olive or that sort of black we see the *Americans* that live under the *Æquator*; their face ^{are} very thin, their limbs well proportioned, but by way of ornament pinkt and cut in several shapes as fancy guides them; their heads are commonly long, about which they place their greatest bravery: for though their hair (after the *African moſt*) be woolly and ^{crispis}:

crisp; Nevertheless by way of dress some shave all their skull, some half, othersome leave a tuft a-top; but some instead of shaving have several other dresses for their head, as Spur-rowels, Brasf-buttons, pieces of Pewter, Beads of many sorts, which the mirthful fauler exchanges for Mutton, Beefs, Herbs, Olrich-egge-shells, Tortoises or the like; their ears are extended by Links of Brasf, Stones, broken Oyster-shells and like ponderous Babbles; their Arms and Legs loaden with voluntary shackles of Copper, Brasf, Iron and Ivory; and about their Necks (either in imitation of the Dutch Commanders chains, or those worn by Cockswains and Boatswains) they wear the raw guts of beasts, which serve as well for food as complement, usually eating and speaking both together; the rest of their body is naked, save that about the waist they have a thong of leather which like the back of a Glove serves to cover their pudenda, which without doubt they imagine a dress both rich and an ingenious sort of ornament. The natural and first garment Adam used, was long before the Art of Weaving was invented: according to which, the better sort here wear a Lyon or Pantherskin, or like that the Leopaid and Baboon; also a Calf or Sheep-skin the hair inverted; elsewhere their body being naked: only upon their feet they have a sole or piece of leather tied with a little flap, resembling the *Roman Crepidula*; which while their Hatten toes were in our company their hands held, their feet having thereby the greater liberty to steal, which with their toes they can do exactly, all the while looking us in the face the better to deceive: a vice how criminal soever it be in most places, was nevertheless amongst the *Lacedemonians* a reputable practice at first, Theft not being punisht, but rather such as could not stich neatly. What the generality of the Natives are, I cannot say; but some we saw were *Semi-erwuchs*, and some Women use excision, through custome or imitation rather than religion: their habitations are usually in Caves, so as these are the proper Troglodites. *Democritus* persuades us, that knowledge concerning Nature lies hid in certain dead Mine, or Caverns of the Earth; these living constantly in the intials of the Earth have good opportunity to gain that perfection, did not their brutish disposition avoid it. Now concerning their diet, former time spoke modestly of them. *Salinus* calls them *Agrupagi* and *Ichyopagi* (from their food), *Acrudopagi* might add seeing they have plenty of Locusts brought thither by Winds, which being sprinkled with salt they eat greedily; but more properly *Anthropophagi*; for the truth is, they would commonly violate the graves of those dead men we buried, and feed upon their Carcasses, the greatest piece of barbarity within the compas of expreſſion one would think, to an humanity men naturally abhor it; and herein they are more savage than Lions, *Qui Cadaveria mortuorum non gustant; enim vero, quod vivit corruptum, ex eo comedunt*, in that being more physical than those barbarians, who it seems are ignorant that no creature that dies of it self is good to eat; nor considering that there is a disparity twixt the nourishment and the thing nourished. Albeit *Ficino* is of Opinion, that in deep confumptions no such cure as by sucking humane blood will help ouſtitution. I suppose he means when the Phylician gives order for the opening a vein. But among these brutes, albeit they have plenty of dead Whals, Seals, Peigwyns, Grease, and R... puddings, which we saw them tear and eat as dainties, for they neither road no. bad, yet do they no leſs covet to destroy such creatures, as old are or ticknes are not able to provide for themselves, leaving them upon the mountaine destitute of help; where it tame and cold detroy them not, the Wild Beasts put a period to their languishing condition. A barbarism scarce to be paralleld, save by the *Cups* of *Atergatis*, who had the like base custom as we read in the 11. lib. of *Sparta*, for being superannuated, *Parentes decretos angusto loco includentes, sanguine execrare coacti*.

*With such, no violent death nor stroking rage
Of Lust, is half so dreadful as old age.*

*Non præ natura fures, nec funus acerbit
Luxurie, sed mortis magis metuenda Senectus,*

Inter omnia ammantur, Mulier in partu maxime vexatur, says *Aristotle*, - l. 9. *Hijor. Ammant*, and agrees with the sentence passed upon *Eve* for her transgression. Nevertheless, in this and other ethnique Countries, it is reported that the Women are delivered without help and pain. And here the Women give suck the Uberous Dugg being stretched over their naked shoulder: whose portraits, with a landscape of the Table and other neighbouring mountains, I present the Reader so well as I was able to draw them.



Their language is rather apishly than articulately founded, with whom 'tis thought they have unnatural mixture, so as what the commentator upon *Ptolomy* observed long since, *Humana voce sere carem, ut stridore potius quam loqui videamur*, having a voice 'twixt humane and beast, makes that supposition to be of more credit, that they have a beastly copulation or conjuncture. So as considering the resemblance they bear with Baboons, which I could observe kept frequent company with the Women, their speech, not unlike the *Semi-eans* neighbouring the *Masfingers* mentioned by *Apollosius* in his *Argo-nauts*, rather agreeing with beasts than men, their savage life, diet, exercise, a.d. the like considerations, these may be said to be the descent of Satyrs, if any such ever were; and probably 'twas one of these that appeared to *Anthony* the Hermite, in his life mentioned. Now what Philosophers alledge concerning the function of the Soul may be made applicable to these Animals, that the Soul of Man is gradually rather than specifically differenced from the Souls of Beasts, no otherwise than the Sun is unto: 't Stars or Gold amongst Metals. Upon which account, the *Spaniard* of late years made it the Subject of their dispute, Whether the *West Indians* were of descent from *Adam*, or no: or whether they were not rather a middle species of Men and Apes? had it been a *quare* concerning these Salvages, might have carried with it greater probability. *Bonetus* also treating of monstrous births in *Peru* says that it proceeds from a Copulation of Women with Monkeys; which as repugnant to the due course of nature is not to be maintained; though these are a subject for that dispute as much as any. *Aitron*, albeit a Heathen in his *L. 1. de seculo* hath this position, *Omnis homines Notionem Deorum habent, &c.* And another,

another, *Universum genu humanae ubique terrarum colit Deum verum vel falsum*. Nevertheless, if that maxime fail any where, here it may; for during the time I staid amongst them I saw no signs of any knowledge of God, the law of Nature scarce being observed: No spark of Devotion, no symptome of Heaven or Hell, no place set apart for Worship, no Sabbath for rest; and as to their Languages something I writ from one that I selected as the most sober in the Company (for through the frequency of ships that anchor there for refreshment some of them are a little civilized, from what *Herodotus lib. 4.* writes of their progenitors the *Garamantis*, *Qui fugiant aspectum commerciumque Hominum, &c.* and what *Pliny* in the *Poeme* of his lib. 5. *Nau. Hist.* says, as that in his time their Names and Places were in-expresable, *Anonyms sunt in Africa propriis Nominius carentes, &c.*) the words are as follow. One *Istwee*, Two *Istum*, Three *Isgwunry*, Four *Hucky*, Five *Croe*, Six *Isgunny*, Seven *Chowhawp*, Eight *Kishow*, Nine *Culbo*, Ten *Ghesly*; and further they could not number. *Aristotle*, not without good reason admir'd, that both Greeks and Barbarians used a like numeration unto ten; which seeing it was so universal could not rationally be concluded accidental, but rather a number that had its foundation in Nature. They call a Knife *Droaf*, a Quil *Guafaco*, a Hat *Twubba*, a Nose *Tweam*, a Sword *Dushingro*, a Book *Bucem*, a Ship *Chicunry*, Water *Chrammy*, Brads *Hadderchereef*, a Skin *Gwummey*, a Bracelet *Whooop*, Egg-shells *Sunn*, Seals *Harkall*, a Woman *Tragueosb*, Bread *Bara*, Give me *Quoy*, the Yard *Gwammey*, Stones *Webruef*, Womb *Wchicep*, Paps *Semigwe*, Genitor *Iffcom*, &c.

To draw towards an end, left *Mindus* gates be opened, in exchange for trifles we got Cattle and Sallats for refreshment. *Anno* 1600. Sir *James Lancaster* landing here, had 1000. Sheep and 50. Oxen for babies, and might have had more plenty, had not our emulous Neighbour the Dutch, after some diliguit given the Natives rode with our Colours out, which made them the less amicable to us, who have at all times express kindnes to them, and not in vain, seeing *Nomen amicis barbara corda movere*: and is the more prudential, seeing Jealousie so poiseſſes them. An example we have in *Cory* a Savage brought thence into *England* in the year 1614. where being civilized he returned in few years after to his Country, and to express how nobly he had been treated, enting the Woods in a copper gilt armour; whether in revenge of his departure, or to be poileit of so great a treasure, is not known; but instead of a kind reception which he thought he should have had, they butchered him. The Cattle they sold us, had they not been secured by tying their heads to some stakes, would break after the Savages upon one mans whittle, which was so full of discord, as if five men had whittled together, not by us to be counterfeited. They differ not now from what the *Garamantis* their Ancestors were, *Qui Matrimoniorum expertes passim cum summis degunt, cibus caro cruda, & bulum ut pecoribus. Qui neque moribus, neque legibus, neque imperio habent. Natura sedes habentes, vagi palantes, semper quo nox coegerat, &c.* pretty well resembled by *Scialo* in his *Architrenio*.

*Their garments are raw hides of beasts, whose Blood
They drink in spacious cups of hollow wood.
The Caves their Lodgings are, Bulkes their Beds,
Rocks serve for Tables, and by prey are fed.
Theft, slaughter, rapine, and what bad we call,
These Monsters akt, though the earth groan withal.*

They have little Art in War, their weapon commonly is an Azaguay or Javelin headed with Iron, directed by some feathers they take off and on at pleasure; some qua rels happened (by indiscretion) twixt us and them, and in the skirmish we found that a dozen Muskets will chafe 1000. at every discharge falling down as thunder-struck. Yet let me advise our Men to avoid needless bravadoes, and not contemn them from their indeſſive nakedness. *Exempla docent*. *Almeida*, one of the bravest Captains the Portugals ever had, after many gallant achievements in *Asia* and *Africk* returning *Anno* 1510. out of *India*, He with eleven experienced Captains and other gallants upon a small affront putting some of the Savages to death (who grew desperate in revenge) were unexpectedly set upon by these naked Barbarians, who had the *arma antiqua*, i.e. *manu, impus, dentes, and slain were every man of them. Quis* (saith *Oscarus*) *cum per medias flammis, per pilas innumerabiles, per tela, per gladios, sine ulla formidinis significacione ruentes maximum terrorum hostibus intulissent, & insignes victorias contra innumerabiles inimicos ad ipsi fruſſent, tunc à paucis hominibus inermibus atque nudis interfici & spoliari iuerint.* I will sum up the character of this *agreſſe hominum genus* with that which *Savilian* libro de

Q. illib. ad.
Terga dabant vestes, cui non habebant.
Antra lars, dumera hinc, ecce ecce.
Præda cibus raptus vestimenta, tunc
Imperium vires, a sumis toro.
Mortem pugna, sepulcra ruunt, in
Tellus

ver o iudicio gives of other the Africans. *Omnis quippe genes habet sicut peculia ria mala, ita etiam quaedam bona;* in *Africæ pene omnibus insunt omnia mala: inhumani, impuri, ebriosi, falsofissimi, fraudulentissimi, cupidissimi, perfidissimi, & obsecans libidinum omnium impunitatis & blasphemias additissimi, &c.* and for a farewell take that which *Leo* gives the *Libyans*, They have no letters, faith, or law, living (if it be a life) like wild beasts for ignorance, like devils for mischiefs, and like dogs for poverty.

Having bid this *Terrarum ultima* farewell, upon the 19. of *July* we weighed anchor, bending our course towards *Madagascar*; the wind was favourable till such time as doubling Cape *Fallo*, being off at Sea we perceived a storm intended us, happy in the sight of a small black bird, long wing'd (unjustly by Seamen called the Devil's bird; an *Antimilago*, a kind of natural Astrologer, by sense discovering the least alteration of air, and seldom seen but against stormy weather; doublets a warning from God, as be the *Pantado* birds (like *Jays* in colours) who about these remote seas are constantly flying, whereby they give Sea-men an infallible knowledge that (when neither sounding nor observation from Sun, Moon or Planets, for many days are had;) they are upon this coast; these birds and Sargasses, or Rockweed and Trumbæas (eradicated by storms) being never seen in such quantity in any other part of the universit, upon these for 50. leagues into the Sea seldom failing our intelligence. The three and twentieth of *July* the wind got up, inraging the Ocean; one surging wave (I well remember) stroke us to pat upon our broad-side, as forced the Ship in despight of her Helm (then clost by the Lee) to turn about above 5. points of the Compas, with a noise little inferiour to a Cannon; insomuch as our Captain cryed out we had struck upon a Rock, but his error quickly appeared (after so great a thunder) the Wave flasing upon our decks to salt a shower, as soundly waith us all; the storm continued till the eight and twentieth day, when veering into a milder quarter (our course East-North-East) it grew calm and moderate. The storm was not greater than we expected; for it is a general observation, that very seldom any Ship doubles this great Cape without foul weather, from whence it was called Cape *Tormesos* at first. Now the reaon of those usual blustering of Winds and ruff Seas is obvious. For whereas many obserue that seldom any Ship doubles this great Cape without a storm or extreme high Seas, it's for that being the utmost promontory of Africæ toward the South the two great Seas running on either side the Africæ Continent here meet in their current, and the wind being commonly loud here makes them struggle the more violently against each other to the hazard of such Ships as sail there.

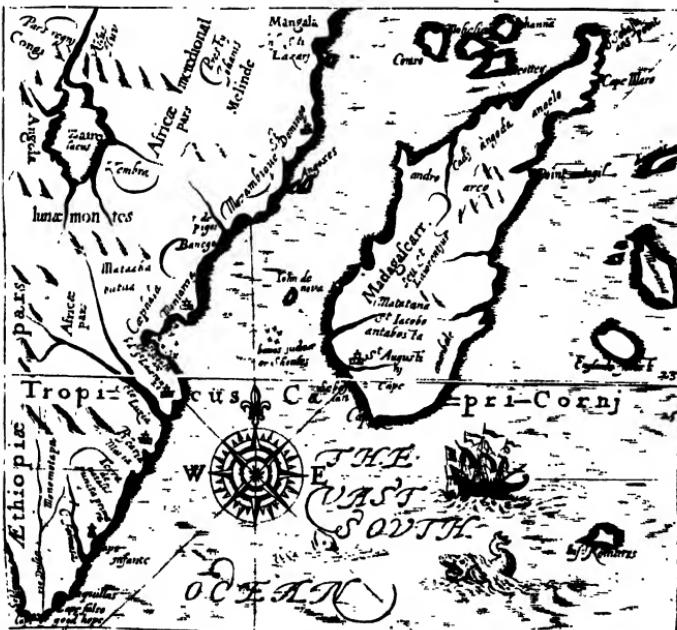
And now the Seas are peaceable, the Air calme, and the Skie serene; let us look about for some Isle or other, that we may discover (if possible) that which *Venetus* (probably from an Optick Glafs upon a Tarraile beyond *Tartary*) decryed about this place; seeing he not only assures us of an Isle, but saw a bird there (if his multiplying glafs deceived him not) so big as a Ship, and so strong as in her Tallons could easily gripe and trus up an Elephant: which mistake of his is as I apprehend taken from what *Aelian* 7. lib. animal. writes concerning flying Dragons in *Ethiopia* which kill Elephants. *Ethiopia* general *Dracones ex certe ad longitudinem quadraginta cubitorum, quos interfectores Elephanorum nonuntur.* *Sirabo* has the like tradition. *Illa parte Ethiopiae, cuius regni caput est Meroc, Elephantes nasci, quibuscum Dracones certant. Eternum, rante sunt magnitudinis Dracones, ut spira caude circumligatus elephanti cruribus, hoc gravi animal precepit ad terram ruens, Draconem uno & eodem tempore, elidat.* In that part of *Ethiopia* of which *Meroc* is head, the chief City of an Isle in the *Nilus* of the same name under 15 degrees) are bred Elephants, with whom Dragons contend. Dragons so large and strong, as foulding the end of their Tayles about the Elephants Legs, they force that heavy Beast headlong to the ground: who yet in his fall crushes the Serpent. Observed by *Sam-
bucus* in his Emblems.

*Sic Elephas stratus complexibus usque Draconis,
Conterit herentem, mole ruensque necat.*

And in regard the *Arabians* mention a very large Bird, bigger than either *Eagle* or *Vultur*, which they call *Rucha*, probably *Marcus Paulus* by an hyperbole may have made it the subject of his fiction. Take his Phantafina in his own expansion, (Nam falsa est veris affinia multa locutus.) *In quadam insula versus Meridiem prope Madagascar, certo Anni tempore apparet mirabilis species Avis, que Ruc appellatur. Aquile quidem habens effigiem, sed immenso magnitudinis: plerasque alarum pennas habet in longitudine continentes duodecim passus, spissitudinem vero ejus proportionem tenere longitudinem, & totum Avi corpus penas*

proportionem respondet. Est etiam tanta fortitudinis, ut sola sine aliquo administriculo Elephansem capiat, & in sublime insollat, atque iterum ad terram cadere sinat, quo carnibus ejus vesci possit. A bird worthy of Geijers knowledge, and may rank it with that Bird Rabbi Kimki calls Zer, which is so monstrous great, as when he spreads his Wings he darkens the Sun : or with those Griffins that guard the Ophrian Mounts of Gold against the Arimafsi (who from winking when they shooe are said to be Monoculi) not seldom from their Scythic holes attempting the conquest of Mammon inclosed in the Rhybeach hills, mountains in Petzora in Russia, as Tostatus ex Rabano, Eschilus, Dionysius and Herodotus would perswade us, Aristens a Greek Poet the first that ever discovered them, is sufficiently derided by Michovius, Those North parts neither having Gold nor Gryphin: Gryphes in illa Septentr. nec in illis Orbis partibus inveniri affirmarim, &c. Let us rest a while upon Madagascar the Empress some think of all the Islands in the Universe.

MADAGASCAR, as called by the Natives; and Sazandib by the Arabs; is by Ptolomy named Menachyas; by M. Paulus Venetus Magister; by Thevetus Albagra; by Mercator Do Cerne; and in insula Sancti Georgii; which he takes from Pliny lib. 6. cap. 31. another bearing that name in the Atlanticque opposite to Mount Atlas, and by some reputed Madera, by others Gratios one of the Azores; and by Tristan d' Acuna the Portuguise (who discouered it Anno Domini 1508.) Saint Laurence, being the Saints day he first viewed it: or else in honour of Laurence Almeida Son of Francis Alm. who was Vice-roy of Goa 1506. and great is the difference in Spanish Writers about the first that landed here. Emmanuel Telero de Meneses anchored here say some two years before d' Acuna; Oforius in his 4. lib. de vita Emanuelis reg. Port. fol. 140 says, that Fernando Suario and Roderigo Frierio Mariners in two Ships, returning from India to Lisbone Anno 1506. accidentally fell upon this Isle, and suffered from the treachery of the savage Inhabitants.



Madagascar (that name sounds best) is unquestionably the greatest Island in the world: for accounting its extent from Cape Roma in the South South-west, to the North North-East point called St. Sebastian, which is from sixteen to six and twenty degrees Antartique latitude, it is not less than 1000. miles; the North end parallels Cuama in Quilon a famous part of Africk, South the great River of Magincis; from Marambique 'tis 45. Leagues, and the Sea betwixt fits with a very strong current: the reputed breadth in some part 230. Oforius says 400. but more certain it is 100. where 'tis narrowest: The air is temperate, save

save when the Sun is in or near the Zenith. The soil in most places is luxuriant, in regard that the Clouds pour down Rain weekly which abates the heat, together with the breezes that fail not in the fore-noon from the Hills, and in the after-noon from the Ocean. So as the ground is fitted both for seed and fruit; in the *Mediterran* parts 'tis thought Gold may be found; but much Wood there is, amongst which store of Ebony; the rivers abound with fish, and it wants not reasonable good Roads and Harbours for Ships to Ride in. Pity that so noble a place and so populous should continue so long uncivilized and corrupted by Mahometism and Gentilism, which as with an impure breath has infected the whole Island.

Maritim Towns and Ports known to us, are *Roma*, *Augustine*, *Antabofa*, *Saint Jacobo*, *Matarama*, *Angoda*, *Ferendo*, *Formoso*, *Anton-gill* and *Junyomar*; the two last are well nigh opposite to each other: but *Augustine* Bay (under our Winter Tropick) and *Anton-gill* (upon the East-side) afford best anchoring: the first, we usually ride at in passing to *Bantam* or Southward, the other home bound is best as Sir James Lancaster *Anno 1600.* made proof of, who rode in 8. fadom water in the bottom of the Bay (a small Isle being behind them to Sea) ozie ground, the place good for vistingalling, the Air quick, and the Natives well conditioned. Howbeit, the *Dutch* at this place two months formerly (through distempers) lost 200. men by Agues and Fluxes, which has made some to report it an unhealthy place: at *Augustine* Bay the variation is 16. degrees.

The whole Isle was lately Tetrarchical, four several Kings swaying their Ebony Scoplers in each Toparchy; jealous each of one anothers greatness. The Maritim Towns and Places are infected with Mahometisme, brought thither with the little trade they have from *Arabia* not longe since; the *Mediterran*, with Gentilisme: Nature abhorring cruelty instructs them to punish murder with death, adultery with publicke shame, theft with banishment. Fishing delights those that live near the Sea, more than tillage; *Thetis* being better accounted of than *Ceres*; if their ignorance in agriculture do not rather so dispoſe it. The Natives are generally strong, active and courageous; the male sort from their infancy practice the rude postures of *Mars*, covering their naked bodies with massive Targets, their right hand brandishing a long but small Azagway or lance of Ebony barbed with Iron, kept bright, and which by exercise they know how to jaculate as well as any People in the Universe: discommendable only in their being imposioned according to the *Ethiopian* custom, *Ethiopum geminata venenis Vulnera in Claudi. & Sagittas inungum, radix quadam mortifera est*, *Theophrast.* They are black, at no time shading their bodies from the parching Sun, but rather delighting to rub and anoint themselves all over with greafe and tallow, proud to see their flesh shone, the stink never offending them: their hair is black, and, contrary to the *Africans*, long, yet curled: the length is held an ornament; they have a few leaves planted about the waist, elsewhere go naked: their ears are bored and wide enough; pinking and cutting the flesh is here in fathion: whiles the better sex seek prey abroad, the women (therein like themselves) keep home and spin: bigamy is tolerated; copulation they affect very early, the youth scarce knowing 12. the maiden 16. years in the world name Virginity. Delighted with sports and novelties; hunting, hawking, fishing, (of which the Isle affords variety) and dancing; in *Meanders* winding, beating and clapping their breasts and hands, their feet iſturning the yielding sands, forces the spectators further off; during which the women with savage harmony, modulating with hands and eyes and observing measure, equal if not exceed the men in their boisterous treadings.

Till of late they knew not Letters. Art being burdensome to Savages, complicates that jeer of *Sophocles*, *Nisi scire nihil jucundius*: howbeit, necessity hath taught them part of the rudiment of Arithmetick when the number ten limited their invention; surpassing the *Mexicans* when number but to six; *Iffo* 1. *Tone* 2. *Tello* 3. *Effad* 4. *Fruo* 5. *Wombla* 6. *Sidda*. 7. *Fondo* 8. *Malo* 9. *Nel* 10. Their speech ever since they embraced *Mahomet* hath (especially upon the Sea-coast) a mixture of *Arabique*; what is spoken over the rest of the Isle differs only in the dialect or various pronunciation. They call Water *Camba*, Bread *Cobra*, Salt *Sira*, Milk *Renova*, a Sheep *Gossee*, a Cow *Angomba*, a Horse *Coma*, Fish *Langora*, a Bow *Hicha*, a Sword *Vira*, a Lance *Loffo*, a Gun *Pingbarra*, a Dart *Fajaro*, an Arrow *Agway*, a Knife *Siffe*, a Horse *Cama*, a Man *Toma*, a Woman *Codez*, an Infant *Topee*, good *chara*, bad *rutter*, yea *miffee*, no *cherifie*. And albeit this character renders these people no other than Savage, let us not contemn them over much, seeing that the most civilized Nations amongst us have in their infancy been no les inculcated, as some render our Ancestors the *Britains*, and what the *Saxon* were observe out of *Tacitus* describing the *Fenni* then inhabiting part of *Germany*: *Populi sunt, quorum mira erat feritatem & feeda paupertas, Non arma, equi nec penates, vultus herba, vestitus pelles, cubile humus, sed in loquitur spuri, quas ferri impia silibus asperant. Venatus viros pariter ac feminas*

feminas albant. Vivebant in silvis, quod beatim arbitrabantur quam ingenero agris vel illaborare domibus, &c. This Isle is rich in minerals and marquisate, Gold, Silver, (and as Edward Lopez) Iron and Copper : The beams or influences of the Heavens, chiefly of the Sun, operating so, as not only the surface but the inward bowels of the Earth (as Sir Francis Bacon observes) when turned up appear impregnate with a masculine spirit of the celestial influences ; for which cause observing the avarice of the *Portugal* they prohibit the use and digging up the earth, contenting themselves rather with useful herbs and grain (of which they have store) than by the Magick of Gold and Pearl to allure the hearts of greedy men, to afford them disturbance, a quality the *Portugal* is as liable to as any other Nation. Against which one well inveighs, in laying

*Not Croesus wealth, nor Babels vast command,
India, Arabia, nor the Seres land
Can speak me rich or happy; if with them
I throw away my more price worthy fame.*

*Nec Babylonis opes, Lydie nec pudera gare,
Indorumque dapes, Serumque Arabumque potentes
Divitias, mallem cum paupertate pudica
Intemerata mori, quan famam impendere vix.*

But, if you would buy any thing the Isle affords (peradventure the Isle it self) you must furnish you with Agats, Heliopatrons, Jasper, and which they value more than all the Diamonds and Pearls in India) long red Cornelian beads, of which they put to high a value, that one string is enough to put them all into combustion : *Horangs* as the Natives call them, they hang them in their ears, and in chains about their necks, being then so brave as all other Ornaments appear to them needless and detestable : And of no small esteem are Bracelets, Copper-chains, or Manellios, Bells and Sabies, triangular Glasses or Fools Paradiis ; and for which (or one Coronion) you have in exchange Sheep, big-tail'd like those in Syria, Buffoles big-horn'd fat and Camel-backt, Antilopes, Red-dear, Leopards, Pards, Goats, Milk, Hens, Eggs, Wheat, Barley, Rice, and Cuscus ; with what Fruit you like, Oranges, Lemons, Limes, Pomegranates, Plantans, Sugar-caness, Ginger, Toddy, Cococs, &c. Here are also Lizards, and Camelions, which *Iſidore* derives from a Camel and a Lion, but in the Greek is a little Lion, which it resembles not so much in shape (for it is a very lean deformed beast) as condition. it is an old and vulgar opinion, that it feeds upon the air, which cannot be, seeing the air feeds not, for what we be fed by must be subject to touch, which air is not. Camelions will lick up Flies, Beetles, and the like, and that very dexterously. Nevertheless the Camelion (the Hieroglyphic of a dissembler) take thus from *Aelius*.

*She always gapes, she eats the slender air,
Changing her looks, she varies colour's rare.
Even so the Flatterer applauding feeds,
Claring his Princes most opprobrious deeds.*

*Semper hiat, semper tenuem qua vesicunt Auram;
Et mutat faciem, varius sumitque colores,
Sic & adulator populari vesicunt Aura,
Et solum mores imitatur principis atro.*

With which Seneca agrees, *Contra morsum Sycophantis nullum est remedium*. Salamanders here be also, a sort of Lizard extreme cold by Nature, whence (like Ice) for some time they endure the fire, yea (if little) extinguish it as Aristotle affirms; yet by trial we find that they will quickly be burnt if the fire be powerful. Howbeit *Quintus Serenus* reports otherwise.

The Salamander endures fire without danger.

Seu Salamandra potens nullique obnoxia flammis.

Commonly they obscure themselves in moist and unbragious places, so as when they appear they are sure presages of a storm approaching ; their teeth and tongues are venomous, but the other parts may be eaten without danger. The French have this Proverb,

*If e're the Salamander hap to bite thee,
Thy Coffin and thy winding Sheet irrest thee.*

*Si mordu t'a une Aritsade,
Pren's ton linceul & la biffade;*

Venenum Salamandi tam grave, ut si arborem setigis, poma omnia veneno tetromino inficit ; & qui ex eius edam subito emoriuntur. Plin. l. 29. c. 4. So exceeding venomous, that if they do but touch an Apple-tree, it infects the fruit, and poisons those that eat them. My *vale-dictum* shall be this, The land seems to mourn to see it self trod upon by a people so much estranged from God and Virtue : in discontent, as it were, concealing useful Treasures, making unuseful so many Ports, obscured so far beyond her merit ; albeit seated so advantagiously for Traffick with all the World, as both the Indies seem possible

to be awed by her; and to command those golden Countries of *Mozambi*, *ue*, *Quiloa*, *Soffala*, *Mombassa*, *Mazadexa*, *Zimba*, *Melinde*, and other maritim Isles and parts of *Egizimba* that neighbour this Isle, most of them discovered Anno 1500. by *Vasco de Gama*, and subjected to the Crown of *Portugal*; proffering also many other petty Islands under her, as those of *Cumbe*, *Primero*, *Majacrenas*, *Affada*, *Castle Isle*, *Moritius*, *Dygarrois*, and *Englands Forreft*, which as it were environ, and in a sort defend her upon occasion, so as she seems to sit as Empress amongst them.

Nine leagues from *Mudagascar* (being upon a North East course) we had well nigh (for want of heed) run upon the shoals of *Judea*; lands memorably dangerous since *Annius a French-man* here perished; our variation was 13 degrees, 18 minutes from the Cape: Hence we steered North East and by East, aiming at *Mohatu*. 'By the way one of our Men took a *Shark* (a Man-eating Fish, who scidome mils the Hook out of greediness) 9 foot she was in length, and a half, by the Rule; I speak it in this respect, we found in her paunch five and fiftie young ones, every Fish a foot long (too in our ship saw it.) This ravenous Fish ('tis credibly reported) Spawn not like other Fishes, but Whelp like Bittines, and as *Rich. Hawkins* witnesseth, in flotms, or dark Nights, receive their young ones into their belly for security: that Night we sailed merrily by the *Majacrenas*, a Cuarebdis in 21 degrees, var. 13 and 17 minutes; where suspecting no danger, and the wind favouring, we were about ten at Night thrown (by the secret force of an insensible Current) upon the shoals of *Mozambique*; so as sounding (where we thought we had a 1000 fathoms) the Lead found bare eight: A wise Seaman chuses rather to yield unto a storm, or other accident, than seek his ruine; and when he cannot steer his right course, will turn to any other point for preservation: for here the wind was high and the sea rough, & *cumulus immans a plurim In monis speciem* was here true; the Moon was also clouded; then it stood our Captain upon to give speedy notice (for that Night he bore the light in his Main-top) which was accordingly done by the echo of two roaring Culverins, which warned our Fleet, and were guided by our Lantern to tack about, so as all the Fleet lowring their Top-sails, hovered till day-light might help us by discovery: at our second sounding we had 14 fathoms, 12, 15, and 14, after that; then we had 22, 24, 33, 35, and 40 fathoms upon further sounding; by which we saw the Lord in mercy had (as by a Tareld) directed our course from out of those dreadful Iats. of Death, where notwithstanding our Hydrographic cards (if his providence, which let us ever imagine, had not prevented) in half an hours sail further we had doubtless been cast away most miserably: for future caution accept this Distich.

— Cave sis ibi tu sorbente charybdi,
Nam neque Neptunus pollet tibi teiro salutem.

From us learn to avoid that deadly sand,
Where Neptune cannot lend a helping hand.

Capr. Saris found the current here much more to his disadvantage, for notwithstanding a fair gale fill'd all his sails, and that his course was afore the wind, the current was so strong, as in 24 hours forced the ship 70 miles back; withal being so dreadful, that the Sea raged and seemed disturbed as it is under *London-brides*, and the froth made him doubt it was nole water, but sounding, he found 100 fathoms. Experience teaches that from that *Cape de Bonae Esperanza* the current is strongly Westward: from *Cape de Coricias* to the Aquinoctial line the *Afrique* shore is for the most part called *Melinde*, a Country abounding in Fruits, Corn, and Minerals; by *Pilny* call'd *Sinus Trogloditicus*, *Barbaricus* by others. Upon this Coast are stote of Fruits, Flowers, Plants, and Herbs, Cattel of all sorts, and in plenty. Amongst the rest are stote of wild Hogs which the Natives hunt and eat, unless Mahometans, for the Flesh is exceeding dainty; but of most request is a Stone oft-times found in their Maw. *Pietra del Porco* the Spaniard calls it, a Stone very sovereign against Poisom, and other Maiadies. The Vertue (as supposed) is from their feeding upon the Herbs and Drugs which the Earth puts forth there plentifully, and in great variety. As we past along, *John de Novo*, *Primero* and other dangerous Isles invironed us: Under 17 deg. 37 min. lat. 20 deg. 26 min. long. cape var. 13 deg. 52 min. the current sets South West. At day-break we were close by the Peninsula *Mozambique*, a part of the great Kingdom of *Zanzaber*, in which also is *Mombassa* and *Quila*, not far distant from that Cape or Promontory which *Ptol.* calls *Prasum*, twixt which and the other Cape-land called *Raptum* the people in his time were Men-eaters, and at this the Negros are little better. Heretofore, and as yet I think, it abounds with the best of Merchandise, as Gold, Silver, Elephants-teeth and Amber-greene. A Fort of good strength was here raised by the *Portugall* Anno 1500. soon after the Conquest thereof; who both all along this South African and the East Indian coasts

coast have Towns and fortified places, where they have several Colonies for their better Plantation. At a small distance *Mozambique* appeared in this shape unto us as we passed by it.



Which we scarce lost sight of, when an Armado of Dolphins compassed us; a Fish *Dolphins* incredible for celerity and quickness of sight, but unlike the Porcupine, which some nevertheless take for the true Dolphin.



Such we salted as we could entice to taste our Hooks or Fisgigs: it is no bigger than a Salmon, it glitters in the Ocean with variety of beautiful colours; has few scales: from its swiftness and spirit metonymically surnam'd the Prince and Arrow of the Sea: celebrated by many learned Pens in sundry Epithets; *Philambropos* for affecting Men, and *Monogamoi* for their turtle constancy; generated they be of sperme, nourish like Men, imbrace, join, and go great 10 months. *In faciem versi dulces celebrant hymeneos Delphines, similes hominis complexibus herent*: a careful Husband over his gravid associate, detesting incest, abhorring bigamy, tenderly affecting Parents, whom when 300 years old they feed, and defend against hungry Fishes; and when dead (to avoid the Shark and like marine Tyrants) carry them ashore, and there (if Aristotle, Elyan, and Pliny erre not) inhumed and bedew their Sepulchres: they were glad of our company, as it were affecting the light and society of Men, many hundred miles in an eager and unwearyed pursuit frisking about us; and as a Poet observ'd,

*On every side they leap and dew their fin,
Advance from Sea and bath again therin;
In sport, and measured dances, nimbly fling
Themselves, whilst Seas do from their Nostrils spring.*

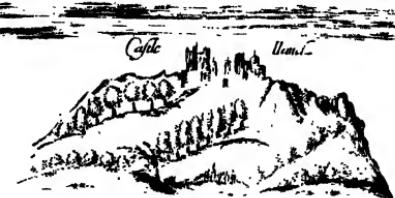
*Undique dant faltus, multaque aspergne rotant,
Emergentq; iterum, redeuntq; sub aquora rufus;
Inque chori ludunt speciem, lascivamq;
Corpora; & acceptum patulis mact naribus.*

Six leagues North East from the last land, we descried another Isle full of Palmeto Trees; the current here set us 20 leagues forward in 24 hours, the latitude of this Isle was 16 degrees and an half, longitude 21 deg. and 28 min. thus shaped as we sailed by it.



The 7. of September we descried more land, which proved *Meyottey*, one of the Isles of *Chmoro*, seated to the North of *Madagascar*. Towards the East it rose very high as we sailed by it, where it mounts into a pyramid, which doubtless has a large aspect into the Ocean.

Ocean. Its latitude is 12. degrees 56. minutes South, and longitude 23. degrees 59. minutes; in this shape profering it self unto my Table book as we passed by it.



These Isles are five in number, called the Isles of Cumrbo; either because *Cumrbo* (or *Cumr-yne* the Welchmens Isle) is greater than the rest, or that it was first discovered: named *Cumrbo*, *Mortis*, *Joanna*, *Mobelia*, and *Gazidia*: by others *John de Castro*, *Spirito Santo*, *Santo Christoforo*, *Anguzeria* and *Mayotto*: call them praiseworthy for refreshing Passengers, in that they abound with delicate fruits, and such cattel as are commended and had at easie prices: none of these Isles be above a hundred miles about. *Cumrbo* is the highest and best land, but branded with the most perfidious people: the good reason I have to say so, for An. 1591. thirty of our men being amicably ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ the shore out of the ~~sun~~ ^{sun} for water and other refreshment, were treacherously slain by the Inhabitants; since which they are justly suspected, and seldom traffiqued with, but in case of necessity. *Joanna* is inhabited by a better people, and to be confidet. Here was buried *Galvano* a Gentleman dispatch by *Don Alphonso K. of Portugal* for the discovery of *Prestor Johns Country*, as Fryer *Fran. Alvarez* writes, who but improperly makes this to be an Isle belonging to the *Red sea*. It lately obeyed a Queen, but now submits unto a King; who though tyrannical, yet better so (as *Tacitus* says) than where it is anarchical: to these Isles we sent our boats a shoar, which returned loaden with Buffols, Goats, and variety of Fruits, in that exigent very heartily welcomed. And though our Rendezvous be now in sight, suffer me (whiles in memory) to tell you of a fish or two which *Tortoise*. in these Seas were obvious. The Sea Tortoise is one, a fish not much differing from those at land, her shell only being something flatter; by overturning they are easily taken; some we took, for a paime more than food, and upon trial found that they taste waterish and dispose to fluxes; they have neither tongue nor teeth, superabound in eggs, in those we took some having near 2000. pale and round, and not easily made hard though extreamly boiled: they cover their eggs with sand and are hatched by the heat of the Sun, as some alirm; such as have strong appetites eat them and the flesh (or fish as you please to call it) but by the Levitical-law it was forbidden; and though our Religion consents not in ceremonies (ending in the prototype) yet except famine or noveltie invite, with such cates my pallat craves not to be refreshed. The Mammatee is the other fish, being *Mammatee*. good meat, and from their using the shoar have a fleshy taste resembling Veal both in shew and eating; the entrails differ little from that of a Cow, from whom in respect of *Cow-fish*. phisnomy some so name her: her face is like a shriveled Buffolo or Cow, her eyes small and round, gums hard instead of teeth: but the stome that is generated in her head is most valuable, being Sovereign (as some report) against choleric astut, stone-cholick and dysenterie; so it be beat small, infused in Wine, and drunk saffting: the body of this fish is three yards long, and one yard broad, thick skin'd, without scales, narrow towards the tail which is nervous, slow in swimming wanting fins; in place whereof he is aided with two paps, which are not only suckles, but serve for stilts to creep a shoar upon when he grazes, where he sleeps long delighted to suck the cool air, unable (contrary to other watery inhabitants) to be half an hour under water: a docile fish and apt to be made tame, famoused (like Lizards) for their love to man, whose face they delight to look upon and in weakness have refreshed them; though most unhappy to our Captain *Andrew Evans*, who striking one at the *Moritius* with his harping-iron, and leaping into the Sea to make short work with his Steleto, was so cruft by the *Mammatee* who circled him that he dyed shortly after, as in our description of Saint *Helena* where we intombed him, will in due place be remembered.

The Carvel. The Carvel is a Sea-fome, floating upon the surface of the Ocean, of a globous form, like so many lines throwing abroad her strings, which she can spread at pleasure, angling for small Fishes, which by that artifice she captivates: a Sea-spider she may properly be called, for when she finds her Web too weak she blows an infectious breath, and seems armed with such a stine, as if she had borrowed it from the Scorpion.

Septem.

September 11. we rode in 25 fathoms, the ensuing morn wafting nearer shore we drop it again in 17, and so came to an Anchor at the West-side of *Mobelias*, a Bow-shot from a small Village of Straw unworthy the notice, though by the Inhabitants called *Mariawgyw*; governed by a *Sha-bander*, *Alicus-ry* by name, a black big-bon'd Man, a Mahometan by profession, sly and crafty in bartering his Victuals and Fruit for Commodities.



MOHELIA elevates the Pole Antartick 12 degrees 15 minutes; has longitude from the Meridian of the Cape of *good Hope* 24 deg. variation of the Compas's 16 deg. 20 min. and is about 60 miles in circuit: the Maritim parts of the Isle rise gently, the inland parts mount high and appear woody. A little Village here and there we saw scattered; the Housies are of Reeds and Straw, such as are made in Infant Plantations and fitted to such a torrid climate. *Moella* some pronounce this Isle, *Molala* others, and *Mal-Iba* or *Bad-Ile*, as a Countryman of ours fancied; an incongruity, that from a Spanish resemblance so sweet a place should be disparaged.

From *Madagascar* *Mobelias* is removed about 50 leagues towards the South East, from *Quiloa* in the *Africk* continent under 10 degrees, 60. from *Cimro S. E.* 14 leagues, and 10 E. and by S. from *Johanna*; the Inhabitants are a mixture of Mahometans and Gentiles, to whom the Sun is a principal Deity; the Sun (saith *Solomon*, *Fest. 11. 7.*) is a pleasant thing to behold, but not to worship. Howbeit the *Portugall* has of late preach Christ here, but have few Proselytes; some fragments of their Language I took so well as I could from their own Idioms. A King is *Sultan*, Bracelets *Areombo*, a Hen *Coyuo*, an Ox *Gumbe*, Coco-nuts *Sejavoye*, Plantains *Figo*, a Goat *Buze*, an Orange *Tudub*, a Lemon *Demon*, Water *Mage*, Paper *Carrafa*, a Needle *Sinzano*, &c. a milh-malh of *Arabick* and *Portuguese*.

The People are perfect black, the Sun drawing the Blood to the outward parts, where-as we observe the extream heat of Fire makes pale only by licking the Spirits up; notwithstanding the Negroes may aptly be repured sanguine and ruddy, if so be their jetty skins would but suffer the discovery. To our Eyes we may, with the *Spaniard*, say, *Son todos mos Negros, como Cucros*, they are all as black as Ravens. This extream blackness some say proceeds not so much from the soil or heat of the Sun, as it does from the Seed extracted from accursed *Cham*, which some fondly imagin to be black; others ascribe the cause to external heat and internal cold, his concomitant; for by how much heat any receives externally from the ardency of the Sun, his internal heat is proportionably abated, the Sun attracting that heat and moisture makes him inwardly cold and dry, both colour and complexion usually proceeding out of the variety of heat and cold; but whether any of these be the efficient cause of their blacknes, and how properly to be argued from the phisiognomy, accidents of the body, and different operations and temperature of several climes, is more fit for Naturalists in their speculations to determine, than a Traveller, who only relates his observations. To return, These *Mobelians* have big Lips, flat Noses, sharp Chins, large Limbs, and in mode affecting *Adam's* garb, for a few Plantain-leaves circling their Wastes, vails their modest parts; nevertheless they are cut and pinkt in several works upon their duretto Skins, Face, Arms, and Thighs, striving to exceed each other in variety. Now this difference from us in colour and garb was to either, a deformity; our habit and white complexion being as strange and unpleasent to these Negroes, as their blacknes was to us. In every colour, that being only fair, that pleases. The *Meccon* zealists have here a few poor Mosques, and of course materials, no better than Straw and Bambo's without, but matted neatly within, admitting no entrance with Shoos on. Some of the Natives are doublets magical, and this reason I give for it; Another Gentleman and my self one evening sitting under a Tree to avoid a storm (for at that time it thundreded and rained excessively) a *Negro* stood by us trembling, whom we could see now and then lift up his Hands and Eyes, muttering his black Art as we apprehended, to some Hobgoblin; but (when we least suspected) skipt out, and as in a lymphatick



apture unsheathe'd a long skean or knife which he brandish't about his head seven or eight
ies, and after as many muttering spells put it up again ; then kisst the earth three times ;
. which done he rose, and upon a sudden the Skie cleared and no more noise affrighted us.

Two Kings of late commanded these People, *Phancomal* and *Synal-beg* by name ; the
one a Native, the other an Arabian ; both made great by their wives, the daughters
of *Sultan* : *herib Bobbocharee* and *Nanna-galle* who were alive about 20. years since. The
two Kings, envious of one anothers greatness) live at defiance, the poor Savages pay-
ing dearly for their ambition ; and the sisters (whom Nature has united) burn neverthe-
less in envy against each other and exasperate their husbands, so as 'tis thought one of
them will down the stream ere long, seeing the proverb holds that

*Non bene cum sociis
Regna Veniique manent.*

*Lovi and Scepters ill agree,
To admist Society.*

And albeit we had at Sea when we were becalm'd extream heats, yet here the weather
was piety temperate. Now by the long lives the people have in the torrid Zone and
excellency of their fruits which both for largenes and goodness surpass those we taste in
Spain or other warm parts of *Europe*, that Opinion of the Ancient Philosophers, that
to live within this Zone was not to be endured, is exploded. For they consider'd not
how much the heat is abated in regard that within the torrid Zone the days and nights
are for the greatest part of the year almost equal, so as the coolness of the night allwa-
ges the heat of the day; the Mountains in those parts also being very high are in many
places covered with Snow, which refrigerates the earth ; and the neighbouring Ocean
(being like other waters of a cold temper) qualifies the Air ; the breezes likewise and
fit winds and rains which seldom fail at some time every day (especially when the Sun is
in or near its vertical point) abates the heat, as doth the rarity of the air, which in the
torrid Zone admits not of so many degrees of heat, as where the air is thick and gross,
as we could perceive it is in the temperate Zone, such times especially as the Sun ap-
proaches

proaches either Tropique; all which put together may sufficiently evince, that it is not only habitable, but the lands within that torrid Zone be healthy and (by reason of the excellency of most sorts of Fruit) very delicious.

Tabaco is here in plenty and good account, not strong nor rowl'd but weak and *Tabaco*. leafie; suckt out of long Canes called hubble-bubbles; Sneezing-powder also is not more frequent with the Irish or Spaniard than Areç (by Arabs and Indians called *Tauffer* and *Saparee*) is with these Savages: Arecca (resembling the Nutmeg, the Tree the Toddy) is not used along, for they usually add to it Betel a kind of basford pepper, (which like Ivie involves the Areç, that hatli neither flower nor juyce) and burnt Oyster-shells, whereby it becoms a chalky substance; found good in the operative property, for it discolors their white teeth to a pure crimson; perfumes the breath, kills worms, intoxicates the brain, dries rheums, helps nature, and begets an appetite. I am no Physician, therefore if I erre, blame the interpreter. The Isle accommodated us with many useful things, as Buffols, Goats, Turtles, Hens, huge Batts, Camelions, Rice, Peas, Cufcus, Honey; and the Sea with Breams, Cavalloes, Oysters, Mother of Pearl, and good Pearl too 'tis probable if dived for: we had also Toddy, Cocos, Plantains, Oranges, Lymes, Pomcitrions, Ananas, Cowcumbers, Sugar-canæs and Tamarind, a red Indian Date; an Isle so verdant all the year long, (for few days but a gentle breeze or shower of rain bedew the Earth, and lenifie the flaming Sun) as it is attired in *Flora's* Summer livery, yea constantly robed with Natures best Arras; and silver purling streams makes it so pleasante as we may parallel it with that proud Paradise of *Alcinoe* Poets have so liberally commended, this having *Campos ubi sol totumque per annus Durat apica dies, &c.*

Of fruits we will select but three, yet such as may merit your acceptance.

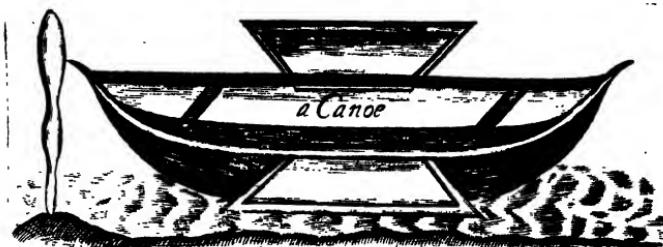
The Plantain (for taste and odour second to none) is a fruit so good and vailed with so broad a leaf that *Goropis* perswades us *Adam* offended in eating it, and with the leueves made his transgression manifest; being the same sort were by the discoverers brought *Moses* out of *Canaan* says he, but that they were Grapes we are assured in *Numb.* 13. 23. by the Arabians it is called *Mula-mawm*, and *Pican* by the Indians: they hang in clufters like beans upon a branch or stalk, their shape is long and round, not unlike a fausage; if they peel off the rind, the fruit appears of a gold yellow and is relift like a *Windfor* Pear, so delicious that it melts in ones Mouth leaving a delightful gust, 'tis good for urine but bad for fluxes (meeting with crude stomachs) and if too liberally eaten disposes to dysenteries.

The Coco (another excellent fruit) is covered with a thick rind; equal in bigness to a Cabbage; some resemble the shell to the skull of a man, or rather a Deaths Head; like eyes, nose and mouth, being easily discerned; *intus vita!* within we find better than the out-side promised; yielding a quart of Ambroise, coloured like new white Wine, but far more aromatick tasted; the meat or kernel like other nuts cleaves to the shell and is not easily parted; the pith or meat is above an Inch thick, and better relift than our Philberts, enough to satiate the appetite of two reasonable men. It has other excellencies: The Tree (which is straight and lofty, not branching save at the very top, where it spreads in a beautifying plume or palm rather, the Nuts like pendants adorning them) is good for timber, and of which they make Canooes, Mafts and Anchors; the rind is dreft like flax, and serves for Sails, Mattresses, Cables and Linnen; the shell for furniture; the meat for victual: the leaves for tents or thatching; rare blessings! take them contracted in that excellent Poem of my Cosen *Herbert late Cambridge Orator*:

————— The Indian Nut alone
Is cloathing, meat and trencher, drink and can,
Boat, Cable, Sail, Maſt, Needle, all in one.

The Toddy Tree is not unlike the Date or Palm, the Wine or Toddy is got by wound-*Toddy*. ing or piercing the tree, and putting a Jar or Pitcher under, so as the liquor may distil into it; at the very top it has a pulpe which boil'd eats like a Colli-flower, but being cropt the tree dies, the foul or life confisiting in it; these (as the Dates) thrive not except at some certain time the florring male and female be united, at least have growth near to each other, natural instinct hath such a sympathy or force over both sensitive and vegetive to effect their kind. Toddy for colour resembles Whey, but taſts like Rhenish; at first draught it is uncouth, but every draught taſts better than other; a little makes men merry, much inebriates: in the morning it is found laxative; in the evening coſtive; at midnight dangerous. Of this, as of the Coco, *Herodotus* and *Pliny*

Pliny give this Eulogy, *Ex quibus, panem, mel, vimum, acetum & vestrum conficiunt.* To conclude, these are bought with little charge, thirty Oreges or Lemons the Blacks exchange for a sheet of Paper; for two sheets ten Coco-nuts; an Ox for a piece of eight; a Goat for six-pence. Ships they have none, nor Boats, but Canoos hewed out of one stump, yet capable to receive three Men; and if they sink, their swimming helps them; and though of little use with us, yet for rarity sake accept what by this draught may better be apprehended.



The 15. of September we bad farewell to *Mobelias*, by benefit of a fair gale that fill'd all our sails, plowing up the yielding Ocean. The long billows made us dance apace, yet without dread; seeing the Marines made so good use of this advantage, as in four days more by observation we found our selves but four degrees from the *Aequinoctial*. I may not forget, how that this Night being the 19. of Sept. the Ocean (for about ten leagues space) through which we sailed was white as Snow, contrary to the usual colour which resembled a serene or azure Firmament. This (as one observes) is *inter aquarum miracula commemoranda dignum*. But how this came to pass I enquired of the Master of the Ship, but little to satisfaction; for all he could say for solution, was, that in this latitude others sailing upon that point of the Compass had obscryed the like; what other cause there was they could not tell, seeing the Sea was exceeding deep and smooth, and no disturbance by wind to curl the waves, or to make it frothy. That Sea-water when it rests is black, white when it moves, because when the beams of light pass not streight 'tis dark, but when smooth pass streight, seeing splendor hath a degree of whiteness, the Lord *Verulam* tells us. Howbeit this whiteness may rather happen through a subtle intermixture of Air with Water; seeing that two diaphanous Bodies intermixt, their optique portions in a simple order equally placed do constitute whiteness; for proof whereof, some Examples we have; the water near *Glaucia* in *Milana* is reported to be white; in *Idumæa* also is a Fountain that at some time of the year is white. Also *Gasper Balbi* the *Venitian* sailing through the *Persian Gulph*, reports, that betwixt *Ormus* and *Diu* he found the Sea milk-white, which we did not. *Andreas Corsinius* informs, that in some part of the *East Indian Ocean* the water for 100 leagues is white. *Peter Martyr* affirms the like concerning the *West Indian Seas*. Now Seas there are, I acknowledge, which have their names from divers colours, as *Mare Rubrum* the Red-sea, the name rather than colour giving the denomination; *Mare Nigrum* or Black, so the *Euxin*; *Mare Album* or White-sea, so the *Archipelago* is called, the Ocean is *Ceruleum* or Blew; *Yellow Eridanus*; the colour is Green in the narrow Seas; but *Virgil* tells us of a *Mare Purpureum*, for so he terms the *Adriaticque*, l. 4. *Georg.* which is rarelt. But concerning this White-sea, (Capt. *Sara* gives a pretty conjecture; Sailing between *Madagascar* and *Zeylon* (at or Near this place) in a dark night suddenly there happened a gleam of light, so bright that he could easily read by it. Amazed he was at this alteration; but at length perceived it was occasioned by a number of Fish, whose glittering shells made that artificial light in the night, and gave the Sea a white reperculion: this was accidental: now seeing these watry Citizens are seldom resident long in any one place, it may well be presumed that the discolouring of the water upon this occasion will hardly appear so in that degree to other Passengers, unless they should encounter the like accident: or why do not the like gleams happen elsewhere considering their motion? But seeing 'tis found that about this very Latitude and place the Sea is constant to this whiteness, it cannot be referred to that cause; but as it is occult, I leave the further scrutiny to such as are curious in Natures secrets.

Having

Having a fair gale still, next day we made the Sun our Zenith; in which latitude and position we coasted along that rich and famous part of South *Afrique*, now called *Soffala*; part of *Egizimba* of old, where the *Portugal* has a considerable Castle and Fort that sufficiently awes the Negros; and with good reason, seeing that Land has store of Gold: From whence *Vertomanus*, *Volaterranus*, and from them *Oriens* labour to persuade the World how that this was *Ophir*; yea, *David Kimchi* a learned *Rabbi*, albeit he name not *Soffala*, nevertheless he places *Ophir* in South *Afrique*; to oppose whom, I bring *Iosephus*, as well read as himself, who is of opinion that *Ophir* was part of the *East-Indies*, of which judgment are Saint *Hierome*, *Phil. Jud. Aricola*, and many more; and theirs is best as I suppose; for if *Soffala* were the place, it being so near a Neighbour to *Ezionghedor* the Port in *Edom* where *Solomon's* *Ophirian*-fleet used to ride, we can see no reason, notwithstanding the use of the Compas was not then known, why they should make it a three years Voyage, our Ships with a fair wind usually reaching it within one month, which if they should be bound to tide within ken of Land all the way, little longer time would compass it. Nor are there Peacocks and such other rarities there as be mentioned in the *Paradis*. Moreover, albeit there were two *Havilas* in Scripture, the one Grandson of *Cham*, the other a descendant from *Sem*; yet was there but one *Ophir*, who with *Havila* (*Jollans Son*) all Authors do agree planted themselves in the *East-Indies* soon after the confusion of *Babel*; which place from its distance and greatest plenty of Gold there had, best excuses so long a Voyage. Neighbouring that is *Mombassa* a small Isle under 3 deg. 50 min. South, subdued also to the Crown of *Portugal* by *Almeida* in the year of our Lord 1505. to which joins *Mazadoxe*, which has 3 deg. and to it *Zanzibar*, *Para*, and *Brava*, places very hot sometimes in regard the Equinoctial cuts them; the shore thence tends towards *Barnagasso*, a Port once under the great *Neguz*, whotill of late held all that long tract of Land in subjection which runs from *Cape Guardafuso* to *Suachem*.

That all those Maritim Countries which verge upon the Ocean have been (especially since *Vasco de Gama's* time, which was *Anno 1400.*) discovered and traded to, both along the West and South sides of *Afrique*, is unquestionable; but the Mediterranean parts are not under that capacity. *Ptol.* as accurate in Geography as any of the Ancients, was totally ignorant of the utmost extent of *Afrique* to the south, beyond the *Garamans*; so as he draws his *Terra firma* only to 10 degrees South from the Equator; unable to penetrate so far Southward as his own Country River *Nilus* springs: albeit, supposititious he derives it from the *Luna montes* under 15 degrees South, which has palt for currant with succeeding Ages. But that any have Valley answerable to their heighth, for the heighth of these Mountains of the Moon, *Sphaera Luna ferre attingat*, saith *Olympiodorus*; or that the depth of the Valleys should keep proportion is not easily credited, yet are they said to be *tam immense profunditatis ut illic Centrum Terra videatur*; or that any hitherto ever saw those Mountains of the Moon, or *Zembre*, or *Zayre*, supposed to be a Lake in circuit equal to *Palus Maeotis*, I have not yet met with: albeit, enough have taken it for granted, that such there are; but with the same *historica fides*, we believe the imaginary lines and signs in the Globe Celestial. But to come nearer to our station; under little more certainty do I reckon those formal descriptions of the Territories of this supposed mighty potentate *Prester John*, concerning whom the Romish emissaries have spoken liberally; and though I am as free as any to allow them their due reward for the infinite toil and hazard they have undergone *sub specie fidei propaganda* (as in story they give abundant testimony, both in *Afrique* and *Asia* the great) nevertheless, I dare not lay *'tis pia fraude*; but, both by what I have observed and learnt, find that they have asum'd too great a liberty in blazoning the succels of their labours, and withal of invention: but leaving every one to his own credulity, I shall only (but with sub-mission) give my present apprehension of this *Abassin Emperor*, who like himself is too much veiled and obscured; for, notwithstanding that he is exhibited to the World under several appellations, as *Prester John* (that being their usual Name, since they deserted the other of *Philip*) he is call'd *Aiscil Abassi* by the *Moors*, of his own People *Accue* and *Neguz*; and for power suppos'd not inferior to the greatest Princes of the World, able *Decies centum milia hominum ad bellum instrucere*, saith *Maginus*; and of such wealth as appears by offering the *Portugal* a million of Gold to aid him against his Adversaries: and for extent of Dominion, Northward stretching as far as *Nubia*, and the confines of *Egypt*; Eastward to the *Red sea* and the *Barbarique Gulph*, as far as *Ajaman* and *Dangali*, Kingdoms within the *Aethiopia exterior*; Southward to the *Luna* Mounds, and West as far as *Nilus Niger* (the two greatest Rivers in *Afrique*) and *Manicongo*; so as his Empire consisting of seventy Kingdoms tributary and subordinate, in a fort extends to either Tropique,

Tropique, divided by the Äquinoctial, under or near which is *Amara* his chief Fort, and comprehended totally within the burning Zone: that vast tract or scope of land commonly comprising those parts which *Ptol.* and other ancient Cosmographers termed *Æthiopia sub Egypto*, the *Troglodite* and *Cinamonifera*, regions now known by the Name of *Caffaria*, *Goyane*, *Bagamdra*, *Tigremabon*, *Burnagafso*, &c. and himself said to descend from *Masqueda the Sabean Queen* that gave *Solomon* an affectionate visit, which made her People Jewish Proselytes; after converted unto Christ by *Candace's Eunuch*, or by *Saint Thomas* the Apostle of the Orient; which profession they have ever since continued: but in what Age transplanted from *Arabia* to *Africk*, uncertainly storied. I must nevertheless adhere to my former scruple, as to the description we have of those several Kingdoms and Provinces usually attributed to him in his Titles: Not that I deny there is such a Christian Prince in that part of *Afrique* (albeit the Epithete we give, more probably belongs to another Nestorian Prince of *Tenduc*, part of *Cathaya* or *Syria extra Imaum*) but have some doubt (& qui dubitat neganti est proximus) of the considerableness of his power as well as of the description made by Frier *Alvarez*, who *Anno 1520.* having buried his Comrade *Galvano* at *Cimbro*, travelled to most parts of this Empire; a story so well credited by *Ramusius* as induced him to illustrate his relation with Cuts in Bras: For, were he a Prince of that force and extent of Dominion as I have above mentioned, is it probable he would suffer himself to be shut up and confin'd to the most storching and unpleasent parts of *Afrique*? where the greatest part is rowling sands, which permit no foundation of Towns nor long stations; howbeit his vagrant course of life, and inhabiting in Tents after the old *Numidian* manner will partly excuse that; but to be pen'd in without any intercourse with the *Red-sea* or *Egijimban* Ocean, which would render him a more puissant Prince, give him the advantage of Trade and access to his Country, and better associate him with Christian Kings and States, make his supposed greatness very dubious; for if what we read be true, that of late years the naked unwarlike Savages (whom the *Portugals* make little account of) have totally forced him from the Ports and Comunids he had upon the *Egijimban* coasts in *Æthiopia inferior*, from the Kingdom of *Adell* which stretches to *Cape Guardafui*.



(*Aromata in Ptol.*) in which the City *Zeyla* stands near unto that Bay called *Sinus Aavilites*, as we find expressed in *Ptol.* 4. Table of *Afrique*; from *Magadoxo*, *Mombazza*, and places near *Mozambique*, which doublets were of greatest value to him, both in reference to the Sea, and Gold thofe parts afford abundantly; but also *Sultan Solymann* the Turkish Emperor *Anno* 1558, expell'd him out of *Ercocco* and *Snachen*, the only Ports he had upo. the Red-sea; and the King of *Dallaya*, the like from what other Territories he had which gave him any paffage thither; we may well question his power and extent of Empire, and give it equal credit we do the Library the *European Friars* found in the Castle of *Amara*, where among the rest were some Manuscripts of *Enoch* and *Livy*. But I have said perhaps too much of this *Abassin*, a Name either given him in relation to his pontifical habit, for the Hebri, and *Vox Persica* signifie Father, or flowing from *Abrei*, with which Title and Ceremony *Joseph* was honour'd amongst the *Egyptians*; or otherwise taken from the principal River of the Country *Abas*, *Astabus* of old, springing from the Lake *Barema*; albeit, some derive it from a Coptic word, which signifieth a scattered Generation. Assuredly under no les (if not greater) ignorance are we of all that great space of ground which lies betwixt the supposed Southermost part of *Prester John's* Country and the Cape of *good Hope*, which is not at all discovered, partly by reason of the great and uninhabited Deserts those parts without doubt afford, excessive heat and other distemperature of weather when the Sun approaches the *Equinoctial*, penury of the Soil, rowling Sands, noisome Serpents, and wild Beasts of all sorts; but principally the truulent and perfidious disposition of the Inhabitants rendering the Enterprize (any considerable distance from the shore) scarce poſſible; so that 'tis no wonder, if as to the true knowledge of those Savage parts we rest still under an invincible ignorance; which would not be, had those *Abassin* Christians, who are report'd to be an ingenious and civil People, that voicing in the *Luna Montes*, *Zembre*, &c. is commonly credited. Nay more, I may say the like concerning much of that part of the World which had Neighbourhood with the firſt Seminary after that univerſal Deluge wherein *Noah* was preserved, we now call *Scythia extra Imaum*; for albeit 'tis true that *Vertomanus*, *Flancarpio*, and his fellow Monk *M. Paulus Venetus*, and ſome others, have profum'd to give us a plenary maſteſtation of *Serica regio*, the mighty City *Cambalu*, i. e. the great *Chams* place of reſidence, and other parts of *Cubaja* far beyond the deserts of *Lop* and Mount *Belgian*, of which *Haybon* the *Georgian* speaks by hear-say, and of the extream parts of *Tartaria*, toward that which from *Pliny* we call *Taby* and the *Strait of Anian*, where near unto *Arſaret* and *Argon*, ſome pretend to find the transplanted Tribes of *Dar* and *Neptibali* (the rather for that the name is found mentioned in the 1 *Esdras* 13. 40. albeit moſt take *Ararat* to be ſignified by it) and thence deduce their *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ung* and *Mongol*; I much ſuſpect the truth of thoſe peregrinations and relations; but rather as our *Mandevile*, thoſe aforenamed had ſame only for their authority, *Qua mutatio dicendo mendacia ſeſe delebat*. And concerning *Eſſedon*, a great City diſcovered by *Pius* 2. in 42 degrees Eaſt from the *Emodian* and *Auxatian*, and abutting upon the *Aſmerians* (*Ajmeers* we find in *Induſtan*) they are but *Ideas*; and ſeeing *Prol.* (notwithstanding his utmoſt ſcrutiny) acknowledges that *Scythia extra Imaum*, both to the North and Eaſt *habet Terras incognitas*, give me leave to ſay that we remain ſtill under the ſame ignorance; for albeit a great *Cham* we find mentioned in the Life of *Tamberlain*, and elsewhere; without oppoſing that there is a principal *Hoor*, of which *Cingis Cham* predecessor to *Tamberlang* had the Title (albeit *Cham*, which we ſhould pronounce *Chan* or *Kawa* in our Dialect, is the fame that Count is with us, and preſixed uſually to Persons of Honour in *Persia*, *Induſtan* and *Tartary*; as with us *Count Mansfield*, *Count Harcourt*, &c.) that he is ſuch as *M. Paul. Venetus* describes, amonſt other Epithetes being ſtiled the *Shadow of Spirits*, *Monarch of the whole World*, and *Son of the immor-tal God*, an Historical Faith will not easily imbrace ſuch a Tradition. For, as parching heat, &c. in the one, ſo in the other the intolerable cold, continual ſnows, barbarity of a vagrant and fierce People, as to the real diſcovery of thoſe parts gives equal diſcouragement; yet as counterfeit as they be, we muſt accept of them until we can make a better diſcovery; but fearing I have made too great a digreſſion, I proceed. All this while, having propitious winds, upon the 23. day the ſecond time we croſt the *Equinoctial*, once more bidding farewell to the *Antartique* conſtella-tions, ſome of which we took ſpecial notice of towards the Poles; the *Croſters* + Stars of the ſecond magnitude in form of a Croſs, diſtant from the South Pole 17 deg. 20 min. *Noah's Dove*, *Polophylax*, within 3 degrees of the Pole, and others, amonſt which *Magellan's Cloud*, a conſtella-tion of ſeveral ſmall Stars, not ſo lucid as thoſe be of the fifth magnitude; yet being a condense part of the aereal Region they diſcolour the Skie, as the *Galactas* doth which

we call the Milky-way, and is the only visible Circle in the Heavens, *Densa stellarum turba Manilius* calls them, a Troop of invisible Stars, and yet the splendor beaming from them is discernable; and here under the Equinoctial the two Bears which were deprest reappeared in our Hemisphere; for there at one time we saw both Poles, so as I think *Linschoten* ers, in saying he saw the Southern Pole Star when he was at *Goa*, which elevates the North Pole 15 degrees.

Under 8 degrees the wind (weary it seems of its constancy) Veer'd into the East North East, so as the *Monsoon* became adverse to us upon that Course, for we could come no nearer than South East, at which time many of our Ships Company died of Calentures, Seafavers, Fluxes, Scurvy, Aches, and such other Distempers as usually attend Seamen in those fiery Climates.

Nevertheless this mortality was not more to be imputed to the extremity of the heat (albeit thereby our Bisquet, Meat, and Water became putrid and so stinking, that save necessity inforsed it would not have been tolerable, which as the Zone became more temperate, Beef, Pork and Water recovered their sweetnes) than indeed might be to their intemperate eating, and overcharging their stomachs with fresh Meat pot at *Mobelia*, which was crude, little salted, and rudely drest; as also by quaffing *Toddy* too exorbitantly, a liquor though wholesome enough if moderately drunk, yet excess disposes the Body to dangerous Fluxes. So as our Admiral out of his Ship threw five and thirty dead Men over-board, the *Hopewell* eleven, the *Star* five; every Ship lost some; too many, if God had otherwise pleased. This was aggravated by the death of *Harvey Kyrell* an expert and ingenious Seaman, Masters-mate in the *Star*. Captain *Goodall* died then also, one whose disposition was so civil and obliging, that indeed his name and nature were harmonious. Their Bodies being committed to the Ocean (a spacious Grave) a Volly of small shot and two and twenty great Guns from our Ship proclaim'd their farewell to the watry Citizens, inviting them to safe-guard such a Treasure; Heaven it self also seeming to bear a part in that threnody; at that very instant distilling so abundantly, that to the best of my remembrance I never saw a fadder and suddainer shower of Rain than that was, or of let's continuance, which indeed made me take the greater noice of it. By this failer the Master of our Ship had a remove into the Vice-Admiral, and into the Vice-Admiral Captain *Malim* was translated from the *Hopewell*, who lived but few days to joy his advancement, a Perlon so civil in his nature, so careful in his charge, so expert in his vocation, and so valiant in fight (as well witnesseth that memorable conflict he maintained against the *Turk* in the *Levant*, which honours him to posterity) that in his behalf I may properly attribute that out of the Prince of Poets,

*Uta Ducis vivunt, operosaque gloria retum
Hec manet.*

— — — — — *The Heroick deeds of all
Brave Men, are written in Fames glorious Roll.* *

The wind here added to our affliction, for growing high and contrary to our course, the waves broke boisterously too often upon our broad-sides, but being close halld, were patient in all those Checks; so as though the Ships cut their way slowly they passed securely; and at length passing by the Cape called *Babmandell*, brought us near the Isle *Socotra* into the *Ostium* of the Red-sea; where let us repose a while, till the wind be more favourable. *Socotra* is an Isle well known to former Ages; to some by the name of *Diocorida*, of *Succa* to others, and as otherfome conjecture that same Isle *Pliny* in his 6. lib. Nat. Hist. calls *Topazo*, deriving its name from the plenty of those precious stones found ther; like as the neighbouring Isle *Saphyrina*, upon the like occasion: the *Turks* call it *Catuchomor*; the *Persians*, *Cabar*; by the *Spaniard* 'tis called *Acbar*; and by others *Acar*. It elevates the Antiqu^e Pole 15 degrees, is neare 15 leagues long and 10 broad, and about an hundred of our miles about; and though in its position seems nearer neighbouring to *Afrique* than *Asia*, yet is challenged, and accordingly reputed an Appendix to *Ajaman* or *Arabia* the happy. It affords sufficient for supply of the inhabitants, as Corn, Fruit, and Cattle; and for Olives, Cocos, Dates, Pistachios, Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, Pomecrons, Melons, Sugar-canies, and like fruit; as also Aloes which it hath with an emphasis, as call'd in *Spain*, *Semper-vivum & sanguis Dracorum*, a small Tree which being cut, sweats out the red Gum it has to spare for strangers; Civet Cats also, which inrich the owners, though sold at easie prices. The Inhabitants are a mixture of Christians and Mahometans, their complexions black, the Sun twice every year darting his fiery Rays perpendicularly amongst them, and then no place is hotter in the World; their natures be reasonably civil. 2000. years ago the *Greeks* planted

planted this place, if *Geograph. Nub.* say true, for he reports (by what authority I know not) that *Alexander* the Great returning by Sea from *Indus* made this his way to *Babylon*, and being here met by *Aristotle*, according to his Masters advice planted a Colony of Greeks there; who afterwards, some say by the preaching of Saint *Thomas* the Apostle of the Orient, others say *Bartholomew*, and from the *Ethiopian Exarch* mentioned in the 8. and 27. of the *Acts of the Apostles*, the third year after our Saviour's death, were converted unto the Christian Religion; and how dubious forever the Convertor be, that they were Christians is evident in Ecclesiastick stories, albeit infected with the Errors of the *Nestorian* and *Jacobites*, which last used both Circumcision and Baptism: Their Churches exprest no less, being built in the form of a Cross; a Patriarch or Prima*x* they had till of late there resident; and other Clergy whom they reverence, to whom they chearfully pay their Tythes, by whom they are instructed in the Worship of God, and how to observe both Fastes and Festivals; Elders they highly regard; humility is both commanded and commended. Second Marriages (except where issue is wanting) they approve not of, in Baptism they use the Sign of the Cross, partake of both Sacraments; the Dead they wash, and being wound in clean Linen bury with their heads towards *Jerusalem*, *Casum-barre* call'd here, but exprest little mourning. Of late years they were subjeeted by *Emir ben said* King or rather Gouvernor of *Fartaque*, but expult by *D' Cugia the Portugal*, whose Fire-works made the *Snake* (so is the Prince stil'd) flye to *Caeshem*, where at a safe distance he durst his at the Victor; who in the first place restored the Christians their liberty both of body and conscience; and then by their help built a Castle for defence, and planted a Colony: but about five years after *Albuquerque* the Admiral slighted it, pretending that the Merchandise of the place proved not equivalent to the Charge incumbent, which reduced the poor indefensivle Natives to fresh thralldom. *John de Castro* for many days found it high water here at the Moons rising, and as the Moon ascended the tide decreased; so as it was low water when the Moon was highest, contrary to what we obserue in most other places.

Aden, a Town upon the *Arabi*m Continent (from whose *Cabobarra* *Socotra* may be seen) has 12 degrees 35 minutes North latitude, the variation is 19 degrees West; of old known by the name of *Madena*, of *Madoca* to *John de Castro*, call'd *Adana* by *Catilus*, *Adedi* and *Achavis* by *Exploramus*: not unlike to be that *Eden* which is enumerated with other *Arabian* Cities in *Ezek* 27. 23, opposite to *Aca-a*, first forcibly taken by *Lopez Suarius a Portuguse*, and after snatcht by the *Turks* out of the *Arabian* power Anno Domini 1458. commanded by *Solyman Basse* and a Regiment of obscure people, who like Locusts about that time swarmed thither out of *Trepizond*. This, though it be a much frequented Road, is none of the best, for at the change it flows not above 8. foot Water, where a South-East and North-West Moon make a full Sea; from *Babmandel* (which *Ptol. lib. 4. cap. 1.* and *Arrian* in *Periplo* call *Diodori insula*, though I rather take *Socotra* to be it) is distant 18 leagues; from *Mochi* which some call *Mobs*, others *Moscha*, 32. A Town low in its situation, and sulphureouly shaded by the high and barren Mountain *Cabobarra*, whose Brazen front so scorches this miserable place, that it gives a lively character or representation of Turkish baseness; the Sea so circles there that it becomes a Cheroness, and as it were for breath thrusts its head a good way into the blushing Sea; the circuit of the Town is large enough, but sparingly built; those that are, by their outsides discovering an inward discontent of outward slavery; so as 'tis much changed since those were there who gave *Ossorus* and *Munfer* occasion to blaze it for a City of great commerce and magnificence: Of most note is the Castle built near the Sea to command the Road, which is strong in its situation, but more by those many pieces of Cannon planted upon the Bulwarks, having withal a large Graft and Counter-scarp, not to be entred save by a long and narrow Path; so as one would think it prepared to safeguard the whole Treasure of *Arabia*, whereas within are only store of Iron Bullets, Arms, and a Company of miserable raggamuffins who both secure the Turkish interest in that place, and extort Contribution from all that South part of *Ajanan*. Never considering that Gold exacted by tyranny, becomes less valuable than Iron; for as one observes, being wet with the jult owners Tears it rusts and is accursed.

Being now in the Red-sea; by the colour it bears, the greater credit may be given to those who say the name was mistaken, for it is *verbum equivocum*; and albeit 'tis true, that as it is called *Mare Idumeum* or the Sea of *Edom*, and *Mare Erythreum*, the *Septuaginta* might warrantably translatte it *Rubrum* or Red; yet 'tis likely the Sea rather took its denomination from the Country of *Edom* upon which it verges, or from King *Eru-stroes*, both which signific Red: A King, whose Tomb, albeit erected at the other end

of the happy *Arabia* near *Ormus* in the Isle *Tirnia*, *Strabo l. 16.* 2000 furlongs from *Carmenia*; *Son* (as say the fictitious Greeks) to *Perseus* and *Andromeda*; and from whose name this (as the *Ægean* and *Icarian*) took its denomination, yet reigned and had his longest residence here. And though with us it has but that one name (most memorable through that miracle the Almighty by *Moses* expressit in preserving the *Israelites* when pursued by *Pharaoh Cembres* who with his whole Army here perished) in Authors we find nevertheless that it has many other; for the *Hebrews* call it *Zuph* and *Saph*, the *Arabians* of old *Mare Elaniticum* from *Elana* now *Toro* a Port at the end of this *Gulph* distant from Mount *Sinai* in *Arabia* 20. leag. or *Melonis* where *David* built ships for the gold of *Urpe* as *Euseb. l. 9. de preparat. Euang.* out of *Eusebius* reporteth; the *Turks* call it the *Gulph of Mecca*, near which at *Médina*, *Mahomet* was intombed; the *Gulph* of *Arabia*, *Strabo l. 6. Ptol.* and *Arrian l. 8. vita Alex. Bohem Colossi* or rather *Kalz*: *the Ethiop.* and some *Zabara* and *Brachia* from some principal Port of old; others from the *Sea-weeds* or *Sargasso's* found floating there *Mare Algoicum* and *Caretosum*. Yet the name Red is not without some colour or shew of reason, seeing that the land especially when the Sun begins his visit towards the Antipodes gives a ruddy reflection; besides, it is observed that from *Suachen* (a noted place upon the *Ethiopick* side) to *Alcoraz* which is 100. leagues, the water is shoal, and by reason of the plenty of Red-coral found there seems to have a reddish tincture. But let the controversie and uncertainty be what it will as to the colour; this is certain, that albeit the length of this S.a. be near a 1000. English Miles, for no less is accounted from Cape *Guardafusa* (a promontory now so called upon the *Ethiopian* shoar near *Dice* in *Ptol.* and to former ages known by the name of *Aromata*) to *Suez* or the *Sues* at the very bottom of the *Gulph*, by some thought *Arsinoe*, *Heronus Civitas* and *Danae* in *Pliny*; and 50. miles broad from Cape *Guardafusa* to *Fartagae* formerly *Ziagram*: nevertheless twixt *Aden* near *Possidium* in *Arabia*, and *Zeyla* upon the *Africque* Coast where 'tis narrowest, the *Freuum* (which the *Arabs* call *Albato* and under 12. deg. 15. min.) is not above 18. Miles English: where the *Ægyptian* Monarchs of old chann'd the passage into the *Gulph*, as we are told by *Strabo*. But the Red-sea in a large acception as some stretch it extends to the *Indian* shoar; whence 'tis that *Newchus* in his failing from the River *Indus* to *Balsora* calls *Euphrates* and *Tigris* (that fall into the *Peruan Gulph*) by the name of Red-sea, *Livy l. 45. Pliny lib. 6.* and with equal Authority to that of *Acephorus l. 9. Ecl. Hist.* saying that *Adiabena regio est Indica ampla & celestis*, *Adiabena* being the North part of *Affyria*, and so brings it into the *East Indies*: and with like Authority *Virgil* joyns *Garamantes & Indes*. But to return, a shoal and dangerous water 'tis found, except in the middle of the Channel where greatest Vessels in fair weather sail boldly. Now, therefore upon the *Ethiopick* or *Trojodicek* shoar especially towards the North Welt end which properly we call *Ethiopia sub Ægypto*, there have been sundry Sea-towns and Ports of note and much frequented, as *Zybit*, *Sabae* in *Ptol.* *Alcoraz*, *Suachen*, *Mafua*, *Dallaqua*, old *Phileteras* in 27. deg. *Thoram* and *Zeyla*, which last is within the Kingdom of *Adell* near the *Sums Aavalies* which joyns to the Territory of *Alex* the originarie seat of the *Abassies*; and on the opposite or *Arabian* Coast *Toro Elava* or *Eloib*, *Petra*, *Fiongeber* and others: Yet at this day *Mocha* upon the *Arabian* side is most tradit to: which though I think too much South, by some is thought the relique of *Eziongeber*, the Port from whence *Solomon's* fleet usually set fail for *Ophir*. At *Pihabiroth* of old which is betwixt *Toro* and the *Suez* is yet shewn the place where *Moses* first entered the Red-sea; for *Petra* under 30. degrees which the *Hebrews* call *Jachshua* now *Arach* is the place where *Ruth* was born, branded for base ingratitude to their princes *Cleopatra*, by setting Fire upon those Vessels she had with marvellous labour haled to the *Suez* from the *Nilus* over that *Isthmus* of land which divides *Asia* from *Africque* about 300. furlongs, deligning her flight with *M. Ambony* through the Red-sea to some remote part of *India* after that overthrow *Augustus Caesar* gave them at the battle of *Actium* or *Numpatum* near the *Gulph of Lepanto*. From *Suez* (which is in 29. deg. 40. min.) to the *Nile* is not more than 25. leagues, and from *Grand Cairo* to *Toro* by land is about five days easie travail; but from *Pelusium* or *Damata* upon *Nilus* to *Suez*, which I suppose *de Castro* mistakes *Strabo l. 17.* to make it 900. furlongs (albeit without doubt the place where several attempts have been made to cut such a Sluice or Channel as should give Ships a navigable and free passage from the *Mediterranean* thither, which 'twas thought might have been effected) the *Isthmus* exceeds not 8. miles the Country being flat and fit for cutting; but where God sets the *terminus* (for 'tis he that laid the Foundations of the Earth, gives the Sea its bounds, and weighs the Earth as in a Ballance) we see the power and wit of man may not contradict or alter; so as in vain *Sesostris* first, after him *Darius*, and then some of the *Piolumis*

Ptolemies endeavoured to make those Seas communicable, albeit the last in greatest part effected it by a sluice of 100. foot broad, and 30. deep; but discouraged when he perceived strange diseases sweep most of the Pioneers away, hideous noises (if the report be true) affrighting others; but what most discouraged the prosecution was the fear they had that level Countrey of *Egypt* might (especially when Land-floods and Spring-tides met) be overflowed, and that the Salt-water of the Red-sea would alter the sweet taste of the River *Nile*; so as upon mature deliberation it was found the most prudential course to desist: And such a vain attempt might have been presidential to *Nero* in that successless enterprize of transfecting the *Isthmus* or strait in that narrow neck of land near *Corinth* which knits the *Peninsula of Peloponnesus* to the main of *Greece*; to *Selchus* also labouring to unite the *Black-sea* with the *Caspian*; to *Trajan* the like with *Tigris* and *Euphrates*; and to the *Great Turke* of late endeavouring to force *Volga* into *Tanais*. *Pliny* (who like other Historians took much upon trust) relates how that in *Augustus Caesar's* time (which was 200. years before his) certain Spanish-ships suffered shipwreck in this Sea; but how they came there, he refutes not. We do not read that the *Cape de bona Speranza* was known in 1300. years after; those Voyages of *Hanno Jamilicus* and some others, being not to be credited; and yet Sir *W. Ral.* inclines to believe that the *Poenicians* when Subjects to the *Egyptian* Scepter and the most expert in Navigation, endeavoured it about that time when *Phar. Necho* (by whose hand good *Jofiah* fell, in vain attempted to cut a sluice 80. miles long and broad enough for two Gallies to row abreast twixt the Red-sea and the *Nile*). *Herod. l. 4.* likewise reports that they compassed *Afrique*, and after three years Voyage returned into *Nile* through the *Straits of Gibraltar*; which if it were so, was quite forgot such time as *Vasco de Gama* made his passage. When the *Portuguese* had settled his Plantations in *Socotra* and such other Maritim places as best pleased him upon those *Afrique* and *Arabian Coasts*, and soon after in *India* and the *Persian shore*; (for so propitious was the time or so little was the resistance he found as he had the liberty to pick and choose) that *Anno 1520. Albu-* *querque* having taken *Aden* then persuaded himself the Empire of the *Indies* was perpetuated to the Crown of *Portugal*. *Quia vicia (faith Osiris) putabat India Imperium fore sempiternum*: But it proved otherwise; for not long after, many of his plantations were destroyed partly through their own luxury, but most through the treachery of the *Negros*; albeit sufficient remains yet under their obedience.

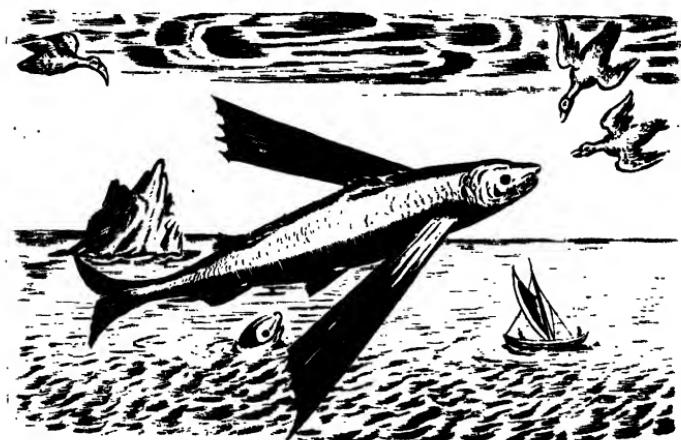
This warm part of the *Interior Aethiopia* being the Northermost of the *Troglodites* Country by most called *Aethiopia sub Eypo* and bounded to the East by the Red-sea was (say some) first planted by *Chos the Son of Cham* after his departure out of *Arabia*; or as others, by *Sheba the Son of Rheaena*. The *Calum* and *Solum* such, as the first becomes extreme in heat during those months the Sun is vertical, the Country extends equally on both sides the *Aequinoctial* beginning from 20. degr. North and necessarily instructs the Inhabitants for the most part to seek shade, and other refreshing in subterranean habitations; and the rather, for that the Country is observed to be full of hills for 600. miles from the Red-sea and more towards the West, but steril towards the East, and the Mediterranean so covered with loose sands as renders it impassable. Upon the Western Banks of the *Mare Rubrum* there have been Port Towns, *Zeyley*, *Suachen*, *Mafua*, *Thera*, with some others that of late years have been much forsaken to not only by the *Egyptian* but by other Merchants of several Countries; howbeit since the principal Marts were translated to *Goa* and *Ormus*, *Mocha* and *Aden* on the opposite Coast are most frequented. Moreover, albeit the *Egyptian* Princes of old have been of great power for many ages, yet such was the poverty or rather natural defence this Country was provided with against the invasion of any numerous party, as it continued ever independent without being subdued or harried by any of the four Monarchies, who unless in an auxiliary way (if they be the *Sukkiums* that assailed *Shishac* mentioned in 2 *Chron. 12. 3.*) from hence never exacted tribute: all that *Cambyses* the Son of the great *Cyrus* aimed at (after his subjeccing *Egypt* to the *Persian* Empire about the year from the Creation of the World 3400. revolting under *Dar. Nohus*, and reduced by *Ochus*) being for their returning him by his Ambassadors some of their Earth and Water, the usual symbols, of subjection as we also find storied of *Nebuchadnezzar*, *Judith 2. Chap. ver. 7.* which these *Troglodites* well knowing how little advantage that great Monarch would get by entering their sapless Country, scornfully refused it. Now concerning the Commerce this Red-sea has afforded, the first I find story takes notice of, is the trade which King *Solomon* from hence ingrossed for the Gold of *Opikir*, the Port whence his fleet usually set sail being *Ezionghabor*, *Berenice* thinks *Josephus l. 8. a* con-

convenient riding place for ships near the City of *Eloth* which is also called *Elauon* in the Land of *Edom* part of *Arabia Petrea* (named so either from the *Somines* thercol or from *Petra* now *Rath-hadala* the Capital City situate upon the brink of that Sea, a Town la-moufed by being the Birth-place of *Rub*, and for the defence it made against *Severus* and *Trajan* the *Roman* Emperors; but infamous as lately remembred for their ingratitude to *Cleopatra* their Prince's in her distresses;) for, that the Kings of *Judea* extended their Empire from *Euphrates* to the Red-sea or confines of *Egypt*, is evident by what is recorded in the 1 Reg. 4. 21. where 'tis exprest that *Solomon* reigned over all the Kingdoms from the River (*Euphrates*) unto the border of *Egypt*; that they brought *Solomon* presents and served him all the days of his life. This Port of *E-tonghalor* and the rest of *Edom* were formerly conquered by *David* 2 Sam. 8. 14. where 'tis said that he put a Garrison in *Edom*, throughout all which Country put he Souldiers, so as all they of *Edom* became *David*'s Subjects. Until *Hadad* one of the Princes of *Edom* flying for succour to *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt* so intimated himself into the favour of the *Egyptian* King, that he not only gave the *Edomite* his Wifes Sister in marriage, but hearin' that *David* and *Jonah* his General were dead, seemed little importunate for his stay; *Solomon* by his gross Idolatry having so provok'd the Almighty, that he not only permitted the revolt of divers and amongst others of *Hadad*; but albeit *Solomon* had made a nearer alliance with the *Egyptian* King, yet so jealous was he of the *Jews* extended Empire, that probably he gave *Hadad* the readier leave to depart; and so envious at his wealth, that the ten tribes no sooner revolted under *Jeroboam* but the *Egyptian* King by that weakening, or rather as a further chaffisement from the Lord for the Apostacie of the Land overruin *Rehoboams* Kingdome, and despoiled *Jerusalem* of all the treasure it had, and carried thence all *Solomons* shields of Gold. Notwithstanding which it was reduced under *Jebsaphat*, in whose reign there was no King in *Edom* a Deputy being King, 1 Reg. 22. 47. the Deputy or Prorex 'tis likely being substituted by the *Judean* King, whose Navy prepared to go for *Ophir* was broken in pieces for associating with *Ahaba* King of *Ifrac*. But in his Son *Jebsaphat*'s time *Edom* rebelled and appointed themselves a King; whom albeit he beat afterwards in the field, and that *Amaziah* also gave them a notable defeat in the Valley of *Salt*, and that *Uzziah* (who is also called *Azariah*) succeeding his Father *Amaziah* built *Eloth* and restored it to *Judah* 2 Reg. 14. 22. It appears not in story either sacred or profane, that any of their Ships continued the Voyage to *Ophir*, or that any commerce was from this Sea in the succeeding Ages. But it is evident that about 500 years after *Jebsaphat* *Egypt* was by *Cambyses* subjected under the *Persian* Scepter, and so continued till the time of *Darius Nothus*, at which time the *Egyptians* broke the *Persian* Yoke, but were subdued 50 years after by *Ochus* the 8. Monarch of *Perse*; during which the *Persians* intermitted that commerce, having nevertheless besides the Earth and Water they required a yearly revenue of 6000. Talents which was accordingly paid *Alexander*. *Ptol.* surnamed *Philadelphus* (the second of the *Lagi*) about 270. years before the Nativity of Christ, was the first that revived the *Ophirian* trade after *Jebsaphat*; his Navy set sail usually from *Alco-asr* (*Nichocea* in *Ptol.* under 26. degrees, well nigh parallel to *Coptos* upon the *Nile*); so as it cannot be *Berenice* which exceeds not 24. degrees) and continued by the *Egyptian* Kings till the time of *Alexander*: The fleet was usually 120. Vessels great and small, the space upwards of two years (coasting all the way 'tis presumed) and the return very advantageous; for every Crown increased not less than 100. as *Pliny* reports: so that *communibus annis*, 1200000. Crowns came into his Exchequer. In *Ptol.* *Antiochus* reign, the *Cargo* amounted to seven millions of Gold, and little less was paid *Cleopatra* his Daughter, which raised the greater force against his rival *Augustus*; the Gold and other rich lading was from *Chozyr* or *Berenice* conveyed by the Sledge and Camels, sometime from *Chozyr* to *Coptos* the usual Emporium, *Pliny* l. 6. c. 54. and otherwhile from the *Soes* to *Pelusium* or *Damiasa*, and thence after *Alexander's* time by Boat to *Alexandria*, which after *Coptos* for a long time was the common place for Trade; but when *Julius Cesar*, and after him *Augustus* reduced *Egypt* to a Province, the former tax was doubled; the *Ophirian*, or at least the golden Trade thither or to *Soffola* being to that time probably continued: but when the *Arabians* and *Goths* from adverse quarters like inundations overflowed most part of the Universe, in which storm the *Roman* Majesty was eclipsed, the *Indian* Trade ceas'd; so as the Red-sea Voyages were but little prosecuted by the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors: from whom *Omar* the third Chal. of *Bab*. wrested it, and from *Sarracen* who preceeded *Saladin*, the *Indian* commerce by Merchants was brought to *Samarcand*, and thence by *Caravans* with extream charge, toil and hazard remov'd to *Trepezond* upon the *Euxin*; whence being convey'd to *Damascus* and *Aleppo*, the *Venetians* mono-

monopolized it for some time, to the great enriching of their Seigniory; but after *Vasco de Gama Anno 1497.* discovered the way into the *East-Indies* by compassing *Afrique*, the *Venetians*, though unwillingly, gave place to the *English, Dutch, and others* who now share with the *Portugal* in that Navigation. But to return.

October the eighteenth the wind being fair, at Sea our observation was 17 deg. North, and longitude 19 from *Mohelia*; soon after we were becalm'd, and then had such hot weather as made us fry, and the sweat dropt from us no otherwise than if we had been stow'd in Stoves or hot Baths, which put some into Calentures; but all grew exceeding faint, notwithstanding our best provision to abate it. Indeed I think there are not hotter places in the World than the *Red sea* and *Persian Gulph* about *Ormus* when the Sun displays his Beams, during the Summer Solstice; for then the Earth inflames equally with the Air: And Experience teaches us, that the heat not only under the *Aequinox*, but the *Tropiques* when the Sun comes to the Vertex, is much more intense and violent (notwithstanding the long Nights) than it is about the *Polar Circles*; albeit for near six months together the Sun sets not, but constantly keeps his circuit above that Horizon. In this distemperature of heat *Mahomet a Persian Merchant* returning for *Persia* in our Ship, dyed of a Burning-feaver; his Father *Hodge Snar* having paid Nature her last Tribute in *London* the year before; *Nemo ante obitum beatus* was verified in this Person; but a happy Man we hope this *Mahomet* dyed, if throwing away the Rags of *Mawmetry*, he cloathed his Soul with the Robes of true Faith in Christ, whom we were told, a little before he left the World, he call'd upon as the only efficacious means of his Salvation; again, I say happy, if unfeignedly. At his putting into the Sea the Captain of our Ship honoured his Funeral with the rending clamour of four Culverins, his Carcass at that instant being committed to the mercy of the Sea, no less sure a Treasury than the Earth, till the Resurrection.

The 26. of Octob. by observation we found that we were got North from the *Aequator* 19 deg. 40 min. longitude from *Mohelia* 20 deg. our steerage at that time being South-East, when again the Wind abating the Sea calm'd, and was as smooth as Glass, not the least curl or wrinkle discernable; this increas't our heat, and only refresh't our memory with the Zone we were in, properly called *Torrid*. The greatest recreation we had, was a view of such large sholes of flying Fishes as by their interpolating multitude for some time darkned the body of the Sun; a Fish beautiful in its Eye, the Body though no larger than a small Herring yet big enough for those complemental Fins, which so long as moist serve as Wings to fly 200 paces or more, and 40 foot high, helping them to avoid the pursuit which Sharks, Dolphins, Bonetaes, Albicores, and other Sea-Tyrants make, and causes them for self-preservation to forsake their proper Element; where usually Ospreys, the Sea Vulture, and other Birds of prey upon the Wing hover to question them for invading theirs; by this pitiful Evasion becoming the true Emblem of misery, no sooner having escaped one danger, but they encounter another equally destructive. The French call it *Arondre dumer*, the Swallow of the Sea; others a Sea Bat, or Rere-moule.



of the Sea; and it is well worth our observation, that during the Night season here we saw a perfect Rainbow, which was extraordinary; for albeit Rainbows be formed of a dewy Cloud in the Air above and usually appear in a beautiful Arch while the Sun is above the Horizon; the Moon we seldom see to have that operation: but when they do appear, the Moon is ever at or near the full. *Nam nisi plenilunio, arcus fieri non potest, idque Luna oriente vel occidente,* saith *Aristote* in his *Meteoris*, who reports that in the space of 60 years he saw two lunar Rainbows, and *Vicomercatus* (who comments upon him) reports the like in *Germany* in his time; howbeit the colours were not so fresh as the solar Rainbows, *Hos tamen colores Pittores non possunt imitari; quia in materia tantum terrestri pingunt colores, non in aere, qualis arcus est materia, Olympiodorus;* yet more lively than Oil or Water colours can be painted.

The 17. of November we delcrys (that *terra ter exoptata*) the coast of *India*; land in 15 degrees latitude, and 32 of longitude (ill weather having formerly driven us to Lee-ward many leagues;) That very place where *Coa* (*Braigas* of old) is seated; the bravest and best defended City in the Orient; the Magazeen, Refuge, and Seat of Justice of the victorious *Portugal*. The City is not visible to such as sail along the Coast, being three hours journey within land; of old the Seat of the *Canarins*, in an Isle called *Tiljoem* 30 miles in circuit: a sweet place surrounded by a fresh River streaming from the mighty Mountain *Bellaguate*; encompass with a strong and beautiful Wall, which glories in her aspiring Turrets, and is not a little dreadful in many sorts of roaring Cannon. Her strength and beauty took rise from the Decan Kings, *Zabym* and *Idalcan*, from whom *Anno 1509. Albu*, *jurque* the victorious *Portugal* conquer'd, and after that descended against 70000 foot, and 3500 horse which *Idal-canu* brought to reduce it with; but it was agrandiz'd and beautified by the Lusitanian; the great Bazaar, or Market, being in center of the Town is gallantly and regularly built; many other Streets there are which, after the *Indian* mode, are narrow, if not sufficiently nasty; the Buildings generally are spacious, and not uncomely; thick and dark within, tarrased above, and made futable to that hot Climate: watered it is with a delicious stream, which (by benevolence of the Air) refreshes the Fields, forcing *Flora* to dilinate; the Gardens are also fill'd with variety of sweet and eye-pleasing Flowers: the whole Isle so abounding with Grafs, Groves, Corn, Cattel, Fruits and such sun-reviving delights as a reasonable Man can well require: above 20 little Towns (all planted with *Portugals*) are seen in this 30 miles compass; as also the ruins of 200 idol Temples which the Vice-Roy *Antonio Noroqua* totally demolish't, that no memory might remain, or monuments continue, of such gro's idolatry. For not only there, but at *Salfete* also were two Temples or places of prophane Worshipp; one of them (by incredible toil cut out of the hard Rock) was divided into three Iles or Galleries, in which were figured many of their deformed Pagotha's, and of which an *Indian* (if to be credited) reports that there were in that Temple 300 of those narrow Galleries, and the Idols so exceeding ugly as would affright an *European Spectator*; nevertheless this was a celebrated place, and so abundantly frequented by idolaters, as induc'd the *Portuguese* in zeal with a considerable force to master the Town and to demolish the Temples, breaking in pieces all that monstrous brood of mihiapen Pagods. In *Goa* nothing is more observable now than the fortifications, the Vice-Roy and Arch-bishops Palaces, and the Churches. The Palaces are very strong, built of good Stone, furnish'd and adorned within with rich Arras and Painting: the Churches are large and neat, of best rank are those dedicated to the blessed Virgin Mother of God, (in which is kept the Bones and Skull of Saint *Thomas* the Apostle, whose Reliques were brought 50 years ago from *Melisopore* by *Emmanuel Fries* at the command of *Don John* succellour to *Emmanuel* Kings of *Portugal*) Saint *Paul*, Saint *Dominic*, Saint *Katherine*, and Saint *Saviour*; in which last are laid the Bones of that great *Albuquerque*, *Qui cum summis Imperioribus (quorum Nomen est immortalitate commendandum) merito compendius, Osorius lib. 12. Vita Emmanuel. R. Portu.* which famous Captai died at *Goa* in the year 1516. and agreeable to his quality and worth was here buried; where also are interred *D'Acuna*, *Don Francisco*, and that late Canonized *China* Saint *Francis Shyvier* the Navarrean Jesuit, who died 4. *Dcemb. 1552.* aged 55, and rubricated by Pope *Gregory* the 15. the 12. *March 1622.* when many more were Sainted. The City is compass'd with a thick Stone Wall, flanker'd and moated about, having withal a Counterscarp, and 300 pieces of Brads Cannon mounted upon the Bulwarks and Ravclins, which renders it impregnable.

Hence we hastened towards *Swally* Road judging the worst past, the *Indian* shore all the way being in view of us, and the Sea every where 20 leagues from land anchorable: But upon a sudden the Scene was changed, for the Elements grew dreadful, the Wind roaring

ing made the Sea so sublime and wrathful, and for three days space raging with such fury that we verily believed a *Herocane* was begun, a vail or unwoonted trouer in the Air, called *Eurocydon* in the Acts; a Tempest so terrible that Houles and Trees are but like dust before it; many Ships by its violence having been blown ashore and shattered. *Olaus Magnus lib. 1. cap. 4. and lib. 7. cap. 3. Sept. Histor.* gives some memorabile examples of it; once in nine years it uses to thunder among them, and is prefaged by Birds and Beasts whi three or four days before the storm, give notice by their noise and hiding themselves under ground as if an overture of the World were ensuing: and as in these, so in most other parts of the World, there are certain times for stormy weather. In the *West-India dies* every *Sept.* the North winds bring dreadful storms, *Tiffons* they call them, *Arystoile* l. 2. *Meteor. sic dictum à Typhone gigante,* so as during that month none put to Sea unless necessily enforce them: But thus and other our Water scapes made that saying of *Bias* come to mind, *Navigantes nec inter vivos nec inter mortuos esse numerandos.* Agreeable to which is *Anacharsis* his Ironique question, *Qua nubes essent tuissime? qua in secum portata sunt.* And *Catharinacae* no les witty, *Inundissimum esse Mare;* sed si quis de Terra illud contemplatur. Praised be God we mist a Tuffon, but not a second disadventure, this storm forcing a Mallabar Junk a Pirat in view of us; whom our Ordnance could not reach though the longest Saker we had vomited Fire of defiance after him; so as we were forced to chase her with two Barges, each manned with fifty Musqueters: And *Vela damus quamvis remige navis cat.* But it appeared that we made too much halfe, for in boarding her our Men were entertained with such store of Fire-works and Hand-granado's, with a volley of invenomed shafts, and which was worse, with such despe-rate courage, that after small hurt done them we were constrained to retreat with los, one half being slain or scalded; our Ships all the while being an unwilling Theater of this Affront, the Wind forbidding us to retaliate.

The 22. of November the Wind abated, so as sounding we found ground at forty fathoms, and saw many Snakes swimming about our Ships, which (with the waters chal-ling colour) assur'd us we were near the shore, the last storm having driven us out of sight of land, and somewhat puzzl'd us as to our way; and that there are Sea Serpents as well as Land, is agreed by Writers; yea that they use both Elements. *Serpentes marinos in terra aliquando degere posse, Aristot.* and that they are eaten by some as we do Eels, Lampreys, and the like. *Serpentem marinum cui quidem esse aptum, quemadmodum ceteri marini animantes, ut congi, anguille, mustela, &c.* *Verum propri similitudinem cum serpente terrestri, tanquam ab angu & non pisco, abborrem, Bellonius lib. de piscibus,* but from a re-semblance they have with Land Snakes by most Men (*Chinæs* excepted) they are ab-horred. Soon after we descried land in 19 degrees 35 minutes latitude, and 29 in longitude; which by its height we knew to be *Dabul*, called *Danga* by *Castaldus*; and soon after that we had sight of *Saint John de vacas*, a Town likewise subject to the *Portugal*: the South end of which place mounts in a pyramid of Natures work, named *Saint Valentine's Peake*, the land continuing high from thence to *Gundavee*, a Hill six leagues short of *Swally Road*. This is a round Hillock and Bay of importance unto Marriners.



The 27. of November we hal'd an Indian Piscadoro aboard us: never was Antick better habited; he told us that many Enemies were at hand, but we fear'd them not: after long toil, tiding up with stream anchors, every six hours weighing and dropping, in short time we got to *Choul*; then we came to *Daman* a lovely Town inhabited by *Portugals*, and conspicuous to Passegers: in this most memorable, that as some conjecture it was the *Ne plus* or furthest place which the great *Macedonian* Monarch with his Army marcht unto in *India*: some Authors nevertheless say that after the defeat he gave King *Porsus* he past his Army as far as *Ganges*, mistaken for *Indus*, down which River he sent Vessells for discovery. At the North end *Daman* has a Castle which we could well per-ceive was large and strong; the material good white chalky stone, flankt with Ordnance and mounted to play at advantage: At the South end we perceived a fair Church with white battlements a top, the Houles were some of like stone, others unburnt brick;

three other Temples there affording pleasure to the heart and eye. The 20. day we got near the Bar at *Swalley* where we cast Anchor, because we perceived 13 sail of great Ships riding there, and knew not whether they were friends or foes: The last day of November we adventure over the Bar 'twixt two Boas (in four fathom water) a hundred paces asunder, let there to direct the passage, either side without the marks being shoal water and dangerous: the Ships at Anchor proved our friends, six English and seven Dutch, most of which were Ships of 1000 Tuns: Thole of our Nation were the *Falgrave*, the *Exchange*, the *William*, the *Blessing*, &c. each of which entertained our Ambassadors with hearty welcome: we rode in five fathom (others in nine) 'twixt the shoals and continent.

Perſian Ambassador dyed. The same day we came to an Anchor in *Swalley* Road *Nogdi-Ally-beq* the *Perſian* Ambassador (Sir Robert Sherley's Antagonist) dyed; having as we were credibly told poison'd himself; for four days eating only *Opium*: a sad Exit not unlike his who in despair cry'd out,

— *Spes & fortuna Vade*:

The *Mary* (where he dyed) gave him eleven great Ordnance at his carrying ashore: his Son *Ebrahim-chain* (conveighed him to *Surrat* (10 miles thence) where they intombed him not a stones cast from *Tom Coriat's Grave*, known but by two poor stones that speak his Name, there resting till the Resurrection. Now this tragique end of *Nogdibeg* was not without cause, for it seems despairing of his Masters favour and conious to himself of his abusive carriage in *England*, both to Sir Robert Sherley, and some other misde-meanors of his which begt a complaince against him to *Shaw Alba*, and made known by the way of *Aleppo* after his departure out of *England*, he gave himself this desperate Exit, well knowing that his Master was at no time to be jealsted with in Money matters, or busines relating to honour and reputation; so as neither his past service against the *Turk*, his alliance at Court, or what he else could think upon, could animate his defiance: so dangerous a thing it is to exceed instructions; for where an Ambassador hath his charge without limitation he may warrantably act agreeable to discretion as occasion and circumstance is admittid; but when circumstribed in express terms, he is bound up, and hath no latitude or power of variation; it being capital to exceed his Commission and instructions; and other Mens suffering upon a smaller accoume making his seem less pardonable. For in the year 1612. a *Perſian* Ambassador at *Constantinople* (assum-ing to suit his Article) 'twixt his Master and the Grand Seignior, as seemed advantagious to him, but otherwise to the *Perſian*, and excentric to his Instructions, was upon his return beheaded at *Cachyn*: The conditions were indeed dishonourable, as, That the Prince of *Perſia* should allume to himself no other Title than *Bahaw of Tauris*: that the *Perſian* should pay as a yearly Tribute for *Cheylin* 400 Baills of Silk; that the *Cadi* of *Tauris* should be of the *Turk* Election, &c. Which demands *Abbas* spurn'd back to *Adman* with indignation. *Tamisoolibeg* alio it may be came into his mind, who dyed miserably (though once second in *Perſia*) upon spleen ill-grounded by the King: and of *Turkish* basitish not a few Examples. That Ambassador probably was hirf in memory whom *Abbas* beheaded at his return from *Constantinople* for no other crime than for expellid too humble and submis: a behaviour to the Grand Seignior, which the *Perſian* King thought was an abatement to his grandeur. The like we have in the *Athenians*, who put *Timagoras* their Ambassador to death only for reverencing *Darus* according to the custome of the *Perſians*. *Ebrahim Baffa*, *Cyculus*, *Synor Baffa* and *Nasif* each of them in their times sitting at the Stern, guiding as they list the *Turk*'s greatness, came to miserable ends, such as made the remembrance of their passed glory relish the sower: and as for *Nogdibeg* (we after heard the King protest) if he had not thus prevented it, at his coming to the Court his Body should first have been hacket in pieces, and then in the open Market-place burnt with Dogs-turds; such a Ceremony as brands the Delinquent with shame to posterity, and none more infamous than that mentioned 2 Mac. cap. 13. 5.

Swalley Road is from the *Æquator* 20 deg. and 56 min. North: has westerly variation 16 degrees and an half: longitude from *Mobelia* 28 deg. at a low ebbe it resembles an Isle: beyond the sands *Goga* called *Bibula* formerly, is easily discovred. The first of December with some Peunes (or olive coloured *Indi* in Foot-boys who can very prettily prattle English) we rode to *Surrat*: our Chariot was drawn by two Buffalos, who by practise are nimble in their trot and well managed: we pass'd first through *Swalley*, and then through *Bury* (famous for good Toddy) and *Damge*, all which are Villages, and after to *Surrat* the chief Factory of the *East India* Merchants, whose President has

there

there his usual residence. At that time one Master Wyld was in that Office; an ingenious and civil Merchant, to whose kind respect I owe acknowledgment; and in whose House ('tis called the English-house) we had tidings at that time of Sultan Curron's Coronation at Agra as I shall speak at large of, after we have viewed the Town which challenges a description.

SURRAT is that old *Muciris* in *Ptol.* if my judgment deceive me not: nor am I ignorant that *Choul* and *Onor* are imagined it by *Maleius* and *Ramusius*: It is a City at this day no less great and rich, than populous and famous; albein neither the air nor soil agree well with strangers: the one being inflamed through the torridness of the Zone, the other being sandy and sulphureous. The Artick Pole is here elevated 21 deg. 3. min. subject in June to become *Nadir* to the Sun, thence to September the Clouds shower there continually an insalubrious moisture; whether occasioned from the *Ajelli* and *Presepe* two Stars in *Cancer*, who have their influence here (as noted by *Plin.lib. 16.cap. 35.*) or from some other occult cause, others may inquire into. Yet observed it is, that Wind and Thunder so commix as no place in the World during those Months seems more unhealthy, the other eight Months either parching or freezing. Now this excess of Rain is doubtless caused by the extream heat of the Sun, which when vertical usually raises Vapors in abundance, and being attracted into the middle Region condenses and distills in showers; so as this distemperature by storms of Wind and Rain turns Summer into Winter, causing inundations at such seasons especially as with us in the temperate Zone we have our weather serene and seasonable. *Surat* is accounted the third best Town in the *Gujarat* Kingdom, *Amadavat* and *Cambaya* having the precedency; from the first, she is removed four; from the other, two days journey; all now adding lustre to the *Moguls* Diadem. Whether *Gujarat* take name from the *Sura*, whom *Pliny* places here, or that it comply with the Greek Idiom *Tis-eued*, or be denominated from *Gizurat*, which in the *Arabick* signifies an Isle, I question not; but this without doubt, that a Province it is so useful to the *Mogul* as that his annual Tribute here amounts (as Merchants say) to 150 Tun of Gold at this day. 'Tis a Town of the greatest note and trade in *India*, which it has acquired but of late; for 'tis scarce 100 years ago when *Antonio Sylvio* a *Portuguese* with 200 Men entred and burnt it, since which the Town is so increased, both with Building and Inhabitants, that a far greater force would now find it a hard enterprize. After that *Anno Dom. 1566.* which is of the *Hegira 940.* by valour of *Shan Azem* who defeated the confederacy of *Mirza chun*, *Hiffan*, *Mirza Mahomet*, *Chu Googa* and other conspirators, it was made subject to *Ecbur* the great *Mogul*. Now 'tis under a quiet government: watered with a sweet River named *Tappee* (or *Tivvy*) (as broad as the *Thames* at *Windfor*) which ascending out of the *Dewan* Mountains glides through *Brampore* (220 miles distant thence) and in *Meanders* runs by the Walls of *Surat*, and after 20 little miles circuiting or playing to and fro, a leaguer from *Swalley* Road discharges it self into the Ocean. 'Tis circled with a mid-wall, and hath a large Castle of Stone built at the South-west-side, the River washing it; planted with great Ordnance, and awed by a Garrison who make dainty to admit strangers to see their fortifications: The West opens into the *Bazaar* through a fair Gate of Stone, where Toll-gatherers are every day ready to search and exact a customary Tribute for the *Mogul* their Master: The *Medon* is of no great beauty, nor do the Shops give more than common splendor; the *Bamyan* desiring rather to be rich indeed, than to accounted. The Houlcs are indifferent beautiful; some (as to the outside) are of carved Wood, others of Bricks dried in the Sun: the *English* and *Dutch* Houses at the North-end excell the other for space and furniture. The Suburbs have three Posterns pointing out three several ways; one to *Varian* and *Cambaya*, a seconnd to *Brampore*, the third to *Nasir* ten courses thence; whence is the Road to *Gundavee*, *Balsac*, and *Damar* upon the Ocean. The Town affords no Monuments, no Mosques worth taking notice of. The *English* Garden without the Town has pretty Walks, and is adorned with variety of sweet Flowers; but inferior to another I saw there, which besides the Trees and Flowers that beautified it, had a delightful Prospect. Adjoining *Nancry-gate* lay a Tank or Magazen of Water, a very stately work indeed, and worthy noting: It is of good Free-stone, circling in above 100 sides and angles; 28 Ells twixt every angle, in compas very near 1000 ordinary paces. It diminishes its largeness gradatim by 16 degrees or steps towards the bottome; capable to receive a very great quantity of Rain-water, which many times is of use to quench the flagrant thirst of these Sun-burnt *Indians*: the River by this seems somewhat unwholesome: if good neither for Drink nor Navigation, what serves it for save to mundifie the idolatrous *Bamyan*, who we could observe in great numbers to the Wall in Water, and with lifted up hands and eyes to attend the Sun-rising. *Plures adorant*

Solem orientem quam occidentem could Tiberias say to *Macro*. And truly many Sun-Idolaters I have seen, all which worship his rise, but none his setting. A form of worship long and much used in these Oriental parts; which also crept in amongst the *Jews*: for we find it reproved by the Prophet *Ezek*, ch. 8. ver. 16. Now (faith *Laitanum*) could but these idolaters fix their mind upon Heaven, by following the guide of the celestial Light, which is much more glorious than that of the Sun, it would convince them of their fault, and without error direct them to the Port of everlasting happiness. *Bonus quidem est Sol in ministerio, non in imperio.* The Sun (faith *Ambrose*) is a good Servant, not a Master. [*Industans*] as it is a fruitful foil so it abounds with People, and that of divers Nations and Languages; who also in Habit, Manners, and Religion differ much. For besides the Aborigines of the Land, here we find *Jews*, *Perians*, *Arabians*, *Armenians*, *Christians* of Saint *Thomas*, *Tartarians*, (the now Lords) and others, of which the *Bamyanus* are the greatest for number, but the *Moors* command. They have a peculiar Language of their Own, but the *Persian* Tongue is understood by those of best rank, and is accepted as most courtly. The *Indian* Mahometans are a People not less crafty than valiant; those who are Sword-men by profession are either *Rashboots* or *Perians*, and delight to go arm'd with Sword, Buckler, Bow, Arrows, and Dagger: their Habit is a quilted Coat of Calico tyed under the left Arm, a small Shash, small in comparison of that worn by *Turk* and *Persian* upon their Head, large Stockings, and some wear Sandals: in an ordinary and effeminate garb thus resembled.



A man and woman of Indostan.



The other sort of People are Merchants, *Bramins*, *Gentiles*, and *Perse*, which last are the originary Inhabitants. With whom in order suffer me to tempt your patience; this first remembred, that when any Ships ride at *Swalley* (which is from *September* to *March* commonly) the *Bamyanus* all along the Sea side pitch their Booths and Tents and Huts of Straw in great numbers, resembling a Country-fair or Market; for there they sell Calicoes, China-satten, Purcellan-ware, Scrutores or Cabinets of Mother of Pearl, Ebony, Ivory, Agats, Turquoises, Heliotropes, Cornelians; as also Rice, Sugar, Plantans, Arack,

Arack, &c. There are withal many little Boys or Peunes, who for four-pice a day (two-pence of our Money) are ready to serve you either to interpret, run, go errands, or the like: these will not eat or drink with a Christian, nor out of the same leath they drink their Toddy: the *Bannian* and other Indian Females after the Oriental mode are seldom visible; for their jealous Husbands mew them up. But here we see Elephants and Horses, but 'twixt *Swalley* and *Surat* Oxen do most labour; for 'twixt Towns Men usually travel in Chariots drawn by Oxen, but in Towns upon *Palamkeens*, and with *Sumbreros de Sol* over them. The currant Coyns here, are *Pice*, *Mammoodces*, *Roopees*, and *Dynas*; *Pice* are heavy round pieces of Brass, so make our Shilling; the *Mammoody* and *Roopee* are good Silver, round, thick, and (alter the *Saracenic* sort who allow no Images) stamped with *Arabick Letters*, importing the King and *Athome*; a *Mammoody* is our Shilling, a *Roopee* two Shillings and three-pence; a *Pardon* four Shillings, the *Dina* is a piece of Gold worth thirty Shillings; but *Spanish* Rials, *Pistolets* and *Persian* Larrées, *Abasées*, and *English* Gold (each Twenty-shilling-piece in *Persia* going for twenty-six Shillings) are here currant. Again (as I have been told by Merchants) a hundred thousand *Roopees* make one *Leek*, a hundred *Leek* make one *Cron*, ten *Cron* (or *Cavors*) one *Arch*: Again, in Silver, fourteen *Roopees* make a *Masse*, 150 *Masse* make a hundred *Tolls*; ten *Tolls* of Silver value one of Gold: In *Brass*, thirty *Tacks* or *Pice* make one *Roopee* in weight; the *Batman* is eighty two Pounds *English*, but fifty five of their Pounds: the *Mawnd* as much; howbeit, as in *Persia*, the *Mawnd*, *Shaw* and *Tabriz* differ, even as our *Troy* and *Haverdupois*; so in all parts of the World where wealth and traffick is, are such distinguiishments: in a word, the *Bannians* (as crafty, the Proverb goes, as the Devil) by a moderate outside and excess in superstition make many simple Men lose themselves, when by a heedless admiration of their plain dealing, or rather hypocrisy, they intangle themselves by crediting their sugred words, in way of Trade or Compliment, baiting pleasingly swallowed when one contemplates their moral temperance. They are generally good Arithmeticians, till of late have little else than number of the Mathematicks save in the Art of Dialling; concerning which, some report that the *Bannians* here had a Clock that struck 64 times in 24 hours. The Day and Night they divide into four, and sub-divide that into eight, and some little skill they have in Navigation; great admirers they are of Nature, and faith *Seneca*, *Quid aliud est Natura quam Deus?* Reason to the natural Man being the Face of God, like as was the Law unto the Jews, and Golpel to the Christians.

The *Bannians* (or *Vanyans*) are oliveaster or of a tawny complexion, for the most part spare of body. They let their Hair grow long, and yet according to the Country mode their Head is wreathed with a small Shash which usually is white; their Habit is a long Coat commonly of white quilted Calicoe of the Dalmatick sort; their Shoos various in colour and fashion; some being checker'd and ingraled in elegant order, wrought according to each Mans ingenious fancy; without Latches, sharp and turning up at the Toe, thin Soal'd, high Heel'd, surrounded with Steel, fast and durable: The Women are of a whiter colour than the Men, not exposing themselves so to the Sun, yet want the sanguine mixture to adorn them, which they nevertheless supply by Arts, there being found the best Vermilion: they likewise wear their Hair long and disheveled; albeit part be obscured by a fine thin Lawn, through whose transparency it seems more lovely; their Ears, Noses, Arms, and Legs are loaden with many Manilios or voluntary Rings and Fetteres of Brass, Gold, and Ivory; their behaviour is silently modest, but full gorg'd (as some say) with libidinous fantasies. Marriage is here so honoured that most times they contract at seven, and at ten years old are often Parents; which puts me in mind of that which *Pliny* in his 6. and 8. *lib. ch. 17.* and 14. writes concerning the *Calinge* whom he places hercabolus, and would have us believe that the Women are pregnant at five and seldom live above eight; but this is certain, that if an Infant dye ere he be married his Parents procure a Virgin (to whom they give some *Dynas* of Gold) to be his Bed-fellow or Wife for one Night, to avoid the reproofful Proverb, *He dyed unmarried.*



An Indian Merchant, or Bannyan!

Polygamy here is odious, in which respect they cease not to vilifie the *Mahometans*, as people of an impure foul. In this they parallel the Antick *Romans*, who as *Tacitus*, *Marcellinus*, and *Tertullian* tell us so hated Digamy (both in enjoying two Wives at one time and being twice married) as no Holocaust was ever offered, no holy fire lookt unto by such, nor such as illued from such Parents. Their Funerals are of the old stamp (recorded by *Cerius*) sacring the Corps to Ashes in a holy fire, compounded of all sorts of costly woods and Aromatick splices: The Wife also (in expectation to enjoy her Husband amongst incomparable pleasures) envelops her dainty body with the merciless flames, for which affection she obtains a living memory. Their Priests called *Bramyni* or *Brachmans* are such as in old times were named *Gymno-sophi*, faith *Dorphyrius* the great Platonist in his 4. lib. *de abstinen. ab esu carnium*, and *Tertullian adversus gentes*, *Neque enim Brachmannae aut Indorum Gymnosophisti sumus silvicolae, &c.* a name given them from their going naked, for γυναις οι Νδου. Now if by descent he continued constant to his contemplation, he then attained to the degree or title of a *Brachman*: if he sought this degree by election, he was seven years (says *Bardeanes* of Babylon) stiled *Calamus* and *Samanus*, and after by that other attribute *Bracman*; who with the *Stoicks* held that God is *Anima mundi*; albeit *Plato* and *Socrates* could have taught them that *Deus non solum est mens mundi*, but that *Deus univerba complectit*; and *Virgil*, that *Deum ire per omnes Terraque tractusque maris calunque profundum*. Of all sort of Philosophers they were held the most learned and contemplative. *Tertullian* calls them *glorie animalia*; *Apollonius* supposes they were and were not earthly; their thoughts being so transcendent, as if they were ravish't by the sweetnes of that harmony the rolling Orbs in an exact diapazan send forth by their forced Motion. Their imagination flew beyond Nature, believing that this Fabrick of the inferior world was created of nothing, made spherical, yet

yet subject to dissolution; that it had an efficient cause being unable to form it self, and that that cause is the commander of nature; and that number is the first and most essential Element in the constitution of all Creatures. Our birth no other than quick conception perfected by death, which is the true Nativity of the Soul and entrance to immortality. A Tenet however opposed by the *Strocks*, yet by these *Bramyns* from the Tradition of the *Phoenix*, observation of Corn, and the like, so resolutely maintained that from hence arose that magnanimity of *Calamus* the *Bramyn* who at *Periagard* in *Alex.* fight voluntarily committed himself to the fire to become immortal; as *Lucan lib. 3.* reports of some others of his persuasion.

*Who whiles alive their funeral pyres erect,
And leap into the fire, helping death to effect
The close of life.*

*Quique suas artusere pyras, vivique calentes
Confundere togos. Proh! quanta est gloria gen-
Injecisse manum fatis, vitaque repletos, &c.*

These *Heliogapiti* from the adoration they gave and observations they pretended to make, would with fixed and unwearied eyes all day long gaze upon the Sun, during, which they would with their naked feet endure the scalding fands (the like of which I beheld at *Sarras*) neither extreme heat nor cold amazing them. *Alexander* visiting *Calanus* the late mentioned *Bracman* who burnt himself in that Monarchs view, (in token of his contempt of death, and certainty of his transmigration or shadowed immortality) and telling him and others of his opinion, That he would grant them whatsoever they would crave, They quickly answered, give us immortality, for of all things 'tis that we covet most. How can I (replied *Alexander*) do that, who am a mortal? Seeing thou acknowledgest thy self (say they) to be a man, why doft thou not then rather chuse to live contentedly at home, than by an unbounded Avarice thus to put the whole World into a combustion? But to return,

The *Bannian* Religion at this day hath these Tenets: The whole frame or body of the world had a beginning, created by a God of infinite power, eternal and provident: after he had made man, to associate him he created woman to sympathize in similitude of body and disposition. These he named *Pourous* and *Parcousy*, a couple so innocent that they reputed it a crime to cut any thing that had a sensitive life, feeding only upon herbs and fruits and the like vegetables, therein agreeing with those who imagine that *Adam* having the liberty to live upon herbs and fruit the killing of any creature for food was not used till after the flood. *Noah* indeed was in express terms not only licensed herbs and fruit, but every thing that inoveth and liveth was allowed him for food, *Gen. 1. 29. and 9. 3.* From this abtemperious couple sprung two couple of Boys (the Emblems of the four coin plicions,) *Brammon*, *Cuttery*, *Shuddery*, and *Wife*. Of different constitutions; for *Brammon* was Melancholy, *Cuttery* Cholerick, *Shuddery* Flegmatick, and *Wife* sanguin: Each of which affected a several calling. The first being a Priest, the second a Warrior, the third a Merchant, the last a Peasant.

Brammo the Priest (from whom the *Brabman* have their title, and not from *Abraham* who taught Altronomy) and *Keturah* as *Postellus* thinketh was directed (says their *Shaster* or book of law) to travel East to find a Wife; it being revealed to him that God had formed four women for him and his brethren, on whom to propagate; (for the reason they had no sisters to generate upon, was, because so holy a race should not descend from Incest.) After a long pilgrimage and prayer he espies his long lookt for Virgin, clothed with naked innocence; her face was yellow like Gold, her hair and eyes black, of a compleat stature, and whom without much courting *Brammon* won and married: this Lady *Savaree* proved the mother of a holy generation. *Cuttery* was sent West to find his Mate, his Sword in's hand, habited after his nature, all the while fretting for want of resistance, and that his patience was so long trod upon; at length he espies a far off one coming towards him equally inflamed with impatience; without complement they forth with aliaile each other, with such fury and so much bravery, that the first days fight the victory was not to be decided; next day they renew their courage, giving and receiving wounds insensibly, till in conclusion *Cuttery* grappled and seiz'd *Soddicasabree* by the tresses of her hair; but instead of subjecting her, is (by the fresh outbreaking of her beauty) captivated: after submission and repentance for his rage against such an earthly Angel, the is reconcil'd; and from them the West swarmed with a generation of Radiae or Souldiers. *Shuddery* the third Son of *Pourous* and *Parcousy* travels North, in equal hope to find his Mistrels; far he went and many strange adventures passed thorow and saw, witness that rock of Diamonds he light on, many of which (as any other Merchant would) he carried along with him enamoured of their lustre and sparkling excellencies:

lencies; till at last he met with *Visagnudab*, whom he soon won being of a tractable sweet nature and condition, and of her begat so many Sons that the North quickly became pregnant and inhabited. Now *Wyse* (the simplest of *Powous* Sons) a man of much plain honesty and comportment goes Southward, having intelligence that his female was therabout, whom (after he had passed seven Seas) the breadth and way is concealed in the *Shaster*) and built him a fair Mansion, hither *Tejumogundab* came to admire for rare a structure, whom he soon saw, but not knowing how to court is o'recome with Loves passion; long time he was rejected, till (by providence) she was mollified and made to yield, upon condition nevertheless that he should build many Pagodaes or kio! places for worship, adore Pictures under green Trees, which to this day his posterity observe ceremoniously. Thus, from these two, the South was filled with mechanick men, and such as practis' Husbandry.

When these four youths had consumed some years in those contrary quarters of the world whither Fate directed them; all four became equally mindful of their first home, desirous to visit their Parents; not only to propagate there and furnish that Meditullium of the Earth, but to recount their memorable fortunes and adventures. After much toil they arrived at the place from whence they came, each of them attended by a troop of their own off spring. Tis too great a labour to describe the joy and mutual embraces pall twixt them and their aged Parents, revived by this good hap from the benumming frost of old age; as also the reciprocal kindness and love that was amongst the four Travellers, a dull sense may easily comprehend it was without the least mixture of discontent or malady. Notwithstanding, to shew no *suum bonum* can be had in this life, in process of time the illuc of these four multiplying, the world began to lose her virgin purity; discord, pride and rapine mingling amongst them; so as brotherly love was laid aside; no appearance being now but of violence and voluptuousness. For *Bramon* grows idle and careless in his devotion. *Cutter* becomes insolent and aspiring, regarding neither the venerable admittance of his Parents, nor the dignity of *Bramon* his elder Brother. *Shuddery* also invents deceit, neither regarding justice nor equity, but delights in cheating his other Brethren. *Wyse* also grows unthrifly in a good conscience, banishing his innate honesty to entertain riot; For which, his cruel Brother *Cutter* domineers, imposing such burthens upon the Country-man that *Wyse* is now the object of cather'd 101, and the abject of his Lordly Brother, who also picks a quarrel with *Shuddery* and admits not of any reconciliation till the Poor Merchant had satisfied his Avarice with half his flore, so that such hate and fear grew amongst 'em that all their Deeds were involv'd in dark confusion. Now though deceit, riot and tyranny sway a while, an all-seeing Majesty sits above, who in his own time retaliates in the extremity and obliquity of justice. So it hapned: For upon a sudden, when they were most exercised in vulnay and least dreamt of an account, God robes himself with clouds and flashes terour; whereas the Seas multiply their noise and swell so formidably that they threaten an universal deluge: In the interim, the people are amazed with horrible cracks of thunder and such thick flashes of lightning, that the entrails of the earth seem to gasp and quake with terror: which done, in a moment the sea breaks o're her bounds, and in silence sweeps away all creatures upon the earth, purging ther by the natty smell of their position.

But God, who delights in Mercy his great attribute, repenting him of his severity, resolves again to furnish the earth with a new generation replete with more purity and perfection. To which end he descends and upon the high mountain called *Meropurbate* commands *Bremaw* to rise up, who (though till then uncreated) obey'd, and forthwith worshipped his Maker. In like sort, at two other calls came up *Vishney* and *Ruddery*, who performed their obeysance. *Bremaw* had power given him to create other creatures; *Vishney* had order to preserve them; and *Ruddery* strength to misfaire and be Gods executioner, by inflicting death, plague, famine, disease, war and the like mischiefs. According to this appointment, these three new created Lords manage their particular imployment, to each of them a set period of time being allotted to live upon earth: For *Bremaw* at the end of the second Age in fiery Chariot was translated: *Vishney* continues double his time and then dies, leaving the Isle to *Ruddery* (at the end of three times so long commorance) to destroy the world, and to translant the souls of good men into a Garden of ravishing delights, *Elysium*. But ere this was accomplished, it is fit to acquaint you how *Bremaw* came to furnish the earth with more inhabitants. The *Shaster* tells us that as *Bremaw* was ruminating how to act, suddenly he fell into a deep sleep or trance, and upon recovery felt his body troubl'd beyond measure, purporting some immediate alteration: Nor did his apprehension deceive him; for lo, forthwith his body

body began to swell, yea, so great anguish to afflict him, that in all points it resembled a woman's travail; and indeed it had Analogy, in that his bowels began to extend more and more and his dolor to increase, till (after great toil) the second swelling found vent, broke, and delivered their burthen, being two Twins, of each sex, whom he needed not give suck unto, in that by like miracle they immediately grew up to a perfect stature, and were miraculously furnished with language and education. *Bremaw* the Parent named them *Manaw* and *Cetroupa*, whom after he had blessed he sent East to the great mountain *Mounderpurvool*, where straightway *Cetroupa* brought forth three more sons and as many daughters: the Boys she called *Priaureta*, *Oura-apusha*, and *Soomeran*; the Girls *Connah*, *Souteritaw*, and *Sumbo*. The eldest son and daughter went West to a mountain called *Segus*; the two seconds North to *Bipola*; the two last of each sex to *Supar*; where they so generated that they quickly peopled each their quarter. Which done, God perceiving the hearts of men inclined to all sorts of Sin, to give them directions how to live virtuously and avoid temptation, he left Heaven a while, and alighting on the high Mount *Meropurbates*, thither he call'd *Bremaw*, to whom he spake many things out of a dusky dark cloud, now and then flashing glimpses of his Majesty; acquainting him why he destroyed the first world, their sins provoking him; and how he was resolved never to do so again: to that end he delivered *Bremaw* a Book (the *Shaster* by name) divided into three Tracts, dedicated to the three great Casts; the first containing Moral Precepts; the second the ceremonies of Worship; the third a division of them into three, with peculiar instructions to each Cast or Tribe.

Their Moral Law (read and taught them by *Bremaw* out of the *Shaster*) has eight Commandments; (most of which agree with the seven which Rabbi Solomon says *Noah* taught the World in his time, called the *Noahcidey*.)

1. Thou shalt not destroy any living creature; for thou and it are both my creatures.
2. Thou shalt not sin in any of thy five senses: Thy Eyes not beholding vanity; thy Ears to be stopp'd in hearing evil; thy Tongue not to utter any filthiness; thy Pallat hating Wine, Flesh, and all other vive things, thy hands abhorring things desiled,
3. Thou shalt duly perform set times of devotion, as praying, washing, elevating, prostrating, &c.
4. Thou shalt not lie nor dissemble.
5. Thou shalt not be hard-hearted but helpful unto others.
6. Thou shalt not oppres nor tyrannize.
7. Thou shalt observe certain Festivals and Fasting-days.
8. Thou shalt not steal.

These eight Precepts are sub divided into four: each of the four old Casts retaining them. *Bramon* and *Shuddry*, i. e. the *Braminy* and *Bannyan* are tied to a most severe and strict observance in the *decorum* of their Worship. *Cuttery* and *Wysse*, i. e. the Justice and Labourer agree in theirs. From whence it comes to pass, that the Priests and Merchants (appropriating the first and second to themselves) are more superstitious than the Casts of Soulards and Mechanicks who assume a liberty of Meats and Wine in variety. Notwithstanding, all of them believe the Metempsychois of *Pythagoras*, whose conceits we will parallel by and by with these *Bannians*. In this place drawing your judgment to a remembrance of what is already related: wherein we may perceive the delusion Satan charms them with, whose custom it hath ever been to erect to himself Worship and Idolatry in some things (to make 'em more authentical) cohering with the Story of our Bible and in imitation of the Jews. Now that this *Shaster* of the *Bannians* is a depraved Story of the Bible, either introduced by some Jews such time as *Solomon* traded to *Ophir* (near these parts;) or from the Father of Lies, who usually dictates to his Servants, is plain. For, speaking of the Creation of the World out of a *Chaos*, and forming of *Porous* and *Parcones* successively, who sees not the alluding to *Adam* and *Eve* in this resemblance? Like that of *Ovid* and *Plato*, borrowed from the First Book of *Moses* his *Pentateuch*; which sacred Pen-man lived *Anno mundi* 2430. before the *Incarnation* about 1490. years; and is found to be more ancient in time than the very first of any of the Heathen Deities: The other of the Creation (delivered by *Moses*) shadowed int': The Universal Deluge and destruction of mankind pointing out that of *Noah*: By *Bremaw*'s receiving the Law from God (in a dark cloud and lightning) upon the high Mount *Meropurbates*, *Moses* his being on Mount *Sinai* in *Arabia* where the Decalogue was given: And in *Bremaw*'s departure from Earth to Heaven, the translation of *Elias*.

The *Bannians* are commanded (as in most hot Countries in all other Pagan Religions

is observed) to wash often. First, dawbing their naked Bodies with dirt and mud (the Emblem of sin;) then diving three times in the water, their Faces turned to the East, shaking a few grains of Rice as a Thanksgiving to that Element for purging them. *Banniani è lecto surgentes ad orientalem solem se convertunt & juncit manibus orant*, is observed by Pope *Pius secundus*. A three-fold ducking and tripartite thread is hung at three holes in a stone about the Neck, the Rice fixed each morn in an unguent of red paint besmealing the Forehead with a little white or yellow Sanders tempered with water, probably was an old practice amongst the Heathen, and is with them a Symbol of Baptism, and signifies fruitfulness: Their turning to the East is in memory of the Judgment and Creation, and to adore the Sun and Moon in that they take them to be Gods Eyes, *Sol omnia videns, oculis delectabilis*, full of purity, heat and nurture. But this their attending the blushing Sun at his arising, the elevation of their hands, murmurs, plashing the water in Magick order, diving, writhing, and acting other fopperies, albeit we can with *Solomon* say, *It is a pleasant thing to behold the Sun*; yet in this their View, hear them condemned by a Neighbour of theirs, *Job* that patient *Edomite*: *If I beheld the Sun when it shined, or the Moon walking in brightness, and my heart hath been secretly inticed, or my mouth hath kissed my hand; this also were an iniury to be punished by the Judge, for I should thereby have denied the God which is above.* And by the Plaistuft; *If we have forgotten the Name of our God, and holden up our hands to any strange God, shall not God (who knows the secrets of the heart) search it out?* And by *Moses* in the 4th. of *Deuteronomy* strictly cautioned, *Take heed unto your selves, lest ye corrupt your selves by making a Graven Image or the similitude of any Figure, &c. and lest thou lift up thine Eyes unto Heaven, and when thou feest the Sun, Moon and Stars, with all the Host of Heaven, thou shouldest be deceived and worship them, and serve those things which the Lord God I abh made to serve all Nations under Heaven, &c.* And by *Ezekiel*, chap. 8. verse 20. the House of *Judah* for this kind of Idolatry was reproved.

Above all, their Idolatry to Pagods (or Images of deformed demons) is observable: Placed these idols are in Chappells commonly built under the Bannyan Trees, (or that which *Linschot* call'd *Arbor de Rays*, or Tree of Roots; Sir *Walter Raleigh* *Ficus Indicus*; like that which *Cardan* calls *Ceiba*, growing in the *West-Indies*; or that the *Spaniards* call *Gorda*) a Tree of such repute amongt 'em, that they hold it impety to abuse it, either in breaking a branch or otherwise detacing it; but contrarily they adorn it with Streamers of Silk, and Ribbons of all sorts of colours. The Pagods are of sundry resemblances, in such shape as Satan visibly appears unto them. *Sedulius, lib. 4. Carm.* says well,

— imagine salsa
Visibus humanis Magicas tribuere figur-as.

Ugly-faced, with long black hair, goggled eyes, wide-mouth'd, with forked beard, every way so mis-shapen and horrible as somewhat resembles the old obscene forms of *Pan* and *Priapus*.

Under these Trees they actuate their Idolatrous devotion: there they pay their Tythes and Offerings, receive the unction and sprinklings of sundry colour'd Powders: these they perform Ceremonies, notice being given by the sound of a little bell: there they repeat their Orisons, make Processions, sing and perform many Mysteries; yea, so numerous grew their idol Temples, that (till the *Mullulmen* mixt among them) each Village had its several Pagod, many of which to this day are standing. One of the chief in *Indostan* was that at *Varian* near *Surrat*; another at *Nigracut*, where the Dewry is seal'd and paved with Gold, yearly visit'd by many 1000 Bannians, who in way of devotion have us'd to cut out part of their Tongues as a Sacrifice, and whereby to speak the *Sibboleth* better ever after. In *Jagannat* a Town in *Bengala* is another of their Dewrys or idolatrous Temples; where for seven days a Festival is annually observed: during which the Pagod is by the Tokires expos'd to publick view, and in triumph carried through the Streets; an idol of a monstrous shape, placed upon a Chariot with eight wheels, drawn by above 100 *Indians*, who in great swarms repair thither in devotion, and some out of zeal cast themselves in the way and are crush'd to death, hereby expressing a voluntary Sacrifice to the Devil. At *Tanafferi* also sometimes 100000 *Indians* go naked into *Ganges*, and bowing their Bodies, with their hands they throw the water aloft as an Offering to the Sun, which they worship: others of note are at *Bannaras* upon *Ganges*, at *Echarpore*, *Yallamexa*, *Elbas*, *Sibah* and other places. Part of their Religion consists in invoking holy Men famous for vertue. Howbeit the Cow is of most esteem with them: They have the *Cyrenian* or *Egyptian* Goddess for an example, the Image of a Cow; which signified the Tillage that preserved them (by *Serapis*, i.e. *Joseph's* prudence)

dence) from that memorable Famine mentioned in *Genesis*. In Wars the *Cutteries* or *Radiens* only call upon *Bemobem*; the rich upon *Mycasser*; the poor upon *Syer*; the labourers upon *Gunner*; the married upon *Harmont*, &c. Moreover, they affect Pilgrimages to Rivers, especially *Gonga* as they call *Ganges* which is more venerable than any other, in that (as they say) *Bremaw* frequented it, and that it has (at *Siba*, where it springs out of a Rock) a Head in form of a Cow (which they little less than worship, not only in respect of her fruitfulness but in imitation (it may be) of the *Egyptias Apis* a py'd Ox;) Idolatry so notorious, that it seems strange, what *Eusebius* in his 6. lib. of *Evang. prep. cap. 9.* affirms, That the *Seres* by their Laws prohibit Murder, Adultery, and adoration of Idols; That the *Brachmans* eat not any thing animate, drink no strong liquor, are free from passion, employ their time in the whole service of the great God, avoiding the adoration of idols: Albeit there are *Indians* in the same Region, who defile themselves with Idolatry, and such vices as most Nations punish: Yea, the *Perfis* us by a Law did allow of incestuous Marriages; which was so loathsome to the neighbour Nations as they branded them with the Name of *Magusses*, than which a more odious Name could not be given any. But how much these places are now altered from those Customs will appear by the observation we shall make in travelling amongst those Nations. To return: These *Bannians* wash oft, and thereby suppose themselves purified from sin (and dirt,) in requital enriching her Womb with Gold and Jewels, hoping to thrive the better; especially, when they are sick, thrifling to have their mouths moistned with a drop of that holy water; which is no less valuable than if it immediatly flowed out of *Paradise*.

In Baptism the Priests Children and Merchants (that is to say *Bramins* and *Bannians*) anoint with Oyl, and cleanse with Water: The prophaner sort as they call Men of War and Manufactures have only Wat. r with the point of a Pen opposed to their Forehead, as wishing that God would write good things there; to which the company say *Amen*. Their Marriag. s are sometimes at seven years old, but cohabit not till ten; if any dye unmarried, they conclude him unhappy; so that oft-times they marry them when d.ad, afore they be buried. An opinion probably borrowed from the *Hebrews* of old, whole Rabbins, from that Precept to *Adam* mentioned in 1. *Gen.* 28. *Credite & multiplicamini & replete terram*, make this inference or comment upon the Text, *Qui matrimonium non contrahunt, partem non habent in secundo futuro*; the unmarried have no part or portion in the World to come; adding withal, *Homo, qui non habet Uxorem, Homo non est*: a position the *Bramin* makes use of, to justify their Marriage Cuslome. The Marriage-ceremonies are not many nor frivilous: the Boy rides about the Town attended with such little ones as can ride, robed with Jewels, Scarfs, &c. one day; the Bride the next with a like train of Virgins no less richly attired: The Bride and Bridegroom are known and distinguished from the rest by their Coronets, the Ceremonies are celebrated by Kettle-drums, Trumpets, Pageants and the like. The Bride has no Money Portion, for they hold it contemptibl.; only some Jewels and Diuas of Gold, such as they that day are attired with; (I dare not say, those *Edras*; or Marriage-gifts mentioned by *Hom. 9. iliad. Snidas* and others.) The Wedding is thus: A Fire is interposed, intimating the purity and heat of their affections; a silken string circles both their bodies as the Hieroglyphick of Wedlock; then a Linen Cloath is put betwixt them, in token that till then they were unknown to one another in nakednes. This done, the Bramin blesses them, prays that he may prove as gentle and fruitful as a Cow; the Cloth is torn away, the string untied, and then they are one anothers ever after. These never marry out of their own Casts; Bramins marry the Daughters of *Bramins*; Cuttery's the Daughters of *Cuttery's*; Shuddery's, *Shuddery's*; and *Wyses* not only so, but also compete in their own Trades, as Taylors, the Daughters of Taylors; Barbers, Barbers Daughters, &c. And, contrary to the custome of *Mahometans*, their Wives live not under much subjection.

In sickness they call upon *Marrowa* (an Epithete of God) expreſſing mercy: If they perceive he is going the way of all flesh, then they open his hand and moisten it with holy water, water of *Ganges*. When dead, they walk the Carcals and carry it silently to the water-side, where they utter two or three words to that Element, then burn his body in sweet Wood or Spices which as earth mixes with the Corps, and throwing the ashes into the River think they have given every Element his peculiar due, and so depart well satisfied. The Priest presents his Son the Roll of his deceased Fore Fathers, and bids him fulfil the Ceremonial Law of deploring for ten days, neither using his Wife, laughing, eating *Opium* nor *Betele*, putting on no cleau Cloaths nor Oyl on's head, but that day Month yearly ever after make a Feast, and pay a complemental visit to that River which diuink his Fathers Ashes. Oft-times the *Wife* (to expreſſher love) incine-

rates her self at that time her Husband's body is burned. They affect no second Marriages, the *Rajeas* and *Wyses* excepted. Now the reason why they burn their dead, is either in imitation of those recorded by the Prophet *Amos* 6. 10, or in way of pity, lest the Enemy should offer it some villany; or if buried it would stink, and so putrefie the Grav's and make King unhealthy; besides, out of their Carcasses would issue Worms, who (for ought they know) may starve when the dead body is consumed, and that should prove a sui inexpiable.

The *Brahmins* are of 82 Casts or Tribes; the *Vertaes* are of a higher degree but fewer in number; their Habit is a Girdle of an Antelops skin tyed about their middle, a thong of the same hide reaching from the neck to the left arm, being elsewhere naked; some of them wear a three-fold thread, reaching from the right shoulder to the left arm, others three small strings of Silk upon their flesh as low as their waist, which serves as a badge of their Profession, and either in memory of the three Sons of the second Creation, or of *Para Bramma* and his three Sons, by them adored; upon their head they wreath some fine white Callico, in which their hair is neatly plaited; in their Ears they wear Gold Rings, sometimes set with Stones of price: they marry but once, fast strictly, drink moderately, walh frequently, and by the other Sects are highly reverenced.

The *Cutteries* allume a greater liberty; for being men of War they scruple not to shed blood, eat flesh, and to appear libidinous; they are for the most part called *R. jaes* or great men; have six and thirty Casts, from some of which none of them but is descended: Of these are the Tribes of *Dodepuchas*, some being *Chawah*, some *Solenkees*, some *Vaggelas*, some *Fighters*, and some *Paramors*: Of long times they have been Owners of *Indostan*, the last of which by *Aladin* a *Potan* King of *Delly*, had wrested from him *Guzzaraz*; since when, most of the remainder is taken away from them by the *Eme of Tamerlane*: At this day they call themselves *Rashpoote* (or Sons of Kings) and live lawless to the *Moor*; the chief of which, at this day, are *Rana Radjee Mardow*, *Radjee Surmal-gee*, *Rana Berwanshaw*, *Mahobet-chan*, *Rada Barmalge*, *Radjee Ramnagar*, *Radjee Jobb*, *Jessingh*, *T-ettersingh*, and *Marsingh*, &c. And thic being for the greatest part mountaineers are rude and of a more warlike disposition than those civilized Indians that live in Cities, and inhabit the Champain Countries; and thence it is that they value neither the *Potans* nor the *Bullockes*, which be the fighting men among *Mahometans*.

The *Shudderyes* or *Ramymans* are Merchants, and (contrary to their name, which signifies hamelet's) are the most crafty people throughout India. Full of phlegmatick fear they be and superstition: They are indeed merciful, grivinc to see other people so hard-hearted as to feed upon Fish, Flesh, Radish, Onions, Garlick, and such things as either have life or resemblance of blood. They for their parts will not kill so much as a Louse, a Flea, a Kakaroch, or the like; *Non usus erat carnium ante diluvium*, saith *Co-mestor*; but contrariwise buy their liberty of such Sailors, and others, as of necessity must crush them: yea, they have Hospitals for old, lame, sick or starved Creatures, Birds, Beasts, Cat, Rats, or the like; and have no worse men to oversee them than the *Pushelans*, the best respected sorts of *Brahmins*. These are of *Pythagoras* his doctrinating, believing the Metempsychosis or transanamation or passage of Souls into Beasts: As for example; the Souls of Drunkards or Epicures into Swine; the lustful and incestuous into Goats and Dogs; the Dissemblers into Apes, Crocodiles, and Foxes; the lazy into Bears; the wrathful into Tygers; the proud into Lions; the blood-thirsty into Wolves, Ounces, Snakes; the perjur'd into Toads, and the like: but the Souls of good men, abstemious, pitiful, and courteous, into Kine, Buffaloes, Sheep, Storks, Doves, Turtles, &c. An opinion memoriz'd by *Ovid*, 15. *Metamorph.*

Heu quantum scelus est in vicerre viscera condii,
Congestioq; avidum pinguefere corpore corpus,
Alteriusque animantem animantis vivere letu!
Parcite (vaticinior) cognatas cede nefanda
Exturbare Animas, nec sanguine fanguis
alatur.

Flesh fed with flesh; oh what impiety!
Thy greedy corps with corps to sat therby!
One living thing to live by other's death:
Oh spare! I warn you, to disturb the breath
Of Kinmen by foul slaughter; for your blood
With others blood to feed, is no ways good.

And in justification of this opinion they have the best learned amongst the Heathens, no less than *Plato* himself for their instructor; who to perwade men that the Soul was immortal, and that there was *pens* and *premium* after this life, reigns the Metempsychosis of the souls of men into Bees and Ants, if good; into Wolves and Dogs, if bad, &c. which nevertheless he professes he neither believes for truth himself, nor takes for any other than a Fiction.

The last Sect or Caste of Gentiles are the *Wise*; a name, albeit derived from *Wise* the youngest son of *Pourous* and *Parcootee*, yet in their tongue properly signifies a labouring man: These be of two sorts, the *Wise* and the *Coolie*; the first agrees with the *Banymen* in abstinence, the other of late years not forbearing to eat any manducable Creature; the purer sort are subdivided into other 36 Casts.

The result of all is, that these four Casts in time grew so impious that God required *Ruddery* to command a blast of wind to sweep away that Generation; which accordingly he did: That tempest raged so violently that the Mountains and Rocks were hurled and tossed to and fro like dust or tennis-balls; the Seas were turned out of their course, yea holy *Ganges* out of her Channel, wherein all (save a very few honest men and women which were spared and left to replenish) in that tempest perished: this was the second confusion. Soon after, God gave them a King (propagated from the seed of the *Braymons*) called *Ducera* who begat *Ram*, so famous for piety and high attempts, that to this day his name is honoured; insomuch that when they say *Ram Rame*, 'tis as if they should say, *All good betide you*.

Now to shew the imbecility of mans nature, in proces of time the world again grew abominable; so that *Ruddery* commands the earth to open and swallow down quick those ungodly wretches, a few excepted, who the third time people the Earth with humane Inhabitants: Then (as *Bremaw* had formerly) *Vifney* the Mediator of mercy ascended (like another *Astrea*) into Heaven, leaving *Ruddery* to over-rule this Age of Iron; at the end of which he also will be rapt into Paradise. These four Ages they call *Curtain*, *Dusper*, *Tetraoo*, and *Kolee*.

Touching the last Judgment they hold it shall be more dreadful than the other; the Moon will look red as blood, the Sun will shed his light like purling Brimstone; after which will follow an universal flahsing of fire with loud thunders; then a flamy rednes will overspread the Heavens, and the four Elements (of which the world consists) shall maintain a dreadful fight, so long and so fiercely one against another, that at last all will be revolved into a dark confusion. The souls of such as were good men *Ruddery* is to transport into Heaven, the wicked must perish; but the bodies of both rise no more, as they teach, being too incredulous of the Resurrection.

Now albeit these people, in a continued series of ignorance, believe that their *Shaster* was immediately from God; yet that it is grounded upon tradition, and patched out of Histories Jewish and gentile, I have already shewed; both what is in imitation of the holy Scripture, and from the rule and practise of other Nations: and we may add, that their burning the dead is borrowed from *Amos* 6. 10. their marriage after death from *Cerinthus* and *Marcyon* old Heretics who used to baptize after death in case they were not pre-baptiz'd: the thread tripartite hung about their neck, is a mysterious denotation of the Trinity; Rice and painting in their forehead not only a symbol of Baptism but in imitation of the Star *Rempham* fixed in the brow of the idol *Moloch* or of *Julius Casar* as an embleme of immortality. See also in how many things they concur with *Pythagoras* (to this day famous among them.) These *Bramins* in most places affect silence; for five years they are not suffered to speak in the Schools, but understand one another very much by dumb signes; they adore toward the Sun; honour Angels; observe a Munday Sabbath; abstain from second marriages, (some from the first) affect white garments, loath coughing, spitting and the like; forbear swearing and blasphemey, shun pleasure, drink water, believe the transmigration of mens souls into beasts, offer inanimate sacrifices, deny the bodies resurrection, hate to touch a pot or cup with their mouth but rather pour the liquor in at a distance, reverence Elders, eat nor drink with men of other Religions, use washings much, touch no unclean thing; and many other, in little or nothing differing with the *Pythagoreans* as may be gathered out of *Josephus*, *Suidu*, *Philo*, *Laertius* and others.

For variety sake, turn we now to another sort of *Gentiles* in *Surrat* and *Guzzurat*, called *Persees*, who are a people descended out of *Perse*, banish hither (to avoid Mahometry and circumcision) upon the death of valiant *Yezigird* the *Persian* King who died Anno Dom. 635. or thereabouts; whose life and doctrine (as it is gathered from the *Daroo* or Priests of this Sect, by Mr. *Lord*, a Minister for some years resident in the Factory of *Surrat*, with what I gathered there myself) take briefly as followeth.

Into India these *Persees* came (such time as *Omar* the second *Chalip* after *Mahomet* sub-jected *Perse*) in five *Junks* from *Isfquez*, sailing to *Surrat*, where after treaty with the *Rajees* and *Banymans* they got leave to plant; and living peaceably to exercise their Religion. A Religion, if I may so call it, deduced from the reign of *Gustap* who was King of *Perse* Anno *Mundi* 3500, before our Saviours Incarnation 500 years, written in their *Zundavastapp* (or Law-book) to this purpose.

*Religion of
the Persees.*

Such

Such time as *Gushasp* (the 14 King of *Persia*, from *Kiyomarraz*, by some thought *Noab*) swayed the Imperial Scepter, it chanced that *Espintaman* and *Dodoos* two poor people, man and wife, *Chinas* by extraction, lived long together in good repute, but without Fortunes blessings, either as to Estate or Children: Howbeit, upon *Dodoos* prayer a Son was given her; who in his conception promised (by some rare and fearful dreams the mother hatched) great matters, not only to the astonishment of his parents, but amazement of the *China* King, who, out of jealousie and disposition to credit any report) sought to prevent all danger by killing or poisoning him: but (to shew a superior power always, and never misses to accomplish its designs though by man never so much opposed,) nothing could do him harm; yet fearing his parents ruine, and to ease the King of his fear, they consent to give *China* a farewell, and seek a securer abode in a region more remot, where they might more freely live and meditate.

Far they travelled, many rare things they saw, past over many great Riveron foot, for *Zeroot* (so was this young Prophet named) turned them into solid Ice, and after thawed them at his pleasure, and many rare adventures found, (all which are here omitted, in that Religion is the mark we shoot at) not staying long in any place till they arrived in *Perja*, where they rested and intended to settle. *Zeroot* (as good men use) spent most of his time in meditation: but observing the disorder of mens living, sorrow overcame him, and finding the place he was in not fit for Revelations, away he goes, without resting till he came into a dark Valley which was obscured by two lofty Mountains, a solitary and fit place for meditation. There he ingeminates his murmurs, with dexterous eyes, erected hand, and knees bended; when lo, an Angel whose face was more resplendent than the sun, in this manner salutes him. Hail *Zeroot*! man of God, what wouldest thou? Who straight replies, The presence of God, and that I may receive his will and directions how to instruct my Nation. His prayer was readily granted, his body purged, his eyes sealed and wrapt up. Being past the Element of Fire and the higher Oubis as faith their *Zundaroufaw*, he was presented before a Supreme who was arrayed with such resplendent glory that (till he had Angels eyes put into his head) he could not gaze upon such a dazzling Majesty. There he received his Laws (no place but Heaven will serve to teach Philosophy from, to converse with men *Laerius* writes to *Socrates*) uttered by the Almighty, whose words were unaccompanied with flames of Fire;) such Laws, such secrets, as some of them are not to be promulgated. *Zeroot* before his return makes this request, that he in the live so long as the World endured, in that proportion of time, eager to make all the people of the earth imbrace his doctrine: but his impolicy being pitied, and in a Mirror the reflex of time, *Lucifer's* craft, mans misery, and other mysteries revealed, foretold his vain desire, so that having worshipped, and taken the *Zundaroufaw* in his left hand, with some celestial Fire in his right, by *Bahman Omshanpan* his good Angel, (who cleft the air with his golden wings,) he was, as in a trice, set down in that lame valley where the spirit formerly found him.

Zeroot having thus armed himself against temptations, bidding his Hermitage farewell travels homeward to publish his Law. Satan (who all the while looked askant upon *Zeroot*) labours to seduce him, and after a short excuse for his rude intrusion professes himself his unfeigned friend, assuring him the other Angel had deluded him; that God in no wise delighted with *Zeroot's* design sufficiently expressed as much by suffering him to withdraw so quickly; the denying his request argued Gods neglect of him; his travel to reclaim the world was vain, mens minds so doted upon pleasure; his Book was full with lies, and that in publishing it thence would be his reward; his Fire was a merciles Element useless in those hot Regions: Concluding, that if *Zeroot* would depend upon him he would furnish him with all delights, honours and pleasures imaginable, give him power to do miracles, so as he might be worshipped as a God; which if he refused he was but simple and in no wise worthy his charity.

Zeroot, perceiving the tempter was no better than Lucifer, bid him avoid; and to his addition of terror call to mind how by his impolicy he lost Heaven, and how malice made him desirous to draw others into like damnation; the Book he so scoff at should condemn him, that Fire torture him and all such black mouth'd detractors as himself. Whereupon the Fiend vanished; and *Zeroot* at length arrived where he found his Parents who received him with unexpressible gladness, to whom he imparted his passed fortunes and intentions. *Dodoos* his Mother imagining it a crime unpardonable that so excellent a Prophet should longer be concealed, gravely transported that without longer circumstance she blazoned abroad the story of her dreams and his conception, calumnias, vilions, the excellency of his Book, and the authority he had to publish it. The people admire what they heard; so as *Gushasp* the *Persian* King having notice therof and

and desiring to see the man, and enquire into the truth, sends for him; and after some discourse is so well satisfied, that forthwith wavering in his former Religion he judges *Zeroots* better. Which sudden persuasion so dejected the Arch-flamen, that he forthwith invents all ways possible to reclaim the King. To effect it, first he bribes *Zeroots* Servants to convey under his Bed the bones of dead Carcases, things hateful to the *Persian*; and then possesses the King that this stranger was a banished man of an impure conversation, witness the stufling the Bed he slept upon. The King hereupon being brought to view that nasty deceit, and finding the report true, first abominates him and then shuts him into a loathsome dungeon: but this misery of his endured not; for the King having a Horse of great account deadly ill, proposes great rewards to any could recover him: none durst undertake it fearing the penalty, till *Zeroot* giving him a drink recovers him; an act so acceptable to *Gustaf*, that the Prophet was received into grace again, whereby he had the readier way to discover the Flamens knavery; and having thus vindicated his own integrity, had the opportunity to publish his doctrine, which by some miracles intermixt, was especially by the vulgar sort credited.

It chanced that the King (either stimulated by his Church-men or judging *Zeroot* able to do any thing) calls for him, professing his propensity to be of his Religion, conditionally he would grant him four things: First, that he might never dye; Secondly, that he might ascend Heaven and descend as often as he listed; Thirdly, that he might know what God had done and intended; Fourthly, that his body might be invulnerable.

Zeroot amazed at these unreasonable demands, and perceiving it otherwise impossible to have his Dogmata's received, tells the King, That for one man to have all those properties was to be God more than man; that the King should have the liberty to chuse any one for himself, and the other three should be distributed to any other three he should please to nominate. Which being accepted, *Gustaf* makes the second his choice, that he might ascend and descend at pleasure; to know the secrets of Heaven was granted to the Kings Church-man; to live for ever was conferred upon *Pischuton*, (the Kings eldest Son) who (they say) lives yet upon *Damean's* high Mountain, guarded by thirty Spirits to forbid others the entrance, and lest by setting foot upon that holy ground they also should live for ever: to be free from hurt was granted *Expander* the Kings youngest Son: After which the *Zundavastaw* was opened, the new-broach'd Doctrine read, and universally accepted of.

The *Zundavastaw* then has a three-fold division; the first treats of Judicial Astrology, called *Astrodeger*, and committed to the care of those they call *Sejopps*, i. c. *Sages*: The second of Natural Philosophy is studied by the *Hackeans*, i. c. *Physicians*: The last is a compound of Religion named (from the Inventor) *Zeroots*, kept by the *Daroos*, i. c. *Predicants*: Each of which three contain seven Chapters.

The *Zeroots* also consists of three parts, pointing at three several sorts of Men, Laymen, Clergy, and Arch-bishop: to every of them it enjoins an increase of Commandments; to the first sort five; to the second eleven; to the third thirteen.

The *Bchedins* or Lay-mens Precepts are five, *viz.*.

1. To cherish shamefac'dnes; a vertue deterring all sorts of ugly vices, as pride, revenge, theft, adultery, drunkenness, and perfidy.
2. To cherish fear.
3. To pre-meditate what they are to do; that if bad, they may reject; if good, observe it.
4. Each day's first object to be a *memento* of Gods love to urge their gratitudo.
5. To pray daily to the Sun, and nightily to the Moon, as the two great Lamps and Witnesses which be most opposite to the Devil who delights in darknes.

The eleven given to the *Herboids*, *Daroos* or Priests to practise are these (the other also of the *Bchedin* they observe;) 1. To be constant to that form of worship in the *Zundavastaw* mentioned. 2. Not to covet what belongs to another. 3. To abhor lies. 4. Not to be worldly minded. 5. To learn the *Zundavastaw* by rote. 6. To keep themselves free from pollution. 7. To forgive injuries. 8. To teach the Laity how to comport themselves in adoration. 9. To license Matrimony. 10. To be frequent at Church. 11. Upon pain of Fire eternal to believe in no other Law; which they are neither to add unto, nor diminish.

3. The *Distoore* or *Pope* (one at once) has thirteen; and as he precedes the rest in dignity, so is his life most strict; for he is obliged to observe not only his own, but also the two former Tables.

1. He must not touch any profane thing, no not the Lay-men or *Daroos* of his own belief, without washing or purifying after.
2. He must do every thing having relation to himself with his own hands, as planting, sowing, cooking, &c.
3. He

3. He is duly to receive the Tenth of what the Laity possess. 4. He is to avoid vain-glory, and with his great in-come to exercise Acts of Charity. 5. His Houtc is to adjoin the Church so as he may be oft there and go and come without being taken notice of. 6. His washings are to be more frequent than others, his food purer, and to refrain his Wives company during her pollution. 7. He is not only to be perfect in the *Zeroot*, but of greatest knowledge in Judicial and Natural Philosophy. 8. That his diet be moderate. 9. That he fear none but God. 10. That he tell every Man his offences. 11. That in Visions he distinguishtwixt good and counterfeit, and give right judgment. 12. That whensoever God communicates his goodness to him by nightly Vision he is to admire his mercy and to keep them secret. 13. That the *Pyre* be ever kindled till Fire destroy the Universe; and that he pray over it. This is the sum and substance of the *Zundavast* which Zeroot brought from Heaven. A word of their Feasts, Fasts, Weddings, and Burials.

They are tolerated most sorts of Meat; nevertheless (in obedience to the Mahometan and Bannyan, 'mongt whom they live) they refrain Beef and Hogs-fleth; howbeit the Rashboots eat the last. They seldom feed together, lest they might participate one anothers impurity; Each has his own Cup, so as if any of his own Calf chance to sile it, the other washes it three times and forbears it a while after. Six solemn Festivals they yearly obserue; the fist called *Medusarum* is kept the 15. of *Fere or February*; 2. *Persasbar* on the 26. of *Shernar or April*; 3. *Tarum* on the 26. of *Mahar or May*; 4. *Medearum* on the 16. of *Deb or August*; 5. *Homesparamadum* on the 30. of *Spindumud or October*; 6. *Medusan* on the 11. of *Adebeze or December*; all of them in memory of the Creation and monthly benefits. After each of these Feasts they eat but one small meal a day for five days after; and whensoever that Lay-men eat any Flesh, they bring part to their Eggaree or Temple to pacifie the Lord, in that for their sustenance the lives of those good Creatures are annihilated. Now concerning the Fire they adore, 'tis in memory of that which Zeroot brought from Heaven; wherein they memorize the Veilts, or rather apishly imitate the Jewish Law (the Devil as near as may b. deliring to counterfeit the best) in *Levit. ch. 6. v. 13.* where 'tis commanded that the Fire (that came from Heaven) should be ever burning upon the Altar, and never go out. And as to this Fireworship, we find in Story that it has been more anciently used in *Perſia* than what is here ascribed by the *Zundavast* to Zeroots time; being probable, that as the *Grecians* borrowed that idolatry from the *Perſians*, so from the *Grecians* was it borrowed by the *Veltal Romans*. In *Perſia* they had many *Pyree*, most of which were destroyed by *Heraclius* the Roman Emperor, during his Wars with *Kozroos* (at which time *Mahomet* served in his Army.) Some to this day are remaining, having (as they report) the Idolatrous Fire from 1000 years unextinguished. In *India* also the banish *Perſec* have their Eggarees; one of which is at *Nancery*, whose Fire has continued this 200 years, if report lay true. Where note, that this their *Godire* is not composed of common combustibles, as Wood, Straw, Coals, Slates, &c. nor blown by any Bellows, Breath of Man, wafting or like prophane things; but compounded of Sparks flying from a hot burning temper'd Steel, and kindled either by Lightning from Heaven, or by Beams from a Burning-glaſs, and the like; for, such only is proper for that their *Antisabeannah* or Idol-firc.

But if it chance the Fire have need of cherishing, the *Distrore* and other Lay-men (at twelve foot diſtance) surround their *Daro*, and after some mimick gestures the Priests add some sort of *Fuel*, and returning to the other people fall to their worship, beseeching that they may not only give it due reverence, but honour solemnly all other things that resemble it; as Sun, Moon, Stars; yea, and common Fire, which also they so divinely esteem of, that they hold it an impious thing to spit upon it, throw water into it, or put it to any vile or unnecessary use; but give a more than common respect to Wood, and such things as it receives life and vigour from. *Ignis perennus* 'tis call'd by *Strabo lib. 15. Ignis Deus ante omnes Perſis habetur*, Fire was principally worshipt by the *Perſians*. *Nec Ignem in uſis ordinariis defūtūm polluit* *andebant Perſe immunditiis*, not daring to pollute with any unclean thing the Fire appointed for common uses, saith the Historian. Now albeit these people say their Ancestors first practised this form of Worship, we find in Story that the Fire was in divine esteem with the *Cadeans* such time as *Abram* dwelt at *Ur*, and then in equal veneration with the *Perſians*. This holy Fire was carried by the Flamens in the Van of the Army when *Darius* fought at *Arbela* against *Alexander*, and continued un-put out for many Generations; *Ephesians* Funeral excepted.

Baptism. The Baptism of these Heathen Idolaters is of this nature: So soon as one is born, the *Daro* is called upon; who delays not, but being instructed in the precise time of his Nativity,

Nativity, calculates his Fortune: the *Darow* gives the Name the Mother assenting to it. This done, they together haste to the Eggaree, where the Priest puts a little water into the bark of a Tree, the name of which is *Holme*, the place it grows in *Tedz*, a City in *Persia* not far from *Sapawn*; Tree *Zerroot* blessed (and in this very memorable, if we may believe these people, that it never admits of any shadow;) the water out of this hallowed rind being poured upon the Infant, a Prayer is then made that it may be cleansed from impurity. At seven years of age the Child is confirmed by the *Darow* and taught to say his Prayers over the Fire (but with a cloath fastned about his head, which covers his mouth and nostrils lest his sinful breath might offend their Deity;) after which he drinks a little cold water, chaws a Pomgranat leaf, washes in a Tanck, cloaths his body with a fine Shudder reaching to his waite, ties a zone of *Culhee* about his loins woven with Inkle of the *Herbooks* making, (which he wears ever after;) and after a short Prayer that he may never prove an Apostate, but continue a Fire-worshipper; that he may eat no mans meat, nor drink any mans drinck but his own; he is ever after reputed a true Believer.

Their Marriages are distinguished into five orders. 1. *Shadan*, which is a marrying *Marriage* of two young Children, agreed upon by the Parents unknown to the Children; the vertue being, that if either dyc they go to Heaven. 2. *Chockerson*, which is a second marriage. 3. *Codesherabasian*, when the Woman is her own chuler. 4. *Ecksan*, when a dead body (not being married before) is to one alive married. 5. *Ceterson*, when having no Sons he adopts his Daughters Son, &c. The Ceremony is this: At midnight the *Darow* or Priest enters the House (for they wed not in Churches) and finds the Bride and Bridegroom placed upon a Bed together; opposite to each, two Church men stand with Rice in their hands (the Emblem of fruitfulness;) when first one lays his forefinger on the Brides fore-head, and asks if she be willing to take that man to be her Husband; who saying yea, the like rite and question is by the other Priest made to the man; who after the like answere makes a promise to enfeoff her in a certain number of Dyna'; to which in a grateful manner the Bride replies, She and all she has are his: the Priests therupon throw Rice upon their heads, praying that they may multiply as Rice: the Womans Parents give the dowry, and eight days are usually spent in jovial merriment.

Their Funerals these: They neither burn nor bury their dead; but having first put the *Burials*. body into a winding-sheet, all the way as they pass towards the Grave his kindred beat their breasts, but with little noise, till they come within 50, or 100 paces of the burial-place: where the *Herbook* meets them, usually attired in a yellow Scarf, and on his head wearing a thin Turbant. The Necesfiers or Bearers carry the Corps upon an Iron Bier (for Wood is forbidden in that it is dedicated to the Firc) to a little Shed, where (so soon as some mystiques are acted) they hoise it up to the top of a round Building, some of which are twelve foot high, and eighty in circuit: the entrance is most part at the N. E. side, where through a small Grate they convey the Carcals into a Monument; good Men into one, bad into another: 'tis flat above, open to the air, plaistered with white loam, hard and smooth like that of *Paris*; in the midst thereof is a hole descending to the bottom, made to let in the putrefaction issuing from the melted bodies, which are thereupon laid naked in two rows or ranks, exposed to the Suns rage, and appetite of ravening Birds, who spare not to devour the flesh of these Carcasses, tearing asunder and deforming them in an ugly sort; so that the abominable stink of thols unburred Bodies (in some places 300.) is so loathsome, that (did not a desire to see strangeights allure a Traveller) they would prove much worse seen than spoken of. The dislike the *Persees* express at my taking a view of this *Golgotha*, *made it appear they do not delight that it should be seen by strangers. A rare, yet no new way of burial; for I find the like mentioned by *Strabo* in his 15. lib. saying of the *Brachmans*, *The Brachmans, an incestuous race, being dead, desire to be exposed to the Birds, as to the noblest sort of burial.* Nor is it otherwife now than it was in ancient times, most Nations using a several sort of burial; for *Lucian* in his discours *de Luctu* hath this observation; *The Greeks burn, the Persians bury; the Indians besmear with Hogs-grease; the Scythians eat, or hang them upon Trees; the Egyptians powder; the Romans embalm; the Gangetiques drown; the Nasingers immerse; the Brachmans expose to Birds; the Batrians to Dogs, &c.* But as to the place we now are at, this Figure I took may give the better resemblance.

*In Durbar place:**of the Perses in India.*

AND seeing we are now by Providence brought into as Noble a Kingdom as at this day is extant in the Universe; give me leave to digress a while, that I may the better present you (but in a summary way) the topographic Description of this mighty Empire of *Indostan*, with which I shall mix a Narrative of such remarkable occurrences as have hapned there within these last fifty years: Which though it may appear too great an interpolation to our travel, will nevertheless I hope find acceptance.

India then (which takes name from the River *Indus* that bounds it to the West) is part but the greater part of the greater *Asia*, and by some reputed a third part of the old World. So *Strabo, lib. 55.* in whose age it was much more flourishing than at present, for he reports, that it had then not fewer than 50000 Towns, none inferior to *Co* (which was considerable) in *Egypt*. *Ganges* divides it into two, *Intra* & *Extra*: nevertheless, there be that subdivide it into three, *viz.* *Major*, *Minor*, & *Inter-media*. The soil for the most part is very good, except where the Sun rages; yet there too by reason of the long nights, breezes and showers it has for three months every year, the Trees, especially to the Southern parts, are ever verdant and abounding with Fruit, which twice yearly comes to maturity: and for Minerals of the best sort, Gems of richest luster, Silks and Spices of most value and use, no part of the World yields greater plenty. It abounds with Inhabitants and Cattle of most kinds. Arts also, especially in *Indostan* and *China*, are in perfection. It has excellent Horse, and Elephants of greater size and more docile than those of *Africk*. So numerous in Islands as they are scarce numerable. And concerning the Empire of *Indostan*, can you lend your Eyes to any nobler part of the World? which for spaciousness, abundance of fair Towns, numberless Inhabitants, infinite Treasure, Mines, and all sorts of Merchandises, equals, if not exceeds any other Kingdom or Potentate in either *Asia*: his vast (but well compacted) Monarchy extending from 20 to 43 degrees of North latitude; East and West, from the *Bengalan Gulph* unto the *Indian Ocean*; South, to the *Decan* and *Mallabar*; North-west, to *Caucasus* and the *Maurendarbar*, *Tartar* and *Persian*; 2600 miles some ways, 5000 in circuit; in which are 38 large Provinces (petty Kingdoms of old;) the most considerable are *Gujuras* (where we now are) *Malva*, *Pengab*, *Bengala*, and part of *Decance* (*Aracca* in *Prol.*) together comprehending 30 large Cities, 3000 walled Towns and Castles for natural defence seeming impregnable. And well may be, seeing this Country ('tis probable) was the first Seminary or Station of *Noah* (or *Noachus*) after his descent from *Ararat* not far distant hence; and afterwards the delight of *Bacchus* or *Bacchus* (from which

some imagine him to be *Noah*:) the wonderful increase appearing by that huge Army *Staurobates* drew out in his defence against *Semiramus* the *Assyrian* Emperors, both Armies making three Millions. And so awfully builded and planted was this part of *India*, that when *Alexander* by the overthrow of *Porus* near the River *Hydaspes* entred *India*, *Curtius* and *Herodotus* report that *Alexander* should say he found greater Cities and more sumptuous buildings in King *Porus* his Dominions than he had observed in all the World beside. But to return. His yearly Revenue is ordinarily accounted 50 crow of Rupees, each crow is a hundred leck, a leck a hundred thousand Rupees, a Rupee two shillings three pence, sometimes two shillings six pence. And indeed, both what Wealth and Power this Emperor is of may be conjectured by that one Province called *Cambaya* (wherin *Swar* stands,) the annual Customs and other Revenues of which as Merchants report is 200000 £ Sterling: And for Power, appears by that Army which *Badr* (who only ruled over this Province) fought with against the *Tartar Mamud* whom the King of *Mando* invited to his assistance, being no less than 130000 Horse and 400000 Foot, 200 Elephants, 500 Waggon, and as many Chests full of treasure for pay of his Forces. Howbeit, out of this prodigious income issue yearly many great and suitable payments to his Lieutenants of Provinces and Umbraces of Towns and Forts; having also in continual pay three hundred thousand Horse and two thousand Elephants, fed with *Donna* or *Pulse* boiled with Butter and unrefined Sugar; to those only his Fiscal or Treasurer yearly giving out above forty Millions of Crowns; and his continual Wars with his emulous Neighbours are no less chargeable.

The descent or pedigree of these *Moguls* or *Magors* (whether so named from the *Mogli* whence they descend or by possessing the *Brachmans* Country of old called *Gens Magorum* I know not) we find stamped upon their Seals thus. 1. *Aben-Emry-Temir-Sabeb-Querar*, (i.e. *Tamerlane* Prince of the four quarters of the world.) 2. *Aben-Miram-Sha*. 3. *Aben Mirza Sultan Mohamed*. 4. *Aben Sultan Abusaid*. 5. *Aben mirza-Emir Sha*. 6. *Aben Baker porshaw*. 7. *Aben Homayor porshaw*. 8. *Aben Elavar* called also *Abdul fettar ghabla-din Mahunud Achbar*. 9. *Shaw Selim* or *Aben Almorapher Nordin Langher porshaw Gazi*. 10. *Sultan Curroon* or *Shaw Jehan* now called *Sultan porshaw Bedin Mohamed*.

Their genealogy is by some deduced from *Cingis-Chan* or *Qam* as some pronounce it, a Prince of *Tartary*, Son of *Babur*, Son of *Portan*, of *Philcan*, of *Phoname*, of *Bizanbeg*, of *Shay-dub-chan*, of *Tominican*, of *Bubacan*, son of *Buzamer*; all of them men of note as Stories speak Romance-like in their generations.

Cingis-cham (as *Hastib* and other his contemporaries say) was at first by profession a Black-smith; but the influence of Heaven new molding him, in little time instead of his Hammer he took into his hands a Regal Scepter. His ambition took rise from the encouragements a man in white Armour (mounted upon a white phantasma) gave him, promising his help and stimulating his courage; so as communicating the Vision to sonic chief Hoards they give credit to his destiny and make him their General. He quickly shews how his metal was refined; for with a troop of *Mogli* (one of the seven Hoards) marching due South he subdues the Countreys as far as Mount *Belgian*, part of *Imans* at this day called *Nigrakott* and *Copizar* by the *Indians*: there the Sea stopped his carriere; but prostrating himself and nine times fumbling out his prayers, the effect followed, For (as their Chronicle relates) the Hill clove asunder, the Seaparted in two and yielded nine Foot broad a safe pallage. And was no sooner upon the Continent but that he hammers out his way with ruly Iron, first against *Un-cham* or *cawn* King of *Tenduck*; and after that doing such marvellous feats of Arms as requires a strong historical faith to give credit to.

Cingis-cham King of the South-east *Tartar*, after other victories against the *Russe* and *Tartar* died at *Ketoa-koran An*, 1228. some say sixty years sooner, of the *Hegira* 608, having died amongst his four Sons what was by his conquest. To *Tushis-cham* he gave *D'haft*, *Kapecha*, *Rhoz*, and *Abulg'harr*; to *Chagatay-cann* *Maurenabar*, *Aygor* and *Cho-razan*; to *Ogg* part of *Baltia* and *Caucasus*; to *Tuli-cham* his Jewels and Treasure. *Tulja* or *Tuxicham* dyed two years after his Father; *Kagathay* dyed in the year 1242. both of them without issue; whereby their Seigniores descended upon *Ogg*, or *Ogata-cham*, who at home and abroad expressed himself the Son of *Cingis-cham*; compelling the *Persian* Monarchy as far as *Babylon* to acknowledge him Sovereign; but in the year 1252. conquered by death followed the fate of his predecessors, having nominated for his Successor his infant-son *Gayuc-cham* under the tutition of *Minchoma* his Wife: but in the third year death called him also away and gave *Manchu-cham* Son to *Tuli-cham* (youngest *Tetrarch*) advantage to claim the Sovereignty by right of Survivorship.

This young Prince thus mounted to the Imperial greatness perceives the Eyes of all about him inflamed with envy and threatening his expulsion, enraged by the villany of

some that whispered out his guilt in the last Infants death : so that albeit he was armed with integrity and a just Title, he contracts for his defence with some neighbouring Princes to whom he intrusted the command of several Provinces of his Empire, upon condition they would hold of him in chief and be ready upon all occasion to defend him : To *Kablay-cawn* he gave *Ketachoban* and the Royal City *Cambaleck*, (pradventure that which some call *Cambalu* upon *Polisanga*, a River streaming through *China* into the Ocean;) to *Vlakuc-cawn* his Brother, *Persia*, *Chusistan* and *Cherman*; and to *Chen-cawn*, *Gazneben*: but e're he had occasion to experiment the inconstancy of his men, death summoned him away *Anno* 1260. but not before he had nominated *Vlakuc-cawn* his Successor. Who proved of another spirit, his delight being to dance in Armour to *Bellona's* Trump; first quieting his domestick broils at home, and then adding to the lustre of his Diadem *Babylon*, a great part of *Arabia*, and in *Syria*, *Aleppo* and *Damascus*; which places during life he kept under subjection and governed the people with great prudence to the year 1270. when (by the extremity of his disease finding death at hand) he calls his three Sons afore him, exhorts them to unity, divides his lands among them, dies, and at *Meragab* 15 farsangs from *Tauris* was with all due solemnity buried. *Habkay-cawn* the eldest had for his share the Provinces of *Hyeras*, *Mozendram* and *Kora-zaan*, (comprehending *Media*, *Parthia*, *Hyrcania*, *Batavia*, and *Sogdiana*.) *Hya-Shawmet* had *Aro* and *Adorbayan* (part of *Armenia* and *Iberia* comprising *Salmas*, *Coy*, *Nazivan*, *Marraga* and *Mirent* Cities of note.) To *Tawdon-cawn* were bequeathed the Signiories of *Dyarber* and *Rabison* (or *Mesopotamia*, part of *Syria*, and what was made fruitful by *Euphrates* and *Tigris*.) And to his Sons by another Venter *Nycador-Oglan* and *Targabec-cawn*, he gave Money-portions. *Habkay-cawn* that year died at *Hamadan* in *Persia* and made Protector to his Son *Nycador-Oglan*, who by devilish art would have sent him to an untimely grave ; but saving himself by flight *Nycador* re-establishes himself by name of *Hameib-cawn*: whose Reign was so pursued by divine vengeance that in the year 1275. he dies mad and was buried at *Cahban*. In his place *Argon-cawn* the right Heir returns from banishment, and by the people was joyfully welcomed, and at his Coronation assumes the name of *Tangador-habkay zedda* i. e. son to *Habkay-cawn*. This man swayed the Scepter five years tyrannically ; not only mallaering *Nycadors* Sons and Alliances but spares not to bathe his Sword in the Blood of Innocents ; so that he became hateful to his own, and stimulated the *Parthian* to revenge, by whom in a set battel he was overcome, and by the name of *Argon-chan* upbraided with cruelty ; yea, to compensate the like measure, he was cruelly tormented, his belly ript open, and his guts given to the dogs. To *Tangador* (the implacable enemy of Christians) succeeds his Brother *Givnor-cham*, who in the fourth year of his Reign perished by *Baldur-cham* his Uncle ; who also after five years rule died issueless. *Baldur* son of *Targabec* youngest son to *Vlakuc-cham* by allett of all the Nation mounts the Throne ; whose affections he so well answered, that never any before him was more beloved or honoured : Howbeit, so soon as he declared himself to his people that he was a Christian, his Subjects love grew cold, and many treasons (fomented by Satan) were hatched against him, so that at last he was slain (or rather martyr'd) by *Gaz-un-cham* Cousin to *Tangador*, who had small cause to brag of that his treachery ; for, by the permillive hand of God, when he least suspected treason he was wounded to death in *Carbin* by his own Household-servants not any cause aligned in History for their so doing ; but say, his body lay for a long time unburied. This hapned *An. Dom. 1305. Heg. 685.*

His Brother *Alaspu Abusyad* (or *Mahumet Ben Argon*) by his valour purchased the Diadem : to whom followed *Holaro-Mirza* or *Abusyad Babador-cham An. 1337.* who consum'd his life in venereous exercis: so that for want of illue this Kingdom became a Theatre of much trouble, no less than thirty at one time contending for the Sovereignty. The people thereby were compelled to look for help from home ; and none more safe to trust to than the Lord of *Samerhand*, *Tamerlane*, a Prince famous for his justice and success against the *Sarmatique Tatar*, *Preopense* and *Chynese*. Him they invocato by many Pretents of their love and a Letter filled with hideous complaints, describing their misery through the division in their Kingdom and pride of thirty Competitors. The Scythick Prince promises them speedy aid ; and accordingly with his 1. onland Horse enters *Persia* without doing any hurt save against the Tyrant, whom he so routed and with such speed, that within three Months they were all taken and made to quaff their farewell in the bitter Cup of death. Hereupon the people urged *Tamerlane* to accept the Crown ; who after seven and twenty years honourable Government (in that time captivating the Great *Turk Bajazet* whom he brought away in an Iron Cage ; subduing all *Asia*, yea, in eight years conquering more Kingdoms and Provinces than the Ro-

A.M. 5245
A.D. 1275.
A.Heg. 685

mans did in eight hundred : and 'tis note-worthy, that as *Alexander* from *Thrake* was terminated in the advance of his Conquest by *Samerchand*; so from *Samerchand*, *Tamerlane*, after his victorious march through both the *Asia's*, was limited by *Thrace*; such were the contrary race of those two Conquerors) this Monarch of the *Asiatique* world was nevertheless subjected by impious death, and intombed An. 1405. of the *Heg.* 785. at *Anz* in *Cathayo*, leaving his Sons and Grand-children to inherit, viz. *Joon-gwyr*, *Hameth-cheque*, *Myramsha*, and *Myrza-sharock* by some called *Soutochio* and *Letrochi*; of which, *Joon-gwyr* dyed (some say three years before, some after his Father) in *Palestine*, leaving two Sons *Mamet Sultan*, and *Pyr-Mahomet*; which *Pyr-Mahomet* was by his Grandire placed in *Gazneben* and *Induſtan*, where he ruled till *Pir-Ally* slew him treacherously. *Hameth-cheque* was slain in *Laurestan*, some say in his Fathers lait combat with *Bajazet*. *Myramsha* the third Son, was slain in Battel *Anno* 1480. by *Clara-Iſſuff* the *Turkoman* in *Aderbayon*, (but left Issue *Sultan Mahomed* Father of *Sultan Abusayd*, from whom the present great *Mogul* is lineally descended;) and *Myrza-Sharoc* the youngest of *Tamerlanes* Sons (surviving the other) held molt parts of the Empire, till dying in the year 1447. he left *Aderbayon* (or part of *Media*) to *Myrza Joonsha* Son of *Kara-Iſſuff* the *Turk* (who was new entred *Persia*) whiles *Myramsha*'s Issue to this day preferve the splendour of the *Tartarian* Emperor. *Myramsha* (by some called *Allan-chan*) left Issue (as is said) *Mahomet* named *Aben Myrza Sultan Mahomet*, who dyed *Anno* 1453. leaving to his son *Barchan* (at his Coronation new named *Myrza Sultan Abusayd*) many Ipacious Provinces, as *Badajzon*, *Gazchen*, *Cabul*, *Sistan*, *Kerman*, *Chorazan*, and *Khoemuz*: all which were not of force to secure him against the *Persian*, who having endured much affliction for tryal of Conquest, at last *Joonsha* with *Aces Ally* his Son, Grand-son to *Kara Iſſuff*, were beaten down; by which Victory *Uſan Caffau* (called also *Aſembeg*) Lord of the *White Sheep* took upon him the Government. Under this *Uſan Caffau* (an *Armenian*) the *Persians* invade *Sultan Abusayd*, who in a pitch field was vanquined and eighty thousand men he himself alſo slain, three hundred Elephants taken, and all his Country narrated by the *Persian* Horse: Yet by reaſon of discords reviving among the *Persia's*, they ſet *Abusayd* Son upon the Throne, by name of *Aben-Myrza-hameth-cheque*, whose four and twenty years were spent in eafe and peace. At's death his Empire deicends *Anno* 1493. upon his Brother's Son *Babur Mirza* named upon his accels to the Crown *Aben-Babur-Padjhan*; entituled Prince of *Mawrenbar*, *Balke*, and *Samerchand*: But in the ſeventh year of his Reign he was expellid his Kingdom by conpiracy of *Sha-Mahomed* (called also *Sha-beg-chun*) who claimed the Crown, pretending he was Son and Heir to *Aben-Myrza-hameth-cheque* the late Empcroure, being (as he laid) by craft itoln from his Nurie and conveyed amongst the *Ouzbeag Tartars*; whence (for ſome offence he had made) he fled with his lawleſs Troops, enters *India* and attempts the Conquest; where after he had tyrannized a long time he was in the year 1532. of the *Mahometan* account 912. iore 4.D. 1532
against his will ſent to an untimely grave, leaving no Issue: So that the Crown deicended by right of Inheritance upon the eldeſt Son of *Aben Babur*, *Homayon* by name; who was fadly proleced through the power and malice of *Myrza Kameron* his younger Brother that confederated with *Tzeerchan*, and at length forced him into *Persia*; where he was entertaincd, and after three Months returned back in the head of an Army. 4.Hig. 912

This alſo is remarkable (the Story whereof we fee painted in *Lohor* Palace) that King *Babur* thrling after the Conquest of *India* diſguifed himſelf with thirty Noblemen in his company in the Habit of Kalenders or Fryarts as if they were upon a Rummery or Pilgrimage, the better by this craft to eſpy their advantage: but being in *Delly* (the greatest City of the *Potow* King) could not to conceal themſelves but that *Tzeerchan* the King diſcovered them, and pardoned them upon condition they would ſwear never to attempt the Conquest during either of their lives. But when both were dead, *Homayon* (*Babur's Sun*) entred and diſpolleſcd *Abrum* and *Shec-Sha-Selym* (*Tzeerchan's Sons*) of the Crown. Howbeit, *Tzeerchan* a brave Bengalan Prince fights againſt this new come *Tartar* and defeats his Army near *Ganges*, forcing him into *Persia*; where he married the Kings Sister; and with her and *Byram-chan*, in the head of twenty thousand Horſe returns, and being re-feated in *Delly*, is acknowledged King.

Homayon Son of *Babur* great-grand-ſon of *Teymir-Lan* or *Tamberlai* being re-invested with the imperial Diadem of *Induſtan* by the aliftance of *Tamus* the *Persian* King, and returned triumphant by the overthrow of *Tzeerchan* the intruding King of *Potow*, who *Anno Dom.* 1550. and of the *Hegira* or *Mahometan* account 960. dyed diſcolorate; *Homayon*, for the better education of his eldeſt Son *Abdul-Fetta-Gelaludin-Mahomet*, afterwards called *Eobar*, committed him to the care and trut of *Byrangano-obaun*, a perſon of great parts and generous endowments; ſoon after it chanced that being in an upper Room

Room in his Palace at *Delly*, and chawing so much *Opium* as intoxicated his brains, hearing the singing Boys give notice from a high Tower that it was the time of Prayer, the King making more haste than good speed to the Chappel mist his step, so as he fell down forty stairs, by which fall he was bruised very sore, and after three days torment dyed; such was *Hemowyn's* unhappy end: Nevertheless he was with due solemnity put into his Grave, here called an eternal habitation; leaving *Achbar* his Son Inheritor to his greatness and misery.

A.M. 1522. *Echar* by help of *Byrango-Kawn* and *Chawn-Chama* his son, having first disappointed *A.D. 1522.* some Plots designed by *Abdal chawn* to disturb the publick peace of that Kingdom, was *A.Heg. 902.* with all due Ceremony crowned King in *Delly*; after which, he bent his endeavour to enlarge his Territories, and make known that he was verily the great-grand-son of victorious *Teymirlan*. In the first place he takes revenge of *Hemow* who had formerly chafed *Turdchan*, whose head three months after by mischance of war coming under command of *Bader-chawn* was cut off, and set up in *Delly*, which Province thereby was for some time quieted. Then by *Ally Coolichan* he subdues *Daab* (by fons called *Sambal*) a Province surrounded by *Jeminy* and *Ganges*, the noblest River in *India*. At that time *Byrango-chaw* (otherwise called *Byram-chan* the *Perisan*) aging fast, and tyred with the topceries of this World, having well discharged the trust reposed in him by his old Master, and not a little to his comfort observing in his Pupil a Spirit fitted for the Government of that Monarchy, obtains leave to spend the residue of his time at *Mahomets* Sculpure, in contemplation: But (in his Roomery in the way to *Medina*) at *Pathang* in *Cambaya* he was wounded to death by an obscure slave of his, whose Father he had formerly slain; so that by *Abdal Radjee* his Son (then not fourteen years old) and a great and much afflicted company this great Captain was brought back to *Agray* and there honourably buried. *Echar* laments his death, though by some (how truly I know not) thought an Agent; but nothing can recover him: And the better to forget his death he spends some time in building the Castle at *Agra* which was formerly of mud, but by him pulled down and so altered for the better that now it scarce admits a comparison through all *Afia*; 'tis of durable stone, well polished; and so spacious, that it comprehends three miles circuit of ground; built upon the pleasant banks of *Jeminy*, compassed with a stone wall, moated, and to be entered by many Draw-bridges, having four strong Gates, some Bulwarks and Countericaps without to make it more defensive.

Agra. (East from *Surrat* seven hundred and seventy miles *English*) the Navel of the Moguls territories, and Empress of Cities in *Industan*, has 28 deg. 38 min. North latitude, and is watered by *Jeminy* (*Jomanes* in *Pliny*, *Hynamanes* in *Polyanus* his 8. lib. *Semiramid.*) which from *Delly* glides hither, and commixing with *Ganges* flows into the *Bengalan Sea*. *Agra* was of old (say some, but without good Authority) called *Nagra*, and ere that *Dionysia*; whence they imagine 'twas founded by *Bacchus*, *Dionysia* being a compound word taken from *Dios Jupiter* his supposed Father and *Nyssa* his Nurse; others call him *Jamu*, (which causes some to imagine he was *Noah*, looking into the old and new World, and so called by reason of his Vine-planting, in *Hebr. Jain* signifying Wine;) but when this *Bacchus* lived will be difficult to know, seeing *Matus nuisse Liberos*, said *Diod. Sic.* Howbeit, *Fettiopore* till of late (no longer than fifty years ago) bore away the fame. But othersome there be imagine it took its name from the conquering *Agradarus*, as *Cyrus* was first called, who from his own Name gave several places their denomination. Others derive it from the River *Agrani*, which from hence streams pleasantly into *Ganges*, as *Arrian lib. de Indicis* called it. *Pliny* mentions *Agra* founded by *Agar* the Mother of *Ismail in Arabia*, or *India* as others; and some derive the name from *Agaramenes* a puissant Prince who commanded that part of *India* when *Alexander* fought with *Porus*, as we read in *Q. Cori.* and others. Nevertheless, in respect it's built, or rather increast since the Race of *Tamerlane* came thither, it may probably take its name from *Agora* which in the *Tatar* Tongue signifies a Town of Carts new built, or Town of Wood, as *Hacluyt*, fol. 489. observes concerning it; and agreeable to the *Seythique* Towns, who seeing the *Tatars* have no fixt station want not a *decorum* in ranking their Carts so as they resemble streets orderly disposed. What ever the name was, the shape is seminary like *London*: the streets are many and long and narrow, but nasty; the City is seven miles in circuit, in part walled about, and the Ditch fences the remainder. From *Agray* to *Lahore* (most of the way being through a shade of Trees) are five hundred miles; to *Brampore* are reckoned one thousand; to *Ajmeer* two hundred; to *Suras* seven hundred and seventy, or thereabouts.

Radjee Rana the most potent and noble Prince of *India*, whose progenitor was *Porus* of the old race of the *Indians*, at this time lost his strong Castle of *Chytor*, upon this occasion:

tion: Having intrusted that important Garrison with *Zimet Padshaw*, a Captain of *Eckars* Army formerly, but fled to the *Radjee* upon discontent; *Zimet* makes many in-roads into *Gujrata*, to let *Eckar* know how little he valued his force in those quarters. *Eckar* glad of the occasion, hastens with fifty thousand Horse against him. Some months he spent in besieging this place; but so fruitlessly, that he rather attempts the conquest an unusual way, undermining the Fort, and to the terror of the besieged, blows the trains up with Powder; causing such a breach, as himself and twenty thousand men immediately entred pel-mel, with such haste that *Zimet* the Rebel perceiving treaty of no value gathering in one his Family consumed himself and them in flames, to prevent the tortures provided for him by *Eckar* and *Mardou* his enraged Master. In this sort this famous Fort was taken, which *Aladin* by twelve years siege could not do: A victory so great, that *Eckar* causes it to be exprest in sculpture at *Agra*. He had no time to surfeit of this victory, receiving Letters from *Rajea Bagwander* Viceroy of *Lahore*, that *Mirza Mamet Hager* his brother with thirty thousand Horse out of *Kabul*, had attempted to prey upon *Lahore*: *Eckar* delays no time, but with his Army presents himself so suddenly to the Enemy, that without any resistance *Mahomet* flies away leaving his Camp to the mercy of *Eckars* Army.

This occasion drew the King to view other places of defence, which he both b.ettered by his eye, and gave in charge to such as he could trust. He also takes a survey of *Pang-Ob*; out of which he is soon called by Letters from his mother then in *Agra* acquainting him with the Rebellion of *Badr-kawn*, *Aliy-Kooli-kawn* and *Zemaen* who were sent that spring against the *Paranians*, whom in *Doodh* they put to flight; at *Sambel* also, and at *Lachnou* got a greater victory; and three weeks after, at *Joonpore* utterly defeated them, subduing to the Mogul all such Provinces as lie ingirt twixt *Ganges* and *Tjass*; conquests of so great note, that they grew efflated beyond measure, conceiting all *Indostan* under like possibility, and which they resolved to make trial of. But the reward and destiny due to Traytors overtakes them: for *Eckar* by swift marches, long before the Rebels expected him pitches his Tents on the East of *Jeminy* (the River at *Agra*:) which struck the adverse part with such amazement, that as men struck with guilt, forfeiting the memory of their passed victories, they betook themselves to a speedy and shameful flight; after whom *Eckar* eagerly pursues, and after long pursuit, the heads are taken: *Aliyuli-cawn* also was trodden under foot by the Horse, and *Badr-kawn* (by *Eckars* command and in his sight) was strangled. This done, *Gangama* is sent to *Joonpore* against *Mirza Suliman*, and the King retreats to *Agra*: where he fancies a pilgrimage to *Afmeer* albeit a hundred and thirty course or two hundred English miles distant thence; fancying, that by invocation of *Mandee* a reverent *Hodgee* or Disciple of *Mahomet*, he should obtain some illue masculine. Accordingly, after much foot-toil, (at every miles end a fair stone being pitcht to rest upon, which as yet remain,) he gets thither; where bare-foot very devoutly entreats dead *Mandee* for Children. This is a Prophet of great fame in those parts, and through the liberality of some devoted Princes there intombed in a stately monument, graced with three fair Courts, each of which is paved with stone, the outside Fabrick (after the *Persian* mode) being pargeted or plaistered, and polished in Mosaick order. *Afmeer*, is under 25 degr. 15 min. North Latitude, the Castle seated upon a high Mount, the greater part of the City being below, much after the similitude of *Dover*, the houses well built but of small strength albeit moated with a dry graff, and walled about with solid stone. Not far from which place is *Godab*, once the seat of the valiant *Rajboot* Princes: the Country is champaigne and fruitful, in many places affording the ruines of antique magnificence, which by time and war are exceedingly obscured: These *Eckar* coupled to the rest of his Empire; and by this having made an end of his oblations, in his return he visits a holy *Derwiss*, *Siet Selym* by name, of great repute amongst the People; who took it for so great a favour, that (by what skill I know not) he foretold the Mogul, how that ere long he shoud be Father of three Men-children; which proved so, and upon which account his first-born was called *Selym*, (he who afterwards was *Shaw Selym* the great Mogul, when Sir *Thomas Roe* had Audience at *Agra* in the quality of Ambassador;) the other two were named *Cham Morad* or *Amarath*, and *D'haen-sha* or *Daniel*: A Prophecy so grateful to *Eckar*, that in gratitude he erected a very magnificent Mosque, walled the old Town *Tzickerin*, or *Sycary* as some pronounce it, and from this occasion new-names it *Fettipore*, which signifies a place of pleasure; yea, grew so affected to it, that *Fettipore* he adorned it with a Palace for himself, and a Buzzer for Trade scarce out-vied by any other in the Orient; yea had made it the Metropolis and usual residence of the Court, had the River affected him, by whose unwholsomnes he forsook it; from whence

whence ruine and neglect have so moth-eaten her, as at this day she lies prostrate and is become the object of contempt and pity, from *Agra* being distant eighteen miles *English*.

Whiles things were in this sort digesting, news comes to King *Eobar* (then in *Fettipore*) that another Rebellion was begun in *Gujurat* by *Ebrahim Haffen*, *Mirza-cawn*, *Mahomet Haffen*, and *Zoon-cawn*, who had forraged as far as *Boroch*, and were marching to *Amadavad*, hoping with their troops of Thieves and Coolies to make a prey of that wealthy City.

Amadavad. Amadavad seems to me to be that City which is called *Amacastis* in *Ptol.* *Amadavatis* in *Arrian*. Howbeit, some say, it takes denomination from King *Hamei* who in the year of *Mahomet* 375, made it large and beautiful: the Pole Artick is there elevated 23 deg. 18 min. 'tis at this present the Megapolis of *Cambaya* or *Guzurat*, watered by a sweet River, and circled by a strong Wall of four miles compass, well and orderly advanced with many pretty Towers and a dozen Posterns; out of which, few palls or re-palls without a Pals, fearing treason from Prince *Budur*, who in our times with a hundred thousand Horse ranlackt *Cambaya* thirty seven courses thence; a course is equal to a large *English* mile or somewhat more. *Ptol.* calls it *Coyamba* and makes it part of *Cedrosia*, and daily threatens this fair City. The streets in *Amadavad* are many, pretty large and comely; most shops redundant with Aromatic gums, perfumes and spices, silks, cotton, calicoes, and choice of *Indian* and *China* rarities, owned and sold by the abstemious *Ramnans*, who here surpasses for number the other Inhabitants. Of note not is the Buzzar, which is rich and uniform; the Castle strong, large, moated, and the receiving place of the *Cambayan* Governor: the houses in general are of Sun-burnt bricks, low, but large and tarrased. Adjoyning is seen the Monument of a certain Pedagogue, so dearly beloved by *Sha Reer* the King, that by a stately *Mausoleum* he it rove to make him seem immortal; the building (which is arch'd) and pavement are of well polished marble: It hath three fair Courts, one of them faldidous in four hundred Porphyrian pillars framed in Corinthiack architecture; joyning to it is a Tank of Water compassed with Cloisters, adorned with spacious Windows, most of which give the observer a delicate horizon. At *Sefnes* or *Sarkoff* also (one hours riding thence) are seen the Dormitories of many *Cambayan* Potentates. *Rajboots*, the ancient Nobility of this County before the *Tatars* (from whom the present Moguls descend) were conquerors, lodged in a Princely Temple, much resorted to by the *Vannars*, who branch from the same root with the *Rashboots*. Two miles nearer the City we behold the curious Gardens and Palace of *Chawn-Channa*, who was Son to the great *Byranchan* the Persian; an Umbras, by whose valour of late years the last of the *Cambayan* Kings in that very place, by los's of his life, gave conquest to that Warrior and dominion to *Eobar* his Master; in memory whereof he built that stately House, and made those spacious Gardens, the view whereof worthily attracts a Traveller. Return we to *Eobar*; who no sooner received intelligence of *Hoffens* Rebellion, but with incredible haste he gets thither, (each twenty four hours poiting Seventy, in seven days four hundred courses) and gives those Rebels battel at the Suns first up-riking; and with their noise and clamour so terrifies them, that after final resistance their whole Army broke into disorder: many were slain in the pursuit; and by a fresh supply of twelve thousand Horse led by *Chon Goga* an expert Souidier after a small skirmish they are further chased, and in the flight *Ebrahim Haffen* and *Mirza-cawn* were slain, and *Mahomet Haffen* himself taken prisoner and forthwith beheaded. By this advantage not only *Amadavad* was recovered and better fortified, but *Suras* also was conquered, and most of *Guzurat* made subject to *Eobar*. This done, *Eobar* returns crown'd with Victory, and as the product of peace begins the Castle in *Agra*, which is built of such good stone, and the building so large, that it defervely challenges the Title of Princeps of *Asia*. Twelve years scarce finisht it, though twelve hundred Labourers at some time were employed about it; there he expended fifty thousand crow of Tacks; a crow is a hundred leck, each leck a hundred thousand; thirty, sometime twenty Tack make one Roppee, a Roppee is two shillings three pence; so that accounting but twenty Tack to a Roppee, the total he disbursed amounts to two millions and five hundred thousand Roppees. At *Fettipore* at that time also he spent about the Wall and Palace a million and five hundred thousand Roppees; in all, four millions. At *Tekander* or *Scranda* as some pronounce it, three course (or five miles) from *Agra* as we go to *Labor*, is the *Mausoleum* or Burial-place of the great *Moguls*, the foundation of which was begun by *Eobar*, the superstructure continued by *Jangbeer* his Son, and yet scarce finished, albeit they have already consumed 14 millions of Roppees in that Wonder of *India*. It well merits a little more in the description: It is called

The Castle
of *Agra*
built.

Scander

Scander i. e. Alexander, a place where the greatest of Grecian Kings made his ne plus when he made his utmost progres or march into India; which place *Ebar*, the most magnifique Prince of Tamerlans Race, selected as the Noblest Place of Burial: 'tis a *Mausoleum* of four large squares, each side being about three hundred paces; the material is free-stone well polished; at each angle is raised a small Tower of checquer'd marble: Ten foot higher than that is another Tower, on every side beautified with three Towers, the third Gallery has two on each side; the fourth, one; the fifth, half; and a small square Gallery or Tarras about, mounting in the whole to a Royal Pyrec resembling not a little that famous *Septizonium Severi Imper.* in ancient Rome you have represented in sculpture by *Laura*, or (but in far les proportion) that famous Tower which *Semiramis* built in *Babylon* dedicated to the memory of *Jupiter Belus* her Husbands great Ancestor. In this at the very top is the mummy of *Ebar*, bedded in a Coffin of Gold. The whole structure built in the midst of a spacious Garden, is surrounded with a wall of red colour'd stone, and in that a Rail mounted by six stairs which discovers a little Garden but exquisitely beautiful; so that of this noble Fabrick I may say,

Such a Monument,
The Sun through all the world sees none more great.

Ædes est, qualis toto Sol aureus Orbe
Vix videt. —

An Edifice so stately as ennobles these parts, and gains admiration from Travellers, yea keeps in lasting memory the founders greatness; near this is the other, erected in memory of *Tagea-Mahal Jangheer's* best beloved Wife, which monument some prefer before the other as more excellent, but both indeed are the wonders of the *Easternne* World for celebrated structures.

While these vast buildings were erecting, *Gangams* prosecutes *Mir-a-Suiyman*; but (whether of grief or age is doubted) died suddenly, leaving the protec^t on *Uter* of to *Skander* his Son, who in short time was made away by conspirators: In his place *Dowret*, *Bazar-cawn* son, a man both effeminate and hated, succeeded him. So that now occasion presented it self seasonably for *Ebar* to link *Bengala* to his Crown Imperial: a design so worthy his enterprize, that with an Army of fifty thousand Horse, two hundred thousand Foot, and six hundred Elephants he advanced against the *Pathan* Prince, and past over *Ganges* ere *Sha-Dowet* had notice of his coming; which when he was assured of, he dispatched *Radgee Bhan* with twenty thousand Horse to encounter them: 'twixt *Ziosia* and *Mohob Ali-poor* they affronted one another, and for three hours space skirmish gallantly; but *Ebar* over-powering them with his numbers at length has the mastery, and courageously pursues them to *Pathan*, which King *Dowret* had fortisied. *Ebar* by no means could provoke them to battel, nor in three months siege enter the City; for *Pathan* is a Town both great and well fortified; yet in the fourth he forces it, giving it as a prey to his men, who used all sort of hostile violence: The unlucky King was buried in drink, all that time sensible of loss, till too late to repent it; so that he was conveyed away in a boat, and at three days end made headles and sent to *Ebar*, as a symbol of their submision and his vanity. The King having thus fortunately proceeded in *Bengala*, goes back to *Fettipore*, where whiles he overfees his buildings he is nevertheless mindful to increase his Empire, which then was but in the Adolescency; to that end by the valour and vigilancy of *Rufan-cawn* and *Zadoc-cawn* the strong Castle *Rhanipore* in *Malva* was soon after taken from the *Radgees*, who of many hundred years had owned it. After which, the Castle *Rota* or *Roughiaz*, *Oreopanta* of old, in *Rota*. *Berar* in *Bengala*, was taken by a merry sleight: This Castle for many Ages acknowledg'd the *Radgee* her Goverour, her building both from Art and Nature being impregnable; 'tis seated upon a perpendicular hill, the ascent cur oblique out of the Rock for three miles compass, the rest of the Rock is round about and precipitous; the top is a plain of eight miles every way, the circuit twenty four; healthy and abounding with all good things necessary, as Water, Corn, Fruits, Wood, and sixteen Villages includ'd by the Castle Wall, which gives the defence two-fold wonderful; in a word, not any Fort or Castle in *Asia* (or it may be in the Universe) is more delightful or of greater strength, as those that see it have imagined.

This, the *Mogul* looks upon with a lustful eye, immeasurably thirsting, but knows neither by bribe nor valour how to compas it; and though he comprehends no way, yet knowing that the Foxes Tail is used sometimes to piece the Lyons Skin, caes not to torture his invention; the enterprize was undertaken by *Mohobally-cawn* a wife and daring Captain: Who having leave, without acquainting *Ebar* or any other with his design, attempts it with four hundred young men privately armed with Cryzes as a guard

to his Seraglio, which was in two hundred Doolaes or Cajuacs, as if he were going upon a journey into *Bengala*. In this order passing on, when he came within view of the Castle, he shews a *Radee* his Concubines, and bribes him to procure leave of the Lord above, that in regard of his haste he might with safety leave his Seraglio there till his return : The message being delivered, the *Radees* (who loved women well) entertains the motion ; and *Aly-cawn* imparting the secret to a prudent Eunuch, disrobes the women, and with their apparel cloaths himself and the four hundred youths, commanding the women to put on masculine attire and to continue the journey to *Orixa* ; accordingly the Eunuchs twelve in number, with Bows and Arrows guard the Seraglio, and by the *Radees* command are received (like *Synons* horse into wretched *Troy*) For *Aly-cawn* giving the word, the Doolaes were no sooner dismounted, but that therewithal inflicted the *Amazones* ; in the first place they secure the Porters of the Castle Gate, then with incredible speed assall the astonished Inhabitants, whom without much resistance they took prisoners, and in the end the *Radee* himself, whom (to prevent excuse) they beheaded. By this Stratagem the Castle *Rotas* was won, which was not to be taken by all the hostile force of *India*. *Ebar* entertains the news and manner of surprize with incredible delight ; and joys the more in his belief, when he views that mass of treasure which was sent him thence by *Aly-cawn* to confirm the truth of that conquest. After which the invincible Castle *Jeloore* was by *Gidney-cawn* an Apostle *Mahometan* also betrayed to the *Mogul*, though to his own brothers confusion. The fame whereof afflicts many Princes of the *Rajas*, each of them labouring to conserve their own against this over-spreading *Tartar* : to which purpose some courageously desie his greatness, of which rank was *Roop Marbie*, a Lady both fair and valiant ; who albeit her Beauty was more forcible to subdue than any Arms she could manage, nevertheless she confides more in her Lance than Beauty : so that animating her party, she vigorously falls into the *Moguls* Dominions ; but in the midst of her carriere was encountered by *Adam-cawn*, an expert Souldier ; who with his body of Horse so furiously opposed her, that most of her *Pattans* (or *Puttans* as some call them) in that skirmish were cut off, no quarter being given any but her self ; who rather than endure the shame of her imprisonment, the assault of her chastyty, or those scoffs they probably would have entertained her with, put a period to her life by poison. *Majoffer-cawn*, in the mean time, this year 1588. of the *Hegira* 968. being in *Guzurat*, hatches a conspiracy against *Ebar* ; and in the first place strangles *Gorobdas Mamei-cawn* the Kings viceroy in *Amadabat* and some Ombresses, he then seizes upon all advantageous places for the strengthening of his Rebellion : But by *Abdal Radee* (*Beyrangano-cawn* son) is no sooner opposed than vanquished ; and fearing to obtain pardon, destroyed himself in like sort as did the late nam'd *Amazon*. The report of whose death was no sooner bruited but the fame also of *Mirza Mahomet Hackim* (Brother to *Ebar*) his death occasions *Ebar* to assure himself of *Cabul*, which during *Hackims* life was impossible to be compassed ; but using with all kind respect his Wives and Children, he conferred upon *Chobec-cawn Hametbeg* and *Mamet Maxuen-cawn* large stipends and commands in *Meslipatan*, *Orixa* and other places, suitable to their merit. At the same time *Zerber-cawn* (late President of *Kabul*) and famous for his victory that year against *Maxuen-cawn*, *Bama-cawn* and other Rebels in *Bengala* was made Viceroy of that Province, and *Radzia Thormiel* called to *Fettipore*, such time as *Radgee Rangjiend* Lord of *Bando* (a Province adjoining *Agra*, redundant only in sand and stones) by perswasion of *Radgee Bhrymial* presents himself to *Ebar* at *Fettipore*, and inrolls his Countrey as a member or appendix of the *Moguls* great Seigniory ; by whose example sundry other petty *Gentile* Kings submitted themselves unto *Ebar*, and yearly (as a symbole of their subjection) present him besides Earth and Water their Daughters to be his Concubines ; to the *Mogul* a grateful tribute : and for their better satisfaction to court them in, at *Praje* (an hundred and ten course from *Agra*, *Chrysobora* in *Pliny*, by some *Nisaea*) raises a triumphant Palace upon a Promontory where *Jeminy* empties her self into *Ganges* : the material thereof is hard stone artificially polished, and calls it *Elabasse* ; in nothing more observable than a deep dark cave, in which are preserv'd (as reliques) divers deformed Pagoda's, ridiculously by them supposed to be *Babba Adam*, *Mamma Ewah*, *Seth*, *Enish* and *Methufelab*, whom they affirm lived here ; and to whom (from most parts of *India*) resort innumerable *Bambyans* for benediction : first purifying themselves in *Ganges* (reputed holy, and no doubt excellent, for we find that a pint of *Ganges* water weighs less by an ounce than any other water therabout) and shaving off their hair as an unclean excrement, suppose that thereby they have merited : the whole, is surrounded with a triple wall ; the first, being of square red stones and highest raised ; the inmost, of white stone, retaining an Obelisk

Jeloore
1588.

Elabasse
builted.

fifty cubits high, little less under ground as they say to make it firm and durable; probably fixt there for ostentation by *Alexander or Bacchus, Ovid. lib. 4. Met.*

*Whose conquests through the Orient are renown'd,
Where tawny India is by Ganges bound.*

— *Oriens tibi virtus ad regna
Decolor extrea qua cingitur India Ganga.*

In this (which many *Porsu* Kings formerly in vain attempted by reason of the overflowing Rivers) the King spent a myriad and two hundred thousand Rupees. Here also they shew a Tree which many *Porsu* Kings have sought to eradicate and destroy; but as report goes could never effect, so as 'tis little less than adored. Near *Elabasse* also is worth our seeing the stately Tomb which *Jangheer* built for his first Wife (*Raja Manjengus Siller*) who poisoned her self so soon as she received the report of her Son *Sultan Gisfroes* rebellion.

The *Moguls* affairs succeeding thus fortunately, no clouds appearing, *Ecbur* breakes new *Chimera's*, and fancies the entire conquest of *Psrop*, *Patam*, *Chormandel*, yea of all *Bengala* to the South; and to stretch his Empire North as far as *Tartary*. To further which, he hears, that *Abdul-cawn*, Son and Heir to *Skander-chaw* King of *Muarensaw* (part of *Tartary*) was coming to *Fetispore* to give him a friendly visit: He prevents part of his journey and meets him at *Laboro*: where there wanted no ceremony to content the *Tartarian* Prince, who after a short stay returned home with satisfaction. News at this time being brought King *Achbar* that *Mirza Sharoph* in *Badaxan* had been injured by the *On-beg Tartar*; the King resolves to vindicate him: but first, as more considerable, bends his march towards *Orixa*, that he might at once command entirely over *Ganges*. At *Atteck* he musters and orders his Army: to *Rajca Byrmel* he disposes one part, to *Tschun-cawn* another, to himself the third. *Byrmel* leads the Van, and out-stripping the Army falls furiously upon the *Pataniens*; who by their Lieutenant General *Zel-Ally* are received with no less bravery, but answer blow for blow, so long, and with such success, that *Byrmel* was forced to retreat with los; so as *Ecbur* by such as had having quick notice of it, at first the news put him into a rage; but Reason having got the mastery of Passion, rallies his men, and with fresh supplies makes a quick return; and having received a sharp charge by *Zel-Ally* and his late victorious party, after some hours close fight, *Ecbur* having far the greater Army, had the day; *Zel-Ally* lost, and then *Turcoft* the Lieutenant General were slain, and fifteen thousand of the Army left dead upon the place: by this overthrow the rich and noble Province of *Bengala* was totally subjected, which to this day remains a member of the *Moguls* large Empire. This happily effected, the conquest of *Kandahor* is next deigned: to which end, *Ecbur* hearing of a variance at that time hapning twixt the two Princes *Hussan* and *Rufkaw* (sons of *Mirza Beyram* the *Kandahor* Governoour) and the *Persian*; he confederates with the two young men, and sends *Chabec-cawn* with five thousand Horse thither, who at midnight were let into the Town by the two brethren, and the City made a Valla of *Ecbur*'s Empire. But *Abas* the *Persian* King not liking his enlargement that way, soon recovered it from the *Indian*. *Ecbur*'s Ambition nevertheless grows boundles; so he can overcome, he cares not how, nor where he conquers: for, hearing of the old King of *Muarensaw*'s death, notwithstanding his pretended friendship to his Son, he covets to become his Successor. And first, to discover their strength, he sends *Tzredder-cawn* and *Hackem-cawn* his Ambassadors, who under an amicable colour of condoling and comforting *Abdul-cawn* for his Fathers death, at the years end return well instructed: but the great *Mogul* reserves the practick part unto himself. For perceiving *Cassimer* interposing, and at that instant not under his power, he sends *Ally Mirza* in Amballie to *Jussoff-cawn* (a fearful King) with this Message, That if he with his Son would come to *Laboro* and do him homage, he should have his Seigniory established, and by that Alliance his power at all times would be ready to defend him: if otherwise he would refer it to the chance of War, he must expect a perpetual slavery. The *Calmirian* King affrighted at this threat, and doubting his power, hales instantly to *Ecbur*, and becomes his Valla: Howbeit *Jacob-cawn* his Son being of most spirit, and not able longer to dissemble, without leave returns home, followed by his as loved him: so that he quickly expels the *Indians* out of the City, and is acknowledged King: But his Halcyon days were of small continuance; for *Ecbur* orders *Ally Mirza* and *Cassem-cawn* with thirty thousand Horse to hasten after him; so as the young King not daring upon equal terms to adventure battell flies to the high Mountains of *Bimbery*, whither also *Cassem-cawn* directed by some Natives, so hotly pursues, that they became masters of those Hills; whence *Ecbur* flies to *Sirhenaker* in *Cassimer*, but thither also they follow him; neither strength in men nor walls were sufficient to repel, but in despite of both he is taken, and forced to bend under the iron yoke of bondage.

Cassimer is part of that part of Asia which of old was called Sogdiana, being part of Scythia intra Imaum. The North Pole is there raised 41 degre. 9 min. This City is from Agra three hundred, from Shreas about a thousand English Miles distant: the Province generally is mountainous, barren, cold and windy. Her Metropolis Shyrenakar which some call Syrenabar is three miles in compass, watered by Ebar or Phat, a River some think Acetius, which from Caucasus after many glomerating dances increaseth Indus; in nothing more observable than a Lake (eight leagues hence) which is fifteen miles about, in center whereof is an Isle in which is built a fair Palace, out of which is seen variety of sports, as Fishing, Hawking, Rowing, &c. Now whether this was that Cyropolis which the great Cyrus raised to keep out the threatened invasions of the Tauri, as some surmise, I cannot say, seeing another of that name was where Shyreas now stands.

This done, restles Ebar (a while deferring the conquest of Baltria) aims at Tatta and all those Territories that abut upon the East side of Indus. A notable enterprise: But being a very prudent Prince, well understood the strength and condition of every Principality, and how the Rulers were reputed of. Knowing therefore how odious Mirza Jahan was by reason of his Tyranny, and especially to his inferiours, he sends Gangamma, Ebars Favourite with twelve thousand men to surprize that place; who to make the quicker march and less noise by Boat sailing down Rave into Indus, arrived at Tatta, which nevertheless having intelligence, so provided, that for six months it held out; but in the seventh the Tyrant was necessitated to yield it up, and upon conditions having surrendered the place, was entertain'd friendly: but by this acquisition all Syndec even to Looe Bander upon the Ocean came to acknowledge Ebar their Sovereign.

Tatta or Tatta (till of late commanded by the Reisboot) East from the City Jeselmeer, and West from Buckor, is reputed one of the most celebrated Marts of Indus; so circled by a branch of Indus that it is a peninsula. From Labore it is about thirty days journey, but by Indus in less time attained. Upon the Ocean she has Looe Bander, which is three eache days travel thence; observable in this, that such ships as ride at anchor there, are not so gnawed and spoiled with worms as usually they be at Swally, Chanci, Dabul, Damam, Goa, and other adjacent places.

A.D. 1593 About this time Azamshah the old King of Decan paid Nature her last Tribute, and *Aug. 973* Mele Amber his Son was staled in his Throne: Ebar (whose disease was Ambition) is sick till he attempt the conquest of that also; to do which he resolves neither coll nor toll should hinder: The enterprize was more hopeful seeing that a woman was at that time Rectrix of the Marches. Gangamma being chosen General, having received his instructions, with thirty thousand Horse marches from Labore to Brampore, where Radgee Allychan the Governor meets him with five thousand more, and after some months greater preparation set forward towards Decan, the Army being provided of all things necessary both for fight and siege. Decan is the name both of a City and Kingdom: the City is distant about 10 miles from the Diamond-mine. The Kingdom is large; included between the Mogul, Narsingan and Samozzen, comprehending Canara or Cunam in which are Onor, Barrical, Mangal, and other Towns of note upon the Indian Coast, and by frequent resort of Merchants and others not a little celebrated. Tzind Buby daughter to the last King hearing of the Moguls approach, in the first place fortifies Amanazar a frontier Town; and having from the Kings of Visiapore and Golunda received an auxiliary Force of forty thousand Horse, the command of which she commits to her Field Martial Eunuch Godee Shuhel, he attends the Enemy upon the Confines, first skirmishing with Ally Chawn, Mirza-Gaffem, and half the Army; and soon after the Pagans enter pel-mel, guided only by courage and desire of conquest, so as on both sides were many slain; now one, then the other part seeming victorious: so long, so courageously, with such emulation and fury the battel continuing, that when the Sun (weary of so much bloodshed) had hid his face in the West, they ceased not, but by Moon-light continued the fight with equal resolution, so as for many years a more memorable battel hath not been with more courage, in eighteen hours none knowing to whom the victory inclined; till such time as the Sun sparkling his beams again in that Horizon, Gangamma who was their Reserve fell in with his Brigade, and in so good order, that after three hours further dispute the Decans very unwillingly gave back, leaving their heroick Captain Godee honourably slain in the field. The Moguls follow the chase fifteen miles; but the Princes Baby gallantly interposes them with fresh Horse, forcing the Mogul to a retreat toward Brampore, which recovered the Decan some reputation. Ebar having notice of what had past, intreats Sha Morad his beloved Son to re-inforce his Army by a new levy of fifteen thousand Horse; and from Brampore with the other Forces quartered thereabouts to make a fresh invasion into those meridional Provinces:

Merrily

Merrily the youthful Prince advances thither-ward; but during his stay in Brampore gave such liberty to his venereous and drunken disposition, that his radical vigour soon became spent, his lungs confumed, and death gave the period to his consumption. This sudden farewell struck the Army with such amazement, that many Umbras (to avoid the suspicion of his Father) fled, not caring to inhum the carcass. *Ebar Prince* having quick intelligence of this sad accident, though he was pretty well acquainted with his Sons debauchery, yet will not be periwaded but they had poisoned him: and for better information, his Chancellor (the Princes School-master) *Abdul Fazel* is dispached; who (finding the dead Prince his own consumer) prudently assemblies *Ganganna*, *Jussoff-chan*, *Tzadok Mamez-chan*, *Mirza Tzavol*, and such other Umbras as were at hand: he calls back such as had fled for fear, and then satisfies *Ebar* where the fault was; and being commission'd by the King, undertakes the Princes charge, having first sent the dead body to *Delly* to be buried. In small time he subdues the Provinces of *Chandys* or *Sanda*, *Berar*, and many other wealthy places; and by Letters acquaints the King with his success, desiring him to forsake *Lahore* a while, (having spent twelve Winters and Summers there,) and remove his Court to the City of *Agray*, which so long languished by his absence; further putting him in good hopes in small time to subject and add *Deccan*, *Gulgunda* (by the Persians called *Hydraban*,) *Visapora*, and other parts of *India* to his Empire. *Ebar* in the interim orders his Son *Shaw Selym* (afterwards called *Jangheer*) with fifteen thousand Horse to fall upon *Rajca Rana Mardon*, the only successor to *Porus*, and of all *Radgees* the most powerful and eminent: *Tzebber Chan* follows the Prince with five thousand Horse, *Sha Coolichan Maharem* with three thousand; *Rader Shagenat* (Favorite afterward to *Jangheer*) with three thousand more; and many other Umbras and Mandebars of note attended him with what Forces they could; which being brought into a body, the Mogul bids *Lahore* farewell for some time, and according to *Abdul Fazels* advice, removes both Court and Lescar unto *Agray*; into which he was received with all demonstration of joy could possibly be expressed, the Citizens supposing he came by his residence to enrich the Town, when as indeed his aim was to gain there quicker intelligence from the Army, and that he might prosecute his intended War the better against the King of *Deccan*. *Lahore* in the mean time forrows for his departure.

*A.D. 1595;
Hg. 975.*

Lahore (a City both great and famous) is competitor for the Title of *Metropolis* with *Lahore*. *Agray*: The Pole Artick there advanced 32 degrees 15 minutes; the air for eight months is very pure and restorative; the streets graceful and well paved; most of them being cleansed and serv'd by the River *Ravee*, a branch of *Indus*, which from *Penjab* and the *Caffmyrian* mountains streams pleasantly near this City, and after a flux of three thousand *English* miles, the Channel all the way being deep enough for Junks of three-score Tun, at *Tutia* in one broad stream near *Diu* at 23 degrees 15 minutes empties it self into the Ocean. In *Lahore* are many things observable; as the Castle, Palaces, Mosques, Hummums, Tanks, Gardens, &c. The Castle is large, uniform, and nobly seated; the material stone, white and polished; entred by twelve Posterns, three of which respect the Town, the rest the Country: Within is a Palace entred by two Gates, giving passage into two Courts; the last of which points out two ways; one to the Kings *Durbar* and *Jarno* where according to custom he daily flieus himself unto his people, the other to the *Devon-Kawn* where every evening from eight to eleven he discourses with his Umbras. On the wall are pictured sundry stories and paitimes, viz. *Jangheer* (otherwise call *Sha Selym*) croſs-legg'd upon a Carpet under a State, his Son *Perwees* being on the right hand with *Curroon* and *Tymoret* his brothers, *Dha Shaw* and *Sha Morad*; about him are *Emirza Sheriff*, *Can Ajoms* elder Brother, of such wealth and pride, that having above an hundred Concubines, he new clad them every day, and every night tearing their apparel off, buried them in the ground; *Mirza Rustan* (once King of *Candahor*) *Csu Chama*, *Rajca Manisemb*, *Can Ajam*, *Assaph Ctu* and *Radgee Jagonarh* or *Gagini* (the *Craſſus of India*, for at his death he left *Jangheer* as a Legacy fifty Mawnds of pure Gold, each Mawnd being five and twenty pound weight, which in ours amounts to near sixty thousand pound Sterling, and three hundred Elephants richly covered, with other things; at whose death his Wives, Sister, Nephew, and seven other friends burnt themselves (for complement) alive in his funeral fire;) And on the left hand are *Rajca Bousing Fly-bearer*, *Rajca Randas* Sword-bearer, *Morib-Chan Jeſter*, *Rajca Rodow*, as also the *Radgees Ran Singh*, *Mansingh*, *Bur Singh*, and *Bosſu*, &c. In another *Goozelchan* (near the former) is painted the Mogul under a cloth of State croſs-legg'd upon Carpets; upon the Doors of which are the Images of the Crucifix and of the blessed Virgin

Virgin Mother. In another, the Kings Progenitors; amongst whom is *Baber* and thirty Nobles in the habit of Pilgrim Kalenders, &c. This was a noted City in *Porus* time. Upon the banks of this where it meets *Hydaspe*, the victorious *Greek* built *Bucephala* in memory of his Horse that died there. Here it is thought the Patriarch *Noah* seated himself after his leaving the Ark; and hence *Ophry* and *Hesilab* Sons of *Jocktan* removed towards *Ganges* and *Malacca*. The Province wherein *Lahore* is seated is *Pangah West* from *Persepolis*, or rather from the *Persian* word *Panch-ob* or five Waters or Rivers, which are now called *Ravee*, *Behat*, *Ob-Chan*, *Wiby* and *Sindar* (increased by *Padder* and *Damades*) but by *Plutony* and old Hydrographers, *Acesines*, *Cophys*, *Hydaspes*, *Zaradras*, and *Rhuadeh* or *Hispalis*. In a word, no Province of India out-vies it for pleasure and trade, nor any part of the East for a continued shade of *Ash*, *Elm*, and *Mulberry* trees, which reach from hence to *Agra* more than three hundred miles, whose spreading and verdure lenifie the Suns heat, and for whose further accommodation each eight miles there is a convenient *Saray* built for Travellers to repose in *gratis*. *Lahore* is from *Sphawn* four monties travel by *Caravan*. *Affa saida* abounds here. But to return.

Eckbar, now at *Agra*, resolves in person to prosecute the Wars in *Deccan*; so as *Anno* 1597. of the Heg. 97., having made preparation for that expedition, he lets out towards *Briapore* mounted upon a Horse, (where note, that the cull one was, that when they issue out of their Palace on Horse-back it signifies War; if Peace, then within a Pallameen or Letter, or upon an Elephant;) but, (contrary to expectation,) so soon as he had passed the River *Nerebede*, he had news that *Badrurha* a courageous *Rudgee* had fortified *Haffer* a very strong Castle against him; the Mogul likes not to leave so considerable a Place and Enemy behind him, and therefore sits down there, and resolves to take it by force or famine. *Haffer* is three Castles in one, called *Chorzan* and *Commighar*, the last is mounted high and so well defended by Nature, as seems impregnable: therefore *Eckbar* resolves to famish it, and half a year to that end he blockt it up; which the *Rudgee* within seeing, and not knowing of any that would either raise the siege or relieve the Garrison with Provisions which they then stood in need of, he thought it his best way to treat betimes, that he might expect the better conditions; accordingly he beat a Parley, and upon treating with *Eckbar*, upon Articles had his life and goods granted; which upon rendition of the Castle were performed, and such quarter kept as induced the *Rudgee* to accept of a Command in the Army, and so followed the Lettau which upon this his self marches more chearfully, till such time as news was brought how that *Sha-Selym* and *Tzebbaher* with the residue afore named, going against *Rudgee Rana Mordont*, in *Afmeer* *Tzebbaher* departed this life, (of poyon as some thought) which for some time alters the Princes progress; for soorthly seizing upon *Tzebbaher*s treasure (amounting to a crow or ten leek of Roopes) therewith he purchases the mercenary affection of so many of his Souldiers that to *Agra* he returns, unnaturally resolv'd to thrust his Father out of his Throne. *Eckbar* was so amazed at it, and with this unexpected Rebellion, that what with fear of his Sons popularity, and what with grief to leave *Deccan* unconquered, his heart droops, and a deep melancholy seizes his spirit, till *Abdul Fazel* rouzes him, and by the sealable encouragement he gave, not only revives, but exalpates. Whereupon turning his back of *Amnadar* with half his Army, (leaving his Son *Sha D'haen*, with *Abdul Fazel*, *Chan-Channa*, *Badrur-Shaw*, and other Umbras to prosecute the War of *Deccan*) he speeds towards *Agray*, whither *Shaw-Selym* had got before him in hope to secure the Treasury; but missing his aim, he marches back by *Reben* and *Annewar*, and after twelve days march came to *El-Jlabaffe* having forced his passage through *Berar* or *Babar*, *Syapore*, *Chalpy*, (not that which some think *Tharsis*) *Lucknow*, *Mekpore*, *Cbera*, *Gafanpore*, *Ghanoots*, *Chersam*, *Berage* and other Towns and Provinces which seemingly acknowledged him, and in which Garrisons he put Captains of his own choosing. The King now returned to *Agray* being sensible of his Sons conspiracy, wills all were well again by kind Letters first attempting it, discovering the shame and danger he was in, the curse of *Mahomet*, and deprivation of his birth-right, so he perisited; but promising pardon if he would submit and come in: Howbeit such persuasions were of small power with *Shaw-Selym*; who to assuie his Father of his constancy in that course first derides the Messenger, and then o're-runs the Empire as far as *Bengala*, hoping (but in vain) the Viceroy there *Rudgee Mansingh* would side with him.

Nevertheless, what made some amends, was the good success his other Son Prince *D'haen* or *Daniel* had in his march towards *Deccan*: for he having entered the Country, in the first place besieged *Ganderza*, one of the most considerable Castles for strength and situation in the whole Kingdom. Herein the distressed Lady with many of her Nobles had placed themselves, stored with victuals for two years siege, and provided with

all sorts of warlike instruments. Notwithstanding all which (the Dice of War so preferring it) in the seventh month the Enemy took it by storm; many of the defendants losing their lives; but all, their wealth and liberty. *Bebey* only, rather than suffer imprisonment made her self away by Poyson, and so put an end to her misery. But her treasure of Gold and Silver came to the Conquerors hands; who giving it in charge to *Abdul Fazl* and *Chanchana*, the Castle he trusted to *Godgee Byckmirz*, and without any further resistance marched his whole Army through the Counties *Berar* and *Gander*, receiving some acknowledgment from the faint-hearted Kings of *Gulcunda* and *Vijisapure*; and so laden with triumph and treasure returns to *Brampore* victorious.

B R A M P O R E (or *Barumpur*) *Karamais* in *Platony*, or *Brachman-pore* as my notion *Brampore*. prompts me, of old and at this day a Seminary of *Brahmans*, *Jogues*, *Culans* or *Gymnosophis*, (whole Academy (about this place) is recorded by *Porphyrius* and *Platony*) is in Artick elevation twenty eight degrees, three minutes; from *Surat* East two hundred and twenty miles; from *Afmeer* four hundred and twenty; and from *Agray* not much less than one thousand. The Province is called *Chandish* or *Sanda*; where being watered by *Tappee* (the River at *Surat*) it becomes fruitful and pleasant; but elsewhere is barren and sandy. The City is built upon low ground, in an unhealthy but spacious Vale, and by *Bambyans* most inhabited: the Streets are many but narrow; the Houses not high, and but meanly beautiful: At the North-East end it has a Castle (at the River side) which is large; and in the River we see an artificial Elephant so skilfully shaped, that by the *Bambyans* 'tis of some veneration, and by others admired. In times past here resided the *Decan* Kings, who by the *Mogul* are now beaten from it: and near this is *Char-Channa's* House and Gardens at *Loll-bau*, adorned with a delightful prospect of several Trees, which for fruit and shade and for variety of Flowers and Herbs of all sorts, express the ingenuity as well as greatness of that Noble Person; as also the Water-works two courses thence are well worthy the view. But to return.

Eckbar no sooner understood how fortunately his Son *Daniel* had proceeded Southward, (the news whereof 'tis likely came to *Shaw-Selym's* ear) but *Godgee Jehan* presents him with a penitential Letter from *Shaw-Selym* his rebellious Son in the contrary quarter. After a little stay, *Jehan* returns with the *Moguls* promised pardon, provided he would dismiss his Army and make speedy submission. His ungracious Son repeating his former impiety, returns this for answer; That having an Army of seventy thousand Horse, and many brave men, upon most of which he had conferred some Command, it was evident he needed not to submit: nevertheless he would submit, provided an Amnestie were forthwith given him and those that were in this conspiracy, their lives and well-being being equally valuable with his own; which if his Father would not grant, he was resolved to defend himself, and to continue his Army in their former courses. *Eckbar* having ruminated a while, returns him a tart answer, such as incensed the Prince; who having advised with his Council of War, forthwith dislodged, and in good order marched speedily to *Elabasse*, where he commands all sorts of Coin, of Gold, Silver, and Brass to be stamped with his own Name and Motto; yea, to vex his Father the more he dishonestly courts *Anarkala* his Fathers Wife, (which name signifies *Pomegranate*,) and withal sent him some of his new-stamp money; a crime of so high a stain, that the enraged Father first curses him, and then acquaints his Chancellour *Abdul Fazl* with his condition: who having laboured all he could to moderate his Masters passion, with all convenient haste (accompanied with three thousand Horse) follows the Post to do his Master some Service. But *Shaw Selym*, (having intelligence how all passed) to anticipate so sure an Enemy, writes to *Radgee Beris Singh* (Lord of *Soor*) thorow whose Country he must go, to lie in wait for *Abduls* passage, and promising him a gratuity with command of five thousand Horse, so he would send him *Abduls* Head. The *Radgee* promises his best; and with a thousand Horse and three thousand Foot ambulches near *Gwalior*; and such time as poor *Abdul Fazl* (suspected of any Enemy) passed by, *Radgee* fell upon him; and notwithstanding the advantage he had, for three hours the fight continued; but o're-pressing them with men and troops, in the end *Abduls* company were most part slain, and himself (after twelve wounds which he received in fight) was at length taken and beheaded. *Selym* receives the present joyfully; but *Eckbar* (who loved him dearly) becomes so passionate, that for three days he withdrew from all manner of company, and for some time refused to be comforted. But (like waves) see another horror afflicting him: news was brought him of his other Son *Shaw Daniel's* death, killed in the same City and by the same Disease *Morad* was formerly, by intemperance: heretofore the old man afflicts his decaying body unmeasurably, cries and sighs and vows revenge upon *Chanchana* for no better regarding him: who so soon as the Prince was dead, made what haste he could

to the Court to purge himself; but was not admitted *Eckbar's* sight, till by mediation of others he was brought into his Majesties presence, and gave so good an account as the Mogul was pacified, and with new instructions hasten'd back to the Army in *Deccan*. Nevertheless, the vexation he endures by the continued Rebellion of his Son *Selym* takes from him all comfort; and seeing him hardened in his exorbitancies, is at his wits end how to reduce him. Therefore first (as a King) he marches against him with thirty thousand Horse, but by his Mothers sudden death was recalled; whose Body when he had sumptuously interred in *Delly* in King *Homayon* her Husband's Sepulchre, then (as a Father) he tries once more what fair persuasion could operate: To which end he dictates a pathetique Letter mixt with love and anger, reproving, persuading, dissuading, promising, and putting him in mind, he was or should be at least his joy and comfort; and that he had no more Sons living. *Myrad Zeddu* (once the Prince's Tutor) was thought the fittest person to carry it; who so forcibly penetrates the yielding or rather convinced nature of *Sha Selym*, that forthwith taking *Perwees* his little Son along with him, he leaves *Halabas*, passes *Jeminy*, and after two days (the Wizard allowing the day fortunate) with all his Umbras arrives at *Agray*, and by *Morteza-khan* was brought to *Eckbar* then in the *Guzel-cham*; who blushing to eye him, leads him into the *Mahacl*, or private Lodging, where forgetting his promise rememb'ring the dances *Selym* had led him, into such a rage that rapt him, that after he had flait terror into his heart by the fury of his eys, and thunder-struck him with a florin of words, with his fist struck him so hard upon the mouth, that *Selym* throwing himself down, requests his

The Prince submiss. Father at once to destroy him, to which end he flew him his breast, the sword and hand ready to it. But *Eckbar* by this abating his choler intends no such sacrifice, but commanding him to arise, dissembles his affection and terms him Ais and Fool, that commanding seventy thousand men, would forsake them to trust the figred promises of any. That said, he brings him forth again, and sends him back to Prison, giving all the principal Umbras his associates like welcome, *Radjee Bafso* excepted, who (wiser than the rest) escaped. By this imprisonment, *Sha Selym* contrary to his custome abstains four and twenty hours from *Opium*, which next day *Eckbar* (fearing that in a passion he would make himself away) comes in Person and persuades him to take: The third day, by the intercession of his Ladies and Concubines *Selym* was freed and sent to his own House; where he behaved himself orderly, in a dutiful manner each day visiting his Father; till upon some old mens malicious surmises or his Fathers new jealousie he was restrain'd again, and the Mogul *de novo* exasperated against him. But this ill-grounded rancour had little effect; for *Eckbar* taking distaste against *Mirza Gashaw* (the Viceroy of *Tutta's* Son, and one formerly high in his favour) for speaking one word with *Eckbar* ill interpreted, no submission will serve his turn, no lets than his life must pay for it: To which end the Kings Physician was directed to prepare two Pills of like shape but contrary operation; *Gashaw* must be trusted with them, and bring them to *Eckbar*; who (imagining by a private mark he knew the right) bids *Gashaw* swallow the other. *Gashaw* ignorant of the deceit, by chance light upon the best, so as *Eckbar* by mistake was poisoned. Too soon the miserable Mogul perceives his error, and too late repents his choler; but (for shame concealing the caule) after fourteen days torment and succiss-letrial to expell the poison yields up the Ghofl, in the sevnty third year of his Age, and fifty second of his Reign; and with all imaginable solemnity in *Tekander*, three course from *Agra*, in a Monument which he had prepared, that great Monarch was buried: And *Sha Selym* (though a while resisted by *Radjee Mansingh* and *Chan Asem*, who in vain endeavoured to make his Son *Cashroo* Mogul, so nominated by *Eckbar* as they alleged) with such ceremony as was requisite was Crowned at *Agra*, by name of *Jangheer*, King. In the year of our Lord God, 1604. and of *Mahomet* 984.

*Sha Selym
Crowned
great Mo-
gul.*

Give me leave now to present you various Scenes, composed of a miscellany of subjects, hapning in *Indostan* during *Jangheer's* Reign.

*A.D. 1624
Heg. 984.* *Jangheer* (so now we call him) by the mediation of *Morteza Cisan*, *Cooly Alamechan*, and others of his Council, receives his Son *Sultar Cashroo* (or *Cashroo*) his late competitor into favour; and to lay the foundation of his greatness in the good will of his people freely receives *Chan Asem* and *Radjee* into grace again. But *Cashroo*, struck by his own guilt, suspecting his pardon counterfeit, by Letter desires *Hussanbeg*, Viceroy of *Cabul*, his old Friend, to meet him near *Fettipore* with some Horse, that he might fly away, being assured that if he stay'd long at Court he should be put to death. By his Zantel the Letter is speedily delivered, who as readily obeys the disconsolate Prince, and with three thousand Horse hastens to *Achbar-pore*, which is from *Agra* four and twenty courses, whither the Prince (escaping about twi-light from Court) comes, followed by

by five hundred Gallants, who all together hasten to *Lahore*. *Jangheer* had immediate notice of his Sons flight, and resenting how dangerous it might prove, charges *Godgee Melec Allybeg* Captain of the Guard, with such force as he then had to pursue *Cushroe*, and to bring him back again. The *Caval* with three hundred Horse, and *Mortaza-chan* with fifteen hundred Horse more, all night post after *Godgee*; yea after both, but more leisurely, *Jangheer* himself (perswaded to it by *Mirza Umbrave*) with fifty Elephants and eight thousand Men: so that the poor Prince (every way pursued) feared to be made Prisoner again; yet such was the haste *Hassenbeg* made before them, that none of the three came near him by fifteen courses, (yea, though all the way they plundered Villages, and made havock of what they could) so as on the ninth day the Prince attained *Lahore*: But intending to enter the *Caule*, they were (contrary to expectation) kept out by *Ebrabin-chan* the Governor, (premonished of the Princes flight;) and which was worse, by *Sayet-chan* (three course from the City, and in his way to *Bange* the place of his Government) making as if he would join with him, upon the River the poor Prince is imprisoned; but by virtue of a bribe escaping, he returns to *Hussan*, where he was endangered by another bait. For *Zalaladen Hassen* presents himself unto the Prince, assuring him that his Father out of his abundant love had passed by his offences, and had assigned his true Friend *Hussenbeg* the additional Command of the Provinces of *Cabul* and *Banafod*: with which seeming not contented, he desires the addition of *Zerhynd*, all this being but to dally, and allure his stay till *Jangheer* came to catch him. The Prince nevertheless was not so simple, but that he easily discovers his Fathers drift; so that after three weeks fruitless attempt to take the Castle in *Lahore*, he forsakes the City, and with twenty thousand Horse in a quick march moves back again, with a full determination to bid *Jangheer* battle nearer home. It hapned, that he pitcht one night where *Mortafa-Kawn* with six hundred Horse (hearing of *Gushroe's* coming) was ambushed: *Mortafa* falls upon him; but such was the premeditated care *Hussan* had of the place, that in two hours skirmish their Enemies were beaten, and *Sha-Cheyat* the Captain slain; so that had not *Godgee Melec* with the Kings Standard entred, proclaiming with great out-cries that the Mogul was at hand, the Kings party had been wholly routed: But of such terror was the Kings approach (then past *Sultapore*) that *Abdul Raja* who bore the Princes Colours most cowardly threw it away and fled; and by his daftardly Example the rest of the Army did the like, most of them by the rustick time-serving people being chased and knockt down, and all the baggage scized on by Country-people. The King was so sensible of this good hap, that in memory of the Deliverance he erects at *Tzekerri*, i.e. a place of Hunting a stately Castle, and new names the place *Fettipore*, which signifies Paradise, or a place of Delight.

Fettipore, if the water had been good, had by this time triumphed over all the Cities of *India*; 'tis walled about, and to the *N. N. W.* discovers a Lake five miles over. The *N. E.* has a lair Bazaar, five hundred paces long, neatly paved, and well built on all sides: at one end is the Moguls House, and a *Mohol* curiously built; on the other side a Mosque ascended by thirty steps, barr'd with a Gate; in all so observable, that it is scarce equalled throughout *India*; the top is full of little Pyramids, the Court within is six times larger than the *Royal Exchange* in *London*, nearly paved with free-stone, the alleys paved, and the Columns all of one stone very beautiful: Affronting this Gate is a sumptuous Monument, the parquet whereof is covered with Paint and Oyster-pearl shells, but proudest in the Kalender who lies there buried. To return. The miserable Prince after this defeat, accompanied with *Hassenbeg*, *Abdul Radjee*, and *Chan Bader-haw*, scarce looks behind him till they had attained *Lahore*, where *Radjee* stays; but *Sultan Gushroe* with *Badaشا* cross the *Rave*, and labour to arrive with safety at *Ramas*, a Castle by some reputed impregnable. Bad fortune it seems follows them every where; for, passing the River *Tzenob*, by the treacherous Watermen they are kept between Deck, and brought into the power of *Cassem-chawns* Sons (then besieging the Castle) who without delay conveys them to *Jangheer*, by that time past *Lattir*, a flood seven days travel thence. The King overjoyed with this good hap, returns to *Lahore*, and by the way put to death many Umbraes who were the Princes followers; and the Prince was committed to the custody of *Zemanabeg*, (called after *Mahobet-chan*, i.e. beloved Lord; of which *Mahobet-cawn* I may say as *Livie* speaks of *Cato*, In this man were such abilities of mind, and such heroick vertues, that into what Climate soever his Nativity cast him he seemed able to command a fortune;) *Hassenbeg* *Badasha*, and *Abdul Radjee*, being first publickly disgraced, were then made clost Prisoners. Such was the conclusion of the Princes first out-breaking.

Whether some Noble-men reputed *Jangheer* tyrannical, or that they thought *Gushroe* had better Title to the Empire, or that envy was the caufe, is uncertain; but some of

these so wrought, as one night when but few men watched the Prince, some male-contents confpired to take away the Moguls life upon the high Mountains as he passed thence to *Cabul*, and to place *Gulshroo* in his room: the Traitors were of no mean rank, *Mirza Cherif* (Brother to *Afzab-cham*), *Mirza Norwadyn* his Cousin, *Mirza Fetulla*, *Mirza Shaffebeg*, *Lollebeg*, and *Murdoph-cham*. *Jangheer* having no notice thereof, and suspecting no treachery passes on; but by good fortune was so well attended, that they durst not attempt their villainous intent. Howbeit, in the interim, *Ethaman Doulet* the Treasurer was accused by one of his Slaves, to have converted to his own use and for the encouragement of Traitors 500000 Rupees out of the Moguls Treasury: That, and the news of *Cheer Affencham* (*Ethaman Doulets Son in Law*) his treacherous murder of *Cotabdy Mamer-cham Goga* (Lieutenant of *Bengala* near *Rodgee Mabal*, albeit *Affenham* the Turk upon that score was also soon after slain by *Gessadine* and *Kiffweer-cham*, Brother and Son to the Lieutenant, and his Mother and Wife most basely abuited) were imputations reflecting so much upon *Doulet*, that he was not only discharged of his Place, but his Estate confiscated, and himself imprisoned in *Di.met-chans* House during his Majesties pleasure, to his grief, but the astonishment of all *Industan*, who ever reputed him an忠 Officer and Counsellor of State.

Greater was *Jangheers* fear, when by *Godree Vches* he was at length acquainted with the conspiracy intended against him by men of power, such as he never provoked, such as were nearly related to him: But by *Mirza Umbraves* advice, throws off all abject fear; and having apprehended the conspirators, without delay he commands them to execution, *Ethaman Doulet* only excepted, who at the request of his Keeper was pardoned (upon payment of 200000 Rupees to the King and him for his life,) but led back to Prison in disgraceful sort. After which the King returns (from *Cabul*) unto *Lahore*; and by the way remembiring the danger he had escaped, and deeply grounding his jealousy that *Gulshroo* his Son was partly causer of it, he commands his Sons Eyes by juice of Acock to be made blind: but the Poisoin was more merciful, leaving one Eye a little sight. *Chan Asem allo* (*Gulshroo*'s Father in Law) was clad in loathsome rags and brought into the *Guzelchan*, where every Umbrac was commanded to spit upon his Beard; after which he was manacled and led to Prison, where two full years he remained close; till by the prevalent importunity of his Wives he was set at liberty.

This year *Anno 1609*. *Currown* (another of *Jangheer's Sons*) and other of his friends (to make his way the easier to the Crown) prevailed with *Jangheer* that his Kinsmen *Saw Selyn*'s Brothers Sons might be Christned; which accordingly was done in *Agra*: The Jesuits that baptized the young Princes named them *Philippe*, *Carlo* and *Henrico*; that year also they baptized another Grandson of *Eckbar* by the name of *Don Edoard*. Soon after *Mirza Ombrave* being Apoplectique, thereby became incapable of the further execution of his Office. *T'zalanchan* also in *Copoly*'s place was made Viceroy of *Bengala*, and commanded to send up as Prisoners *Affen-cham's* Family; which he did accordingly. In the way, the young Widow *Mcher-metzia* *Ethaman Doulets* Daughter, and Sister to *Afzab-cham*, was met by a Wizard or Fortune-teller, who told her many stories of her ensuing Greatness, which soon after hapned. For they were no sooner arrived at *Agra* (whither *Jangheer* was by that time come) but were kindly welcomed by *Rokia Sulanna* the Mother Queen. It hapned, that one day being led into the Mahal with her little Girl, *Jangheer* was there accidentally, and in merriment lifting up her Vale, discovers so rare and fortible a beauty that thenceforward he became her Prisoner, and she the sum of all he contemplates: He is now no longer *Ethaman Doulets* foe, but to ingratiate himself into the free affection of his Goddess, rather studies how to advance *Doulet* her dejected Father; in this passionate dotage he forgets his state and the power he had to command, and privately each day passes by Boat to *Ethaman Doulets* House, and all night consumes himself and his precious time in amorous dalliance: Beauty is a beam of Divine refugency, no wonder then if an Enamorado neglect all other things to accomplish his delight, without whom there seems nothing but darknes and discontent. To enjoy her the more and better, at length he commands *Godree Abdal Haffen* to ask *Doulet* good will for his Daughter; which *Haffen* admires; and laying before him the indignity he offers so great a Majesty, *Jangheer* (now Cupids slave) being both deaf and blind, in choler bids him go, or stay eternally. *Haffen* replies no more, but speeds away, and uses small persuasions: for *Ethaman Doulet* (by this Miracle wrapt from his discontented Orb) after some profession of his basenes, returns *Jangheer* his humble and thankful condiscencion: so that *Mcher Metzia* is forthwith elpoused with all solemnity to the King, and her name changed into *Noorsha-begem*, or *Nor-mash*, i.e. Light or Glory of the Court; her Father upon this affinity advanced above

all the other Umbras; her Brother *Afzaph-cham* and most of her kindred smiled upon, with the addition of Honours, Wealth, and Command. And in this Sun-shine of content *Jangheer* spends some years with his lovely Queen, without regarding ought save *Cupid's* Currentoes.

Anno 1610. of the Hegira 990. and in the sixth year of his Reign, *Sultan Sherry* the Prince (under tutorship of *Morteza-cham*) was sent Viceroy to *Gururat*: at which time *Chan-Jehan* was sent to *Brampore*; and *Mahobet-cham* appointed General, and ordered with an Army against *Radjee Rana* or *Rabanna of Mandor*, who at that instant was broke out into Rebellion. The County also of *Radjea Couz* (a branch of *Bengal*) was that year subjected under the Imperial Crown of *Indufan*, by the valour and good conduct of *Tzalamchan*. During which, *Mahobet-cham* (by that time in *Ranee* Province) goes on victoriously, forcing many Holds and Castles from those indomitable *I. diwans*: but (by envy of some at Court) in this his prosperous proceeding *Mahobet* was recalled back to Court and *Abdul-cham* made General in his place. This alteration did not much alter the estate of the Army, as some thought; for *Abdul* prosecutes *Rana* with no less vigour and success, urging him to a set Battle at *Sif-meer*; where *Abdul* got the better, chasing *Radjee* to *Oudepare* and *Pormandel*, killing many of his men, enriching themselves with abundance of Spoil and Captives; and after much toil and some loss he fak't *Syavend* (*Rana's* strongest Castle) till then judged impregnable; wherein they had stow'd warlike Provision, and many Pagods, which for above 1000 years had stood there superstitiously adored; these the Mahometans burnt, and in place of them reared a stupendious Mosque for Mahometan Devotion. *Abdul-cham* so fortunately managed this War against *Rana*, that *Jangheer* the great Mogul sends him thanks, and orders him to live a while in *Gujurat*, not only to curb but extirpate that rascal-race of *Coolies* and *Bielgrates* which so thievily robb'd the Caffilaes and lived upon the spoil of peaceful passengers. *Abdul* fails not in that: For with fifteen thousand Horse sent out in several parties, he ferrets and pursues them in all places where he knew they lurked, and after many petty encounters took *Eder* their retreating place (seventy miles from *Amadavat*); yea, happily fell upon them one time when they were together, and having with ease put them to flight, in the chase slew half their rabble, together with *Lael-Cooly* their Ring-leader, whose head he sent to *Amadavat*, and (as a memorial of his Victory and terror to all such Rebels) commanded that it should be fit upon a Pinnacle.

But *Cawn-Jehan* (during these broils) waiting all occasions of conquest in *Decan*, through discord and envy of some Umbras in the Army, finds his success grow worse and worse against *Melec Amber*, and knows no remedy without acquainting the Mogul therewith; and as an expedient he intreats that one of his Sons might come thither to command, by whose greatness the Army might be better ordered. After consideration, the King sends *Sultan Perwees* his Son, and with him *Radjea Ramdas*; who from *Brampore* sends *Chan Jehan* and *Maw Singh* with an Army to *Bellaguate*, where they send defiance to *Melec*: But *Jangheer* better knowing the prudence of *Melec Amber* and his power, speeds *Chan Ajem* after them with four thousand men more to re-inforce his Army; which done, he removes his *Leſcar* to *Asmer*, a place convenient for hunting. *Chan Ajem* was no sooner come to *Brampore* but he intreats *Gangama* (Lieutenant of *Khoor*) to join with him, and so hastens towards *Bellaguate* with an Army of 100000 men, 600 Elephants (of which huge Creature this Empire is thought to have 40000) and 12000 Camels; yea, of such fame grew this Expedition, that ere they departed *Cuncam* they were of Horse and Foot no less than 600000. With this great Body *Abdul-cham* penetrates into the very heart of *Decan*, no resistance being made either in Field, Town, or Garrison; so that through all *Beder*, *Ardengar*, *Gentro*, and as far as *Kerky* (the Seat Royal) they marched without resistance, burning and plundering as they listed; sparing neither Villages, Temples, nor Inhabitants not to be counted. The *Decan* King astonished at their numbers, and unable to resist this torrent, flies to and fro, nor resting anywhere till he came to *Daulatabat*, ten miles from *Kerkie*, a Caſtle of great strength: For having made some small skirmishes and ambuscadoes, they appeared to so little purpose, that *Melec Amber* (albeit *Mamee Lury* and *Wackyl Adel-cham* were now come to his aid with above twenty thousand Horse, and some Infantry) devised rather to quit his Kingdom of them by stratagem, than hazard it by chance of War. No actions are more subject to sudden and unexpected Events than those of War. *Melec* cunningly writes counterfeit Letters directed from some *Radjees* about *Jangheer's* Court; containing a private advertisement of the Moguls death and *Curroos* advancement to the Crown: These he gives in charge to a crafty *Bamyan*; who circling about as if he came from

*A.M. 1580
A.D. 1610.
A.Heg. 990*

Agray, was taken as a spy; his counterfeit Letters being read, their lying contents to altonished the General, that without more consultation they presently divide the Army, quit such places as they had placed Garrisons in, with confused haste marching back into their own Country, and each Captain to his former Quarter. Sultan *Pervies* marches to *Brampore*, *Abdul-chan* to *Surat*, and *Chan Afem* towards *Agra*, giving *Amber* easie re-admittance to his Towns and Castles; which otherwise in all probability would hardly, at least not speedily have been recovered. But so soon as *Jangheer* had intelligence of that deceit, he becomes enraged at their simple credulity, thence cutting their punishment, and then intreating *Mahobet-chan* to go Governor to *Brampore*. Who having received his Commission repairs thither; where he was with joyful acclamations received: Such was *Mahobet's* disfrection that from thence he employs what force he had, in short space subduing *Berar*; after which he enters *Decan* without any considerable loss as far as *Kerchi*, where *Abdul-chan's* Army had been the year before; by that second inroad making *Decan* a most miserable Country; and loaden with abundant spoils returns to *Brampore* with Victory. Which good success, when it came to *Jangheer's* ears, made amends for his last years failings. And further, when (by *Curoon's* mediation, having first by many battels and purfuits tired him) *Rana Radjee* presents himself, his Son, and many gifts unto the King, amongst which an Elephant valued at 100000 Rupees, submitting all he had to *Jangheer* to be disposed of; who heartily forgiving, embraces him with affection, offers to his Son his Daughter in marriage, and returns him the Government of *Portmandil* (*Portu* his Country), *Oudipore*, and other places: But soon after (whether for grief he had submitted, for which he suffered reproach sufficient, or some other cause) died, and with much ceremony and hymns in a doleful manner sung to his memory, in a Sepulchre amongst his Noble Progenitors this great Prince was at *Cnytor* buried.

Jangheer the mean time having consumed eighteen months in pleasure at *Mando* (sixty miles from *Brampore*, and above twice as much from *Amadavat*) departs, and in progress comes to *Amadavat*; where he discharged *Abdul-chan* from that Command, but ordains him Viceroy of *Calpi* and *Khoor*: and after twelve months pallsime there returns to *Agray*. Anno 994. and of our account 1614. That year *Chebez* Governor of *Candahor* was displaced (by reason of his age) and *Badar-chan* made Commander there. *T. ediat-chan* also was sent to succeed *Tzalam-chawn* in *Bengala*: But at that time *Ozman* chawn a *Puttan* with a numerous Army besieging *Dacca* (the Metropolis) he and *Eibam-chawn* with fifteen thousand men gave *Ozman* battel, which was bravely fought on both sides; but by reason of a mad Elephant on which *Ozman* fate, *Tzediat-chan* was unhorsed and maimed, yet the Moguls Forces discomfited: but by strange chance a wounded man seeing *Ozman* pass by transfixes him with his Lance, and by that mischance the Puttans retreat, and at length flye, the Moguls not only recovering *Dacca*, but piercing into the very heart of the Gentiles Country they captivate his Wife and Children, foraging at pleasure, and making all his Wealth (which was very great, and sent to *Agray*) a testimony of their Valour as well as Victory. That year the Mogul journied to *Labor* with his Leicar.

Abdul-chawn after seven weeks march arrives at *Calpi*, where, and of *Koor* he was to receive the Government. He straightway executed his Commission, in small time quieting and destroying those swarms of rebellious *Rashboots*, which till then there abounded; he levelled also the most defensive places with the ground, and made sale of so many of the Inhabitants as paid the Charges of the War, amounting to 200000 Rupees and upwards. *Chan Afem* also about this time went Ambassador from *Jangheer* to *Abbas* the *Persian*. Not any Ambassador in mans memory went more richly dispatched with Presents or more bravely attended. He presented the King (then at *Spahawn*, with twelve Chests of choice Linen, two other Chests filled with Shashes woven with Gold and Silk and Silver, many Daggers whose Hafts were set with Stones of value, estimated at 70000 Rupees; and for discharge of his own port and travel had an allowance out of the Moguls Exchequer of sixty thousand Rupees, the better to represent the Majestey of so great an Emperour. *Abbas* entertains the Ambassador nobly, cloys him with invitation, shows, sports, and other pastimes; and at his departure makes five hundred Coselbishes with *Alicnicawn Rajfan-beg* and other Noblemen attend him two days journey upon his way towards *Candahor*; recommending his well-wishes to the Mogul in a Princely return of five hundred Couriers, twenty Mules, five hundred Asses of great value, one hundred and fifty Dromedaries (or Cooselbush Camels,) eighteen Chests or *Sandoughs* of choice Carpets and Bezars, twenty

*Chan
Afem goes
Ambassa-
 dor to
Persia.*

Camels

Camels load of *Syrus* Wine, and eight of conserv'd Dates, Pistachios, &c. All which were acceptably received by *Jangbeer*; who that year took his progr's to participate the pleasures of *Cassimere*, having first removed *Mahober-chan* from *Brampore* to the Command of *Kabul* and *Banges*.

K A B U L (by *Ptolomy* in his sixth Book and 18 Chapter called *Chabura*, by some supposed that *Alexandria Arachosie* which the *Macedonians* built near the mountain *Caucasus*, on the North is confined by *Caucasus*, South with *Mulhan*, East with *Cassimere* and *Kakar*, West with *Indus*) is now subject to the *Mogul*, but not many years since to the *Tatar* and *Persian*. The name from the *Syriack* signifies *sterile*, and agrees with the nature of the Country, which is cold and windie; being not fruitful, save where the *Nylob* fattens her, a River (by *Ptolomy* called *Coa*, *Coas* and *Copis* by others) which not far thence ariseth streams South into *Indus*, and is one of those five which empty themselves into that Princeely River, and then in one stream near to *Din*, disembogue themselves into the Ocean. The City *Kabul* is North from *Labore* eight days journey, the way hilly and dangerous, albeit the Inhabitants be most part *Barryans*: the houses are low; nothing more observable in the Town than the Serrays and two great and well built Forts or Castles, in one of which King *Babur* was born, from whom in three descents *Jangbeer* is descended.

Sultan Cufbroo upon his Fathers remove to *Cassimere* was taken from the custody of *Afzaph-cawn* and given to *Cawn-Jehan* to secure. *Cheq-Cassim* was then also made Lieutenant of *Bengala* in his Brother *Tzalam-cawn's* stead. *Cherram-cawn* (*Tzalam-cawn's* Son) hearing of his Uncles coming that way, (and ever hating him,) from *Dacek* travels towards *Agrey* with all his Fathers wealth to be disposed of by the *Mogul*: but in the way, near *Radgee-Mahal Cassem-cawn* met him and takes violently from him his best Elephants and some other things of value; which being by his Nephew to the full related at Court, *Cassem* was immediately displaced, and *Ebrahim-cawn* (Queen *Normala*'s Cousin) put into his place: Who meeting at *Radgee-Cawn* with *Cassem-cawn* (at that time with all his goods and people packing away) *Ebrahim* demands restitution of the Elephants he took from *Cherram-cawn*. But *Cassem* was so enraged at these successive indignities, that after some words they fall to blows; and in the skirmish *Cassem* finding his party weakest retires to his *Haram*, where most inhumanly he murders his Concubines, then flies away, and leaves *Ebrahim* Possessor of his treasure; who by the absent of some Umbras, and most of the vulgar sort, was admitted Gouvernor. After which he falls upon *Moekham* (the Rebel,) and defeats him and his Forces, killing some, and selling others as slaves; yea, enriches himself with so much spoil as putt him up with Pride, and made him so reputable at Court, that *Jangbeer* (in token of thanks) sends him a Horse, a Battle-axe, and a Dagger; and as an augmentation of Honour, from *Ebrahim* changes his name to *Pherooz-Jehan-cawn*. The same time *Mortasa-cawn* was sent by the King to besiege *Changra*, a Castle so fenced both by Art and Nature, as made many judge it invincible; and the rather, for that it had contemned the best and worst the Kings of *Delly* could do against it; notwithstanding which, *Mortasa* after some danger of ambulments in that thick Wood being seventy miles broad, and no less trouble in passing his men over high rocks, and eight months siege, in despite of their best defence by scalado entred and subjecked it to the *Mogul*; though *Mortasa* lived not three months after to ruminante his victory. Which when *Jangbeer* heard, with a mixture of joy and sorrow he leaves *Cassimere* and removes his Court to *Labore*; where *Sultan Cufbroo* (the true *Idea* of milery) by perswasion of the Queen and *Afzaph-cawn*, was taken from *Cawn-Jehan*, and put to *Curroon* (his emulous Brother) to be his keeper. At that time *Jangbeer* affected his Son *Curroon* beyond measure, imagining no Honour too much, no Command too great for so sprightful a Prince; so that (little knowing what would follow) he gives him the Command of forty thousand Horse, and attended by *Godjea-Abdul-Hussein* and other Umbras, hastens him to the conquest of *Decan*; with order to subduc or harrafs the Kingdoms of *Gulcunda* and *Visiapore* for omitting their annual Tribute of three pound weight of Diamonds.

This year 1619. of *Mahomet* 1029. *Abdul-Aies-cawn* succeeding *Bador-cawn* the *Ouzbeg* in his command of *Candabor*; *Cawn-Jehan* was constituted Lieutenant of *Abdi'an* and *Bucchor*, through which *Indus* runs; *Sultan Perwees of Pathan*; and *Radgee Beris Singh Bondela* and *Abdu-cawn* Governors of *Kalpi*, were commanded to raise some Forces, and joynly to march with *Sultan Curroon* into *Decan* and to recruit his Army.

Sultan Curroone (by this time having levied his forces and made all things ready for this new War upon *Decan*) first commands all men to intitle him *Sha-Jehan*, i.e. King of Hearts; then with his whole Army in goodly equipage travels to *Brampore*, which was the Rendevous whither *Abdu-cawn* and *Radgee Beris Singh* (according to command) come

come and wait upon him, with *Theadder-cawn* his Cousin, and many other *Rashpoors* of quality. *Curroon* (for by that name we can best remember him) now dwells beyond measure to see himself General, and in the head of so brave an Army; and loth to spend the least time in vain, with speed gives order to *Abdul-cawn*, *Lala-Radgee Berizingh*, *Abdul-Haffen*, and many other Umbras to begin the War with *Melec Amber*; and that he and the residue would follow: *Mirza Mackey* and *Shadow-cawn* in the interim march to *Gulcunda* against *Cotobel Melec*, and *Malmei Tuckie* to *Visiapore* against *Adel cawn*, either to receive by force or fair means the accustomed Tribute of Diamonds due to the Diadem of *Indostan*. *Abdul-cawn* in the first place, pursuant to his Commission passes without any opposition to *Bellagate* (a fastidious Mountain 'twixt *Cunca* and *Decan*, and as some think that which is called *Hippocura* in *Ptolomy*, but more probably that *Gates* which is mentioned in those old Writers who affirm that (as the *Appennine* in *Italy*) this runs in a continued ledge from *Caucasus* as far as *Cape Comy* the utmost Promontory of *Mallabar*, penetrating from *N.* to *S.* through the heart of many Kingdoms, and in an equidistant 'twixt the *Bengalan Gulph* and *Indian Sea*;) *Curroon* bringing up the other part of the Army at fifteen miles distance, to succour the Van upon all occasions. The King of *Decan* at all advantages interposes, and opposes them in many petty skirmishes: But *Abdul-cawn* (formerly acquainted with his rhodomontadoes) passes on, burning and spoiling what they met with; nor resting till they came to *Kerkj* (the Kings best House) which they levelled with the ground, enriching themselves with store of booty and treasure; reducing also *Berar* and *Chandy*, forcing Composition from all the Country as far as *Amnadar*, and Tribute from the Kings of *Gulcunda* and *Visiapore*, whither *Mackey* and *Shadr-chawn* were sent to quicken it.

Jangher over-joyed with such good fortune, to relish it the better, solaces himself in his Son *Purus* Gardens beyond the River. *Ethaman Dowler* (Queen *Normals* Father) dyed at that time, and his great Estate was by the King divided 'twixt his Daughter and *Afzeph-cawn*; but his Office of Treasurer was conferr'd upon *Codgee Abdul Haffen*. *Curroon* also (who sate as Emperor in his own opinion) with a greedy eye respects the Diadem: but perceiving his imprisoned Brother interpoling, such is the magick of Ambition that it runs on not caring how, though masqued with never so much desormity; so that feigning himself sick, (his Disease was horrible) nothing can recover him but his elder Brothers death. *Gangama* (one of his infernal Council) presently acquaints some *Mawchairs* with the remedy; of which rascal troop *Reza* (or *Raja Bendor*) a most notorious Villain being quickest of apprehension, makes no scruple to act. In the mean time *Curroon* (as if he knew nothing of the Plot) conveys himself out of *Brampore* upon pretence to better his health; whilst that incarnate Devil at an unseasonable hour in the Night knocks at *Gulbroo's* Chamber Door: who (awakened out of a fearful Dream) starts up and demands his Errant. The wretch replies, he came from the *Mogul* his Father about his delivery. The miserable Prince (affrighted, and suspecting treason) desires him to stay till the morning: but that execrable Villain perceiving no entrance by treachery, breaks in, grapples with the amazed Prince, and having got him down, strangles him; that done, lays him in his Bed, locks the Door, and sinks away as if the Prince had died of some Impothume. By which we see, *Nullo fata loco possit excludere, cum mors venerit*. This damnable villany being bruited, *Curroon* you may believe has quick news of his Brothers death, and albeit he outwardly expresses sorrow, inwardly rejoices. But c're Sun-rise, *Gulbroo's* afflicted Wife (*Cawn Ajem*'s Daughter) went to visit him, whom finding speechless, and (by his contused Face) perceiving that he was murdered, never did poor wretch pour out greater abundance of tears, or express more passion; first tearing her Hair, she then deforms her beautiful Face mixt with such loud cries and symptoms of distraction, that her Father and all his Family both hear and see it to their grief and admiration. But when they see the cause also, they wonder not at her complaint, none of them forbearing to express their sorrow after several modes with moderation. Not only the Princes House, but all *Brampore* rings with the horridness of this Treason, they suspect the Author, and curse him: But *Curroon* (cloathed with Hypocrisie) comes dejectedly thither, falls upon the murdered Corps, and expresses so much grief as many were induced to believe that he was innocent. After two days they bury the murdered Prince, and *Curroon* writes his Father word of his Brothers sudden death (concealing the cause.) *Jangher* who had a Fatherly affection, first weeps, and afterwards grows mad with rage, suspecting that he was treacherously made away; but not knowing upon the sudden how to difi over it, feeds upon discontent, writes back a Letter of reproof and threats to *Curroon* and his Umbras; vowed a strict inquisition into the cause of his death, and if any treason appeared, that he would revenge it when they

they least suspected it: He withal commands the body to be digged up, and brought with solemn state to *Elabasse*; which was done, and there he interrs him in his Mothers Monument. Then he sends for *Chan Ajem* and his afflicted Daughter, comforts them, and takes them for his constant Companions; from whom being truly informed of *Carreens* accellorines, he forthwith upon *Sultan Bullochy* or *B'lochy* his Grandson (Son to Prince *Gushroe*) intalls the Imperial Crown, gives him the command of ten thousand Horse, and commits him to the tuition of *Chan Ajem* his Grandfire, (of the blood royal of *Tartary*) by him to be educated.

Carreens perceiving that the murder was discovered, and that by the love which his Father exprested to *Sultan Bullochy* he was disregarded, thenceforth (not caring to please) in a discontented humour he forlakes the Court and desperately flies out into Rebellion. *Abdul-chan* (having notice of his intent) without leave taking forfakes the Army, and hastens towards *Kalpi* to his Government: but by the Mogul (who was still desirous to continue the *Decan War*) is rebuked, and made to return. Yet ere long he was revoked thence; for at that time *Abbas* King of Persia with thirty thousand men had laid close siege to *Kandahar*, pretending it was a member of his Empire. The City was defended by *Azief-chan*, a Captain of valour and honesty, who for sixteen days kept it in despite of the *Persian*: but perceiving his Garrison too weak if they intended to storm, he acquaints *Jangheer* with his condition, and the time he probably could maintain the place; by which if he had not relief, he should be forced to surrender. *Jangheer* having notice thereof, sends word back, That within that space he would not fail to succor him, either by relieving the Garrison, or raisng the siege. So that posting to *Lahore*, and having advised with his Council of War, first he commands *Chan Jahan* (then Lieutenant of *Multhan* which adjoyns *Kandahar*) with such force as he had in readiness to haftte thither; whiles the Enemy in the interim attempt day and night the entrance, and *Jangheer* ruminates whom to appoint for General; at last fixes upon *Abdul-chan*, who by that time and by *Carreens* leave was again returned. This famous Captain readily accepts the charge, speeds to *Lahore*, and is imbraced with such joy by the Mogul, that he presently contracts his fair Grand-daughter (*D'hawn Shaws Child*) to *Mirza-chawn*, *Abdul-chawns* eldest Son: And so with a hundred Elephants and fifteen thousand Horse (five thousand of which he brought along with him) he makes haftte to give the *Persian* battle. But ere he could attain thither, *Jangheer* (having notice that the *Persians* were exceeding strong and no les resolute) by Letters commands *Azief-chan* to surrender the place unto the Enemy: But the valiant Governour doubting they were counterfeit, holds out, till by Mine a great part of the Wall was blown up; and as *Abbas* was entring the breach, he sounds a parley, and after a short Treaty agrees upon Articles for the yielding it up, upon condition they might depart safely with their lives and baggage. *Abbas* (who only aimed at the conquest of the City) condescends, and has it given up; wherein he places *Ali Kooli-chawn*, and returns to *Spahawn*; whiles *Affsup* and *Abdul-chan* by easie marches retire back to *Lahore*; where notwithstanding the losse by *Jangheer* they are welcomed.

CANDAHOR has Artick elevation four and thirty degrees, and longitude from *candahor* the first Meridian ninety eight. There be that repete it to be in *Paropanis* which some call *Sablestan*; to the West it hath *Aria*, *Arachosia* to the South, and adjoyns that part of *Sagathai* which of old was called *Battria* to the North, or rather *Margiana* which some of late call *Yezelash*. The Countrey especially towards the South is reasonable fruitful and redundant in most necessary things; yet by reason of the many Caravans passing and repassing from *Lahore* to *Perſia*, all sort of Provision is dear, and the paffage (in regard of many rascal troops of *Pusians*, *Agwans* and *Cooleys*, which like the inhospitable *Arabs* prey upon *Caſtilas*) found both chargeable and dangerous. The City is not so spacious as 'tis strong; made defensive as well by help of nature as industry; to the South and East it is furrowid with a thick wall, to the West and North with hills. The Suburbs also (though not well defended) are large, adding to the City beauty and wealth; nothing wanting save good water, which there and all the way to *Spahawn* is brackish, through the distemperature of the earth which is for the most part barren and uncomfortable.

Jangheer infatuated by the crafty perswasion of *Affsup-chawn*, sends him with a pecromptory Order to the Treasurer and Castle-keeper of *Agra*, that without delay he should remove the publick Treasure thence to *Lahore*, where the Court then was and for some time he intended to settle. This was a message of so much astonishment to *Ethamet* otherwise called *Ethabar-chan*, both from the consideration of the length and danger of the way, trouble of carriage, and his own integrity which that King had no reason to distrust;

distrust; as also the extraordinary strength of the Exchequer where the Treasure was then hoarded; that at first he could hardly credit his Masters Letter: But at length he fell to dislodge *Afzaph-kawn*, though in vain, had his arguments been trebled. So that on the one side, halte and the Moguls command is urged; on the other, delay and diverting *Jangheers* meaning to another fence; on either part with that eagerness, that from words, blows became their uncivil moderators: But in that exercit *Afzaph-cham* (for all his greatness) found himself too weak, the Eunuchs Guard was so strong, and *Elibabur-cham* Provost of *Agra* so near at hand to second him. Nevertheless, the Eunuch abates of his pertinacy, and *Afzaph-cham* at length prevails for the remove of the Treasure. But whiles the Eunuchs were preparing for the journey, this deceitful man posts away a swift Zantel to his Son in Law *Curroon* (then upon the confines of *Deccan*) advertising him what had past, advising his speed to ambush betwixt *Agray* and *Delly*, if he had any desire to intercept his Fathers Treasure. The Prince receives the Letter with joy, and without any check of Conscience or respect of Loyalty, immediately commands all his Officers out of such Provinces as his Father had assigned him from *Brampore* to *Surrat* and all *Canbaya* to *Amadaba*, the Governors of *Baroch*, *Jawbaffer*, *Medapore*, and of the maritime coast, *Goga*, *Diul*, *Nagfary*, *Mangorelpore*, and *Ompore*; as also out of *Mando*, *Gandersee*, *Oudepore*, *Barac*, *Amnadaragar*, &c. in an interprize so full of peril delirious to engage and bring them under like hazard, the better to oblige their future dependance upon his Fortunes: and so with no less than seventy thousand Horse he marches towards *Mando*, as if he intended a contrary progress.

Mando. *MANDO* (threescore courses from *Brampore*) is seated on the side of a declining hill; in which, both for ornament and defence is a Castle very strong by being encompassed with a defensive wall of near five miles (the whole heretofore had fifteen miles circuit,) but the City later built is of less size, yet fresher beauty, whether you behold the Temples, in one of which are intombed four Kings, Palaces, Fortrelles; especially that Tower which is elevated one hundred and seventy steps, supported by massive pillars, and adorned with Gates and Windows very observable; built by *Chian-Jehan*, who there lies buried; and lately owned by the Kings of *Delly*, till such time as *Homayon* the Mogul ravished it from *Sheek Sha Selym* King of *Delly* at his return from *Persia*, whither *Selym* forced him. From *Barock* 'tis distant an hundred and fifty English miles. *Curroon* after two days rest in *Taxapore* advances with such haste, that his Army (ignorant of his intent) thought he had been half frantic, every day marching above forty miles; so that in thirteen days he attained *Fettipore*, which is from *Brampore* near five hundred miles; yea, ere *Ehabbar-cham* knew of his being in that Country. But as it fell out, he made more halte than good speed; for long he could not lurk with such a numerous company, without the knowledg of *Ehabbar-cham* the careful Treasurer; who (as if all the Enemies in the world were approaching) unloads the Camels of their precious burthens, conveys it in again, fortifies the Castle, and sends quick notice to *Jangheer* of his Sons traitorous intention: who at this report was astounid above measure, so that presently he sends every way for Assistance; for *Sultan Perwees* out of *Patian*, *Chian Jahan* out of *Multhan*, and for *Mahobet-cham* out of *Kabul*: Whiles *Curroon* (perceiving he was discovered) with his whole Army divided amongst several great Officers, by name *Gangamma*, *Rufsan-cham*, *Radgee Bickermanse*, *Mirza-Darab*, *Sayed-cham*, *Mahomet Tuckieck*, *Tjossally* and others, appear and shew themselves in the very face of *Agray*, making a bravado as if the conquest were easie and no way to be doubted of. But the two Eunuchs keep close to their charge in the Castle; while *Radgee Bickermanse* at *Curroons* appointment begins the churlish play, followed by *Byrambeg*, *Rufsan-cham*, *Wazir-cham*, and *Darab*; whose assault though it was full of bravery, yet *Ehabbar-cham* delirous to sacrifice hi, best endeavours to express his loyalty to the King, affords him such an entertainment, that after three hours dispute having lost five hundred men, and being without hopes of attaching the place they were forced to retreat, well beaten and no less ashamed: So that *Curroon* now forgetting that the best Armour of proof for a Prince are his Vertues, letting loose the reins of Discipline, falls upon a more pleating but less honourable design; for after a retreat they fall to plundering the houses of such Umbras as were likely to have booty in them. *Byrambeg* begins with the house of *Mirza Abdul Chan Asems* Son, which was of some strength, but where contrary to expectation he finds hot welcome: Howbeit *Radgee Bickermanse* entred with better fortune *Afzaph-cham* (which in this confuson found no exception) out of which they drew twenty leck of Rupees; *Rufsan-cham* out of *Lascar-chams* sixteen leck, and *Darab* from *Nouradyn-Cooly's* ten; in all, above threescore leck of Rupees: After which (as if they had effected wonders) they returned triumphantly to *Fettipore*.

Curroon, after three weeks stay at *Fettpore*, rememb'ring that he who attempts any great builments with small means, at least fancies to himself the advantage of opportunity that he may not despair; so found it above his reach either by force or subtily to obtain that Treasure, resolves nevertheless to march back and give his Father battel, whom by intelligence from *Affasp-cawn* he heard was advancing towards him. To this end, after double allowance given each Souldier with protestations of some extraordinary reward, he retreats towards *Delly*, in five days attaining *Pherryband* ten course from *Delly*, such time as *Jangbeer* (having made all possible speed) with his Army pitched three course from the Town, and not above seven from *Curroon's* quarters.

Early the next morn, *Curroon* seeing it was now no time to dally, commands *Radgee Bickermanse* with eight thousand Horse to engage. Against whom, *Jangbeer* (though in person there) constitutes *Mahobet-chan* his Lieutenant General; and under him *Abdul-chan*, *Ehabar-chan*, *Affasp-cawn*, *Godgee Abdul Hussen*, *Zadoc-chan*, *Mirza Mamet*, *Radgee Berisinh*, *Tzeer-chan*, *Saber-deef-chan*, and other Principal Umbras had command: by *Mahobet-chans* advice the whole was divided into three Brigades; one part himself and *Radgee Berisinh* command; the second *Sultan Sheryer* his youngest Son, and *Mahobet chan*; the third *Abdul-chan* and *Zadoc-chawn*: of whose loyalty and experience he to little doubted, that he needed not to use more argument than *Curroon's* late cruelty to his elder Brother, and that his further aim was through his Fathers blood to step into the Empire: Nevertheless, to each Commander (as they were entring the Field) he sent some token of his respect to wear that day for their better incouragement. But *Zaber-deef-chan* in the first place (carrying *Abdul-chan* his Muster's Precent) for want of good Scouts falls into a forlorn of five hundred Horse of *Curroon's* orders and perishes. *Bickermanse* pursuant to *Curroon's* orders, with a smart body of Horse charges *Berisinh* and the Moguls Wing furiously, so that many parted with their Lives to express their Loyalty: Whiles *Ganganna* and *Curroon* with the main body enter pel-mel upon that part of the Moguls which was commanded by *Mahobet-chan*; *Rufza-cawn* with *Tsoffaly* doing the like upon *Abdul-cawn*: so that for three hours the battel was continued with equal hopes, each part fighting so resolutely, that no advantage could for some hours be discovered, till Victory at last inclines to *Curroon*. For *Raja Bickermanse* after a terrible slaughter of that party the Mogul commanded, in despite of his guard entring sternly (dy'd in blood) *Jangbeers* royal Tent, arrested him as his Prisoner; which he had scarcely done, when the battel-axe of a Mancebdar then in presence gave him such a blow that down the *Radgee* fell, with a curse breathing out his unwilling Soul, and such terror into the hearts of his followers, that without considering how much they had the better of the fight, they fled, and gave the Mogul the opportunity to rally his scattered men, and after a little more dispute to have the chase of the Enemy.

Curroon in some amazement at this unexpected change, yet like a courageous Captain does all he can to imbody his Army; he persuades, threats, opposes, and cries aloud, that albeit *Bickermanse* was slain yet He was living; yea that many as good Officers as *Bickermanse* were in the Army: But in vain; for such was their disorder and pannick fear, that impossible it was to revoke them: So (vollying out a thousand imprecations, expelling all symptoms of frenzie) he rides to and fro, not knowing whether he had better here put a period (by his death) to future misfortune, or to lie and hope for better afterwards. At last, by *Ganganna's* advice secretly sent, he haltes away, leaving his treasure and baggage to the will of his Enemies: and with some few of his Friends attains the desolate Mountains of *Mewat*, in whose solitary rocks he ruminates his misery and the Justice of God upon his unnatural practice and rebellion.

Sultan Perwees with a glad heart meets his victorious Father at *Balzol*; after which, the Seraglios are freed, and the Castle gates opened, fearless of any further opposal. Now the old Mogul again begins to cheer up his drooping spirits, and to solace himself with *Normal*, the light of his Eyes, if not the best object of his devotion. His delights and carelesse gave a fair occasion to *Affasp-cawn* to mediate a reconciliation for *Curroon*, which the old man (delirious of late) inclined to: so that from *Afmeer* Letters of love and forgiveness are once more dispatched to the Prince; who reads them with no small seeming joy, and prepares for submision. With *Ganganna*, *Abdul-cawn*, *Durab-cawn*, *Curroon Beyram-br* and other Umbras he descends the Mountains of *Mewat*, and through *Bassawer*, *Hambyer*, and *Lael-sod* (unable to forbear pilfering by the way) he came to *Afmeer*; where he throws himself at's Fathers Feet, and upon his repentance and vows never more to fly out, is pardoned. But his submission appeared counterfeit; for,

So soon as *Raja Bickermanse* was slain, *Curroon* in his place constituted *Abdul cawn* Governor of *Gujarat*, *Amadavat*, *Soret*, and *Cambaya*, I mean the City, for the Province

*Radjea Bicker-
manse slain.*

*is pur-
done,
but, be-
fresh.*

viuce of *Cambay* including *Gujarat*, reaches from *Bare* a River near *Choul* South to *Cream*, under the *Persian* sun of our miles, and so well peopled, as 'tis thought there be no less than three or thousand Villages in this Province, the most being inhabited by *Bamians*, *Bullockis*, *Rajhoots*, and others the old Indians; albeit of late brought under the Moguls subjection. *Abdul-cawn*, though glad of so considerable a command, delays his repair thither, both in regard of his desire to see *Curroo* freed from trouble, and to enjoy the gain he every day got by *Curroos* depredations: so that obtaining leave to stay a while, he sends his Eunuch *Baffador-cawn* as his deputy to prepare business the better against his coming. The Eunuch in good equipage travels thitherward, and by the Inhabitants of *Amadabat* was received with due ceremony: but not able to bear with modesty the greatness of that Command, was so puffed up with impudent apprehensions of his high station, that he looks upon all others within the circle of his Government as abject persons; which Pride in the end rendered him ridiculous, and made him the contempt of divers. Amongst which was *Nadab Taffichan*, an eminent Officer, being no less than Chancellor to the Mogul in those Provinces; who in an amicable way having in vain laboured to make him understand himself, in plain expreſſions told him, The people were so disſatisfied with his behaviour they would no longer endure his command over them. Which sober advice the Eunuch took in such ill part, that instead of thanks he threatened punishment: Not content with which, he so disgraced the Chancellor, that unable to bear more he fled away for safety. He therefore with what force he had takes his way to *Nasor-cawn* Viceroy of *Patan*, and *Rabw-cawn* of *Chapperbenitez*; whom by his complaints and the affront offered he so inflames, that hearing the Eunuch had not above five hundred Horse under command, they presently advance to *Amadavat* with a thouſand Hoſe and five Elephants, enter the City, and forcing the Caille, imprison *Baffador-cawn* the Eunuch with his associates *Mirza Madary*, *Mozab-cawn*, and *Mameet-Hoffith*, *Cambay* Pod. State; whom after they had disgraced, they left the City fatisſed, but the Country full of alarmment. *Curroo* having quick notice of this paſſage, (ſeeing it a plot merely to diſhonour him after he had given vent to his pallion) straightway breaks out into fresh Rebellion; albeit *Abdul-cawn* made sport with it, as unworthy *Curroos* impatience, their Army onlins being but three, one of them a Lawyer, and the other two were Merchant; none of them of any influence in the Army. Nevertheless, knowing ſatisfaction would not be had without blows, and that *Saffi-cawn* might not ſubmit longer, *Abdul* convokes his Umbras *Amet-cawn* (Governour of *Broderas*), *T. albo*, *Ruffan Rader*, *Mameet Hoffith*, *Merion-leg*, *Zerdzie-cawn*, *Mazael-cawn* and others; to whom he relates the Prince's diſhonour and his own vexation; not that he either feared or valued ſuch Enemies, but that he ſaw the ſire of diſcord a kindling, which by the conſtancy of his Friends he doubted not to extinguiſh. They hear him, and unanimously with ſeven thouſand Horſe hafte to chalſie *Saffi-cawn* and his Allocates. Fourteen hundred thouſand Roopces were diſburſed by *Abdul-cawn* upon this preparation, and to increafe his Army with ten thouſand Infantry: so that now he makes ſure to puniſh, yea, to extirpate the memory of his Enemies. Indeed many ſwell themſelves with empty fancies, and by a ſooth admiration of their own power, think meanly of other men's abilities: We ſee it ſo in *Abdul-cawn*, a man of great power and experience: yet at this time ſo elated with pride and ſcorn, that (by too much contempt of thoſe he was to grapple with) he prepares his own ruine. For from *Mando* with his Army he marches to *Broderas*, and thence to *Waffet*, judging all *Gujarat* affighted at his coming: But *Saffi-cawn* and his were nothing troubled at it; no, although *Sultan Bulloch* and *Cawn Azen* their ſupplies were then at *Tſeroy* a good way diſtant, nor that he wanted (the nerves of War) money, and that the people were (though he was the Moguls cauſe) indifferent; but rather throws off all apparition of fear: and (to add ſomething to his Treasury) forraiges ſuch Towns as refuled to contribute, forces the Exchequer, and ſpoils that rich Throne of State which *Sultaan Curroo* had lately ſet up in *Amadavat* as a Monument of his Glory. With this and other helps he makeshift to pay an Army of twenty thouſand Horſe, five hundred Muſquettiers, and thirty Elephants for War; and (by Proclamation acquainting the Country with the occaſion of his making that preparation, being to defend the Kings right againſt Rebels) above twenty Umbras of quality, *Mirza Caffen*, *Immirza Mockym*, *Radgee Calli-cawn*, *Radgee Doola*, *Commel-cawn*, *Gokeldas*, *Pherecz-cawn*, *Tzedchan*, *Tzed Jacob* and others, repair unto him at *Kanckry* where he was encamp't, and marched with him to *Aſſem-pore*; where hearing of *Abdul-cawn's* coming, he arose and came to *Boubon-dow*, ſix courſe from *Amadavat*, where very courageouſly he attended the coming of his Enemies.

Abdul-

Abdul-cawn at *Anamogery* received intelligence of their encamping, and in scornful manner acquaints them with his coming; at that instant looking upon his own company so merrily that the wiser sort could not chuse but condemn him of too much confidence: Yet (loth he should perceive any want of will in them) they equal his haste, and march through *Nyriac* to *Momodabad*, which was but six course from the Enemy. There *Abdul-cawn* (by sober advice of his Umbras) commands *Muzab-cawn* to Prilon, and shackles him, having received some intelligence that he had correspondence with the Enemy; and the next day sends him with his Son *Godgee Sultan* upon an Elephant to *Mundo* to receive their trial. The ensuing day his Army moves towards *Kacca*, and there hearing how strong the Enemy was, (which a little startled him) he wheels about to *Baroch*, thinking to allay *Saffin-chaw* in the rear; but in vain, for they discovered him. Next day he resolved to fight, and accordingly divides his Army into three; one part he assigns to *Amet-cawn* and *Tzalibeg*; another to *Tzardi-cawn*, *Muzabeg*, and *Mamet Cooly*; and the last unto himself: in which equipage the whole Camp removed to *Zictelpore* and *Pheetibeg*; where *Nabar-cawn*, his five Sons, and two Sons in Law, *Karamanci-cawn* and *Kamanet-cawn* with three thousand Horse begin the fight, and charge so hotly upon *Abdul-cawn*, that they forced him to retire; besides, the Infantry plaid so fiercely upon them with their Muskets, that they disordered *Abdul-cawn* Cavalry, and by wounding their best Elephant constrained him to turn and execute his wrath upon his own company.

Curroos chief Captain sees the peril but knows no way for prevention, save by challenging to a single combat *Nabar-cawn* that was so valiant. The old man was so full of youthful heat that he accepts it, and with his Lance wounded *Abdul-cawn* in the Arm; but the old man being hurt in the head had perished, had not his Sons then made proof of their valour: Howbeit, in the rescue three of them were sore wounded, *Kamanet* slain, and the residue discouraged, that but for *Delaver-cawn* (who animated them) they had fled, and left *Abdul-chaw* victorious.

While these were thus bandying in the field of *Mars*, *Tzed-cawn* and *Tzed Jacup* gave a charge upon *Tzalibeg* and *Amet cawn*; where after mutual giving and receiving blows, *Tzalibeg* was first unhooded by his Adversaries Elephant, and then by *Tzed-cawn* slain. *Amet cawn* also (adventuring further than discretion warranted) was taken Prisoner by *Radjea Doola* and beheaded, (which two had the command of one third part of *Abdul-chaw* Army;) so was *Tzalibeg*, and both sent to *Saffin-chaw* as a trophy of their loyalty. The death of these great men struck such terror into *Abduls* Army, that each man fled which way his fancy directed him, *Tzaitsi-chaw* Governor of *Brodera* only excepted; who thought it too great a blemish for him to turn tail, having five hundred Horse and three Elephants as yet lusty and courageous. But what could his opposition do when *Saffin-cawn* in person came to charge him? To contend were madnes; and therefore upon good terms yields, and has fair quarter afforded him. But his example could work little with *Mamet Cooly* his Son; for he (imagining his Father had done dishonourably) with forty Horse and one Elephant flies to *Abdul-cawn*, who (though welcome) received little joy in such an inconsiderable addition: so as observing that *Saffin-chaw* the Chancellour was Master of the Field, he advises *Mahomet Cooly* to shift for himself; and so did he, with what force he could secure from the pursuit of the Enemy. In the flight, *Motsab-cawn* was taken and brought back to *Saffin-cawn*, and *Abdul-cawn* (by unexpected onset of the Coolies and high-way Rogues, as also by intolerable tempests, amazed, beaten, and discouraged) halts to *Baroch*, next day to *Surrat*; and after eight days refreshment and some recruits, to *Brampore*; where he attends *Curroos* command, and makes provision to repair his honour, which till then was never so notoriously blemished.

BAROCH (where the Pole Septentrional is elevated twenty one degr. fifty five minutes) is a Town of note in the *Gusurat* Province: distant from *Surrat* (by *Coffumbey* and *Periar*) four and thirty English miles; from *Cambaya* fifty four; from *Amadavard* a hundred twenty four; from *Brampore* two hundred and eleven, or thereabouts. It is seated in a beneficial soil, watered by *Narvar* (or *Nardabub*) a delightful River which from the *Decan* mountains mixing with the *Tappee* flows through *Brampore* hither; and at *Hawfor* (a Village eight course lower) making a pretty Isle, a small hours travel thence, in two streams four miles asunder incorporates with the Ocean. *Baroch* is visible by reason of her high standing a good way distant; built upon the best advantages of Nature and Art; both so excellently contending, as makes it at first view seem impregnable: She is well peopled, and with such industrious Inhabitants as extract wealth both by land and water; the buildings are generally low, specially those below the mountain-

In *quondam* times her Royalties were spacious, as soveraignizing over many Towns and Provinces of note a great way distant; as *Medapore* seventy miles thence; *Radgei-pore* or *Brodera* eighty; *Jownbassar* thirty; and *Jangar* in *Soret*; each of which now pay peculiar Podestates: Howbeit, the Mogul has received hercous as an annual Tax or Tribute no less than one million two hundred and threestore thousand Mummoodes (or shillings in our Money;) which Revenue from one Province, shews what a vast Exchequer all his Empire yearly contributeth. Twixt *Barch* and *Amadasaw* is intombed *Polly Medina* a Mahometan Saint, highly reputed by the People; who in a way of meritorious Pilgrimage repair thither, loaden with Chaines or Stones, and locking up their Mouths from speaking vanity, by such penance expecting to obtain children, health, wealth, or what else they may lust after. Lut to our Story.

A.D. 1612. Jangher during these last boiles was resident at *Fettipore*, where he heard of *Abdul*. *A. H. c. 2. t. wms* pranks and *Curroons* fresh Rebellion; which makes him sleep unquietly, till both of them receive due punishment: To which end, he calls *Sultan Perwees* his Son, and acquainting him with his design, gives him order to levy new Forces wherewith to prosecute his brother and those outlawed Umbraes that accompanied him.

Curroon Perwees (prevailing with *Mabobet-chau* to associate him) with fifty thousand Horse rebels, and is beaten. moves against *Curroon*, by the way inprisning *Mirza-chau* *Abdul* chau's Son, (who but lately was married to *Jangher* Grandchild) and by his order he is sent manacled to *Ehaba-chau*, in *Igora* able to be confined; whiles *Abdul Aiel-chau*, who by *Abdul* chau's perjuries was brought to *Curroons* party) escapes and upon submission to the Mogul is pardoned. *Curroon* has early notice both of the levies that were made to reduce him and of the approach of his Enemies, so as from *Azmeer* he hails to *Mando* to recruit his Army, with a full determination to bid them battle. *Perwees* follows his motion, and after a long and speedy march pitches ten English Miles from his brothers Camp with a resolution to engage him speedily; accordingly the next morning drawing out his men heateth him, who at the first shock by mis-hap of *Rishav-chau* and *Berkendafchau*, gave ground and let the Enemy pollise his trenches. In a word, after a short dispute *Perwees* has the day, and *Curroon* flies to *Brampore* his old receptacle. *Ganganna* in the interim noting *Curroon* ladiess, takes advantage of it, and perwades the Prince to send him to treat with *Perwees* for an accommodation, intending indeed to betray and deliver him into *Perwees* hands (having precontracted with *Beyrambeg* and *Darab-chau* to secue him, who to that end had ambushed near the River *Nurdabah* twenty thousand Horse:) But *Abdul-chau* disswades *Curroon*, distrusting *Ganganna*'s villainy; which could not be so secretly apprehended, but that by some means or other *Ganganna* had notice given him, which gave him a lealonable opportunity to cleape the Prince's rury: So that so soon as his intended treachery was made publick, *Beyrambeg* with his allies were loaden with Irons and placed on an Elephant, and with some leflect troop. *Curroon* leaves *Brampore* and lies into *Dicar*; where by *Malee Amber* (glad of such constion) he was welcommed, and feasted in *Nallicer-Throm*, where he dictates patience: his Elephants and men in the mean time are sent to *Dantabat*, to be there quartered till he had further usc of them.

Sultan Perwees and *Mabobet-chau* after this rout, enter *Brampore*, where they had intelligence whither *Curroon* was reticited. They presently give *Jangher* notice of their good success, which he entertains with no less joy than as if he had triumphed over a dangerous Enemy. But behold, this fair Sun-thine of content was invloped with an unexpected cloud of danger: For *Jben Thon* an *Ouzbeg Tartar* (of long time watching a fit occasion to forrage the Moguls Territories, and taking the opportunity of *Curroon* out-breaking) with thirty thousand Horse over-runs *Cabul*, (*Arachosia* of old) plundering the Country and doing all the spoil and mischief he was able. Which known to *Jangher*, so soon as he had given vent to his passion, he sends post to *Zaed-cawn* Son to *Mabobet chau* at that time Viceroy of *Bang* to advance with what force he could against that invading *Tartar*. This young Gallant delays not, but with twenty thousand Horse hastens to find the Enemy; and sooner than the *Tartar* expected entred his quarters and gave him so furious a charge, that *Jben Thon*, after short trial found his men better at plundering than fighting: For after a short engagement they betook themselves to flight; which by reason of the spoil they were loaden and loth to part with, gave the *Indians* the better opportunity of overtaking them; by which mis-hap, the *Tartar* lost half his men, besides such rich bogg and booty as gave *Zaed-cawn* the occasion of encouraging his men beyond their expectation. And to requite the *Tartar*, they delayed not to prosecute their Victory by following the dismayed *Tartar* into his own Country, and as far as *Gaffany* burn, spoil and make havock of what they could meet with; marching back with

with great wealth and many Elephants to *Kabul*, where with acclamations of joy they are welcomed; and *Jangheer* so much pleased, that *Zaed-cawn* had thanks, and an addition of five thousand Horse to his former number and command.

This Cloud over-blown the Horizon appears serene, and *Jangheer* afresh contemplates in what place he may most solace himself and enjoy his beloved *Normal* with most pleasure and least interruption; whose equal care it was to captivate him with charms of love. *Cassimere* at length is the place he pitches upon: It abounds with variety of choice sports; but, (what was most in objection) the progress was long, and *Cassimere* remote from most places whence in those active times he was to expect intelligence. Howbeit, delight swayed him against reason; giving *Curroon* (by that distance) to fair an advantage, that with speed (fending his Umbras w^d to follow him) he fortifies *Degan*, and through *Gulcunda* and *Orixa* advances into *Bengala*; yea, with four thousand Horse and three hundred Elephants passes through the solitary *Desarts*, and so suddenly presents his Force before *Dehaka*, that *Abrabin-cawn* governing that Province (in this surprize) flies away first to *Bamorua* a noted Town on the banks of *Ganges*, full of mis-slayed Pa-gods, much resorted to by Idolatrous Pilgrims, then to *Patenaw*, and thence to *Aljulipar*, not knowing indeed where to rest securely: Whiles *Curroon* smiles at his fear, and without scruple or let seizes upon his treasure; which, with his fair words to bewitch most of the Umbras of that fruitful Country that they immediately came to serve him with unexpected recruits of Horse, Money and Arms.

Overjoyed with which good hap this daring Prince forthwith break^s into *Purop*, flinging (as to the other) such terror into the eyes and heart of *Makoldisib* in the Governor^{ship}, that without any shew of manhood he poits to *Elabas* to acquaint *Rusfan* the Captain with his danger; by whom (instead of thanks) he was first soundly rated, and then for his cowardice imprisoned.

Curroon hears of that passage also; but so long as he continues prosperous regards no mans injury: but rather palling his Army over *Ganges* aims at *Kerry*, not dounting of the conquit. Howbeit, by the way, at *Radgee Mahal* he was with such fury assaile^d by *Eibrabim-chan* (by this time re encouraged, and here ambulicado^d with his thousand Horse) that little wanted of putting him to the rout, had not *Avidul-chan* (who brought up with him the best part of the Army) interposed, and after three hours sharp skirrish recovered him. In this smart conflict three thousand were slain of *Curroon*'s party, and four thousand of *Eibrabim*'s; who also lost his life by too great avarice amongst his men, but chiefly out of too eager an appetite to regain that honour wh^{ch} was so lately blemished. *Curroon* rubricates this in the Kalendar of his greatest deliverances: it teaches him how to travel with more vigilancy, but diswades not from the plotting his unjust design; spoiling and robbing all that wealthy Province, passing over *Guenga Chabaris* of old, and entring as Conqueror *Tanda*, *Gore*, *Banar*, *Ca-nighan*, *Serr iport*, *Sutjan*, *Bacola*, and such Towns upon *Ganges* or in *Orixa* and *Bengala* as resisted him; preying upon their Gold and Jewels, acting unchastities, and forcing Oaths and Hoitages from the Inhabitants to become his Subjects. Thence he marched to *Pathan*, whither *Radgee Uscm* with five thousand Horse and twenty thousand Foot came to offr him their service.

Pervees hears of his Brother *Curroon*'s extravagancy and supplies, and intends to find him out. He therefore commits *Brampore* to *Rusfan-chan* and *Laskar-cawn* charge, and with fifty thousand Horse comes with long toil to *Elabas*; and entring *Lala Ber singhs* territories, *Lala* meets him with an addition of seven thousand Horse, and offers him a Prent of three leck of Roopees.

Jangheer (lest he should surfeit of delight) at *Cassimere* entertains the news of his Son *Curroon* fresh out-breaking; as also of *Eibrabim* death and discomfiture: And fearing his vagrant Son might grow too popular and potent, rouses himself, and after advice with his Council, forthwith commands *Cham Jahan* out of *Multhan* and *Buc'arr* (Counties adjoining to *Chail*) to raise a considerable force to hasten into *Gujarat*, with the Tribute of those Provinces to advance a new Army, and join with *Pervees*, that he might be the better able to march against the Rebels. *Cham Jahan* being come to *Feti-pore*, there loyters, and as long as *Ara* wraps himself in idleness, forgetful of the Moguls command, the Princes need, and his own honour. But *Rusfan* (Captain of *Elabas*) shews himself more considerate; for having imprisoned *Macoldisib* for his fear and flight, he then fortifies his Castle, and stores it with men, money, and provision: Which when *Curroon* heard, he alters his intent of beleaguering that place, and draws his force against *Ramas* (a strong Castle,) which nevertheless by *Syed Mowbray* was yielded upon Treaty. After that he assaults *Timmer*, which though a while defend-ed

ed by *Hastibeg*, was in the end also delivered up. After which, *Abdul-chan* forces *Jangber Coolighan* Captain of *Bonarre* into *Elabas*, and *Wazier-chan* into *Souppore* and other Towns, out of whose quarters they drew abundance of treasure. And hearing of his Brothers approach with *Mahobet-chan*, he appoints *Abdul chan*, *Radgee Rhybem*, and *Byram-chan* to try their fortune against *Elabas*, which by *Rustan-chan* was so resolutely defended: They obey, and with all haste behege that place, next day assaulting it with utmost fury; but by *Rustan* were beat off, and forced to a retreat with loss: In which action on the feed of so much emulation kindled 'twixt *Abdul* and *Radgee Rhieem* as was not quenched (as soon appeared) without either of their destructions. *Sultan Perwees* and *Mahobet-chan* hasten (if possible) to be at *Elabas* to relieve the Garrison &c're the Rebels roote from before it; to which purpose they pass *Buckery* and *Munipore*: but *Abdul chan* hearing of their advance, and disheartened by the last storm, arises and lies thence over *Ganges*, and at *Bonarre* (or *Banaras*) joins with *Curroon's Army*.

Gangana (bankrupt in credit with *Curroon* and *Abdul chan*) had not been long in *Perwee's Army*, but by *Mahobet-chan*'s command (for some unworthy prank) there also was imprisoned. A Servant of his (*M'kia Fehum* by name) took this indignity so impartially, that with five hundred men he ambushes 'twixt their passage to *Kalpin* and *Lala's* Country, and by force attempts his Lord's delivery: His good will was much, but the succ's unanswerable; for *Mahobet-chan* (than whom none was more vigilant) scarceis of such a scare-crow, dis overed the plot, and in small space slew him, and cut in pieces most of his rash society. *Gangana* was thenceforth more strictly looked to, and his Elate seized upon, his Wife, his Son, and Family also upon Elephants were sent slaves to *Agra*; while *Perwees*, *Mahobet* and the Army (after a long and swift march) arrive at *Elabas*, where by valiant and fainful *Rustan chan* they were welcomed and lodged in the castle, with entertainment suitable to such high Guests.

Mahobet-chawm impatient of stay till he could engage *Sultan Curroon's Army*, (who by that time had recruited and drawn into the field a great force of Horse, allured by the magic of his Gold and Language) prepares for fight: Near *Thouc* (Aften miles from *Banaras*) the two Armies pitch their Camps in view of one another, either side resolv'd with the utmost valour to purchase victory. *Ganges* (that great and deified River) a while forbidding them, restraining either's fury, save what volleyed from the Harquebusses: Howbeit, *Byrambeg* began the play with four thousand Horse, and foraged the Country towards *Elabas*; but by *Mamet Shawma* was met upon *Shawma's* banks, where his men were discomfited, *Byrambeg* slain, and his head severed. *Mahobet-chawm* interpreting this as a good Omic, draws out his Foe; but knows not how (without peril) to pass his men over *Ganges*, till by a Native he is directed to a Ford, where with a party of Horse he got over luckily: and then having secured the pafs, he quickly marches his Army through the River. Having now nothing to interpose, *Mahobet-chawm* faces *Curroon's Army*. *Curroon* being of too high a spirit to be thus brav'd, (especially by *Mahobet*, whom though for his gallantry he needs must honour, yet contemned as being his adversary,) straightway prepares for fight: And having disposed his battel into the best posture he could, first orders *Radgee Rhieem* with his Elephants to charge *Mahobet*. This courageous Officer very gladly undertakes it; and gives *Mahobet* so hot a charge, yea, with his warlike Elephants so disorder'd his party, that had *Abdul-chan* or *Derra-chan* seconded him (as was appointed) *Curroon* had (tis thought) obtain'd the victory: But *Abdul-chan* swelling with envy against *Radgee Rhieem* ever since their attempt of *Elabas*, not only delayed to second him, but rather seemed pleased when *Mahobet-chawm* company recovered, and *Radgees* Elephants (wounded and madded with rage) execute their wrath upon their own party. In the end, *Radgee* (after as much proof of courage and skill as could be in man) was slain, and his whole body disorder'd. In this miserable fort perished one of the best Souldiers in all India, and *Abdul-chan* basely accessory to his death. But revenge, or rather justice pursues him: for finding it high time to give over looking on, he sees *Perwees* entring with *Radgee Ziffing*, *Radgee Ziand*, *Radgee Berzing*, and their whole Army. *Curroon* also falls on, doing what lay in the power of man, the battel now pel-mel enduring for five hours, wherein was expressed a great deal of bravery on both sides: *Curroon* was hurt in the Arm; *Perwees* (though upon his Elephant) by *Derra-chan* was wounded in the side, and but for the excellency of his mayl had there breathed his last. In the end, the Kings Army (by the excellent conduct and usial valour which *Mahobet* affch afford them) have the victory: the Rebels pusillanimously opposing that new torrent of destruction gaze a while, and then rememb'ring the injustice of their side make a slow retreat, and in the end sli amain, resolving not in haste to re-undertake such a busines. *Curroon* not able to alter his desti-

Radgee Rhieem slain.

ny (striking the ground with his Lance) leaves the field, and with four thousand Horse flies away to the inexpugnable Castle of *Ram-as*, which was yielded by *Monbuk*, and wherein he had placed *Radgee Gholam* one of the Murderers of Prince *Gushroo*; leaving the residue of his Army to tip the bitter Cup of Death, the Honour of the Field to his Brother and *Mahobet chan*, and the spoil of his Camp to *Radgee Berrsingh*, who of Gold, Silver, precious Gems, Elephants, Camels, Horses, and Slaves of both Sexes, found there great abundance.

Sultan Curroon now in his strong Castle and at such a distance has time to ruminant his misery; and accordingly with a discontented mind sees how insensibly he precipitates his hopes, at that instant fixed in the center of melancholy; and as an aggravation hears of *Mahobet chan's* approach towards him: Hereupon he disparts his seraglio, and flies thence to *Potan* with *Afzaph-chawn's* lovely Daughter only in his company (who had lately brought him a young Prince), and by a Zantel dispatches Letters to *Darab-chas* (then in *Bengala*) to levie more force, and appoints the rendezvous at *Radgee Mahal*, where he would expect him.

Mahobet chan and Prince *Perwees* in the mean time pursue *Curroon*, carrying false *Ganganna* in company, but under a guard; scarce resting day or night till they came to *Ram-as*; where hearing which way he took, they chase him to *Potan*; but there also they misl of him, having sure tidings of his flight to *Radgee Mahal*. At *Potan* they breath a while; and hearing of *Darab*'s obsequiousnes to *Curroon*, they prevail with his aged Father *Ganganna* by Letters to dissuade him, and to promise him the Kings thanks so he would join with them. *Darab* (inconced by *Mahobet chan's* severity to his Father, and supposing his persuasions counterfeit) goes on to levie men for support of the Rebellion. Prince *Perwees* hereupon proclaims him Traitor, and allots four thousand Roof ves to any that would bring him to his Camp alive or dead. The time-serving multitude (knowing that *Curroon* was fled) not only bring *Darab chan*, but his Children, and his Kinsman *Morad* who was Son to *Sha Nabarkhan*; all whose heads were immediately struck off and sent to *Perwees*, and by *Mahobet chan's* permission presented to *Ganganna*, by that made a wretched Father, and thence (as a Trophie of their care, and to the terror of others) dispatch to *Agra* to be set up on Poles. The report of which sad action was no sooner known to *Curroon*, but that it struck him into a fright; so that bidding farewell to *Mahal*, he flies to *Medenpore*, and thence to *Odjea*; but is quelled after by *Azobet* to *Medenpore*, where missing him he halts for Prince *Perwees*, and sends *Baker-chaw* and eight thousand Horse in pursuit after *Curroon*. At this *Oudee* or *Onjea* (a City in *Oudee*) watered by *Ganges*) are many antick Monuments; especially memorable is the old Castle *Ranichavd*, built by a *Bannyans* Pagod of that name about 994500 years ago after their accempt; from which time to this the *Bannyans* cultomarily have repaired to offer and to walk away their sins in *Ganges*, each of which is recorded by the *Bramyns*, who (as they believe) acquaints this Pagod with their offerings.

During these intestine broils, *Meler Amber* (perceiving the seafon advantagious to A.D.162 recover what he had lost) levies an Army of fifty thousand men, and so unexpectedly A. H. 103 charges *Laskor-chan*, *Mirza Mamethier*, and *Ebrahim Hossen*, that as men surprized they render up their Forts, and suffer the *Decan* to reposilic his former Castles and Garrisons; in which attempt 15000 of the Moguls men were slain, and as many expelled the *Decans* Country; the three Umbras also were sent Prisoners to *Daultebad* to attend the pleasure of their Conqueror. *Bacher-chaw* also having commission to prosecute *Curroon* procraftinates not, but in few weeks attains *Odjea*; where the Prince (though he had five thousand Horse, and three hundred Elephants) durst not abide him battell; so possest was he with fear, and so terrified with his late bad success, as that he flies into *Gulcundah*, contrary to *Bacher-chaw's* advice, who rather desired battell. The King of *Gulcundah* having notice of his strength, and the danger of his Diamond-mines, had some cause to remember what *Tigranes* the great Armenian King said, (going against the Romans with 400000 Men, and seeing the Roman Army not above 14000, who for all that got the victory,) *They be too many* (quoth he) *for an Ambassie, and too few for fight*. *Curroon* having also surreptitiously got from him a Diamond as big as a Hens Egg (as credibly reported) weighing 98 Mangelines, every Mangelin being 5 Grains, (the weight was 490 Grains,) which the great Mogul soon after bought for a Million of Rupees, Considerations that made him to receive *Curroon* with counterfeit kindness, and to attend him with twelve thousand Horse; and for his further security doubled his Guards in *Cunda-ver* and *Cunda-poly*, two of his most defensive Castles, wherein he commonly put his Diamonds with much other Treasure; also knowing full well that *Curroon* (not considering the annual Tribute, i. e. three pound weight being a Vise of the

Diamond-mine.

the fairest Stones or Diamonds thence presented the Mogul) had a vehement desire to visit and search the intrinsique of that precious piece of Earth which report had so sufficiently blazoned, as he was assured would abundantly compensate his pains and hazard. This famous Diamond-mine is distant from *Mesnilipatan* about four score and ten English Miles; the nearest Village is called *Mercanda*. The Mine it self is a large Rock under part of that Mountain which extends towards *Bellaguate* (the *Alpes* of those parts) at the foot whereof runs a quick stream our European Merchants name *Christena*, which after so ty miles flux increases another River, and in the latitudo of about eighteen degrees North, in one Chamel empty themselves into the Gulp of *Bengala*. The soil for many miles round (by reason of the extrem heat) is barren and sandy: but near the Mine the Earth appears to be of a ruddy colour, albeit the Vein it self is of a pale yellow. No part of the World for such a scope of ground affords greater plenty of Diamonds than this, or of a better water, those of *Socodana* in *Borneo* not excepted, although many be yellow. The Quarry also has several other translucent Stones which want neither beauty nor esteem; namely, Topazes, Amethysts, Spinels, Heliotrope, and other sorts of Agats, Garnets, Crystals, and the like. The distribution of the ground when the Mine is exploded resembles a Lottery: some for their adventure hapning to find Stones much to their advantage, others to los. In digging, if a Diamond exceed twenty Caracts (a Caract is four Grains,) such by the Law of that place are referred for the King; but under that weight, for the Adventurer. When the Mine is open, as the number is great of those that from mire parts resort thither, so the Guard increases answerably, thereby to give the better security: Howbeit, the danger is greatest in travelling, the Mountaineers supposing that few come or go empty; and therefore for the most part Merchants conloit in Caravans, and for their Money are sufficiently guard'd. *Mele Amber* with less suspicion but more subtily (heartily glad of this freih Rebellion, the Moguls troublies bringing peace to his Empire) sends an Ambassador to *Curroon*, well attended, with Letters of affection, and a large sum of Money, and other necessaries; with an invitation into *Decan* (if need were) where at all assays he should command his utmost. Hope oft fascines that to be facile in the attainment, which reason in the event thews difficult: so as prudence we see is of force, where force prevails not: For *Curroon* perceiving his design about the Diamond-mine frustrate, very heartily accepts the invitation; but after three months stay in that Country, weary of idleness, projects the recovery of his old Eparchy of *Brampore*: and so without long advice bids *Amber* farewell; and with ten thousand Horse divided amongst *Abdul-chan*, *Mahomet Tackick* and *Jacup-chan*, shews himself again before *Brampore*, but was forbard Entrance by *Radjee Rustan* (appointed Governor there by *Sultan Perwees*) Which so enrages *Curroon*, that after he had breathed out a thousand fruitless threats, he assaulsts the walls with violence; but by *Rustan* as churlishly answereed, and with great los compelled to retreat to *Cianchanna*'s curious Gardens, there to ruminate. Howbeit, *Abdul-chan* is so transported, that he mounts again and advances his Standard; yet was also forced to march away, being well beaten by *Rustang*, who filled the Ditch with the Carrasses of *Abdul's* followers. *Mahomet Tackick* at twi-light tries his destiny, charging so furiously, that in despight he mounts the wall; and was so bravely followed, that in small time he enters the Citadel, and on many parts of the battlement flourished his Colours in sign of Victory, and as a call to *Abdul chan* to second him; but *Abdul* (poisoned with envy to see a Merchants Son possessor of so much glory,) forbears to succour him; so that this heroick Captain (too far engaged) was assauled by *Rustan* and *Aisetchan* with such cagernets that his Company were cut in pieces, and *Mahomet* struck dangerously in his eye, yea, (after as much proof of valour as was possible) was taken and imprisoned. In this sort (the second time) has *Abdul-chan* forfeited *Curroon* the victory, yet conceals the reason in his breast, and goes unpunished. Whiles *Sultan Perwees* and *Mahomet-chan* continue their quest; and receiving notice of the Siege of *Brampore*, haste thither with *Chan Aten*, *Radjea Sterring* and a great Army of Rajpoots: but *Curroon* (premonished) seeing no good likely to be done, arises with his Army and falls towards *Bellaguate*, in the way attempting *Haffer*; but missing it re-delivers *Ran* as also to his enemies hands, and once more returns to *Mele Amber* then at *Kerk* in *Decan*, which now seems to be the receptacle of his misfortunes.

Haffer described.

Haffer (five courses from *Brampore* as you pass to *Array*, the strongest and in all advantages the best defended Castle through *Chandis*) is built upon the top of a precipitous Mountain, walled by Nature, and by its largenes, capable to feed and lodge forty thousand Horse; for, within are Springs of wholesome Water; the Earth also so fruitful in Herbs, Corn, and what else is requirable for defence or pleasure: and upon all sides

sides six hundred great Ordnance of Brass mounted, by the last King of *Gafurat*, that it is as Royal a Fort as any in *India*. Howbeit, one discommodity it hath making all the other relish badly, Worms engendring in the Legs and Thighs of such as drink the Water, oft proves mortal; and which only gave *Ebar* the conquest of this Castle, which otherwise was accounted inexpugnable.

Jangher further rejoicing at the victories his Son *Perwees* and *Mahobet-chan* had obtained, to exprefs how well he took it, takes special notice of the sprightly valour and loyalty of *Ganna-zied-cawn*, (lately made Viceroy of *Kabul*) and calls him to Court, and exprefses his good affection to him; and more than fo, adds five thousand Horse to his command, and under his Seal by Commission makes him Governor of *Bengala*, of all the Provinces of *Induftan* the most rich and honourable, of late years reduced under the Moguls Diadem: of old named *Bacura* and *Gandarida*; into whose Gulph the great and noble River *Ganges* in two *Oftiums* falls under 23 deg. by *Prolomby* called *Simsu Agaricu*: A Province for number of Inhabitants and Towns, and plenty of all things requisite, not inferior to any other throughout the Orient.

Normal and *Affaph-cawn* both of them cast a squint-eye upon the new Favourite *Ganna-zied-cawn*, and for no other cause than that he was Son to *Mahobet*; jealousie in state like that in love having a double passion of love and hate; no other known reason caused it: And being no Ideots in the School of mischief (Vertue ever being persecuted by Envy) in the first place the better to affront *Mahobet* (whose vexations are now broaching) they prevail with the old Mogul to command *Mahobet* without delay to send imprisioned *Ganganna* unto *Agry*. *Mirza Arebedea-cawn* (one of *Normals* Creatures) is sent with this mifchief; and *Mahobet* (loth to fnew any example of disobedience, though he knew *Jangher* abused, and that this was a meer plot to work his confusion) lets him go: who forthwith begins to chatter and spit his utmost malice against *Mahobet*, exhibiting many unjust complaints, and incensing as much as possibly he could the old Mogul against his Champion; and principally, that he had put to death his Son, with others of his Kindred, yea, after he had voluntarily left *Curroon* to serve in the Kings Army. It is a good observation that *Reges multos habent oculos, multas aures*: their hands are long, and their knowledge is enlightened by many, and their power exercized afar off. Accordingly, these accusations wrought somewhat with the credulous Mogul; but more, when from the seeds of distrust sown by *Ganganna* in the heart of *Perwees*, in his Letter to *Jangher* he gives *Mahobet* the Character of a vain-glorious man, one that delighted to eclipsie his splendor, and that it was probable his ambition might have a dangerous influence in the Army; with other such glances as quickly took impression in the Moguls weak fancy: that without further consideration or memory of *Mahobets* former services, *Ganganna*'s reports are esteemed no longer malicious; so as without advising with his own Reason or *Mahobet*'s Friends at Court, he unadvisedly condempns him unheard, disposes of his command in the Army to *Cawn Jehan*, (forgetful of his loytering at *Fettipore*,) and having null'd *Mahobets* Commission, revokes him home, where he should be better acquainted with the reason of this proceeding. Thus *frande perit virtus*. *Mahobet* admires the Villany of *Ganganna*, and *Normals* envy; and thinks (by the candor of his own innocence) it is impossible his Master should really believe such imputations; till rememb'ring his dotage upon *Normal* and her inveterate spleen, he grants it: resolving nevertheless to take another course, till time might better evince his innocency. Therefore as love and duty bound him, he first goes to Prince *Perwees* to bid him farewell: whom when he found so strangely altered, so coy and stately, it struck him with amazement, (an excellent sympathy and union, till *Ganganna* dissolv'd it, having been betwixt them:) so that with a sad look he leaves the Camp, but carries along with him the hearts of all the Army. From *Brampole* he goes; many gues, but none (no not himself) knows whither Fortune led him: at length by the advice of some Friends (who assured him if he went to Court he shoud at leaft be branded with the name of Traitor) he secur'd himself in his Castle of *Rantampore*; resolving first to vindicate his honour by Letter to *Jangher*, or otherwise to safeguard himself from imperious *Normals* spight, and other his Court Enemies.

This discord 'twixt *Perwees*, *Mahobet*, and *Normal*, finds sweetly in *Curroons* Ears, hoping by their divisions to advance his own ambition: And perceiving his old Father sente-lly nuzzled in apparitions of love, resolves to exercize his craft, and in the Moguls weakeſſ to fix the strength of his conspiracy. So that first he presents him by *Godege Jehan* (Tutor to his two Sons) a Letter neatly penn'd, but dictating nothing lave Hypocrisie: He knew also the Appetite of his Father after Gold and Rarities, and therefore adds a piskeath of rare Coins, a hundred choice Elephants, and some Portraits

which he borrowed or rather bought from the *Portugals*. The old King desirous of ease, and as an indulgent Father glad even of his seeming submission, accepts his present and invites him home, assuring his pardon. Accordingly, *Afzaph-cawn* by the Moguls directions gives him notice : and adds his secret advice to return to Court whiles his Father was in this good humour. In the mean time, *Maderbar-cawn* at *Lahore* receives the Government or Provostship of *Agray, Caffem-cawn* being displaced : He attained that command upon his marriage with *Moriffan-begum* Sister to the Queen ; and this disgrace was so impatiently digested by that ambitious woman, that she ceased not till she got him re-established.

Six years past, viz. 1618. and of the *Hegira* 998. I told you how *Jangheer* at the request of *Afzaph-cawn* took his eldest Son *Gulbroo* from *Anna-Rha-Khadia* and *Chan Jahan*, delivering him to *Carroon* ; who finding him a stumbling-block to the Imperial Crown, by *Radgee Bandor* got him made away. At that same time were committed to that Fratricide, *Sha Hussen* and *Eshymore* (Sons to *Dhuun Shaw* his Brother, who died through distempered drinking at *Brampore*) whom because he saw towardly young Princes and apt to revenge their Fathers death, he was the more free to send them through that bloody bath to destruction ; but durst not perpetrate such apparent butchery perceiving all mens eyes and expectations upon them, and the death of their Father and Uncle yet recent and not a little murmured at ; so that he had no other way to anticipate their claim unto the Empire, but by having them instructed in the Faith of our blessed Saviour Christ, and to be baptized ; by which profession he well knew they would be made incapable of that great earthly Monarchy, albeit heirs of a better ; for, *Virtus locum habet inter astra*. After this, he ever led them with him to keep them the stricklier, till such time as being vanquished at *Elabas* by *Rustan-cawn*, *Eshymore* escaped to *Perwees* and thence to *Lahore* where his Uncle entertains and marries him to *B'har Bamoo-begem* his Daughter : At *Carroons* next flight from *Brampore*, *Hussen* also escaped and fled to *Radgee Rassang*, and thence to his Brother, where he lived with more safety.

A.M. 5595 A.D. 1615 A.H. 1005. *Mabobet-cawn* at his Castle of *Ramampore* (practising to digest his affront with patience) receives a peremptory command from *Jangheer* (*Normal* I might say) to deliver up his Castle to the Queen, who had given the keeping of it to *Bacher-cawn*, (no Friend to *Mabobet*), and that he should forthwith remove into *Orixa* six small days travel West from *Suzigan* to his Son who was the Kings Lieutenant there. The message was tart; but being sent to one impatiente of affronts, and albit divided in himself twixt the necessity of self-preservation and offending his Master, at length resolves upon this answer : That he was very ready to manisfet himself a dutiful subject, and therin to spend life and goods to do him service ; but to stoop to the lure of his malicious adversary could not condescnd : He was ready in person to give him the reason, provided he might repair to Court, and return to *Ramampore* in safety. With this ill-digested message the Post returns, with news also that *Abdul-cawn* (either weary of his vagaries, or that he saw the wind of *Carroon*: good fortune still averse, or doubting his former clashes with *Radgee Rhiem* and *Tackieck* might undo him) for some or all of these he deserts *Carroon*, and flies to *Chan Jahan* at *Brampore*, where Prince *Perwees* then also was ; by both whom *Abdul* was at least seemingly welcomed.

*Abdul-cawn
leaves
Carroon
Party.*

Jangheer having received *Mabobet-cawns* Letter, as it is true *Nemo amat quem metuit*, he throws off his wonted love, and not a little wonders at his presumption ; but *Mabobet* no les admires his misapprehension : So that after the earnest perswasion of his kindred and friends about him, he assumes fresh courage ; and attended by five thousand voluntary Rahboots *Mabobet* issues from his Castle, and through *Rassanner* journeys to *Lahore*, at that time resolving to make his defence in person to *Jangheer*, (who was then removing to *Kabul*) or was resolved to die in doing it. The Queen and *Afzaph-cawn* having notice of his intent, but fearing his force, and that (if he were admitted any private discourse with *Jangheer*) probably he would reingratiate himself, they prevail with the Mogul to set his seal to their dictate, the substance being, That *Mabobet* should come in person attended only with a few of his confidants, to answer what should be objected against him. But *Mabobet* (contrary to his former resolution) being not unexperienced in *Normals* deceits, rather than adventure his person chose by his Son-in-Law to present his excuse : which with a willing heart this Gallant undertakes. Who being arrived at the Court, at his entrance into the Lescar found it true, that *Non est ira super iram malicie* : And that injustice armed with power is most outragious. For he was no sooner dismounted from his Elephant, but by the Queens order was disrobed of his bravery, and being clad in rags was chabuck't upon the soles of his feet with rattans, and bare-headed (the greatest shame) set backward upon a jade, with Kettle-Drums led through

through the Army, and made a scoff to all the multitude; over-joyed she had this occasion to manifest her hate upon the Idea of *Mahobet*, and withal to let him see how much she despised his interest. Where honour is concerned, the greater is the wound, and more highly resented by how much greater the Person is that gave it: and *Seneca* well observes, *quod fuit durum pati meminisse dulce*, as appeared soon after: For *Mahobet* had quick intelligence what uncomely entertainment his Son-in-Law had for his sake received; but alluring himself it proceeded not from his Master, he the better digested it; and the rather, being informed the whole Country blamed *Normal* and *Ganganna* for such barbarism: In it he sees their hate, and his own misery if he had rendred himself; so as now (more than ever discovering the Queens ambition to advance her Son, and *Af-saph-cawn Curroo*, to that end guarding themselves with an Army of thirty thousand Horse, violently seizing the publick Treasure, and in many transfacons of State abusing the Moguls authority; these things being duly pondered by *Mahobet*, and convinced of his loyalty to his Master and zeal to *Bullocky* right heir unto the Crown) *Mahobet* puts on a resolution to bid *Normal* defiance; nevertheless, expressing his zeal to his old Master, in a brief Manifesto he enumerates *Normals* and *Ganganna*'s abusis to the Crown, and then pourtrays the late indignity offered his Son, which (as he alledged) was an unparalleled act of barbarity. This done, he acquaints his friends and fellow-souldiers both what he had published, and what he resolved to enterprize: Having their faithful assurance to live and dye with him, he forthwith surveys his Army, gives strict command to offer no violence to *Jangheer* or his Tent; and with twenty thousand valiant Rathboots (his Countrymen) advances to find out *Normals* Army and the Lescar at that time consisting of above fifty thousand men. By accident, part of the Army at that instant marched by, led by *Eradet-cawn*; the residue being passed over the River *Phat*, were conducted by *Godee Abdul Huffan*, intending to beat up *Mahobets* quarters. That experienced Warriour had his Scouts abroad; and having the eyes of prevention always open, finding the advantage his, gives the Word unto his party, and with gallant resolution first charges *Eradet* with such good order, that in les than two hours (e're *Abdul Huffan* could come unto his rescue) he not only disordered, but flew above six thousand of them; filling the rest with such fear, that each man fled away for his own safety; but unluckily, for the flood without mercy swallowed most of them; both dangers equally so assailing them, that with gaitly looks and loud out-cries such as escaped made known the horror of this conflict: The other part of *Normals* Army stood still, till by *Af-saph-cawn*, *Abdal Huffan*, and other Umbras they were cheareed up, and prepare to encounter the Rebels; who with *Mahobet* their General were come in view, and with victory in their Fore-heads (regarding neither their greatness nor multitude) so couragiouls charge their adversaries, that for five hours there was giving and receiving blows, each side equally heated with rage, and infamed with desire of conquest. The Queens Army were fresh and excellently armed, but by the overthrow of *Eradet* not a little disheartned; *Mahobets* men, though come from far, yet of a more warlike constitution, were hopeful of booty: so that in the end *Normals* party gave back, well beaten and unable any longer to abide the strokes of their adversaries. *Af-saph-cawn* in the mean time rides up and down like a distracted person, now upbraiding, then intreating, and using all means possibe to rally; but fear and the Rathboots Swords had flashed too much terror amongst them to fight again: So as with a sad heart upon an *Arabian Courser* *Af-saph* flies away with *Mirza Abomila* his Son to a Castle of good defence not far distant thence; but by accident espied, are chased by *Mirza Syremer* (*Mahobets* third Son) and being taken are shackled in Silver Fetteres, and in that posture brought to *Attack*, were there lafely guarded: Whiles *Mahobet-cawn* and his Army (galloping in the air of good fortune) beat down the Queens forces, at that time more willing to dye than fight; so that without more lett they proclaim themselves Lords of *India*, and prey upon infinite riches of all forts which they found in the Land. The aged Mogul was found sleeping lull'd in *Morpheus* golden bed, till by *Mahobet-cawn* he was gently awaked and assured of his welfare. Upon a stately Elephant they conveyed him to *Attack* (a strong Castle to the East of *Indu*) leaving slain behind him twelve thousand men and many Umbras of note, as *Mirza*, *Casseem*, *Radgee Doola*, *Abdal Galiee*, *Abdal Samet*, *Mirchan*, *Godee Shawarchan*, and others; and taken prisoners *Jangheer* the great Mogul, Queen *Normal*, *Af-saph-cawn*, *Mirza Abomila* his Son, *Sultan Bullocky*, *Sultan Sherias*, *Sha Ehinmore*, *Sha Huffen*, *Eradet-cawn*, *Mokendus-chan*, *Mocrib-cawn*, and *Molena Mahomet*; all which (to the amazement of the World) are led Prisoners to *Kabul* to expect the pleasure of their Conqueror. Now is *Mahobet* elevated upon the Majestick Chariot of command, resolving nevertheless to detract as little as might be from the splendor

of his Master; his only aim being to clear his Honour from an unjust imputation, and to retaliate his Enemies what in his Friends he had formerly suffered. *Normal* (now clouded with shame) was brought forth, and by the monster multitude exclaimed upon; so that by the advice of *Mahobet's* Council of War the poor Queen was condemned to lose her head. Not till then did she perceive the thorny path she had walked in, nor meditated upon the mutability of Fortune; nor till then could she frame her ambitious heart to fear or servitude: But seeing no remedy, arms herself with patience and craves a farewell of her Lord, to whom after much entreaty she is admitted; where she prostrates her self cloathed with so much sorrow, that *Jangheer* melts into compassion and intreats *Mahobet* for her freedome. *Mahobet* loth in any thing to discontent his Master, concidcs; so that (contrary to the advice of his confederates) *Normal* was set at liberty: But to shew that none is more thirsty after revenge than that Sex, she becomes more enraged by this lenity, and speedily puts it in practice. The residue of the Royal Prisoners were used with due respect, *Eradet* and *Molena Mahomet* excepted, who by too much rigour were so enraged that *Molena* died. *Zador-cawn* sped bell; for before the fight (upon some occasion jarring with his Brother *Affaph-cawn*) he fled to *Mahobet*, and for that service was made Governor of *Lahore*; and *Cassem-cawn* (by mediation of *Mowes-a-begeen* his Wife, Sister to the Queen) is restored to his Government of *Agra*, and *Madaffer-cawn* displaced: so that now *Mahobet* sways *Indostan*, till by vicissitude of time he falls from his Meridian, and as well as others experiments the mutability of Fortune.

Curroon all this time was in *Decan*, lurking till he might elpy some advantage to recover his lost credit, and once more shake off the Title of a Rebellious exile: But when news was brought him from *Affaph-cawn* of the almost incredible change the Empire had, and with what a dismal vault it was then enveloped, his Father and Father-in-Law being in subjection, *Sultan Bullock* and prince *Daniel's* Sons imprisoned, and his own two Sons with *Godegee Jahan* their Governor brought to *Mahobet* by time-serving *Mudaffer-chans* to abide his mercy; He disputes not what *Mahobet* meant, but what had hapned. So that, exasperated with a thousand fancies, he gives *Melee Amber* many thanks, and with *Radgee Rhiems* Son and twelve thousand Horse passes (under leave) through *Rana's* Territories, and at last comes to *Asmeeer*, intending suddenly to surprize *Agra* and proclaim himself King. But his design by *Radgees* sudden death was prevented, half his company upon that occasion forsaking him; whereat, doubting some treachery in the *Asmeerians* (into such hate his robbing and other disorders had brought him) and that *Mahobet-chans* had sent some force against him, and *Sultan Perwees* also had ambult for him, he hastens to *Tatta*, hoping by conquest thereof to command *Indus* and *Cambayya*: So as at his encamping before it he sends the Governor a summons to deliver it; but the Captain *Xeriff-Melec* sends him word he had particular order to keep him out, and that if he attempted it he should receive the entertainment of an Enemy. *Curroon* returns him back again, That he was Son unto the King: *Melee* confesses it, but withal, a Rebel. *Curroon* re-greets him, That he came to desie *Mahobet-chans*, and to bring deliverance to his Father: *Melee* answers, rather by all their confusions to grasp the Diadem. *Curroon* enraged by these retorts, and heightened in his hopes by *Derra-chan*, prepares for an assault; and accordingly at one and the same instant it oyns the City walls in several places: but *Melee* the Governor so well defends the out-works and walls, that the assailants were forced to draw off with los; the belieged next day falling out, and with such gallantry falling into *Curroon's* Camp, that in the skirmish *Derra-chan* and 300 of his men were killed, and *Curroon* himself forced (to his old shift) to fly to *Delly*; where finding no welcome, he haltes with his chafed Troops to *Bakar* (a Fort twixt *Lahore* and the Sea) to breathe a while.

Delly described. *DELLY* is the name of a City and Province which of late belonged to the *Potan* Kings, the originary Inhabitants; but at this day is reduced under the Crown of *Indostan*. The City is ancient, large, and pretty beautiful; such appearing in the variety of antick Monuments and Tombs of above twenty Kings and other great persons who lyce there intombed: so as it is a place not a little visited by Travellers, and by infinite numbers of *Bombyans* (who for some superstitious end resort thither) little left or adored. Not a little famous also, by reason of that Pyramid which is in old *Delly* (three miles distant) where lies buried King *Homayon* who was Grandfather to *Jangheer* by frame and inscription supposed to be erected by *Alexander* at what time *Delly* was the *Mausoleum* of sundry Potentates. New *Delly* is walled about, watered by part of *Jemini*, over which we enter upon a twelve-arched Bridge of Stone; which River from a little Spring arising in the Mountains of *Jenna* drills to *Agra*, and after a great increase of her Channel at *Prage* flows into *Ganges*, and with her in two huge wide mouths (near 100 miles asunder)

asunder) empties her watry stomach into the *Bengalan* Gulph, in about twenty two degrees of North latitude, and then mixes with the salt Ocean. *Ganges* by Cosmographers is reputed one of the noblest Rivers in the World: It arises, some say, out of *Nigracut* part of *Caucasus*; others say, from *Syba*, supposed *Sephar* mentioned in *Gen. chap. 10. vers. 30.* *Siba* pop. *sunt Indie qui cum Coriade pugnaverunt contra Bacchum*, saith *Stephanus*; and after 1000 miles flux lofes it self in the Gulph of *Bengala*, as lately spoken: It has many Rivers streaming into it which swells her Channel, especially after *Jemini* at *Prajje* mixes with her. The *Bannians* esteem it sacred; and from the Cow they so much reverence give out that the Rock from whence it first springs has the resemblance of a Cows head: No new fancy, for *Virgil* in his *Georgicks* describing the River *Po* in *Italy*, says

Golden Eridanus with a double horn, fat'd like a Bull, &c.

Melte Amber, so soon as *Carroon* was marched out of his Country, to procure affection on from *Perwees* also gave liberty without treaty or ransome to *Laskar-cawn*, *Ebrahim-Hassen*, and *Mirza Manout-sher*, and with a safe convoy sends them to *Brampore*. The same month *Mahobet-chan* received 26 leck of Ruopees from *Charmazeid-chan* his Son (at that time Viceroy of *Bengala*) which he extracted as an annual rent out of *Pattana* or *Patenaw*, *Soughar*, *Banaras*, *Sonargan*, *Tanda*, *Bucola*, *Sripore*, and *Chatigan*, rich and well peopled Towns upon *Ganges*; as also out of *Sondiva* (an Isle twenty leagues from *Chatigan*) than which is none more fruitful in *India*. *Jangheer* also removing his Court from *Chabul* to *Lahore* (by *Normals* rash periwision) condescends to the slaughter of such Raft-boots as *Mahobet* had mixed with his own Guard; and after that openly declared that she could not be satisfied without the destruction of *Mahobet* e're he received any supply from his Kinsmen *Chan-Alem*, and *Radgee Rustang* who were then advancing up towards him: And for her part, to leave nothing unattempted that might conduce to the execution thereof, she empties all her Husbands Coffers, and hires men from all places to serve her; so that *Oriapuran* Viceroy of *Bassore* brings her 5000 Horse, *Godjee Tera* 3000, *Madoffer-chan* 12000, and of her own she had 10000 more; hoping also that *Fadi-chan* (led from the battel at *Attack* into the Defarts of *Thombel* to *Radgee Ghomanoo*) would afflociate her: but he was so afraid of *Mahobets* good fortune, that he would not appear against him, but went to Prince *Perwees* (then at *Brampore*) to whom (by a commendatory Letter from *Rajea Benzingh*) he was very welcome. *Mahobet-chan* has notice of the Queens project and new preparation; but not any whit disengaged, draws all his Horse and Foot into a body, and presently advances towards the Queens Army. In the way (at his Masters request) he uses *Assaph-chan* and his Son with more respect than formerly. *Normal* also haultens towards him, having sent her Son *Sheryar* to *Lahore* with 8000 Horse to secure that Imperial City against *Mahobet*. In his passage, by good hap he chances upon *Sultan Bullocky* and the two christened Princes, whom he refused; with whom he got so privately and with such haste into *Lahore* that without resistance most of the Raft-boots were cut off, and the Castle mannd' with the Queens Army. *Jangheer* also rouzed out of his long sleep now plays his part; for being come to *Rheed* within eight miles of *Normal* and her Army, (and having at all times the freedom of hunting, hawking, and such like pastime, he makes it his advantage) escapes, and is joyfully welcomed by the Queen, who (crying out *Monbarack*) impales him in her arms, and cries for joy; then (as one assured of the victory) gives present order to march on to affail the Traitors.

Mahobet-chan (like all other motions, when at highest, descend) quickly knows of *Jangheers* flight; and is not so grieved at his being gone, as at the manner, intending never to have with-held him longer than he fancied: yet the revolt of 5000 of his men did trouble him. Howbeit, perceiving his enemies were approaching, and that it was no fit time to discover his discontent, he apparels himself in a rich and tried Coat of mayl, and with his Shield and Spear spurs up in the front of the Moguls Lescar; where, by all signs he perceives the Moguls affection estranged: He sighs at it, and returns; and after a short Oration to encourage his Men, orders his Forces. But e're the battel begun, *Balam-chan* brings him a peremptory Mellage from the King, to this effect; That if he desired to be accounted loyal, he should express it by releasing *Assaph-chan* and other Umbras whom he kept imprisioned; by whose mediation probably he might obtain pardon. *Mahobet-chan* knows it was *Normals* device; yet loth in any thing to disobey the King, sends him a protest of his loyalty, and that so soon as he came to the River *Bedeh* his commands should be accomplished. So he arises, and at the place presigned calls for *Assaph-chan* and his Son, shews him he had power to destroy him, but his vertue swayed him to another end. Which said, he not only pulls away his marks of servitude, but vests him with Princely robes, mounts him upon his best Courser, girds him with a precious

precious Blade, and with a convoy of eight hundred Horses sends him to Court, his farewell only appointing to remember him. *Jangbeer* receives him with tears of love, but *Normal* with words of disdain; upbraiding him with cowardice, that durst not attend her time or depend upon her power to force him from a Rebel he both scorned and hated. *Affaph-chan* laments her lunacy, but is afraid to vex her; yet both in good will publickly and in private discourse at any time with the King, he speaks well of *Mahobet*, and as an honourable person labours his reconciliation. Whereby wee fee, that valour gains praise even in an Enemy.

- The affairs of *Indostan* by this variety posses all mens minds with astonishment: Whiles *Jangbeer* and his beloved *Amazon* with the Lescar pass on to *Lahore* to advise with *Sultân Sherryar* her Son how to reduce the Kings power to his proper channel. But what pleasure can the contemplation of her reviving glory afford her, so long as *Mahobet* lives unpunished? She knows not why she is intituled sole Empress of the best parts of *Asia*, Commandress of so much men and treasure, so long as *Mahobet* an obscure Raibboot (as she called him) dares eclipse her splendour, and travel to and fro unrelisted, guarded with such applause and popularity: she ruminates a thousand several sorts of revenge, but by too much choice knows not which to fasten on: the surest and most honourable is by War; and thereupon calls *Amet-chan* (*Brabim-chans* cousin,) *Zaffer-chan*, *Norradon-Cooly*, *Anna Rha Radia*, *Emry-chan*, *Mercomyr*, *Immizra Ruzan*, and other Nobles, desiring them to hasten *Mahobet*s destruction. Each man promises his belt, and with fifteen thousand Horses go jointly on to attempt it. In the first place (hearing of some treasure his Son *Zaed-chan* had sent him out of *Bengala*) they ambush near *Cheban-Chbaed* (a Castle of strength) and brake out upon the Raibbooks that then were no more but eight hundred valiant men, who sold their money at a dear rate, two thousand of *Normals* men giving their lives for it and her ambition; but by their multitude were at last defeated, and most of them slaughtered, leaving twenty six leck or 26,000 Roopées to their avarice; which was brought to *Lahore*, and there some part distributed for pay, the rest was colleder.

Ganganna (*Chanchanna* some pronounce his name) by this time recovered, was notwithstanding his dotage made General of *Normals* Forces. *Mahobet-chan* was not troubled at it; but the revolt of his wild Son *Breyrewer* afflicts him sadly. This young Gallant had no sooner triumphed over *Affaph chan* whom he delivered to his Father, (as is spoken) but with a Brigade of three thousand Horses (his Father had made him Commander of) being ordered to assail *Rajca Tzettersingh* at *Norron*, not regarding his Fathers instructions, wheels by *Bengor* (the contrary way) to force his Fathers Castle of *Ramipore*, albeit in vain; for *Mozairz-chan* the Captain suspeling him, fools him with fair woids, and by like Art divides his Forces; so that *Breyrewer* making an escape, flying thence by *Ray Kuijang*, at *Bondy* or *Bando* (as some pronounce it) a place to the West of *Agra* was unexpectedly taken and imprisoned.

Jangbeer finding his thoughts free and refreshed by the new delights his youthful Queen each day invented for his recreation, labours only to forget the Rebellion of *Curroon* and his late adversity; yea, gives his lascivious mind full scope, covering himself with the effeminate robes of sloth and wantonness: But in the plenitude of those his joys, the glory of his estate grows cloudy, and his motion whirls into a malignant Orb, by the disconsolate News he receives from *Brampore* of his beloved Sons unexpected death; at which report his Eyes grow dim, his heart fails, and all apprehensions of pleasure relish unfavory when the sad departure of *Perwees* presents it self; and those hopes and comforts he had, now seem fanstastical: So that he recounts his los, fidly crying out, *Gufbroe* and *Sha Daniel* are dead; *Perwees* is now no more; *Sha Eshimore* and *Hussen* my Grandchildren turn'd Christians; *Bullocky*, is not he a Child? *Sheriar* a Fool? and *Curroon* the Eye-sore of my conceptions? A Rebel, wild, proud, greedy, treacherous and deceitful? Can I deny that I am old? and at my death (which cannot be avoided) how subject will my Empire be to innovation? In these and such like dolorous exclamations *Jangbeer* siths out the few remaining minutes of his life, Death (*ultima pena* as some call it) summoning him in few monthes after to the resignation both of Life and Empire. *Humanum rerum circulum cōdem rotatus, non finit magnates semper esse fortunatos*: the circle of humane affairs turns so constantly round, as suffers not great men to be always happy, was *Croesus* saying unto *Cyrus*. *Mahobet-cawn* in the mean time chaws the afflicting news of Prince *Perwees* his death. Twixt whom (forgetting *Ganganna*'s treachery) an entire friendship was revived. He sees (in him) the privation of all his joy, the hopes he had in his succession annihilated, and the ambition of *Normal* and *Affaph-cawn* (suspected to have poysoned him) engendring to a monitrous height:

height: so that bidding farewell to the world, he contracts himself to privacy, feeding upon the contemplation of what had past, and the lubricity of terrestrial pleasures: For certain it is, That Life and Death are but indifferent things, and of themselves not to be shunned or sought, save for the good or ill that either brings, as Seneca well observes, *Fortunam inter dubia, Virtutem inter certa numeramus.* Mahobet also well knowing that there is no life indeed more safe than the obscure, and that a retired life albeit it hath less outward delight, hath nevertheless less envy and danger, from these considerations was after his exaltation induced to forfaze his strong and delightful Castle at Ramam-pore, and through Zidler he went unto Radgee Zirmo, where he stayed and turn'd Anchorette.

Howbeit, Curroons air swells with Chimeraes, now more than ever affecting the Empire, none but Children interposing him: He knew his Fathers affection was easily recovered, and Assaph-pan restles to state him in the Chair of Majesty. So that armed with confidence, and accompanied with forty Elephants and fifteen hundred Horse, he leaves Babar, Chytor, Tusa, and through Tesel, Chobager and Ecclister, comes to Mulfur-Thormer in Decan; where Meles receives him with joy, and to his party adds four thousand Horse, with promise of forty thousand more to assist him, if he had occasion.

CHYTOR (in mid-way 'twixt Brampore and Admeer) is a City upon a high rock, Chytor. claiming precedency for antiquity amongst all the Cities of India: It was formerly called Taxila, and is supposed to be that Metropolis whence King Porus issued against great Alexander. Rana Radjea Mardon lineally descended from him, of late years (and till by inactivity of Sultan Curroon anno 1614. he came to Agra, and in flight fort did some obeysance) here soveraignized, and in Oodipore. The City in formes Ages was so great and nobly built, that it was termed the Umbrella of the world: But at this day is but meanly beautiful, and albeit about 3 miles in compas, is not a third part of what it was formerly. Time, war, and weather have furrowed her: not only disrobing her of her bravery in buildings where men inhabited, but in Temples and Monuments of Antiquity: For of this place it might be said, *Tot Templa Denim quo in Urbe sepulchra Herorum numerare licet;* so many Temples here were built, and so many Princes buried. The ruines nevertheless of above an hundred to this day remain of Stone, white and well polished, albeit now inhabited by Storks, Owls, Bats, and like birds, of whom the superstitious people have an esteem little short of veneration. The North Pole is elevated in that place twenty five degrees. The Province is bounded by Cambaya on the South, by Chandys on the North, by Berar on the East, and on the West the Ocean.

Ganganna not a little blown up by his late honour and imployment against Mahobet-Gangan-na dies. cawn, whom he verily thought had left the society of men for fear of him, in the midst of his bravadoes is arrested by Death, and his Carcals conveyed to Delly to be intombed amongst his great Ancestors. At that time, Jacont-cawn (an Umbræ of great wealth and experience) commanding eight thousand Horse under Curroon, 'by reason of some affronts which were without cause put upon him by Mirzaladin Melecks Son, was so exasperated, that without more ado he revolts from Curroon, and flies to Chan Jehan General of Prince Perwees his Army then at Brampore who receives him with joy; and together with four hundred Elephants and forty thousand Horse march in haste to Bellagare, the Widow and Child of Sultan Perwees in the mean time being committed to the care of Lescar-cawn, where they practise all the extremities of War, as plundering, burning, and captivating all they had a mind unto: By rare chance intercepting some Letters from Godgee Hessey, they discover Abdul-cawn (whom some call Abdulla-cawn, the weather-cock of those times) his intention to turn from the Kings party and return to Curroon; for which he is convicted, his estate confiscated, his honour reversed, himself manacled, called the darling of inconstancy, and upon an Elephant in a disgraceful fort sent to Brampore, where by Lescar-cawn he was imprisoned. This done, they enter Decan, and pierce fortunately into the very midst of Meles Amber's Kingdom, doing what they pleased without opposition; so that after six weeks hostility, they return loaden with abundance of wealth, over-joyed with their easie victory. But (when they thought themselves most sure) Melecs presents himself in an advantageous place with no less than eighty thousand men, incircling them on the one side, as the hills did on the other: so that surrounded also with amazement they encamp, not daring to hazard the fight, or force their passage, but in that miserable fort are blockt up; the Decan at no time offending them, till by famine finding no pleasure in their riches (where no meat on safe terms was to be purchased) they were constrained to parley;

parly ; and the issue thereof (according to Articles) was, to march undisturbed without their Arms or Baggage, having only their Lives and some unserviceable Horse allowed to return upon. A disgrace utterly defacing the memory of their past triumphs in that Country. Nothing rides upon swifter wings than Fame, which gave *Jangheer* the great Mogul quick advertisement of this bad success, but knows not how to amend it ; nor cares he much, the memory of Prince *Perwes* Death so afflicteth him. Nevertheless, *Normal* ceaseth not to pursue her revenge against *Mahobet* ; and finding him hard to be dealt with, she begins with *Channa-zeid-cawn* his valiant Son ; whom first she recalls home, and places *Macrib-cawn* in his command over five thousand Horse and twelve thousand Men : but *Macrib* had small joy in his advance ; for in less than three weeks failing over *Ganges*, by accident the Boat was over-turned, whereby he was drowned, and *Fedi-cawn* (by Commission from *Jangheer*) made Viceroy of *Bengala* and the Territories near *Malacca* in his place ; during which (*Jangheer* being then at *Lahore*) a *Tartarian* Ambassador (*Zict Borks* by name) arrives with Presents and commands from the King of *Muurenabar* (or *Mananger*) accompanied with the only Oracle and Wonder of his time *Hodge Abdul-radgee* (Brother to *Chejea Callum*) one admired by most and reported to by many sorts of *Tartars* from *Bochar*, *Tuz*, *Balek*, *Samerchand*, *Gaznaben* and other parts, none of which came empty-handed, so that in small time this *Santoon* became comparable in riches with most Potentates in *Asia*. He was brought into *Lahore* with no small joy and admiration, all the Umbras of the Court (*Afshar-cawn* excepted) attending him ; and he was no sooner lodged, but that he was presented from the Queen with a Goblet of pure Gold, massive and of curious work, with so many Jewels as out-valued a leck of Roopees. These he accepts cheerfully ; but scorning to be behind in courtelie, returns her and her Lord five hundred Dromedaries swift and beautiful, a thousand Horses of excellent shape and breed, a great quantity of Porcellan and other *China* rarities. The Ambassador also presents the Mogul a double of such, two thousand Horses, a thousand Dromedaries, some precious Sword-blades, and other gifts of value ; so great, that the report went, never any Ambassador came so richly furnished, was better entertained, or went away more rewarded. Nor let any Ambassador think himself welcome to any *Afzick* Prince, that brings nothing for a present save only Complement ; for the very Natives seldom make addrelles to any great one without a Present.

Yet is not *Normal* suited with content, so long as *Mahobet* makes frustrate her Vows to have him ruined : Her power seems small, her endeavours idle, seeing (as she thought) his case was in contempt of her ; so that her thoughts project several ways for his destruction. The indignity offered his Son-in-Law gladdened her in part, and much more to see his Son *Zeid-cawn* by her means cashiered from his employment, and at Court affronted ; Howbeit, by *Afshar* means *Jangheer* himself countenances him ; yea, *Normal* (had not the over-flowing hate she bore his Father hindred her) had doubtless become amorous of this accomplished young Gallant, and made him in *Cupids Cofft* *Jangheers* Competitor : For *Successore novo vincitur omnis amor*. But spight so o're-sways her, that forthwith she calls unto her *Amir-chan*, *Nouradin-Cooly*, and *Hemry-beg* (her Minions) to whom she discovers her enmity, and intreats their diligence. They obey, and accordingly with fifteen thousand Horse advance to fight with him (whiles *Normal* and the King journey to *Cassimer*, his *Neplis ultra*) and *Afshar-cawn* (mindful of *Mahobets* kindness to him, loth so brave a man should perish through the malice of a woman, and especially by his civilities to engage him to *Carroon*) by a swift and trusty Messenger sends him a Letter discovering his Sisters resolution, and sollicites young *Rana Radgee* to preserve him.

Mahobet, upon recit of *Afshar-cawns* Letter, after some sorrowful expressions forsakes his Cell in *Zirmal*, flies to *Cassimer*, and thence to *Radgee Rana* who ever loved him. *Normals* Army has notice of his flight, but dare not enter *Rana's* Countrey in a hostile way, and therefore they post intelligence to *Normalhal* ; who writes to *Rana*, mixing intreaties with threats, making *Jangheer* sign what after long and swift running is delivered him. *Radgee Rana* at first condemns her bravadoes ; but upon better consideration assures her, he is not willing to give the Mogul or her any just cause of offence. Which answer being returned, he forthwith first assures *Mahobet* that his heart was true towards him ; and that if he would have it so, was ready to engage in his defence against all the power of *India* : yet in prudence he thought it more adviseable for him to withdraw to exiled *Carroon*, who (as he was *Normals* antagonist) would without doubt entertain him gladly. *Mahobet-chan* (by the circumstances of his speech judging him fearful) tells him he intended not to be any occasion of loss to him ; and so mounts to be

be gone : but *Rana* will not let him go , till he promise him a delivery of a pacquet which he had written and directed to *Curroon*. After much perswasion he condescends ; and with five hundred Raifboots , and one thousand other men led by *Wazir-cham*, he speeds into *Decan* ; where at *Gayneer* upon the limits of *Nizamshah's* Kingdome he finds *Curroon* ; who was so amazed at this his sudden coming , that he instantly sounds an Alarm : But when he had read *Rana Radjef's* Pacquet , after some astonishment he embraces *Mahobet* with unspeakable joy , by protestation firms a perpetual friendship with him , and gives him the command of that Castle and his other Forces. *India* adquires at this agreement , and *Normal* (now too late) repents her folly: For,

—Qui non moderabitur ira
Infectum voleret esse dolor quod suaserit & mens.

—The mind oft in remorse
May wish the thing undone, Rage did enforce.

Jangheer also blames her inconsiderate wrath , and grows so afflicted at this conjunction , that in a deep melancholy he forsakes his pleasures at *Cassimere* , removes towards *Lahore* , and calls for the Chronicles for his recreation. Scarce any thing is done or said by or concerning these Monarchs which is not registred : Nor is it a new custome ; for *Plutarch Symp.* 1. reports , that when *Alexander* chanced but to sleep at Table it was registred. And *Hest.* 6. when *Ahasuerus* King of *Perisia* could not rest in his bed , the Chronicles were called for and the Eunuchs Treason remembred that was discovered by *Mordacai* the Jew. But to our Story. Upon the high mountains of *Bymbry* he falls sick , and at three days end , after three and twenty years reign , (to the aitonishment of the *Les. ar.*, *Normals* endless sorrow , and the grief of the whole Empire) *Jangheer* dies (suspected of poison) the twelfth of *October* or *Ardabekish* , in the year of our account 1627. and on the *Hegira* 1007. nominating upon his death-bed his Grandson *Bullock* (Son of *Sultan Gusbro* his eldest Son) his Successor ; having also sworn his Principal Umbras to see him Crowned : also ordains , that *Curroon* should have no portion nor favour , save what he might merit from *Bullock* by his submission. Accordingly they conveyed the old Moguls dead body to *Lahore* , where they prepared for his Funeral , and after with all due solemnity carry it to *Tzecander* (three course from *Agry*) where they intombed him in King *Eckars* Monument ; and at *Delly* they Crown *Sultan Bullocky* (aged thirteen years) King with all Royal accustomed State , and unanimously cry out aloud , *Padshaw Salaman* , i. e. God save the King.

Normal in *Jangheers* end fears the beginning of her miseries ; and now sees that as in Nature so in Government , nothing is permanent that is violent : but being of an active spirit , she instantly conceives and swells with the ambition of that Empire. Her pregnancy was bettered by having the whole Treasure in her hands ; also animated in that *Bullock* was too young to nourish opposition , his Council careles , and *Curroon* a great way absent thence : so that taking occasion by the forehead , she arms her self with confidence and a pretended Title , and resolves to mount her Son *Sheriar* , to the supreme ascent of Majesty , or in the attempt to set all *India* on Fire , and to consume her self as a sacrifice in that great action. In this resolve she lets her Treasure fly , hires fifteen thousand Horse , and sends in post-haste to her Son in *Jengapore* (a pretty Town in *Penjab* , watered by *Cabul*) to levy as many more : Which done , she intends to strangle her Brother *Affaph-cawn* , and *Bullocky* the King , who at that time were advancing towards her. But so soon as they had understanding of her meaning , they leave *Chotden* , and with thirty thousand Horse haste to *Lahore* to apprehend *Sheriar* , whom they heard was lately baffled by *Godee Abdul Hussen* (once his stipendiary) and then encamped only with four thousand Horse : But in the way (to prevent *Normals* pursuit after them) they block up the narrow passage that is upon the Mountains through which her Army needs must pass ; so as ere the Queen could come to joyn with *Sheriar* , *Affaph-chan* , *Eradet-chan* and other Umbras with the young Mogul in company arrive at *Lahore* , where they find *Sheriar's* Army (by the expence of ninety thousand leck of Rupees) trebled. They delay not , but with extremity of rage affail him ; and in two hours (by the villainy of *Amir-chan* and *Sherigodee* two of his chief Captains who most basely betrayed him) get the victory , forcing him into the Castle ; which for two days was defended against Sultan *Sultan Bullocky* and all his Army , but in the third was treacherously yielded , many of *Sheriar* his men slain , much treasure taken , as also *Sheriar* himself , who (to make him incapable of future Government) has his Eyes put out , *Sultan Bullocky* in pity not suffering blind him

him to be killed. That done they again proclaim *Bulloch* Emperour, and send *Erader-cawn* with twenty thousand Horse against the *Virago* Queen : Who (hearing how ill her Son had sped, and doubting Treason in her Army,) lets fall the Majcsty of her Spirit, sighs at the perfidy of her Brother, grieving that she slew him not when she had him in her power; complains of her own weaknes in continuing so long so needlessly enraged against *Mahobet*, deplores her abusing his valiant Son, and with a dejected eye beholding the sudden eclipse of her glory and the inconstancy of her friends, wraps all up in dismiling her Guard, and thus disrobed of bravery she submits to *Bulloch's* mercy ; who like a noble Prince forgives and comforts her, gives her his Oath of safety, and during his Reign affords her all respect and freedome becoming her quality.

This Noble Prince shews himself in the Durbar and Jarneo to the people not so oft as was expected, nor long enjoys his Sovereignty : for *Affaph-chan* seeing all as he desired, speeds away a Post with Letters to *Curroon*; which Zantel or Foot-post made such haste, that in 14 days, as they report) he ran two thousand five hundred of our miles, as far as *Daiti* in *Decca*, eight course from *Necapore*, and from *Brodera* or *Rajepore* in *Jesual* 120 to the East) which being receiv'd and opened, *Curroon* was over-joyed with the intelligence : And sending his excuse to *Mele Amber* the *Decan* King for not taking leave in a more ceremonious manner he sets forward with *Mahobet-chan*, *Zulpeckar-chan*, and seven thousand Rashboots and Mancebdars, passing through *Guzurat* to *Amadavat*, where by *Saffin-chan* he was welcomed. There he slept not long; for making *Agra* the object of his race he bids farewell to *Saffin-chan*, and with a great recruit (feeding them with greater promises when he had the Crown) after three weeks march he comes to *Agra*, where he claims the Imperial Title, and by the Kurwal and his Favourites was proclaimed King by name of *Pot-Shaw-Jehan*. Then giving notice from the Guzal-chan to *Affaph-chan* how far and with what succels he had travell'd, as also that so long as *Sultan Bulloch* was living his Greatnes was but counterfeit; *Affaph-chan* slest in former homicides, and not caring how, so he could fix the Diadem upon *Curroon* at that time tottering, makes *Rajee Rendor* of his Council, who forthwith without examination of right or wrong Polls to *Labore*, and with *Affaph chan's* Keys enters the Hunnum where the Innocent Princes were (suspected of danger,) and that execrable wretch with horrid speed and infernal cruelty strangles them all, to lead *Curroon* through a bloody path unto the Throne.

*Such is th' infacred famine of a Crown,
That it to satisfie before men fail,
What in their way doth stand all must go down,
Seeing bonds of Blood or Friends ship nought avail.*

A.M. 5. 1628 A.D. 1628 A.H. 1008. In such lamentable manner died young *Bulloch*, after he had been but three months Emperour. Others were forced to taste of that bitter cup; for in that massacre there accompanied him *Sultan Sheryar*, *Sha-Eshmore* and *Sha-Hoffen* (the baptized Sons of Prince *Daniel*;) the two Sons also of *Sultan Perwees* and the two Sons of *Sultan Morad* or *Anurath*; all whose Carcasses were without ceremony buried in a Garden in *Labore* near to the entrals of *Taingheer*; but their heads (as an undoubted Testimony of their death) were sent to *Curroon* therewith to glut his infernal ambition.

The murther of the Royal Blood of *Industan* quickly spreading it self, affrights the whole Realm : and being known to *Chan Jahan*, *Zicd chan*, and other Umbrates, they were over-charged with fearful apprehensions; for albeit they see *Affaph-chan* was guilty, nevertheless they want power to question him, especially for that they knew very well it was acted by *Curroon's* approbation (if not procaration:) So as all the remedy that was left was only to heap a thousand maledictions upon their heads, and to crave vengeance from above to recompence this villany. *Curroon* sees the Empire storming at him, but his incantations quickly quiet them: so as after long turmoil (having through the Ocean of inconstancy arrived at the Port of greatness and ease as he thought) with great Pomp he made his Intrado into *Agra*, and forthwith gave order for his Coronation; which accordingly by a general assembly of the Umbrates and Nobles of his Empire was performed. Then by a Proclamation he assumes the Name of *Sultan-Sha-Bdy-a-Mahomet*: For albeit we give him the name of *Mogul*, they call him *Sha* or *Pad-Shaw*, i.e. *Rex magnus*. Concerning which word I have formerly given my apprehension . and may add, That as *Mogul* in Arabick signifies *unknown* or *a stranger*; the same probably was first imposed by the *Arab* Stipendiaries, upon the *Tartars* first invasion or

or when Tamerlane's Race made it the Principal Seat of their Empire : Upon the like occasion the word *Welch* was here imposed by the Saxon. After which (A. D. 1628. A. H. 1008.) he orders the affairs of his Monarchy, placing and displacing at his pleasure. His Father Seraglio was by his appointment shut up ; Q. *Normahal* and her three Daughters confined ; *Afzaph-chan* nevertheless made second in the Empire ; next him *Mahobet-chan* was advanced, *Abdul-chan* released, and *Channa-zied-chan* re-established in the Viceroyship of *Bengala*. Ambassadors from *Persia*, *Arabia*, *Tartaria*, and *Decan* repair with Presents to the Court, and congratulate his access to the Crown. Divers *Radjees*, as *Kadree Kessing* from *Nasor*, *Char-Azem* from *Ajmer*, the puissant *Radjees* *Mansigh*, *Tzettefingh*, and *Gheffingh* from *Fettipore* with fifty thousand Horse move in solemn state to *Agra* ; which (after ix weeks) repaired also *Afzaph-chan*, *Ziduch-cham*, *Eradet-chan*, *Rugian-chan*, *Saffin-chan*, *Margomeley* and other Principal Umbrae, whom he affectionately received : remitting and putting in perpetual oblivion all offences whatsoever committed during his rebellion. After which he proclaims a Jubilee, which was celebrated with all manner of sports and pleasures imaginable.

Curroon in this manner attained the highest Dignity of the Eastern World, guarded by a power (in his opinion) irresistible. Howbeit, these sins have apparently (even in these our times) drawn down the heavy Judgment of God Almighty ; both, in taking his beloved Wife away, since when he made his Daughter (by that dead Lady) his Wife ; incest of so high a nature, as that year his Empire was so wounded with Gods Arrows of Plague, Pestilence and Famine as this thousand years before was never so terrible. The Sword also seems to threaten him, the *Persians* having started from him A.D. 1614 *Kernaen* and *Candahar* ; the *Tartar*, *Kabul* ; *Sherub Almuck* endangers *Tutta* and *Loure* A.H. 1014 *Bander* ; *Rodgee Jough* with his *Coolys* trouble *Brampore*, and two counterfeit *Bullockytes* have lately sown the seeds of an Universal Rebellion. The event is in the hand of God, who even in an Infidel hates the Sins of Blood, incest, and dissimulation. We will close therefore with a caveat to *Curroon* from a Heathen, of more reason and temperance.

*What ? that great Jupiter the World that shakes,
When Etna's thunder-bolts in hands he takes ?
Think't thou from him who all the world doth see
In acting these deep crimes conceal'd to be ?*

— Quid ? ille qui Mundum quatit
Vibrans corsica fulmen Euncum manu
Stator Deorum ! credis hoc posse offici
Inter videntes omnia, ut lateas ?

To conclude, at our being in this Country *Curroon* came within two days journey of *Surrat*; and in ceremony the English Ships thundred out his approach and welcome by two hundred great shot, which he thankfully accepted of. And being that we are now leaving the Moguls Kingdom, accept in good part that little gleaming I made of the Language there spoken, which (by commerce and so near neighbourhood) I find hath mixt with it much of the *Persian*.

God,	<i>Allough</i> , and <i>Choddaw</i> .	Merchant,	<i>Souldager</i> .
King,	<i>Patchaw</i> .	A great man,	<i>Buddye-murd</i> .
Queen,	<i>Begin</i> .	A poor man,	<i>Fouckeire</i> .
Nobleman,	<i>Nobobb</i> .	A good man,	<i>Coob Adam</i> .
Military Officer,	<i>Umbran</i> .	A bad man,	<i>Badd Adam</i> .
Soldier,	<i>Suppa</i> , and <i>Huddee</i> .	A Christian,	<i>Fringy</i> .
Gentleman,	<i>Reg</i> .	A Mahometan,	<i>Maffaimore</i> .
A Priest,	<i>Moolae</i> .	Sea,	<i>Deriw</i> .
A Judge,	<i>Hackame</i> .	Firc,	<i>Augi</i> .
A City,	<i>Sheer</i> .	Devil,	<i>Slytan</i> .
A Village,	<i>Come</i> .	Clouds,	<i>Boddily</i> .
A Castle,	<i>Chure</i> .	A Captain,	<i>Cappitain or Umbran</i> .
A Prison,	<i>Bande Chonna</i> .	Pylor,	<i>Noccadame or Mollym</i> .
A House,	<i>Gar</i> .	Storm,	<i>Budde Cane</i> .
A Fort,	<i>Nunne</i> .	A Taylor,	<i>Durge</i> .
A Rogue,	<i>Haram zedda</i> .	Shooe-maker,	<i>Monche</i> .
A Slave,	<i>Golum</i> .	Barber,	<i>Hajame</i> .
Thief,	<i>Chure</i> .	Gold,	<i>Fawcha</i> .
Dead,	<i>Murda</i> .	Silver,	<i>Tappa</i> .
Alive,	<i>Cuea</i> .	A Book,	<i>Catob</i> .
Earth,	<i>Zemme</i> .	Table,	<i>Mease</i> .

A Chest,	Sanduck.	Bread,	Rue.
Light,	Noor.	Butter,	Gee, or Mecon.
A Cup,	Peola.	Rose-water,	Gulob.
Towel,	Rumale.	Lemons,	Limboo.
The Court,	Mahal.	Orenges,	Orange.
Knife,	Churrie.	Pepper,	Merchy.
Spoon,	Chimchaw.	Sugar-candy,	Sucker-missery.
A Pongranade,	Anarkala.	Cinamon,	Dolchiny.
Candle,	Mumbacee.	Ginger,	Sunre.
Treacher,	Racheby.	Nutmeg,	Jayfull.
Carpet,	Delicha.	Macc,	Contry.
Balon,	Coula, or Basca.	Cloves,	Closar.
Servant,	Nusler.	Dates,	Cohugure.
Meat,	Conna.	A League,	Teane chuse.
Drink,	Panne.	A Milc,	Teck chuse.
Cheese,	Panier, or Panno.		

Live, O King.
 Good morrow.
 God blefs you.
 Whither go you ?
 Not far, or Near.
 Where dwell you?
 In Cambaya.
 Are you a Merchant ?
 Or a Souldier, or what ?
 Are you married ?
 Are you in health ?
 Yea, I thank God.
 Is the King at Agra ?
 No, he is at Brampore.
 How long hath he been King ?
 Two Years, and odd Months.
 Is he a good King ?
 A good King we think.
 How many miles to Agra from Surat ?
 A thousand, or eleven hundred.
 Is it so much ?
 It is no less.
 How sell you this ?
 Is it dear or cheap ?
 Have you any fine shirts ?
 Yes, or what else you want.
 Farewel.
 What is your Name ?
 Of what Countrey ?

Padshaw fallamam.
 Bonocada.
 Chaudaw fallamut, or Rackee fallamotce.
 Conjorta Kidder, or Chelta congeet ?
 Nazeike.
 Tomorrow-gome, or Tom charwetty ho ?
 Cambayar.
 Tum soldager ha ?
 Tumbe suppya ?
 Tumba-a-chea ?
 Tum chogge ha ?
 Allow whodaw.
 Panshaw Agra meha ?
 O Brampore me he.
 Kittim burse Panshaw keia ?
 Do burse sanght aut mina Uppe.
 Padshaw loobas ?
 Me Panjhanta koobas.
 Kittine course Agra, & Surattia ?
 Hazar, e gurra zo.
 Kittine, cutch ?
 Cumri.
 Iskee ea mooke ?
 Bote pise mungha o sungha ?
 Giru chamise ha ?
 Ann eacba he.
 Bonocada.
 To morro nome ka ?
 Gousa Malucks ?

Diu. Not many leagues from Surat and near the Cambayan gulph (called Gedrosia of old) is Diu or Dow, (in former times called Delta, from its resemblance it has with that in Egypt) Patala, Patalena, and Hidafpa, as Arrian, Pliny and Strabo have pleased to call it : seated at the entrance into the Persian gulph, in the latitude of twenty two degrees eighteen minutes North, distant from Ormus to the South sixty leagues ; and from Cape Comryn two hundred : a stream or arm of Indus encampalls her so that she becomes a peninsula. The Haven before the Town is land-lockt, and so good for anchorage, that than at Swally, Chaul, Dauda-Rajapuree, and other Havens thereabouts is no better riding, whether you respect the ground or Fort safe-guarding them. Alexander (after his victory over Parus) returning, upon the banks of Hydaspes (a branch of Indus) built Bucephala in memory of his Horse killed in that great battel ; after which he spent six months in easie marches, till coming to this place he took ship and sailed into Cambaya, which some Authors called Psiulcu. At Alexanders command Nearchus his Admiral from this place began his voyage when he failed to Ormus, where he was necessitated to repair his weather-beaten Navy. The City it self is large ; yet by reason of the Portugals lofty disposition and humours,

mours, Christians (as is observed) are less beloved here than in many other places. Twas a Town of good trade when it afforded *Opium*, *Affa-fosida*, (most of which is from *Lahore*) *Puchio*, *Cotten*, *Indico*, *Mirabolans*, *Sugar*, *Arack*, *Agats*, *Cornelians*, *Diaspries*, *Calcedons*, *Hematis*, *Pearl*, and *Elephants teeth* in great quantities; but since *Surat* and *Cambaya* her neighbours have attracted the *English* and *Dutch* thither, her traffick is become small, and her other allurements inconsiderable. What she now most boasts of is a Castle, which was built (after long fight and much blood-shed) by *Albuquerque* the famous *Portugal*, Anno 1515. through whose cost and care it was so much bettered, that at this day it may compare with any other, either Fort or Maritime Town in that part of the Orient. Nor could it ever have succeeded, had not bribes, threats, and other devices drawn belief into the Pagans, that their desire to have so many Castles and Maritime Forts was only to defend themselves in parts where they were altogether strangers: but it appeared afterwards, that avarice, rapine, and lust rather allure them, as *Oforius* his Bishop in *Vita Emanuelis* 11 libro fol. 347. spares not to speak concerning them, *Etsi Lusitani imprimis arcis cupiebat ad se defendendos; postea tamen usum est, per speciem fuderis & amicicu, dominationem queri & Tyrannidem agitari*, &c. Which caused such turmoils, that in no other part of *India* they found so long or such considerable resistance; partly from their own valour, but chiefly by help of *Mirhocem* and those *Mamalukes*, which *Campion Gaurus* then Sultan of *Egypt* sent thither to quell their insolencies: Notwithstanding by the downfall of that great Sultan (which was not long after by *Selim* the first, about the year 1516.) the *Portugals* by little and little grew victorious; though to obtain it, *Laurentius Almeida* Son to their Viceroy (the most excellent of all their Captains at that time in the achievement perished. Upon the banks of *Indus*, and in this *Gedrosian* Territory it was where *Alexander* left the memorials of his *Indian* conquests to amuse future ages, making his camp, cabbins, mangers, horses bits and armour of a more than ordinary size; a mean to make the truth of his conquests suspicible.

The River *Indus*, by *Pliny* called *Sardus*; *Simbis* by *Arrbian*, is now named *Seynd* or *Sinde*, ^{Indus.} whose out-let or influx is in twenty three degrees fifteen minutes latitude, (some observe twenty four degrees forty minutes) and western variation sixteen degrees thirty minutes, and commixes in two great oceums. Thereof imagines seven, one of which is called *Sagappa* in *Plotomy* with the Ocean; after three thousand miles flux from the *Casmirian* (or as *Mela* in his third Book the *Paropamispar*, and not as *Sabellicus* fancies from the *Armenian*) mountains part of *Caucasus*, some call it *Naukrator* or *Nagratus* (in the *Scythian* language the same which *Mashici* and *Nyphatis* are in the *Armenian*, viz. Mountains covered with snow, like to the *Alpes* and our *Snowdon*) in her discent receiving growth from many notable Rivers, which from that and other hills derive their origine, mellow *India*, and at last exonerate themselves into *Indus*, from whose name the most noble part of the Universe is termed; and hence it is that *Indus*, *Fluviorum omnium maximus*, is esteemed greatest of all Rivers by ancient Geographers. The Rivers are *Bebit*, *Rave*, *Damisee*, *Obchan*, *Wily*, &c. of old named *Hydaspes*, (from which *Hydaspes* took his name who was King of *Media*) *Acesines*, *Cophis* (twixt which and *Hydaspes* is the Kingdom of *Aria*, now *Chorasan*, of old inhabited by the *Astaceni*, *Atissiani*, *Pissi*, &c.) *Adris*, *Obitarnis*, *Coas*, *Sufates*, *Bibasis*, *Melidas*, *Hirotas*, *Zaradas*, *Hippalis*, &c. Let it not be improper to tell you, that *Scaliger* reports how that at the effuarium or mouth of *Indus* the new Moon increases the Sea, which at *Caleut* is not high water; but at the full Moou and at *Socotor* and other places is full Sea at the first and last quarters; so various is that Planet in her operation.

On the other side the Gulph in *Arabia* the happy is *Muscat*, (or *Mascat-Saif*) not far from that Promontory which is now named *Raozelgate* formerly *Corudanum* and *Maces* in *Amian. lib. 23.* almost *Nadyr* to the Tropick of *Cancer*. I dare not conclude this was that *Raamah* (which took name from *Raams* Son of *Cinufs* Son of *Cham*) by *Plotomy* called *Rheguma* and *Rhegma* in *Ezek. 27. 22.* *The Merchants of Sheba*, a City in South *Arabia*, whence came the Queen of *Sheba*, and not from *Ethiopia*, *Cinufs* being mis-interpreted, to visit *Solomon* and *Raamah* were thy *Merchants*, &c. Howbeit 'tis certain, it has been more populous and noted than at this present, though now sic begins (since *Ormuz* was lost) to revive, being the best Town, Port, Haven, and defence for Frigats, Juncks and other Vellels of War and Trade belonging in these parts to the *Portugal*, who first conquered the Isle *Anno Dom. 1507.* and after the adjacent Towns *Calajate*, *Curiace*, 40 miles from *Muscat*, *Soar*, *Urfaza*, and other places, which till then were under the *Ormusian Empire*. About which time *Zeifadin* was King, and (being in nonage) unhappily overruled by *Astar* a spightful Eunuch; who for no occasion that is known, but from the perverseries of his nature, not only put this Town in flames, but had well-nigh ruined his Masters whole Empire. *Toms* (the Kings Brother) after that commanded here with

Sammadee the King's Son, who was poisoned by *Nordino* the second Officer in degree. After which it was betrayed to the *Turks* by *Jack a Portugal*; but soon after recovered: Howbeit, next year (by bribery) the *Turks* re-entered; and so soon as *Peribeg* the Balha had planted a Colony there, he returned; but ere he got home hears of its revolt and the slaughter of his men in Garrison: which news so amazed him, that he went to *Mocha* as a Pilgrim; but by command of *Solyman* the Great (who would not pardon him that mis-hap) was forced thence, and for a reward of his fifty years service, beheaded, and his great Estate forfeited: notwithstanding all which it now obeys the *Portugal*. The Town is seated in a Plain 'twixt two rising Mountains; a ditch and parapet drawn from one hill to the other so environing her, that to fome the seems inaccessible. The Cattle is large and well manu'd, and stored with great Ordnanc.

The seventeenth of December we took ship in the *William* for *Gombroon* in *Persia*: the Exchange, the *Hart*, and other gallant ships went along with us, and above three hundred slaves were put aboard, whom the *Persians* had bought in *India*, vi. *Perseus*, *Jentews*, *Bannarua* and others, wherby it appears that ships besides the transporting of riches and rarities from place to place, consolate the most remote Regions of the Earth by participation of commodities and other excellencies to each other: which besides the easie we had, especially in hot Zones) by that kind of accommodation in travel; having coast'd *India* and *Arabia*, where the sweetest Spices and Gum. do grow, we found that the Spirits issuing from their flowers to perfume the air when gently blowing towards passengers, as they have discovered whereabouts they were even when no land was in sight of them; agreeable to that report *Nearchus* made to *Alexander* after he had sail'd towards the bottom of the *Persian Gulph*, *Ibi esse multos & preciosos Uniones, claros & pellucidos lapillis, & arbores rarus redolentes, &c.* as *Sirabo* notes lib. 11. Geogr. The eighteenth day we croft the Tropick, and the next day elevated the North Pole twenty four degrees odd minutes: the Gulph in this place was straitened, the shores of *Carmania* and *Armenia* in this form appearing to us.



The Persian Gulph.



Arabia pars.

Arabia (denominated from *Arabus* son of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*) at this day is more obscured than it was in ancient times, such time as it was the Seminary of fundry famous men: No part bred better Phylicians, Mathematicians or Philosophers; *Galen*, *Hippocrates*, *Avicen*, *Alzacates*, *Albunazar*, *Abuberr*, *Alpharabus*, *Malumet-be-n-Issac*, *Ben Addilla*, *Siet Joob*, *ben Cazem*, *ben fid' Ally* and others which were here born, or sprung from hence, or here educated and instructed, the *Arabick* Tongue so enchanting these men, that it is a common hyperbole, that the Saints in Heaven and those in Paradise speak it. Howbeit, a. in the holy *Decalogue* was given, so as an alloy there was hatched the delusive *Alcoran*: but if gums aromatick, succulent fruits, fragrant flowers, and such sort of delicacies can captivate thy sens, say *Arabia* is the Phenix of the East; with *Daneus*, the epitome of delight; and with Saint *Augustine*, Paradise. *Propter aurum, thus & myrram*, by the Ancients it was termed *Eudemonia*; also *Panchaya*, *Terra beatissima*; and with the Poet, *As India* sends Ivory, so *Sabea* Gums.

Tis usually divided into three, *Deserta*, *Petroa* and *Felix*. *Deserta*, is also called *humili*, *profunda* and *aspera* by *Servius*, *Lucian* and *Aristides*. *Petroa* or rather *Petrea*, is so named from *Petra* the Metropolis built by *Petrus* the fifth son of *Mizraim* the *Egyptian*, Gen. s. 14. For indeed this part of *Arabia* is more sandy than stony; so as tis more properly called *Inferior* by *Sirabo*, *Nabothaea* by *Plutomy*, *Barrha* by *Cestodus*, *Rathal*, *Albga* by the Inhabitants, and *Bengacalla* by *Ziglerius*. *Felix* hath like variation; by *Pliny*

Pliny it is called *Sabaea*, *Mamotta* by *Solinus*, *Ajaman* and *Giaman* by *ben Ally*, comprehending only the South part or *Hadramut*; and *Nabarnea*, so named from *Nabath* the first-born son of *Ishmael*. This with the other two *Arabia's* were first called *Ethiopia*, to which was added *Asiatica* to distinguish it from that in *Africk*; which name it took from *Cush*, i.e. *Ethiops*, *ab aido & ali*, watered by *Gihon* a branch of *Euphrates* which empties it self with *Pison* (that runs through part of *Susiana*) into the *Perſian* gulph. *Herodotus* distinguishes these from the *African Ethiopia's* by their hair which may be comb'd, the other not; and accordingly were differenced in *Xerxes* Army, which was a world of men, not less than five millions. In the first is *Kedar*, oft named in the *Pſalmist*: in the second the mounts *Horeb* and *Sinai*, as also *Tatrib* and *Mecca*, places of account among the *Saracens*. The Happy called now *Mamotta*, is unhappy in *Medina Telnabi*, but otherwise in being *Job's* birth-place; it hath also *Saba* by *Plutony* called *Sava*, now named *Samieſchac*; and many other Towns of note; as *Adedi*, *Neopolis*, *Phocidis*, *Abiffa*, *Teredon*, *Arepolis*, *Acadra*, *Tatrib*, *Alata*, *Acyra*, *Munichiares*, *Ambe*, and more near the *Perſian* gulph *Ocetis* and *Cana*, with others converted at this day into other names; as *Aden*, *Mocha*, *Zieth*, *Mocha*, *Zidim*, *Jemina-babrim*, *Huguer*, *Medina*, *Zarval*, *Oran*, *Synan*, *Merbat*, *March*, *Danchally*, *Muskat*, *Imbum*, *Zama*, *Moffa*, *Lazzach*, *Gubelcama*, *Maffad* or *Mogqued-Ally*, *Cusa* or *Cufice*, *Damarchana*, *Baraq*, *Elstarch*, some of which places are by Author placed in the stony *Arabia*, and many more now under the *Ajamites* or *Saracens*: but in old time these were distinguished into the *Sabaei*, whence *Culindinus* says was the Queen that came to heat *Solomon's* wisdom, and the three *Magi* who had the honour of presenting their offerings unto *CHRIST*. And 'tis not without reaſon that this part of *Arabia* abutting upon the *Perſian* gulph from against the land *Bahrim* mentioned by *Eratosthenes* where the City *Cilach* was now called *Obellach* as far as *Muscat*, was the *Sabean* land; which from the abundance of Gold there found was reputed *Ophyr*, though indeed both *Sabaei* and *Ophyr* are near *Ganges*: From the plenty of Myrrhe and Frankincense it was called *Thurifera regio*; most abounding near the hilly Countrey of *Merbat* and *Sagar*, neigbouring the land of *Hadramat* or *Aramit*, as *Pliny*, *And Pomponius Mela lib. 3. c. 13*, thus, *Sabaei Arabia felioſe tenet partem ſcio maris Perſici proximi Carmania*, (meaning opposite to it) *ubi montes Ajabi ſunt*: albeit many contrarily ſuppoſe, that *Saba* or *Sheba* (which *Sirabo lib. 16.* calls *Microba*) was in the western part of *Arabia* near to the Red-sea, in regard *Mocha* is reputed to be *portus Adramiticum Sachalit & Ziaigri promontorio proximum*, by ſome called *Atomum*. I take leave to digreſſ a little further. After the conuolution of Tongues which was about 120 years after the Flood, when ſuch as were of one Language ſeparated from the reſt and planted by themſelves, (the Earth being waſte before them) *Nimrod* ſovereignizing at *Babylon*, his Brother *Havilah* ſeated his Colony in *Susiana*; *Seba*, *Raamah*, *Sabbata* and *Sabbuteba* (his other Brethren) doing the like in *Arabia*; ſo as 'tis conjectured that *Seba* or *Sheba* ſate down in that part which extends from *Exion-geber* in the ſtony *Arabia* to *Aden* along the western banks of the Red-sea, where he built a City after his own name, from whence ('tis ſuppoſed) the Queen came that viſited *Solomon*. *Sabbata* planted the ſouth of *Arabia*; and *Raamah* or *Rhegma* that north part which neighbours *Bafora*, over againſt the Kingdom of *Lar*, where they built Cities after their names, mentioned in the 27 of *Ezechiel*. Alſo I cannot but note how that the *Hebreu*, (or *Chaldeu*, *Arabick* and *Syriack* drill from the *Hebreu*, the Mother-tongue to all others) *Greek* and *Latine*, which in their times were epidemick, are now not any where ſpoken, ſave by derivative: And that the Heathen gods and goddeſſes, *Jove*, *Saturn*, *Mars*, *Apollo*, *Juno*, *Diana*, *Venus* and thirty thouſand more as *Varro* ſays, once idolized all the Earth o'er, are now no where invocated; ſo as it may be ſaid, *Delos ubi nunc Phoebe tua eſt? ubi Delphica Python?* for indeed Oracles ceaſed at the Paſſion of our Saviour. The *Arabick* nevtheleſs at this day is of as large extent, as where *Mahomet* is profeffed; ſo as the habitable part of the World being divided into three equal parts, hardly can any one be found without it: part of *Europe*, moft of *Africk*, and well-nigh whole *Asia* in their *Elfara's* accept of it. *Tota Asia a natiſis litoribus per Antipodum usque ad illam partem qua in occidua noſtri Hemisphaerii parte eſt, hac utiſim one obſerveth*. Howbeit, 'tis no original, but a derivative from the *Hebreu*; *Arabica*, *Hebraica lingue adeo eſt affinis, ut ſequi ſit diligenter verſus in Hebreo, poffit ante bicennium, bonam partem illius lingue intelligere*, faith *Postellus*: A good *Hebrician* may in leſs than two years ſtudy gain the *Arabick* language: and indeed all or moft of the *Euſtern* Tongues vary no otherwife from the *Hebreu* than the *Spanish*, *Portugall* and *French* do from the *Latine* their Original. *Omnes Orientales populi ab Hebreo lingua originem trahunt*: faith our learned Courteymen Mr. *Davis*. Which is the eaſier to be obtained, in that (as one obſerves) *Unum idemq; verbum its variant, ut multa in paucis comprehendunt*. A little of what we found of moft uſe I shall onely infert here.

Arabick

Malle
Sammach
Moihec
Narr
Hattop
Degang
Salict
Samimon
Bedda
San
Cobbee
Sackeer
Annestrec
Untan aphe
Beet.

Englīb

Salt
Fish
Water
Fire
Wood
Hens
Oyle
Butter
Eggs
a Dift
Great
Little
I buy it
Have you
a House.

Persian

Namack
Mohee
Obb
Atrah
Yzom
Moorgh
Rogan-cherough
Rogan
Tough-morgh
Shecky, or paola
Buzzurck
Cowcheck
Man mochorre
Dare fuma
Connah.

Englīb.

September
October
November
December
January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August

Greek.

Maimacterion
Puaneplion
Anthesterion
Poseideon
Gamelion
Elaphebolion
Moonuchion
Thargelion
Skirrophorion
Hecatombayon
Matageitnion
Boedronition

Hebrew.

Tirzi or Ethanim
Bul or Marchisuan
Chyelu
Tebeth or Tevet
Scbeth or Sver
Adar or Veadar
Nisan or Abib
Jarr or Zin
Sivan
Tamuz
Abb
Elul

Arabic.

Muharram
Sawphor
Rabbieul-owl'
Rabboul-anchor
Yowmadul-owl'
Yoomadul-anchor
Radiab
Sahaan
Ramulan
Schowl
Heidul-kaida
Heidul-hazia

Syriac.

Eylor or Ajchul
Tefhrin-ilul
Tefhrin-anchor or Iltany
Kanoon-ilul
Kanoon-iltany
Sibat
Adarr
Nisan
Ejarr
Itazirag
Tamuz
Abb

Egyptic.

Toph
Paophy
Achir
Cojac
Tibhi
Machir
Phamenoth
Pharmuthy
Pachou
Paynhi
Epiphi
Meforhi

Turkīb.

Ramazan
S'hewal
Silhcade
Scilhydze
Mucharren
Sepher
Rabuul-oul
Rabuul-auchir
Gemaziel-oul
Gemaziel-auchir
Rhezib
Saban

Ethiop.

Turh
Paap
Hatur
Cohia
Tulahi
Amschyr
Parmahath
Pafunes
Peuni
Epip
Mufrhi

Persian.

Farwardin-maw
Ardabehish
Chodad-maw
Tyr-maw
Mordad-maw
Sharyr-maw
Mihe-maw
Aban-maw
Adur-maw
Dei-maw
Bahmen
Asphendermed

Leaving

Leaving *Arabia*, cross we the gulph of *Perisia*, which by *Plutarch* in the life of *Lucullus* is called the Babylonian Sea; by the Syrians *Towmachans*; *Mesendis* and *Deribor Farfisias* by the Persians; *Bohar el Naharim* by the Arabians; and by the Turks *Elaiph*. We failed also near to Cape *Gwader* (*Dendroboza* of old) within view of that other promontory we call Cape *Coadel*, which is in twenty five degrees North, where we found the Compas to vary seventeen degrees fifteen minutes. An infamous Port according to the report which that noble Knight Sir *Robert Sherley* made thereof, as we pass by: For he and his Lady travelling that way in the year 1613. they with one *Newport* their Captain were allured by the Towns People to go a shore for refreshment; where but for the honesty of a Hodgee or Mahometan Priest then in Town who gave Sir *Robert* timely notice, their lives as well as goods had been hazarded; so perfidious and covetous were those wretches to possess that little they carried about with them; which is remembred only for caution. The next place of note we saw upon the Carmanian Coast was *Jasques*, *Jasques*, where the Artick Pole is elevated twenty five degrees fifty eight minutes, from *Ormus* distant about forty leagues. *Pliny* calls it *Carpella*, so does *Ptolomy*, but under twenty three degrees; another Author calls it *Cassandra*; and other some judge it that *Thapsacus* where *Alexander* the great built Vellels for the recruit of his Navy. Nevertheless the name it now bears 'tis thought was imposed by *Jezequird*, Son to *Sha-por* or *Saporis* once King of *Carmania*, at this place buried. *Albuquerque* having reduced this place under the Crown of *Portugal*, built a large Castle here, and strengthened it with seven teen pieces of brafs Cannon, which when our Country-men took from them in the year 1623. (thereto provoked by the death of Captain *Shilling* who was unhappily slain there) then was found besides the other, a Cannon-pedro, two whole Culverins, two Demi-Culverins, four Sakers of Brabs, and one thousand Musquets unadvisedly put into the hand of the Persian soon after the destruction of *Ormus*, both which he now polliceth: They usually fire as many Guns as they see Ships under sail, to give warning to *Ormus* and the adjacent Towns upon that coast.

Carmania is two-fold, *major* and *deserta*. The Dcsert, along the shore extends from this place to *Aia* towards the N.E. The greater is confined by *Cedrosia* to the N.W. and the Pachoatran hills. Near this is a small Isle, called *Aphrodisia* by the Greeks, in regard *Venus* had her Shrine there erected; a Country in *Alexanders* time famouled for Sword-blades, so excellently tempered that they were preferred before those of *Damascus*: Memorable likewise in that fatal march the victorious Greek made (after he had rigg'd and victualled his Navy) through the Country of the *Oryes* into *Cedrosia*, and *Carmania*; where albeit he buried a great part of his Army, he nevertheless solemnized the Orgies after the wildest manner that was possible. Here we entred the Ormuzian strait, called the *Umbilic* of the gulph, which in length stretches from *Balforac* to Cape *Rozel-gate*, *Cordamum* of old: This *Fretum* is about fifteen leagues, from thence to that promontory *Ptolomy* calls *Ajaborum*. Next day we came in view of *Kishmy*, which by the latitude seems to be *Carpella* above-named, where the Portuguez had another Fort; whence we heard the pieces give warning to *Larac* (an Isle formerly called *Arabos*, and upon the opposite coast) of our approach that way, not above four leagues from *Ormus*; near which we pass, and then came to an anchor afore *Gombrown*, the best Port the Persian is Master of.

O R M U S is a Kingdom in that part of *Carmania major* which *Ptolomy* calls *Armuzum extremitum sub 23. deg. 30. min. unde Arabia conspicitur*, where *Arabia* may be seen: Also an Isle in the Persian Gulph where the North Pole is elevated 27 degrees: 'Tis about one league from the Continent, and in compas about fifteen miles, so as the diameter may beke. And, as then the City *Ormus* none was more flourishing, so also, than the Isle *Ormus* none was more barren; the Isle which is compared to a Ring serving as a Foil unto the Diamond, agreeable to the Poet,

If all the World were made into a Ring,
Ormus the gem and grace should be therein.

Sit terrarum Orbis (quaqua patet) Annulus esset,
Illiis Ormulum gemma deculque foret.

For from the year of our Lord 1507. it was reduced under the Crown of *Portugal* by that great Captain *Alfonso d'Albuquerque* (*Zedafin-sia* at that time King, and rather by reason than force induced to enrol himself a tributary to *Emanuel*, remaining still a Titulado with a yearly pension of 1500 Crowns per mensim) unto the year 1612. such time as *Emangoly-chawn* Duke of *Shyrax* by help of the *English* commanded by Captain *Weddal* and others, subiecteth it to the *Persian*; it was a City for Building so elegant, for Inhabitants so populous and for Trade so singular, that it late as Emprefs, not only alluring Merchants and Travellers

vellers from all parts of the World, but by reason of its marine power derived from *Gas* the Metropolis of the *Portuguez* in *India*, gave Laws to all the neighbouring Potentates. So that simply considered, albeit the Isle had little or nothing considerable in it self, the City nevertheless being furnished from most parts of the Orient abounded with all things requisite, and was capacitated to supply other parts with what was desirable either for the belly or eye. Such was the excellency of the situation of the place for commerce, such the industry and commendable ingenuity of the *Portugal*; who without ostentation might say, *Quae regio in terris nostris non plena laboris?* and to give them their due, from whole achievements, what civilized People are there that have not derived some advantage? The City it self was not great but compact, and large enough though the streets were narrow, the better to evade the heat; which in the Summer season by being so near the perpendicular glances of the Sun, and inflamed by the salt and sulphur of the earth, (the main composition of the Isle) *Sol in Caelo & Sal in Terra* so displaying their properties as indeed renders this place as torrid and intolerable to live in during the Summer season, as any other part of the Universe. For the heat of the Sun rages most when and where it meets a subject, most capable as this is; which occasioned the inhabitants to sit and sleep in troughs filled with Rain-water preserved in jarrs and tanks, usually falling in *June*, *July*, and *August*, in abundance, the whole Isle not affording one Spring of sweet water, Salt so predominates, which I have seen resembling crystal. And seeing Salt (as Philosophy teaches) is the first rudiment of life, & *omnis sapientia*, it needs must be hereas elsewhere valuable. For besides the Silver-shining-fand and a little mountain, one half being a mineral of sulphur, the other of salt, the Isle has nothing else worth the consideration; *Insula, cum nihil omnino proferat, quo vel homines ali vel ornari possint, tantum tamen fructibus & frugibus & cibis arque diviti: affuit, ut vix illa Regio omnibus rebus magis abundat, que ad victimam & elegantiam vite pertinent. Nulle namque sunt vicia delicia vel in Arabia vel Perside vel in India vel quacunque alia Regione in qua Naves in portus Insulae inveniuntur, que non omnes Terra opes in eam inferunt. Ita sit, ut cum nihil ex secula gignatur, malis tamen Regionibus optimis rurum omnium abundantia preferatur, &c.* Olorius vita Eman. R. P.

The Isle hath two Havens, one in the East, the other in the West parts of the Island. Towards the middle of the Isle is a little Hill which gives very delightful prospect; on one side wherof there is store of Sulphur, and no less store of Salt upon the other. And that there are Mountains of Salt elsewhere is reported by several Writers, I shall only vouch *Marin, Siculus* who avers that in some part of *Spain* there are whole Hills of natural Salt. To return. From the advantagious situation of this Isle and City of *Ormus* for Commerce, the laborious *Portugal* brought it to that perfection as it became the Staple and Glory of the Eastern World. Secured indeed by many natural props, on all sides commanding Isles and Towns to furnish her, as *Balsora*, *Lara* (*Agilia* of old) *Kishmy* (by some called *Quexome* or *Broil*) *Keys* or *Quys* Isle (*Gulfar* in *Prolo-*
my) *Angen*, *Abron*, *Heber*, *Andreve*, (or *de los pashavos*) *Kargi*, or *Carichi*, *Biharem* (*Icaria* in *Pliny*) *Dozaro*, *Tajques*, *Kofstack*, and others. *In initio Persica ore est insula in qua multi & pretiosi uniones gignuntur*, in *Plotomy* called *Apphana*. So as to the Eye of Man no place could be more ostentive or defensive, several garrifous of the Portugals being constantly maintained in these Islands: Yet when the God of Nature had decreed a ruine, it could not be withheld, but was in some degree miraculously effected, yea at such a time when they least of all suspected it. The houses within were exceeding neatly furnished with gilded leather, and with *Indian* and *China* rarities; the Bazaar was rich and beautiful; the Churches splendid within; and both within and without the Castle so regularly built and so well fortified with deep trenches, counterscarp and great Ordnance commanding both City and Haven, that none exceeded it through all the Orient.

And for the name, albeit by that it now bears it has been known these 900 years, nevertheless I find it has had several other names well known to Antiquity; as that of *Organa* and *Cerito Varrerius*, of *Necrokin* to *Ben Jonas*, *Zamhi* to the *Tartar*, *Ogyris* to *Themetus*, and *Vorotta* to *Niger*: Yet the present name without much variation was known unto *Josephus*, who in his *lib. de Jud.* calls it *Ormuzia*; *Omiza* to *Pliny*; and *Armozen* to *Plotomy*, for in the degree of 24 he places the Town *Armuza* upon the continent. But by what I find in *Carissus*, and *Rufus* out of *Dionysius*, it is the same Isle where when called *Ogyris* and *Tartaria* Prince *Erythreus* (from whom the *mare rubrum* had its denomination) was buried; agreeable to this Tetraistic,

Ogyris looks into the Sea, from whence
Carmania lies, the place of residence
Where princely Erythreus liv'd; whose fate
This Tomb contains in mountain desolate.

Ogyris inde falo premit caput, aspera rupe
Carmanidis, qua se pelagi procul invicit und
Regis Erythrei tellus; hic nota sepulchro
Tenditur, & nudis juga tantum canibus horre

his Sepulcher being seen by *Nearchus* and *Orthagora*, upon a Hill planted with Trees; a report confirmed by *Mythropates* a Persian Satrapa, who fled thither to avoid the Anger of King *Darius*. Which *Erythreus* was a victorious Prince by land, and reputed the great Master of Marine Arts and Navigation; by the Greeks especially, by whom he is supposed to be *Jamus* and *Saturnus* mentioned in *Berosus*; from whose example *Sesofriss* first taught it the Egyptians, as *Bacchus* did the *Indians*. Notwithstanding which, we may not conclude that *Erythreus* was the first, seeing *Noah* was the former practitioner in that Art, for which we have the best authority; and that it was long before the birth either of *Danaus* or *Neptune*, who by reason thereof and of their antiquity nevertheless were ranked in the catalogue of the Heathen Gods: And without controversy, it was from them the Phoenicians derived their skill, and from them the Egyptians, who instructed the Greeks, (amongst whom the Cretans excelled even to a proverb, *Cretensis nefit pelagus?* Is there a Cretan that cannot fail?) from whom the Romans had their Sea-knowledge, and of whom *Venice* and *Genoa* were the leaders. But to return to *Erythreus*. For proof hereof observe what *Pliny l. 3. c. 50.* records concerning him, *Inven-tis raiibus, in mari rubro inter insulis ab Erythreis regi ceptum est navigare, &c.* Moreover, so intricate is what we find in reference to these two Gulphs the Arabian and Persian, and so equivocal is the word *Erythraeum*, that I cannot refrain the giving you a glance thereto, to the end you may the better help in this dilemma. In *Reg. 9. 26.* we read that *Hiram* King of *Tyre* furnished King *Solomon* with Ships and mariners for his voyage to *Ophir*. That *Tyre* was a City in *Phoenicia* (part of *Syria*, and frequently mentioned in Holy Writ) is evident, albeit in the original 'tis *Zor*, as we see in the margin of *1 Reg. 9. 11.* and having the cedars of *Libanus* at command, permitted *Solomon* to cut what he pleased towards the building of the Temple: So as 'tis undeniable that *Tyre* was part of *Syria*, whose chief City was *Damascus*. Nevertheless, seeing *Hiram* furnished *Solomon* with wood for his Ships that were bound for *India*, it could not otherwise be than that the place or dock to build was at *Ezion-geber* upon the Red-sea; so that if oaks or other Wood fit for Ships was cut in *Phoenicia* or any part of *Syria*, then 'tis probable that from *Pelusium* it was by sledge or camels brought thence to the Red-sea, albeit *Solomons* extent of Jurisdiction thence stretching into that part of *Arabia* could as well command their wood as haven: But that he had the freedom of those parts and countreys appears both by his Fleet that rode, and his personal being there; as in *2 Chron. 8. 17.* *Solomon* went to *Ezion-geber* and to *Eloth* (which was near it) upon the Sea side in the Land of *Edom*, and *Hiram* sent him Ships and Servants that were expert in sea-affairs, and they accompanied *Solomons* Servants to *Ophir*, whence they brought four hundred and fifty Talents of Gold. Yet that there was a *Tyrus* also in this Sea, we learn from *Ptolomy* and *Strabo*, who testify that *Tyrus est insula in alto mari versus austrum, duobus mille stadiis a Carmania distans, in qua Erythreus regis sepulchrum ostenditur, ingens sane Tumultus est & sylvestribus palmis constitus; hic Erythreus his in locis regnavit.* Concerning which *Tyre*, *Stephanus de Urbibus* agreeeth; *Est & Tyrus insula in mari Erythreo, quam Artemidorus Tylon vocat.* By which it is of some difficulty to find the direct place; seeing the one says this Isle of *Tyrus* is within the Red-sea, (which *mare Erythreum* signifies;) the other, in the Persian Gulph, implied by its vicinity to *Carmania*. In *Ptolomy's* sixth Geographical Table of *Asia major* it is also termed *Tylus*, which, with the neighbouring Island *Arathos* are placed under the latitude of twenty five degrees. But how the Ancients distinguished these two Gulphs the Arabian and Persian is no less abstruse, they seem so confusively related to by Authors. For *Nearchus* (*Alexanders* Admiral in these Indian Seas) giving his Master an account of his Voyage, amongst other observations relates, that being by storm driven into the Red-sea (so 'tis translated, albeit in the original the words be Κατά την θύελλα) there he had the sight of King *Erythreus* his Tomb; who though he lived in *Carmania* died in an Island two thousand furlongs from that main land, (which Isle *Strabo* called *Tirna*) where he was buried. Now albeit the Red sea be mentioned in this Story, we well know most Writers agree that *Nearchus* sailed only from *Diu* or some other part of the River *Indus* up to *Balura* which is at the bottom of the Persian Gulph: For, as concerning *Alexanders* sailing from *Indus* to *Socotra*, where he met his Master *Aristotle*, and at his persuasion planted the Isle with a

Colony of Greeks, little credit is given. *Quintus Curtius* acknowledges that the Red-sea took its name from *Erythreus* the King. *Nomen est indicum ab Erythreo rege; propter quod ignari rubore aquas credebam*; whence it was that the ignorant gave out that the water was red. But *Pomponius Mela* labours to save it by this distinction; *Mare rubrum in duos sinus dividitor, Arabicum & Persicum, in quos variis flumine annis*. Pliny the like; *Mare rubrum in duos sinus divisum est: is qui ab oriente est, Persicus appellatur; ex adverso unde est Arabia, vocans Arabicum*. From which amphibology it doubtless is that *Suidas, Solinus* and others misreport, that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* empty themselves at *Balsora* into the Red-sea; being well known that they run into the Persian gulph, called *El-eatiph* and *Mesenden* by some, which to the Red-sea has *Arabia salix* and part of *Petrea* interposing. So that by what I have said it may appear these two great gulphs in their terms were convertible. These two famous Rivers are in name the most ancient we have in any story; *Dio-Euphrates*, vine Writ instructs us that they streamed through Paradise, both of them rising out of *Taurus* were called *Periardo*; *Uno fonte se resolvunt, Boet. lib. 5. Uno fonte manant in Armenia, Salus*. In their flux through *Affrygia* (which towards Armenia was called *Arrapachitis*) towards *Susiana Sisacene* (from the City *Sisac*) and *Adiabena* twixt *Apamea* and the Altars of *Hercules*, near which *Babylon* was situate, constituting that Region which by the Greeks was thence called *Mesopotamia*, *Diarber* by the *Persian*, and after six days passage by Boat from *Ragdas* (where the stream is not broader than the *Thames* at *Gravesend*) mixing again at *Gurneh* the Channel becomes four miles broad; whence in a friendly and uninterrupted course they flow to *Mesquid-Ally*; where, as it were by consent, the third and last time dividing themselves, they compas that Isle we now call *Balsora* (*Teredon* in *Ptolemy*, mastered by the over-spreading *Turk* about an hundred years since) at the end of which Isle under 30 degrees 30 min. in two wide mouths they empty themselves into the Persian gulph, which *Plutarch* calls the *Babylonian Sea*; and under 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ degrees endlessly wander by being swallowed up in the vast Indian Ocean.

Having sufficiently stray'd, return we now to *Ormus*; which albeit by the Greeks it signifies *Portus a Haven*, *Unde nautae dicantur borznazare*, i.e. *Navem anchoris infraire*, I presume was so named by *Sha Mahomet Dramki* an Arabian Dinaft, that A.D. 700. crossed over from *Kofiac* in *Mogefian*, (*Mergafan* of old) to *Jaffnes* in *Caramania*, a place hateful to *Mirza Babadin* the 14th King after, who for most quiet removed an. Dom. 1312. of the Heg. 692. to this Isle, and from that *Harman* (part of *Maceta*) which is 12 leagues from *Kofiac* where his predecessors dwelt, so named it. From which time to this it has been disturbed: first, by *Zonjha*, the Persian King slain by *Usuu Caffan*, who for pearls broke through *Lar*, and forced *Melee Nozomedin* into *Arabia*; and again it was recovered by *Mirza Cobbadin* five years after, viz. 1488. But long slept not so; for *Alphonse Albuquerque* subjected it to *Emanuel* his Master, only suffering *Zedafdin* the titularie Prince to enjoy the Title and a small pension.

Yet to do her all the right I can, I shall remember such Princes as have ruled here. *Sha Mahomet Dramki* is the first I find, who in the 80 year of the Heg. of Christ 700. left his Seat at *Aman* in *Arabia*, and sat down at *Calicas* upon the shore; but disliking it, removed to *Cofiac* in *Mogefian* (six and twenty leagues from *Jaffnes*) and there built a City which he called *Ormus*, from whence part of *Arabia* took name. To him succeeded *Soluman*, to him *Izachan*, to whom *Mahobet* 2. *Shawran-shaw*, (who bequeathed the Crown to his Nephew) *Emer-ha-bedin-Molong*, whose Daughter and heir married *Seyf-adin-Aben-Ezer* Son to *Ally-shaw* Lord of *Keys Island*. The Crown (they wanting Issue) then came to *Sha-Bedin Mahomet* his Cousin; to whom followed *Rocnadin Mamu Hamet* Son, who dying an. Dom. 1278. left the Rule to his Infant Son *Seidafdin Noocrat*, who was slain by his Brother *Morad* or *Masad* eleven years after; he being forced to fly into *Kernaen*, not able to withstand his Brothers Servant *Mir Bahadin*: *Mir Bahedin Ayaz* or *Ben-Seifin Ben-Cabadin* is in like manner forced to flee, unable to resist the *Turk* *Morat* brought against him, so that with many of his friends (such especially as hated the Tyrant) he removed to *Kishmy*; but not well liking the place, he rose thence and sits down at this Isle *Gern* (or wood) *Vorotia* some name it, fortified and (from the other) named it *Ormus*, in the year 1312. of the Heg. 692. to whom succeeds a Man of Noble extraction *Emir-Azadin-gourdan-shaw*; to him his Son *Mabarezadin-babron-sha* a brave Prince, yet fell by the Axe of treachery which *Mirsha-Bedin-Issuff* strook him with; who had like retaliation by the late Princes youngest Brother *Mirza-Cobbadin*, banished by his Cousin *Melee Nozamedin*, at whose death *Cobbadin* returned and swayed the Ormusian Scepter, and at his death left all to *Paca-Turanh* a victorious Prince, yet by death Anno 1488. conquered; to whom succeeded *Mozad-sha Bedin*, *Salger-sha*, *Shawez*, and lastly *Safadin* or *Zedafdin* 2. subdued by *Albuquerque* An. 1507. who caused him to be strangled, After which *Nordin*, *Cojeature*.

ture, and *Delam-sha* severally attempted the sovereignty; but *Mahomet* the right Heir in despight of them was crowned King: To whom succeeded his Son *Seyd-Mahomet-sha*, A.D. 1622. subdued by the *English* and *Persians*, whom at my being at *Shyrax* I saw prisoner, but honourably used at the entertainment which the Duke of *Shyrax* gave our Embassador, as we passed towards the Court of *Perſia*. The *Perſia* now commands there, thank the *English*.

The particular acts and paſſages in taking this famous City is thus in brief.

By command of *Shaw Abbas*, *Emangoly-chawn* (Governour of thoſe Territories that extend from *Shyrax* unto the gulph of *Perſia*) advances towards *Gombrown* with 9 thousand Horse and Foot, ſuch a time as he expected to meet the *English* Fleet there. Being met, the Conditions betwixt them under hand and feal were theſe: 1. That the Caſtle of *Ormus* (in case it were won) with all the Ordnance and Ammunition ſhould belong unto the *English*. 2. That the *Persians* might build another Caſtle in the Isle at their own coſt, when and where they pleaſed. 3. That the ſpoil ſhould be equally diuided. 4. That the Christian prisoners be diuited by the *English*, the Pagans by the *Persians*. 5. That the *Persians* ſhould allow for half charge of victuals, wages, ſhot, powder, &c. 6. That the *English* ſhould be Custom-free in *Bander-gum-broon* for ever. These Articles being ſigned, each party prepare for fight. Captains of note in the Pagan Army under the Duke of *Shyrax* were *Alicibeg*, *Pellorbeg*, *Shaculibeg*, *Sharearee*, *Mahomet Sultan*, and *Alybeg King* (*Shaw-bander* they call him) of the Port: The Army encamped before *Bander-gum-broon*; and two days after, viz. the twentieth of *January* 1622. with ſmall difficulty became maſters of the Port; for at that time it had in it but a ſmall garrison of *Portugals* in an incoſiderable Fort. After which ſuccels the Duke and *English* Captains play'd upon the Caſtle with a dozen pieces of Cannon for five hours, but to little purpoſe. The ninth of *February* the *English* tranſported three thouſand *Persians* in two Frigats which they had lately taken, and two hundred Persian boats which were good for little other ſervice: Theſe, ſo ſoon as they landed, having formerly made ſconces for their Men, and raifed Bulwarks to plant great Ordnance upon, made towards *Ormus*; but the *Portugals* though they let them land, ſtopped the current of their fury, at firſt encounter from their barricadoes defended with ſhot and pike ſlaying above three hundred, and with their Ordnance beat them back with more halte and amazement than their approach had courage. In this disorder a Flanker by miſchance was blown up, but the ſiege continued. Little hurt was done on either ſide, till the 24. of *February*; when the *English* advanced towards the Caſtle, (under which was riding the *Portugal* Armado) and in despight of the Caſtle and Fleet (being then five Gallions and twenty Frigats) ſet fire on their Admiral the *Saint Pedro* a ſhip of one thouſand five hundred Tuns: Which miſchance obſerved, the reſt of the Spanish Fleet to prevent danger cut her cables, and in that flaming poſture let her drive whither wind and tide would. The *English* were well pleased with that ſad ſight; and though a Prize rich enough, nevetheleſt thought it not ſafe to adventure boarding: ſo down ſhe drove towards *Laraç*, in the way a rabble of *Arabians* and *Persians* boarding her, and like Jackals with hunger-starved fury and avarice tearing her aſunder. The ſeventeenth of *March* the *Persians* (to ſhew they were not idle) gave fire to a Mine ſtuffed with forty barrels of powder, which blew up a great part of the wall, doing ſome harm to the Enemy; through which breach the *Portugals* immediately failliſed, and maintained a fight above an hour againſt the *Persians*, who had drawn out all their Body; and when the Trumpets sounded, the beſieged went on ſo couragiouſly, that the hindmoſt diſcovered plainly a contempt of death. After nine hours the defendants were forced to retreat, and the heated *Persians* began to mount and enter the City in many quarters; at which the *Portugals* were glad; for they en-taiained them with ſo many hand-granadoes, fire-balls, powder-pots, and ſcalding-lead, that the affaillants were forced to fall back, a thouſand of their men periſhing: Which when *Shaculibeg* had viewed, with a party of two hundred men he paſt through thoſe affrighting fires, and after a ſhort ſtorm ſcaled one of their Flankers; which he held not above half an hour, they were ſo tormented with small ſhot, and flames of lead and ſulphur; and in descending were beaten off by fifty *Heydalges*, who for three hours maintained their ground, and retreated gallantly. This entertainment ſo cooled the *Persians* courage, that for five days they did nothing but ruminante upon the valour of their adverſaries. The three and twentieth day our Cannon from the ſhore played fo hotly, and battered their Fortifications ſo to purpose, that at length making the ſhips their object, they funk the Vice and Rear-Admiral of *Ru-Fryero's* Fleet. March the 28 nevetheleſt humbled them, (plague, famine, and fluxes raging in the City) fo as five days after two Gentlemen in a fair equipage first made towards the Enemies Camp; ushered by

by some Coozellahales of *Sbaucybeg's* Regiment into his Tent, and after a short complement moved for a cessation of Arms, which if the Duke would agree to, they were ready to present him with two hundred thousand Tomains in hand, and an annual tribute of an hundred and forty thousand Ryals. *Sbaucybeg* having dismissed the Fidalgo, not till next day acquaints the General; who (wanting money) agrees both to a cessation and lasting peace, so they would depolite five hundred thousand Tomains, (amounting with us almost to two millions of pounds,) and pay as a tribute yearly to the King of *Persia* two hundred thousand more. The *Portugals* returned him this answer, They were in no such distress as to purchase peace at so dishonorable a rate. After which a small cessation followed, for they began a Treaty with the *English*, putting them in mind both where and what they were, and of the amity that had been betwixt those two Nations of old; if they had injured them, they were ready to make satisfaction; their Kings were at that instant good friends, and how could hostility twixt such Allies be defended either by the Law of Nations or Religion? These and the like were sent: but whether the behaviour of the Fidalgo displeased our men, or that they understood themselves so far engaged that with reputation they could not forsake the *Persian*, I know not, but the messenger departed not well satisfied. Two days after a hideous noise of thunder amazed them, the *English* giving fire to two several Mines, so as the breach gave an open prospect into the City; but the hearts of the assailants durst not travel with their fight, their scisles the last time were so confounded; so that they only became spectators, and gave new courage to the *Portugals*, most of which were half dead with fluxes and thirst (the three great Cisterns of the City being exhausted) famine and pell-mell. The fourteenth day a ship full of Mulattoes from *Kilbony* arrived at *Ormus* to help the *Portugals*; but perceiving it impossible to approach with safety, they turned back, thinking to land at some better quarter: But the Persian General assuring them they should receive no detriment from his Army, they foolishly gave credit to it, till four score of their heads being struck off, and the rest in chains made the survivors see their folly.

The *Ormuzian* languishing thus under many afflictions, every hour hoped for *Ru-Fryer* to raise the siege, but he failed their expectation. The seventeenth day another breach was made, by giving fire to sixty Barrels of powder, which took such effect that the Moors entred in swarms, who yet were beaten back by eighteen Gentlemen without the Bulwark; howbeit, next day the Infidels re-entred and possessed it. The 18th of April two famili'd Renegadoes stole into the Persian Camp, and discovered to the Duke the sickly condition of the City, and the little defence the besieged were able to make: that gave the *Persian* fresh encouragement upon the next opportunity to make a general storm. Which the *Portugals* wifely foreseeing, and well knowing the treacherous and faithless disposition of the Infidels, especially towards Christians, they without farther procrastination lent unto the English Captains who were aboard, letting them know their willingness to render the Castle unto them, and to submit themselves and what they had to their mercy; which upon the three and twentieth day they performed; only craving that they might have their lives, and a safe Convoy to *Muscat* in *Arabia*. The *English* according to promise transported three thousand of them as they desired, intending like favour to the rest: but the *Persians* intercepted above three hundred *Arabs* (among which were many *Portugals*) whom contrary to Oath they barbarously slew, and sent their heads to *Gombroon* as a Trophy. Which done, the Magazines of Arms, Victuals, and Treasure were sealed up with the Signets of both Nations: the interim contrary to agreement was employed by the *Persian* in massacring of more than half-dead men, violating women, polluting Temples and defacing houses. During which an *Englishman* (contrary to order) breaks into a Monastery, but in his return is descried by the razing of his burthenosome sacrilegious; at which the *Persians* (judging the agreement broken) fall to plunder every thing that was valuable. The *English* dreaming of no such accident, charge the Infidels with breach of Articles, but got no other answer than that the *English* made the first breach; so that for all this service our men got no more than twenty thousand pounds. The bras Ordnance in the Castle and Rammiers were divided betwixt them. Some say they were three hundred, others as many more: Howbeit, our men acknowledge but fifty three great bras pieces which were mounted, four bras Cannon, six bras Demi-cannon, fifteen Cannon-pedros of bras, three of iron, ten bras Bases, seven bras Bafflers, some Basilisks of two and twenty foot long, and ninety two bras pieces that were unmounted; which I the rather name, in that the *Portugals* alledge they had small defence. Those belonging to the *Persian* were transported to *Gombroon*, *Lar*, *Shyrag*, *Spahawn*, and *Babylon*. The King of *Ormus*

Sir Robert Sherley was made prisoner to the *Persian*, being at this day in *Skyra*, under an allowance of five Marks *per diem* in lieu of a former pension, which (during his prosperity) was paid him by the *Portugal*, amounting yearly to an hundred and forty thousand Ryals. So that *Ormus* which of late was the glory of the *East*, is now become the most disconsolate; and agreeable to her condition she well may change that name to *O-muh*, which signifies Destruction.

After the sack of this City, the Sea-men found enough to throw away, by that little they got shewing their luxury; nothing but *Alea*, *Vina*, *Venus*, appearing in the ascendant of their devotion. Captain *Woodcock*'s luck was best and worst; for by chance he lighted upon a Frigat that was stealing away laden with above a million of Ryals, (as some say if their multiplication deceive them not,) the most of which he preluned came to his own share: But alas! what joy had he in that fading pelf? For whether *Woodcock* minded more his *Mammon* than the steerage of his ship, who can tell? but many by sad experience found that the Whale sunk *Clof* by *Swally-barr*, the name neither of bird nor fish availing against that merciless element, a good servant but a bad master, and then yielded neither safety nor comfort. Such was the *exit* of this famous City, after the *Portugals* had been masters of it sixscore years, or thereabout: And but for too much pride (the *Portugals* upon needless occasions irritating the *English*) probably *Ormus* had stood; but for too much avarice, who knows but the Whale might have swam still in its proper element the Ocean, which is apt to snatch from travellers more than it gave. Such was the sad and miserable effect of avarice and animosity; the more to be lamented, seeing so considerable a Place for trade and strength was thereby forced from one Christian by another to the weakening both their interests, and prostituted under the arbitrariness of a thankless *Mahometan*: Yet the cause may not be concealed, in as much as the excessive pride and luxury of the place no doubt hastened this fatal revolution and period. Nevertheless, that reciprocal and inordinate desire of revenge and gain is justly taxed, and not improperly made applicable to this plac by an ancient Poet:

*Prey girds fierce Armies oft with irefull swords,
Whence bleed, whence slaughter basly death affords;
Prey doubles danger in th' unconstant deep,
Whiles warlike beasts danger-fraught ships do keep.*

*Præda furas ales cinxit discordibus armis,
Hinc crux, hinc cædes, mors propriq; venit.
Præda vago justis geminare pericula ponto,
Bellica cum dubitis nostra dedit ratiibus.*

The tenth of January 1627. Sir *Robert Sherley* at the desire of Sir *Dodmore Cotten* our Lord Embassador went a shore; and being in *Gembroon*, acquainted the *Sultan* and *Shaw-Bander* (the one the principal Officer in Military, the other in Civil Affairs within the Town) with the Ambassadors arrival, and according to the custom of Nations demanded such civility and necessaries as the Ambassador should need for his accommodation and travel to the *Persian* Court. At first the messenger relished not so well as Sir *Robert* expected: Nevertheless producing his *phirman*, the *Sultan* dissembled his humour, protesting that he was transported with joy in that he had so good an opportunity of expressing himself an obedient slave to *Shaw-Abbas* his Master; and that the Town should be honoured by so noble a stranger: forby only he was so surprised and badly provided, that his unexpected landing prevented the ceremony intended him. Sir *Robert* having returned his complement forthwith invited our Ambassador ashore. At whose issuing from the ship, Captain *Brown* thundered out his Farewell in a hundred great shot, whose echo not only made *Gembroon* tremble, but seemed to rend the higher Regions with their bellowsings. Wrapped in smoak and flame we landed safely, though *Neptune* made us first dance upon his liquid billows, and with his salt breath seasoned the *Epicinia*. At his Lordships landing the Cannons also from the Castle and Citadel vomited out their choler, ten times roaring out their wrathful clamours, to our delight but terror of the *Pagans*, who of all noise most hate artificial thunder. The *Sultan* and *Shaw-bander* handed him out of his Barge, and mounted him upon a stately *Arabian Horse*, whose saddle (being of the *Morocco* fort) was richly embroidered with silver and Seed-pearl, and the stirrups of gold: All the Ambassadors Gentlemen and followers were also well mounted. In this Equipage, attended by his followers and servants, the Sea-Captains, the *English Agent* Master *Burr*, and two hundred *Coozel-bashaws*; the Ambassador moved slowly towards the *Sultan's* Palace which was in the *Bazaar*, all the way passing between a double Guard of Archers and Musquetoons; and being alighted were ushered into a delightful chamber, the floor of which was spread with a rich Persian Carpet altogether as large as the chamber it self: And albeit the invitation

vitation was only to taste his bread and salt, a complement very ancient, yet not so old as that of Bread and Water, observed by *Virgil* in his *Aeneid*. the Ambassadors nevertheless found those words of a larger comprehension; for they were entertained with a very neat collation of Sweet-meats and Pelo, choice *Shyraz* Winc, and musick both of that Country and from our Ships; the whole resembling another old reception near this place, which had *Lettus eburatos & auratos*, *Persica persifromata*, *vina*, *fidicina*, *tibicina*, &c. and which together with the Sultans often repeating the Persians complement *Hosomedy, suffowrdy*, i.e. *Welcome, heartily welcome*, assured us either we were welcome indeed, or that it was to remove a complaint he feared would otherwise have been made unto his Master the great Duke of *Shyraz* for neglecting that ceremony which secundum jus gentium he well knew was due to such eminent Persons and passengers.

Gombrown G O M B R O W N which *Osorium lib. 6* calls *Hacande* by the *Persians* *Kal' iççxw* called *Bander* i. e. the Port-Town (and not unaptly, this being more valuable than all the rest the King of *Persia* hath) is situate upon a level ground close by the Sea, the Country almost round about rising for some miles very insensibly without any hill of note save to the North, which though seeming near is said to be fifteen miles distant. Near this place the Gulph is narrowest, *Arabia the happy* oppoiting it to the *Wulf* towards ten leagues, but so visible that it seemed to us no more than *Dover* does from *Cadice*. This City stands in *Carmania* and not *Gedrosia* (as some have said) the *Persians* call it *Kermoen*, albeit some erroneously suppose it *Chusistan*. Some call this place *Gamrou* and *Gonron*, others *Gomroon* and *Cammeroon*, for so I find it variously pronounced. And albeit the Town be but of small antiquity, taking its rise from the fall of *Ormus*; nevertheless one *Newbury* an English Merchant reports, that at his being here about the year 1581. it was then a Town, though I believe a very small one: Since which, the *Portugals* have built two Castellets or Forts, the first by *Albuquerque*, Anno 1515, under whose power it rested, till the year 1612 at which time by *Ali Rezz* it was wrested from them to the *Persian*; but upon the destruction of *Ormus* which was in the year 1622. by removal of most of the inhabitants, this Village so increased the buildings, that for grandeur it is now ranked with Towns of best note in *Persia*; so as through the access of Merchants from most parts, namely, *English*, *Dutch*, *Dane*, *Portuguez*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Muscovites*, *Turks*, *Indians*, *Arabians*, *Jews* and *Bambyans*, this *Gombrown* from a small Village is become a City of great Commerce, by reason of that notable concourse which in the Winter season usually both by land and sea from the most remote places of the world resort thither; raw Silk, Carpets, Cotton, and other in-land commodities being thither brought by Caravan against that time; and by Ship, Merchandizes of all sorts; so as Trade here during three months appears quick, both to the enriching of the Natives and Exotics, in such a degree, as verifies that Maxim of *Plato* his *Risipubl. Civitas vix potest subsistere sine commercio*. Parallel to which is that out of *Flores Hist.* referring to *Lawrenzo de Medicis* the great Tuscan Duke, *Qui dicit, Mercaturam esse caput, unde robur & nervi manus in Rempubl.* Appearing also in the Persian Exchequer, which acknowledges that it has not the like custome and other advantage from any other City within that Empire. Now albeit *Gombrown* be but newly advanced, nevertheless I meet with an ancient Author that seems to point at it by this expression; *Barsumati sunt populi qui Indum verius accolum, Gumbroto proximi.* Which how applicable to this place, I leave to better judgment than my own; contenting my self with such other observations as I made during our fourteen days stay there.

And first, concerning the buildings; they are for the most part of Brick not burnt with Fire but hardened by the Sun, which makes them so hard that they appear no less solid and useful than those the Fire obdures: They are low built, and molt with small Courts and Balconies, tarrased or flat at top, pargetted with plaster in hardness not inferior to that of *Paris*; for indeed such is the distemperature of heat sometimes that to live there is scarce tolerable: but when the air becomes more moderate (which is when the Sun is furtherfet) to have more breath they use to sleep upon their tarralles, to which end they spread Carpets aloft for their better accommodation. This kind of building is common in all these hot places: That the Jews had their building such, appears by what we frequently read in Scripture, as in *Deut. 22. 8. Job. 2. 6. 1 Sam. 9. 16. Jerem. 19. 13. Act. 10. 9.* The Windows are not glazed, but wooden trellized, made to shut and open as they see cause, to welcome the breez when it murmurs. The mountain (which they say is fix leagues thence, but by its height seems not half so much) by anticipating the cool North-winds makes this place much the hotter; so hot, as in the Summer season enforces the inhabitants to remove to *Lary* and other neighbouring Villages, where cool streams, rocks and trees give shade and cool the air that at *Gombrown*

is insufferable, so as some (according to what was practised in *Ormus*) use to lie naked in troughs filled with water, which nevertheless so perboils their flesh as makes it both exceeding smooth and apt to take the least cold when any winterly weather succeeds the heat, which by that becomes little less offensive. Now their Summer being no less than nine months, during all that time it is rare if one cloud be visible in the Sky, whereby the air (in the day time especially) is not to be endured; for by a reverberated heat which the Sun-beams strike forcibly from the ground, both earth and air became intolerable to man and beast by reason of the inflammation. Howbeit of late they have raised a Bazaar, which in some places by reason of its narrownes, and most by being arched and close at top, checks the Suns heat when the beams dart perpendicular, in the sides attracting what air there is to refresh such as either sit in loops for sale of wares or those other that keep Taverns: Here being plenty of *Shyras* Wines brought in long-necked glasses and jarrs that contain some gallons, the best wine indeed in all *Persia*. Here be Coffe-houses which also are much resorted to, especially in the evening: The Coffe or Coho is a black drink or rather broth, seeing they sip it as hot as their mouth can well suffer out of small *China* cups; 'tis made of the flower of Bunnies or Choava-beer, steeped and well boiled in water; much drunk, though it please neither the eye nor taste, being black and somewhat bitter, (or rather relished like burnt cruts) more wholesome than toothsome, yet (if it be true as they say) comforts raw stomachs, helps digestion, expels wind, and dispels drowsiness; but of the greater repute from a tradition they have, that it was prepared by *Gabriel* as a cordial for Musselmen. Also Sherbet-houses, a drink that quenches thirst, and tastes deliciously: The composition is cool water, into which they infuse sirrop of Lemons and Rose-water, in these torrid Countreys the n. st refreshing sort of liquor that can be invented; albeit the Wine there was so cool that we refuled not to drink it with moderation. Arack also or strong-water here is plentiful of, which qualified with Sugar is cordial, and much drunk at sea and Land in the hottest seasons, especially where the diet is coarse, and stomachs crude and weak through the diffusion of heat which in cold seasons is contracted. Howbeit, for our better entertainment we had variety of fruits, some growing here, but most imported from places more remote; some of which were Orenge, Lemons, Pomegranates, Fomeltrons, Figs, Dates, Currans, Myrobalans, Apricocks, Almonds, Pilachos, Apples, Pears, Quinces, Sugar; also Flowers and Nuts in great quantity as well as variety; which, with that plenty we had of Cabarito's and Mutton, Hens, Eggs, and Rice bought very cheap, made the place much more delectable; and for Oysters and many sorts of fish the sea being so near furnishes them abundantly, and would do more, were the people more industrious. The best houses in the Town are the Sultans, the Shaw-banders, the English and Dutch Agents houses: ours in memory of the good service they did the *Persian* at the taking *Ormus* are priviledged to wear their Flags displayed at the top of their publick house; and for some time the English had half the imported customes according to Articles.

At the North and South ends of the City are two Castles in which are planted four-score pieces of Brass Cannon, part of the spoils or trophies of ranfacked *Ormus*; two hundred others were sent to *Serai*, *Shyras*, *Saparn*, and other places. The Gunners here were very expert; for when they had occasion to give fire, I could perceive them to stand off one side of the piece, and in a fearful manner (though with a lin-stock as long as a half-pike which had a lighted match) to touch the powder; which was a bad way to take aim by. The Mosques for the Mahometans and Synagogues for the Jews here, are few and inconsiderable in their structure; but the Hummums or Stoves are more conspicuous, no less resorted to, and with small expence: the floors of which Hot-houses are plaistered and usually sprinkled with water, which contracts the vapours, condenses the air, and preserves the heat with moderation. The Streets are narrow, the Town badly served with fresh water, and without wall or graff to make it defensive.

Now albeit here we have abundance of Camels, Horicks from *Arabia* and *Persia* of the best sort, and Mules and Asses in great numbers, which were worthy the view; yet were we not more delighted with them than offended by those troops of Jackalls which here, more than elsewhere, highly invaded the Town, and for prey violated the Graves by tearing out the bones, all the while ululating in offensive noyses, and echoing out their scrafledge. They are relations informers, and for reward have always something of the prey left them to glut them. The Cape of good Hope we observed: Some sport we had in hunting them with Swans, Gartens and Dogs; but we found them too many to be conquered, too hardy to be banished, too daring to be affrighted. These animals the Greeks call *Alope*, the natural history of Fox and Bitch; *Lupi aurei*, others; but *Lacuncii*

Yet this Morisco-dress, together with their intolerable impudence, render'd them (at least to my view) no other than *Ovid's* remedy of love; so as pity it is the *Persians* have not such as the *Gynacocosmi* were amongst the *Athenians*, whose care it was to see that Women in their attire and behaviour carried themselves modestly: And albeit there are as bad as bad can be, they make me call to mind a *Rabbi's* doctrine which maintains, That such as he delperately taught do not so corrupt good manners, or be so great enemies to good life, as thole hypocrites who are but half evil or corrupted in part, persuading others that they have some seeming goodness in them by a diuineled similitude: No less well observed by *John de Lery*, That the naked *Americas* Women do not so much incite to wantonness, or appear so libidinous as European Women do by the magick of their eyes, mimick dres, painting, patching and gellure of several unmodest fashions and loose inventions. Howbeit the b'tter sort of that sex here wear linnen Drawers or Calzoons of Pantado, and want not Jewels and bracelets or farther ornament; but, when they go abroad they are covered with a white sheet from top to toe, so asthey are not easily known to any. The men of the same dusky complexion, upon their heads they wear Shaffes, about their waies girdles of many eis of linnen cloth; elsewhere naked: and (no express Copys vagaries) have the impression of round circles, and pink their skin in way of blaver. *He* also has this description, *Carmans sunt sine ueste, frage C. peccare. habebus pectora levia, resisterem curae, &c.* Which lat explication puts me in mind of another sort of people that are *veritatem* come, who being the *aborigines* of thick parts, dwelt throughout the *Oceani*; the *Pampas* I mean, who are here putting, that in like manner. Considering whom I have but little more to say, seeing they were so uniusculturale that withal they would neither eat flesh, eggs, raddish, or other root, but had a red colour, nor drink wine, for they resembled what it is called, the blood of the grape. So, nor *Vin. Almagi*, in that agreeing with the *Nazarenes* & *Amahs*. They believe the transmutation of bulls into beasts and vegetables; and as the Lord *Verulam* notes, have this objection, That man's body amongst all natural bodies is found to be most variously compounded, living herbs and plants are nourished by water, beasts by herbs and fruits; but Man, by beasts, birds, silk, herbs, fruits, grains, juice, and other things, which (say they) both alters and weakens his primitive nature. For before the Flood, when men were longest liv'd and had most experience, 'tis thought they lived upon the same abstinious diet these *Bannymans* now do, without destroying for food the life of any creature, but on the contrary we find, that mediocrity in diet usually enervates nature; so albeit a temperate diet (in hot Countries especially) preserves health, I observed that the *Bannyan* though healthy through their abstemiousness are but of weak bodies and small courage, yet well enough agreeing with their condition. And indeed, how universally forever the contrary is practised, yet besides *Pythagoras*, *Empedocles*, *Lucetius*, and others who were earnest advocates for preservation of the lives of innocent creatures, give me leave to present you with what *Tibullus* elegantly did unto his Mistres, hinting therein somewhat of this perwuation.

*When furthermore the grave my bones shall hide,
Or ripened days to swift-foot Death shall glide,
Or lengthened life remains, in shape exchang'd
Makin' me Horse well manage to range
The field; or Bull, the glory of the herd;
Or through the liquid air I flye a Bird;
Into what manœvre long time me makes,
These Works begun of Thee, fresh Verses takes.*

*Quinetiam mea tunc tumulus cum texerit os,
Sæu matura dies fato pro operat milii mortem,
Longa manet seu vita, tanen mutata figura,
Seu me finger Equum rigidos percurreat campos,
Doctum seu tardi pecoris sim gloria Taurus;
Sive ego per liquidum Volucris schar æra penitus,
In quemque Hominen me longa receperit ætas
Inceptis de te subtexam Carmina chartis.*

About three miles from *Gombroon* I rode to see a Tree we commonly call the *Bannyan Tree*: 'Tis not far from that Fort called the great *Moflango*, opposite to *Ormus*. A Tree *Bannyan* well worth the view: for spreading its boughs, which by their weight fall, root, and tree, rise again, they so circle the bole or trunk that it resembles an arch'd circumference affording umbrae and refreshment to some hundred men that without crowding may well sit under it: I measured and found it to be two hundred and nine paces. The arch'd Fig-tree forme, *arbor de rays* or Tree of roots others call it; other some the *Indian* and *de Cosa*; but we the *Bannyan*, by reason that they adorn it according to fancy, sometimes with ribbons, sometimes with streamers of varicoloured Taffata: Which how strange forever it appear to novices, such a dres we read of in *Ovid*, l. 8. *Metamorph.* in the Story of *Baucis* and *Philemon*, where

He saw the boughs with Ribbons neatly hung, &c.

And in Virgils lib. 2. Georg. not unlike the *Æschilus* whom

— Forte late ramos & brachia tendens
Huc illuc, media ipsa ingentem sustinet umbram.

*Tall branches guard, and whose vast boughs display'd
Protect her round, with her excessive shade.*

For indeed, these boughs are so neatly trimmed within, that without interruption one may run a pike in it. Within these is built a Pagotha, in which (for I adventured in) I beheld (but not without amazement) three Images, whose visages were so grim, & countenances of body so distorted and mis-shapen, and postures so uncouth, that invention could not well represent Demons more deformed; yet in memory of their three forefathers *Cuttery*, *Shuddery*, and *Wyse*, by these gross Idolaters they are formally invocated. Of their *Pliny* reports, that *Hec sive Numinum Tempa, priscoque rita etiam sive, simplicia rura Deo precellement arboreo dicant, &c.* To which Tree-worship the *Bannymans* are not singular; for the *Persians* themselves in old times adored the Tree they called *Purulata*, under which (like these) were Idols erected whom they named *Bloome*. And of what report the Idol Oak has been, witness our *Druide* who derive their name from thence, and our neighbours the *Celtæ*, who by it represented no less than *Jupiter*: In *Ovid*, *Quercus Oracula prima* is acknowledged. Also *Gildas* our Country-man, the better to engage us to the Lord for his distinguishing mercy, spares not to acquaint us with the ignorance of our forefathers the *Britains*, who attributed divine honour to *Groves*, *Rivers* and *Fountains*: For indeed, such was the miserable blindness of those ancient times that as ever, Tree had its peculiar *genius* (Groves being commonly consecrated to som. Deity,) so scarce was there any Tree that by one or other was not dedicated to some *Numer* or other, and little less than adored. *Virgil.* 7. *Ecl.*

Populus Alba gratissima, *Vitis Jætæ,*
Lamia Myrtus Veneri, sua Laurus Phœbus.

Hercules the Poplar, Bacchus the Vine embraces,
Venus the Myrtle, Phœbus the Laurel gaves.

Yea so great was the superstition custome of devoring Trees, that as *Claudius* observes there was scarce any Tree that had not its veneration, *Lucisque vetustæ Religione truces & rora Numa's usq[ue]m*. *Alex ab Alex* also writes that in his time Trees were adored, with his opinion, little was the difference 'twixt the *Druide*, the *Magi*, and the *Brachmaliæ*, all defending the immortality of the Soul, and the translocation from one into another after death was accounted good Philosop[hy], until it was disconterneanted by *Augustus Caesar*, such time a true light coming into the World dispelled error and darkness; and under *Clardus* was so persecuted, that it then seemed extinguished, as we find by *Suetonius*.

Fourteen days we tarried in *Bander-Gumbrown*; which albeit the view and other accommodations the sea and proximity to the happy *Arabia* contribute, such time especially as the temperate months make it habitable, might have allure our longer stay had pleasure been our object; our Ambassadors (thinking the time long) used the best persuasion they could with the Sultan to halften their provissons for the journey. And albeit Horses for our own riding and Camels for the Caravan were ready, nevertheless such was his superstition, that go we must not until upon his casting the Dice the chance proved to his satisfaction. The fourteentwentieth day (the Die it seems hapning right) the Kettle-drums gave us warning to prepare to Horse (for those there serve instead of Trumpets;) and little time served to make us ready. The Ambassadors Caravan consisted of twelve Horses and twenty nine Camels; the Horses were such as were not liable to exception; the Camels of those better sort they call coozel-bash Camels; a beast abounding in *Perfume*, and of great use, esteem and value in those oriental parts: Long-liv'd they are oft-times exceeding threescore years; of disposition very gentle, patient in travel, and of great strength, well enduring a burthen of towards a thousand pound weight; content with little food and that of the meanest sort, as tops of trees, thistles, weeds, and the like; and lesse drinke, in those dry Countreys usually abstaining little lesse than four days; which is of extraordinary advantage, seeing that oft-times they are necessitated to pass through desert places. The first day Mr. *Burt* the English Agent, a Civil and ingenious Merchant and of high report at the Persian Court, with several other English and Dutch Factors then in Town accompanied our Lord Ambassador three miles upon his way: Until the Sultan, the Shaw-Bande, and other of the Natives having fetched a compass about, met us; and (well pleased with the pilchash or present the Ambassador had

had gratified him with) returned his Lordship an hundred *Sillums* and *Tessellans*, elevating his eyes to Heaven, his hands to his breast, and declining his head well nigh as low as the Ambassadors stirrup, had also the rest of his train farewell; and having ordered us a convoy and received from us the complements of a *Beso las manas*, he returned with his troop of Coozel-bashies; all the way disporting themselves with the *Ciochi de Cami*, darting at one another so dexterously as sufficiently expressed their skill and well deserved our commendation. Here our Ambassador met with intelligence that *Shay Abbas* was at that time in *Asharaph* a City upon the Caspian Sea-shore, where he presumed the King intended Audience. Therefore setting forwards, our first days journey was to *Bandally*, most part of the way being near the Sea-shore: that Village was fifteen miles from *Gumbrown* or five pharfangs and a half. The word *Pharfang* is ancient, and to this day continued over all the *Persian* Dominions: It is derived from *persi*, and appropriated to the Dialect yet used in *Persia*, or (which is more likely) from the *Hebrew* and *Arabick*, where the word *persa* signifies three miles, three of which the Jews might travel without breach of the Sabbath. *Pliny* calls it *parfanga*, and makes it to be four Italian miles; which if so, it equals the German. *Xenophon* pronounces it *pharsazza*, and computes it thirty furlongs or *stadia*, every furlong being 40 pole in length or twenty-five paces; so that accounting eight furlongs to an English mile, a pharfang is three miles and a half English and two furlongs over.

At *Band-Ally* our Tents (which the Ambassador bought at *Sara*, and was advised to carry along) afforded us our best accommodation. Howbeit, to give that place its due, we found there a very neat Caravans-raw, (a building resembling an empty Colledge:) The *Greeks* call them *Pandochias*; the *Turks* *Inn-verts*; the *Indians* *Servages*; buildings erected by well-minded Mahometans as works of charity, and in a manner, expresses their magnificence more than in any other sort of building: Of great use, being these parts have no bins for the reception of Travellers; but here *to-pass* they may rest sweetly and securely *gratis*; for they are set apart for publick use, and preserved from violence of Thieves, wild beasts, and intemperate weather. At the gate is sometimes a Bazaar or Tent, that (like Sutlers in Armies) for money furnish passengers with provision; yet seldom is it but that Travellers (not daring to depend upon uncertainties) rather choose to provide and carry their necessaries along with them.

The people inhabiting hereabout fetch their water usually from a great large Cistern which they call a Tank, either resembling a vault or cellar under ground more than a spear deep; sometimes made round, but for the most part oval: The arch that covers it is well-nigh equal to the depth; and so well plastered, that when filled by the beneficial rains, it preserves it sweet to the last bucket; which is strange, considering how long 'tis kept and without motion, save what it has when the water is drawn out by Hulinees or Bags of Leather, and other Vessels that are not more cleanly than needs. The platter is white and hard, comparable to that of *Paris*; and (as I could guess) was a composition of sand and lime, with some unctuous matter that mad the paint smooth and durable. These Tanks are frequent in most parts of *Asia*, where springs are rare, and the rain seldom falls; so as were not this provision made for Travellers and Caravans, it would necessitate them to provide in great leather bags for common use, as they are forced to do in travelling over deserts, especially those of *Arabia*. Now these tanks or conservatories are so ordered, that when any rains fall (which is but seldom, perhaps one month in twelve at most, and when it comes distills not as with us, but falls or pours down in great drops, if I may properly so call them) the ground is so disposed that it quickly fills their spacious cisterns. Nor are rain waters to be despised; for by Physicians they are held the most wholesome if kept sweet and in cool places, such as these tanks or caverns we meet with in most parts of *Asia*. For otherwise they corrupt quickly, and by weakening the retentive faculty excoriate the bowels and breed many bodily distempers. These I say, have the preferency, by being the most ethereal and best purified by the Sun. For first, the matter by virtue thereof and other the celestial planets is exhaled principally out of the sea and moist places of the Earth, and by its levity rises upwards towards the higher regions, where by the Moons influence and other watery constellations it becomes more gross, and descending into the middle region is coadent through cold; and as we read in *Job* 36. 27. *God...* *giveth...* *the drops of water*, so these pour down rain according to the vapour thereof, which the Clouds drop and distil upon man abundantly. Nevertheless 'tis observable, that the rain which drops out of thick black clouds is not so wholesome, nor unapt to purifie, as what issues from white thin clouds. Yea by common experience we find that spring-waters and what we have out of clear Rivers is best for ordinary use and more agreeing with several constitutions, and likewise with the suffrage of most Philosophers.

The

The second night we came to a small Village called *Gacheen*, five pharsangs from the last ; next night to *Courelas*, seven pharsangs from *Gacheen* ; and next to *Tangbe-Dolon*, i.e. a strait or narrow way ; as indeed it was, being pent in betwixt two hills ; where the Caravans raw was very neatly built, adorned with coupolo's at top ; The water also was sweet and plentiful ; not springing there, but flowing from a high mountain that was three miles distant thence, and by pipes conveyed thither through the bottom of an intersected hill near the Lodge, and so streaming into the Taf, gave both delight to the eye and content to weary and thirsty Travellers. From the hill top we beheld the valley below, which was very level, large and marvellous pleasant, by reason the spring water *Tars perennus* runs in meanders, and mellows it in all places, so that it brings forth fruits in abundance ; and being compassed with hills of equal height gave it a more elegant fence than Art could have done for the greater security and satisfaction of the Villagers, who have but one common way for entrance ; so as it resembled that which the Poet speaks of *Tempo* for delight, and no less fortified by its situation. But what set this Vale the better off, was the circumjacent Country, which for the most part was barren and sandy, producing nevertheless plenty of Dates, a Tree more valuable for its fruit than shade. That day's journey was four Pharsangs. Our next was eleven to *Whormoot*, which in the Persian Tongue signifies Dates. Upon the way near the Town we passed by a small black Pavilion, in which upon the ground we could perceive late crots legg'd three ancient gray-bearded *Arabians*, who out of the Alcoran degenerated a dolorful *requiem* to their brothers carcass, intending (according to the Jewish custome of *sepem ad levitum*, mentioned in *Ecclesiasticus* c. 22. v. 12. where 'tis said *Luctus mortui sepem dies* ; practised as we find in *Gen. sc. 1 . 2 Sam. 12. 19.* and accustomed by many other) six even days to perform that ceremonial farewell, lamenting, weeping ; and not in vain, seeing tears are the Limbeck of the Heart, and that

— It quedam sile voluptas
I. p'etu Lacrymis, egeriisque dolis.

— In tears we find content ;
For grief would brea' the heart, without a vent.

Without which expression of love they imagine the Soul rests under an everlasting mounting. And, that want of sepulture was a grievous punishment, *Homer* in his *Odyss.* speaking of *Clytus* and *Elpenor* his fellow-traveller being dead, gives us this authority.

*Do not depart from hence, letting me be
Unmanc'd, unburied; left neglecting me,
The offended Gods entail a curse on Thee.*

Nigh *Whormoot* are *Dnegur*, *Laztan-de* and other Towns, where is got the best Assafeda through all the Orient : The tree exceeds not our briar in height, but the leaves resemble Rose-leaves, the root the Radish ; the vertue had need be much it inclines so sweetly. But, though the favour be so offensive to most, the savor is so good, that no meat, no sauce, no vessel pleases some of the *Guzaras* palates save what relishes of it. And how ingrate soever it may seem at first, yet by use it becomes sufficiently pleasant ; for what pleases quickly, as quickly cloyes the stomach and satiates. Next night we got to *Ourmangz*, five pharsangs ; and next to *Lur*, two miles short of which City the *Carzy*, the *Cidana* with other of the prime Citizens welcomed us with wine and other adjuncts of complement. We had not rode above half a mile further, when lo a *Persean* antickly habited, out of a Poetick rapture (for the *Perseans* are for the most part Poets) sung our welcome : The Epilogue was resounded upon Kettle-drums, Timbrels, and other barbarous jangling unmusical instruments ; some being shaped like to a large gourd, having but three strings, (*Terpander* of *Lacedemonia* his being punished for adding a string to his Harp without leave of the State, though more musical, might probably be the example.) A honest *Venus* attired like a *Bacchand*, attended by many Moth-clingers, began to caper and frisk their best Lavoltoes, so as every limb strove to exceed each other ; the Bells, Cymbals, Kettle-musick and Whistles, storming such a Phrygic discord, that to consort we might have squeak'd out,

Babarique horribili stridebat tibia cantu.

*Your rustick pipes do jarr
With notes, that horrid are.*

So that had it been night, it would have resembled an Orgy to *Bacchus* ; for glass-bottles emptied of wine clashing one against another, the loud braying of above two hundred

Asses

Aſſes and Mules (the laſt is a compoſe betwixt a Mare and an Aſſ, for Mules do not generate) and continual shouting and whooping of above two thouſand Peſebeians all the way, ſo amazed us, that albeiſ they no doubt thought the entertainment was noble, we thought never any ſtrangers were bombaſted with ſuch a Triumph. But *His quoque ſiem!* with much ado we reached our lodgings, infinitely weaſed; for my own part I was ſomewhat deaf for three days after.

After a little reſort, our Ambaſſador and Sir Robert Sherley were invited by *Ebrahim* the Magiſtrate of the City to eat of his bread and ſalt, which he preſented them at his own house, with a better collation: The room they feasted in was large and beaſtiful; the floor was covered with a rich ſilk Carpet as large as the floor; the ſides of the room were gilded and painted delightfully; the room was arched in Moſaick ſort and imbolded with ſtones of ſeveral colours; the light was at one end through a window that was large, the frame neatly carved, and the glaſs no leſs curiouſly painted with ſuch knots and devices as the Jews uſually make for ornament: In a word, it was a very roble room, ſuch as I admired to find in that Country. But what made it more delectable, was the Garden that well-nigh encompaſſed it, which was flored with as large, ſucculent and fragrant Pomegranates, Pomcitrone, Orenge, Lemons and like fruit as any I ever ſaw elſewhere; replete with trees for shade: Amongſt which I obſerved the Cypris to be exceeding large; a tree the more valuable for that it is ever verdant, ſweet and taſting. Some thinke the Gopher-wood of which the *Ark* was buiilt was of this timber. *Perpetua mraq: in moritura Cyprius*, a Poet tells us. A word of *Lar.*

LAR is both a City and Province fo called: within three days journey of ſome part of the *Perſian Gulph*, and part of that we ſtrictly call *Perſia*: It has *Kermouer* to the Eaſt, *Couſas* to the Weſt, *Syrze* or *Pharsijam* to the North, and to the South the Gulph of *Perſia*. The diameter of this Province is about an hundred ſarfangs, or three hundred miles *Englyſh*; by oþer Authors reported to be full of Springs, Graft and Fruit, but length of time has iſteſt much altered it: for in croſſing the Country we found the greaſt part barren, having only Date-trees or Palms, which grow where the earth iſ sandy; but where Rivolets or Springs appear, there the People live, improve, and have Orenge, Lemons, Pomegranates, Figs and Fruits, as alſo Grains in variety. Yet though the ground be bad, nevertheless tis thought here are Mines of ſundry ſorts, and Sulphur, which makes ſome amends; but for want of Art remain hid and undiſcovered.

The City of *Lar* is in the center of the Province; elevates the Artick Pole 27 degrees 40 minutes, and has about 90 degrees longitude from the meridian of *Cape bona Spe-riæma*: A city that pleads antiquity, eſpecially if it be that which *Ptolomy* calls *Corra*, as ſome think; albeit I am not of that opinion, ſeeing he places *Corra* under 31 degrees. But *Lancca* it was called by *Antiochus*, as *Pyneus* gueſſes; and tis no better than a gueſſe, ſeeing that Towns of the fame name are alſo built in *Phrygia* and *Cæloſyria*, as we find in *Pliny*. *Appian* calls it *Selencia Elymaidis*, *Urbs Perſie*, & *Selenco filo Antiochi conditæ ex novem Civitatibus ſu nominis ſtruxit*. *Pliny* calls a Town in *Arabia* oppoſite to this by that name; but whether ſome tranplanted thence, and in memory of their former habituation gave it that name, is but conjectural. *Hylins* calls it *Lars*, (which comes near the name it now bears) and ranks it with *Spabarn*, (which he makes the fame with *Cabyn*) and others in *Perſis*: But how *Perſis* and *Perſia* are diſferent, though he makes them ſo, I oppole not ſo learned a *Geographer*, though I meet not with his authority for that diſtinction; but ſure, to make *Hifian* (for ſo he calls *Spabarn*) the fame with *Cabyn*, is a great miſtake, ſeeing they are two hundred miles aliaud; and no leſs erroneous in the poſition, ſeeing that *Lar* is in *Perſia*, *Spabarn* in *Parthia*, and *Cabyn* in *Media*: So that to reduce them to *Perſis* is incongruous. His placing *Sava* alſo in *Perſis* is likewife miſtaken; as iſ *Ctesiphon*, which he makes a City in *Parthia*, being in *Susiana*. *Vicus n.v. prope Selucianum*, ſay *Strabo*, *ubi Reges Parthorum byemare ſelebant*: For I preſume he means *Sawy*, which we travelled throught, and found to be a great Town in *Media*. *Gafpar Babi* gives this its right name *Lar*; but his making it an *Isle* is miſ-reported. *Paulus Venetus* calls it *Laar*, which may be granted; for i apprehend it was founded or increased by *Laar-gebeg* Son of *Phryos*, and Grandson to *Pylus*, who was ſucceeded by *Gorgion Melce*, of whom their Hiſtories report wonders: After him followed eighteen Princes, *Ebrahim-khan* being the laſt; who was ſubjected *Anno Heg. 985.* of ours 1605. by *Emanoil-khan* Duke of *Shiraz*, to ſatiate the avarice and ambition of *Abbas* his great Master; and (which is rare, conſidering the penury of this Country) for the Kings part only he loaded away with treaſure ſeven hundred Camels. The captived King *Ebrahim* had his life, and a penion promised him; which he enjoyed but a while, an unexpected ſword of death betraying his hopes, without which he

Nine days we staid in *Larr*; shame it were, if in so long time we had gathered nothing. *Larr* is from *Gambroon* seven small days riding, from *Slyra*: fourteen, from *Babylon* twenty: A Town which by being 100. miles from the Sea, (a good Neighbour) is but meanly watered by a few Springs, which nevertheless are of great use for the refreshing their Gardens; and having but little shade from trees, save in those Gardens, are in the hot seasons exceedingly parched with the Sun; to remedy which they have devices like Turrets upon the tops of their Chimneys to suck in the air for refreshment; this place was defaced by rage of War, and overturned by many dreadful Earthquakes. *Anno Domini* 1405 it shook terribly when five hundred houses tumbled down. *Anno* 1503 of their account 973. she boasted of five thousand houses; but that very year the earth swelled with such a tympany, that in venting it self all *Larr* was forced to quake, and would not be suppressed but by the weight of three thousand houses turned topsy-turvy with the death of three thousand of the Inhabitants: The old Castle on the East side of the Town(which owes its foundation to *Gorgon Mæle*) though built upon the top of a solid rock, groaned in like affrighting downfall. And to me it seemed strange a City so strongly, so surely founded should be subject to such commotions. Now whether it be, as *Democritus* dreamt from the gaping Suu-torn Earth quaffing in too much water and (like a glutton drunkard) over-charging her cæsterns vomits it up in a forcible and discontented motion; or whether(as *Aristotle* teacheth) it be from vapours exhaled in the bowels of the Earth which loth to be imprisoned in a womb, or brends its passage by a vicious motion; or whether from subterranea fire the air being inflamed upon Sulphur, or other like exuberances of Nature, I leave the inquiry thereto to thos. that study the Causes of *Meteors*: Howbeit, this being in *Afia* puts me in mind, That no part of the World is so subject to earth-quakes as *Afia* is; for in *Tiberius Cæsar's* time twelve Cities in one night were over-turned by earth-quakes; and in *Trajan's* time the like in and near *Antioch*: And indeed this Countrey hath had many sad tryals of that kind, as in our travel we could both see and hear of.

Larr, the Metropolis of this Province, is now an unwalled Town, as most *Afianick* Towns be, Art being needless, seeing the lofty rocks which are to the East and North so naturally defend her: For a brave and stately Castle at the North quarter, mounted upon an over-looking hill not only threatens an enemy, but awes the Town in a frowning posture; the ascent thereto is narrow and steep; the Castle it self of good stone; the walls well furnished and beautified with battlements and flat-forms, whereon are mounted twelve bras Caunon-pedroes and two Basiliisks (the spoils of *Ormuz*.) Within the Fort are many small houses or huts which lodge the Souldiers, who have sometimes there an Armory sufficient to furnish with Lance, Bow and Gun three thousand Men. Howbeit, the walls are weak, not slanted, nor so regularly built but that the situation and Art rather seems to make it desentive though large in compass; usually well victualled, armed and manned, as serves not only to command the City but Countrey also, and to secure them against forreign invasion. The *Bazaar* is also a very elegant and noble fabrick; the material of good chalky stone: The building is long and beautiful; a quadrant 'tis like, though I cannot call it such, the sides are so unequal; 'tis covered at top, arched and coupl'd after the mode of those oriental Countreys; and within (Burse-like) is furnish'd with shops and trades of several sorts: The Alley or lile which extends from North to South, is one hundred and seventy of my paces; from East to West it is an hundred and sixty; the circumference of the oval in center is about one hundred and ninety: A building in some hundreds of miles not to be parallel'd. Near this *Bazaar* the *Larrees* are coyned; a famous sort of Money, being pure silver but shaped like a Date-stone, the King's name or some sentence out of the *Alcoran* being stamp'd upon it; in our Money it values ten pence.

The *Mosques* here are not many; one more remarkable than the rest it has, which is round, either shadowing out Eternity or from that pattern of the *Alcaba* in *Mecca*, whose shape they say *Abraham* had from Heaven, imitated by the *Jews*:) In some part this is varnished with *Arabick* letters, and upon the parquet painted knots, beautified in other places with counterfeit *Mosaick*; but low and without glafs, wooden trellizes (artificially cut after their invention) supplying them. The entrance is through a brazen gate, near which is hung a Mirrour or steel-Glaſs; divers lamps it also has for use and ornament. Some of their Prophets rest their bones there: *Emeer Ally-zeddy-almeer*, a long-nam'd, long-bon'd (if his grave be of eight dimension) long-since-rotten Prophet is there enterred; the older Prophet the fresher profit; zeal and charity oft-times cheilling antiquity. But how can I credit what they report that he was a *Mahometan*? since they say that he died a thousand five hundred years ago, which is six hundred years before

before Mahomet, and yet a *Musliman*. But leaving that tradition, more certain 'tis that this place affords variety of Fruits, as Dates (*Dattylas*, from the finger-like shape, the Romans called them;) a Tree distinguished into Male and Female; so that unless the Female have yearly a flower'd bough of the Male ingrafted or placed near, she pines away, and becomes lean and fruitless. Here also were Oranges, Lemons, Melons, Pomegranates and Pomcitrans most excellent; and of Flowers, Jellamins, Roses, Tulips, July-flowers, &c. Here also at easie rates we bought Goats, Heus, Rice, Barley, Rack and *Aqua-vitæ*. Howbeit the *Muskito's* or Gnats pestered us extreamly: but of more vexation was the Water we drank and in these torrid places thirst after, nay, were necessitated to drefs our meat withal, and is the belt the People have to drink out of the large Tancks they keep it in: they call it *Ob-baron*, which in the language of *Perſia* signifies rain-water; but with far more reason I may call it *Aqua-mortis*, death seeming to bubble in it. A base qualified Water, whether in regard their Tancks here are ill made or naſtily kept, whereby the Water corrupts, or whether the rain of it ſelf is infalubrious, or other hidden cause in nature there be, I cannot tell; but this I can, that it is unfavorable, fo ill to the gulf as worfe Water for taſte, and eſpecially for property can scarce be relished. As little of it came in my belly as could be borrowed from extremity of thirt: and with good reaſon; for as experience teaches, it cauſes catarrh., breeds ſore-eyes, ulcerate the guts, and (which is more terrible than the reſt) engenders ſmall long worms in the legs; a ſort of naſty vermine not more loathſom to look upon than dangerous to the itch ing diſeafe in them that breed them, by no potion, no mguent to be remedied: Nor is there any other way known to deſtroy them, ſave by rowling them about a pin, which if in ſcrewing the worm chance to break, it gives them very doleful muſick; for it makes the leg apt to gangren, and but by lancyn hardly curable. The water doubtleſs being the natural cause of that malady, ſeems to me to bring its venome from the Region where it is generated; either for that the Springs are vitiate, or that the rain-water is corrupt: For albeit clouds are ſeldome ſeen there, yet ſometimes they are, but undigested and unagitated by the wind; nor do they at all times diſtill their rain moderately in drops as is uſual in colder climates, but in violent eruptions, dangerous both in the fall, and no leſs noxious in the drinking. Now the reaſon (as I apprehend) that they have but few clouds is because the Country is deſert and landy, and wants Rivers and other moist places to occaſion exhalations, which beget rain. Howbeit, at our being here it rained a great thower, which made our Company the more acceptable. And we could obſerve that the foil (not only here, but in moft of this Province as we travelled) is either ſtony or a light ſort of mould, yielding little graſs or grain of any ſort, or fruit, ſave what was forced in gardens; unleſs it be Dates, which here are exceeding good and plentifel: But in Valleys and where Springs incliorate the earth, it produces Rice, Barley and like grain; as also fruits in great variety.

The Inhabitants are a mixture of *Jews* and *Mahometans*: Moſt of thoſe I ſaw were blear-eyed, rotten-tooth'd, and mangie-legg'd; the violent heat and unwholſome waters doubtleſs causing it. The habit of the greater part of them is only a wreath of Callico tied about their heads, their mid parts circled with a Zone of vari-coloured plad, with ſandals up-on their feet, ellwheare naked. Some nevetheleſs (though but few) have Shafhes of silk and gold tulipanted about their heads, and robe themſelves in Cabbays of fatten, their fingers being adorned with rings of ſilver ſet with Turquifes (that being the ſtone they moſt affiect in *Perſia*) in which they have engraven their Name, or ſome ſeleceted Poſic out of the *Talmud* or *Alcoran*. The *Mahometans* delight much in *Archery*, and on their thumb commonly wear a ring of horn, which makes the Arrow go off both ſtrongly and eaſily: their ſwords afford them no ſmall delight, the blades being exceeding good, and the hilts no leſs valuable; for with the better ſort uſually they are of Gold. Here are ſome nevetheleſs that are proficients in *Philosophy* and the *Mathematicks*, the principal delight they take being in *Aſtrology*; For 'tis granted that *Major eſt utilitas in Aſtronomia quam in alijs ſciencij*. *Nam, ſi contingat in ea error, eſt tolerabilior & minus nocet, quam in ceteris ſciencij*: Greater is the profit in *Aſtronomy* that in any other ſcience: For, if any error happen herein, it is moſt tolerable and leſs hurtful than in all the other ſciences: *Ifuge Alcabitii*. But in the Mechanick and other curious Arts, it gives place to few in *Perſia*. In this City ſhould be a River, and that not a ſmall one if our Geographick Maps were true: But therein they err; for here could I ſee no River, nor any in near an hundred miles travel further Northward; for both by enquiring of ſome *Perſians* and our own further travel, I could neither hear nor ſee any nearer than *Tubb*, a River famous in separating *Sufiana* from *Carmania*, and from *Larr* Westward about five finall dayes journey: or that other of *Chur*, over which we rode twixt *Shyraz* and *Perſopolis*:

ſome Brooks indeed we paſt over, ſo ſmall that they had no Name; but Rivers no Man calls them, ſince none of them in breadth or depth exceed three foot; Rivolets worth little more than the noting.

West of *Larr* is a Town called *Faarown* (*Gaaron* ſome write it) about twenty farsangs (which is fifty *English* miles) from *Larr*. Moft of the Inhabitans are *Jews*; by ſome re-pputed little leſs than a thouſand: much leſs than what *Ben Jonas* numbr'd in the Year 1100. for at his being in *Jaaria* (which is preſumed to be this place) it had then twenty five thouſand *Jews* inhabitants. Some make this their road from *Larr* to *Shyrax*; but the way we took was more to the Eaſt, and more frequented, being neither ſo hilly as the other, nor ſo ſtony. Concerning the Name whence it is derived, I ſuppoſe it is either for that theſe are the deſcendants of that *Kirish-jaarium* we find mentioned in the *Chron.* 2. 50. or from that in *Judea* called *Kiriath-jaarium*, i. e. plenty of wood which grew there, as we find mentioned in *1 Sam.* 7. 1. which probably the trauiſted *Jews* might commemorate. And this conjecture is further ſtrengthened, by the analogy of the name *Gaaron* with the Hebrew words *Geros* and *Garim*, which ſignifies *Strangers*, or ſuch as are trauiſted into a ſtrange Countrey: fo as the Name ſilily agrees with the condition of the inhabitants. Alſo when out of theſe Captives *Cyrus* gave leave for the re-edifying the Temple, we find in *Ezr.* 2. 7. and *Nchem.* 7. 12. that from *Elam* and *Kiriath-jaarium* leveral of the *Jews* returned, where in the 24 verfe, the other *Elam* is recorded: or elſe from *Jare* or *Jaarah*, *Joktan* fourth ſon *Gen.* 10. 26. whose Brethren *Ophir* and *Havilah* trauiſting from *Babel* to plant about *Ganges*, 'tis likely left him by the way to increase their Coulin *Elams* plantation. But ſeeing theſe are the offſpring of thoſe the *Affyrian* Prince *Salmanaffer* (called *Enemefar* in *Tobit* 1. 2.) forced out of *Samaria* as we find recorded in *2 Kings* 17. 6. A M. 3220. the Name from them has the more probability: for in Scripture we read that he placed them in *Halab* and *Ghabor*, (*Mons Chaboras inter Median & Affyriam*, *Ptol.* 6. l. 1.) *Median* Cities near unto the River *Gozan*: The finding of this River hath been not a little controverſed, and the quell continues yet obftrufe: For ſome would have it to be a River in *Battria* not far from *Oven*, and to have the like vcn into the *Caphian*; which being ſo remote from *Media*, cannot be approved of. Others place it near *Araxis*, which has the greater feimblance of truſt, *Araxis* ſreaming through that part of the *Medes* Countrey which about Alexander's time was nev-named *Arropas*; other ſome twixt the Mountain *Chabor* and the *Caphian* ſea, empting it ſelf into the River *Cyrus*, which diſcharges it ſelf into the *Caphian*. Notwithſtanding which *Ben Jonas* in his Itinerary finds *Gozan* hereabouts, and reports that it empties its freſh ſtreams into the *Perſian* Gulph. Yet to cloſe with the *Jew* in this his *Cabala* is not ſafe; ſeeing he finds not onely infinite numbers of *Jews* all along from hence to *Nifbor* (or rather *Nifpore*, i. e. *Buchi Civitas*) in *Sogiana*, (which *Ptolomy* places in *Aria* under 35 degrees 20 minutes) but feveral *Gozans* alſo; which brings it uader ſuch confuſion as none indeed can well tell where to find it. And concerning that *Gozania*, I find it in *Ptolomy's* Tables to be in 40 degrees 40 minutes, and by being in *Media* it hath affinity with the Name, but in the Map not being taken notice of, cannot tell where properly to place it. Moreover, albeit the way theſe banished Tribes took from their own into the *Median* Territories was in probability the uſual or neareſt way, which was to paſt betwixt *Babylon* and *Ninevah*; yet their progres is fo mysteriouſly defciſed in the *Apocrypha* *1 Esdr.* 13. 40. that ſome think they went through *Palmerina* in *Syria* and the South part of *Armenia* the Great into the *Perſian* Dominiſons: For ſpeaking of the Transmigration of theſe Tribes from *Israel*; *These are the ten Tribes* (faith he) *which were carried capiſes by Salmanaffer in the time of King Hοſea beyond the River Euphrates*; *who reſolving amonſt themſelves to leave the multitude of the Heathen and to ſequeſter themſelves into a Countrey where never mankind dwelt, they entred in at the narrow paſſages of Arſareth, the Springs being by miracle dryed up until they had paſſed over, and after a year and a halfe journey from Arſareth they ſet down, where they inhabited until the later times*. By which relation (notwithſtanding *Paulus Venetus* and others find this *Arſaret* in the moſt Eaſtely part of *Seybia extra Imaum*) albeit ſome think they paſted through the *Arabian* deserts to *Babylon*; others nevetheleſs ſuppoſe that their way was through that part of *Syria* called *Palmerina regio* into *Armenia*, twixt thoſe parts where *Euphrates* and *Tigris* have their Springs, and fo through the *Iberian* ſtraits called *Porta Caucasie* ſtrook into *Moendrania*, and theſe into *Battria*. But that *Battria* was the Countrey they reſted in cannot be imagined, ſeeing that was not remote enough for eighteen months travel from *Ararat*, if we ſhould grant that they were in motion, and *Ararat* ſtrictly to be in *Armenia*, being indeed not above 2 months journey thence; but more eſpecially ſeeing that *Battria* was ſo far from being uninhabited as the place ſhould be they deſigned to with-

withdraw themselves unto, *Bactria* at that time flourishing so exceedingly that it had no less than a thousand Cities. So as it may be rationally concluded, albeit in that dejected and deplorable condition these exiled *Jews* were desirous to find out such a desert Countrey as *Esdras* speaks of, it was doubtless an enterprize very difficult, in case they had the liberty to be their own choosers, which too rarely happens unto captives. For in those days through *Noah's* originary and after by *Sem's* posterity successively the oriental Countries were better planted than *Japhet's* was, (for in *Alexander's* time, after subverting the *Persian* Monarchy, invading *India* and part of *Scythia intra Imaum*, he reported that there he found more People and consequently more opposition, and greater and wealthier Cities than he had done in his conquest of all other that were under the stroke of the *Persian* Scepter, even from *India* beyond the *Hellepon;*) therefore into what part of the World these poor *Jews* were pent is not so easily to be discerned; though I imagine they were not permitted to cohabit together; for then their increasing generations would here as formerly in *Egypt* have rendred them formidable; but rather were separated and made to plant in several Colonies, as were the other Tribes, in like manner transplanted. Howbeit, the cause of their Banishment appears in the Prophecy of *Jeremiah* chap. 24. v. 9. where 'tis recorded, that by reason of their propensity to idolatry they shoud be removed into all the Kingdoms of the Earth, and become a reproach and a curse in all places whither the Lord would drive them: Which was fulfilled; for transplanted we see they were into the East; and seeing the Scripture declares not the place, 'tis of no avail more than to their separation afterwards to make a more curious enquiry concerning it. Albeit *Jeromus Leumleyanus* in his *Pandects to Genebrard*, and some others from the word *Tatarr* in the *Hebrew* and *Syriack* importing a remnant, *Gioe-chan*, *Giac-Elp*, and other proper Names, there used, Circumcision long before the publishing of the *Alcoran* and other *Jewish* Rites there practised, fancy to themselves that into those then uninhabited parts the *Jews* withdrew: Which if so, was in all likelihood to the N.E. of the *Mare Caspium*, beyond *Oxus* and *Jaxartes* Rivers now called *Nysapras* and *Cresil*; albeit *Abulfeda* and *Rabbi Moses-bar-Nachma* in his Paraphrase upon the *Pentateuch* conjecture that *Cog* and *Magog* (*Meshes* posterity) is not so much a general as a particular name of Princes and Persons of command in those *Sythic* Provinces; howbeit frequently mentioned in the Prophets and specially in *Ezek.* 38, &c. so as that supposition is but weakly founded, at least in my apprehension. For of equal force is that tradition the *Jews* here inhabiting as yet retain, That the Offspring of *Dan*, *Zebulon*, *Asher* and *Nephthali* being planted near *Damoc* under mount *Taurus*, but themselves the Issue of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and half *Manasses* by *Tiglath-pilezar* removed to this *Jaeroon*, and parts about *Larr*, the same time the Inhabitants of *Damascus* were by that Prince removed unto *Kyr* in *Media*, 2 Reg. 16. 9. But that they should sequester themselves from the rest of the World, was not without reason; for though the meaning thereof no doubt was to express their sorrow and desire to avoid the temptation of the *Heaven*; yet seeing in those times of all sorts of Men they were the least sociable as *Ovid* says, having as *Tacitus* l. 5. *Hosiles odium contra omnes alios*, and in recompence thereof styled by the *Heathen Men-haters*, of all Nations the worst, and other like Epithetes; yet doubtless have inherited that voluntary execration they intailed unto their Posterity at the condemnation of our *Saviour*, living ever since to our sorrow we see in an obdurate and wretched condition all the World over, and is thought will so continue, till by miracle they be converted, as the Almighty shall think fit; or at the personal return of *CHRIST* to judgment; or of *Elias*, which is thought will be a little before the World's consummation: albeit as that great Scholar Mr. *Falk* observes from *Matth.* 11. 13. in *John the Baptist*, *Elias* is already come. The translation of the Septuagint which to *Elijah* adds the *Tibsite*, being what doubtless in that Text misled St. *Chrysostome*. Moreover these *Jews*, notwithstanding their itch after Idol-worship is over, and that in the Synagogues they have a formal way of singing Service expressing very little reverence, and differing from that which *Ezra* appointed; yet have they no sacrificing Priest, holding no place proper save *Jersalem*, whence the *Christians* would oppose it as well as *Turks*. The five Books of *Moses* they have agreeable to ours: And although they have no *Tirshatha* or Civil Magistrate of their own, or dare not break the peace where they live under *Christian*, *Mahometan* or *Genile* Government; yet are not without separation amongst themselves, the five great Points controverted (in *Augustus Cesar's* time) betwixt the two great Families of *Shammai* and *Hillel* still spreading like a gangrene so irreconcileably that till the *Tibsite* comes (as one says) none else will be able to agree them; not *Rabbi Elias* who from the first verse of the first chapter of *Genesis* where the letter *Aleph* is six times found, cabalistically concludes that the World shall

shall endure just six thousand years, *Aleph* in computation standing for a thousand, albeit he should enter the lists to vanquish either party. But to return.

In or near this place is a precious liquor or Mummy growing, *Mummaly-koobas* they call it, which none pretumes to take, it being carefully preserved for the King's sole use. In *Jude* only it distils from the top of those stupendous Mountains, every year about five ounces. A moist redolent gum it is, sovereign against poysen; and (if we may believe them) a *Catubicon* for all sorts of wounds whatsoever: So as when other Princes send *Shaw-Abbas* Gold, Pearl, or like costly presents, he returns them a little of this *Balsam* as a suitable requital. After *Alexander* had prey'd and sacrificed in *Susa* (betrayed by *Abulises* a time-serving Satrapa) he led his wanton Army towards *Persepolis*: his nearest pallage was over the Hills of *Jacown* (in those days by Authors called *Pile Persida* and *Sufidae*) where to his amazement he was so well beaten by *Ariobarzanes* a valiant *Persian* and his little Army, that (contrary to the accustomed pace of the Worlds Monarch) he was contrained to retreat, and find another way to avoid the storm of stones and arrows which that noble *Persian* freely sent him.

The eleventh of February we left *Larr*, *Codgea-Obdrny* the Gouvernour having furnished us with Mules, emblems of sobriety: Our Harbinger (or *Manmandore* as called in *Perse*) was an old *Cozelbash* who would be sure (hopeful of some reward) at every place where we made our *Manzel* to provide us good quarters, and such meat as the places could afford; by vertue nevertheless or force rather of his authority domineering over the wretched Russicks more than pleased us; for he would profer them a little money for what he liked, which if they refused, then *nolens volens* he would have it, and *Alla Soldado* paid them with big words and *bafinadores*: So as we saw that in miserable slavery these Peasants live, contented to submit to the arbitrary will of the Souldier. The first night we pitched our Tents not far from *Larr*, but were stopped next day by an immoderate flood of rain; which though it was very welcome, yet made the earth so slippery as our Camels glib hoofs could not foot it. The rain falls seldom here; but when it comes, they both feel and hear it: Sometimes it rai ses such a deluge as sweeps Men and Hous es away; for (as we were told) six Years before (in this very place) a Caravan of two thousand Camels in part perished by the fury of it. The fourteenth day we rode to *Dc-achop* (o: *Tecioo*) which signifies a Town under a Hill; where we saw many pretty Tombs, few without a Grave-stone and an *Arabick* memorial. The *Alcoran* commands that none be buried in Cities, for fear the Dead infect the Living. This *Ius sepulchri* was according to the Ancients, *quo caveratur, Ut nemo sepulcrum haberet in eodem loco quem alius sepulchrō prius occupasset*, *Sil. i.* That no grave should be made in the place where any other had formerly been buried. And by the Law of the twelve Tables Burials were prohibited and not permitted to be within any City; but rather in Cemeteries without the City, or nigh the publick high-ways; that by viewing the Sepulchres of the Dead (according to the custom of the *Roman* and *Egyptian* who had them in their Banqueting-Hou ses) they might the better contemplate their mortality. A mile from this Town we viewed about three-score long Pavilions; which were black without, but within they had female Beauties: The *Persians* call them *Vloches*; the *Arabs Kabilai*; the *Turqians* and *Armenians Taspie*; the *Tartars Hoards*; the Ancients *Nomades* from the *Numidians*; concerning whom the Poet says truly, That

Nulla domus, plaustris habitant, migrare per Arva
Mo., atque errantes circumveare Penates. Their Carts their Houses are, their sole delight
To wander with their House-Gods day and night.

Suffer me to wander a little with such novel company. Seeing that Vertue the Trophy of a refined ambition is purchased by embracing the wholsome notions of an humble Soul, of a well-tempered Spirit, that heavenly radiance respects no other object with delight save vertue, from which pure stream flows Moderation, to whose excellency (next to Spiritual sacrifice) we may safely devote our best endeavours. Howbeit, so apt to every immodest act is Man's corrupt disposition, that to enjoy sensuality he conceits vertue (though never so gorgeously array'd) foul and deformed; till moderation force him to a strict account, and discover how much he erred in preferring intemperance before the transcending qualities of virtuous life: from whence, when we contemplate the contented life and poverty of these *Vloches*, needs must we condemn our selves of loathsome riot. For, how free from unsealable care, pale Envy, affrighting Tumult, and nafty Surfeit do these enjoy themselves? Happy Conquerors! how mutually do they accord, how joyfully satiate Nature in what is requirable? Hear *Lucan* in its commendation:

*Base Luxury ! wherein so much is spent,
Learn with how little Nature is content.
In Gold and Myrrhe these drink not; but are best
In health, when Bread and Water is their feast.*

— O prodiga rerum
Luxurias ! nunquam parvo contenta paratu;
Dificile quam parvo licet producere vitam
Et quantum Natura petat ? —
Non Auro Myrra; bibu., sed gurgite puro
Vita reddit ; fatis eff populis fluvium; Cerulo;

To return. So soon as *Phœbus* had run thrice fifteen degrees in our *Hemisphere*, we mounted our melancholy Mules, and made our next *Manzel* at *Berry*: Nothing observable in the way, save a thick Wall of great length and height, cut by extraordinary toil out of the Rock as a boundary, and to safeguard the *Larians* from the *Shydrans*, the Kingdom of *Larr* in that place terminating.

Berry is a Village which promises much at a distance, but when there, decludes the expectation: Howbeit, not a little famous through the *Persian Territories*; both from the immunities that an ancient learned *Sye* endued it with, confirmed by succeeding Princes; and from an *Arabick School* which is there kept and distinguished into several Classes of the Civil Law, Astrology, Physick, and what leads to *Mecca*: commendable in their Pythagorean silence, practising to discourse by winks, nods, and dumb signs; for babling and noise in all *Arabick Schools* is detested: They observe two Rules especially, Qbedience and Moving the Body to and fro whiles they be reading. Adjoyning this School is a *Jewna Machis* (or *Melquitt*) of great veneration by being the Dormitory of that great Doctor *Enawm-zeddy-a-meer-a-maddy-Ally*, who was a Prophet's son and allied to their great *Ally*, in this grave enjoying (say they) eight hundred years rest: His Tomb raised four foot from the pavement is longer and larger than the included Carcals, for it is eight foot long and covered with a white fine linnen cloth; the Tombstones are carved and painted with knots and poeties of *Arabick*. Near him are fixed two Lances to memorize his *quondam* profession, and some Ensigns not of ordinary invention: Upon his Coffin lie a set of Beads, which (if you will credit them) to this day retain their Masters vertue in working miracles: Within the Coffin is his Body; a mummy that has continued long; the brains and entrails are taken out (for they corrupt the soonest) and the Carcals (as they say) is embalmed in wax or such gums as both smell delicately and are of longest continuance. At the top of the Chappel is a Steel-mirror, wherein these Linx-eyed People view the deformity of their sins. They also shewed us a square stone which was pierced and hung near the wall; a rare stone, a relique most notorious! for the Prophet used to burthen the backs of impenitents sinners with it, telling them their impiety made it seem heavy, a weight so ponderous as made them take the right path to be quit of it. A little pot they also shewed us, holding a sove reign Unguent made eight hundred years since, oft used and (which is a miracle) never exhausted; 'tis not onely good to help sore eyes, but a *Panacea* (as they would have us believe) against all Disteaies. To crown all, a Book (no *Alfuram* of Devotion) was laid upon his Coffin; any body may be suffered to see it a far off, (but to touch it was presumption) in storm and crostes (they say) they find remedy with onely naming it: The Church was neatly matted; a Mosque of so great veneration that none enters with boots or shooes on. Such as want illnes, (in legs I mean not) health, wealth, friends, or the like, according as their Offering is, have satisfaction. The *Oracle* (the *Priest*) they say never deceives them: *Sed non ego credulus illis*: and with that I bid farewell to *Berry*, which some make to be the first Town in that which strictly may be called *Persia*; howbeit, we usually extend it South as far as the Gulph of *Persia*; having *Media* to the North, East the two *Carmania's*, and West *Susiana*, according to the *Book of Polomry*.

The next night we got to *Bannarow*. The last Town feasted us with traditions, this with good chear, Musick, Kettle-drums and six dum Musquets. The ruins of an ancient Castle (demolished by the *Persian*) here shews its ribs, through which the cool air blows, seldom failing from the top of that Mountain: One side of the Castle wall is anatomized to the Town, the other to the stony Desert. Next night we lay in *Goyome*, bragging that it has a thousand but ordinary Houses. After we had repast performed rare tricks of Activity, some of them I remember: He trod upon two sharp egg'd Semiters with his bare feet; then laid his naked back upon them, suffering a heavy Anvil to be set on his belly and 2 Men to hammer out four Horse-shooes upon it as forcibly as they could beat; that trick ended, he thrust his arms and thighs thorow with many Arrows and Lances, then by mere strength of his head and agility of Body lift up (no less than a yard from the ground) a great stone weighing six hundred pound; and then (as if he had done nothing) knit his

his hair to an old Goats-head, and with a scornful pull tore it asunder, crying out *Al lough whoddaw*, i. e. *God be thanked*, the standers by with a loud yell applauding him: This was notable. But what was he to speak of *Marius* (one of the thirty Tyrants) who with one of hisingers could overthrow a loaded Wain? Or of *Polydamas*, who with one hand would hold a wild Bull by his hinder leg, as *Cal. Rhod.* and *Treb. Pollio* report. But in rememb'ring these I had almost forgot how that in *Goyoom* is intombed *Melech Mahomet*, one who in these parts is not a little famous for fomenting the authority of his Master *Mahomet*, when the *Saracens* (not liking the innovation) first began to canvass it.

Next night we lost one another by a careless associating, whereby we procured to ourselves a miserable lodging in that solitary wilderness, having neither grases, nor trees, nor water; but stones (which gave no refreshment) and sand in abundance: nor beheld we other than Ostriches, Storks and Pelicans for companions. The Earth has heretofore worn *Flora's* Livery; but, by the rage of War and continued ardor of the Sun, becomes miserably desert; or rather from the wrath of Almighty God Who (as the Kingly Prophet sings) *makes a fruitful Land barren for the ungodliness of them that dwell therein*. Next day we quested in search of our Caravan, and after some pains recovered it. That night we again pitched in the Desert, and were entertained by such a sudden storm of rain, thunder and lightning, as made our cheer very wretched, imprisoning us also in our Tents. Next day we had the weather more comfortable, the sight of a few Date and Mastick-trees exceedingly refreshing us. *Coriat's* report, that Mastick is found no where but in *Sye*, was here confuted. By the way we took notice of an old-conceited Tomb which inhumed a harmless Shepherd: Hung it was to and fro with threads tripartite (peradventure shadowing out a Trinity) each thread being trimmed with parti-coloured wool; at each end of which was placed a puppet to protect it, and some Cypress-branches stuck about, to revive (as I then apprehended) an antiquated Ceremony mentioned in *Virg. lib. 3.* which then was to erect

— Stant manibus Atæ
Ceruleis moesta vittis, ataque Cupresso.

— Altars, their Ghosts to please,
Trimm'd with blew fillets, and black Cyppress.

And in the 6 *Aeneid*.

About the sides they mournful Cyppress place.

And that it was an ancient custom to adorn the Sepulchres of the Dead with fillets, *Papin. lib. 1. Silvarum* saith;

Pande fores Superum Vittatisq; Tempa Salvi,
Nubibus & pecudum fibris spirantibus imple.

— Et ab arbore calla
Necent purpureas niveo discrimine Vittas,

faith another Poet. And *Valer. Flaccus lib. 8.* to the same purpose,
Ultima Virginea tum flens dedit oscula Vittis.

The next (being the two and twentieth of *February*) by the way we had some sport in dislodging a wild Boar whom we pursued, but neither shot nor dogs could reach him. That night we made *Cut-bobbo* our Manzeel: *Mohack* our next; in which are buried *Mahomet*, *Hodges*, *Izmael* and *Ally*, four Mussulmannish Doctors, intombed here four hundred years ago, and resorted to with no small reverence. Next day to *Coughton*, where the People in few years before suffered in an high measure by Locusts, which these parts are sometimes infested with: Yet not so much as the more South and Easterly parts of the World; where as God's revengeful Armies they are observed to fly in numbers infinite and in order admirable, devouring the fruits of the Earth so exceedingly, that famine commonly ensueth. Howbeit, in some places the Inhabitants in reuall devour them again, esteeming them both savoury meat, and easie of digestion. The next day we got to *Unghea*; the day following to *Meychan*; the next to *Pully-por-shaw* (leaving *Bobban-hodges* on our left hand) and next night pitched a farfangh shott of *Shy-riz*. According to custom we expected a ceremonious entrance: But seeing none came out to that purpose, our Ambassador (who was ever sensible of his Master's Honour) sent his *Mammandar* to the Governour to demand fresh Horses and fitting accommodation. The *Daraguad* in person came to dissemble his neglect; first excusing the Duke's absence

absence whose displeasure he feared for not acquainting him with this excellent advantage to manifest his love unto our Nation, in comparison of whom, all other in that part of the World were contemptible. In a word, (perceiving our haſte) he prayed his Lordship to exercise but three days patience till the Great Duke came purpoſely to honour his Entrance; a favour of a double reflex, in that it would infinitely content the Gouvernor and Citizens, and accumulate an incomparable ſplendor to his Entrance; cloſing his Complement with anſt not, he was then ready to uſer his Lordship to his Lodging. The Ambaſſadour though he well enough defcried his pettys courtſhip, yet thought it beſt to diſemble his diſcontent, perceiving no remedy. We jogg'd leaſurely on upon our Mules and Aſſinegoes, who (to ſoon as they winded the air of this great City) ſpared the *Perſians* the labour of Kettle-drums, Timbrel, Hoboy, and ſuch Phygic muſick; ſometimes braying out, at other times echoing to one another in their Mymallonian Cornets as if ſome Orgye to *Liber Pater* had been ſoiemunizing: in ſo much as many ran out of doors, others firſt their Flambeauxes to know the cauſe and glit their wonder. After long circling we alighted at the house of *Shack-Ally-Beg* (the Dukes Deputy) where our Ambaſſadour after a prolix Apology from the Gouvernor was entertained with a ſhort Banquet, and then conveoyed to *Ally-chan* a House at the Eaſt end of the City belonging to the King, encompaſſed with as curious Gardens and as ſpacious as moſt in *Perſia*. And now we have overcome the trouble of our paſſage into the City, albeit we entred not in the day time to ſee and to be ſeen, do not think it novelt or that it was without reputation, or as if nocturnal Entries had not equal luſtre with the day; ſeeing that *Holofernes* chose the Night to make his triumphant Entrance into *Damascus*: *Antiochus* alſo took the ſame time to enter *Hierusalem*, *Augustulus Rome*, and haughty *Sapores* into this City.

SHERAZ (for ſo they pronounce it) the pleaſantell of *Aſiatick Cities*, is removed from the *Æquator* 29 degrees, 20 minutes North, its longitude is 88 degrees; by *Phil. Ferrarius* and ſome others ſuppoſed to be the reliques of *Perſopolis*: which I no ways allow of, not only from the diſference of ſituation and diſtance of place from *Chilmor*, being no leſs than thirty *English* miles thence, but principally in regard many riſing and rough grounds and ſome conſiderable hills are interpoſed. However, it is of great antiquity in the Name it bears: For *Ren-Jomas a few*, travelling theſe parts about 500 years ago, found *Syphaz* hereabout, which doubtleſs was this City. By *Cornelius de Judea* it's named *Syras*, a miſtake probably in the Tranſcript, ſeeing that *Syras* another Author likewiſe miſ-calls it. *Don Garzias* calls it *Xirias*; *Paulus Venetus Zyras*; *Sir Walter Raleigh Siras*; *Oſorius Xiras*; *Stephanus Cirecarus* and *Cire-batha*, borrowed as I ſuppoſe from *Cælius* who does the like from *Muſlaedini-Saddi* the Philosopher and Traveller, whose native place this, was and is by him called *Cyropolis*, alluding rather to its ancient Greek name than to the name it then bore, ſeing Authors more ancient than himſelf call it by the name of *Syras*, as the *few* lately mentioned and others: This *Saddy* lived *An. Dom. 1200. Hig. 600.* at which time ruled there *Muſaffer Eddin Abubeer*, Son to *Saddy* Son of *Sengus*; as appears by that learned Treatise of *Saddy* called *Rofarium Politicum* in our time tranſlated by *Gentius*. The name *Cyropolis* (as the word imports) was we may ſuppoſe alluſed from *Cyrus* that noble River, which alſo gave Name to that magnificent Prince *Cyrus* formerly called *Agradauns*; albeit we have a more clear authority for it, ſeeing God by the Prophet *Eſay chap. 44 & 45*, calls him by that Name above an hundred years before his birth, anointed and deligned to be the Deliverer of his People from the *Babylonian* bondage. The River, whether it be that which ſpringing from the *Coraxiu* Hills in thirty eight degrees empties it ſelf into the *Mare Caphium*, and has neigbouring it the two other Rivers *Cambyles* and *Araxis*, (for that in *Sogdiana* near *Jaxartes* mentioned by *Quintus Curtius* and that other in *India* ſpoken of by *Aelianus* are not it, is evident;) or that it be this, which ſreams in the mid-way 'twixt *Sheraz* and *Chilmor*, being unsatisfied my ſelf I leave it unto others better to conſider of; and ſhall only give my further apprehenſion concerning the Etymology.

Sheraz then probably derives it ſelf either from *Sherak* which in the *Perſian Tongue* signifies a Grapē, here abounding; and than which no part of the Eaſt has more generous, nor any Climate more benevolent; or elſe from *Sheer* which in the *Perſian* lignifies Milk: And the rather ſeeing several other Towns have their denominations accordingly; namely, *Alppo* from *H-dip*, i. e. Milk, albeit ſome would have it from *Alepius Julian's Lieutenant*; and several *Perſian* Towns have the like; as *W'boroot*, i. e. a Town of Dates; *De-achow*, a Town upon a Hill; *De-gardon*, a Walnut-Town; *Bacabachow*, *Perſicow*, *Cut-bobbaow*, and others: Or otherwise, paſſing by the Greek ſynonyms, *Seraz*, *Catena*, or *am̄is oūs*; proper *ḡlum*; and that of *Strabol. a Mineruſ, qua dicta erat Sic*

raz; I may with equal authority affiue the derivation from *Shuraz*, which signifies a Lion; or, from the *Syrates*, as the aborigines or incole of old hereabouts were termed and appears by *Polyenus* l. 8. de *Semiramis*; or else à *Schyris Arabi populus* (who to give *Pliny's* expellion lib. 6. cap. 13.) *Indorum vel potius Perſarum lingua loquentes, ibi sunt remaneant, c. r.* Nor was this City less ancient than great, if the report be true which the Inhabitants make, that *Jamshad* the fifth King of *Perſia* and predecessor to *Kedor-lamer* laid its firt foundation: For *Boterus* affirms for truth, That *Quando Syras erat Syra* (i. e. *Civitas*) tunc *Cairus erat eius pagus*; which proverb notwithstanding he borrows it from *Musladini Saddi*, who hath this hyperbolizing question, *Quid est Cairum? et Damascum? quid terria? quid ipsum mare?* *Omnis enim Urbes pagi sum, & sola Schyraz Urbs est*: rendering thereby *Shyraz* only worthy to be named a City; in comparison of which *Caro*, *Damascus* and all others extant upon the Continent or Isles were but Villages: *Saddi* also in this taking his pattern as I suppose from *Rome*, *Quae sola per excellentiam Urbs vocatur*. But that it was a very great City long ago is indubitable; and for proof I give you these few instances. *Ulghbeg* (a learned Geographer and Nephew to *Tamberlang*) in his time finds her to have fifteen miles compass: *Comarius* after him the like, and eighty thousand houses. *Barbarus* eight score years ago reports her to be twenty; *Cluverius* the like: *Teijera* after him to have six and thirty miles circuit; *Skjard* upon *Tariob* the like circumference; a circuit very large, but occasioned by the many and spacious Gardens this as most other *Asiat* Cities have, rather than from the numerous Buildings. *Jobn of Perſia* in his time numbered her inhabitants eighty thousand; *Ben-Ally* three hundred thousand: I dare not gainsay their reports, because no present enquiry can well disprove them; let us therefore rest contented in her Description as I could observe her to be at present.

Shyraz is distant from *Ormus* one hundred and eight far fangs, or three hundred and four and twenty miles; from *Larr* one hundred eighty six; from *Babylon* three hundred; from *Sipahan* two hundred and two and twenty; from the *Caffian* Sea six hundred; from *Cuzbyn* four hundred and eighty six; from *Perſcow* four hundred and forty; from *Candahor* three hundred and sixty; from *Tezد* two hundred and nineteen; from *Faza* sixty miles English, or thereabouts. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Ariatae*, *Tapiri*, *Curti* and *Orbati*; now converted into *Parc*, *Fure*, *Fare*; and *Farsistan*.

Shyraz at this day is the second City for magnificence in the Monarchy of *Perſia*; watered by *Bundamyr*, (as *Phil. Ferrarius* in his *Epit. Gemium* calls it, though indeed it is the Bridge, the water being called *Kur*) formerly either *Orontis* as in *Plol. l. 6. c. 3.*, and *l. 6. c. 23.* another of the like name being in *Celosyria*, or else that *Rhogomana* in *Plotomy*, a River that draws her descent from the *Tapirian*, as some say from the *Purchoatrian* Mountains, and after above two hundred miles circling in meanders commixing with *Choapic* (now *Tabb*) and *Uhy*, not far from *Vuldaa* (old *Shushan* is now so called) loose themselves in the Gulph, and promiscuously thence disgorge themselves into the *Indus* Ocean.

Some walls it shews which were raised by *Uſum Caffen* the famous *Armenian* Prince, who lived *An. 1450*, but seem to scorn a limited bondage; for now it stretches from the South-east to the North-west well near three miles, and is not much les the other way; the compass being seven miles or thereabouts. It is very pleasantly seated at the North-west end of a spacious Plain, twenty miles long and six broad; circumvolved with lofty Hills, under one of which this Town is seated; defended by Nature, enriched by Trade, and by Art made lovely; the Vine-yards, Gardens, Cypresses, Sudatories and Temples ravishing the eye and sincll, so as in every part she appears delightful and beautiful.

Here Art-magick was first hatched: Here *Nimrod* for some time lived: Here *Cyrus* (the most excellent of Heathen Princes) was born; and here (all but his head, which was sent to *Pisigard*) intombed. Here the great *Macedonian* glutted his Avarice and Bacchism. Here the first *Sibylla* sung our Saviour's Incarnation. Hence the *Magi* are thought to have set forth towards *Beithlehem*; and here a series of two hundred Kings have swayed their Scepters.

The Houses are of Sun-burnt bricks, hard and durable; the Buildings not very lofty, (seldom exceeding two stories) flat and tarrased above, having Balconies and Windows curiously trellized: within they are spread with Carpets; little other furniture otherwise is noted. Sultan *Shock-Allybeg's* House (where the fift night we were banqueted) is inferior to few; for his Dinning-room was high and round and spacious: The roof was arched, the walls imbossed with gold and wrought into Imagery, so shadowed that it was hard to judge whether imbossed, incut or painted: The windows were

of painted glafs, the floor spread with curious Carpets. Few or none here are without their Gardens (Foreſts rather) of high Chenaers, (reſemblng our Elm) and Cyprefles: So as indeed a more delightful object can hardly be, than what this City yields the eye from the neighbouring mountain. The Palaces rise fo amiably, and the Moſques and Hummums with their cerulean tyles and gilded Vanes, amonſt the Cyprefles fo glitter by reflecting the Sun-beams in a curious ſplendor.

Fifteen Moſques exprefs their bravery here, which in ſhape are round (after the *Al-kaba in Meca*,) tiled with a plaifter made of limeſtone burnt, which ſo ſoon as it is dry becomes fo exceeding hard that it rather reſembles true ſtone than mortar; with which they do not onely parget the outside of their Houfes and trim it with paint after the Morifco manner, but alſo spread the floors and arches of their Rooms: But on the top and outside theſe are pargetted with Azure ſtone reſembling Turquoifes, lined moft part within with black well-polished Marble; and the tops are beautified by many double gilded crescents or ſpires which reverberate the Sun's yellow flames moft delightfully. Two are eſpecially note-worthy in their ſteeples, (ſo ſome call them) being ſmall but exceeding high Towers: The one is ſquare above fifty foot high in the body, leaden in ſome part, in other part diſcoloured with gold and blue: the out ſide varnished and wrought with knots and poeties, vaſt and uufurished (or rather unfiniſhed) within; and above, ſpring in two ſlender but aſpiring *Alcorans* of wood, being round and coupled at the top, garniſhed with great art and coſt, very near as high as *Pauls in London*; from whole tops the clear-voic'd Boys ſing thrice every twenty four hours *Eulogies* to their Prophets *Aliy* and *Mahomet*; for, Bells are no where tolerated in *Mahometans* Temples: The other (rather reſembling a royal Carravans-raw) is quadrangular; the ſuperficies of it *Arabick* invention, imboſled with gold, painted with azure, flagg'd with Porphyre, garniſhed in feveral forms or anazes, and made reſplendent at ſome ſolemnities by many Lamps and Torches.

Other Moſques within this City are not fo remarkable, yet not ſo mean as not to invite the obſervation; for what they want in Architecture they supply in Reliques veriebly accounted of for entombing the Carcasses of ſome *Alchorans*, Doctors; whose ſeeming ſanctity hath got ſuch repute amonſt thoſe ſuperstitious People, their Tomb being inricht by the ſuperfluity of zeal, as no coſt nor pains is thought too much to evidence the reality of their devotion. Some Sepulchres there are of well-polished Marble; others of Wood cut into an antick kind of carving; others exprefſe the Painters Art, and other ſome the Sculptors ſkill in Brads and other metal; ſo that where Art is defective, Nature out of the treasures of darkneſs has ſupplied them. In one place *Shawmeer-Ally Hamzy* a propheſtick *Mahometan* refts his bones, ſeven hundred years ſince (ſome merrily lay) ferried by *Charon* into *Acheron* for doting upon his *Alcoran*: The Moſque is ſquare; for threeiſcore paces long I found the ſtructure he is buried in to be, and in breadth juſt fo many. In another ſleeps *Sandant-Emyramabow*, contemporary (as tradition gives) with *Mahomet*; and many more, whoſe dull refts till the Trumpet diſpoſe them to a reuſtrection. A little out of the Town is interred that learned Poet and Philoſopher *Muſladini Saddi*, who wrote the *Rofarium* which is lately turned into *Latin* by *Genius*: And near him his Brother Poet *Hodgee Haier*, whole Poems are of great elſtem in *Perſia*. And indeed *Shyraz* has a Colleſge wherein is read Philoſophy, Astrology, Phyſick, Chymixtry and the Mathematicks; ſo as 'tis the moſt famous through *Perſia*. Upon many of theſe Moſques the travelling Storks have piled their nefts, a bird (as of the *Egyptians*, ſo) of theſe People divinely eſtimated, termed *Piatris cultrix* by *Petrionius*.

*The famous Stork which buildest in the Air,
Forſters her naked young with tender care.
And by that love their duty doth engage
When need requires to help her feeble age :
Nor fail her hopes ; for when ſhe cannot ſtrir,
The pious Brood both feed and carry her.*

*Aerio insignis pictate Ciconia nido
Inveſtes pullos pignora grata lovet.
Taliq; expeſtat fibi mutua munera reddi
Auxilio hoc quoties mater egebat annus.
Nec pia ſpem ſoboles fallit ; nam ſeffa parentum
Corpora fert humeris, preſtat & ore cibos.*

The Gardens are many, and both large and beautiful; ſo as I may ſay of this what the *Syrians* attribute to thoſe of *Damascus*, *Operatissimi ſunt in horis*: Several of them (as I paſced) are eight hundred paces long and four hundred broad. But *Hony-shaw* (which is the King's) challenges superiority over all the reſt; being ſquare every way 2000. paces. Moſt of them ſafeguarded with walls fourteen foot high and four foot thick; and which from their ſpaciousneſſes and plenty of Trees reſemble groves or wildernesſes,

but by that name (the Persian word is *Bawt*) are called; they stand in lofty pyramidalical Cypress, broad spreading Chenawrs, tough Elm, straight Maples; and of fruit-trees are Grapes (whose wood though little worth (some say) never rots,) Pomegranads, Pomecritons, Oranges, Lemmons, Pistachoes, Apples, Pears, Peaches, Chestnuts, Cherries, Quinces, Walnuts, Apricocks, Plums, Almonds, Figs, Dates, and Melons of both sorts exceeding fair and of incomparable sweetnes; also Flowers rare to the eye, sweet to the smell, and useful in Phylick. The earth dry, but green; the air salubrious, though sharp a little while; yea, such as may make good *Tibullus* his fancies of *Elysium*: For,

Hic chorix cantibus vigint palissim; vagantes
Dulci sonant tenui gutture carmen aves.
Iuxta casum non culta seges, totolis; per agros
I loquitur odoratis terra benigna rosis.

Here songs and dances have esteem, and small
Sweet-singing birds with musick comfort all.
Th' uncultur'd ground sweet shrubs doth freely bring,
Bense-sweetning roses without Art do spring.

So as I must acknowledge it a truth, that as the East is more warm, so more refreshing and pleasant than the Welt, and through the gentle influence of the Sun and Wind makes both Flowers and Fruits much more delicious, succulent and fair than we find in the Occidental Regions. *In Oriente* (faith *Vicomercatus lib. 2. in Arift. Meteor.*) *omnia suriora quam in Occidente gignantur*; *Sols videlicet intensore calore illuc dominante: atque etiam terris ex haliibus Oceani, cuius aquae pinguis sunt, pinguefabis, &c.* Again, *Orientales partes sunt calidiores, quia dextra pars sunt Celsi & universi, &c.* And *Albertus* gives this reason for it: *Sol triplicem vim Orientalibus infundit, simplicem Occidentalibus: in Oriente enim radios qui calor: initum sunt primum mittit, deinde paulatim ad eum Occidentis calorem auget.* And in another place: *Orientales illas partes negari non potest, calidiores esse Occidentalibus, cum Aromata omnis generis & odoris & delicias veluti omnes in illis nascent videamus, quod sine calore validiori fieri non potest, siquidem in Occidente, qui est frigidior, minime nascentur.* And *Olympiodorus* gives us this reason: *Sol enim ab Oceano ad orientales Terras tendit, itaque omnes eas statim illuminat, & calore suo fovert.* So as it may be granted that the East has preminence over the West for fruits, plants, grain, splices, drugs, herbs, Gems, Minerals, and other things. This onely contradicts that, *Qui Oriens nobis est, alius est Occidens; & est contraria, qui Occidens Oriens, totque Orientes & Occidentes habeantur, quoniam longitudinem sunt habitationes, &c.* Farther it is agreed (faith *Bodin*) by joint confit of the *Hebreus, Greci, et Latini*, that the East is better tempered than the Welt; and that by the Prophets in Holy Writ the East seems to challenge a dignity and superiority above the Welt: to which truth several Philosophers and Historians subscribe, as *Ammianus, Strabo, Pliny* and others, backe with the judgement of *Hippocrates, Galen*, and other grave Writers, who all averr that in *Asia* all or most things are much fairer and better than in *Europe*; and that the Orient produces flowers, fruits, splices and other commodities, as also greater plenty of gold, silver, pearls and precious stones, than the Occident. Which may fully evince an opposite judgment; especially seeing Almighty God in the first Creation of the Wo^{rld} was pleased to endow the Eastern parts of the Earth with the best temper; And from whence (faith *Carpenter*) all other parts derive their original.

Amongst other pastimes there used, I remember I saw ropes or cords stretched from tree to tree in several gardens, Boys and Girls and sometime those of riper years swinging upon them; the *Turks* especially during the *Byram* time using that recreation: a pastime first practised by the *Athenians*. I may confine my commendations to a small compass, places more remote being at this day sterill, mountainous and unable (if then as now) to make *Alexander an Epicure*, the Wine excepted, which is indeed the most generous grape of *Persia*, and famous all over the Orient. Nothing more complained of by the inhabitants than want of water; yet a pretty shallow Rivolet it has, and might have more were the Citizens more industrious; a gallant River (*Cyrus* of old) streaming not fifteen miles thence in the way to old *Persepolis*, which by pipes like other Aquaducts might be drawn thither.

The *Cyrenians* and *Epicureans* place their *summum bonum* or chief felicity, in pleasure, and make virtue to be the Hand-maid; without which Felicity cannot be well attended. *Diogenes Laertius* tells us, That *Felicity* is onely a serenity and tranquillity of the Mind free to delight, and void of all sadness or perturbation: whence I may conclude these *Shyrazians* of that Sect. For at the *Norrouz* or Spring, they not onely send Vests, but other Presents to one another; a ceremony no less ancient than *Cyrus*, as *Xenophon* has it. Also *Plutarch in vita Alexandri* notes, That *Artaxerxes the Great* gave *Mithridates* (that

(that unhappy Captain who suffered a miserable death by the cruelty of *Perisatis* the Queen-mother for vain-boasting that he slew *Cyrus* her Son when in rebellion) a Gown or Veil of gold which he wore during a Royal banquet: Practised also by *Alexander*, who having put upon his head the royal Diadem of *Peria*, vested divers of the *Macedonian* Officers with Robes of Gold; *Longas vestes auratas sumere iubet*, saith *Inst. l. 12.* in use also amongst the *Romans* of old. *Augustus inter varia munuscula togas insuper & pallia distribuit, lege proposita, ut Romani Graecos, Graeci Romanum habitu uterentur*, *Resin. lib. 5. Antiq. Rom.* Then also the Gardens are opened for all to walk in. The Women likewise for fourteen day have liberty to appear in publick; and when loose (like birds enfranchised) lose themselves in a labyrinth of wanton sports. The Men also, some riding, some sitting, some walking, are all in one tune, drinking, singing, playing till the Bottles prove empty, songs be spent, or that *Morpheus* lay his *Caducum* over them. In all my life I never saw People more jocund and less quarrelsome.

*They revel all the night, and drink the round,
Till Wine and sleep their giddy brains confound.*

*Hic noctem ludo ducunt, & pocula lexi
Confundunt cerebris, somno vinet; seput*

And 'tis to be feared Chafflity is no vertue here; an unseen martyrdom: For heat makes just so outragous that they make little defence against it; thinking pleasure to be a-delightful Conquerour. Now, how far such liberty coheres with that tenet of the *Epicures* mentioned by *Cedrinus*, *Voluptatem esse finem sapientium & bonorum*, I determine not; seeing that *Epicurus* his *Summum bonum constabat voluptate, non corporis sed animi*. However, 'tis a certain Rule, That *Ut Venus enervat vires, sic copia Bacchi Temabit gressus, debilitaque perdes*. To return. This Feast of the *Nowrouz*, was begun by King *Shahelladyn* Son of *Ulp-Arslan*, and is commonly celebrated when the Sun enters into *Aries*; for than this they celebrate no Feast more solemnly. Somewhat of *Emangoly-cawn* the great Duke and his Banquet.

This Man is a *Georgian* by descent, a *Muslim* by profession, and one of those *Tetrarchs* that under *Abbas* rule the Empire. His Territories reach every way well-nigh four hundred miles; and afford him the Titles of *Arch-Duke of Shyraz*, *Sultan of Larr* and *Jarrown*, *Lord of Ormus, Maqueroon, Kermoen, Chufistan, Sigestan, and Farfistan*, Prince of the Gulph of *Persia* and Iles there, the *Great Beglerbeg*, Commander of twelve *Sultans*, fifty thousand Horse, slave to *Shaw-Abbas*, Protector of *Muslims*, Nutmeg of comfort, and Rose of delight.

He is of an extraordinary descent for Nobility (as Honour goes in these parts) his Father and Grand-father having been Dukes afore him; but (which is no les strange) privileged from degradation by *Abbas* his Oath upon a good occasion: *Aliculican* his Father having been victorious in some engagements against both *Turk* and *Tartar* it added no small lustre to *Mahomet Codobandas* Diadem: most memorably when (by command of *Amurah*) the fawcy *Basha* of *Rhyvan* with fifteen hundred Musquets breathed defiance against *Morad* the *Chiefest* Governor for presuming to take part with *Ismael* in that famous overthrow they gave the *Turks* on the *Calderan* Plain in the year 1514. as they arrogate to themselves; albeit the *Turks* acknowledg'd it not. *Morad* being thus unexpectedly assaulted, sends a timerous excuse; which rather enraged the *Basha*, who was not to be pacified till *Morad* had glutted his appetite with a Present of two thousand pound in gold, commanding him thence to *Nassivan* (old *Artaxata*) and by that time hungry again. *Aliculican* (*Shaw-Mahomet*'s Lieutenant in *Georgia*) expelling his displeasure against *Morad* undertakes to make the *Turk* eat cold Iron, meat the *Basha* cared not for, but by *Aly-culican*'s fierce charge with six thousand Horse made him return his bribe back; so as after a small dispute the *Turk* was forced to a speedy retreat over *Anti-Taurus* (now *Mezi-Taur*) and gave the valiant *Georgian* the liberty to extract a treble Contribution from *Morad* for his compliance with the *Turk*: and then returning victor to the Court, *Abbas* knowing that reward is as powerful a support of State as punishment, for that good service recompenced him with the *Shyraz* Dukedom, and his Son after him no les fortunate in *Sha-Abbas* his field-service, having quieted *Georgia*, subdued *Larr* and *Ormus*, and made tributary part of *Arabia* and *Diabee*.

Some days alter our being here the Great Duke abfented himself merely to please his humour; for albeit Sir *Roberts Sherley* took the pains to ride unto him, and to tell how acceptable his being in Town would be at the Ambaffadour's Entrance, he answer'd: It was no dishonour for any Man (his Master excepted) to stay his leisure: Not knowing or not considering That the Persons of Ambaffadours are sacred, and challenge high respect in all places, according to the custom and consuet of all Nations, both from

the representation they make and the nature of their Imployment: So that this would not have been cndured had our Ambassador been provided with a Convoy and neccesary accommodations for travel; which wanting, conſtrained him to practice patience. After ix days attendance, his Eminency made his Entrance into *Sheraz* attended with . . . Horse, where he took his eaſe two days without the leaſt notice of our Ambassador. At length, finding that our Ambassador would not make application to him, he ſent a Gentleman to invite him to his Palace; who returned with this anſwer; That he was weary, having come a great journey, and that his joyney was to ſee his Maſter. The Duke not pleaſed with that illiage thought it belt nevertheless to diſemble it, (knowing the King had given expref command that in his paſſage he ſhould every where receive honour and hearty welcome;) ſo after ſome paufe, the Duke ſent word he purpoſed next day to viſit him: yet failed in his promife; but his Son the *Beglerbeg* (eighteen years old) came in perſon to excuſe him. Next day our Ambassador ſent word by *Shoc Ally beg* to the Duke's Son, That his Viſit ſhould be retalia‐ted: *Emangly carn* the Father ſeems to be diſpleaſed that he had not the honour of the firſt *Viu*, and marveled what kind of People we were, ſince his own little leſis than adored him; nevertheless made uſe of it to his own ſatisfaction; for he was no ſooner alighted near the Duke's Palace, when by *Shoc Ally beg* he was uſhered into a long gallery, rich in commun beauties, Plate, Carpets, and other furniture; where (contrary to expectation) the Duke himſelf (like a *ſtana*) at the end of the room ſat croſs-legg'd, not moving one jot till the Ambassador was almoſt at him; and then (as one affrighted) ſkirt up, imbraced and bad him welcome; vouchſaſhing alſo (upon knowledg that his attendants were Gentlemen) to give us the *Hofbomdy ſoffowdys*, and to entertain us with a Banquet. So after two hours merriment we departed, invited to return next day to a more ſolemn welcome. The entertainment our Ambassador had was Wine and Sweet-meats, which were of variety; and then *inter paucis* but according to the common mode of theſe Eaſtern parts the dancing. Wenchies went to work, agreeable to what *Plinarch Symp.* 1. relates in his time, *Perſe non cum Uxoribus, ſed pellicibus ſal‐tant, & inbriantur* - for firſt throwing off their loole garments or Veſts, the other was cloſe to their body reſemblign troozen, but of ſeveral pieces of Satten of ſundry colours (as there muſh uſed;) their hair was long and dangling in curlz; about their faces were hung ropes of Pearl, Carquenets ſet with ſtones about their necks, and about their wrisſs and legs were wreathed golden Bracellets with bells, which with the Cym‐bals and Timbrels in their hands made the beſt conſort: Their dancing was not after the uſual manner; for each of them kept within a ſmall circle and made as it were every limb dance in order after each other, even to admiration. These are they whom I may ſay *Corvoria leta frequentum. Tibia demulcent ſonitus & ſiftula, ubique Cantus & ſalutis & grata liceatia vultus. Quales effe ſolent epulis vinoq; madentes.*

Next day being come, we were conducted by a *Sultan* thorow two fair Courts, whence on foot we were uſhered into a ſtately Banqueting-house, which was a large room open at the tides, ſupported with twenty gilded pillars, the roof imhoſſed with gold, and fo exquilitely painted as if *Erfenge* the *Apelle* of *Perſia* had pencil'd it: the ground was ſpread with extraordinary rich Carpets of ſilk and gold; a State at one end of crimson Satten was erected embroidered with Pearl and Gold, under which the Duke was to in‐throne himſelf. Upon one ſide thereof was painted his *Ormus* Trophies; no coſt, no Art being left out to do it to advantage. For it expreſſed their encamping upon the ſhore, their aſſaults, ſtorms, batteries, entrance, plunder of the City, maſſacre of the *Ormuſians*; ſome beheaded, ſome chain'd, ſome their heads ſerving for girdles: as alſo the *Engliſh* ſea-fights and the like; But ſo to life

— Velut fi
Revera pugnent, feriant viuentq; moventes
Arma viri.

— As ſeem'd indeed,
Men arm'd to fight, ward, ſtrike, till each Man bleed.

And when the green and crimson curtains or *ſcenes* of ſilk were drawn, there was a lively proſpect into a great ſquare Court, which upon this occation to aggrandise the invitation was round ſet with the prime Men of the City; as alſo into another adja‐cent Court, where I think I told near five hundred Plebeians, who (*Mofco* like) were invited to illustrate the Duke's magniſcence.

Before this great Duke meant to display his radiance (for as yet he was not arrayed) Sir *Dodmore Cuton* was ſeated on the left hand of the State; (where note, that all *Aſia* over the left being the ſword hand is moſt honourable;) upon the other ſide ſat the diſcontented Prince of *Tartary*: At the Ambaſſadours left hand was ſeated the *Beglerbeg* (the Duke's

Duke's eldest Son, and next to him the captive King of *Ormus*. Next to the *Tatar* Prince fat *Threbis-cawn* a disconsolate Prince of *Georgia*, a gallant Person, expert in Arms, and a constant Christian. Opposite to the State Sir *Robert Sherley* seated himself: and in the same room with such Gentlemen as attended the Ambassadour were placed the two Princes of *Ormus*, some *Sultans* and other great Officers. The rest of the Banqueting-room was filled with Persons of note, as *Sultans*, *Mercians* and *Coozelbahases*. During which entertainment young *Ganymedes* array'd in cloth of gold with long crisped locks of hairs, (resembling those *Pueri calamistrati pulchre industiati* mentioned in *Apuleius* his Banquet) went up and down bearing flagons of gold filled with choice Wine which they professed to all the Company one by one so long as the Feast endured. Upon the Carpets were spread fine coloured pintado Table-cloths forty ells long at least; broad thin pan-cakes six one upon another served for trenchers, near which were scattered wooden spoons whose handles were almost a yard long, and the spoons so thick and wide as required right spacious mouths to render them serviceable. The Feast was compounded of several sort of *pots* of various colours, and store of candied dried fruits and meats; variety also of Dates, Pears, and Peaches curiously conserv'd; such I took notice of (I mean as pleased me best) were Jaacks, Myrobalans, Duroyens, Pistachoes, Almonds, Apricocks, Quinces, Cherries, and the like. The Duke is not yet taken notice of; the truth is, his Eminency was not yet entered: Nor were we sorry that when our bellies were full our eyes might have the better leisure to survey his greatness. Howbeit, the Feast was no sooner ended but the vulgar multitude strove to rend the sky with *Tough Ally-Whiddaw-Pashat*, i. e. *Ally* and *God* be thanked, expressing by voice and mulick their joy, and then like that in *Ovid*,

Phæbus adest, sonnere Lyra, sonnere Pharcæ;
Signa Dicunt nosco per sua, Phæbus adest.

the Echo being as the signal for that great Duke to enter. His Entrance was ushered by thirty comely Youths who were vested in crimson Satten Coats, their Tulipants were silk and silver wreathed about with small links of gold; some had also Pearl, Rubies, Turquoises, and Emeralds, (for I do not remember that I saw one Diamond;) they were girded with rich hilted Swords in embroidered Scabbards; they had Hawks upon their satts, each hood set with stones of value. After them the Duke followed; his Coat was of blew Satten very richly embroidered with silver; upon which, he wore a Robe of extraordinary length, glorious to the eye; for it was so thick powdered with Oriental Pearl and glittering Gems, as made the ground of it inperspicible; not less rich (I thought) than the Empress *Agrippina*, when cloathed in a Robe of woven burnished gold: His Turbant or Mandil was of finest white silk interwoven with gold, bespangled with Pearl and Carbuncles; his Scabbard was set all over with Rubies, Pearls and Emeralds, such as that which *Pompey* found worn by *Mithridates*, valued at four hundred Talents, *Plus Vita Pompei* mentions: His Sandals had the like embroidery; so as he seemed that day to resemble *Atraxerves*, whose Apparel was commonly valued at ten thousand Talents, as *Plutarch* relateth. To this glorious Idol the People offered their devotion in many Tesselams, bowing and knocking their foreheads *à la mode* against the ground: Sir *Robert Sherley* constantly wearing the *Persian* habit, also *fiz-adæd* very formally; and after that in a Cup of pure gold drank his Eminencies health, and then (knowing it would please the Duke) put it in his pocket, with this merry complement, That after so unworthy a Person as himself had breathed in it, it was some indignity to return it; which the Duke amiably accepts as good satisfaction: but perceiving our Ambassadour not very merry, darted him a smile, then drank the King his Master's health, and exceeding civilly bid him and his Company heartily welcome, and so withdrew. The truth is, our Ambassadour was scarce well pleased at the Duke's long absence and proud carriage, yet prudently diffusibled it: so after reciprocal Sallams, some *Coozelbahaws* attended him to his Horse, and so returned to his Lodging.

Capable is this Arch-Duke to purchase his renown at those high rates, his yearly Revenue being bruited excessive great: For (say Merchants) he has towards four hundred thousand *Tomain* per annum, (a *Tomain* is five Marks Sterling;) out of which he pays fifty thousand Horse upon muster: His Plate and Jewels are commonly estimated (how certainly I cannot tell) at three hundred thousand *Mammodes*, a *Mammode* is our Shilling. A scanning of his great wealth may be taken by that memorable Present or New-Years-Gift he sent the King (upon *Melcombeg* the Fiscals secret advice) three Years since, viz. Fifty flagons of gold, seventy two of silver, and in *Lares* the value of four hundred and

and sixty five thousand Florins; the whole being three hundred and fifty cozelbah Camels load: A royal Present, besides Wines; and for which the King (as a symbole of his acceptance) remunerates the Duke with fifty Arabian Courfers, six clange of rich Garments, a sword he wore himself, and his word that he should continue in that Command, which to the Duke was most significant.

This Duke here and in other *Scaglios* (*Harams* the *Persians* call them) has above three hundred Concubines: No surer way in these *Pagan* Countreys to distinguish one Mans greatness from another than by exceeding in that sort of voluptuousness: albeit he hunts elsewhere, other sports serving but as a provocation. Nor do they refrain more manly exercises; as chasing the Lion, hunting the Tygre, dilodging the Bore, unkennelling the Jackall and the like: At which sports he first raignes whole Countreys, not les than twenty thousand Men serving to rouze that kind of savage game; for when the whole herd are imbatteled upon some mountain they impale it with a huge toy of wyre and cords supported with stakes (six hundred Camel load) and so either dart them from without the rail or venture in, and by (by drawing a crois line) singe what beast they please to combat with Sword and Lance; nor want they Hounds train'd for that generous sport: and having kill'd some, suffer the rest to escape for further pastime. *Philotas* in all *Alexander's* marches had ever ready 1,000 sadom of net and toil to impale mountains the better to hunt wild Beasts, &c. as *Troglus Pomp*. recordeth. So as it seems in that Countrey this is no new invention.

Two days after this Feast, the Duke with a Train or Cavalcade of thirty *Sultans* and *Coozelbahsaws* came galloping to *Ally-cawn*, (so the House was called we lodged at;) and albeit he endeavoured to surprize Sir *Dodmore Cotton* with a sudden Visit, yet such was the seafonable intelligence he then had, that at his alighting he found a choice shade as the fifth part of his entertainment, and then Chambers neatly furnished, from the Balcony looking into a pleafant Garden where large Cyprefles and other Trees appeared in their best apparel for his better welcome. Here the facetious Duke encamped with all his Company, resolv'd to encounter the fury of his own wine and our *English* Clymick-waters; for 'tis their belief, That

— *Corpora magna Virorum*
Dulcia Vina levant, animq; & viribus augent.

And give me leave to repeat, no part of the World has of Wine better than *Sheraz*: So that for three hours the skirmish continued, charging one another with equal resolution. Many bottles and flagons were emptied, but by stratagem from the Duke's quarters revived afresh; thundring such an alarm in the Duke's brain, that at his mounting his Horse he fell back; and had not our Amballadour (who as he was very abstemious so was he most civil) by chance upheld him, he had been dismounted. Mr. *Stoddart* of *Caernarvan* and Mr. *Emery* (two Gentlemen attending the Amballadour in his Chamber) helped them homewards. Next day the Duke sensible of his civil Treatment returned his thanks in a Present of twelve good Horses, with bridles and rich faddles suiting them; by which it appeared that all were pleased, and the Amballadour (who without such an entertainment had never satisfied them) acquired the Epithete of a generous and well-bred Person. After other Ceremonies of welcome (in which pincashes and gifts were not left out) we had leave to prosecute our travel towards the Court: I call it leave, the Duke now seemed so unwilling to part with us: The Amballadours Attendants also (pursuant to the Duke's directions) were very well mounted and furnished with fresh Camels and Asinegoes for our Sumpters; able Beasts, capable to endure the brunt of travel. Great is the difference betwixt the *Turks* and *Persians*: For the *Turks* being by Law prohibited, abstain from Wine, yet drink it covertly; but the *Persian* now (as of old) drink with freedom openly and with excess. It was so of old; for *Plutarch* in the Life of *Artaxerxes* reports the *Persians* were liberal Wine-bibbers and lovers of *Magic*. *Cyrus* craftily endeavouring to supplant his Brother *Artaxerxes* in the Crown before the Battel of *Comixa* being his Lieutenant in the lesser *Asia*, the better to ingratiate himself with the *Lacedemomans* writ unto them, and among other vertues boasted that he was fitter to rule than *Artaxerxes*: And the reaon he gave was this, He could drink more Wine and better understood *Natural Magic* than his Brother did. Peradventure the same *genius* was in this great Duke we are now speakeing of. To proceed.

Six and twenty days we consumed in *Sheraz*, forced to so long commorance by the merry Duke; so as on *Lady-day* in Lent we departed thence towards *Spaharn* the *Persian*

ian Metropolis. But I cannot willingly part without first celebrating our *Vale dictum* in this Charistry.

*Why should our Wits dispute where Eden stood?
If in the Earth or Air, or if the Flood
Did spoil the surface: thus we fell from thence!
And too much knowldg lost the residence.
Yet if that Place remain, for us to guess
By outward attributes of Happiness,
Why should thy Plain, Shyraz, give place to those
Where frusful Nile and Ganges over-flows?
Thy curios prospect, ledges, soil, the rich
Variety of pleasure that bewitch
Each gazing eye, would make the looker on
Think Paradise had no destruction,
Or else re-planted there: For there the Grape
In dangling clusters tempts another rape
To taste the relish, as the Apple did:
And some would touch thy fruit although forbid.
Thy Towers, Baths, Gardens, Temples make thee seem
Like Memphis, Troy, Thebes, or Jerusalem!
Thy Natives (Natures Models) to compose
Inferior Beauty by the looks of those.
Farewell sweet Place; for as from thee I went,
My thoughts did run on Adam's Banishment.*

Yet c're we go further, let me give you a brief Account of such Potentates (to let pals *Solomon* whom they derive themselves from) as had their Seat-royal in *Sheraz*, begun seven hundred Years ago, and but lately ended. The first of which was *Abuzer Delamshaw*, by some said to descend lineally from *Adsher* the last King of *Persia*, and the hundredth in descent from *Adam* as they pedagogize; and from his Name and the delight he took in Fishing and Navigation is injuriously termed a Fisher-man; no otherwise than *Tamerlane* was a Shepherd, from the manner of living most usual amongst Hoards or Septs in *Tartary*. *Delamshaw* surnamed *Bois* (or *Moheia* rather, which signifies a Fish) had three Sons; *Ally*, *Husshan*, and *Achmet*. *Ally* surnamed *Aben-hessen* had no Issue: his Father and he were both buried in *Sheraz*. *An. Dom. 940. Heg. 320.* *Husshan* by the death of his elder Brother became Lord of *Parc*, *Hery*, *Hierac* and *Corazan*; and *Achmet* had assigned *Kerman* and *Macron*. To *Husshan* succeeded a stranger *Zedda-Mobe* by Name brought in by *Mustapha* the *Babylonian Caliph*; to whom succeeded *Eyna-duddaul* who had no Issue. *Rocnadawl* (*Husshan's* Son) being possessed of his Father's Seigniories died peaceably *Anno Dom. 980. Heg. 360.* dividing first his Territories amongst his three Sons, *Sherfa-dawle*, *Shamsdawle* and *Bahao-dawle*: The eldest had *Shyrazan*, *Larestan* and *Kerman*; the second, *Hierac* and *Diarbec*; the youngest had *Geriom* and *Tabrissan*. *Sherfadawl* died Issueless *An. Dom. 990. Heg. 370.* so as the second Brother inherited; who soon after his Coronation was dispossessed by treason, so that the Seigniory descended upon *Bahao-dawle* youngest Son of King *Rocnadawl*. *Bahao-dawle* ruled 12 years, at his death commanding that his eldest Son *Sultandawle* should succeed him. This Prince being trained up in field exercises from his cradle albeit by his valour he enlarged his Empire, yet could not defend himself from *Hocem Maharadawle* his restless Brother, till by agreement the Kingdom was divided between them: to *Sultandawle* was allotted *Farsistan* and *Aywaz*; to *Hocem*, *Hierakeyn*. At that time *Gelaladawl* their Brother was invested with the Caliph-ship of *Bagdat* *An. Dom. 1021. Heg. 401.* and *Sultandawle* dying, was *An. Dom. 1023.* buried in *Shyraz* with great solemnity. *Abdul-cawn* his Son ruled after him: but perceiving the Crown to totter by the unnatural practices of *Syarfuddaul* (called also *Abul-savar*) his trayterous Uncle, he was forced to fly to *Gelaladawl* his other Uncle the late made *Caliph*; who was glad of this occasion, having long looked with a squint-eye of ambition upon his Nephew's Diadem: But dissembling it, with a great Army he descends from *Bagdat*, with ease expels *Abul-savar*, and then mounts himself into the Throne, to *Abdul-cawn's* amazement; who to save his life flies into *Arabia*: Whiles *Mahomet Gazneby* from *Hindostan* enters forceably into *Hyrac* and *Sherzian*, but was quickly forced to retreat into *Sablestan*, *Parc* at that instant being miserably plundered by *Turquemen* and *Deliamans*. *Abul-savar* by that time got so highly into the *Caliph's* favour, that

that he was restored to the Crown ; but death cut off his hopes, leaving *Abdul-cawm* the banished Prince his right, who upon this advantage returns and is by his Subjects joyfully welcomed : But he also forfeiting of too much joy lived not long after it ; for seeing no way but one, he commends his Body to the Earth and bequeathed the Royalty to *Abooz-milat-Rabim* (or the Merciful) who dyed *An. Dom. 1054. Heg. 434.* without Issue ; in whom after a series of fifteen King took end the *Mohyan* Race or Family.

To *Melech-Rubim* succeeded *Abumanor* who pretended himself to be the legitimate Son of *Gelaladaul* the above-mentioned Caliph. *Abumanor* took to Wife *Dainia* Daughter of *Toshalbeg* and after five years reign dyed in *Kermoen*, and lies buried at *Harkawn* not far from *Jasquis*. He had five Sons by that Lady ; viz. *Abumanor-phulad-juran*, *Chozroepheruz*, *Abu-beer*, *Abu-eddai*, and *Aboally-key-kosrao*. *Abumanor* enlarged Shyraz and spared for no cost to make it beautiful : but while he busied his fancy at home, his ambitious Brother *Cesive-phern* unexpectedly took possession of his Territories. Revenge pursues : for travelling to *Bagdat* to see his sick Grand-sire *Toshalbeg*, his cruelty to his Brother being there called in question and proved, he was forthwith committed to a loathsome prison where famine and stench quickly made an end of him. This sharp discipline could not terrify *Abuz-day* the fourth Brother from intruding into *Abumanor's* right : albeit his injured Brother having escaped had gathered an Army, who so stood to him that *Zedday* in the Conflict was slain with most of his Associates. *Abumanor* one would think was born to an Iron destiny being unable at his second return to safeguard himself from *Fazale* his Lieutenant who unawares seized upon him, and secured him in a noisom prison, adorning his base brows with his Master's Princely Diadem. Which treachery *Aboally* the youngest Brother could not resent ; for he taking a happy advantage pulls it from *Fazale* and crowns him with one (better becoming Traytors) of flaming Iron. *Aboally* after he had soveraigniz'd seven years was arrested by death *An. Dom. 1100. Heg. 480.* and for want of Issue the Scepter falls to *Mahumed Aburail Togrulbeg*, Son of *Michael*, Son of *Salguicus*, Son of *Didacus* a Turqueman.

In the *Salguicus* Family it continued till *Mahumed Abul-casan* died *An. Dom. 1220. Heg. 600.* without Issue. For then a Race of *Tartars* followed, successfully conducted by *Canois-cawm* Lord of *Keron-koran*, *Maurenahar* and *Gazneben*. Almost anfor-bila-Manor then sitting Caliph of *Meccha* and *Bagdat*. To *Cingis-cawm* who dyed *An. Dom. 1228.* follow'd *Tuk-cawm* and *Chagary-cawm*. From *Chagary* descended *Tamerlan* whose Issue now rule *India intra Gavem*. After the *Tartar* the *Turks* afresh planted here, led by *Chara Mahumed* *An. Dom. 1415. Heg. 795.* original of the *Karakula guspan* or black Sheep as they stile themselves, banilshed *An. Dom. 1470. Heg. 850.* by *Acen-bez* (otherwise called *Usan-Cassian*) an Armenian, whose Grand-son *Alvan* was the last of the white Sheep or *Acorla-guspan*, shorn to the very bone by *Izmael-Sophy* his ambitious Kinfman *Anno Dom. 1504. Heg. 884.* *Izmael* was Great-Grandfather to *Abbas* the Persian King who now reigns, and is of the *Ben-Allyan* or *Sophyan* stem or pedigree.

From *Shyraz* we travelled to *Persepoli* which is thirty English miles to the North-east of *Shyraz*. First we passed that noted Aquaduct resembling that at *Tangbe-dolon*, the pipes by supporters reaching from Mountain to Mountain ; so as by the *Indians* 'tis called *Echar Tangby*, by the *Persians* *Tangbe-buzzirk*, signifying the same thing, that is *The great Strait* ; from whence the water is conveyed into most pleasant Gardens full of Flowers and Fruit, on each side visible : It also serves the Duke's great Pond stored with Fish and Fowl, so as it affords him great delight, and no let's pleasure unto weary Travellers. The rest of the way was somewhat sandy, and about the mid-way hilly ; from whence to *Chilmor* are about ten miles, in which mid-way runs the River *Cyr* or *Cyrus*, over which is a well-built Bridge of stone called *Bynd-Emry*, i. e. the Prince's Bridge. And being come to *Persepoli*, first suffer me to present you in little with the revival of the Palace as it stood in perfection.

PERSEPOLIS was the Metropolis of the World such time as the Monarchick Scepter was swayed by *Cyrus* and the succeeding Kings, until the subversion of that Empire by great *Alexander*. By that name it is usually called in all *Greek* and *Latine* Authors ; for so we find in 2. *Macchab.* 9. 2. which St. *Hierome* reports was writ in *Greek*, where 'tis called *Persepolis* ; but by the *Persians* and other Orientall Nations was Named *Elamis*, as in the 1 *Macchab.* 6. which Book was writ in *Hebrew* ; those various Originals occasioning that difference of Names ; but by comparing those two, the story or matter of fact appears to be the same ; so as it is evident that *Elamis* and *Persepolis* were one same City. Which being so, that supposition which *Posellus* and others have that *Shushan* and *Elamis* was one, is of no more weight in my apprehension than that of *Ferrarius* who in his *Epitome Urbium* erroneously makes *Shyraz* to be scituated in that place.

More-

Moreover, as the Name *Persepolis* is a derivative from *Persia*, so was *Elamis* from *Elam*, by which last that Countrey was denominate untill Daniel's time; albeit in *Act 2. v.9.* we find the *Perſians* called *Elamites* by the *Jews* who then ſpake the *Syrian Tongue*.

Now albeit the firſt Founder of this City is thought to be *Sosarmus* third in ſucceſſion from *Arbaces*, who conſpiring with *Belochus* the *Babylonian* Gouerneur againſt *Sard* *ma-palus An. Mundi 3150.* put a period to the *Affyrian Empire* after it had continued under eight and thirty great Kings: Nevertheless the City was enlarged and beautified by *Cyrus* and *Cambyses* his Son, and made the Royal Seat upwards of two hundred years, during the reign of thirteen Kings, the laſt of whom was *Darius Ultimus*, who unwillingly gave place unto the *Greeks*. In its flourishing condition it was (faith *Q. Curtius* and *D. Siculus*) the richelſt, the nobleſt, and the lovelieſt City under the Sun: So rich, as invited *Antiochus Epiphanes* (for his frantick humour nick-named *Epimanes*) to march thiſſer with a conſiderable Army in hope of maſtering the greatest Exchequer in the World with like ſucceſſ he had at *Jerſalem*; whence he had but a little before ſacrilegiouſly ravished ten Tun of gold; but hence by the Citizens and *Diana's Priests* that avaricious *Syrian* was repulſed with shame. *Justine lib. 11.* calls it *Caput Regni, Urbemq; illuſtrum multis amis, reſertamq; orbis Terrarum ſpoliis*; The capital Kingdom, ituffed with no leſs than the ſpoils of the Universe. So that Sir *Walter Raleigh* well obſerves, There was no place in the whole World which being laid in the ballance with *Perſopolis* would have outweighed it. For althoſh *Babylon* and *Shuſhan* were very rich, the one furniſhing the *Macedonian Victor* with fifty thouſand Talents, the other with nine millions of gold and fifty thouſand Talents in bullion; in *Perſopolis* the main bulk of *Darius* his vaſt Treaſure lay as in a hoord, there being found upwards of a hundred and twenty thouſand Talents; or according to *Strabo*, two and thirty millions ſeven hundred and fifty thouſand pounds, all which came to *Alexander's* own ſhare after that he had allowed the Souldiers three dayes free plunder of the Town. So beautiful alſo and ſo ſtately in its ſtructure, the timber being moft of Cedar and Cyprſ wood, and the elegancy of building ſo curiuſ and regular, as in that Age it was accounted and ſtiled the Glory of the World, and may therefore juſtly challenge this Inſcription,

*Perſopolis,
Totius Orbis splendor fuit.*

Now, albeit the City was ſuch, yet it cannot be deny'd but that her greatest luſtre was borrowed from the lofty Palace of the *Persian Emperours*, which both for ſcuſtuation, proſpect, riſhneſs in material, and curiouſty of Art, rendred it incomparabe. *Plutarch in vita Alexandri* calls it The proud and ſtately Palace of the great King. Of that maſteſty as put the *Macedonian Victor* into amazement at his entrance thereto: For, in the preſence was a State of pure gold thick powdered with ſparkling ſtones, in which *Alexander* was inthroned; in the Bed-chamber (amongſt other curiouſties) an artificial Vine (preſented by *Pythous*) the ſtock of which was burniſhed gold, the cluſters Orient Pearl mixt with Rubies of great price; and no leſs rich the Bed: the bedſtead alſo was gold, and thick ſet with gems; the Bolſter was estimated worth five thouſand Talents, and the Footſtool at three thouſand Talents of gold, (the *Hebreu* Talent is four thouſand five hundred pounds;) ſo that you may well wonder at the ſum.

Give me leave now to deſcrible a part of this ſtructure, by which the whole may be imagined. It was built at the Eaſt-end of a ſpacious Vale, upon a Rock or riſing ground four hundred paces from the City, the plaſt containing fifty acres of ground or thereabouts. The Walls on either ſide were elaborately carved with figures of Men and Beasts. The ſecond ſtory was of Porphyre mixed with Marble of other ſeveral colours, imbelliſh'd with costly ſtones in Moſaike ſort; but the architrave, Freez, and moft part of the Arches were ſtudded with gold, beeing flat and tarralled at the top. Towards the Eaſt it had a high and ſtately Tower or Keep, circled with a triple wall each higher than other, and at ſuch a diſtance as gave pleaſant walks between: The firſt was 16 cubits high; the ſecond was double as much; the laſt threſcore: all three of Marble well poſhifh'd; battlemented above and below to be entred by ſeven gates of burniſhed brafs. From the ſummit of that Tower the Kings had not onely a delightful proſpect over all the City that ſpread it ſelf below, but (notwithſtanding the Hills that ſurround the Plain) as it were an unlimited Horizon uncircumſcribed ſave by Heaven it ſelf. Adjoyning this was a Mount which contained about four acres of ground, and built after the nobleſt manner. It was the *Manſoleum*, in which and in the contiguous Hills were

intombed several of the *Persian Kings*. The roof and casements (sayes an old Author) were of Gold, Silver, Amber, and Ivory; and the walls were polished Marbles of several colours. Adjoyning that wasthe Temple dedicated to *Anaia*, (so *Diana* is there called *Anaia* in *Diod. Siculus*, *Nance* in the 2 *Maccab.* 1. 13.) equal to that at *Ecbatan* which in thos times (as *Josephus* and others write) was so exquisitely built and with such extraordinary cost, that it excelled any other then extant in the World. For the materials were of the best sort of Marble of several colours intermixt with precious stones: and no less admirable was the Art, of that kind the *Arabs* called *Marbuttery*, but the *Frns* *Mosaick*; a composition of many small pieces of Marble varioously coloured or otherwise gilt and disposed agreeable to the figure or place they assume in the pavement or other part of the struture; which set together look as if they were imbolded and represent Men, Beasts, Flowers or other fancies, exhibiting an unexpressible pleasure and stateliness to the eye. A sort of work those of old much gloried in. For the Temple at *Delphos*, *Artemisia's Tomb*, and that erected by *Alexander* for his dear *Ephesion* were such; yea many reliques and broken pieces of such we find as yet remaining in old Monuments through several parts of *Asia*, and in *Europe* also; as at *Constantinople* the roof of *Santa Sophia*; at *Rome* the Temple of *Bacchus* now dedicated to St. *Agnes*; in *Siena* the *Domo* or Cathedral hath in the pavement large and very rare figures of this work; in *Venice* that to St. *Mark*; in *Florence* that to *Cosmo* the first of the *Medices*; and towards the East end of the Abbey in *Westmister* the imitation of *Mosaick* may be observed in the pavement, and in *Edward* the Confessor's Tomb. But if *Mosaick* be in wood 'tis called *Tersia*: the several pieces of which are boild and dyed into what colour the Workman fancies, and being inlaid represent to the life what figure they please. Of this work much is seen in the Quire of St. *Dominick* Church in *Bologne* in *Italy*, where the stalls are all of this kind, expressing the story of some part of the Old and New Testaments. An Art much admired by Travellers.

But alas! this rich and lovely City, yea the Palace it self, albeit they forced admiration and deserved commendation from the *Greeks*, nevertheless at a drunken feast, in a debauched humour by the instigation of *Thais* an infamous strumpet then following the Camp, to retaliate what *Xerxes* had in a hostile way perpetrated whils he was at *Abens* her native place, *Alexander* commanded nay helped to set all on fire; an act so unbecoming that great Prince as when he more considerately viewed the flame made him repent; yea to repent, that if possible he would have quenched it with his tears: For as *Sir Walter Raleigh* notes, Wine often engenders fury, and fury matter for repentance: But preceeding mischiefs are not amended by succeeding shame or lamentations. Nevertheless, this sad execution rendred that famous City *visus æwos*, as one says of another place; so that nothing now remains save what the merciless Fire could not devour, I mean the Walls and Pavements; which being of Marble and by expert Masons hewn out of the main Rock, and by rare Artificers carved into Ithory and grotesco work, have hitherto resisted air and weather; so as if not defaced by barbarous hammers and hands, it probably will remain a monument to express the old *Persian* magnificence unto all succeeding Generations; for without an hyperbole, *Mole sua stuporem inicit spettanibus*.

At this day 'tis called *Chilmor*, or *Chel-minar* as the *Persians* pronounce, which in their Tongue signifies Forty Towers. The Palace (whose ruines I shall now describe) was (as I lately mentioned) built upon part of a Mountain of dark coloured Marble, which the great Achitect of Nature has placed at the North-east end of that large Plain where the City of *Persopolis* once stood; the middle of which was watered by the River *Araxis* (or rather *Cho-Aravis*) which *Curtius lib. 5.* and *Strabo lib. 15.* say, streamead about twenty furlongs from *Persopolis*; although others of equal authority name it *Cyrus*, which I rather approve, seeing the modern name it bears is *Kur* and *Al-Chyr*, as some *Persians* call it, albeit others call it *Pondly Gourk*, or *Kurk* as some pronounce, a derivative from *Kur* or *Cyr*, i. e. *Cyrus*; over which is that notable Stone-Bridge built above two hundred years ago by *Emry-Hamz-Delamia* a *Persian* Prince of the *Salygian* Race, in whose memory 'tis called *Bund-Emry*, i. e. the Princes Bridge. The circumference of the Plain (surrounded with rising Hills) is near forty English miles. About three score acres of this Mount which *Diodorus Siculus lib. 17.* calls the Royal Hill, (but by the modern *Persians*, *Shaw-achoo* and *Choo-Rahmet*, i. e. the Mountain of Mercy) by extraordinary toil and Art was dissected and designed for the foundation and other accommodations of this marvellous struture, which both for perpetuity and elegancy in sculpture was in several places sunk and polished for lasting Walls and Pavements. The ascent into this Palace is at the West side of the Hill by ninety five steps, every step being twenty inches broad and three inches high one above another; the Stair-cafe (that is to say from one tide of the

Stair unto the other) is in breadth six and thirty foot : but so contrived that it gives a double passage leading two several ways, one towards the North, the other South ; each stair also in the half way having a pause or half-pace which is very large and square, flagg'd with Porphyre and lined at the sides with a brighter coloured Marble than the Rock which divides the double stair, and above the half-pace winds the contrafy way to what it is below ; both being so easie that I very well remember we saw a dozen *Perians* ride up a breast without crowding. The other Part of the Hill adjoyning this stair is precipitous, in height being two and twenty foot as I gaueled (for I had no certaine measure,) seeming of old to have been slightly damasked or wrought into crotesque ; and runs due North and South above five hundred paces, as did the Palace ; which thereby gave it self a full prospect to the City below, not unlike the view we have of *Windsor Castle* from *Eaton*.

At the stair-head there is some remain of the Gate or place of entrance into the Court, being about twenty foot wide, so well as my uncertain way of measuring by paces would ascertain : but the height of the Gate and what superstructure it had is not now demonstrable. The prospect we have from thence towards the left hand is a large empty piece of ground, by gentle Hills bounded both to North and East, seeming to have been some Garden-plat or like place of recreation. But Eastwards more near the stair are the figures of four strange Beasts carved in stone ; not such Beasts as are in Nature, but rather as issue from the *Poets* or *Fictors* brains : At first view I thought they had some resemblance with those four monsters the Prophet *Daniel* in his nocturnal Vision saw rising out of the Sea, alluding to the four supreme Monarchs ; but by comparison found my self mistaken. These quadrupedes stand two and two ; the first two being about 20 foot from each other look towards the stair ; the other two have the same distance from one another in breadth, but are thrice that space in length from the two former, and have their faces turned towards the Hill, which is the contrary way : So as it is probable, these four beasts together with the four interposing pillars, of which two are fallen and two remain, served (as one may imagine) to support some Gallery or Tarras that had its prospect North towards the Garden, under which a *piazza* was where attendants might walk, and South towards the Palace. The main structure ranges all along towards the South from the top of the stair, the prospect being most part to the West, the Hill towards the East interposing. One of the four beasts (to give it the nearest resemblance I can) is like an Elephant ; and the second (being nearest to it) is somewhat like his opposite, a Rhinoceros ; the third is like unto a Pegasus, or rather that volant Gryffin *Ariosto* describes in his *Orlando furioso* ; but the fourth is so disfigured that it cannot be described : Howbeit, herein these beasts differ, for two of them have visages with beards and long hair like Men, agreeable to that fourth beast which *Daniel* chap. 7. vers. 7. looked upon as the most dreadful, prefiguring the *Roman Empire* ; their heads are armed with helmets or caps of defence, upon the necks of which are great round globes of like material : And the Pegasus is trapped with warlike mail, so studed that it seems a sort of *Mosnick* work ; and in such lively and permanent colours as if it had been imbossed or wrought but very lately.

A few paces thence is a large iquare stone Cistern or Laver, twelve foot in diameter and twelve inches thick, supported by stones of a large size : Near which (still towards the South) are the fractures of some pillars ; but of what use, seeing they are demolished, cannot well be ascertained. Flanking this is a Wall that runs from East to West, which I suppose is part of the Mountain, and terminates that room to the Southward ; it is Marble, about nine foot thick and thirty foot high. Near the middle there is another double stair of thirty or forty steps ; as also a half-pace in the half way, flagg'd with large square Marbles and faced at the sides with figures imbellished and carved by no rude hand. This brought us to a large square room which I shall anon speak of. In the first place therefore I return to the foot of this stair, to take a view of the Wall or Frontispiece ; which on either side the stair has engraven in *relievo* several figures and in several rows over each other, resembling some memorable procession : The Images on either side have their faces towards the stair, as if they were to march that way. Those that be figured in the lowest rank, by their habit and posture seem to be of inferior quality ; for the *Albros* or garment most of them wear reaches scarce to the knce, and is somewhat strait near the waite where 'tis girt about, but towards the skirt more large and circular, according to that form we see the *Moors* wear at this day in *Indostan* : Some are naked downward, others have Calzoons reaching to the calf of the legs ; some be bare-foot, and others wear Sandals. Howbeit, these seem to be of the Military profession ; for in one hand they hold a Spear upright in the same posture a pike is ordered,

but in the other hand there is variety; for one carries somewhat that is of a circular form, others baskets with fruit, others some chests with boxes not unlike the *Sandougs* now used in *Persia* wherein they carry Preserves and Dates, pots for perfume, and the like: So also lead a Horse, others an Elephant, and some a Camel; other some a Mule, and some lead Oxen and Sheep with long ears, high noses and horns very oddly distorted. This solemnity induces some to think it is the representation of some remarkable sacrifice; and the rather, for that not far from thence and in like sculpture several figures of their Priests or *Magi* are carved, amongst which is an Arch-lamen. Now whereas there is a Horse led with the rest, and peradventure for Sacrifice, *Diod. Siculus*, *Xenophon* in the Life of *Cyrus*, *Herodotus lib. 7.* and other Historians acquaint us, that in old time it was commonly practised by the *Perians*. And concerning the dedicating a Horse to the Son their Deity represented by the *Mylra*, reflecting upon the Sun's swift motion, as *Pierio* observes in his *Hieroglyphicks*; we have something typified in that famous election of *Darius Hystaspis*; as also in that memorable march of the last *Darius* against *Alexander* before their engagement at *Issus*, where *Quintus Curius* relates, how that the Horse dedicated to the Sun followed the white Chariot of *Jupiter*, after which went the Arch-lamen that carried the holy Fire as the *Perians* esteem'd it. The *Roman* after like manner in *Pompa Circensis* led Horses in honour of the Sun, a custome derived from the *Perians*, whose King in his greatest magnificence caused his best Horse richly trap't to be led in state, and the Chariot also dedicated to the Sun, *Cal. Rhod. Antig. l. 8. chap. 2.* Horses usually of the *Nylean* breed, saith *Philostyrax l. 14. c. 17.* This gro'st Idolatry spred it self also amongst the Kings of *Judah*, who in 2 Reg. 23. 11. are reproved, in that after the manner of the Gentiles they likewise had devoted Horses to the Sun. Sundry other figures are engraven here in garb little differing from the former, but in their weapons they do; for some are armed with Lance and Shield, and some have short clubs with thick round bunches at the end like that I have seen used by the savage *Floridans* in war; others have them headed with spikes, such as I cannot represent by companion; and other some carry *Burro's*. Amongst the rest there is a Chariot which has two wheels, drawn by a single Horse, the Charioteer going by it; which sort of Chariot is not unlike that the *Roman Dictators* and other Generals sat in in triumph, as represented by *Lauria*; so that this without doubt was either appropriate to the King's own use, according to the relation *Xenophon* and others give concerning *Darius* his March; or, which is more probable, was lac'd to the Sun.

In the upper rank, the Images are more large and majestic, by their habit and manner of setting seeming to represent some sovereign Princes, as may be premis'd by the *Tiara* or high sharp-pointed Caps that are upon their heads, which none in those days durst cover but Princes of the Blood, and they only by permission: They have also chains of gold about their necks, as some prime *Sarape* had the priviledg to wear. Those of the upper rank wear long Robes or Garments, the *Perians* therby appearing to be *Gens togata* before the *Romans*: And indeed we may observe that from *Poland* that garb continues in use amongst all the Oriental Nations. But the greatest variety is in the attire or dress of their heads: for besides the *Tiara* which was worn by *Serenissimo's*, the *Cidaris* was worn by several sort, as King, Priest and People. Now as I find occasion, give me leave to make a few cursory observations.

And first concerning long hair. Albeit in these modern times I find it is the common mode of the Eastern People to shave the head all save a long lock which suppositiously they leave at the very top, such especially as wear Turbans, Mandils, Bustars, and Pngarees: In ancient times nevertheless it is apparent (witness their Images) That the nobler sort of Men wore their hair very long. *Herodotus lib. 6.* and *Athenaeus lib. 4.* afford us some examples. *Perse à prolixa & speciosa coma qua capillati sunt, Comatus diuinus,* (whence also part of *Gaule* had its denomination,) short hair in those days being accounted a mark of servitude. Likewise in that sharp and memorable contest betwixt the two Brothers *Cyrus* and *Artaxerxes* for the Crown, *Cyrus* being slain and stripped amongst many other dead corps, could not (save by his long hair) be discovered. And as to Chains of gold, they were accustom'd to be worn by Favourites and Persons in principal trust amongst those Nations, as recorded in sacred Writ concerning *Joseph*, Gen. 41. 42. Dan. 5. 29. And in prophane Stories man' examples; as of *Astyages* the *Median* King (contemporary with *Nabuchadnezzar*) whose exteriour Vell or Garment was long and richly embroidered, his hair also was of great length and crisp'd, his face was also sanguined with Vermilion; under his eye was drawn a small stroke like that the Women now use to paint with in *Turky*, and about his neck a rope or circanet of great Oriental Pearl, as *Xenophon* describes him. Over their heads an Officer holds a

Mace or other like Entign of Majestie ; another an Umbrella. In the one hand the King holds a short Spear, *Hasta summa armorum est & imperii*, saith *Rosinus lib. 5.* which as I apprehended was the Scepter of old, and by the *Perfians* had in veneration. *Venerantur Sceptrum*; (saith *Just. lib. 43.*) *Etenim ab origine Reges Hasta pro Diademate habebant.* And saith *Spondanus*, *Hasta nihil aliud est quam Sceptrum;* ut *Achilles Illystan tenens juravit per Sceptrum*, The Spear was no other than a Scepter ; as for example, *Achilles* holding a Spear in his hand signifying Sovereignty. Some others seem to be of principal note ; for they have round folded Caps a span long and flat at the top, not unlike to Caps of State or Maintenance : with long Vells in large plats and folds, and ample sleeves like unto the ancient Mamel or Sarifice, and armed with short crooked Scimitars stuck thwart their bracall into a girdle : And other some (according to the mode now used there) wear high peaked Caps, such as I found worn in *Mozendram*, and in the right hand they hold a short Staff or Batoon such as in pictures are given Generals or those that have eminent Command in Armies. Others resemble Soldiers, and are armed with Sword and Dagger, Half-pike and Bow with very Large Arrows ; but their quivers are of an antick shape different from thols which are at this day us'd. There are also the figures of Lions contending for prey, Tygres, Goats and other Beasts. And in vacant places betwixt the Images the Wall is damasked *a la grotesco* or adorned with Trees and Landships ; which though not drawn by *Lysippus*, nevertheless for the great Antiquity they bear may worthily receive acceptation from any Traveller.

Adjoyning these towards the Welt is a Jasper or Marble Table about twenty foot from the pavement, wherein are inscribed about twenty lines of Characters, every line being a yard and half broad or thereabouts ; all of them very perfect to the eye, and the stone so well polished that it reserves its lustre. The Characters are of a strange and unusual shape, neither like Letters nor Hieroglyphicks ; yea, so far from our deciphering that we could not so much as make any positive judgement whether they were words or Characters ; albeit I rather incline to the first, and that they comprehended words or syllables, as in *Brachygraphy* or Short-writing we familiarly practise : Nor indeed could we judge whether the Writing were from the right hand to the left, according to the *Chaldee* and usual manner of these Oriental Countreys ; or from the left hand to the right, as the *Grecs*, *Roman* and other Nations imitating their Alphabets have accustomed : Nevertheless, by the posture and tendency of some of the Characters (which consist of several magnitudes) it may be supposed that this writing was rather from the left hand to the right, as the *Armenian* and *Indian* do at this day. And concerning the Characters, albeit I have since compared them with the twelve several Alphabets in *Poetulus*, and after that with those eight and fifty different Alphabets I find in *Parchus*, most of which are borrowed from that learned Scholar *Gromay* which indeed comprehend all or most of the various forms of Letters that either now are or at any time have been in use through the greatest part of the Universe, I could not perceive that these had the least resemblance or coherence with any of them : which is very strange, and certainly renders it the greater curiositie, and therefore well worthy the scrutiny of some ingenious Persons that delight themselves in this dark and difficult Art or Exercise of deciphering. For, how obscure forever they seemed to us, without doubt they were at some time understood, and peradventure by *Daniel*, who probably might be the surveyor and instructor the Architecton of this Palace, as he was of those memorable Buildings at *Shushan* and *Ecbatani* ; for it is very likely that this structure was raised by *Abygues* or his Grandson *Cyrus* ; and is acknowledged that this great Prophet (who like wise was a Civil Officer in highest trust and repute during those great revolutions of State under the mighty Monarchs *Nebuchodonosor*, *Belshazzar*, *Abygues*, *Darius* and *Cyrus*) had his mysterious Characters : So as how incomunicable forever these Characters be to us, (for they bear the resemblance of pyramids inverted or with bases upwards, Triangles or Delta's, or (if I may so compare them) with the Lamed in the *Samaritan* Alphabet, which is writ the contrary way to the same Letter in the *Chaldee* and *Hebrew*;) yet doubtless in the Age these were engraven they were both legible and intelligible ; and not to be imagined that they were there placed either to amuse or to delude the Spectators : for it cannot be denied but that the *Perfians* in those primitive times had Letters peculiar to themselves, which differed from all those of other Nations, according

to the testimony of a learned Author, *Perse propriis habebant characteres, qui hodie in vestigiis antiquorum Monumentorum vix inventuntur.* However, I have thought fit to insert a few of these for better demonstration.



Which nevertheless whilst they cannot be read, will in all probability like the *Mene Tekel* without the help of a *Daniel* hardly be interpreted.

Adjoyning these is a spacious room, best resembling a Hall; albeit some think it was a *Jamma Mechtis* or Temple: the dimension by the ruinous walls that compass it may very well be discerned. In it there are nineteen columns or Pillars, most of which are perfect, albeit some have their Capitals either broken or defaced; and upon those the Storks build their nests, whom Winter weather offends more than do the People who have them in little less than veneration. Those that remain entire are (contrary to usual form) sharp towards the summit or top: so that it is not easie to guess what manner of arch or superstructure it supported save what I have described concerning *Persepolis*; or of what kind of structure the whole was, whether agreeing with the *Ionic, Doric* or *Corinthisc*. In height these Pillars are about twenty cubits, which at the least make 30 foot; and in compass near three yards and a half, allowing for the intervals betwixt every flute; for they are all round and duted, every Pillar having forty flutes, and every flute three full inches as I measured; and distant from each other about nine yards. The capitals have their mouldings enriched; the pedestals also wrought into Grotesque with figures, and both Pillars, Capitals and Pedestals all of the best sort of white Marble; and ranked in perfect order or rows, such as we see in Cathedrals, or in the Halls of Illustrious Princes. Now albeit there be but nineteen Pillars at this day extant, yet the fractures and bases of other one and twenty more are perceptible: from whence and from the resemblance they bear with the *Alcorans*, i. e. high slender Turrets which the *Mahometans* usually erect for use and ornament near their *Mesquits*, they term these *Minars*, i. e. Towers: So as 'tis probable, that forty of these Pillars were standing such time as the *Persians* gave this place that new denomination; but how long it has been imposed, thoſe I asked the question of could not satisfie, the precedent Name being utterly forgotten. Notwithstanding this limitation, it is evident there were in all an hundred Pillars when the place was in perfection; as appears by the vacant spaces and alſo by the bases or foundations of several rows of Columns which are yet visible; in the whole amounting to that number.

Hence ascending a few Marble steps we entred into another large square Chamber, which might be a room of Presence: I paced every side (an uncertain but the best way of measuring I could then make,) and found them four score and ten paces; the 4 sides making threſ hundred and threescore paces. Into this large room are eight ſeveral doors, but unequal places of entrance: For, I found four of them have ſix, the other two four paces. Each door ſtad is composed of ſeven well-polished black Marble ſtones close laid one upon another; every ſtone about twelve foot in length, and four foot in height; which, as alſo the walls and broken arches were wrought or pourtray'd with figures reſembling ſome great Persons on horseback, after whom proceſſed ſeveral others in ſacerdotal habits bearing branches in their hands, follow'd by ſundry others that lead along with them Beasts of ſeveral ſpecies; but whether by way of Triumph or for Sacrifice, I know not.

Out of this we paſſed into another room contiguous to the former; which ſome *Persians* in company perwaded us had been a Nursery; other ſome that it was part of a *Seraglio*. The room is large though unequal in the ſides; for I found two were threescore, and the other two threescore and ten of my laigeſt paces: It had ſeven doors for entrance;

trance; probably typifying their *Mybra* or the Sun with seven gates which the *Persians* had in divine adoration, mysteriously representing the seven Planets. Adjoining this was another which in pacing I found how two sides thereof were twenty, the other two thirty of my largest paces: The walls here (as of the rest) were of black Marble; but so incomparably polished and glazed, that we beheld it with admiration: For several parts of it were as bright and splendid as Tuch or Steel-mirror, so as we could very perfectly see the reflex of our faces and bodies when we stood before it. In other some places the gold also that was laid upon the Freez and Cornish, as also upon the trim of Vests, was also in as perfect lustre as if it had been but newly done; which is to be wondred at, the violence of weather to which 'tis exposed and length of time (being upwards of two thousand years) duly considered: An Art of great value with the Ancients and longest preserved amongst the Monasticks as we find upon figures and capital Letters in old Veilam Manuscripts and Bibles: but since, well-nigh lost, or by our Painters now a days but meanly imitated. The sculpture on both sides the wall has for ornament variety of figures somewhat larger than the life, (unless that Men in those times were greater than now they are;) some of which Images represent Sovereign Princes, as by their sitting, habit and ornaments may be imagined; for they are seated in antique Chairs of State, the hair upon their heads being very long and crisp, and about it some wear high-peaked Tiara's, which the *Venerian* Ducal Cap most resembles; and in little, the Tag or sharp point the *Mozendram Cooli's* have that are lined with curious wool; or that you see worn by the old Inhabitants of *Persia* in my following Description of *Sparawn*. Others have Caps that be flat and round, and other some more high and folding like Caps of State, which together with the long Robes or upper Vests they wear is resembled by those our Knights of the *Garter* use at St. George's Feast, or Installation of the Knights of that most honourable Order; differing only in the sleeve which is more large and purfling, like those we see worn by Bishops, save that these be wider and looser at the hand. In their hand one holds a half-pike, another a Patalor staff, others short thick Truncheons or Staffs of Command; a General's weapon is his Truncheon, a Souldiers his Sword; the one serving for Command, the other for Execution; and in the other hand they hold round Balls or Mounds, signifying (as I suppose) Sovereign Dominion. Amongst other attendants, two Officers of State are remarkable: for one of them holds a Sunbrero over his head, which probably was not so much for shade as State, and gave rise to the Royal Canopies which in those primitive times and after were used: the other erects a Mace or like Ensign of Honour crooking towards the end, in those days doublets reckoned amongst the *Regalia*.

Upon the Freez and Architrave over the heads of the Images are some Characters inscribed which differ from those I lately mentioned, bearing (so well as the distance would suffer me to judge) a little resemblance with the Letters anciently of use amongst the *Georgians* which were corrupted from the *Greek*: And if so, it cannot be without good, That as to most Nations the *Syrians* have given Language, so unto the *Grecs* Arts and Sciences of most sorts owe their original; and concerning whom in Travel (to speak the truth) we meet with more memorials of Antiquity than we find extant of succeeding *Romans*, or indeed of any other Nation. In lesser figures are represented the *Satrapa* or *Persian* Nobility; who with their Arms stand on the one side of those Majestic figures, and on the other the Magi or Arch-lamens, some of which hold Lamps, others Censers or perfuming-pots in their hands. I questioned some of the best sort of *Persians* then in company, whom they thought those Princes did represent? One said, He supposed *Kiyomarus*; another *Yamheat* or *Shem-sheat Noeflano*, i.e. *Shem filius Noe*, quartus Rex *Parafum*; as *Saddi* in his *Rosarium* wittily fancies: a third *Aaron* or *Sampson*; a fourth *Afshar*, i.e. *Ard-shir* the last of the *Persian* Kings in the hundredth descent from *Adam*; though I think it means *Abashuerus* (whom some make the founder of this Palace; which I cannot think was a Temple, both from the variety of Rooms and ascents, as also from the nature of the Story pourtray'd in sculpture;) and another *Zulziman* as they call *Solomon*: whereas I expected that in these various conjectures *Rashan* their famous Champion would have had mention, concerning whom I have formerly given my apprehension.

Now for as much as the remaining figures or Images are many and different, yea so many, as in the two days stay I was there it was impossible I could take the full of what I am assured an expert Limner may very well spend twice two months in 'rc he can make a perfect draught; for to say truth, this is a work much fitter for the Pencil than the Pen: the rather, for that I observe, how that Travellers taking a view of some rare piece together, from the variety of their fancy they usually differ in their observations;

so that when they think their notes are exact, they shall pretermitt something that a third will light upon; a defect the Painter can best supply. And seeing I did not take them in order as I went from place to place, I shall nevertheless from the *Idea* and mixt notes I then took, enumerate the particulars; so as upon the whole I shall leave little unspoken that is remarkable.

These walls in their perfection doubtless expressed an unspakable majesty: Howbeit, through length of time and barbarousness of People they are in some parts broken and demolished, although the arches and square fragments yet remain; so as the Story that is engraven upon the Marble (which is high and thick) continues to this day in many places unblemished.

Upon the wall in sculpture is figured a Person of quality (as his habit declares) contending with a Lion, whom with his right hand he grasps by the leg to prevent his outrage and thereby seems to have the victory, (the contest with Lions being no unusual practice with the *Perians*.) Near them are two inferiour or servile Persons; one of which holds as it were a flaming torch in his hand (than which Lions fear nothing more) the other a basket full of provisior; but the basket for shape differs from any I have seen in other Stories.

Near this is a square of five broken pieces resembling arches and windows, 'twixt which upon both sides are the figures of some great Princes, most of which as to their habits are little differing from those I lately described, albeit their postures vary; for some of them are wrangling with Lions. Betwixt the arches are flat pieces of walls lower than the arches, imbroidered with several sorts of antick work with figures intermixt, and Characters writ upon the top difficult to our understanding. Adjoyning that is the figure of a Monarch, whose right hand grasps a Scepter of unusual length, for part of it seems to be under ground: and behind him (but in less proportion) attend divers of his servants: one of which advances somethong towards his head, which I took for some kind of Maces, though much differing from those great Maces we use in *England*; others bear lighted torches or flambeauxes, for they are large. Nigh whom is an image of monstrous shape; for albeit the body be like a Man, he has Dragon's claws instead of hands, and in other parts is deformed; so that doubtless it was an Idol and not unlike some *Pagoda's* I have seen amongst the *Brachmans* in the *Mogul's* Countrey, all which are of an ugly a shape as can be imagined: There are also several armed Men which hold Pikes in their hands, crested.

Thence ascending four easie steps upon the walls, we see cut the effigies of several Persons in Pontifical habits, most of them following as in a file each other: In their hands they carry several things, some of which resemble Dishes and Censers. Near forty paces thence in another large square room is the pourtrait of some great Person; for he has the Regal Robe upon his shoulders and the *Tara* upon his head, and is followed by sundry Petitioners but in several habits, as Men of severall Nations; and may be presumed such both by their different habits and for that they have scripts in their hands which they seem to present the King, in the nature of suppliants. In the rear march the Guard, some armed with Spears and Swords and some with Bows, who also by the long crifped hair they wear seem to be of more than ordinary quality; for even in those times that gave some distiction. Upon another part of the wall is the like figure of another great Man over whose head one Officer holds a Parasol, another a Lamp: Near whom stands a Flambeau (as by the vesture may be conjectured;) and his sleeve is either carelessly or modishly thrown over his arm: After whom follows a Marshal; for in one hand he holds fetters and with the other leads a Prisoner, as by the posture of his body may be presumed, who as in an afflicted state seems to supplicate. After him proceed severall others, all in order; one of which leads a Ram, and sundry Flambeaus follow with Censers in their hands, as in those times was accustomed in preparatory Sacrifices.

Near this towards the center of a large square room there is a hole which gives way into a Vault through an entry that is about seven foot high and five foot broad, first leading towards the North, and after bending towards the East. Tis flagg'd at the bottom with square Marble stones of extraordinary size, arched above, and broad enough for three a breast; leading into a fair Room or Chappel which is also arched and supported with four pillars four yards about, eight in height, and four yards in distance from each other; and through which is a passage by another entry towards the Mount, upon the wall whereof is engraven their grand *Pagod*. The sides of these two entries in like sculpture and matter cut, have been carved with figures of severall Men, by their habit seeming to be Priests, orderly following one another with their hands held up and joyned together, as in those Oriental parts was usually acted when they would express triumphs

triumphs or other causes of rejoicing. The front is artificially engraven into the similitude of Men and Beasts in various postures; as Men combatting with Lions and other wild Beasts of sundry shapes, and Beasts one against another. Among the rest is the figure of a Horse preparing to defend himself against a Lion; but so rarely fancied as gains the Sculptor praise sufficient, the posture is so natural; such as when that Art was more in perfection, would hardly have been bettered. Over and on each side the door through which we entred, are carved in the Marble some Men armed with Sword and Pike and some with Targets; over whose heads upon the Architrave are Characters engraven which like the rest prov'd adverse to our intellect.

Near that is a second subterranea passage into another square Chappel, strongly arched and supported with four white well-wrought Marble pillars, each about seven yards high; (for 'tis presumed that the greatest part of this pile was vaulted under ground.) Near which is a fair Arch of like stone, whereupon is engraven a Man of an extraordinary size wearing his hair extraordinary long and curl'd both upon head and beard; the last of which is cut square after the mode of the aged devout *Arabians*: his head is covered with a flat round Cap, and at his feet (in sign of Eminency or Conquest) a Lion couchant is placed. Another Man a few steps thence holds a Crooking staff, Mace or other ensign of Magistracy in one hand, and a Lamp in the other. Several Pike-men also seem to guard the place, who appear only from the waste upwards. Nigh these is another Sovereign Prince (in these particulars I repeat not, seeing they are several figures) royally seated in a Chair of State. In his right hand he holds a long Scepter such as I have formerly mentioned. On the one side an Officer of State advances his Mace or such like Ensign towards the Prince's head. A little higher a Man is placed upon one knee, and by his bowing posture (albeit his face be turned towards the North-west) seems to supplicate some Deity. On either side the Prince in two several ranks stand many Flamens whose heads are silletted (for 'tis that gave them their Names) and in their sacerdotal garments holding up their hands and joining them together, dancing and rejoicing as in old times was used in *Penns* to the Sun, their *Apollo*. Not far thence is the like Story; in this only differing, here the Prisoner being upon his feet makes his prospect towards the East, with his finger either saluting the rising Sun, or seeming to contemplate Heaven.

A few paces thence are figured two Giants who by pure force subiect two Lions whom they hold down by their hands fastned within their hair. Nigh them are placed another Guard of Foot armed with Spear and Sword, as it were safeguarding some notable Prisoner. Aljoyning that is the image of another Sovereign Prince, in habit and posture little differing from the former; only the Scepter here rather resembles a Bishop's or Pastoral-staff, which he holds erect in his right hand. At first view I imagined it was the image of an Arch-flamen; but more deliberately, That it rather represents some Sovereign Prince. Now, albeit of late times Kings amongst the Infidels in some parts imitate our European Monarchs, not only in state but also in their Regal Ornamenta of Crown and Scepter; nevertheless of old the variety was far more in those distinctions. For (that I may not exceed my bounds) in *Persia*, the Diadem, the *Myhra*, the *Tiara* and the *Cydaris*, with the Wreath or Chaplet were the *Regalia* of old, as now the *Mandil* is with which the *Shaugh*, and with the *Pugzaree* the *Mowh*'s head is adorned. Amongst these the *Myhra*, (which some make one with the *Cydaris*, as in Zecb. 3. 5. where after the vulgar *Latine*, *Cydaris* is translated *Myhr*) was not least in esteem with Kings, seeing it gave the *agmenon* to the *Persian* King *Chedor-Lamer*; albeit the Priests of *Jupiter* and the Sun were in solemnities and noted Sacrifices also permitted to wear it. The Diadem was a Royal Band, saith *Plut. Vita Demetrii*; and properly signifies a Roll or wreathed Head-band: or a silk Ribband wreathed about the forehead, saith *Druſius*; which were first attributed to the *Heavenly* gods, as were Crowns of gold. But in after Ages Diadems were worn by Kings and Sovereign Princes, who instead of Crowns had Maces, which were in no less veneration, Maces by some being worshipped as gods; whence it is that the Images of the *Heathen Deities* usually had Scopets or Maces in their hand, *Jaslin l. 5.* A Wreath of blew and white silk imbroidered with precious stones, which the *Surana* crown'd *Cyrus* with, and then invented. *Diadema erat purpureum, Quint. Curt. lib. 6. Regis cognati Diadema regabant, Xenoph. lib. 3.* The *Myhra* in like sort was an ornament for the head: made of pure fine linien, as we find recorded *Exod. 28. 39.* and of like use as furr'd Caps be with Kings and Princes, when they wear their Crowns. The *Myhr* being put upon *Aaron*'s head, the holy Crown was put upon the *Myhr* *Exod. 29. 6.* and being an ornament for the head, was with little variation worn by Women as well as Men: *Myhra erant capitis ornamenta, mulieribus propria,*

propria, faith Servius in his Comment upon the 9. lib. *Virgil.* *Inter mulieria sunt Myrra, que magis capitis regendi quam ornandi causa, comperta est, qualis Vir sine viuperatione mihi facile non potest.* Rosinus lib. 5. *Antiq. Roman.* The Tiara was little different, being a round Wreath of linne wrapt about the head, worn by Noble Women as well as Men: By Priests also in *Persia;* by the High-Priests among the *Jews,* and by the *Caliphs of Egypt* and *Babylon.* *O Nobilem, magis quam felicem Paxnum,* said King *Antigonus,* intimating the cares folded within the Royal Tiara or Diadem. *Tiara erat lana capitii circumdata,* saith *Plutarch.* The *Cydaris* (as I lately mentioned) was worn by the *Persian Kings* also, and by Princes in that Monarchy; and was the same with the *Tiara.* The Kings resembled a Cap of several pieces of silk of various colours sow'd together, rising straight up with a sharp top, not bending, as those which were worn by inferior Princes in token of subjection. *Cydaris erat fascia cerulea albo distincta,* Qu. Curt. lib. 3. *Cydaris Rex & Regina solummodo gestabant,* Xenoph. lib. 8. So as we see Authors vary in the description and use thereof; and differing from the Diadem, *Id erat Tiara & Cydaris ipsius Regium diadema,* Hieron. Epistola ad Fabiolam, and was usually set upon the King's head by the *Sirena* or principal *Magus* at the Coronation: Which how to understand is submitted to enquiry; and shall conclude with that Ensign of Royalty the King of *Casco in America* wore upon his head at the Entertainment made *Pizarro* the *Spaniard:* It was a red Roll or Wreath of wool finer than silk, which hung upon his forehead as its Diadem, was preferred before gold or precious gems with which those parts did superabound, and which no Subject was permitted to wear, as *Acoſta* relates in his *Indian History.* So that as that attire became distinguishable, in like sort was the Pastoral-staff, which albeit properly attributed to the Flamen or principal *Magus,* Kings nevertheless sometimes used to hold. Now, albeit they never were convertible terms, the *Pontifex* usually deriving his Civil power from the *Regal;* yet in regard Kings (whose charge it is both in Spirituals and Temporals to take care of the People) even amongst the *Genitiles* have oft-times exercised the Sacerdotal function (which amongst the *Jews* after the Law was in some cases sharply reprob'd; as in *Sam.* 13. 13. & 2 *Chron.* 26. 19.) Give me leave therefore to quote *Virgil.* lib. 3. *Aeneas* who sacrificed a white Bull unto *Jupiter;* upon which the Commentator observes, *Tunc erat hic mos ut Reges essent Sacerdores vel Pontifices:* And *La Cerda* likewise, That Princes in old times have sundry times executed the Priestly Office: and concerning which I might instance several examples besides that in sacred Writ of *Melchisedek* who was both King and Priest. But in prophanē take that of *Annius*, who (*Virgil.* lib. 3.) was *Rex idem Hominem Phabiq. Sacerdos.* Whence probably it is that out of *Cicero* and others, our *Rider* in his *Dictionary* notes that *Episcopi aliquando Monarchs appellatur;* which the *Babylonian Caliph* and *Roman Pontifices* by reason of their mixt power and usurpation over the just rights of Sovereign Kings and other Potentates according to my apprehension most resemble. *Calipha est Vicarius, qui & drinxis & humanis praefest,* Scalig. lib. 3. Ifaq. The *Caliphs of Egypt* and *Babylon* were Sovereigns and Regal in their Civil Administrations, and withal exercised the Spiritual preminence and dignity in Rites and Ceremonies, as the *Rex Sacrorum* amongst the *Romans* used. *Fenestel. de Sacerdot. Rom. Summus Pontifex Jud. tripli Corona ornabatur,* Josephus lib. 3. c. 11. which the Pope imitates. *L. cedemonius idem Sacerdos erat & Rex,* Xen. lib. de Repub. Imperatores etiam Summum Pontificatum ad se transfluerunt: And the Emperor of *Muscovy* is attired both in a *Regal* and *Pontifical Habit* or *Vestment,* a Miter being upon his Head and a Crosier in his hand. For (saith Mr. *Fuller*) Kings are lookt upon as mixt Persons, wherein Church and State are blended together; the function of Royalty and Priesthood united, having continued in some Countreys for many Generations. Homer styles *Agamemnon* the Shepherd of his People. *Julius Caesar* affected the High-Priesthood, in regard *Julius* the Son of *Aescanus* exercised the Sacerdotal Office. *Reges tam apud Gracos quam Romanos Sacerdotes fuisse maxissimum est,* Rosin. lib. 3. Am. Rom. Lxv lib. 1. Such is *Prestre-John* the *Ethiopian Rex & Sacerdos,* *Acoſta.* To conclude this, the *Jews* Common-wealth was called *Regnum Sacerdotale.* And albeit the Pastoral-staff in this figure (as I fancy) is *Virga Regalis, Authoritatem habent imperanti;* and as *Marital* adds *Qua ut Pastor baculo, Oves regit.* But enough upon this criticism. The Robe this great Prince wears is long and majestic: towards the skirt are folds as is usually seen in large loose garments; but towards the shoulder somewhat strait like the rich Copes used in Cathedrals, or those worn at the Reception of Ambassadors by the *Magnifico's* in *Venice.* Towards his head a Mace is raised, which was an inseparable adjunct it seems when Princes sat in State; and on either side the King attend several great Persons: on one side the Nobles or *Persian Satraps,* otherwise *Hormomi,* as *Xenophon* styles them; and on the other the *Magi* or Priests. Two Men also wait

wait behind with great Lamps, and some with Rolls of parchments: opposite to them is a Prisoner in chains brought as it were to Tryal by the Marshal, who formally leads the Captive by one hand; the Prisoner by the submiss bending of his body seeming to invite the Court to mercy. Under these is placed a Guard of six ranks of pikes, both Men and Arms in full proportion. Upon the left side of the Throne stand several other Flamens who hold Rolls of parchment in their hands; and upon the right, the Nobles; who wear long hair, have antick garments upon their heads, Bows in their hands, quivers full of long arrows fixt to their right sides, and swords with plain guards unto their left. A select number of Priests and Nobles seem to withdraw apart, and to expostulate or argue somewhat concerning the Prisoner; who by this noble appearance and manner of proceeding may be conceived to be some Person of Eminency: but who he was, the mysterious Characters there engraven can best discover. And yet seeing some imagine this structure was raised by the direction of *Cyrus* the Magnificent, (who ruled *circa A.M. 3400.* and whose supreme Officer the Prophet *Daniel* for some time was) it may without offence be presumed *Daniel*; who when he was the President or Chief of the hundred and twenty Princes mentioned in *Dan. 6. 2.* by the envy or rather conspiracy of those *Ethiopic* Princes or Governors he was accused for worshipping God, contrary to that impious Decree of *Darius*; for which he was arraigned, condemned and cast into the Den of Lions. Otherwise it may represent *Cresus* that unfortunate *Lydian* King; who being deluded by the *Oracles-amphibology* engaging against the *Persian*, became *Cyrus* his prisoner; and had suffered, but by calling upon *Solomon* in that his lamentable condition: For seeing *Belshazzar* the last *Affyrian* Mornarch (to whose subversion *Cyrus* principally contributed) was slain, it cannot properly represent that great Conquest and Revolution.

About a large Stones cast thence over continued heaps of rubbish, wherein doubtless are buried many rare pieces of Art, is a void space, in which as my thoughts prompted that famous Temple stood which was dedicated to *Diana* there called *Anaya*; in its time reputed next to that at *Ephesus* the most curious piece throughout the World. At the East-end there rises a Hill or Rock; upon part of which, about fifty foot from the ground in like Sculpture is the figure of a King, who with erected hands seems to adore the rising Sun. Near which, so well as my sight would serve at such a distance, I fancied that I saw the Fire and a Serpent engraven: which being most obvious to wind and weather, is most worn and least perspicible. The lifting up of the hands in worship has of long time been a posture also amongst *Heathen*, *Omnis homines preces facturi manus ad Calum tollant*, saith *Aristotle libro de Mondo*: *Duplices ad sydera palmas, Ovidius: And Supinas ad Calum cum voce manus, Virgil*. Moreover, that the *Persians* of old were *Polytheists* may be proved by these three Idols. For albeit the grand *Pagoda* by being the tutelary *Numen* of the place was in most repute; the Fire nevertheless was their principal Deity, for with them it represented Omnipotency; as the Sun the Hieroglyphick of Eternity; and the Serpent, Time's revolution and sagacity: Which last was worshipped by the *Ophites*; and both that and Trees were had in Divine estimation by the *Indians* in honour of *Liber Pater* and *Esculapius*, as we are informed by *Alex. ab Alexandria*. The Serpent and Fire in like sort were adored by the *Lithuanians* of old, and Trees also: *Lithuanii ab origine celebant Numina, Ignem, Sylvos, & Serpentes, quos venerabantur, Munster + lib. Cosmogr.* Besides these, they had several Elementary gods; for as *Herodotus* in his first Book relates, *Soli, Luna, Igni, Telluri, Aque, & Veneti, Perse sacrificant, &c.* They worshipped the Sun, Moon, Fire, Earth, Water and Winds; yet had neither Temples, Images nor Altars, so writes *Herodotus* in his first Book; albeit *Strabo* and others say the contrary; and by their Reliques it appears they had; yea, *Plutarch Vita Artax.* mentioned their invoking *Juno, Pluto* and other *Grecian* Deities for the health of his wife *Atois, i. Esther*.

Scarce ten yards distant from these, but upon the same declivity or front of the Mountain, in like sculpture is figured the Image of their grand *Pagoda*; a *Demon* of as uncouth and ugly a shape as well could be imagined; and if reverenced by those wretches, sure it was not in love, but rather with a *Ne noxat*, base fear too often drawing dastardly spirits into vile subjection. It is of a gigantick size or magnitude, standing as upright as his deformed posture will permit, discovering a most dreadful visage 'twixt Man and Beast: Under his chin is a large maw or other thing like unto a fætchel; but for what use, 'tis a question whether the Sculptor understood it. This monster has seven several arms on either side (as if descended from *Briareus*,) and instead of hands he stretches forth his vultures claws, his body being somewhat distorted. What the meaning of these seven arms should be, is hard to guess: But according to my fancy, they

may signify on the one side the terrene power and dominion those Kings had over so many Kingdoms or Provinces; and the other, a mylterious type of the seven great Planets which the *Perſians* had in adoration, *Deos enim illos esse septem Planetas quos Animates credidit Antiquitas*, saith *Pofellus*. And albeit this *Paged* is to form be most terrible to behold, yet in old times it seems they gave it reverence; and to qualifie the dreadfulness of the figure, those more recent tell us that it represents the greatest Prince *Perſia* ever had, both in reference to extent of Empire and to the power he had over Infernal Spirits whom by magick Spells he used to bind and loose as he listed; so great a *Necromancer* do they feign *Jamſheat* to have been. According to the course of their Stories he lived about an hundred years after *Kiomarras*: whom some imagine to be that *Kidor-Laomer* Kitter in the *Hebrew*, so called from the *Kidaris* or Royal Cap he wore) vanquished by the Patriarch *Abraham*. But having occasion in several places to remember this *Jamſheat*, here I shall say no more.

Upon the King's left side are placed a stand of pikes: opposite to which in a little lower station is placed a Man who by his posture and garb appears to be in a distretted condition; for albeit he be in the presence of the King, he seems nevertheless to expostulate with some principal Officers; and either from guilt or else upon view of that deformed monſter to be in ſome kind of afflonition fo well as the Sculpтор's *genus* and hand could humour it. Below the guard are twenty Flamens placed; ſome of which with their hands point upwards towards the King, others towards the Sun, and the reſt downwards towards the Temple of *Anaya*. Two ranks of other Flamens, fifteen in each rank are placed on each ſide the Altar; who by their nimnick gestures and elevation and conjuſtione of hands exprefs their *Epinicia* by this mode and manner of rejoicing; unleſs it were an antique form of worlhip which probably they then uſed unto their *Pagods*. Some of theſe have their faces towards the King, who alſo had his share of adoration; but others turn their backs glancing ſide-ways upon the *Paged*, whom in this daunce they half environ. Lower are figured eighteen or twenty Lions in a row, every couple looking towards one another. In the lowermoſt place oppofite under the Altar is a door, or rather mouth of a Cave, which gives entrance into the Chappel that is ſupported by pillars. Mr. *Skinner* (who travelled thoſe parts more lately) affures me it is yet open and remaining in the ſame condition I have deſcribed.

Near theſe are the remains of a large Sepulchre or Coffin of ſtone, presumed to be the dormitory of ſome remarkable though unknown Person: for both the Villagers thereabouts are ſilent in it; and 'tis the leſt inquirable, ſeeing that it was the cuſtom of the Monarchs of *Perſia* to have their Corps let down into deep holes or pits purpoſely bored within the ſides of Mountains; as this day appear abundantly by the ſignals upon the Hills about *Perſepolis*, where the Bodies of the greateſt number of thoſe that preceded *Alexander* the Great were interred, as I haſh hereafter note. About a bowſhoot hence to the Southward upon the Plain or lower ground is a high Column in perfection; but of what uſe at ſuch a diſtance I apprehend not.

To conclude; for *In magnis voluisse ſat eſt*, This is the ſum of what I have to ſay relating to this unparalleled Antiquity and (when in perfection) incomparable Structure, which has fo far the preceſcency, that *Don Garcias de Sybra Figuroa* (Ambaſſador A.D. 1619. to *Shaw Abbas* from *Philip the Third of Spain*) upon his view, not onely prefers it before all he ſaw at *Rome*, but concludes That it is undoubtedly the only Monument in the World at this day extant without impaure; yea, far exceeding (faith he) all other Miracles of the Earth we can either ſee or hear of at this day. Give me leave therefore to add, That here (where I may ſay *Matcriam ſuperabat Opus*, the Materials are rich but much more estimable the Workmanſhip) Nature and Art ſeem to conſpire towards the creating amazement and pleasure both in ſenſe and Intellect; the preſent ruines reſtraining ſuch a maſtrey as not only exprefs the Founder's magnificence, but in the beholding ſtrike a ſenſible impression (if not of veneration yet) of admiration; in ſuch eſpecially as haue a due eſteem of Silver-hair'd Antiquity. Is it not therefore great pity that ſome Illuſtrious Prince or other Noble Person valuing rarities, has not e're this ſent ſome Painter or other like Artist to take a full and perfect draught of this fo ancient Monument? the rather, ſeeing that the Inhabitants of *Shyraz*, but principally the Villagers at *Mardash* and other People thereabouts put no value upon it; but contrariety (finding that albeit ſometimes they gain, yet moſt times they loſe by free-quarter of *Soldars* and others who out of meer curioſity repair thither,) in barbarous manner ſpare not to deface and tear asunder what they can in ſight, and under preſtice of ſerving their common occasions; albeit by the Dukes of *Shyraz* they haue at fundry times been puniſhed for it; in fo much as theſe rude Rufficks haue barbarian-like done it
more

more spight, than either length of time, injury of weather or hostile rage ever could effect. *Non tempus edax rerum, non terra-mors, nec hostiles injurie tot seculorum spacio, soliditatem eius adfici corvellere potuerunt.* Num ex rupe solida vel ex quadratis marmorum faxis ita compatum est, ut ex uno lapide videatur, & vix justuras offendit, saith an Oberver. Nevertheless, I may here with thankfulness acknowledge, how that upon my proposing it some years since unto that great *Mecanus* of antiquity the late noble Lord *Thom. Earl of Arundel*; He was so sensible therof, as to that end he dispatched a Youth thither whom Mr. *Norgate* recommended to his Lordship for one he knew could both design and copy well: But I hear he died by the way at or near *Sara*, before he could reach *Perse*; so as that worthy endeavour became frustrate. To proceed.

Little more than a mile hence is *Mardagh*, which in a *Spanish* reporter I find writ *Margatean*, and in an *Italian* *Mebricascon*, very much differing from the right pronuncier. Tis a Village consisting of near two hundred Housles, such as they be; the People, &c. which place were so tranſcenſtly ſuperſtitious, that (upon notice we were *Christians* and not *Muſlimes* according to their *Alcoran*) what ground we trod or what places we entred, at our departure they lifted alies and duff, apprehending we had polluted the earth by reaſon of our profession; which being done in our fight made us ſome paſtime. This and the Neighbouring Villages for that they are watered by Aquaducts forced from the River *Kur* or *El-Chyr*, over which upon the *Bindemyr*, a Bridge is called, we rode in the way from *Shyras* to *Persepolis* ſeen very delightful places; the Gardens and Fields by that refreshment appearing at moſt ſalons extraordinaſy pleafant and fruitful in variety of Flowers and Fruits and Corn. Nevertheless by thole ſluces (the mode of thofe parts) the main Channell is ſo strained, that in ſeveral places 'tis very hardly diſcernable.

Northwards about three *English* miles from *Chyl manor* at the foot of that Mountain which verges towards *Persepolis*, in like ſculpture is carved the figure of a Giant which the *Perſians* ſay is the representation of *Rufstan*: which may the better be credited ſeeing that in his memory the place is called *Nogdi*, or as ſome pronounce *Nalci Rufstan*, &c. *Rufstan's Monument*. This *Rufstan* was a Heroe celebrated in the old Annals of *Perſia* which thofe modern times preferre but by tradition: ſo that uncertain it is what age he lived in; but as I gathered afterwards at *Spahawn* when I went to ſee his Tomb, was in or about the reign of that great *Ariæxerxes* or *Ahahuerus* who took to Wife *Hester the Jew*, in whofe Wars 'tis likely he was ſome Eminent Commander; concerning whofe Strength and acts, Romance-like they report wonders. Nigh thiſ upon the ſame Hill the Images of ſeveral Women and Maidens are carved; one of which they ſay is the figure of *Rufstan's* Earthly goddefſ; of whofe Amours and adventures which like a Knight Errant he performed for her fake, the *Perſians* tell many pleafant ſtories: As alſo, how by the corrivalship of *Sha-gad* his faire friend, *Rufstan* was deſtroy'd by falling into a pit covered with boughs and Earth; whence nevertheless with a dart he ſlew his adversary, ſuch time as he look'd down into the pit to inſult over *Rufstan* by way of triumph.

No far thence (where the Mountain in like manner is made ſmooth and even) are two other large figures of Giants on horseback. The one has the Royal *Tiara* upon his head with long crifped hair dangling under it; and upon his ſhoulders that royal Veſt which the Sovereign Princes wear, as elſewhere deſcribed: In his left hand is a Club with Iron spikes at the end, nou unlike that which Painters usually give to *Hercules*. Oppoſite to this is the other Chevalier, who wears a like Veſt upon his Body, with hair upon his head of equal length, but bare-headed. The horses in their poſtures face each other, as do the Riders; who with their right hands ſtretched on high lay hold upon a round ring, ſeeming to contend about it; and either to force it from each other, or break it auſter. This probably is a ſymbol or embleme of that great Empire; and repreſents to all Generations that great confeſt for the Mōnarchy of the World, which happened betwixt *Darion* and *Alexander*, or otherwife that 'twixt *Cyrus* and *Ariæxerxes*.

In another place upon the precipice of the Hill is the effigies of another Gigantine perfon, little different in habit; and mounted upon a like *Buccipalus*. Within his right hand he holds a Sword not ſo hooked as the *Demasco*, nor ſo cloſe-guarded as ours: and with his left out-stretched he graps a Foot-man that ſeems to oppoſe him; backt by another Camrade bare-headed, who by this conqueſt over his Fellow, in ſubmiſſion manner by the bowing of his body ſeems to beg the Horse-man's mercy. There are ſeveral other Images carved in that Mountain, which are laſting Monuments, and very well worth a Travellers notice: but theſe I lately named are the principal. Now whether theſe ſtupendious Monuments may have been made by the direcſion of ſome *Perſian* Potentate, or of *Alexander the Great* who had moſt pleasure in that kind of often-tation,

tation, and *Lysippus* the most expert Statuary in the World at that time marching with his Army? Or whether they were formerly cut by the directions of that mighty Monarch *Nabucodonosor* the *Hercules* of the East; or precedent to him by the appointment of *Semiramus*, which last (as *Diod. Siculus* l. 2. *Jolephus ex Beroco contra Appion*, and other Historians relate) in *Chaldea*, *Media* and *Persia* to express her greatness, but especially to eternalize her fame, planted Gardens, dissected Mountains, raised Bridges, and upon high Places caused her own *Effigies* and her Husband's to be engraven; *Bastigan Alons ist Media apud quem Semiramis in petra septendecim stadiorum, suam effigiem insculpsit, et Rhod.* l. 29. c. 2.¶ There she made a Garden 12 furlongs in compass, and upon a Mountain 17 fui longs high caused her figure to be cut, with 100 others presenting her with gifts; and upon a Marble Rock caused it to be writ in *Syriack* letters to this effect, *A Semiramida subdistrorum opere, istud sarcum excisum est*, *Munster lib. 5. Cosmogr.* At *Chaona* or *Coom* in *Media* upon a like high Mountain that raised it self in the midst of a large Champagne ground, he caused other very stately Gardens and Houses of delight to be erected; and to the intent she might from thence have a perfect view of that great Army of Horse and Foot which she had raised and was marching with into *India*, being (as *Suidas* reports) three millions of Foot, one million of Horse, one hundred thousand Chariots and the like number of Camels for fight, and 20000 more Camels that had the baggage of the Army, and carried 300000 raw hides for wathing her Army over the River *Indus*, resolving (but in vain) to make *Semiramis* the *Indian* King a Vassal of her *Babylonian* Empire. Upon the *Tarcian* Mountains near *Ecbatane* she left another Monument of her power, by cutting a passage through it for the Army, *Diod. Siculus lib. 5. cap. 5.* not only to the wonder of those times, but admiration of succeeding Ages: which partly out of base flattery, but principally out of fear the People first reputed Idols, and then worshipped, but whether I am not able to determine; and therefore leave it to the further judgment of some future Traveller, who in these things may have a better *Genius*, contending my self only with the prospect and relation. At *Car. moon-Shahroon* a mountain near unto *Puliy-sha*, in the way twixt *Spabann* and *Bagdat*, the like curiosities are cut, and in all probability during the time these were erected. At *Hamadan* also the like; and in some other parts of *Persia*; which being engraven upon the solid stone, at so great height, and not upon the declivity, but hollow'd within the precipice of those Mountains, endures the violence of wind and weather, and 'tis likely to continue as it is, while the Rock it self lasteth. But to return.

Upon either side of this Mountain near *Ceilmanor*, especially that which respects the South, the Rock is cut smooth; and upwards above a hundred foot high in it are cut or pierced several holes, some being of larger size than other: the least is three foot square: Also in the side of the Hill some perspectives are engraven, or at least designed. Now seeing that *Diod. Siculus* and other Writers of those times acquaint us, That when the *Persian* Kings had the Sovereign command of the World, their Sepulchers or Burial-places were not in Cemeteries where Graves were usually made; but in deep holes purposely digged within the Rock or Marble Mountains about *Persepolis*, whereto the Corps (after they were embalmed) were let down by long cords or other engines fitted for that purpose: So as for the performing that last office, there was no ascending without a ladder, which was only reared upon such solemn occasions. For proof whereof, that Story of *Darius Hystaspis* mentioned by *Cesius* in his History of *Persia* is pertinent and remarkable; which King having in his life time prepared in the Hill joyning *Persepolis* his own Sepulchre, was very desirous to be let down to see the place where his Body should be laid; but the *Magi* dissuaded him, as being ominous: nevertheless the King's Parents (no less curious of the sight) were by the Priests let down with ropes, but in the descent so terrified with hideous apparitions, that letting go their hold they were killed by the fall, for which disaster 40 of the Priests by the King's severe decree were put to death. The *Egyptians* of old had the like Sepulchres in deep Caves or Vaults thirty foot under ground, curiously cut into the solid Rock, and at the bottom parted into several Chambers, where the embalmed Corps were laid; as by the Mummies frequently found there is apparent. In *Thebes* also (which *Strabo* calls *Diopolis*) i. e. *Touis civitas*: not that near *Joppa*) are like Graves, wherein are interred above 40 of the *Egyptian Dynasts* and Kings, which there have their Sepulchres; for to bury the Dead was accounted impious, but being imbalmed they laid them in some private room within their house, saith *Pomponius*. Albeit it is not to be doubted how that this custom continued not many Ages, nor was practised amongst all sorts of People; but during the time those Princes grasped the Scepter of the Universe, and with those only that were of highest Quality: For, when the *Greeks* subverted this Monarchy, this mode was left, and

and that People conformed to the *Greeks* customs ; as appears by that stately Funeral *Ephesian* had, and also that other of *Alexander* himself ; where the Corps were neither interred in these deep holes, nor burnt with fire ; but embalmed, confined, and kept after the manner of the *Egyptians*. Nor doth it appear what manner of Funeral *Stauru* the Wife of *Alexander* and Daughter of the last *Darius* had ; whether according to the manner of the *Macedonians* or *Persians* : For albeit *Justin*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Quintus Curtius*, and *Aelian* make mention of her Burial, and of the Burial of *Darius* ; yet in what manner, or in what place they were interred, (albeit neither pomp nor cost was spared, nor the presence of the Conquerour himself wanting for the greater honour of the Obsequy) those Historians are altogether silent.

Besides these upon the same Mountains some pieces of Perspective are elaborately and regularly cut, resembling the noblest sort of ancient structure. The lowest door or place of entrance is open, and as if it were to be ascended by steps : on either side the door are placed flat pilasters which sustain the Architrave and other superstructure. Towards the summit are other doors shut ; and the whole imbellished with a few portraits of Men, which serve for ornament, something conform to that *Templum Solis* which long after by *Aurelian* the Emperour was erected upon Mount *Quirinal* in *Rome*, as exprest by *Laurus*. Upon the culmen has been a *Pagod*, which the Inhabitans thereabouts say was *Jamshet* or *Shem-phid* he that succeeded *Ouchang*, and he *Syamec* the Son of *Keyomaraz* who ruled *Persia* circa A.M. 2000, and was contemporaneous with the Patriarch *Jacob*, six hundred years before the destruction of *Troy*, than which (some presume to aver) no Monument in the World precedes in time ; *Nulum ante Trojam tempora Monumentum apud illos Isteris mandarum vel sculptum fuerat* : In which we ought not to be positive.

About three hundred paces Southward from *Chilmanor* there is a single Column, entire from base to capital ; but being so low and without company, it is not easie to conjecture of what use it was. The pedestals of two other Columns square in form are seen at no great distance thence ; but uncertain what sort of Column they bore, seeing there is an empty hole in one of them, which some think served as an Urn to keep the ashes of some dead Bodies that were burned.

Some space from the Mountain towards the Valley, are several Coffins or troughs of stone ; some whole, but most broken : in which one may presume dead Corpses have been laid. There are moreover the reliques of some Tanks or Conservatories of water, towards which one may discern the Aqueduct or water-passage was cut through from the top of the Mountain : so as by a pipe what rain-water fell at any time from the clouds was convey'd down into the Cisterns. And with good reason ; for albeit the City *Persepolis* had the benefit of the River lately mentioned, yet the Building expatiated most towards the North-east, which was towards the Palace. Certain it is, to great a distance needed these helps (wanting Springs) the better to feed their places of pleasure, as Orchards, Gardens, Grots, &c. which the City had plenty of, and those very large ones. The only ruin that remains of building in that part the City stood, is a spacious square, which had but one door for entrance. The walls are high and latting ; for they are of extraordinary large pieces of Marble. And albeit the cement of these that joyns the stones is visible ; yet of what substance the single column is, I lately mentioned, I somewhat doubt, seeing 'tis so high and differing from the colour of that quarry, and by the curiosity of the cement seeming as if it were one piece of stone : so that the little time I staid there would not suffer me to satisfie my self whether it was natural or artificial. Howbeit since upon second thoughts I suppose it may be such plaister as in old time was made of flower with whites of eggs and the best sort of stone beaten into powder, with which the outsides of some softer materials was usually finished or pargett'd : And of such a composition was that *Piscina mirabilis* near *Cuma*, which for colour and durableness even in those times gained admiration. To proceed now in our Travel.

The eight and twentieth day of *March* we put foot in stirrop, and that night rode four and twenty miles to a Town called *Moy-own*. In the mid-way 'twixt those 2 Towns I observed a Hill, upon whose top (as the ruins shewed) hath stood a Castle so advantageously situated by Nature, as we judged was impregnable. A late rebellious *Sadru* manned it against *Abbas* his Sovereign, who (to terrifie others) came in person to reduce it. But such was the *Sultan's* resolution, such the height where the Castle stood, so narrow the entrance, and so desperately defended, that in six months siege he had but little hopes of taking it. Loth he was to draw off ; and what stratagem to use could not suddenly devise : At length he goes this way to work ; a reward was promised to any would effect it. What force could not do, Magick (at least of Gold) perpetrates : For an old

old Wizard (covetous of gain) promises his best; and accordingly by spells so perplexed the deluded Sultan, that upon the Witches assurance of fair quarter he descends; but the Block rewarded him. *Abbas* acknowledges the Enchanter merited his price: But while the Wizard dotes upon his gold, he sees not that danger was at hand; for the King judging the loss, and knowing no better way to recover it but for being a Witch, sends him to *Satan* without his head; making that the occasion of his justice, which but a little before he held useful, though then disliked it. To return.

Moyown (a Town of note upon the road betwixt *Slyraz* and *Spahawn*) is very delightfully seated; enriched also with sweet Water, excellent Wine, plenty of Wood, store of Gras, and diaper'd with Nature's Carpets. It belongs to their highly honoured Prophet *J-mal*, whose Tomb in a well-built *Machis* called *Emoom J-mal* is here seen; considerably endow'd through the liberality of many Princes and Great Men: For towards its maintenance yearly twelve thousand *mawnd-shaw* of Rice, and four thousand of Barley is allow'd. Next night we lodged (slept I cannot say, we were so vexed with *Mef-nito's*) in *O-one*, a Village consisting of thirty Families; most of them Prophets or Prophets Children. We still found least profit, where such Prophets dwelt, seeing they drunk no Wine, nor were Grapes allow'd to grow amongst them: Not that Wine there is held bad, but from some Tradition, and probably that it is the Blood of those Giants who warred against the *Heathen* Deities. Nor was the Water in their Tancks so wholesome as might merit commendation; albeit the Conservatory was as good as any we saw till then; being large, and plastered with a composition of lime and sand with some glutinous matter (as I apprehended) which made it both large and smooth; so that it seemed to be no other than natural stone, and better than what we call *Plaister of Paris*. Such were the Cisterns or Tancks in old *Rome* as *Pliny* tells us: and of like Art were those slender Marble Columns our fore-fathers have seen cast or made for Cathedrals structures; reckon'd *in rebus perditis* by *Pancirollus*.

Next day we rode over some craggy and steep Hills, and at night made *Tartang* our *Manzel*: A small Town most remarkable in a *Mishbit*, wherein we beheld a Monument or Tomb which was raised a pretty height from the ground, and cover'd with violet coloured Velvet; under which lies buried a Great Uncle of the Kings. Next night we came to *Assepose*, a place observable only in an old Castle, which was sometimes a *Garrison*: in and about which inhabit (as we were told) no fewer than forty thousand *Garrisoners* and *Servantes*, who by profession are *Christians*; albeit little better than captives, being forcibly transplanted hither. They are a People have Saint *George* the *Cappadocian* Bishop in veneration, being their Patron. From *Mahometans* they differ; not in habit nor mode, but in their gray eyes, a great argument of heat, sayes *Aristotle*, as black is of the contrary, the colour of most *Persians*, and have long white hair which after the mode of those antick Gallants recorded by *Pliny* and *Lucian* they wear tressed with fillets of silk and gold or silver. If any of these (which is too often turn *Mahometan*, they are *ipso facto* preferred beyond vulgar merit. Poor Souls! hearing that we were *Christians*, they not only flockt about us, but wept to see us: Nor wanted we bowels of compassion to behold *Christian* in such miserable thralldom and condition, and under such temptations. Nor far distant hence is *Thymar*; memorable (if *Byzar* err not) in an ancient monument, by some *Hebrew* Characters supposed to be the burial-place of *Bethsheba* the Mother of King *Solomon*: which probably may be mistaken for *Bethhemesh*, which signifies a House dedicated to the Sun: Howbeit 'tis called *Archu Zulimen*, i.e. *Solomon's Chappel*, a place (if truly so) well worthy seeing.

Next night we lay in *Whongebz*; next in *Cuzenaz*; next we came to *Bazra-chow*, and next to *Degardow*: Eight leagues from which place (and near *Tezdecawz*) we rode over a mountain of black Marble, (where doubtless are quarries of *Serpentine* and *Porphyry*, if the earth were examined;) the descent was precipitous; so that save by ragged steps, and those not a little dangerous, was no riding down. Out of this part of the *Persian* mountains the River *Rhogomana* springs; which having watered *Slyraz*, runs into the *Persian* Gulph. Howbeit, down we got, and that night rode to *Gumbazellello*; a Village famous for a *Caravans-rav*, and for the best Wheat-bread in *Persia*. Next night we came to *Tezdecawz*, a Town which stands pleasantly in a narrow Valley, the ground on each side declining gently, so as no Hill appears near it, the countrey round about for some miles being even and Champain: It is hardly to be seen or found till very near the place, did not a Castle point it out which was built by *Tezdeyrd* a *Persian* King above the Town long since, as this Name partly intimates. Here is a very flatly *Caravans-rav*, the belt from thence to *Bander* on the *Gu'ph* of *Persia*.

Next day (passing through *De-Moxalbeg*) we got to *Amno-baut*, by some called *Boyall*; a Village of thirty Families, most being Apostate Georgians; inclosed (to exclude their shame) by a high, strong and round wall with Battlements, which makes it to resemble a Castle, albeit a Village. It is commanded by *Daut* as they call *David-Chawn* Brother to the Duke of *Sheraz*; who for his Apostasy was made an *Eparch*, and honoured with three temporal Titles, but purchased it may be with loss of an eternal Happiness. Here is a neat Caravans-raw and Banqueting-Houses for his own delight: that I went into had five rooms upon a floor, which were well painted with Imagery, and embossed with gold. The Gardens were formed into good order; and being the Spring which as *Virg. 2. lib. Georg.* saith, makes all things fair; amongst other flowers were Tulips and Roses of several colours: So as of Hous and Gardens I may say,

*With various forms and curious figures, there
The House and Gardens of Daut-Chawn appear.* ————— *Varias ibi picta per artes
Gaudet humus, superantq[ue] novis Daut-Chowna figuris.*



From *Amno-baut* we rode next day to *Commeshaw*, a Town boasting in a thousand Houses, and especially in its great Antiquity. The name it now bears varies not much from *Connechan* (or *Cannaxa*, which some make to be but three thousand and sixty furlongs

furlongs from *Babylon*) where that memorable battel twixt *Artaxerxes* and his Brother *Cyrus* was fought, whose death is attributed to the Inhabitants of this City. It may be (some think) either that same Town which *Pliny* called *Parodona*, or *Ore-bars* in *Prolo-*
my. Sir *Robert Sherley* was once Commander of this place, under that wicked parricide and Apollate Prince *Confandek-chawm*; but it seems they bore small love to either of their memories; neither vouchslating to bid him or us welcome (as most Towns did we hi-
thero pass through, although I have omitted to speak the Ceremonies,) nor any ac-
commodation there, though due to so noble a passenger. At this place *Perzia* is bound-
ed towards the North; for here *Ayrac* or *Partia* takes beginning. *Corraf*, *Garden-*
achow, *Norwengian*, *Kazeron*, *Pheruhabad*, *Eftache*, *Nabandion*, are Towns in *Farsistan*,
which in this course I can but name: Yet that you may the better go along, and for that
the lateſt Maps of *Perzia* are inconſis- both in Rivers, ſituation of places, and true
names of Towns (for to ſpeak truly, none at all I have ſeen, either thoſe ſet forth by
Hondius *Ortelius* or *Mercator* &c with the Copy, have five right names,) I have
therefore inserted this of the *Persian Empire*: in whil, I preſume, neither the poſition
of places are much miſtaken, nor the names of Towns in the leaſt uſtilious.

The next day we got to *Moyor*, a conderable Town, for it conſifted of about a thousand Houles: And albeit their Houſes were neat, yet were they in no wife compa-
rable to their Dove houſes for curious outides. This ſation thy give; ſome of them
Cas Tradition peruelses at leaſt Yare defended (not à *Columba Nor*, but) from thoſe
who being taught to feed at *Malamet*'s ear, not a little advanced his reputation, per-
ſuading therby the ſimple People they communicated to him intelligence from ſome An-
gel. Yet I rather thinke 'tis in memory of *Seriram*, who (as *Birofus* relates;) was in
her infancy nourished, and at her deatht trānsformed into a Dove; for which caufe the
Syrians and other Oriental Nations (the Jews excepted;) to this day haue that bird in
more than ordinary eſteem amoungſt them. The *Huſtens* alſo believing that their god-
deſt *Venus* was hatcht by a Dove which ſat on an Egg, that fell from i leaven into *Eu-*
phrates, and by Fillies rolled on Land, as *Jul. Higmanus* hath it in his *Fables*, haue it in equal
eſtimacion. Next night we were bi ought to *pahawne* by a Servant of *Meloyembeg*, the
King's Fiscal; who intreated the Amballadour to repole a day or two tunc, till *Spa-*
hawn could ſit it ſelf for their more ſolemn Reception. Where in this *interim* we may
remember, That moft of thoſe Manzeſts we haue paſt from *Chebelminor* to this place,
are twixt twenty and thirty miles afunder. The whole diſtance is ſomewhat above 200
English miles, as I computed.

The morn of April v. left *Spahawn* a Village ſix miles South from *Spahawn*: when we had gone a ſarſon furthe, we were invited to a Collation prepared in one of the King's Gaſtes, that was by the high-way, whither the *English* Agent and ſuch other *European* Merchants as were Residentialies in *Spahawn* came to express their civilitieſ unto the Amballadour. A mile neare the City, the *Vifier*, the *Sultan* of *Spahawn*, *Me-*
loyembeg and *Hodge-nazar* the *Armenian* Prince in a Cavalcade of about four thouſand
Houſe and innumerable Foot, came out to meet us; The high-way for full 2 miles from
the Town was full of Men, Women and Children: here alſo we found the *Bannyan* in
great numbers; who all together all the way, in a volley of acclamations welcomed us
with *Holjmondy Soffwardy*, the better fort with *Holjgaldom Soffogaldom*; in our Lan-
guage, *Welcome, welcome, Heartily welcome*, which with the Ketile-drums, Fifes, Ta-
brets, Timbrels, dancing-Wenches, *Hocus-pocus*'s, and other anticks paſt my remem-
brance; but according to the cuſtom of thoſe Countreys, ennobled the entertainment.
The Bridge alſo over which we paſt into the City was, in like manner full of Women on
both ſides; many of which equally coveting to ſee and to be ſeen, in a fair deportment
unmaſqued their faces. The firſt place we alighted at was *Comra-polshaug*, a Houſe of
the King's at the West ſide of the *Mydan*, where ſome of the Noble-Men kneeld down
and Telleſem'd, three times kiffing the King's threſhold, and as oft knocked their heads
in a culloinary obſcenitie; agreeable to what *Q. Curtius l.5.* relates was the mode of thoſe
times, *Persicos Reges adorantes imprimis genuflecebat, tunc proin incubentes in terram fronte*
humum feriebant ac terram oculabatur; they gave their Kings external adoration. Sir
Robert Sherley (who was well acquainted with the formalities of thoſe parts, and in all
places habited like a *Persian*) liueded alſo, which made him the more to be reſpected.
A *Cofebash* concluded the Ceremony in a Panegyric, That the excellency of *Sham-Abbas*
had attracted a Prince and other Gentlemen from the extremitie angle of the World to
fee whether Fame had been partial in the report of his magnificence; but no wonder,
ſince his beams ſpread themſelves over all the Univerſe! That done, Bottles of pure
Wine were lauſhied out; after which, with a continued clamor of the Plebeians thereby
expressing

expressing their joy, we were conducted to another House of the King's, which was at the South-east end of the City, through which a broad sluice of Water had its course into the *Zinderon*, which made our lodging the more delightful.

The fourth day after our being in *Spaharn*, Mr. *Burt* the English Agent, and a very accomplished Merchant feasted our Ambassador, expressing a very noble entertainment and hearty welcome; where, according to the mode of *Persia*, there was store of odorous Flowers and sweet Water; agreeable to the old custom mentioned by *Plutarch* in the life of *Artaxerxes*, where the King entertaining *Amalekias the Lacedemonian*, circled his brows with a Garland of Flowers wet with molt sweet and precious oyls, which perfumed the place. At night a large Tanck of Water was surrounded with lighted Tapers, artificially uniting two contrary Elements; Squibs also and other Fire-works, for the more honour of the Feast; such as made the *Persians* admire. Next day *Hodge-nazar* the *Armenian* Prince was visited by the Amballadour at his House in *Jelpeha*: A *Christian* he professes himself; but (I must be bold to say) his House was furnished with such beastly Pictures, such ugly postures as indeed are not fit to be remembred: For God calleth not unto uncleanness, but to Holines. Yet forasmuch as he professed himself a *Christian*, that golden saying in *Sedulius lib. 2.* is fit to be writ upon his Wall, *Dens semper adeſt*. As also that which the Prophet *Jeremiah* declares ch. 44. ver. 4. in the odium of that *infandum peccatum*, *It is abominable, for the Lord hateth it*. Yea, *Seneca a Heathen* hath this excellent saying, *Si sciret homines ignoraturos & deos ignoscituros, non peccarem tamen propter peccati vilitatem*: If I knew that Men could not see, nor the gods punish, yet would I forbear sinning for the loathsomeſſ of Sin. *Plato* hath the like, That he would do nothing in ſecret wherof he ſhould be abhamed in publick. *Nec (faith Cicero) ſiquidem deos omnes celare poſſimus*: No, albeit it were poſſible to conceal our ſins from the gods. Pity then it is theſe *Christians* living amonſt Infidels are fo paſt shame, being a powerful restraint to keep Men from ſin; without which they abancon themſelves to all manner of debauchery. For, faith *Pythagoras*, *Nihil turpe committas neque coram aliis, nec tecum; maxime omnium verere teipſum*; Do no ſordid act that either others or thy ſelf mayeſt know; and principally let thy own conſcience be regarded. But to return: Amongſt other our cates, I took moſt notice of a roſted Pig; in regard it was the firſt we ſaw in *Persia*; and is meat equally offenſive to *Jew* and *Mahometan*. The flagons and bowls in his Houſe were all of gold: Vials of ſweet Water for perfume, and glaſes of *Shyraz*. Wine were emptied for our better entertainment.

Theſe *Georgians* and *Armenians* are by ſome called *Jelphelyns*, from a Suburb adjoyning this City; but rather in memory of their Metropolis which bears that name near *Ararat*, called *Ariamnes* by *Tortellus*. The *Georgians* are the ancient Inhabitants of that Countrey, and have a little intermixture with other Nations. The ſoil is moſt part mountainous, much reſembling *Helvetia* where the *Switzers* live. From the tops of ſome Hills they can diſcover (at leaſt as they ſuppoſe) the *Euxine* and *Cafpiān* Seas. They derive their name either from St. *George* their Patron, or from the *Gordian* Hills on which they inhabit; albeit the *Greeks* derive them from the word *χωρι*, for that they are Husbandmen, but called *Iberia* formerly. And indeed the goodnes of God is herein to be acknowledged, in as muſh as theſe *Georgians* with their Neighbours the *Carcas* and other *Armenians* continue their *Christian* profesſion, albeit they are ſufficiently threatened in that reſpect by *Turk*, *Tartar* and *Persian* who environ them, and tell them that all *Natolia* and thoſe other Countreys that lie betwixt the *Euxine* and *Mediterranea*, albeit they were once altogether inhabited by *Christians*, are now overspread with thoſe that embrace the *Alcoran*. They were interdicted Communion with the *Orthodox* by *Dioscorus* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; nevertheless under *Sapores*, added to the Army triumphant, 2000. Martyrs. At *Albanopolis* Saint *Bartholomew* was buried, the *So-phorus*. Some call them *Iberi*, and ſuppoſe that from them deſcends the *Spaniard*. *Con. Porphyrius* (if rightly informed) deduces theſe *Georgians* from *David* and *Bathſeba*; but that pedigree I ſuppoſe will be but badly proved. By profesſion they are now for the greatest part *Neforians* and *Jacobites*; and more inclinable to Arms than Trading, as their Neighbours the *Armenians* be: But for comeliness of Body, height of Spirit, and faithfulness in truſt are of that repute, especially with the *Persian*, that many of them are employ'd in places of Command, eſpecially againſt their turbulent adverſary the *Turk*. And as of old, the *Egyptian* Souldans had their *Mamalucks*, ſo at this day the *Persian* King has the greatest number of his *Coscelibashis* from thence; it being ſeldom heard that any of them is falſe, or having ſerved the *Persian* ever turned to the *Turk*. Notwithſtanding which the *Persian* King in our times, upon ſome diſtaſte given by *Conſtantinop-
lawn*, made War againſt that Nation: For (as one obſerves) though Glory and Dominion
X 2

be two excellent things if well acquired ; yet are they but bad motives to commence a War, or to invade the just possessions of another. And I may not omit that Sir Robert Sherly one time when we were travelling together, gave us the ensuing relation.

Scander a late *Georgian* Prince had by a *Saracian* Lady three Sons, *Scander*, *Threbeg*, and *Confandrel*. *Threbeg* inflifed himself under the *Turk*; *Confandrel* did the like under the *Persian*; but both for Preferment became Apostates and turned *Bosermen*. *Confandrel* was the most active of Spirit, albeit in Body naturally deformed. *Abbas* taking some distaste against *Scander* for his compliance with the *Turk*; the Prince so slightly excused the fact, as exasperates *Abbas*. *Aly-chan* therupon was ordered to march against him with ten thousand Horse. In this expedition none was more forward than *Confandrel* (who with more credit might have mediated for his Country,) this adminiftring occasion to put in practice his ambitious designs : y. a. of such repute was he then at Court, that he was joyned in Commiffion with *Aly-chan*. Having entered *Georgia*, *Confandrel* known under a pretence of duty gave his aged Father a visit ; who received him affectionately ; but withal neglected not a friendly reproof for his Apostacie; whereupon that night, after an invitation to a Banquet, he cauſed his Father to be made away ; and then prevailed with the party he commanded, with whom some temporizing *Georgian* compiled, to falute him by the name of King. but so odious both to God and man was this Parricide, as he had little comfort in that forced greatness : For, not long after conflicting with *Cicade's* Son, who had entered *Gheyas* with a party of *Turkish* Horse) *Confandrel* received a prick in the Arm, and was constrained to retreat ; but which was worse, so suddenly and so unexpectedly was he assaulted in his Tent by his own Countrymen, that albeit he himself made a shift to escape, they cut in pieces an accursed *Cata-mie* who was his bed-fellow, and did him what further mischief they could. *Confandrel* being come unto the *Persian* Court so provoked the King, as he forthwith dispatched him back for *Georgia* in the head of a gallant Army, pretending to expel the *Turk*; But by his Van-couriers gave the *Georgians* notice of his cruel intent. The Queen (his late Brother's Wife) prevailing for an interview, *Confandrel* was shot by an Ambuscade, upon a signal given by that *Amazon*, who by that over-reached his Stratagem, having this or the like for excuse,

— Nec enim lex iulior ulla
Quam necis artifice arte petere sua.

*Nor can there be a punishment more fit,
Than he should die that first invented it.*

But *Abbas* glad of the occasion to discharge his promise, sends them word, That as they had treacherously slain his Subject and Servant, so he would have ample satisfaction. Nevertheless, by the friendly interposition of *Aly-chan* (who grieved not one jot for the death of his Competitor,) *Abbas* alters his first thoughts, and was content that young *Temerisk* by his appointment should be their King. *Temerisk* in the head of some thousand *Persian* Horse was received into *Georgia* with joyful acclamations ; but long his *Halcyon* dayes continued not : For the *Turk's* Amballadour then resident at *Span-haw* infuses jealousie into *Abbas*, as if *Temerisk* was more the *Grand Seignior*'s friend than his ; and with like artifice *Temerisk* was abused. Whereupon the young King fearing to come to Court upon *Abbas* his invitation, *Lalla-beg* presently marched into *Georgia* with thirty thousand Horse, foraging the Country with Fire and Sword. The young King for his safety first retired to the Mountains ; but there also being alarm'd, he was forced to flee unto the *Turk*: where he prevailed for such a force, as not only reinstated him in his own, but fell into *Shervan*. Which so incensed the *Persian* King, that drawing together what force he could, he refolved with himself to make quick work, and not only to harraf the *Georgian* Country, but (if possible) to exterminate the People from off the face of the Earth. To which end, in person *Abbas* enters his Country, killing all that came in the way ; firing Churches and Towns molt lamentably, and cutting down all their Mulberry-Trees ; and having in that fort satisfied his passion, returned, and gave way to *Temerisk* to take a re-view of his cruel execution. *Morad*, a Noble *Georgian*, not knowing any better way for retaliation, like another *Zopyrus* disfigures his face, and flies to *Cashyn* to impetrace the King's revenge against *Temerisk*, for that wrong. *Abbas* giving belief, orders a considerable force to fall into that late wasted Country. But so loon as they were upon the *Georgian* confines, in the night when the *Persians* dreamed of no enemy at hand, *Morad* with five hundred Confederates, and as notable resolution as ever appeared in Men fell into the Camp, cut in pieces seven hundred Men, and amongst others eleven *Chans* and *Beglerbegs* : the alarm striking such terror into the rest, that they could not be perswaded when the day appeared to run

any further hazard among those desperate Men, who had nothing left but their lives, and for their Fortresses inaccessible Hills. Since which, *Abbas* by the mediation of several *Cozelbahaws* that are *Georgians* has given them an assurance of peace from thence; they on the other side promising to put a greater value upon the friendship of the *Persian*.

A Georgian man and woman.

Now concerning *Armenia*, some derive it from *Armenus* a *Theffalian*, who was *Jason's* Kinman. It is divided into *Major* and *Minor*. The lesser is in part of *Anatolia*; the greater is confin'd by *Tartary* to the North, *Media* and *Affyria* to the South, West and East with the *Euxine* and *Caspian*: It includes *Colchis*, *Albania*, *Georgia*, *Iberia*, &c. Countreys which be now obliuion in other recent Names, as *Zuria*, *Goveria*, *Mengrelia*, *Turqmama*, *Caracilia*, *Gurge*, *Haloen* and *Sarlocbia*; in which place (some say) the ten Tribes were seated by *Salmanasser*. In that latitude it was divided into four parts by the Emp. *Justin*. *Epta* being the best peopled Province, and *Baranis* the Chief City; in the lesser *Armenia* were *Nicopolis*, *Ara*, *Cesarca*; in the greatest *Arsamia*, by *Prolomy* called *Arsamisata* *Carcathioerita*, &c.

Two Patriarchs or Protomists they have; one at *Jerusalem*, the other at *Syna* in *Aria*; who nevertheless sometimes resides at *Sis* near *Tharsus*, or at *Ecmeazin* near *Rhiwan* (rather *Ervan* in *Sherwan*) seeing that *Antioch* their old See they may not challenge. The three first general Councils they have in great honoür; they study the *Laine* Tongue very little (for it is rare in *Asia*:) Twelve titular Bishops they name, three hundred some say; very poor, which ought not to render them despicable. The Old and New Testaments they have in their Mother-tongue; a Litany also, part of which is every Lord's day read and expounded in the Church: They allow but of two Sacraments; administer the Lord's Supper in both kinds Bread and Wine; deny a real presence; Baptism they celebrate after the *Entycbian* sort, as *Jacobus* (Father of the *Jacobites*) and *Jaunes Philoponus*, An. Dom. 550. mis-taught them, as I gathered from some *Armenians* at *Telphœ*. Since *Cozraz* time, most of these Eastern Christians follow the condemned opinion of *Nestorius*; a Heresie encouraged by *Cozraz* the Persian-Apostle in hatred to *Heraclius* the Emperor: For, by forcing it upon the Christians who were his Subjects, it spread it self like a leprosie or ill air well nigh over all the Orient. The Proscelyte Gentiles or Mahometans they sign in the fore-head with a burning cross; others

they baptize with two fingers and sign the infant with the Crois, as glorying in that Hieroglyphick which Jews and Mussulmen esteem so ignominiously of. They are great lovers of Tradition; pray not for the dead, imagining that till the general day of doom they are without either joy or torment. Five Sabbaths every year they abstain from flesh, fish, cheese and butter; in memory of those five Ages wherein their Gemile fore-fathers used to immolate their Children to the old red Dragon: Wednesdays and Fridays (except twixt Easter and Ascension) they fast; and by what I have observed, I suppose that no other Christians are stricter Lent-observers: For, they not only refrain their Wives during that time, but abstain from flesh, fish, milk, eggs and butter; those forty days feeding upon oyl, bread, honey, dates, cucumbers, melons, herbs, and the like, and drink only water; but at other times eat flesh of all kinds; yea, can dispense with Hogs flesh and account it a dainty. Howbeit, before the three great Festivals they fast twelve days. They marry oft-times at nine or twelve years of age; the Laity twice, Ecclesiasticks but once; Trigamy to all is hateful. The Presbytery are honoured. Images in Churches they approve not of, condemning the Greeks therein; but in their Houses can endure the pictures of Venus and Priapus. The Crois they regard, but worship not; nor do they believe there is a Purgatory. Their Temples are but mean. Obedience and respect to the better and elder sort they practise: theft and adultery they punish. In some things they are but refined Idolaters: For, in Burials they have a custom to lead about the Church an unspotted Lamb, which they divide and distribute to each a bit; as a symbol obliging one another to love and charity: Peradventure this custom is derived from that of the Hebrews, who used to divide a calf, as Moses records in Gen. 15.9. and as Jeremiah, chap. 34. v. 18, 19. On Good-Friday they represent the Passion and Burial of our Saviour, during which they express sorrow in their faces. On Easter day they joyfully celebrate the Resurrection by a representative body, using that morning (as do the Greeks) the old Salve, *Hic risen indeed*: an Angelical note they call it. That day they celebrate as a great Festival, the Mahometans nor Jews not daring (as not being permitted) to mingle among them: the King allows them that privilege. They fast upon the Nativity. The Jesuits have been industrious to knit them unto Rome, but in vain. They insist much upon Antiquity, and have a Catalogue of two hundred Bishops since their first conversion; some were noble Martyrs: but of late years, the report of an envious Doge that they had submitted to Rome and acknowledged the Pope their Head, made Abbas caulsely jealous of their loyalty, which could receive no qualification without the sacrifice of some of their lives, made an offering to his cruelty. Upon which the rest implore help from the Turk, which raised a bloody scene of ensuing troubles. Ledoric Granger a Jesuit 'tis reported lately croft the Black-Sea into Mengrelia, where Threbe-chawn entreated him civilly; and that by his instruction they are much purged from superstition: Which if so, his Name should be of more fame amongst them. In the year 1211 over-run they were by the savage Tartar. Mengrelia (part of Armenia) was of old called Colchis; after that Lazorum Regio: Dia-scuria was the Metropolis; once so famous and considerable, that Timosthenes, and Plin. lib. 6. c. 5. spare not to report, how that three hundred several Languages were spoken there; so the Roman affairs in those parts were managed by no less than a hundred and thirty Interpreters: whence it probably came to pass that Mithridates King of Pontus spake twenty six several Tongues, having had his education first, and after that a free commerce and alliance with that his neighbouring Countrey. Upon this consideration it was that the Romans in their Monarchick growth, endeavour'd to impose the Latin Tongue upon all Nations. Romani Lingua suam totu[m] orbi imponere conantur, (saith Vives) & rem profecto pulcherriman meditantur. Nam (S. August. in Civitate Dei lib. 19. c. 7. & Plin. lib. 7.) mibil est quod hominem ita alienus ab homine ut Linguarum varietas, & facilis sibi animalia muta etiam diversi generis quam homines diversarum Linguarum sociantur; etenim commercia, necessitudo, societas, consiliorum communisatio inter gentes, conseruantur, &c. A very noble design. For (as St. August. in his City of God, and Pliny in his Natural History say) There is nothing more estranges one Man from another than differing Languages: It being easier to discourse with brute Beasts than Men of unknown tongues. For by understanding one another, not only commerce, but affairs, society, and communication of one Nation with another, is preserved.

The Armenians at this day are the greatest travellers East and West of any Asiaticks: desire of gain and affectation after novelties inducing them: Albeit indeed the advantage they have in their situation, so near neighbouring the Seas Caspian, Euxine, Mediterranean and the Palm Meroe, give them more than ordinary encouragement; and whence it comes, that at this day the generality more incline to Merchandise than

Mars, notwithstanding that the *Turk*, *Tartar* and *Persian* are oft caulely quarrelling with them ; and that the *Turk* and *Persian* by turns domineer over them. For in a war twixt two Potent Monarchs, 'tis dangerous for a third to stand neuter, being thereby in peril to become a prey unto the Victor. Learning is not now in that repute it was formerly; those frequent interruptions probably being the cause of it. Howbeit, Schools they have, and Universities. *David's Psalms* also, and some other part of Holy Scripture, which was translated into the *Armenian Tongue* by St. *Ciryssoftone* during his banishment into that Countrey from *Constantinople*, saith *Gregor. in Vita St. Joh. Ciryssoft.* The *Armenians* also have in their Language the works of *Greg. Nazianzen* and *Cyril*, translated out of *Greek*. Their Alphabet consists of 28 Letters; they write from the left hand to the right; but in their Character nothing agreeing with the *Greek*, a. do the *Georgians*, who have but 32. The *Armenian Letters* and *Language* is so very difficult by reason of the harsh aspirations, that I had much ado to take these following words after their guttural pronunciation; excepting those they borrow from the *Turk* and *Persian*, which be easie and the greatest mixture of their vulgar Language. As the ancient O. icual Languages be all flowing from the *Hebrew*, which being the only Language before the Flood, and continued in *Heber's Family* was called *Humana Lingua*: of which *Eben Ezra* says, *Nomilla Hebraorum Litera tam dura sun & difficilis pronunciationis, ut nemo eas facile pronunciarerit; nisi, qui statim à tenerrimis anisis earum pronunciationi sese affueret.*

English	Armenian.	English.	Armenian.
God	Aftaaadz.	Head	Cleugh
Heaven	Hearkinck.	Hair	Maiz.
Son	Ariacock.	Eyes	Aclico
Moon	Lucine	Nose	Kint
Star	Aftaagh	Ears	Anchaz.
Earth	Teaghir	Cheeks	Channow
Sea	Tzough	Lips	Perrongk.
Water	Chur	Teeth	Attam
Fire	Crack.	Chin	Chussack.
King	Taichaowr	Arm	Kour
Kingdom	Arittachaotai	Hand	Clear
Queen	Takeobe	Wine	Kimney
Nobleman	Paron	A Ship	Navy
Priest	Ireitz.	A City	Kagback.
Souldier	Zenoar	A Church	Eacheayatz and Zagbez.
Merchant	Bussagan	Bread	Harz.
Gentleman	Ithean	Butter	Eagh
Saint	Seurp	Cheese	Panner
Father	Hyreb	Milk	Kat
Mother	Myreb	Vinegar	Kat-zaugh
Sister	Quoir	Rose-water	Verta-chur
Brother	Teigbpier	Salt-water	Agbe-chur
Boy	Togha	Salt	Agbe
Girl	Aucheac	A House	Town
Slave	Agashawa	Gold	Weskey
Interpreter	Targeman	Silver	Arzaat
A Tree, Fruit	Tzar, Puttough	White, Red	Sipiac, Carmic
Hot, Cold	Shvack, Seurt	Green	Cannanch
Book, Chest	Kirk, Sandough	Yellow	Teaghin
Silk	Abrisiume	Blue, Black.	Mary, Seagh.

Fearing I have made too large a deviation, let me now lead you into *Spahaww*, the Metropolis of this great Kingdom; yea, not inferiour to the greatest and best-built City throughout the Orient.

— *Et quo te Carmine dicam?*

*Must Babel's lofty Towers submit to thee?
Tauris, Persepolis and Ninive?
Shushan, Arfacia, and Nabarca fall
Before thy Seat and power Provincial?*

Had

Had that ambitious Nimrod thought on this,
Cambyses, or the prond Semiramis,
With all those Primely Rulers which did sway
The Eastern Scepters, when thou didst obey;
It would have quell'd their pride, and let them know
All humane Actions have both ebb and flow.
The greatest Monarchs cannot conquer Fate.
Time doth by turns advance and subjugate.
Now Royal Abbas rules, Spahawn must rise:
Where Kings affect, there most Men cast their eyes;
There flock the People! 'Tis his power, not thine,
Which hath eclips'd their light, to make thee shine.
Then ush' thy Fortune so, that none from thence
May wish thy fall, or grudge thy Eminence.

SPAHAWN has Attick elevation 32 degrees 30 minutes, and longitude 86 degrees 40 minutes: differing a little from *Don Garcias* account, whose height exceeded not 31 degrees 30 minutes. In whose description if I seem prolix, impute it to the desire I have to give what I found observable. And first, In regard some suppose her, like *Agra* an upstart Town, I will tracer her in her antiquity and variations so far as my little reading will afford it us.

That it was *Erbatan* (as *Niger* thinks) is ridiculous to imagine; *Tabriz* by suffrage of most Writers being taken for that City. Two thousand three hundred years ago it was called *Dura*: But whether that which *Ptolomy* calls *Dera*, (not probable, seeing he places it in *Sufian.*) or that *Dara* which was built by *Arsaces* the first *Parthian* Emperour after his victory over *Selchus*, as *Justin* records in his 41 Book, I know not: But probably this old name has misled those that judge it to be *Dura* in that Province where the haughty *Affyrian* erected his golden *Celsus*. *Hecatomplos* is the next name I find it had; recorded by *Apollodorus*, *Polybius*, *Ptolomy* and *Pliny lib. 6. c. 8.* so denominated from her hundred Gates; albeit the name be also given to *Thebes*, *qua centum facies obruta portus*: In *Hyrcania* also there was another of that name; and one in *Libya* which was built by *Hercules* as *Diod. Siculus* mentions; whereby we may imagine her in those days a great City. And though in *Alexander's* conquests *Curtius* name her not, it seems she was then varied into that *Grecish* denomination: For of this name goes a tradition, That *Demetrius Nicanor* (*Sotor's* Son, thirsting after *Syria* and *Jerusalem* (upon his treacherous killing *Antiochus Alexander's* Son, to make the conquest easier) he was affronted by *Tryphon* Lieutenant of *Syria*; and forced to fly to *Arbaces* the *Persian* King for succour; who being acquainted with his unnatural design, not only deny'd him the Law of hospitality, but sent him prisoner to *Hecatompylon*, where he was held in fetters, till upon submission he was released, and by *Arbaces* re-seated in his own Dominion.

After that this Cit. was called *Nymzamena*, which signifieth *Half the world*: (a like hyperbole being given to *Rome* which some call *Epitomē Universi*.) By *Ben Jonas* (here *An. Heg. 540.* of our Lord 1160,) 'tis called *Afghanor* or *Afshchan*; who reports also, that then it had twelve miles compass. By *Cluverius* 'tis called *Hagistan*. By the *Arabian Geographer* *Asbabawn Et enim sub Algebala* (i. e. the mountainous part of *Media*) *sunt Urbes perillustres; quarum maxime sunt Hamadan, Asbabawn, Deinur & Comm.* *Asbabana* after that and under the true latitude. By *Mandevil* our Countrey-man (three hundred and 40 years ago) *Saphaon*. At this day 'tis called *Spahawn* (or as they sibboleth *Sphawhawn*) but by Writers differently spell'd, as *Spaha*, *Spachen*, *Achaban*, *Afshchan*, *Izaan*, *Spahan* and *Hispan*; errors springing from length of time and diversity of *Idioms*: but from whence the name *Spahawn* derives it self is not known unto the Natives; I may nevertheless venture a conjecture of the *Eryman*. That it is either that old Town *Spada* where *Eunuchs* were first gilded; or from a compound of *Apha* (which signifies a Horse) and *Chawna* (a House or Stable,) *Spahawn*; as the City *Paljargad* which signifieth a Horse: and the rather, in that the *Hippodrome* (the Body of the great *Mydan*) was an old accustomed place for viewing of Horses. And not unlikely to be that *Affadana* which *Ptolomy* in his fifth Table of *Asia* places amongst the Cities of *Persia* and in the same degree of latitude, which gives it the greater probability: For *Apha* in *Ptolomy* is thirty miles more towards the South than that which he calls *Hecatompilon Regia*. But I can by no means close with those who are confident that this *Spahawn* was that old City which was called *Hecatompylon*. For albeit I deny not that such a place there was, as called by our *Greek* Historians, and that placed in this Countrey; nevertheless by comparing their several

several latitudes, it may be concluded that *Cazbyn* or *Coom* was that *Hecatompylon* which *Ptolomy* places in the latitude of 37 degrees 50 minutes. And both *Ptolomy*, *Pliny* and *Strabo* all agree, That *Aipa* (as without peradventure *Spahawn* was then called) had no more Northern elevation than 36 degrees, and withal is placed in *Parthia*.

Give me leave to speak what I find acted whiles called *Spahawn*, and with that to couple our present Observation. If I exceed, this may excuse it, *Præstat de Carthagine tacre quam pauca dicere A.D. 645.* of the Heg. 25, by command of *Omar* then *Calyph of Mecca*, *Sieben-Abivarez* with some troops of *Arabian Horse* invaded *Persia* to pluck violently away from *Tessigirds* head the tottering Diadem; which at the third pull (having twice overthrown him) he effected, the splendour of that Kingdom then eclipsing: this done, *Ben-Abivarez* sacked his two best Towns, *viz.* *Elmein in Chaldea* (built An. Dom. 520. by *Kozrao* Son to *Kobodes*; howbeit, the *Alcoran* says it sprung out of Hell;) and *Spahawn in Parthia*. An. Heg. 400. *Mahomet* the *Calyph of Bagdad* after his conquest of *Gujarat* in India, in his return homewards plundered *Spahawn*. *Tangrolipix* commonly reputed Lord of the *Zelzuccian* Family and Ancestor of the *Ottomans*, in the year 1030. of the Heg. 410. (*Edward* the Confessor then ruling *England*, *Graffylib ap Llewellyn Wales*) was intreated by *Mahomet Prince of Persia* to aid him against *Pisafis* an encroaching *Babylonian*: which *Tangrolipix* (or *Togruibeg* as some call him) did, and prospered in; and after that defended him against the invading *Indian*. In recompence of which good services, the *Turk* only desires leave to pass through his Country, and over *Araxi* (which a Bridge doth scorn, *Pontem indignatus Araxis*, lib. 8. *Eneid.*) to visit his Countrymen who lived betwixt the two Seas *Caspian* and *Euxin*: A request how reasonable soever it seemed, nevertheless rashly deny'd by *Mahomet*, who indeed thought the *Turk* had a worse design. But this denial was so unkindly resented by the *Turk*, that after some passionate expressions he kept his party for some time secretly in the *Caramanian* desert, and soon brought under command all that Country which neighbours the *Persian Gulph*: And (vexing to be so confined,) soon after he marches against the King, and at *Shyrax* both Armies met; where albeit the *Persians* were twenty thousand Horse and Foot and more numerous than the *Turk*, yet was he vanquished. *Mahomet* rallying another Army of treble the number, nevertheless could not resist his destiny: For, after a short but hot dispute near those Plains, the *Persian* Army was routed, and so fiercely pursued by *Tangrolipix*, that some thousands of the *Persians* were slain, and many made prisoners; *Mahomet* saving himself in the Field by the swiftness of his Horse which brought him to *Spahawn*; where, in amazement falling from his beast, he broke his neck. The *Turkish* forces pursuing and without resistance entring *Spahawn*; which when it had acknowledged *Tangrolipix* victor, with little opposition he made an entire conquest of *Parthia*.

Rachbed-bila also Son of *Almofer-sha* was slain by *Mazud Anno Dom. 1130.* of the Heg. 510. and buried in *Spahawn*: Which few for many shall speak her Antiquity in the name she is now triumphant in.

I have told you how that in the Story of *Ben-Abivarez* a thousand years since it intitles *Spahawn* a City, but gives us no further particulars concerning it. *Ben-Jonas* (who saw it four hundred seventy six years ago) affords her twelve miles compafs, as she was at that time; saying further, That she was rich and populous. *Mandevel An. Dom. 1300.* (which is above three hundred years since) reports that in his time it was a noble City. *Anno Dom. 1474.* *Joseph Barbarus* was here in *Ufan-Cassan's* Reign, and then by the name of *Spahawn* it was a City both great and famous, peopled with 1500000 Souls; the Town and Suburbs being ten miles in compafs. *Rabbi Benjamin*, and *Contarini the Venetian Ambassador* eighty years ago, relate that then she had twenty *Italian* miles in circuit. And *Lemius the Portuguez*, sent by *Albuquerque* to *Sha-Issael An. Dom. 1513.* reports her to be a very great City.

Suspending my judgement concerning their relations, I shall give you the truth of what I observed. *Spahawn* Metropolis of the *Persian Monarchy*, is seated in the *Parthian* Territory (now called *Ayrac*) and as umbilic to that spacious body which at this day is awed by the *Persian Scepter*. From the *Persian Gulph* she is removed a hundred seventy nine farfangs, (of *English* miles five hundred thirty seven;) from the *Caspian Sea*, three hundred and sixty miles *English*; from *Shyrax*, two hundred twenty two; from *Babylon* four hundred and fifty; from *Candabor* eight hundred and seventy; and from *Cazbyn* two hundred and seventy. She is in compafs at this day about nine *English* miles, including towards seventy thousand Houses, and of Souls (as may be conjectured) contains about two hundred thousand: for, besides Natives there are Merchants of fundry Nations, as *English*, *Dutch*, *Portuguez*, *Pole*, *Muscovite*, *Indian*, *Arabian*, *Armenian*, *Georgian*, *Turk*, *Jew*, and others drawn thither by the magnetick power of gain.

It hath several good Buildings; bat the most observable are the *Mydan*, *Mosques*, *Humums*, and *Palaces*; as be the Gardens, Monuments and *Jelbey* a Suburb adjoining.

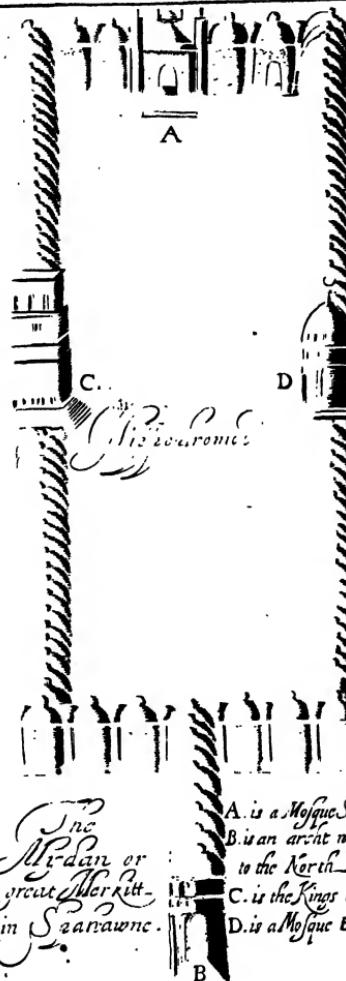
Spahawm is most pleasanter in its situation, elegant as to Building, populous for Inhabitants, rich in Trade, and noble by being the usual residence of the Court; eminent for all sorts of Exercise, sufficiently watered by the *Sindery*, fruitful in its soil; and for air so pure and quick, that I very well remember we found it much warmer in more Northern Cities which had greater latitude. And seeing *Quintus Curtius* saith of *Persia*, *Region non alia in terra Asia salubrior habetur*; I may in praise of this place add, That the air of *Spahawm* no part of *Persia* is more healthy. Howbeit the Town is of no great strength, yet has a mud-wall about it; and towards the outside of the City, a large Cattle unlander'd but moated about; and several Houscs within, which guard the Treasure, Arms and Ice there stored.

Let me lead you into the *Mydan*; into which e're I can bring you, we pass over a well-built arched Bridge of hewn stone, which is towards the South-west end of the City supported by five and thirty pillars, through which the *Sindery* (or *Zindarow*) from the Mountains streams gently; spreading in rainy Seasons here wel-nigh so broad as the *Thames*, but very shallow: For in Summer her channel is contracted, and so shallow that Children usually wade or pass through: for that the Citizens for the better watering of their Gardens by shutes drain and divide it into many Rivolets, insomuch as the course of the River is spoiled, and (which is strange) lost in some Vallcys not many leagues distant thence; where 'tis drunk up without ever emptying it self (like other streams) into any Sea or Ocean: especially by the pipes which feed the two great and famous Gardens belonging to the King, called *Nazar-jarib* and *Cherbaugh*, which for beauty contend with all other in *Asia*.

The *Mydan* is without doubt as spacious, as pleasant and aromatick a Market as any in the Universe: It is a thousand paces from North to South, and from East to West above two hundred; resembling our *Exchange*, or the *Place-Royal* in *Paris*, but six times larger: the Building is of Sun-dried brick; and an uninterrupted Building, the inside full of Shops, each Shop filled with wares of sundry sorts; arched above (in Cupolo's) Tarras-wise framed at top, and with blew plaster pargettred. And being the noblest part, is placed as it were in the heart of this City: The King's Palace, or *Chonna-Poishauh*, conjoyns it upon the West side, possessing a large space of ground backwards, but juts not to the Street further than the other Buildings, which are uniform to the Street, so as to passengers it gives not any bravery, her greatest gallantry being in the outward trim: for it is pargettred and painted with blew and gold, imbroidered with posies of *Arabick*, which after the *grotesco* manner makes it shew very pleasant. Within, the rooms (according to the common form there) are arched, enlightened by trellizes: the rooms imbossed above and painted with red, white, blew and gold; the sides painted with sports and landscape; the ground or floor spread with carpets of silk and gold, without other furniture; tarrased above, garnished with a Pharoe over-topping many *Mosques*; and the Garden or Wildernes behind the House made fragrant with Flowers, filled with airy Citizens priviledged from hurt or affrights, and for which they return their thankful notes in a more melodious comfort and variety than if they were in the exactest Vollycre in the Universe. Within the *Hippodrome* many of the Cavalry use to ride, (according to the ancient custom, as *Xenophon* in the life of *Cyrus* instances;) so do the *Persians* at this day, daily repairing to the Court-gate, mounted, with lances in their hands, Shamshers or Swords and Quivers by their side; where after they have prauded a while they depart, unless the King prepare to go abroad; for then they give their due attendance.

The North Isle of the *Mydan* hath eight or nine arched rooms, usually hung with Lamps and Latten Candlesticks, which being lighted (as 'tis usual, especially at the Festival of Lights which they call *Ceraghan*) give a curious splendor. Thither the *Poishauh* and others frequently resort for pastime, as tumbling, sleight of hand, dancing girls and painted Catamites; that *neandrum peccatum* being there tolerated. At the furthest end North is the Mint; where we saw one day Silver coyn'd, Gold the second, and next day Bras. Not far thence are Cooks shops, where Men use to feed the helpful belly, after the busie eye and painful feet have sufficiently laboured.

The outside of this noble Burse has this form, so well as my memory would serve; for I must acknowledge I forgot to take the draught during my being upon the place, in which I am blame-worthy.



Afore the King's door are one and thirty demi-Cannons of brass and twelve iron Culverins unmounted; brought thither (as I suppose, after some overthrow they gave the *Portugal* or *Turk*) from *Ormus* or *Babylon*. Opposite to this Palace is a fair Temple or *Jemma Machit*; but that at the South end is the most noble. The outside is stone: not formed according to the Crois (the Hieroglyphick of our salvation) as ours be; but round as were the *Jew's*; either from the *Talmud* figuring Eternity; or from the *Alcaba* in *Mecca*, the shape whereof they say was revealed to *Abraham* out of Heaven, pattern'd (*qui hoc credat*) from that which *Adam* reared in Paradise: Within this here is distinguished into illes; the walls are lined fifteen foot high from the sole with white well-polished Marble; cupolo'd, compassed with walls, and open to the air, the illes excepted where the People resort to prayer and prostrations, which are covered: and without are some seats to rest in. In the center is a large Tank; and at the portal another, octangular, filled with pure water, which first glides round the inside of the *Median* through

through a stony course or channel six foot deep and as many broad, which after a pleasant murmur drills into this Tank; whence it is suckt out by subterranean passages and distributed into private Houses and Gardens for use and refreshment. Within the *Mydan* the Shops be uniform, Trades usually having their Shops together: of which, some be Mercers, Lapidaries some, and (not the fewest) such as sell Gums, Drugs and Spices; shewing also greater variety of Simples and Ingredients of Medicines than ever I saw together in any one City of Europe; and such as may give encouragement to Physicians both to view and judge both of their nature and quality, as well as temperature of the climes they come from, which such as are ignorant cannot distinguish. And indeed the Drugs and Spices here so perfumed the place, that it made me since give the better credit to that Monostick of an old Poet,

Iuras madentes Persicorum aromatum.

We suck'd the aromatick air of Persia.

Other Mosques (here called *Dear* and *Zune*) are orbicular for shape, and part thereof have large cupole's for light, but low and indifferently pleasant; a great part being open to the air; and some have their *Alcorana's*, high slender round Steeples or Towers, most of which are terralled near the top like the Standard in *Cheap-side* but thrice the height, for the better conveniency of the Boys at the accustomed hours to sing aloud, in and for placing lights at the *Ceraghah* or Feall of Lights, which is annual. The materials of these *Mosquits* are Sun-burnt bricks, varnished on the outside and beautified with painted knots and fancies: Few are without their Tanks or Cisterns of water wherein *Mussulmen* wash their hands, arms and eys, having formerly bathed their face, ears, breast and feet, as an operative work to purge away sin, if not to confer Holincks: The *Mabometans* herein imitating the *Ethnique Romans*, who at the entrance into their Temples had Tanks or like places to wash in; *Delubra* they called them. *Delubrum est locum aere Templum ubi aqua currebat, a diluendo dittum*, saith *Servius*. The Female sex during worship use to approach no nearer than the door of the *Mosquit*.

Hummons in this City be many and beautiful; some are four-square, but most be globous. The stone of which they are built is for the most part white, and well polished; the windows large without, crostled and inwardly made narrow: the glafs where glafs is thick annealed and dark; the top or outside covering round, and tyld' with a counterfit Turquoise, which is perfect blew, very beautiful and lasting. The insides of these Hot-houses are divided into many cells and concamerations, some being for delight, others for sweating in, all for use: For the truth is, Bathing with these is (as it was with the *Greeks* and *Romans*) no les familiar than eating and drinking; yet the excess doubles weakens the Body, by making it soft and delicate, and subject to colds. Howbeit, they may better there use it than we in Europe, by reason that they drink water, eat much Rice, Pelo and like food of easie digestion, which makes their Bodies solid and hard, so as little fear is that Bathing will make them frosty: besides their much sitting and little exercize makes them sweat les and need more bathing. These Bathes are of pure stony, paved with black and chequered Marble: Men frequent them commonly in the morning, Women towards night: the price for bathing is very small, but so much used as makes the gain the more abundant: Tis accounted a *Catholicon* against most diseases, especially colds, catarrhs, phlegm, aches, agues, *Lues Venerea* and what not. The Womens being there is known by a linnen-cloth usually displayed afore the door, which serves to forbid Men any approach during the time they stay there.

The City is built upon a level ground, and of oval form; having many Streets, and scarce any House but is accommodated with large Gardens full of Cypress trees. The City wall is of no force against Cannon; but of use against Horses, and shock of any Lance: some Parapets and Bulwarks it has of more ornament than use; the Persian magnanimitie ever choosing to die rather than be besieged. It has a dozen Portresses or Gates; of which, four are lately shut up: *Gonidest*, *Chaly*, *Mergb*, and *Cherbaugh*, which are lately made the entrance into a Royal Garden: the other eight are *Hazena-baud*, which opens towards Shyrax and the Gulph; *De-erideft* to Babylon and *Ardaveil*; *Tockzy* or *Tebriz-abau* to *Cajban*, *Coom*, *Casbyn* and *Tabryz*; *Kerrera* to *Tess* and *Cawreflau*; *Lamboen* to *Hamadan*; *Shedyack*, *Madayan*, to *Cardabor* and *India*; *Tombara* and *Dalmaei*.

Palaces here are few: the King's House is in the *Mydan*; that also where we lodged belonging to the King, but made ready for our Ambassador; *Conna Mcloynbeg*, *Mir-Abdula*, *Tamaf-coolibeg*, and *Haram Begina* were all I saw worth the remembring. The first is low built, parargetted and painted without, but gilt within and spread with Carpets,

pets, the usual furniture of this Countrey; all which have large Gardens beautified with flowers, being plentifully watered: The last which is the *Royal-Seraglio*, is famous for the Treasure and Beauties it contains; of which (being dangerous to enquire, and much more to view) we will be silent. The Castle is large, strongly walled and moated: made defensive with some pieces of brass, but more by a troop of lean-fac'd, bearded, memberless *Eunuchs*; who (though Cyrus made such Elquires of his Body, now) like so malignant *Sagittaries*, have no other duty save to guard the Ladies. The Battlements it has are pleasant to look upon; but the horizontal Plain which is easily discovered from thirty rising Turrets there, yields most pleasure.

Gardens here for grandeur and fravour are such as no City in *Asia* out-vies; which at a little distance from the City you would judge a Forest, it is so large; but within so sweet and verdant that you may call it another Paradise: And agreeable to the old report *Horti Persarum erant amanissimi*. At the West end of Spahawn is that which is called *Nazer-Jareeb*; a Garden deservedly famous. From the *Mydan* if you go to this Garden you pass by *Cheerbaugh*, through an even Street near two miles long, and as broad as *Holborn in London*, a great part of the way being Garden-walls on either side the Street; yet here and there bell-rewn'd with *Mohols* or Summer-houses; all along planted with broad-spreading *Chenaer* trees, which besides shade serves for use and ornament. Being come to the Garden (or rather fruit-*Forest*) of *Nazer-jareeb*, you find it circled with a high wall which is about three miles in compass, entred by three Gates that are wide and well built. From North to South it was a thousand of my paces; from East to West seven hundred; and the prospect from one end to the other easily and fully discovered, by reason there is a fair open Ile (like that in *Fountaine-bleau*) which runs along, and is formed into nine easie ascents, each surmounting or rising above the other about a foot, all being very smooth and even. In the center or middle of the Garden is a spacious Tank, formed into twelve equal sides, each side being five foot set round with pipes of lead, which spout the liquid element in variety of conceits: and that sort of pastime continues to the North Gate, where is raised a pile for prospect and other sort of pleasure, antickly garnished without, and within divided into six rooms: The lower part is adorned with Tanks of white Marble, which fume out a cool breeze by quaffing so much crystalline water as makes it bubble there by a constrained motion; the Aqueduct being brought by extraordinary charge and toil thither from the *Coronian* Mountain.

The higher rooms are beautified with variety of landscapes which represent their manner of sport, hawking, fishing, riding, shooting, wrastling, courting, and other fancies. The roof upon the parget was gilt and painted with blew and other colours. In this Summer-houſe by ſome Gentlemen who were *Coozelbahaws* of the *Georgian* Nation I was invited to taste ſome *Shyraz* Wine: They exprefled very high civility, and gave me leave to drink what I pleased; nevertheless I was ſorry to fee them in that exercife ſo over liberal, which the cuſtom of the place reproves not: But profeſſing themſelves Christians, have for their inſtruction that of the *Pſalmift, Vīnum latifac cor;* *In jucunditatem cœram eff non in ebrietatem, &c. Eccl. 3. 1. 28.* Nevertheless it was worthy my obſervation and commendation, that being over-charged, they never quarrel, nor amidſt their Cups laſh out in diſcourse to the juſt offence of any; whereas in other Countreys excess in Wine has too often contrary effects: According to that of the Poet,

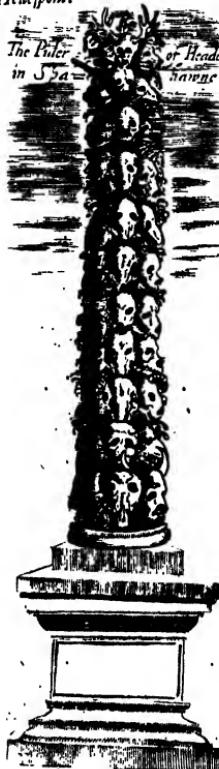
*Ebrietas ratione caret; furiosa per orbem
Transvolat; & finem nullo discrimine ponit.
Ebrietas mores frangit, linguisq; loquaces
Efficit, &c.*

But what seemed the moſt pleasant, was the view we enjoy'd from her Tarras, that afforded us a curious proſpect into a great part of the City; which (ſave at *Rufian's* Tomb, upon a Hill two miles thence) elſewhere by reaſon of the level cannot well be obtain'd. This Garden is replenished with trees of all sorts, for Medicine, shade and fruit; which are all ſo green, ſo ſweet and pleafant, as may well be termed a *compendium* of ſenſe-ravifhing delights, or *Abba* his Paradise.

Monuments of Antiquity I could find but few; Burial-places as in other *Aſiatick* Cities, and agreeable to the Law of the twelve Tables being commonly without the Towns: Yet ſome here are. As *Rufian's* Tomb we were directed to; which we found two miles from Spahawn behind the Garden we laſt ſpoke of: A Tombe ſcarce to be diſcern'd by reaſon of its ruin, but by the *Cowers* Cabala preſerved from oblivion. To ſee it,

we foot it to the very top of a Hill not easie to be ascended, where we found a hollow Cave, whether cut by Art or Nature scarce discernable. His grave is here, as they say; but his Image we found at a place near *Chil-mynar* (from his gigantick shape engraven upon the side of a black Marble Mountain) now called *Nolita* or *No^o di Rustan*; a brave Clic-valier (as report makes him) such time as *Ariaxerxes* (Queen *Hester's Husband*) wore the Diadem *A. M. 3500.* Some difgults happen'd 'twixt *Rustan* and his Brother *Shaw-gad*; who at a time when *Rustan* was hot in Chafe of some Bealt, it seems he fell into a pit which *Shaw-gad* had digg'd and deceitfully cover'd with bougs as if it had hatched no danger: But in prosecuting his hate, and looking into the pit the more to glut his unbrotherly revenge, he was slain by a dart *Rustan* flung up to retaliate him. Such was the end of *Rustan* and his Brother; of whom the *Gowers* (the old *Persians*) fable no les than what we find others do of *Bellarius*, or *Ogero* the *Dane*.

Nearer the City is *Darius* (or rather *Xerxes*) his Mount; a rising hillock which the People shewed us, whence *Xerxes* (upon view of the innumerable Army he had in that large plain) wept, upon a meditation that in few years none of them should be living. A notion true, and sooner than he predicted: for what by *Themistocles* on shore, and *Leonidas* at Sea, at *Salamis*, and *Thermopyle*, his huge Army melted away, and quickly became les numerous. Howbeit, some say his second view of the Army was at *Abydos* near *Hellepont*.



of old Men, weak Women, nor young Children, in two days he put to the Sword 30000 *Spahawnians*, and in terrorum aliorum erected a Pillar of their Heads; upon which might properly have been writ, *En, quo discordia Civis Perduxit miseris!*

In like manner, *Abbas* by the hasty death of Father and elder Brother, impatient of corrialship, for 'tis most true, That

Not far from thence we rode to the Hills now called *Demawend*, (of like name with those of *Epir* known to *Plutarch*,) through which, *Abbas* (who thought nothing impossible or unfeasible for the accommodation of the Citizens) is forcing a paſſage, though he effect it not in les than twenty years time, by the incessant toil of 40000 (sometimes 100000) Men, to force a River to *Spahawn*, that runs contentedly to it self fifty miles thence, and by this I suppose is effected: which Aqueduct when accomplished, will appear of more use than pomp; and may compare with that intended by vain-glorious *Nero* 'twixt *Ofia* and *Avernum*, now called *Licola*: Or that other of *Ficius* which *Claudius* cut three thousandpaces long by incessant eleven years labour of 30000 Men to bring the water to *Rome*, costing him 1400000 Crowns; and with better success than *Nero* had in his vain attempt to cut the *Isthmu* in *Achais*; or than *Xerxes* by what he did at Mount *Atbos*.

Within *Spahawn* I found that Column or Pillar of Heads which was erected as a *Salvo* and expiation of the King's Oath. At the base 'tis twenty foot round, and threecore high or thereabouts; for the truth is I forgot to measure it. The occasion of erecting this dreadful Monument was this:

Anno 1500. Heg. 880. such time as *Shaw-Tamas* ruled *Persia* and *Guin-shaw* added to the lustre of that Diadem; this City (surrendering with luxury, for *Ubi ubi ibi tuber*) refused not only to contribute a reasonable sum to the King (albeit at that time infested with *Turk* and *Tartar*,) but audaciously oppoſed his entrance: A Rebellion so infufferable, as made him vow a futable revenge. With speed therefore and fury he assaults and in rage enters, firing a great part of the City, and in holtile severity pillaging each House: To conclude, regarding neither the out-cries

No faith in Fellow-Rulers, Power or State
Admits of Confort to participate.

Nulla fides Regni Sociis, omnisiq; potestas
Impatiens Confortis erit.

lops off such branches as he thought might eclipse his greatness; and speeding to Spahatum to justifie his Title to the Crown, expecting at his entrance to be welcomed; the Citizens unadvisedly upbraid him with the death of *Henry Hamza* his Brother, and old *Mahomet*: A reproof unfit for Subjects to their King; who as *Cicero* admonishes, are to speak as reverently of him as of the Gods: Which had they here obserued, they had not so highly incur'd his high displeasure. *Abbas* being so enraged, that by his Father's Soul, the seven Orbs, *Bijmila* and *Mahomet*, he vows revenge. For a Months space they held out, and defended the City against the King: but in the end victuals grew short; and upon his diverting the River, (as *Cyrus* when he took *Babylon*) so many as could did stel away, choosing any hazard rather than to endure a famine. *Abbas* takes the advantage of it, and by storm enters, killing for two hours Men, Women and Children, shewing no mercy; making good what a noble Poet of ours in his Monarchick Tragedy well Notes:

*What misery more great can be devis'd,
Than is a City when by force surpris'd!*

For he commanded forthwith a Pillar to be reared of all the Rebels Heads, as a Memorial of his justice and their disloyalty: wherein probably he took for example those three Towers of Heads *Tamerlane* caused to be erected of those he massacred at *Dama-scou*. And doubtless the Tragedy had been acted, had not the *Mufis* (imitating *Aurelian*, who when he took *Thyana*, having sworn the death of them all, by a merry equivocation made all the Dogs to be hang'd up) in commiseration feign'd a vision from his Prophet which declared that so a Pillar were raised of Heads, no matter though it were Beasts heads, and so he interceded for pardon: to which, *Abbas* after so sufficient slaughter condescended; forthwith commanding a speedy destruction of all kind of Beasts, (the innocent suffering for the nocent,) of whole heads and those Men already slain this Monument of merciles mercy was reared, out-braving for height many *Misquis* in Spahatum, though now grown ruinous. In this case *Cicero pro Clu.* sayes well: In great Rebellions not all but some few are to be punisht for example sake: *Pena ad paucos est terror ad omnes*. Such another is in *Sunachy* twixt *Erez* and *Derbent*, upon the like occasion; which some would have to be dedicated to the Sun, like those four Obelisks each of which was forty cubits high, raised by *Sochis* the *Egyptian* King as an expellion of his zeal to that Deity, as *Plin. lib. 36. c. 8.*

The scite of *Jelphay* resembles *Pera* which is opposite to *Constantinople*, or as *Southwark* is to *London*; the River *Sinderout* interposing. 'Tis called a Suburb, as be those other of *Gower-abau*, *Abbas-abau*, *Chanz-abau*, *Azen-abau*, and *Cheigh-Saban*; though indeed they are most peopled with Men of one persuasione. *Jelphay* is governed by a peculiar Podestate, an *Armenian* Christian Prince (as they itile him) *Hodge-Nazar* by name, (though a Merchant by Profession) having superintendency over them: He and his enjoy freedom of conscience; but for money-matters and publick taxes are at the sole disposition of the King. In *Jelphay* (named so from another of that name in *Armenia*) the People inhabiting this Suburb are numbred ten thousand; and in *Azenabau* 4000. Families. By some 'tis written *Golfa* and *Chulfa*, but I have better hit our Dialect. The *Jelpholyns* are habited like the *Persians*, but differ in aspect; most of theſe and the *Georgians* having brighter hair and grayer eyes. They are for the moſt part Merchants, many of them Factors for the King, who exacts an account especially at their death; and if of considerable Estates, declares himſelf heir, and dispoſes of what he thinks best, none daring to contradict him. They profefs *Christianity*, taught them erroneiouſly by *Jacobus the Syrian Monothelite*; and have two *Protomifts*, one in *Jelphay*, the other ſometimes at *Sie* near *Tharsus*, other times at *Ecomesia* not far from *Rivan*, as with their Tenents I have ſpoken of.

Gower-abau (another Suburb) takes its Name from the *Gowers* that inhabit it; nick-named from their Idolatry, being reliques of the ancient *Persians*, ſuch as at this day the *Persians* be in *India*. The *Persians* have them in ſmall account; partly for that they are the originary People of that Countrey; partly for that by their industry they shame the *Persians* in their idlenes. These (if we may credit Tradition) differ from all other *Gentiles*, in that they never built any Temple to the Sun, as moſt Idolatres have done; but

but give a pretty good reason; For (say they) no place on Earth could be sufficiently capacious, seeing that *Mundus universus est Templum Solis*. Zoroaster was their Law-giver, and no other than Zoroaster, whose ashes (if the Greeks may be believed) were consumed by lightning, invoking Orion. Nevertheless, some think that he was Nimrod: But more certain is, He was that Zoroaster who first taught the Persians Magick and Judicial Astrology. Howbeit, some there be that imagine Zoroast was that *Perses* the Greek Heroe who first gave *Persia* the Name, and upon his *Pegasus* is said to fetch that Fire from Heaven which they after idolized. Albeit the Mahometans apply the Name *Gower* to Christians, seeing it signifieth an unbeliever. These *Gowers* adore the Sun called *Mythra*, believing it to be a globe of fire, a representator of a more powerful Deity: Their Flamens were a sort of *Platonists*; for albeit they acknowledged many Creatures to be excellent, yet are they no way comparable to the Creator, who is (even as they account) the center of all perfection. *Pulcrum Calum, pulcra Terra, sed pulcior qui fecit ista,* &c. Nevertheless they have declined that, and at this day deifie an elemental Fire, which (like that of the Veilals if we may believe them) doth not extinguish.



An old Inhabitant
of Persia.



Their Marriages are such as I have related amongst the banished *Persees* that live in *India*; but their Burials differ: For, in reverence to the Fire these not only forbear to burn the Dead, fearing to offer it an unclean thing; but even hold it a crime to spit into the Fire, which yet they repute sacred. Howbeit, in the Oriental parts of *India* amongst the *Brachmans*, the Dead are exposed to the Fire; albeit in the Occident it came first in request by *Sylla* the Dictator; who having abused the dead Corps of *Caius Marius*, fearing like sause ordered that his dead Body should be burned; which was done, and after practised by the succeeding *Roman* Princes. But whereas the *Egyptians* powder the Dead with Salt and Spices to preferre them from putrefaction, the *Perse* in *India* expose the Dead to the Sun's rage till he have eaten them. And these *Gowers* oft-times put them in the hollow of a Tree standing upright supported by the bole, till observation release them: For if the Vultar pick out his right eye first, then they conclude that he is in Paradise; if the left, then a *Cacodemon* vexes him; and they feast or fast by that observation, as joy or sorrow is occasioned. . Contrary to the *Persian Sarape* who had

their

their graves so deep in the sides of Rocks and Mountains, that they were usually let down by cords or other like device many fathoms, the Corps being first embalmed. These People are for the most part Mechanicks or Husband-men; few of them either Scholars, Soldats or Soldagars, as they term their Merchants: Their habit varies but little from the common mode, save that their head-piece is fashioned to the garb of Hyrcania. Their Women shew their faces (a thing in these parts very rare;) and their apparel and hair is tinctured with yellow (resembling the burnished embroidery of the Sun;) for a flame-coloured scarf hangs loose behind them, of use amongst the Roman Women, as *Lucan. lib. 2.*

*Her face wanted a yellow Vail to hide
The amorous blushes of a shame-fac'd Bride.*

And in his 3. lib.

Whose hair and cloaths with saffron colour dy'd.

Croceo medicamine crinem Fluxa colorati, &c.

And by the *Perse* more esteem'd of than other colours, from its resembling the Sun their Deity. Howbeit, many of them (either out of zeal or poverty) go bare-foot; for they use neither shooes nor sandals. The *Portuguez* Friars also have two Houses here, and are of the Rules of *Carmel* and *Augustin*: their Chappel is neatly gilt and adorned with ornaments, as Organs, Altars, Crucifixes, Images, Candles, &c. with which they endeavour to convert Men to the *Papacy*: but for the *Armenians*, they are spectators rather than auditors, and love no innovation; and the *Persians*, 'tis their principle to contum Images: nevertheless they are of some use, seeing they usually serve to send Intelligence to *Gos* and other parts of *Christendom*.

We entred *Spahawn* the tenth of *April*, and on *May* day departed thence towards the Court which was then at *Asharoff* in *Mozendram*, about four hundred miles distant Northwards from *Spahawn*.

Our first nights journey was to *Reegeue* (or *Reig*) an hours riding from *Spahawn*. Thence-forward (by reason of the incomparable heat) we were forced to travel in the night, all day refreshing our selves in the Carravans-raws; good resting places when gnats forbade it not. From *Reegeue* we travelled to *Sardahan* (called *Sarraca* by *Platony lib. 6. cap. 2.*) sixteen English miles thence; and next night we made *Whong* our Manzell, being seven and twenty miles from *Sardahan*. Next we came to *Tangebau*, a House and Garden of the Kings, which for beauty and sweetnes is comparable to any other in *Parthia*; and the more observable for that it is seated in a barren sandy soil.

*The blushing Rose grows here! the Violet
And Parthian Myrtle in choice order set!*

*Hic Rosa purpureo crescit rubicunda colore,
Et Viole omne genus hic est, & Parthica Myrtu*

And for five hundred paces every way gives a pleasant prospect of most sorts of Trees familiar to that climate; as also of *Persian* fruits and flowers, viz. Pomgranates, Peaches, Apricocks, Plums, Apples, Pears, Cherries, Chestnuts, Damask, red and white Roses, Tulips and others flowers in great variety; watered with streams, beautified with artificial Grotts, having also *Hummons* of stone paved with white Marble: The *Mohul* or Summer-lodge brags also of a dozen Chambers which were delightful to the view, rich in imboldments of gold and paint of various colours, and proud in the Architect: so as it will easily be granted, That Architecture, Sculpture and Painting are in most parts of the World now, and have been, and ever will be in esteem with Princes and People best bred and most ingenious. And all this cost is safeguarded from land and stealth by a defensive wall, so high as hindres (save in one rising artificial hillock which is raised in midst of the six descents) the affrighting sight of a circumvolving Wildernes. A Traveller is not to imagine pleasure his object; for pain and misery will entertain him oftene: otherwise I could have lull'd my self in this Paradise; and, (as *Moeca* the *Arabian* Victor after a serious view leaving *Corduba*,) sigh out this Farewel, *Ehen Tangebauh! que & quanta tua sunt delicia?* But on we mull to try the difference.

From *Tangebauh* next night we came to *Bawt*, which was six farfangs or eighteen English miles distant; nothing memorable, save an old Castle in the way, which by reason of the darknes of the night we could hardly discover. From *Bawt* we got by break of day to *Obigarmy*: both these are the King's Houses; who using this road, has at every twelve miles end a Lodge betwixt *Spahawn* and the *Caspian Sea*, wherein our Ambassador had the honour to repose and found reasonable good accommodation. And now the danger is past, let me tell you, most part of the last night we crost over an inhospitable

sitable sandy Desart which was ten miles broad, and in length (as they told us) little less than a hundred: where here and there we beheld the ground covered with a loose and flying sand, which by the fury of the Winter-weather is accumulated into such heaps as upon any great wind the tract is lost, and passengers (too oft) overwhelmed and stifled by that impetuous Tyrant; yea Camels, Horses, Mules and other Beasts, though strong, swift and steady in their going, yet sometimes are not able to shift for themselves but perish without recovery: those rowling sands when agitated by the wind move and remove more like Sea than Land, and render the way very dreadful to passengers. Howbeit, which was some amends, the drivnes of these parts caused through the influence of some Constellations, give lesf advantage to the Sun by exhalation to occasion winds, than in hotter places and near the Sea is observed. Indeed, in this place I thought that curse fulfilled which is mentioned in *Deut. 28. 24.* where the Lord by *Moses* threatens in stead of rain to give them showers of dust: For, albeit the King (to do as much as may be for prevention of harm and preservation of passengers) has raised at every three miles end a wall or Castle; yet by the unstable foundation, in *March* and *September* in despight of their best props it is piece-meal torn asunder, that little or none remains appear of their late standing. This our last nights travel was thirty miles.

Next night we rode one and twenty miles to *Suffadow*, an old weather-beaten Carravans-raw; well agreeing with the scituacion, being placed in an unsociable desart. Our next nights lodging was at *Syacow*, ten farfangs or thirty *English* miles; a place that made amends for the last; this being notable in her Carravans-raw which is built from the ground of good free-stone, white and well-polished; yea to the best of my remembrance, unles at *Tanghe-Dolon*, this was the firle building of that material I saw in eight hundred miles riding; most of the building as we past being of brick well hardned in the Sun, as is common in these hotter parts of *Asia*. A word of our last nights journey. The most part of the night we rode upon a paved cawsey broad enough for ten Horses to go a breast, built by extraordinary labour and expence over a part of a great desart; which is so even as that it affords a large Horizon: Howbeit, being of boggy loofe ground, upon the surface it is covered with white Salt in some places a yard deep: a miserable paslge! for if either the wind drive the loose Salt abroad which is like durt, or that by accident Horse or Camel forlase the cawsey, the bogg is not strong enough to uphold them, but suffer them to sink past all recovery. This causy has some resemblance with thoſe ancient *Vie militares* whose foundations were laid with huge piles or stakes pitched into a bogg, and fastned together with branches or withes of wood, upon which rubbish was spread, and gravel or stones afterwards laid, to make the ground more firm and solid. That of *Trajan* was notable; but a dreadful paslge this was: and the more to be feared because some forlorn hopes of highway-men many times pilage passengers: God he blessed, we escaped this, but not another which was little lesf formidable; for we had no sooner passed the Salt desart but of necfity we were constrained to climb over and about the Hills called *Carrande* of old, so high were they and glomerating; but for the easier ascent formed as if *Olympus* had been cut out into labyriths.

From *Syacow* we rode next night two and twenty miles: most part of the way was over another salt Desart, wherin (as we were told) thoufands have unhappily perifhed, and would yet run like hazard did not a like large and well-made cawsey secure the paslge. Here we pitched: old *Termius* in this place limiting *Parthia* from reaching further North: From whose high tops look we back and memorize her that was once formidable to the *Roman* Emperors, and Mifrefs of the greatest part of *Asia*. In the *Sey-thick* tongue she signifies an Exile or Stranger, as *Justin* in his 41. Book. The *Parthian* Diadem was once garnished with two and twenty Kingdoms, comprehending the greatest part of *Asia*; from which magnificence she fell: yet after a long eclipse, by vertue of the *Sophian* stem recovered a great part of her former brightnes. 'Tis now called *Heras*, lirnan'd *Aegypt* to distinguish it from that including *Babylon*. Her old Provinces were *Rhegas*, *Apamea*, (not that near *Selencia* in *Affrynia*) *Tapira*, *Choama*, *Araciana*, *Semina* and *Mixa*: her Mountains *Oromes*, *Abicormis*, *Mardorans* and *Parboatri*; not much above 800 miles in circuit: And albeit most part was hilly and steril, it bred nevertheless Men in their time both wise and valiant: Yea, in such repute with the Apostles that in the first Epiftle of St. John the dedication was *ad Parthos* as some old copies have it.

Next night (the Moon making our way the easier) we rode to *Ghezz*, a pretty Lodge belonging to the King, diftant from our last *Mauzel* eighteen miles. Near this place we overtook some of those *Creats* or wandring Herdf-men, old Authors commonly call *Nomades*; either for that they descend from the *Numidians*, or because they were named

med by the Greeks, καὶ τὸν ῥέαν, ἀ πασχόντες; Quasi in pascuis inter armenta degentes. Fixed stations these keep none, but for mixt profit and delight removē from place to place as fancy and good pasturage invites with all their Family and substance treasured up in long Waggons covered with Felt, and so high as they admit of a division into two stories: the lowest (the place of usual residence) is even with the ground; and they have six wheels to draw with. Little is the difference at this day from what *Strabo lib. 11.* of old reports concerning them, *Errant semper sine Lare vel Penate (sic dicta quia penes nos nati sunt) sine fixis sedibus, sine legibus, &c.* A People albeit now of no account amongst the Persians; yet time was when called *Parni*, by their courage as well as numbers they obtained for *Arbaces* their Country-man the *Parthian* Empire. But having elsewhere spoken of this sort of People, I shall give you a brief account of our last nights travel, which for the greatest part of the way was through the bottom of part of *Taurus*, level with the ground, though the top ordinarily moistens it self in the middle region. This is that strait (and not straits in the plural, though the name be such) or narrow passage which is so much famouzed in Authors: by *Pliny* called *Caspie porta*, who also terms it *Ingens Natura miraculum* a great miracle of Nature; *Bertius, Caspiorum clausura*; *Strabo* and *Plutomy*, *Pyle Caspiae*; and others *Media, Zugrie, Zarze*; *Diod. Siculus, Caspia porta*; *Priscian, Caspidae tantum portas, &c.* and some, and not improperly *Pyle Semiramide*; albeit different from those we call *Caucasic porta & Iberia* (which are near *Derbent*) and wherein doubtless *Maginus* is mistaken, in saying that the *Caspie porta* are in *Turkestan* which he places in *Zagathay* or *Altai* as now called. This narrow strait is not more than forty yards broad and eight miles long; but the Mountain on either side is precipitous; and so high as it is much above what an arrow could reach at twice the shooting, were it possible to begin the second where the first shot each; and is one of three noted passages through that great Mountain *Taurus*, which from *Persia* and the South and Western parts lead to *Armenia, Hyrcania* and the *Caspian Sea*, and which doubtless gave this the denomination. Through this it was the fair *Amanusias* came to *Alexander*; for that mentioned in *Pliny* which *Nero* threatned the *Parthians* to pierce through was in *Armenia*, and formerly spokēn of.

Now albeit some have attributed this pass to the Spirit of *Semiramis*, who to express her power and to eternize her memory to posterity, effected wonders; For, *In Jarcio Allose iuxta Ecbatana, immortale sui monumentum reliquit, precipita Montis & convallis asperatus & loca concava ad planum deducens, magno sumptu iter reddidit*; *Diod. l. 5.* This certainly is rather the work of Nature, God's handmaid; the height and hardness of the Mountain rendring it an endeavour vainly to be attempted, if not impossible to be effected by Man. Albeit the *Perfus* (merrily I thought till I perceived them displeased with my incredulity) assured me that it was done by *Moris Ally*'s Arm with the help of his *Sulphur*, which lay the *Persian* Chronicles was eighteen cubits long; but by equal faith you are bound to believe *Ally*'s Arm was proportionate: And not unlike that Fable mentioned by *Nub. Geogr. 1. parte c. l. 4.* concerning the Mediterranean Sea, which at first being surrounded with Hills like the *Caspian*, the famous *Hercules* cut that Mountain asunder with his sword, and made that strait we now call *Gibraltar*, which gives the Water a large and free passage into the *Atlanick Ocean*. Now to confirm this for a truth they tell us, That *Ally* being in pursuit of the *Gowers*, (so then they called the *Christians*) unsheathing his *Sulphur*, for the quicker execution it parted in two, (at least was double edg'd) with which he so hew'd his enemies on the right hand and on the left, that at some blows he beheaded hundreds; which made the rest fly to purpose: In the pursuit, the better to overtake his Enemies, he clove Rocks and Mountains in twain, and then (as they suppose) made this smooth passage: To which I have but this for answer, *Hanc fabulam longi temporis mendacia finxit*: For would they give that credit unto *Pliny* he deserves, they might know how that long before *Ally*'s birth, speaking of this passage, he says, *Ruptura est Montis longitudine octo mill. pass. angustissima, &c.* A description rightly agreeing with what we found it; and *Strabo* saith, This strait was made by a terrible Earth-quake that rent asunder several great Mountains, and this amongst the rest; *Terra motibus (says he) erupta fuerat Terra apud Caspias portas, plurimi, Urbes & pagi, & varia mutationes fluviorum, &c.*

But of more certainty is what a *Persian* then in our company told; how that a dozen years since, a valiant Thief with five hundred Horse and three hundred Mufquets defended this narrow road against all passengers; none passing nor re-passing without some acknowledgement, albeit the King of *Larry-Joon* (whose Dominion lay amongst the Mountains) frowned at his lawcinsels, and threatened him: but such storms rather made good music to the Thiefs ears. Howbeit, *Abb. as* also upon affront grows choleric to be so

bearded, yet scorns to honour his overthrow by an Army; well knowing he had many Chevaliers about him, by whose courage he little doubted to reduce him: but such was the fame that went of this Thiefs fortitude, that by their demur *Abbas* apprehends their fear, and for anger grows pale at it. Nevertheless, ere he could give his rage a vent, an *Armenian* undertakes the work, whom the King embraces: and having breathed fresh courage into the hardy Christian, being excellently mounted as a Passenger he singles out the Thief who doubted not to master so fair a Beast with small oppofal. Such confidence had he in his valour, that it was his custome to give fair play; uifually commanding his Company to look on at a distance, albeit more than one entred the strait: So that in fhort space this pair met, and engaged each other with Sword and Buckler; the *Armenian* followed his blows with such dexterity, that after some bloodlith, upon a clofe he gave Death a free paſſage: A Victory nobly attained; yet to irkome to his men (whose lives depended upon his safety) that like robbed Bears they fell upon the Victor; who doubtles had them and there expired, had not some Coofel-bashaws that were spectators relieved him; by whose ſudden falling on, the Thieves were quickly ſacrificed unto their Maſter. The Christian thus returning to Court Crowned with Laurel, *Abbas* adds to his luſtre and gives him a Command, ſo unsupportable to the weak foul of this Champion, that further to cajole the King he denies his Faith, and turns Infidel, though abundance of tears were ſhed by his Countrymen as diſſuſatives from it. But ſee the end of his Apoſtacie: The King albeit he had cauſe to favour him by reaſon of his good ſucceſs againſt the Tartars; yet Jealousie (or rather Divine Vengeance) ſo ſtung old *Abbas*, that without any known occation, or acquainting any man with his reaſon, he commands *Lollabeg* to cut off his Head ſuch time as he was ſinging a Lullaby to his good fortune.

Our next nights Manzil was at *Halvary*, (eighteen miles from *Ghezz*.) a Village pretty well built, and delightfully ſeated, and where the Earth was mellowed by a sweet Rivulet that purls from the tops of *Turus*; alſo the ground was moft part of the year ap‐parcled in green, requiting the painful Husbandman with a due acknowledgement of Olives, Walnuts, Wheateat, Wood, and other things. Bidding an unwilling farewel to that pleauant place, the next night we rode twenty miles, to *Periscom*, i.e. a broken or divided Mountain; and by the poition thereof may probably be the iſlie of that which *Ptolomy* calls *Aſſius*. The Town is ſometimes honoured with the King's reidence: not that the beauty of this Houſe (which is but ordinary) allures him, but for that there is choice hawking, Pheasants and other game more abounding there than in moft other parts of *Parthia*. The Pole is here elevated fix and thirty degrees. The Town is refrehed with very ſweet water: the ſituation is upon the brow of a high well wooded but (agreeable to its name) divided hill, having on each ſide a ſteep acceſs; whose top has been crowned with a large Caffle, which now by age or war (the canker-worms of all temporaries) is moth-eaten; her ribs only appear, exprefſing defolation. One *Mahomed* then commanded the Town; and albeit truſted with the Sword and Scale, I fear he was *Aſſia*'s corrupted Servant: No marvel then if in a diſcontented humour he left the Earth; for we can witness, that in *Perſia* (eſpecially in *Periscom*) Justice was corruptly balanc'd. At our entrance into the Town, (to extort a bribe from our Amballadour) he hanged one *Persian*, (at leaſt we were ſo made to believe,) cut off another's Nose, and mutilated a third, to ſhow that his Laws (like *Druſo*'s) were writ in blood: *Vifcera impiorum sum crudelia*, their delinquency was for the felonious ſtealing a trifle of two ſhillings value from a Footman ſerving the *Engliſh* Agent. Another was ready to be truſfed up; but ſecret notice was given our Amballadour, that if he pleafe to beg his Life, upon preſenting the Gouvernor with ſomething, it ſhould be granted him: This was the main design; and though well enough ſeen, our Amballadour very gladly ranforne him. Complaint was also then made againſt a Farmer for thrashing a Whore againſt her will: The *Persian* *Rhadamant* twixt jeaſt and earneſt bids geld him and hang his Stones at her Ears as two Pendants, ſuch as to him the Gulph of *Perſia* afforded none ſo precious. The poor wretch humbly beſought him to ſpare his uſeful parts, the like did his aſtoniſhed Wife; ſo as after mediation of Friends, and thirty pound Fine, upon promife to grind in his own Mill even after the execution of the ſentence was remitted. But each Man cried out, A ſevere Cenſor is this *Daraguod*. Who neyer read, as I ſuppoſe, how that *Nemo juſe Natura cum detimento alterius locupletior fieri debet*; or (which might be his own Leſſon) that *Avarus omnibus eſt malus, ſed ſibimet pefſimus*. The barbarous *Gauls* indeed had ſuch a Custoſe, *Si fueraverit quod valet a deuari. aut mechauiur, vel caſtratur, &c.* But here many times theſe Satrapa's have ſuch tricks to extort bribeſ that the ſubject has good caufe to clamour out,

*Gold forfeits Faith, perverts the poor Mans right,
Gold makes the Law a Slave, where shame wants sight.*

*Auro pulsa fides, auro venalia Jura,
Aurum lex sequitur, mox sine lege pudor*

Verifying what another merry Poet sings,

*Munera crede mihi placant Hominesq; Deosq;
Placatuer doris Jupiter ipse datu.*

After two days repose in *Perisow* we continued our travel, the Court then being little more than a hundred miles distant from us. Our first nights journey from *Perisow* to *Gbeer* was four and twenty long miles, and tedious in the passage; for some part was over rugged hills, other part through whistling dales; in both which we were so weather-beaten with a storm of Wind and Hail bred in *Tartary*, and forced over the *Caspian* Sea, (which from hence, if the season had permitted, we might have seen,) as for lone time not only took away our sight and hearing, but threatened our brains; for in despite of our best skill to keep together, we lost one another; insomuch as we had hardly recovered our company, had not the unmelodious noise of the braying Mules, and jingling of the Camels Bells (being to wind-ward) brought us together, and helped us out of these *Caspian* or *Zagrian* Straits; through which, when neither Sun, Moon, nor Star befriends, whosoever hereafter travel, let them be sure to borrow *Theseus* his thread, or be content to wander in some kind of Labyrinth. From *Gbeer* we rode next night four and twenty miles, to a small Village whose name I have forgot; but remember very well that the Frogs (the Bull-bulls or philomels of this marshy place) assembled in such numbers, and chirped such loathsome tunes, that we wished *Homer* would have given them another King: For as one writes,

*The prattling Frog (thinking his Language good)
Crouks fruitfully in his beloved Mud.* *Garrula limosis Rana coaxat aqua.*

These in the Spring engender of the slime that froaths from their own bodies, and in shallow plashes croak and ride one another outrageously; but towards Winter resolve into their first matter. 'Tis strange what some report, that if their Heart and Liver be pull'd out, they will nevertheless skip up and down: and no less certain it is that Frogs are of great vertue, if physically used; for there is no part of them but what is medicinable, if *Aldrovandus* in his report be rightly informed.

To *Aliavar*, one and twenty miles from the Town of Frogs, we rode next night: a very pleasant place for earth, water, and wood: and where we found store of Pheasants; a Bird abounding in these Hyrcanian Towns, but near the River *Phasis* in *Mengrelia* (emptying it self into the *Euxin* near *Trepizond*) originally breeding. And it is note-worthy, that this River *Phasis* in some part of the History writ by *Quintus Curtius* is mistaken for *Tigris*, from *Phasis*, or *Pasi-Tigris*. No wonder then if *Alexander* at the first sight of the *Caspian* thought that Sea was the Fens of *Meotis*; and that he was perwaded from the River *Indus* he might sail into the *Nilus*, without interruption, *Strabo* l. 15. geogr. *Phison*, (which is a branch of *Tigris*) *apud Gracos Indus, apud Barbaros Ganges, vocatur Epiphan, lib. de 12. gemmis*, taking *Pison* for *Ganges*, so they mistook *Gihon* for *Nilus*, which made their Extent of the Garden of *Eden* so over large; also *Artemidorus* makes *Ganges* spring from the *Mediae* Mountains, and *Ben-tuled* finds *Tigris* near *Zeilan*: These I instance to note the little knowledge they had in those times of *Geography*; which absurdities are since by Navigation and Commerce well corrected. *Iason* and his *Argonauts* first made these known to *Greece*, when thence he forced their Sheep bearing Fleeces of Gold, or Gold-meriting Fleeces. Next night we got to *Necaw*, five and twenty miles from *Aliavar*, observable only in the Kings House, and for that their common Mansions and Churches differ not from ours of the ordinary sort in *England*. Here (as in some other parts of *Hyrcania*, it being Summer time) we were exceedingly pestered with Flies and Gnats; whose vexatious Stings made some of us, when we arode, look as if we had the Measles. And when we came near the Sea we were no less troubled with Snakes; for if so be we left the Road, and rid through the green pastures, then they would wind about our horses legs without other harm than affrighting, and serving to perswade us into the common path again. This is not strange, seeing that *Pompey* (after he had subdued *Tigranes* the *Armenian*) marching into this Countrey was constrained to retreat, by reason of the infinite number of Snakes and Serpents that offended the Army, as *Plut. Vita Pomp.* writeth.

And

And *Aelian lib. 5.* *Anamalium* reports, That *Alexander* marching hence into *India* saw a Serpent 70 cubits long, none such now in this Country; but that there are Serpents of like prodigious bigness. *Petrus Crinitius* relates, That one of 50 cubits length was nourished by *Octavian Cesar at Rome*. *Strabo* exceeds thefe, *Dracones centum cubitorum magnitudinis in Ethiopia sunt: In Ethiopia* are Serpents a hundred cubits long; *Sed in vales vel reptantes, queritur.*

Next night we got into *Asharaff*, a City upon the *Mare Caspium*. The Emperor of *Perſia* was here at this time, expecting the *Amballadour*; unwilling to remove till he came; and (as we thought) rettling there so long both that we might see the extent of his Empire, and likewise have a prospect of the better parts of *Perſia*. The *Sultan* of the Town attended with fifty *Coselbahas*, met the *Amballadour* three miles from the Court; and having civilly brought us into *Asharaff*, ushered us to our lodging: I may say Us, for the Ceremony was very much below the Quality of so eminent a Person as an *Amballadour*.

A SHAR AFF (or *Abaſhuraff*, and yet I dare not say so named from *Abaſurus*) is distant about two miles from the *Caspian Sea*: seated in a low ground, many salt Marishes circumvolving her, and but meanly watered; no other but a small Spring (*Mazera* in *Prolomy*) streaming from the *Taurisian Mountains* drills in two branches through it, the broader of which is not five yards over; yet in former times a River of good breadth. But no wonder we croddled over so few that we could call Rivers, seeing the People cut them into many small sluices, and divert the stream to serve their occasions; so that oft times the true Channel is not to be discerned. This practice is no new thing, no les ancient than *Cyrus* the Great; who to retaliate the los of his Men which were drowned in passing the River *Cyndes* (a branch of *Euphrates* in *Affryne*,) divided it into above three hundred little Streams, so as the main Channel became lost. This was principally in revenge for the los of his white Palfrey, a Beall which was of the *Nisan* breed, the bell *Mada* (nay the World) brought forth, as *Sen. de ira lib. 3. c. 23.* Howbeit, the ground here is reasonable fat, but incultivated; the greater part of her Inhabitants ploughing in *Campo Mario*. I judge two thousand Families live in this Town; and no doubt increase daily, the King having but of late affected this place. His Palace is pretty large, and but newly finished; albeit *Farrabau* the *Hyrcan Metropolis* but five miles West thence is the place where the Seat Royal in that Country has been kept for some Generations. *Abaſhuraff* also not above two miles thence surpasses for a curios Summer-houſe, excelling all his other for prospect, Painting, Hummum, Water-works, and a Forest which is stored with game of several sorts: so as it attracts the King, who where ever he stays long makes Cities of small Villages.

The *Bazaar* here is but ordinary; and the *Machis* not to be admired. The Palace is large, and looks into very pleasant Gardens; albeit the Building it self be not very regular, but rather confusely divides it self into four *Mohols* or Banqueting-houses, which be gorgeously painted. Were these united, they might better delight the eye, and cause the Architect to be commended: But more of it at the *Amballadour's Audience*. *Abaſhuraff* signifies *Abbas his Garden*: and though I find a Town mentioned in *Prolomy* called *Abbas* in his time, I may not conclude it to be this, seeing he places that in *Media*.

The Pole Artick is here elevated eight and thirty degrees seventeen minutes; it is due North from *Spahawn*, as we observed in our star-light travel, (for in the Summer Season the days are raging hot and not to be travelled in,) *Ariturus* was ever right before us. From the Gulph as we travelled from *Ormus* to this place are a thousand *English* miles: from *Spahawn* three hundred and fifty or therabout, as we reckoned.

Before I give you a brief survey of *Hyrcania*, let me present a short narration of our *Amballadour's Audience* and Entertainment. After four days repose, the King aligned him his day of audience. It was the five and twentieth of *May*, our Sabbath, and the half-end of their *Ramazan* or Lent; advantageous to the *Por-flush*, though I will not say it spared him the charge of an entertainment. Sir *Dodmore Cotton* our *Amballadour* had Sir *Robert Sherley* in his company, with my self and seven or eight other *English* Gentlemen his followers: Good reason it was some *Sultan* or other should convoy and shew him the way, the Court being a quarter of a mile distant from our House; & but what ill office was done at Court, I am not able to divine; for a small Cavalcade it was, yet so it happened that notice was given by a Courier from *Mahomet Ally-beq* the Favourite: So as to the Court his Lordship got, very few of the Town having notice of his time of Audience; as appeared by those few that came out either to see him pass, or to view the manner of his reception; which without doubt was the product of the Favourites

vourites envy, occasioned through the spight he causelessly bore unto our noble Countryman Sir Robert Sherley: For otherwise it might have been wondred at, seeing *Abus* of all sorts of honours counted to have Strangers at his Court, the highest.

At our alighting an Officer had us *Hof-galdom*, and ushered us into a little House which stood in the center of a large Court, wherin was no other furniture save a few *Perſian* Carpets which were spread about a white Marble Tank filled with water. Here we repoled, and for two hours were entertained with Pelo and Wine; nothing so good as the material they were served in; flagons, cups, dishes, plates and covers being all of gold. Thence we were conducted by ſome *Sultans* thorow a ſpacious Garden, which was curious to the eye and delicate to the ſmell: whence we were brought into another Summer-house, which was rich in gold embouſements and painting, but far more excellent in a free and noble proſpect; for from the terrafe thereof we had a delightful horizon into the *Cafian* Sea towards the North, and Southward at a great diſtance could diſcern the high Mountain *Tauri*. The Chambers were large and ſquare; the roof arched and richly gilded: The ground was ſpread with Carpets of ſilk and gold. In the midſt were Tanks full of ſweet water, (an element of no mean account in theſe torrid Regions;) and round about the Tanks were placed (*pomparum ferula*) Goblets, Flagons, Cifters, and other ſtandards of maſlie gold; ſome of which were filled with perfumes, other with Roſe-water; with Wine ſome, and others with Flowers. And after we had reſted ſo long as we might at full feed our hungry eyes with that food of entertainment, we were conducted into another ſquare large upper Chamber where the roof was formed into an artificial Element, many golden Planets attracting the wandring eye to help their motion. Here the ground was covered with richer Carpets than the former, the Tank was larger, the material more rich, and purling ſreams by pipes forced up into another Region. This Sea was ſo deep and ſo capacious, that it ſeem'd a little Ocean where the ſpoils of ſhipwrecks were conjured out to please the moſt avaricious *Mammon*; for, ſo much gold tranſformed into veſſels for uſe and ornament were ſet for us to look upon, that ſome Merchants then preſent made an eſtimate at an incredible vaſue. Another watry Magazine there was circled with a like wall of golden veſſels: Molt of the flagons, Cups and other plate were garniſhed with Rubies, Diamonds and like ſtones; ſuch as might compare with *Cleopatra's* furniture in that great Feaſt made to *Mar. Anthony*, *In quo curriuſis* (faith *Cedrenus lib. 4.*) *omnia erant aurea, gemmis magnificè diſtincta, artiq; elaborata, &c.* But the Chamber by the length it had was more reſembling a Gallery than a room of State: the ſeeling was garniſhed with gold, and pencil'd with Story in lively colours; all which ſeem'd to ſtrive whether Art or Nature to a judicious eye would be moſt acceptable. One *John a Dutch-man* (who had long ſerved the King) celebrated his ſkill here to the admiration of the *Perſians* and his own advantage. The floors also in this room were over-laid with ſuch large and rich Carpets as beſtitied the Monarch of *Perſia*. Round about the room were also ſeated ſeveral tacite *Miraces*, *Chawns*, *Sultans*, and *Beglerbegs*; who like ſo many inanimate Statues were placed croſs-legg'd, joyning their bums to the ground, their backs to the wall, and their eyes to a conſtant object; to ſpeak one to another, ſneecze, cough, or ſpit in the *Potſtaueb*'s preſence, being ever ſince the time of *Aſyages* held no good breeding: nor may they offend the King, who by the fulgor of his eye can dart them dead as ſoon as ſpeak the word, as *Ceſar* ſaid unto *Metellus*. The *Garymed* Boys in Veſts of cloth of gold, rich beſpangled Turbants and embroidered Sandals, curled hair dangling about their ſhoulders, with rolling eyes and vermillion cheeks carried in their hands flagons of beſt mettal; and went up and down, proffering the delight of *Bacchus* to ſuch as were diſpoſed to taste it. What *Valerius* reports to have been the cuſtom here of old at Feaſts, *Circum pateris it Bacchus & omnis Aula ſiles*; *Pueri tanquam ſurdis, quid factò opus efficiabant*, & *ferens poculum dedit poſcenib; &c.* was here the mode, and duly acted.

At the upper end (furmounting the reſt ſo muſt onely as two or three *Maſtabas* or white filken hags would elevate) ſat the *Potſtaueb*, beloved at home, famous abroad, and formidable to his Enemies. His Grandeur was thus: Circled with ſuch a world of wealth, he cloathed himſelf that day in a plain red Calico coat quilted with Cotten; as if he ſhould have ſaid, His dignity conſiſted rather in his parts and prudence, than *furiōſus coloribus*, having no need to ſteal reſpect by borrowed colours or embroideries. Croſs-legg'd the *Potſtaueb* ſat; his Shaft was white and large; his waſte was girded with a thong of leather; the hilt of his Sword was gold, the Blade formed like a ſemi-circle, and doubleſe well tempered; the ſcabbard red: and the Courtiers *Regis ad exemplum* were but meanly attired.

The Ambassadour by *Dick Williams* his Interpreter (*Callimachee the Persian* call him acquainted the King, That by his Master's command he had undertaken a very great journey to congratulate his success against their common Enemy the *Turk*; as also to promote Trade, and see Sir *Robert Sherley* vindicate himself from *Nogdi-Ally-beg* his imputations; and withal, to desire that a perpetual League of friendship might be continued 'twixt the two powerful Monarchs of *Great Britain* and *Persia*.

The *Pot-shaugh* raising his body, returned this answ're: To the first, the *Turks* were a mean People, compared with the generous *Persians*; as appeared by several Battels he had given them ample proof of; and that than the *Turks* no People in the World were more inconsiderable. Nevertheless he wished unity amongst *Christian Princes*, the *Ottoman* grounding his conquest upon their dilord. Concerning Trade, the King of *Great Britain* should if he pleased receive ten thousand bales of silk at *Gombroon* every *January*; and for payment, would by way of exchange accept of so many thousand *English* Clothes as should be adequate in value: For, as he well knew the silk was a greater quantity than he could use in his own Dominions, so were the Clothes to him; but he would hazard the venting th'm by his Merchants to serve his Neighbours, so as neither we nor he shold need to traffique or hold correspondence with *Turky*. It would infinitely be to his satisfaction to disappoint the *Grand Seignior* of that yearly Custom he was forced to when his *Carravans* go by the way of *Aleppo* or *Tripoli* to the *Venetian*, *Genoan*, *French*, or other European Merchants, *for* the *Tanisaries* were maintained by those Customs: What was this, but to sharpen his Enemies Sword to his destruction? Concerning Sir *Robert Sherley*, he had been long of his acquaintance, and exprested as many considerable favours towards him (though a stranger and a *Christian*) as to any of his born Subjects. That if *Nogdi-beg* had aspersed him unjustly, he shold have satisfaction: It argued indeed, *Nogdi-beg* was guilty, in that he rather chose to destroy himself by the way, than adventure a purgation. In some sorte he prefig'd my rigour; for had he come, and been found faulty, By my head, (an Oath of no small force) he should have been cut in as many pieces as there are days in the Year, and burnt in the open Market with dogsturds. Now touching a League of Friendship with the King your Master, I chearfully embrace it: and concerning your self, you are truly welcome. And seeing you have done me that Honour none of my Predecessors ever had before; for you are the first Ambassadour that ever came from *Great Britain* in that quality into my Countrey, you may deservedly challenge the more respect. Yea, as I account your Master Chief of the worshippers of *Iesu*, so do I of your self in a superiour degree to any other Ambassadour now present.

This said, the King sat down again. And whereas all *Mahometans* sizzed or knock their heads against the ground and kis his garment; in a friendly manner he pulled our Ambassadour near him, and seated him by his side, smiling that he could not sit cross-legg'd: and after Audience, in another Apartment calling for a bowl of Winc, there drunk his Master's health; at which the Ambassadour stood up, and uncovered his head; which being noted by the *Pot-shaugh*, the more to oblige he lifted up his Turbant: and after an hours entertainment, dismissed him with much satisfaction.

It is a real truth, that *Aures aq, Oculi Regum sunt multi*, so we found (though not the occasion) that the King's good will became soon diverted: For, from that day till we arrived at *Cazbyn* (albeit no offence was given,) neither was the Ambassadour cajol'd at Court, nor law he the King, neither did any *Sultan* invite or visit him: all which was imputed to the envy of *Mahomet Ally-beg*, who by bribery was made our enemy; one that for his faculty in diving into other Mens actions, and informring the *Pot-shaugh* with his observations, made a shift to engrof the Royal favour, insomuch as most busines of State passed through this impure conveyance: so that it came to this at length, whom he loves the King honours, such as he hates the King crushes all to pieces. To have his good opinion each great Man out-vies others; insomuch that his annual coming in *visus & modis* was bruited to be sev'n score thousand pounds *sterling*. And well might he, since *Myer-beg* (the Overfeer of the King's *Harams*) has a hundred thousand pounds yearly, if it be true that some there assured me.

Sors nostra humili! *Tamer-beg's* House at the North end of the Town entertained us twelve long dayes and nights, (so long the Court stay'd after we got thither;) where the Sun darted his outragious beams so oblique upon us, as made us believe we fel more heat when we were within the burning *Zone*, than we did in *Ashraff* at that present: Nor did the Sun we thought more torment us in the day, than did thole innumerable swarms of Gnats, Musqueto's and like vermine in the night season. Howbeit, our comfort was, that if it were so for any continuance, our short stay there was some

sort of prevention. And yet, though our sufferings were great in one sense, the extremity of the *Per Jzag's* justice, or rigour I may better call it, was more in another, as his miserable Subjects felt it in a higher degree. I shall give but a few instances; too many of so brave a Prince, whose Vertues ballance his infirmities. And seeing they are the reports of some I met there who had been long in *Perisia*, I will with *L. Curtius* stay, *Plura scribo quia credo, nec enim affirmare ausus sum, &c.*

A poor distressed wretch bestowing a long and tedious pilgrimage from *Cabul* to this place upon some little busyness, 'tis he knew what the successe would be, unhappy reflit his weary limbs upon a field-carpet; chooling to refresh himself rather upon the cool grafs than be tormented within the Town by the merciles vermine; poor Man! he fell *a modo in pepe*: for snorting in a climacterick hour, at such time as the King set forth to hunt, his pamper'd jade startling, the King examines not the caufe, but sent an eternal arrow of sleep into the poor Man's heart; jeaſting (as *Iphicrates* did when he flew his sleepy Centinel) I did the Man no wrong; I found him sleeping, and alleep I left him. Poor wretch! happy only in this, *Æneæ magni dextra ecclidis!* The Courtiers also (as the Negroes in *Manicongo*, who when their Captain receives a hurt by war or accident, sympathize by voluntary maiming themselves in the like part) to applaud the fact, parasitically made him their common mark; killing him a hundred times over if so many lives could have been forfeited. The *Latin* Poet justly reproving such tragick acts could say,

Regia (crede mihi) res est succurrere laisi.

Mercy is the trueſt Conqueror. This is not unlike the practice of *Artaxerxes* his great Anceſtor; who riding to hunt the Lion, caused *Megabizus* a noble Youth to be beheaded, for no other fault than darting a towzed Lion that made at him before the King began to throw, as *Ctesias* relates. A punishment far exceeding the offence undoubtedly. Nor like that other *Artaxerxes* who is no leſs famous for his mercy, by ordering the cutting off the *Tiaras* or *Turbans* of ſeveral Men condemned to lose their heads; the Law by this his ingenious and Prince-like conſtruction being ſatisfied, *An. Merell. l. 30.* But how highly ſoever they extol their King, I prefer that noble *Pagan* before him, who had this excellent Maxim of *Jucundus*, *Nulla unquam de morte hominis curvatio longa eſt;* Decay cannot be long where life's concern'd.

A Soldier's Wife having fed too high, in a luſtful bravado petitioned the King for naſtal help, her Good-man proving impotent. A dangerous impudence! The King finds it to reflect upon himſelf, (old at that time and Maſter of four thouſand Concubines) ſo as he promises her ſpeedy juſtice: calls his *Physicians*; and when *Phlebotomy* was held too mean a remedy for her diſtemper, they gave an *Aſſinego* an *Opium* potion, which fo enraged the Bealt, as by force he baſely became her executioner.

There are *Molliflissa fandi tempora*, which are not alwayes light upon: as appeared in a needy Souldier, who drawing up a catalogue of his good ſervices, cloſing it in want, and humbly entreating ſome ſtipend from his god of War for ſuch and ſuch good Services: *Non bis peccauerit;* for, for his fawcineſs he was drubb'd (with many baſtinadoes on the ſoles of his feet) well-nigh to death; and (imitating *Pyo* the Judge in *Seneca*, lib. 1. cap. 16.) examines who it was that wr̄t it? The Clerk makes his apoloſie: but the King ſuffering Paſſion to predominate over Reaſon, that he ſhould never write worse, makes his hand to be cut off; giving the poor wretch juſt cauſe to ingeminate *Oh! quam velle me nesciri literas.* Thus we ſee the worst Tyranny is Law upou the Rack; *Summum tu summa eſt injuria.*

Two needy Knaves were arraigned in the Divan, and condemned for ſtealing: maſily grievous taunts the Pot-flaw levelled, ſaying, They defered death for daring only to come ſo neare his Court ſo ragged. They confes they therefore ſtole, that they might wrap themſelves in better cloathing. *Abbas* not ſatisfied with their excufe, commands two new Velfs to be brought: but Winding-sheets had been more proper; for the Executioner forthwith dragged them away, and upon two sticks ſtak'd them up on their Fundamenta. An Execution practised of old in *Perſia*, as appears by that Decree of *Cyrus* mentioned in the 6. of *Ezra*, v. 11. *Elevatum Corpus infigatur super lignum*, as the 70 render it.

Such, and ſuch other was his inhumane paſtime during our ſtay at the *Caffian* S.a. But enough, or rather too much, upon ſuch a Subject; especially relating to ſo great and generous a Prince, as notwithstanding these mistakes is beloved as well as feared at home, and abroad no leſs highly honoured: Therefore to record the variety of tortures here too muſch uſed by men-eating Hags of Hell, Cauiial-hounds, Capigli and their death-

twanging Bow-strings, ripping up Mens Guts, and the like; what could be the effect, but an odious and unneccesary remembrance? Whole Image do such as are cruel bear but his, whose true Title is, the Destroyer? To take away Life is an easie thing, not so to restore it. — But, Sovereign Princes, by the duty of their place usually protect their Subjects from wrong, repreſt factions, reward the good, punish the bad, preserve the publick peace, conſerve the Law, and encourage Sciences and Arts, by which they gain immortal honour to themſelves; yea, make their Dominions famous and wealthy: Thence it is the Poet says, and that truly,

*Fallitur egregio quisquis sub principe credit
Seruitum: nunquam libertas gravior extat
Quam sub Rego pio.*

For by theſe few sad Instances we ſee that ſtraiſt is the ſingle Path that leads to Life, but to Death many Road-wayes appear. And Life, albeit *Culamus the Brachman* arguing with *Alexander*, maintained that nothing is more deſpicable than Life, and made it good upon himſelf, therein being *Felo de ſe*, believing the immortality of the Soul, which he fancied was Spirit mixt of Fire and Air, and that this ſpiritual Elleſe was but clogg'd with Clay, 'tō as he could with confidence aver, that *Angustus eft animus quem terrena delectam*; yet St. *Augustine* has a contrary opinion; for he put that Value upon Life as induced him to maiatain that *Musca Soli preferenda eft, quia Sol caret vita, sed Musca vitam habet*; A Fly is to be preferred befor the Sun which hath no Life, as the Fly hath. And albeit nothing be more commendable in Princes than Justice, for it is that which makes them Gods; yet Clemency is of greatest exaltation by being moft honourable. *Tully* (though a Heathen) affirms as much in his Oration to *Cesar* for the Life of *Ligarius*; "Thy Clemency (O *Cesar*) is moft excellent, yea "more honourable than thy other Vertues: Fortune hath made thee great, but Na- "ture hath advanced thee higher, in thy inclination unto mercy. Nor can they well be ſeparated, ſeeing that a Prince, exalted above others in dignity, is tied to an im- partial way, neither hating nor fearing any, but rewarding and punishing as caufe requireth; without which, contempt or confuſion followeth. But to theſe irregularities of *Abbas* I may not give the Attriſte of Justice; ſince, if the punishment exceed the fault, Justice then degenerates into Cruelty: a Vice odious to God, who is the Father and Fountain of Mercy; and unto Men, who are too apt to imitate bad Examples; conceiting any Act, though never ſo unnatural, if moulded after ſuch a pattern, commendable. Yea, we ſee, that Heathen Potentates ſwerving from the Divine Rule of Justice, pamper the corrupt habit of their minds, out of a monſtrous opinion that they may every way inebriate their luſt without controul: as appears by thoſe inhumane Games exercized in the *Roman Amphitheaters*; by that barbariſm *Xerxes* (as *Xenophon* notes) praclifed on *Masistes* his Brother, and other Satrapa's; ſuch in *Dejoces* (Father to *Phraates*) who laboured utterly to exterminate the *Persian* generosity; and may add the miſerable Tragedy of his Son, the memory whereof is recent through part of the greater *Asia*.

Abbas, by divers Wives, had ſeveral Children; for whose education neither coſt, nor care, was ſpared: Of moft hope were *Iſmael*, *Sophy-myrsa*, *Codobandis-Sultan*, and *E-mangoly*; four brave young Princes; the two firſt were begot on *Gordina*, Daughter of *Simon-cawn*; the latter two of *Marta*, Daughter of *Scander-myrsa*; both Georgians, both Christians: the firſt Lady was brought thence by *Kurchuk-i-cawn*; the other by *Shaw-Tamas-Coolibeg*; both being *Persians*, both Favourites: all of them ſo dear to *Abbas*, that it ſeemed he then had got the Elixir of Earthly happiness: His Wives were ſo incomparably beautiful, his Favourites ſo exactly faithful; and his Sons ſo lively the Characters of his Peſon, policy and courage; reciprocally joying the aged King, and over-joying the warlike *Persians*. But it is commonly obſerved, that as the moft excellent things alter ſoonely, and that no day is ſo ſerene that is not shadowed with ſome Cloud; ſo this candor and perſection in theſe youthfull Princes quickly vaniſhed. For *Iſmael* (when by reaſon of his delight in Arms and quick ſigns of magnanimity, the *Asiatick* world gaz'd and admited him) in an infernal cloud of poſon went down to an untimely grave at nineteen, in the meridian of his ſplendour. *Sophy-myrsa*, dogg'd by a like adverſe deſtinie, though elevated at firſt for revealing a conſpiracy, was in the end at equal years throw... down and culſit to death, after the dumb *Caygi* had got a hateful victory, meer jealousy in the King commanding it. And *E-mangoly*, 'ere his popular applaue could hatch his rule, upon conſeſſion with a Witch that understood the Almuten of his na- tivity,

tivity, perceiving that short life attended him, grows fearful of his Sires inconstancy, and in a deep and disconsolate melancholy evaporates his sad Spirits; leaving the expectation of hazard and Sovereignty to *Codobanda Sultan*, surnamed *Soffee*; who (made wife by his Brother's miseries) so prudently behaved himself in duty to the King, and in a pleasing and safe distance to the People; that *Abbas* dotes, the People celebrate, and an uncontrollable good Fortune seems to dandle him. Affability, bounty, loyalty, courage, and experience in Arms, at home and abroad; the *Perſian* Monarchy, *Turk*, *Arab*, *Magar* and *Tartar*, admiring, fearing, and commanding him in several Eulogies: so as his own left nothing unsaid or un-invented that might honour him; and his enemies without giving their thoughts the lyce, could not but idolize him. Who, for all that, (not like our common Spirits, inflated by every vulgar breath upon every act deſcire themſelves, and conceit all great additionis of honour below their merits,) ſtood immovable; ſorry he grew ſo popular; modestly chiding them for flattery; and condemned himſelf of hypocriſie by ſuffering his victories to be ſo gilded; ſince what he had or did was but a reſlex of his Father's vertue, which he doubted might ſuffer an eclipſe by his accumulation. Oh! how execrable is this marrow-fretting ſcab of jealousy and envy! it converts that reason which only makes us Men, without any regard of juſtice into bratſhneſſes; yea, to exceed in cruelty the moſt unreasonable and moſt violent Creatures! Is *Abbas* a King, a Father? does clemency belong to any attribute more properly? Is *Soffee Sultan-mirza* a Prince, his Son? On whom can he more justly conſer his love? in whom ſhould Vertue rather dwell? where can there be a better center? Poor Prince! the path he treads to add luſtre to his Father's Diadem and to oblige his Country, betrays his ſteps, and intices him to an affrighting precipice: For, the more he indulges his Father, it ſerves as fuel to an unjuſt jealousy; the more he dignifies his Country by his good ſucceſs againſt the *Turk*, the more applaſe the People crown him with; but *Abbas* fears the more his popularity: Yea, ſo far fears, ſo much degenerates from paternal piety, that without pity or regard of juſtice (which malces Kings moſt beaſtly when circled with Diadems) he contrives his ruine.

During theſe his Cabinet-machinations, the Prince brandiſhes his ſteel in proud *Arabia*; where after ſeveral conqueſts the Victor himſelf became captivated. For an *Arabian* Princess, of great beauty (and in ſuch Bodieſ usually are impaled the faireſt Souls) fettered him; but ſuch was his bravery and worth as he quickly redeemeſt himſelf, and made her his paſtore; ſuch magick and interchanges are in love, ſuch magnetick power hath Princeley vertue. By this Lady he had two Children, *Soffy* and *Fayma*; a name given her (as I ſuppoſe) in memory of *Fayma* the Wife of *Moris Ally*, though not unlike both in Name and perfection to that loveliy *Phædima* who was the Daughter of *Othe* a noble *Perſian*, mentioned in the 4. lib. of *Herodotus*. This young Princeſs *Fayma* was no leſs loved by *Soffee-Mirza* the Sire, than doted on by the Grandſire *Abbas*. A ſtrange affection, to diſtinguiſh ſo unnaturalily! to ſeparate where Nature had ſo strongly united! to hate the graft, and to endear the fruit! But that his hate might ſlow more currantly and leſs ſuſpected, he looks one way and aims another; ſeeks to enrage by abuſing him who loved moſt dearly, *Magar* an *Arab*, the Prince's Tutors, a faithful and prudent Servant. And indeed *Vix bonus ſolus eft prudens*, *Ariſtotele* tells us in his *Ethicks*. Such was *Magar*, whom *Abbas* calls for, and in lieu of rewarding him for his Sons generous Education, darts him a ſtern frown, accuſing him of pride, and charging him that he had bewitched the Prince with a diſloyal ambition. *Magar* for all his prudence ſees not the venome prepared; and therefore in an humble but confident innocence, excuses and endeavours to quiet him. But the more he vindicates himſelf, and the clearer he made the *Mirza*'s loyalty appear, the more he exasperates the King, ſo as the higher was his rage inflamed. At firſt the King amazes him with a volley of defamations, and in that maze gives the ſign: a dreadfuſ sign! for forthwith the Blood-thirſty *Capigies* break in and strangl him. A barbariſm! an act ſo unbecoming that famous King, that with the vulgar ſort to this very day it will not be credited: Nevertheleſs, Fames shrill-mouth'd Trump ſounds it abroad, ſo that the Prince (then in action againſt the *Tartar*) has no notice of it. Whereupon, as a Man void of ſenſe, immediately he leaves the Camp; and being come to Court, after many ſignals of sorrow, beſeeches the King that he may know the reaſon of *Magar*'s death: who flashes him this thundring retort, For thy ambition. The Prince calls Heaven to witneſs his loyalty: but *Abbas* provokes him furthier, to have more colour to ſatisfie the world in his deſigned deſtruſion. The Prince inflamed with paſſion, in that diſtracſion imagines he ſaw *Magar* a strangling; and in that ecclatric unſheathes his ſword, vowed to reſcue him. In the greatest, nay I may ſay the wiſeſt of Men, Reaſon hath not at all times the predominance over Paſſion; as we find

exemplified in *Sha-Abbas*, an illustrious Prince, and at sometimes reputed an indulgent Father: but now so far from that, that he sorrows not the least at his distraction; but upon this miserable advantage (by some fair terms first disarming him) invites him into another room, and (pretending he was not very well) withdrawing himself, commanded seven big-bon'd villains, deaf and dumb, through a trap-door to issue into the room armed with bloody minds and deadly bow-strings; whose very looks as well as habits and weapons quickly bewray their office and intention, which needed no other interpreters. The Prince innocently admires the cause, and if Oratory or other way of intreaty could have wrought remorse in these hell-hounds, only till he knew the ground of this cruel command, he had afforded it: But well knowing they were without reason and inexorable, with an incomparable rage and vivacity he flew upon those monsters; now one, then another receiving such testimonies of his courage, that (ere they could fasten upon him their ghastly twanging bow-strings) he sent three of them to the Devil; and for some time defended himself, offending those blood-hounds with admirable courage and dexterity; insomuch that had he mastered but any weapon, he had doubtless saved himself, and sent them packing; but wanting it, his breath failed, and longer his valour could not nourish him, for *Facile est vincere non repugnare*: so at last they fastened their nooses on him, who now for want of breath was as a dead Man; and the villains had triumphed in his further tortures, had not the King (who it seems was not far off) prevented it, commanding them ouely to pinion him, and (before he could recover sense and strength by drawing a flaming steel before his eyes made him stark blind; forbidding him the sight of what he most loved, Wife, Babes, Friends and *Mazar's* Carcass: By which impious *Aisa* lost her fairest Jewel, *Perzia* her Crown of Honour, and *Mars* his Darling.

The loss of this brave Prince was quickly rumoured: All *Perzia* mourns, and in many Threnodies sighs Farewell: the Army also swells with passion; but seeing no remedy, by a forced silence mutinur their imprecations. The Prince, when he perceived his own undoing, (the eye of Reason left him such a fight,) having curst his birth, his fame, his loyalty, and (which is most sad) his parent; by many frantic threats vows his destruction: But *Vana fini viribus ira*, finds his revenge impossible; yet at that conceit roars hideously, and not to be comforted, till *Suliman-mirza*, *Curchuk-caru* and other his Kinsmen and *quoniam* Favours flock about him, and by their miserable examples dictate patience: none of which but in some measure had swoon big with the King's infusion in their times, and through like jealousies were made blind, or crusht and damned to perpetual Imprisonment.

In those discontented times *Abbas* kept his Orb, moving like another *Saturn*: for now he imagines his Crown sit close to his head, nothing appearing that might disturb his quiet: and amongst his delights, nothing so much pleased him as young *Fatyma*; no *Syren* was melodious in song, no creature delicate in feature, save pretty *Fatyma*: If any stood in fear, who could compote his passion but *Fatyma*? Court and Kingdom admired his love to this pretty Favourite, and no less rejoiced at it; for by this innocent Lady they oft-times found the way to expel his rage, and how to pleasure him: The Prisoners also by *Fatyma* got livelihood, for want of which they were oft-times well-nigh famished, noise but she daring to meditate; and thus by this good Infant gained they what formerly they pined for; food and comfort. But what joy has the blinded Prince, since he cannot participate? Revenge delights him more; that word as Mufick best pleases the infernal fancy of this melancholy *Mirza*; not caring how detestable, so *Abbas* suffered. The Devil inspires new rage and blows the coals of (more than cruel) assauillant: For albeit he passionately loved *Fatyma*, yet hearing how his Father doted on her, that afresh begets his hate, yea hatches the Innocents confusion. Oh! in him behold the savage and transcendent cruelty of cursed Man: Revenge had plunged him headlong into a whirl pool of unnatural barbarism; insomuch, as when the pious Child came (in an unlucky hour) to bring him comfort, and by all symptoms of duty to express a lovely obedience; the wretch grasps and in a lymphatick fury whirls her neck about, unable to untwist her self from his wrathful hands, miserable *Fatyma* expiring by her Hellish Father; and in her, the joy of Parents, delight of *Abbas*, candor of *Perzia*, and comfort of the distressed, vanishing. The astonished Prince his Wife cries out. His sight deceived him, that it was *Fatyma*! little dreaming, that he therefore martyred her because *Fatyma*. And, as if that had not been enough, (to prevent the King of a Successor) hearing young *Soffee's* voice, dolorously crying out for *Fatyma*, winged with rage he gropes for him; but by the Princesses interpolating the Child escaped, or else had lost (what he now enjoys) the *Perzian* Diadem.

Abbas when he had notice of this Tragedy, grows so outrageously passionate that many feared he would become his own executioner: But when he had drenched his follow in a Sea of salt tears, he moderates his spleen, and revives upon hopes of additional punishment; vowing to retaliate his distracted act in the height of cruelty: Which being told the Prince, had so terrible a reply, with a million of dismal curses added, that the King was as one affronted. To conclude, after he had tyred out a few more minutes with impatience, and considered that Death only sets Man free from the misery of this World by breaking under the chains of bondage, the third day he put a period to his Life by quaffing up a cup of poison. *Non malum est mori, sed mori male,* saith St. Chrysostome: Nevertheless, the King shewed needless Ceremony in his Obsequies. The disconsolate Prince sequestred her self from the sight of Man: but since her Son's coming to the Crown, whether he hath by his benign aspect banished her discontent, and in some measure allwaged her sorrow, I could not learn; but for *Abbas* himself he bad the World farewell a little after our departure. Now after this digression, give me leave to give you a brief survey of the quality and condition we find *Hyrcania* at our being there.

HYRCANIA (now under the Dominion of the Persian King) hath to the East *Merciana*, to the South Mount *Taurus*, to the West *Armenia* and part of *Media Atropatia*, and North the *Caspian* Sea: Treble it is in length from East to West, what it is in breadth from North to South; a Countrey known in several Ages by severall Names. For *Mercator* names it *Diusgament*; *Augiobel*, *Strava*; and 'tis also called *Corca*, *Casson*, *Steana* and *Caspia* by other Authors: but by the Hebrews it was called *Hedorum*; by the *Tartars*, *Kabonchara*; and by *Pynetus*, *Kyri-zath*, which lat gives some occasion to imagine, that it was into this place the *Affryrian* transplanted those Inhabitants of *Damascus* that are mentioned in the 2 Reg. 16. 6. *Josephus* also gives the like name, for he terms it *Kyrene*, but places it in *Media*, as in more due place will be remembred. Nevertheless, at this day not part as some would, but whole *Hyrcania* is by the *Persians* named *Mazcubram*.

By the several days journeys we rode within this Kingdom, I observed that it is in most places of a good soil, through the benevolency of the Clime; replenished with grafts, fruit, corn, flowers and the like; and hath cattel in great plenty: Moreover, for their manner of Husbandry, Buildings and civility, more resembling ours of *Europe* than any other we had hitherto observed in *Asia*. And though the foil be good, the Earth no doubt is much bettered by those many Rivers and Rivulets that springing from *Taurus* stream abundantly and delightfully through the Country, and empty themselves into the *Mare Caspium*: Such are *Cyrus* and *Cambyses*, which gave two great Kings their Names, and near which of old the *Obares* and the *Oleni* inhabited, *Araxis* and *Obel*: four Rivers that deduce their Springs near each other in Mount *Ararat*; *Comac*, which divides *Media* from *Hyrcania*, *Mazeras*, *Bundama*, *Hydero* illusing some suppos: out of the Deserts of *Lop*, *Argus* fally said to drill from the *Molossians*; and others, which after a long trickling race having mellowed the Earth, disembogue themselves into the *Caspian*. Near the Mountains they have sometimes a distempered Channel; for after great rains or melting of snow, they commonly over-flow the lower grounds: but the best is, those Land-floods meliorate the Earth, and are but of very short continuance. I could neither see nor hear of that which *Strabo* in his 11. lib. reports concerning some Rivers here which fall so violently from the Rocks, that Men may pass under the Water as under an arch without wetting: some Water-works indeed there be at *Ab. Sefat* that by Art have that very resemblance. But in old times it so superabounded with Wood, as that the whole was called *Sylvia Hyrcana*; and whence in probability it was that the *Scythians* termed it *Hercoon*, i. e. *A solitary place* in their Language: which nevertheless nourished offensive Creatures of several Kinds, as Snakes, which we saw abundance of, but more especially Lions, Wolves, Foxes, Wild-Cats, Boars and Tygres; which lat, a *Roman* Poet mentions with an Emphasis, saying,

Them with their dogs Hyrcanian Tygres fed.

Hyrcanæq; admirunt ubica Tygi

Albeit since the Woods have been destroy'd, Towns built and the Country inhabited, it is much altered: for Tygres we saw none; but (as a good exchange) found plenty of Cows, Bullocks, Horses, Camels, Sheep, Mules, Deer, red and fallow, Antilopes, Hogs, Goats and other like beasts; and of Birds, store of Hens, Pheasants, Partridges, Nightingales, Pouts, Quail, Wood-cock, Thrush, and other Birds; of Fish, especially near the *Caspian*, Sturgeon, Mullet, Mussel, Dog fish, Eels, Tunneys and others: Grain also of molt sort, and Fruits and Roots in great variety: But that Tree called *Ochus*, which

which is said to distil Honey, we found not; but one that had sweet sap or juice, which 'tis likely gave the occasion of that report: but of Oak, Elm, Ash, and molt in Mulberry-trees there is great plenty.

In former times *Tambraze* (that was in vain besieged by *Selenchus Callinicus*,) *Telebrota*, *Sarmanna*, *Adrapa*, *Soonda* or *Soconaa*, *Sorbas*, *Ajsmurna*, *Tapen*, *Carta* and *Mausaca*, were Towns of note; but now totally lost, unless they be revived in *Farrabaut*, *Ajhasat*, *Abassebaut*, *Perisow*, *Omoal*, *Barfrusidea*, *Chacoporo*, *Caban*, *Bildith*, *Buedz*, *Dardour*, *Gengee*, *Sumachy*, *Erez*, and *Bach*. Nigh which last is a Spring of that rare kind of Oyl or clammy substance which some call *Neft*; but whether of that kind we find mentioned in the 2 *Macchab.* 1. 36. which *Nehemiah* sprinkled the Wood with that was laid upon the Altar, after it was exhausted from the pit wherein the Priests had concealed the holy Fire, at such time as they were led captive into *Perisia*, I cannot say; save that the Name *Naphtar* and *Nephti* there mentioned, as well as the quality, have some resemblance. Thus *Nephta* is an oily or fat liquid substance, in colour not unlike soft white clay; of quality hot and dry, so as it is apt to inflame with the Sun-beams, or heat that illies from Fire: as was mirthfully experimented upon one of *Alexander's* Pages, who being anointed, with much ado escaped burning.

Many such strange Springs have been found: *Aristote* mentions one in *Carthage*; at *Oecus* in *Theessaly* another such was as *Pliny* reports; neat *Oxus* as *Curtius*; and the like near *Babylon*: for that at *Cardava* in *Saxony* near *Brunswick* is rather a sort of *Bitumen*, not unlike that is evaporated in the *Mare mortuum*. This strange Spring puts me in mind of another memorable Water we saw and tafted of at *Chacoporo* a Town about twelve miles West from *Farrabaut*, both of them upon the brink of the *Mare Caffium*: For 11. Months it is sweet and potable; but one Month every Year so brackish, as renders it unfit to drink or to dries meat with. *Plutarch Vita Antonii* relates, how that *Mark Anthony* having marched through *Media* into *Hyrcaenia*, besieged *Phraata* the principal Town of that Province; but his battering-Engines being surprised in the way by *Phraates* the *Parthian King*, and wanting *Vitual*, *Anthony* was forced to retire, (haste to enjoy his *Cleopatra* adding to his speed;) so as after seven and twenty days he passed the *Arasis*, over which he had built a Bridge which was broken by the Enemy: in that march he lost 4000 Horse and 20000 Foot, most of which died of fluxes and thirst. The reason I make mention of this, is in regard the story says he past a River that to view appear'd very clear; but the Souldiers thinking to assuage their thirst found it increased by the brackish Water: for it gnawed their guts, and put them into other distempers. Now seeing some take *Phraabut* for the reliques of *Phraata* above-named, it is very likely that this salt Stream at *Chacoporo* was the same which *Plutarch* takes notice of in that expedition. And that there are Springs and Rivers of several taftes as well as colours, is in no wise to be questioned; for thence it is that some conclude a *Spiritus Mundi*: Now concerning colours I have alreadie instanced; and as to taste, the Sea (experience teaches) is salt; nor by Nature but by agitation partly, and partly through the power and efficacy of the Sun, which by his heat and beams attracts the small parts that be in the superficies of the salt Water. *Philosophy* also as well as Experience acquaints us, that in Summer the Sea is saltier than it is in Winter; and that the East and South Seas are most salt: vca, by common tryal it is so observed. Moreover, the Sea-Water is much thicker and stronger to bear (as we find by common experience) than fresh; whereby it comes to pass, that Ships leak and sink oftener in fresh Waters than they do in the Ocean. Besides, seeing salt has heat, we may perceive how that salt Water inflames rather than extinguishes Fire: and for proof therof have sundry examples; as particularly in lib. 7. *Macrobius*, and 10 *Symp.* *Plutarch*: the reason being evident, seeing drynes is a quality that makes it a friend unto the Fire: For as *Aristote* (Nature's principal Secretary) observes, salt Water has a sort of fatnes and oilynes incorporated. And albeit Water in it selfe (like the purest oyl) naturally is without either smell or taste; nevertheless per accidens it may have both, according as it doth participate with the quality of the Earth through whose veins it floweth; and from thence arises both colour, taste and smell; as we usually observe in such things as derive heat and tincture from Sulphur, Steel, Vitriol, Juniper, and the like. Now that the fat or oilynes of the Sea Water inflames, I could give many instances; but shall onely what was proved in that memorable Sea-fight 'twixt *Mark Anthony* and *Augustus Cesar* at *Actium* in the Gulph of *Lepanto*, as is record by *Plutarch* and other Historians. To return.

The Natives for the most part are exceeding courteous to Strangers, and hospitable; and in some parts no less industrious in Husbandry: they speake *Perisan*, yet have a peculiar Dialect of their own which they lesse use since they became subject to the *Perisan*; who

who oft-times would be very merry with them, but we could perceive it was in a deriding way: either occasioned from their imperfect Speech (as the *Parisian* mocks the *Norman* and *Gascoign*,) or simplicity of heart, or else from the report they meet with of the Womens courtesies: which though we saw little reason for, yet *Strabo lib. 12.* writes, That here the *Tapiro* inhabited of old; who after they had three or four Children, commonly used to lend their Wives to other Men to breed upon; and to which the Women as willingly condescended. A custom now abrogated, yet probably not wholly forgotten. For the Men, we found them (as I have said) of a very pleasant disposition, and delighted with novelties. Of old, their Ancestors (as the Abbot of St. Albans did with the *Norman* Conqueror) thought to have prevented *Alexander's* desired entrance: but with the same hand and instrument the *Gordian-knot* was cut, these *Hyrcanians* and their Wayes were mastered.



An. Hyrcanian.

A great part of the Countrey through which we past was Champaign, and near the Town incloſed with quick-set. One time I left the road to ride through a pleasant green Field; but many Snakes twined about my horses legs, without further harm than putting us both into an affright, and as it were aduising me another time to keep the road. We also past through great Woods: but of all the Trees I saw, none for number as well as use exceeded the Mulberry. For thirty miles riding that Tree had the preeminence: and larger of that kind I never saw, nor bearing more fruit, albeit 'tis the leaves they most value. The Berry if white pleased our belly best, the colour our eye, the leaves our observation: For indeed, in most Villages and Cottages we saw sheds filled with laborious People minding their enriching Silk-worms: an Inſect whereon Nature hath exprefſed ſo much Art as is scarce comprehenſible. This Worm, as in quality, in di- versity of shape alſo varies from other Worms: for her firſt generation rifeſ from a ſmall round ſperm leſs than Mustard-seed, which by laying in the Sun or other moderate heat increases to an inch; the firſt ſhape it aſsumes is like the Palmer-worm; from which reſem-

resemblance in six months space it twice changes. The male after copulation dies; whom the female soon follows so soon as she has laid her eggs or seed, which you please to call it. Her food is usually the leaves and boughs of Mulberry-trees, the white most delighting her; strewed every day fresh over her bed, which must be kept sweet and warm. The Worm being shut up eats greedily, frequently raising her little head; and being as it were tired, sleeps two days together; during which she casts her skin, and then eats with a fresh appetite: Soon after that she four several times casts her coat, and then having discharged her belly falls to work; in short space making her Lawn both winding-sheet and sepulcher. The Silk happens to be of such colours as are commonly laid before her, and is usually either white, yellow, green or sand-coloured; but being shut up, such is the transparency of the excrement that the Fly is discernable: The exterior part is in colour like pale Gold mixed with Lemon; the Silk rough and hairy; the interior part more hard and of an oval form, the better to inhum the Fly: whose task being done, sometimes she dies, other times she breaks forth; and then the Worm is metamorphosed into a Butter-Fly. Sometimes the silken-balls are exposed to the scorching Sun, though whose ardour the poor Worm is broiled to death; not unlike a Miser that voluntarily sacrificeth himself to death, so it be to contemplate his rich Idolatry: but by this expansion the Silk (they say) becomes finer than if suffered to break her habitude. After this, the cods are thrown into a cauldron, the Water being moderately hot; then with a cane the People stir them about, at once drawing the slimy Silk from as many as the Instrument can conveniently lay hold upon, and with a wheel draw off the Silk, raw, which being dry is folded. During the Winter season the Silk-worms sleep without eating, so as they seem dead; but in the Spring being laid in the Sun, revive again: A perfect type of the *Resurrection*. From the *Seres* or *Regio Serica* (part of *Scyria* towards *Indostan*) this Worm first came into *Persia*, not long before Alexander's time: but until the Emperour *Justinian*'s time (which was about the Year of our Lord 530.) it was not known in *Europe*; the first being presented by the *Persians* unto the Emperour at *Byzantium* as a rarity. That they afford honey, yield wax, build nests, and are a sort of Spider, *Aristotle* and *Pliny* so think; but I think the *Persian* King finds it most, from hence extracting 600 Barnans of raw Silk yearly.

Upon *Whistler-Monday* we bade farewell to *Asharaff*, *Shaw-Abbas* the same time removing his Court to *Cashyn*. The reasoun why he went one way and we another, was (as I suppose) that we might have the better prospect of his Countrey: for he went by *Persepolis*, we by *Larry-Joon*. The first nigh after we left *Asharaff*, we lodged in *Ferrabaut*, which is five miles from *Asharaff*.

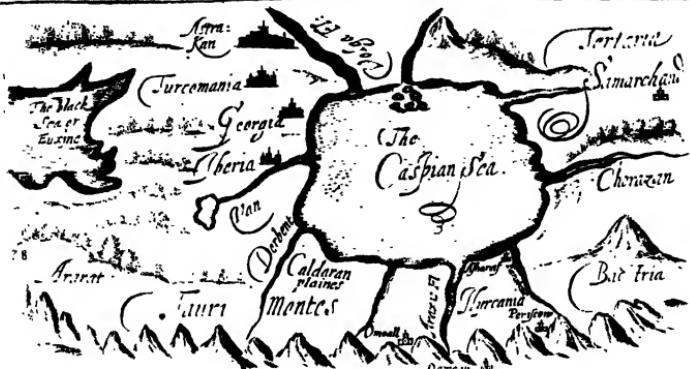
FERRABAUT is a Town upon the South-east side of the *Caspian* Sea, probably taking name from *Ferrag-bau* or *Ferrag-zed*, (*Bau* signifies a Garden, *Zed* a Son,) who succeeded *Shezr* or *Shaw-zu* Son to *Tazan-Zeddah*, that was predecessor to *Tezgird* the *Hyrcanian* King slain by the *Romans* about the Year of our Lord 595, five and twenty Years before the *Era* of the *Mahometans* took beginning. Some (how truly I know not) take this for the remains of old *Amarusa*; but I rather imagine it the reliques of that *Socanda* I find mentioned by *Plutony*: Nevertheless, other some there be that writing this City *Phraat-baut*, suppose it to be that *Phraata* which *Marcus Antonius* besieged such time as he invaded *Media*, to be revenged for the death of *Graffus* that rich and powerful *Roman* General who with thirty thousand of his Men were slain but lately before by *Phraartes* the *Parthian*, returning infected with but half his Men, the Bridges being broken by the *Parthians* that gave him pallage over the River *Araxis* and *Cyrus*. *Ulubbeg* calls it *Strabat*; and *Texera*, *Ebrebat*; Names borrow'd (as I imagine) from the 6. lib. of *Pliny* c. 16. where 'tis said, *Stauri gentes sunt circa Mare Caspium*. The situation of this City is upon a flat; the soil rich and beautified with Gardens full of fruit; watered by a stream of sweet water about forty paces broad, which springing from *Taurus* (the Mother of a fruitful womb) after a long and circling race, at this Town incorporates with the briny *Caspian*. The air nevertheless is not so pure here as we could find it was in most other places higher up: But whether caused from some insalubrious Matrices that are there, or from the vapours that usually arise from the Sea (a little mile thence) I am not able to determine. In stead of walls it hath a deep Moat or *Graff*; Willows and other Trees being planted upon the banks, which are broad enough to walk on, so as it gives both shade and ornament. The Houses differ from the common form of *Persia*: for they are not flat above, but like ours in *England* in the roof, also tiled and glazed according to the *English* fashion.

This Town has about three thousand Families: the streets are broad enough; not regularly built. The *Mechit* is not extraordinary; and two *Buzzars* it has, yet neither

of them singular. Few Houses but have their Gardens contiguous, which together make a combined beauty though seeming separate. Of most note is the King's House at the North end of the Town; from whose Balconies we had a large and delightful prospect into the Sea as far as *Talca* or *Tazara*, as the Isle was then called; and some of the Gardens extend to the brink of the *Mare Caspium*: This Palace has two square large Courts railed about, and the ground by the elaborate Gardiner was formed into Gras plats and knots of several sorts, and replenished with variety of Trees and Flowers, which makes the place seem exceeding pleasant; and amongst others Tulips and Roses were there so plentiful, that what is said of another is properly applicable to this, *Hic rosas nutrit nitidisq; flores Veris amari*: And amongst other Trees the spreading Chenores, Sycamores and Chestnuts surround the place with so much beauty, and every part of the House affords so amiable a prospect, as makes the eye and finell contend which shall surfeit soonest of variety. The Mulberry of both colours at that time presented us also with choice fruit, no less wholesome than pleasant: so as by way of gratitude give me leave to tell you, the *Egyptians* make that Tree the *hieroglyphick* of *Wisdom*; and upon this account, knowing that the frost is its deadly enemy, it seldom or never buds until the cold weather be wholly gone, and then as by instinct it puts forth speedily, and as quickly ripens to maturity.

This House of the Kings, though it be spacious yet is low; but the rooms are high enough, arched and of sufficient length, rather resembling Galleries than Rooms of State: Three of those Chambers were more richly furnish'd than the rest; for the sides were adorned with Looking-glasses, which irradiated the ceiling or roof arched and richly painted and in some part embossed with gold; but no *Baldacchino*, no cloth of State was there, the King being absent: the windows were of *Muscovian* Glaz, cemented with gold or what resembled it: Glass it was of large panes and very clear; which sort of glass (if that be a proper Name) is taken out of a Rock called *Slade* in *Cortilia* near to the River *Dwina* in *Russia*; and by being soft is easily cut in pieces, sliced into thin flakes, and preferr'd before other glass; both for that it is clearer and not so brittle nor so apt to burn as glass or horn. The floors we could not enter with our shooes on; *Accurum servi, soleas detrahunt* in *Terence* his *Heau*, as then was now here observed: but with good reason, seeing they were spread some with Velvet stuff with Down or fine Bombarine; others with rich Carpets and Calzoons of Bodkin and cloth of Gold. Howbeit, in Winter-time the *Por-shag* sleeps in sheets of costly Sables or rich short curled shag of the sheep of *Corazon*. In the Gallery where the Mirrors are, not only on the sides but on the arch over head in Story or Landskip is pencil'd several immodest sports and gambols; such as if *Aretine* had given the directions; *Lavelloes*, which so much offended our eyes with shame, that they are in no wise fit to be remembred: nor have I more concerning this, save it is the opinion of some, that *Ferrabaut* was the birth-place of that great Physician and Philosopher *Alfarabius*, who (as *Ben-Casem* writes) so much admired *Aristotele*'s Book of Physick that he read what is intituled *De Auditu* no less than forty times over; leaving this World in the Year of the *Hegira* 339. in his great Climacterie.

The *Caspian* Sea is deservedly ranked amongst the Wonders of the World. *Lucus rotundus Orbis maximus*, saith *Mercator* in his *Atlas*; for greatness, taste and colour, resembling (albeit without any visible mixture with) the Ocean: and which is admirable, never over-flows its bounds, albeit many great and notable Rivers, namely *Volga*, called *Rha* and *Edel* by some; *Araxis* which *Claud. Cesar* erroneously supposed did empty it self into *Euphrates* at his first compassing *Mesopotamia*; *Cyrus* now named *El-chir*; *Cambyles* now *Con-nac*; *Coraxis* now named *Coddors*; with *Obsel*, *Rhodage*, *Soconda*, *Mazeras*, *Zyoberis*, *Hydro*, *Sao*, *Aragus*, *Ilment*, *Syrio*, *Jaxartes* now called *Ardoc* and *Chefil*; *Oxus* now *Obia* and *Nycaphtac*, *Dynodore*, *Jehun*, *Habyn* and several other which run perpetually into this Sea, thereby swelling her concave womb; so as a wonder it is, it keeps within its compass, albeit the circumference be full 3000 miles. So that in all probability, it hath some secret vent or inlet into the *Euxin* or some other Sea: For considering how that these mighty Rivers are incessantly vomiting their full gorg'd watery stomachs into it, in reason it may be granted that it would over-flow its banks, did it not as well empty as receive. For that is but a weak assertion, That the Sun attracts equally by vapours to that exces of water which is poured in. The shape or figure of this Sea is oval. From North to South the diameter is about 600 miles: towards the shore 'tis shoal water and full of *Sytes*; so as Ships that usually pass over, draw not above eight foot water when they are loaden; but being a few leagues off at Sea, 'tis very deep and hardly fathomed.



It has several Names attributed, differing as the Nations differ. The *Arabians* call it (as they do all other great Lakes) *Bohar Corfun*; the *Russe*, *Chualensca-more*; the *Gegians* and *Sareas* name it *Cunzar*, *Bachu* and *Sale*, noted ports upon that Sea. The *Romans* termed it *Mare Hyrcanum*; the *Persians* *Ghylon*, and *Dervib Mozedram*: by which Name most of *Hyrcania* is called; albeit *Maginus* in his Adjuncts to *Ptolemy's Maps*, places it (erroniously as I apprehend) upon the South-east side, where *Mergiana* ought to be: Upon the North it has *Tartaria*, that part we call *Nagay*; on the East *Zagathai*; *Hyrcania* South; and part of *Media* and *Armenia* on the West, surrounded with lofty Hills, furnish'd with Fish, and upon the shore hath many Towns well peopled and traded to by sundry Nations. There is not any Author I know but confesses that it is Land-lockt, and hath no commerce or intercourse with the Sea by any visible paſſage through the superficies of the Earth; attel'd by Travellers, who in several progræsses by Land and Water, have found it such: Its vast body (as I said formerly) gains it the Name of Sea. A Name attributed to Lakes far les than this, as in the holy Land and other places, might be infall'd. This, as other Seas, is a gathering together of perpetual Waters nourish'd with Springs; which being in nature so rare, and by Learned Mens conjectures so obscure, suffer me to stay a while in the disquisition.

This (as some great Lakes and noted Rivers I shall hereafter mention) hath in all probability, as I lately said, some secret course, which gives it an intercourse with some Sea, and most likely with the *Euxine*, both because of its Voisnage, no other Sea being so near it as the *Euxine*, and for that the *Euxine* hath a current or flux, which from its eastern shore towards the *Mare Caspium* runs along the *Aſſuarium* of the *Palm Meotis*; which (as *Comarenus* the *Venetian* observed) hath a strong current towards the *Thracian Bofphorus*, and flows hence into the *Aſſean* and *Mediterranean* Seas; principally occasioned, as supposed, by the Water which by some invisible paſſage streams from the *Caspian*. *Plato* in his *Phaedo* fancies that there is a great abyſs (*Tartaria* he calls it) which he makes the magazine or original Fountain of all Waters; into which the Sea by ſubterraneous Caverns, at all times empties its ſuperfluities: a ſupposition *Ariſtote* diſlikes, inaſmuch as the Sea is the ſame at all Seasons; what it gets by Rivers and showers, loſing by exhalations and extenuations through the excelleſe heats that be uſual within the torrid Zone: *In qua cavitate omnes fluvii conſumpti & effundunt ſedem Abyssum dari probatur, ut una Volga tantam copiam aquarum perpetuo effundat in Mare Caſpium, qua totam terram obtigere potest; unde luculentus confusus dari tales meatus ſubterraneos in Mare; alioquin iſta immensa copia aquarum que ex Fluvii influit in Mare, mundum omnino inundaret*, saith that obſerver.

Let it then be granted, That this *Caspian* Sea by receiving *Volga* and thoſe many noted Rivers I lately mentioned, muſt neceſſarily by this ſurcharge of Water overflow its banks, had it not ſome ſecret vent to empty it ſelf, and probably into ſome other Sea. For, as our ingenious *Carpenter lib. 1. chap. 9. Geogr.* obſerves, we may demand, Whether thoſe imaginary Caverns (which *Plato* and others fancy) were ever fill'd with Water, yea or no? If fill'd, how are they capable of more? But that they were never fill'd, is not without an

an absurdity to imagin: As if any Cavern should be so vast and comprehensible, as in upwards of 5000. Years continual pouring in so much Water as those many great Rivers abundantly furnish, could be capable of holding more Water. How can it then rationally be otherwise imagined but that this *Caspian* hath some secret *meatus* or intercourse with some Sea; either by some unknown channel under ground, or River that clandestinely issues thereout. But that it hath a mixture with the *Euxine*, rather than with the *Persian* Gulph or *Scythique* Seas, may be gathered from its nearer voisnage to the *Euxino* by many hundred miles than any other Sea. It is nevertheless observable what an ancient Author writes, *Plutarchus, Dionysius & alii Scriptores ē Mari Scythico erumpere tradunt; unde Strabo, Parroclum nobiliter Scriptorem in ea fuisse sententia scribit, ut ex India ad Hyrcanos navigari posse crediderit:* meaning (as I apprehend) that either by the River *Oxus* or *Jaxartes* there is a passage into the *Caspian* Sea from that part of *India* which is about *Labore*. But those great Rivers emptying themselves into the *Mare Caspium* give it an increase or charge, but no discharge, which is our scrutiny. And albeit the passage or Vent be but conjectural, yet will it the sooner be believed by paralleling it with the like subterranea passages observed in several famous Rivers, of which I shall instance a few particulars. viz. Such is *Eridanus* or *Po* in *Italy*, *Eraasmus* in *Argolica*, the *Rhine* in *Germany*, *Tigris* through *Arctibia*, *Hypanis* in *Scybia*, *Ana* in *Spain*, which running fifteen miles under ground is a Bridge whereon 10000 sheep graze daily as the *Spaniard* boasteth; *Zyberis* in *Hyrcania*, which after 40 miles course under the Earth, reappears in the River *Rhodago*, *Alexander* at *Aristotle's* request by putting in 2 Oxen, made good the report; *Licus* in *Naulia*, our *Mole* in *Surrey*; but more remarkably the River *Alpheus* that waters the City *Elis* in *Morea*, which after a large race through *Achaea*, is swallowed up, and in some profound channel makes way through the *Mediterranean Sea* into the River *Arethusa* that waters the City *Syracuse* in *Sicily*.

— Alpheum, fama est hoc Eliidis amnem
Occultas egisse vias sub Maria, qui nunc
Ore Arethusa tuo Siculis confunditur undis.

as *Virgil lib. 3. Aeneid. Strabo lib. 6. Mela also*, *Alpheus dicitur se non confaciare Pelago, sed subier Maria terram; depresso, huc agere alvenum, atq; hic se rursum extollere, &c.* *Scaliger* likewise in his 37 Exercit. supposes the *Caspian* to have a recourse under ground into the *Euxine*. Moreover, that the *Caspian* hath some passage under ground and intercourse with the Ocean, may be presumed by its producing those kinds of Fish whose ordinary abode is in salt waters, namely Porpice, Conger, Gudgeon, Thornback, Turbut, Cackrel, Skate, Soles, Oysters, Lobsters, Crabs, Sturgeons, the roe of which makes Caveare; Cabriot the French call it, and Mullet, the roe of which makes Potargo (with other Sea fish I might mention) not delighting in fresh waters. Nor is this a new opinion, seeing that great Geographer *Strabo* in his Discourse thereof, *Suum Oceani ad Boream esse tradunt, &c.* and *Basil.* that great Scholiast in his 4. *Homil. Hexam.* saith, *Mare unum est, ut illi dicunt qui orbem perlungaverant; etiamque enim Hyrcanum & Caspium mare per se perforata sunt, hac iamvis duo maria in Pontum Euxinum sejst insinuant: possibile to him with whom nothing is impossible; but in making the *Hyrcanian* or *Caspian Sea duo maria* I know not his authority, seeing those two names make one Sea: Yet probably in that mistake taking *Aristotele* for his guide, who indeed so distinguishes them: An error observed and excused by *Vicomercatus* in his Comment. upon *Arist. Meteor.*, *In hoc* (saith he) *Aristoteles est condonandus, cuius temporibus nec Terra nec Mare plane perlustrata fuerant.* And for the better entercourse of the *Caspian* and *Euxine* some Monarchs of old, notwithstanding that vast distance of place and surging grounds which interpose, have attempted to cut such a sluice or channel as should be navigable for Vessels to pass from each other. For example *Selucus Nicander* with incredible labour and expence endeavoured what Art could effect to make them conununicable: but before his work was half done, he was unhappily slain by *Ptolemy Ceraunus* the *Egyptian* King, as *Eraasmus* relates, whereby his great design miscarried. Some of the *Persian* Kings also, whose immense power made them think nothing impossible, attempted the like, untill by fruitless endeavours they were made to understand their vanity.*

Now, to know whether this *Caspian* have that property other salt Seas have, as to ebb and flood; to satisfy my curioulty, one day I stooed some hours upon the strand purposly to observe its motion; and albeit there was little or no wind stirring at that time, yet the water was somewhat turbulent and rolling especially towards the shore, and not unlike what we observe in calm weather in our narrow Seas, and in its waves

resembled a flux and reflux of the water; and though not in such a measure as with us upon the English shore, yet more than is within the Baltic Seas, and the water more salt; than in the Baltic being fresh by reason of the store of melted snows which with the fresh water floods is incessantly poured in; as in some measure 'tis in the Caspian, which is the cause that it abounds so much with Eels, Lampreys, Trouts and such other Fish as love to be in the fresh waters; and withal to manifest its saltiness is proved by the plenty of Mullet, Sturgeon, Lobsters, Oysters, and those other Fish I lately mentioned. So as to speak positively, I shall with Scaliger in his Exercitat. against Cardan say, *In Oceanis litora del Zur Boreali, nullus est astus, &c.* which may be the condition of the Mare Caspium.

But to affign a reason for the ebbing and flowing of the Sea is a task too hard for me, seeing it hath puzzl'd great Scholars not a little: That of *Euripus* amazed Aristotle, though Secretary of Nature; being indeed to be ranked *inter occulta Natura*. For albeit none may circumscribe the powerful acts of the Almighty within the compass of natural causes, nevertheless some ascribe the proper cause unto that vast flux of fresh Water, which in places infinite is perpetually poured in by Rivers; as also from the clouds in a vast proportion. Some likewise ascribe it to the equilibrium of the Earth and Sea; but the most plausible opinion, especially of the Platonists, is from the powerful influence of the Sun and Moon (the noblest if not the greatest of all the Planets) as the principal causers; especially the Moon, which undoubtedly hath a great influence over all moist Bodies, of which the Sea is chief. So as at the full Moon, when the Sun gives her the greatest light and power, the Sea then flows highest, and ebbs lowest, as her light decreases; and agreeable to her course we see the tides are higher and lower: For as *Acellus* in his 14. lib. notes, The Sea is the Moon's associate, ebbing and flowing as the Moon grows old and young; altering as the Moon alters, and palles the *Cali Cardines*; such and so powerful are the influence and operation of her beams. Others nevertheless ascribe this ebb and flood to the saltiness of the Sea; which saltiness (Aristotle says) is caused by the Sun's exhaling the thinner and fresher parts thereout, leaving behind what is thick and brinilish: or (as Scaliger) by some participation with some sulphureous minerals which vapour amongst it: upon which account it is Aristotle in his *Problems* asserts, that the Sea is hot. Now that saltiness is the efficient cause may the rather be granted, in that 'tis demonstrative that salt waters have much more heat than fresh waters have. For, albeit spirits are concealed in all sorts of humids bodies, yet do they appear most in what is salt: whence some observe, That those vigorous spirits which exift in the salt humour, is, or at least causes that tumour which we ordinarily in fair weather see moving the surface of the Sea which ebbs and flows in various motion; which moves Carpenter in his *Geogr.* to say, That the Sea as a Terrestrial Heaven, therein imitates the celestial Orbs; from whence proceeds this turbulent motion. Howbeit, we may not imagine that this flux and re-flux of the Sea is so discernable in the Ocean far from Land as 'tis in the narrow Seas near the shore, where we behold the Sea violent and raging if disturb'd by wind, and fretting by having bounds, but rather stable and to the eye without any perspicible motion. Upon which consideration it is that Homer terms the Ocean A great standing Pool, and Seneca resembles it to a dull mafs or heap of matter, which Nature could not bring to perfection. Albeit, it cannot be deny'd that in calm weather (when the Sky and Sea are alike serene) the water is pacifique and without the least visible curl or wrinkle; and yet near the shore a spirit discovers its spontaneous motion. For motion it doubtless hath from wind within, which as I have often observed, makes it heave and rowl when there is not the least breath of air above; by which and by the appearing of some Birds, and Fish playing and frisking above the water, Mariners have an infallible presage of the weather, and prepare by that fair warning accordingly against an approaching storm, happily fore-told them by these watery Inhabitants from a sense and instinct they have of the ensuing alteration. So as it is not to be deny'd, That winds are generated in the womb of the Sea, as well as bowels of the Earth, and give an equal disturbance for their better making way to their proper place or element.

In eight days ships usually cross this Caspian Sea from Astrakan to Derbent or Ferrabau. This passage is when the winds are favourable; for through adverse winds Sir Anthony Sherley was eighty days in his passage. The ships here are not unlike our old Corraghes which Julius Caesar mentions in his Wars with Britain, and Lucan the like; for they are onely sow'd or stitch'd together with hemp and cord, and comparatively with ours have little strength through want of Iron. Many Canoos hew'd out of some large Oak we saw, of which provision Hyrcania has plenty; each so large as capable to hold six

Men,

Men, who as Fisher-men would launch some leagues into the Sea without apprehension of danger. But at *Ferrabau* and other Sea Towns we saw great Vessels with masts and sails, flat-bottom'd, unless they were such as traded from port to port, keeping in sight of Land, having little knowledge of the Compas, or other help for Navigation, save what the Pole-star and other Arctick Constellations administered. The greatest of those Vessels I saw exceeded not 30 Tun; in which they nevertheless adventure to cross to *Astrakan* or *Citra-Kaum*, as they call it, a noted Town and Isle in 47 degrees North latitude: the Isle is 12 miles long and 3 broad. The Town is seated upon a rising ground, about which is a Line for defence, and upon the works some pieces of Cannon mounted; the Houses are not many nor well built, but sufficiently peopled. And albeit the soil be barren and the air bad, yet such is the attract of gain, that it is much infested to by Merchants of several Countries who trade hither for Furs of Foxes, Sables, Woolverin, Ermyn, Lufern, Miniver, Beaver, Otter, Squirrel and the like, which *Russia* and the Dominions under the *Muscovite* and *Tartar* abound with, as also for fish, and more especially for Caveare, which being sauc'd with salt-oyl, vinegar and pepper is held a dainty, and Potargo, and principally for salt which they extract from salt water, and vend in great quantity, to the increas of the Duke's Customs; who since he wrested it from the *Negay Tartar* in the Year of our Lord 1494 hath erected a Castle of good defence there; as appeared when *Johannes Basilius* the Emperor (about six years after) gave *Selymus* the *Grand Seignior* two memorable defats, at such time as he brought his Armies hither in behalf of the injur'd *Tartar*: And the like soon after by his Son *Basiliades*; which good succes gave the *Russe* a peaceful possession and subjection.

Six leagues from *Astrakan* runs the great River *Volga*, or *Wolga* as here pronounced, which springs out of a Mountain about 100 miles from *Teroflava* in *Russia* in the latitude of 60 degr. where after a little space the channel is well-nigh expatiated so broad as the *Thames* at *London*; and after 2000 miles course enlarges more, and near this Isle in several great Oltiums disgorges its watry stomach into the *Caspian* Sea. Were the depth of this great River answerable to its breadth and length, it would compare with any other River, and better encourage Navigation; yea be much more frequented by *Europeans* than it is; in regard it affords a much nearer and easier passage into *Perſia* and the *Indies*, than we have by the way of *Aleppo* and *Trepizond*; and much more expeditious than by surrounding *Afrique*. For Experience teaches us, that ships which set out from *London* which is usually in *April*, do with a fair gale of wind arrive in two months space at *Saint Nicholas* in *Russia*, where the North Pole is elevated 66 degrees 30 minutes; from which place we pass upon the *Dwina* by boat to *Vologda* in 7 days more, and from thence in 2 days by Sled to *Teroflava* upon the River *Volga*, whence by boat likewise we pass down to *Astrakan* in less than 30 days; so as the whole from *Saint Nicholas* to *Astrakan* (most of the way being by water) is computed 2600 English miles at the utmost; and from *Astrakan* to *Ferrabau* (under the *Perſian*) or *Derbent*, the passage may with a fair wind in three days or little more be accomplished; taking great heed as they sail, the water (by reason of shoals) being very dangerous in sundry places.

DERBENT is a Port Town upon the *Caspian* shore, of great strength and no les antiquity: being supposed that the foundation thereof was laid by *Alexander the Great*, who also erected that great and strong Castle called *Kastow* adjoining it; from whence he drew a running trench as far as *Tessys*; the greatest part whereof was countermur'd with a thick wall of stone, the ruins whereof are yet apparent; through which was the only way or passage from *Mengrelia* and those parts, into *Media* and *Hyrcania*, called by *Geographers* of old, *Caucasie vel Iberia pars*; and though helpe by Art, is nevertheless by *Pliny* termed *Ingens opus Nature*. So as thence is may be gathered, it was no les defensive in its natural situation. That Historian also gives us the dimension, *Ibi transius pates duntaxat 300 passus*, and worthily reckon'd amongst the Wonders of *Asia*. Besides that, from the Town unto the Sea (more than a mile) two Walls are raised, which be eight foot thick and thirty foot high; the distance betwixt the Walls being about eight hundred foot or eightscore paces. Moreover the Town it self for Trade is not inferior to any other upon that sea; most of the noted places therabouts as also from *Trepizond* and other Ports upon the *Euxine* frequently repairing thither for commerce, which enriches the Town and makes it the more populous. Moreover, as it is a Garrison 'tis made more defensive by regular Fortifications, which have been occasionally added to the old Wall that of it self is both large and strong; altogether of that account as by a good reporter it is called *Urbs rotina Orientis munitissima*. The circuit of the Wall is three miles, and affords a prospect into the *Mare Caspum*.

Derbent (which by transposition of syllables is *Bendar*, i.e. the Port Town) is situate in that part of *Armenia* the great which is now called *Ziuria* and *Myrat*, but *Albania* of old; and in some Writers known by other Names, as *Moresca* and *Demyr capi*, i.e. Iron-gates. From *Samachy* removed a hundred and twenty miles, and from *Bildith* a hundred and eighty. The North Pole is there raised one and forty degrees and fifteen minutes: A place of that account as for many years has been a bone of division betwixt the *Turk* and *Persian*; for by being a frontier Town and claimed by two mighty Princes, to which partysoever it inclines, 'tis upon every chance of War in danger to become a prey unto the Conqueror. This *Derbent* being indeed the Key that gives entrance into *Mozendram*, *Gheylan*, *Sherwan* and other considerable Provinces; insomuch as it has made that part the stage of War; and by the various succulencies it endured, born no small share in either misfortunes. More especially in the Year of our Lord 1568. *Heg. 948.* at such time as *Emir amzer-mirza* with smoak and flame unkenneled *Osmair Baffa* with his Varlets: The *Persian* Prince making the Inhabitants then feel the temper of his Sword, and the Houlies the fire of his Revenge, to this day shewing sad signs of his displeasure.

'Twixt this City and *Derbent* is that noted *Emporium* some call *Araſh* (and not improperly, seeing it is watered by a stream flowing from the swift River *Araſis*.) but according to others *Eres*, and by other some *Seres*: from which and from that abundance of raw Silk which is here vended, the Country thereabout is by some mistaken for the *Serica regio*; albeit the truth is, Silk is extraordinarily plentiful here, and upon Camels in large quantities carried to *Cashan*, where the Manufactures of Carpetting and several sorts of Silk-stuffs are in perfection, not a little to the Town's advantage. At this place also there is store of Cotten-wooll and Galls, which Merchants value: but of Pistachios, Pomgranads, Grapes, Melons, Orenge, and like fruit which Travellers esteem of, here is abundance. From hence to *Bachn* (upon the *Caspian* shore) are about eighteen English miles; a small Town, yet of such note with *Geographers*, as they call the Sea adjoining it *Mare de Bachn*, that which by most is named *Caspian*: near *Bachn* is (as I have heard) a Spring wherout the Inhabitants have a kind of oyl of a dark colour, which serves for Lamps and other household uses, and without any favour that is offensive. Thence to *Bildith* is fourteen more; the Country for the most part level and fruitful, by being thorowly watered both by *Araſis* and *Cyrus*. Returning to *Ferrabau*,

We travelled along the Sea side and came the first night to *Chacoporo*, which is about twelve English miles West from *Ferrabau*: the way we rode was close by the shore. This Town lies open to the Sea, which beats oft so outrageously against her banks that the Inhabitants are oft put to charge in maintaining them. Here we crossed over a fresh Water that was about a stunes cast over; one month in the Year 'tis salt (as the Inhabitants told us, but not the reason of it:) This is that salt stream I lately mentioned in the march *Marcus Antonius* made from *Phraata*. Next night we rode to *Eufraphidea*, a large Town pretty well built, and no les well peopled: but the Sea doth not so much advantage them as the Land, by reason of that plenty of Silk-Worms they nourish: and indeed the place appeared to us the pleasanter by reason of that plenty of Wood and Water it had, which was as good as plentiful. Here they would drink no Wine, the Law prohibits it; but the ground of that Law we could not learn, though we did suppose it was from that ridiculous Tradition of the miscarriage of *Arrot* and *Marot* the two debauch Angels. From *Chacoporo* to this place was twelve long miles: The Inhabitants we could perceive delighted much in Archery; an exercise these Countries have even from the infancy of time been not a little famous for; and which gave the best of the *Larine* Poets the occasion to celebrate their Neighbours of *Ithyra* in the second of his *Georgicks*.

Ithyreos taxi curvantur in Arcus,

The Tew into Ithyrian Bows is forc'd to bow,—

The next Town of note we came to was *Omoal*, which some take for *Zarama*; others for that *Zadracaria*, where *Alexander* refreshed his Army in the pursuit he made after *Bessus* that infamous *Balrian*; though others there be think it the remains of that *Nabarca*, where the Oracle of Dreams was famous. Howbeit, built it is under the North side of the imperious Mountain *Taurus*: and of such grandeur, that no less than three thousand Families there inhabit: They were then a mixture of several Nations, *Armenians*, *Scythians*, *Persians*, *Jews*, *Curds*, *Bannians*, *Indians* and *Muscovians*; who albeit they make a *Babel* of several Languages, yet live harmoniously; and which is no less remarkable being tolerated their own forms (for in matter of Conscience they quiclion

none

none where there is no breach of Peace,) they observe well-nigh seven several Sabbaths successively each after other; the *Bannians* having Thurday for their Sabbath; Friday the *Perfians*; Saturday the *Jews*; Sunday the *Armenians*; Munday the *Peguanis*; Tuesday the *Gowers and Cards or Fire-adorers*, who are the ancient *Parthians*: so that if any of the *Scythians* beyond *Bochar* were there, they would compleat the Week in that variety, each observing a morality of the day: *Luce sacra regnificat humus, regnificat auctor, Seposita ex animo & corpore cura fuit.* But in this, what is best worthy our observation is, That in the distribution of Days, the seventh Day (upon which God rested in contemplation of his six days labour) hath deservedly the preeminence over all the rest of the Weck-days, in which, the structure of the Universe was created; for the excellency of that Day we may perceive by this, is morally acknowledged by most Nations, whether Civil or Barbarous. To proceed.

The Town is built in a large level, but withal a very pleasant and fruitful soil; happy in her present prosperity and former greatness; her visible ruins making good the report that once it was this Country's Metropolis: nor are her Buildings of the meaner sort, or the Castle unworthy notice, seeing it gives place to none I saw in all that Province for beauty or strength; being fortified by a deep Moat or Trench it has that is full of water and compasses the Castle, so as the only entrance is by a Bridge which they draw and let down at pleasure; serving as a place of good defence to secure themselves against the rodomontado's of the neighbouring *Taurians* and other Montaineers: and few Housies but have their Gardens. Yet of best note is the Cathedral or *Ierusalem Machis*, in which (as we were told) are intomb'd four hundred forty four Princes and Prophets; whose Sepulchres though they be not so magnificent as that which with 1000 Talents *Alexander* raised for his Friend *Ephestion* near this place, yet such they are as raise veneration amongst the People, if not admiration with passengers; especially that of *Mir Agowmadeen*, to which they chiefly offer the mysteries of their Religion. When I entred, I found about a score of ancient grave *Arabians* or *Zophiliars* sitting crois-legg'd in a circle near the Prince's dormitory, with each an *Arabick* Book laid before, out of which both modestly and musically they performed their Exercises. This as I supposed was the *Paramalia vel sacra funesta in honorem mortuorum*. After the Eastern mode they wagg'd their Bodies, bowing their heads and battoologizing the names *Allough whoddaw* and *Mohomet* very often: wherein they were so seriously composed, that albeit I entred unexpectedly amongst them and in my Country habit (which gave most safety in travel, and elsewhere was sufficiently admired,) nevertheless they continued their Service without disturbance or deviation; yet was no sooner ended but they arose, very civilly bid me welcome, and shewed me withal what antiquities the place afforded, and as they thought might be acceptable to a Stranger.

Thence passing to the River tide (over which upon a Bridge of stone we rode the night before) to refresh my self under some Poplars; for, as says a Poet of another like place, this had

—Beds of grass, and Walks in shady Woods,
And Meadows ever green with Crystal floods.

seven or eight more beautiful than bashful Damozels (like so many Nymphs) sprang out of the Water, as I suppose to admire my habit: But I no less admiring their confidence, quickly left them; having this in thought, *Quod non vetat Lex, hoc vetat fieri pudor*: For the truth is I took them for *Amorosa's* and violators of the bounds of Modesty; until from better satisfaction I was made to believe it was simplicity and the opportunity they took to see a Stranger: for when the Sun mounts to his Meridian the Men commonly go to sleep, and the Women then have the benefit of the River where they use to swim, and probably cool their heat, in both kinds 'tis to be feared too much there abounding. The habit of these Water-Nymphs was a fine Shudder or Lawn embroidered at the neck, wrist and skirt with a border of several coloured silks and threads of gold; but in publick they go veiled according to the common mode with a long sheet which from top to toe covers them.

From Omoal we travelled to *Larry-John* or *Foon* as some pronounce it; being probably that *Jonaca* I find mentioned in *Ptolomy*. This place is from Omoal thirty miles: And here the Kingdom of *Hyrcania* is terminated by Mount *Taurus*; a Mountain reputed the greatest through all the World, both for length and height: For in one continued ledge of hills it makes way from the lesser *Asia* unto the furthest part of *East-India*, not less than 3000 miles. And for proof of its greatness, I vouch *Aristotle* who affirms that

that *Taurus mons omnium est maximus*. And *Magnus*, that *Azie totius longe maximus mons Taurus est*. And *Dion. Alex.* that *Totius Orbis terrarum maximus est Taurus. Sic dictus, quod in istar Tauri clavis capite incidit, &c.* says another Author. For which reason saith *Eustathius*, *Veteres omnia grandia & robusta Tauros vocavere*. And as another good Author observes, *Tanta altitudinis, ut ab eo Astra majora visantur, ortisq; & occasus eorum facilissime perspiciamur*. So that upon the whole I may fitly apply what *Lucan* hath done to one much inferior, the *Appenine*:

—¹Nullo quoq; vertice Tellus
Altius intuitur, propiorve accedit Olympo.

*Than which no earthly part more high doth rise,
Or whose approach comes nearer to the Skies.*

So high, as the labour we endured was very great in the ascending. For albeit our travel in and over this Mountain was sometimes through narrow inhospitable straits, other-whiles it was over extraordinary Hills; such Hills, as after two days winding and painful climbing (for I may so call it, seeing that oft-times we durst not ride,) we got so high, that we could clearly see the clouds hanging a great way below us, and obscuring the Earth, the highest vapours seldom rising above 50 miles from the Earth, if we credit the learned *Eratosthenes*; and by the sensible alteration of the air might well perceive we were mounted a good way up into the middle Region: so different was it from the weather we found below; and to our sad remembrance no less different in operation, than rationally could not otherwise be expected, ascending from a hot and descending into a hotter Countrey: For a Gentleman of our Company and of our Country died soon after; and my self not minding to alter my thin habit, by the like cold I took upon the Mountain and in our descent into a very hot foil, fell into so violent a dysentery, as in eleven days gave me a thousand stools, most of blood. But whether it had any influence upon those honoured Persons Sir *Dodmore Coton* and Sir *Robert Sherley*, I cannot judge; albeit they both were in good health when we passed those Hills, and left this World for a better within a month after. *Plutarch* writes concerning *Lucullus*, that pursuing *Tigranes* the *Armenian* King he had the like experience of the air here; differing so much from the air of the Countrey more remote, as put the Armie into a distemper. But more especially this gives me occasion to call to mind what *Aesop* the *Spaniard* reports concerning those high *Pervian* Mountains called *Peri-Cace*; which in passing over put him into a distemper he could not better resemble than to a Sea-sickness, vomiting so much that he thought he should have died; caused through the subtlety of the air and the sublimity of those Hills, which he says surpas the *Alps* and *Pyrene* Mountains no less than lofty Towers do ordinary Cottages.

Now the ascending this Mountain *Taurus* was not more troublesome I thought than the descending: for in some places we had the path so uneven and so unskillfully cut, that we were in danger of tumbling down a deep and dreadful precipice; at the bottom of which we could hear what we could not see, a hollow murmuring Water. But one part of that Mountain was a more frightful passage than the rest; agreeable to that in *Ovid*, *Per compendia Montis precipita via*; this for the space of three miles being cut or forced through the side of a perpendicular Hill, the top and bottom of which was undiscernable, the widest part not being much above a yard; insomuch as if two Horse-men should chance to meet, I saw not how they could safely pass by one another; unless they made like shift the two Goats mentioned in *Pliny* did; who accidentally meeting in such a place, had no way to preserve themselves, but by the couching of the one whiles the other past over. That passage at *Pen-man-mawr* twixt *Aber-Connwy* and *Bew-maris*; in little resembles this; but for danger is not comparable. A very wretched pass, and good cause have I to remember it: For, whils I was sometimes through a needless curiosity looking up, wondring at the great height above, and anon darting my sight down, no less marvelling at the depth below; unawares a Rock that jett'd ill-favouredly out of order, unexpectedly struck me such a blow that I was sowefowt astonied, and happily delivered from a fall into that aby. A Rock I may say that demands an uncivil tribute of heedless Passengers. Howbeit, out of that formidable path of death we got at length to the top of that imperious Mountain which by its evenness for full fifty miles (such was its breadth from *Omead* to *Damnon*) and incomparable prospect it afforded, made some amends for the danger we had lately passed: For from thence we raised our prospect so well as the interpoling mists would suffer, not only over the breadth of *Hyrcania*, but far into the *Cyprian* Sea as we apprehended, (certain we could not be, seeing it was above a 100 miles distant;) for the reflex of the Sun's rays which are better combined in a plain superficies than where the prospect is over Hills and Dales, and the air near the Sea,

by being intermixt with thick and watery vapours, the Sea also by a refracted light presenting it self in a thicker medium, rendered the object less distinguishable: and save that it was a delight to have an uninterrupted object, little other use could we make of what we saw at that distance our sight was so imperfect. But without doubt, from hence (for *Taurus* and *Caucasus* differ not) that ancient Astronomer *Prometheus* Brother to *Atlas* first observed and instructed the *Affyrians* in the motion of the Firmament, the Acronical rising and setting of the Stars and Bodies Celestial; and found out the causes of Meteors, Eclipses and other occult causes and curiosities in Nature: and whence it was that the fabulous *Greeks* report that by *Mercury* he was chained to a Rock and his heart continually gnaw'd by a Vulture at the command of *Jupiter*; the penalty being inflicted for his felonious stealing celestial Fire from *Apollo's* Chariot-wheels to enliven his inanimate Statua; albeit *Pallas* was accessory, by whose persuasion *Hercules* shot the Vulture at the Marriage of *Theia*. Howbeit, *Geraldus* finds out a contrary Mythology; defining him only for a melancholy person, overcharged with anxiety, griping care gnaw'd his heart as it were a Vulture.

Now from this highest Tarras of the World look we towards the North-east, and fix our eyes upon that part of *Tartary* which this Mountain visits where it salutes *Imaus*. *Tartaria* is so large a Countrey as it contains not only a third part of the continent of the greater *Asia*, but extends it self a great way into the most Eastern part of *Europe*; comprehended in these three, *Sarmatia Asiatica*, *Scythia* and *Cathay*. which some divide into five, 1. *viz.* *Tartaria antiqua*, 2. *Zacathai intra Imaum*, 3. *Cathai extra Imaum*, 4. *Deserta* or *Sarmatia Asiatica*, 5 and *Minor Tartaria*; which includes the *Præcaspis* with those that lie 'twixt *Tanais* and *Borysthenes*. The Name as some apprehend is from the *Hebrew*, and signifies a remnant or scattered Generation. Others derive it from the River *Tarax* which runs through those Provinces they call *Mongul*, *We Gog* and *Magog*; altogether peopled by vagrants or such as are without certain Habitations; their wealth wholly consisting in their Cattel. *Dapatis pacis alio commigrant Uxores secundentes*, *Filios omnia, sua bona; puantes gravem esse infelicitatem diu in uno loco morari*, as one characterizeth these vagrants; who go to and fro that scarce know whither, the Pole-star or the two Bears being their directors. *Polygamy* they allow: in Marriages refrain only their Mothers and Sisters. A fierce perfidious and crafty People they are, by continual practice made expert in riding, darting, and no less exercized in footmanhip; have little or no civility save in *Zagabru*, where they associate in Township, and are taught it by the Commerce they have with their civilized Neighbours. Bread they eat very seldom; for Mares milk, flesh half boiled, sour milk and herbs are their greatest dainties. About the Year of our Lord 1200 they first embraced *Mahomet*: Nevertheless many *Jews* are commorant amongst them, so as both Sects now use Circumcision. Amongst them are some Hoods that profess *CHRIST*, albeit infected with the far-spread Heresie of *Nestorius*; who being once the *Constantinopolitan Patriarch* fell into that foul error that in *CHRIST* were two Persons as well as two Natures: A Tenet because opposed by the Emperor *Heraclius* so forcibly imposed by *Cozrodes* the Apostle upon the *Christians* within his Dominions, that *formidine pene* it was submitted to by too many, and like a gangrene bath since spread it self through most parts of the Orient. By the power of the *Muscovite* Image-worship is nevertheless introduced, at least for ornament, in paint but not in sculpture, which last they think only violates the Commandment. The rest are *Gentiles*. The first that overcame them that we read of was *Cingis-chayn*; who by help of some associated Hoods first subjected *Un-chau*, by some stiled *Prester John* (dissiact from him in *Ethiopia*;) after that *Argon*, and at length died in *Keto-a-katan* A.D. 1228. In this more memorable, that he was the immediate Ancestor of *Tamberlang*, from whom the present *Mogul* is in a direct Line descended.

But seeing *Mergiana* is nearest us, for *Zagathai* (which is but a new Name imposed by *Zoa* or rather *Sha-h-tai*, Father of *Ogg* Father of *Tamberlane*; though I rather apprehend the derivation from *Sac*, it being part of that the *Persians* call *Scythia* and adjoining *Cathaya* takes the Name of *Sacathay*) comprehends *Mergiana*, *Bactria* and *Sogdiana* (in which last was the *Massagetae* Countrey;) to the North being terminated by the River *Chefyl*, by the *Mare Caspium* to the West, by *Imau* or rather *Paropanis* to the South, and to the East by the Wildernes called *Lopp*. Which *Mergiana* by *Pynetus* is termed *Tremighen*; by *Castaldus Jeselbahl*, by reason of the green Turbants which they wear, as he was mis-informed; for 'tis true, that in the *Turkish Tongue* *Rash* signifies Head, yet *Jesel* is not Green, so it rather seems to take the denomination from the River *Chefyl*, a noted River called *Jaxartes* of old which waters that Countrey and flows into

the *Caspian*. A Country so fruitful in Corn and Wine, as gave *Strabo* the occasion to report how that one bunch of *Grapes* presented *Alexander* filled a basket two cubits about; which encouraged him to found that City which after his own he named *Alexandria*; it was after called *Antiochia* and *Selencia*, but since *Indion*. Fifty miles hence is *Mara*, at which Town *Shaw-Ismael* the Persian King gave a notable defeat to one of the great Chans of *Tartary*. But most remarkable is this Region, for that (as is believed) the Patriarch *Noah* soon after he forsook the Ark here planted; and either he or some other to his memory built the City of *Nissa*, so called by *Ptolemy* in his seventeenth Table of *Asia cap. 10.* a Derivative questionless from *Noysa*, rather than *Nissem*, as those write it who pretend *Bacchus* to be the founder of it, unless they were one. Hence also *Nimrod* and the rest departing into the Vale *Shynaar*, through the confusion of speech occasioned by the impious design they had in raising *Babel*, dispersed themselves, so as from them in few years' after the greatest part of the earth became more or less inhabited.

Sogdiana adjoins this Province, watered by the River *Oxus* or *Nycaphiac*: a fatal place to the Persian and Allyrian Monarchs, by being a boundure to their boundles ambition: But contrarily, from thence have issued such swarms of people as at several times have well-nigh over-spread the Universe. This Province was subjected to the *Persians*: for here *Cyrus* built another *Cyropolis* to keep out the invading *Tartar*; *Alexander* another *Alexandria Oxiana* in 45 deg. as also *Alexandria Ultima* in 41. And at this which was built by *Cyrus* it was where the victorious *Greek* received such a blow upon the head from the beliedged, that for some time he was reputed dead: but being taken, for that churlish entertainment it was levelled with the ground.

Bactria has *Mergiana* to the West, to the East and North *Sogdiana* and the River *Oxus*, and to the South *Aria* and part of *Paropamisa*, now known by the name of *Corazan*; which too is part of *Sagathai* and under the *Persian*: but I rather take the Southern part to be so called. In former Ages *Samarchand* which has 38 deg. (called *Muracanda* in *Ptolemy* and *Quint. Curtius*, *Samracana* in *Chalcondyles*, and *Paracanda* in *Strabo*) was the most noted *Emporium* or *Oppidum nundinarium* not only of *Bactria* but of any thereabouts; yea, for some Ages the Mart 'twixt *India* and the Roman subjects. Famous also for that it was the place which gave both birth and burial (though some say at *Anzar*) unto *Tamerlane* that great Victor (who in eight years subjected more Countreys than the Roman could in eight hundred:) Where also the Traitor *Bessus* surprized by *Spiramenes* was delivered to *Alexander*, who rewarded him answerable to his demerit: But his rash putting to death at this place *Clytus* that saved his life at the battel of *Granicus* puts such a stain upon *Alexander* then in drink, as all the tears he shed when sober could not wipe off the blemish. It is now become a poor place, and gives precedency to *Bochar*, which elevates the Pole Article forty degrees; called of old *Bactra*, and before that *Zoroafes* and *Zoroasa*, probably from *Zoroaster* their first King who was slain by *Nimue*. This *Zoroaster* was the greatest Astronomer in his time, and Practitioner in Art Magick, in which and the Fire-worship he first instructed the *Persians*: those Books he writ concerning Liberal Arts, and the Cataclism in fourteen pillars half brafs, half brick (like those attributed to *Enoch* before the Flood) *Nimue* defaced. No les famous is this by being the birth-place of that great Naturalist *Avicenna* (in the Eastern World called *Honain Ally-ben-Sein*) born *Anno Dom. 880. Anno Heg. 370.* those 90 Books he writ concerning Physick, Chymick, and Philosophy, not a little advancing Learning. Which Town also at this day submits to *Chorazan* that gives name to the whole Province, (called *Coraxia* in *Pliny*, *Coraxia* in *Procopius*, *Corasphy* in *Ptolemy*, and *Korasmia* in *Athenaeus*), subdivided into *Heri*, *Farghan* and *Tocharistan*.

Heri in former times was called *Aria*, which some mistake for *Sablestan* that we now call *Candabor*; included betwixt *Hyrcaania* and *Paropamisa*; albeit *Herodot. l. 7.* places it in the North of *Media* by the *Greeks* so called, but by the *Arabs* *Algebul*. In our times had for its Governour *Shaw-Abbas*, during the life of his emulated elder Brother. *Eri* the principal Town within this Province is three miles about, and not thirteen as some report: but so abounding in Roscs, that the fame thereof is spread over a great part of the Orient; the Gule-ob (as they call Rose-water) so plentiful that it serves the neighbouring Provinces; so exceeding sweet, as by much it excels what we have distilled in *Europe*. Rose-water is made use of in Sherbets, Banquets, and other entertainments, where guests usually sit upon Flowers, and have flat-sided glasses filled with water broke upon their heads, which falling down upon the neris and flowers, perfumes the place delightfully: for indeed, the Rose-water of *Persia* is so good, that better is not in the World; so as much of it when Ships pass from *Gombroon* to *Surat* (which

is towards the Spring) is vended in many part of India. Of Fergan I have elsewhere spoken.

Tocharistan takes Name from *Tochara*, (Τοχαρια, *Tochares gentes prope Indiam, Tzetzam* mentions:) the originary Seat it is of the *Tzetzam* the posterity of *Togarmah* Son of *Gomer*: a People confined or shut up by *Alexander* and not adventuring into the World till ou-zed by *Heraclius* in his long and fierce War with *Cosroes the Persian*. And about two hundred Years after, rushing through the *Caspian* Streight some Hoards seated themselves in that part of *Armenia* which was since called *Turcoman*; where they served *Mahomet Sultan of Persia* against his enemy the *Chaliph of Bagdad*: and being abused by *Mahomet* under *Tangrolipix* their Captain made themselves masters of *Persia*, as in a more proper place I have spoken. Howbeit, as obscure as they were, some glimpse of them it may seem appeared to *Rabbi Ben-Jonas*; for that in his Itinerary he oft mentions the name *Tore*; and amongst other things observes, That the captived *Jews* transported by *Salmanassar* associated themselves with the *Tores* of *Nisba-bor* (*Nisbi* in *Polony*) or rather *Nis-pore*, i. e. *Noa civitas*; by *Hayphon* the *Georgian* and *Ulubegius* the *Bastrian* also frequently conanncmorated: But until the Year 1200 the Name was not heard of in *Europe*; and the foundation of that vast Empire was not laid until the Year 1300. such time as *Ottoman* Chief of the *Ogyrian Family* by Conquest of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*; now call'd *Bursia* from *Prusa* the Ottomans Seat before the Conquest of *Constantinople*) and other parts of *Anatolia*, left so great an Army to *Orchan* his Son as gave him the first delightfull prospect into *Europe*: since which under three other Princes and eleven Emp'rcours (a Title assumed by *Mahomet* the Second in the Year 1450. upon his subduing *Constantinople* and *Tripoli*) within the space of three hundred Years they have enlarged their Dominions over much in *Africk*, more of *Europe*, and most of *Asia*; thereby reducing many late flourishing Kingdoms and States under the worst of tyranny; propheticl of (as some imagine) by *Jeremy* in the 6.Chap. 22 verf. and accomplishing that prophecy of *Ezekiel* Chap. 36 verl. 39. under the name of *Gog and Magog*; to which the 20. chapter of the *Apocalypse* has reference as some imagine. Many considerable Towns were there; but of best note are *Tuzz*, which is under 38 degrees, and the more famous by being the birth-place of *Nazarradyn* that great *Mathematician* *Translator* and *Commentator* upon *Euclide*, whose Works were lately printed at *Rome* in *Arabick*: *Sarchus*, *Gelack* and others, terminated by *Nycaphiac*, which springs out of the *Sariphaen Hill*, that is part of *Imaus*. There is a part of this Country some call *Maurenabar*: which hath to the South the River *Jehun* (called also *Gihon* and *Gychon* i. e. *Magnus Fluvius*, and by the likeness of the Name some suppose it may be *Gozan*;) to the South-east *Gaznehen*; a large but desolate Country now; albeit otherwise when *Eusebius lib. 6. Evng. prepar.* reported that it was so well governed as murder, adultery and theft was punished there, and unchaste Women discountenanced; yea albeit environed with *Gentiles*, they disallowed Idol-worship: which discrimination from the rest was either from the light they received by the exiled *Jews*, or else by the preaching of the Apostles St. *Thomas* and St. *Andrew*, whose labours were successful and manifested through the greatest part of *Tartary* and the *Indies*. More North and North-east the *Scythians* beyond *Imaus* inhabit; by some said to be under the great *Cham's Dominions*: but *Chams* or *Kawn* rather, there are many. Of old it was called *Regio Serica*, by reason of the abundance of Silk and the excellent Manufacture in Tapistry and Carpetting there found, which spread their fame into the most remote parts of the Universe. This Silk and delicate Wool gave *Sydonius Apollinaris* occasion for that Monoltick, *Affyrus gemmas*, *Ser vellera*, &c. and to *Tertullian* of *Sera nerent*, *Babylonii imexerint*, &c. and *Tzetzam* of *Seres texuaras pulcherrimas lana operianur*, &c. The true position of which is not rightly understood at this day, though most take it for *Cashay* part of *Sagathai*, which also is derived from the *Sace* and what of old was *Syribo-Sace*, by which Name the *Persians* understand all *Scythians*. A Name nevertheless mentioned by *Sirabo*, whose Oriental limit is the Ocean. And notwithstanding Geographers have filled their Maps and Globes with the names of *Tendue*, *Tangut*, *Tamfur*, *Cando*, *Camul* and other hog gobbling words, obtruded upon the World by those three errant Monks *Hayphon*, *Marc Paul the Venetian*, and *Vertoman*; who fearing no imputations make strange discoveries as well as descriptions of places; and *inter alia* of *Cambalu* the *Cham's Metropolis* watered by *Polyfang* which also waters *Quinsay* in *China* as molt credit; No *Armenian* nor *Jew* (who are doubtless the greatest Travellers in the World, as Merchants) was ever there, or knows such a City that ever yet I met with. I well know that *Cambalu* is taken notice of by *Abulfeda* who gives it 35 degrees North latitude, which should be 53 the figures being inverted; whereas others place it in 60. and *Pantogia* the *Jesuit* in 40 degr. withal supposing 'tis the same others call *Pagan* in *China*,

China, fancying withal that *China* is *Cathay*; by which differing judgments we see there is no certainty of the place, though a long tradition so accepted. For my part, I conceive we are in a deep ignorance of the South of those places, as I have already hinted; those nearer Regions which lie betwixt *Zagathai* and *Lopp* and the North part of *China* being to us, nay to the world Inhabitants about *Kabul* and *Candahor*, little known; other than that the *Tartars* labour the *Chinese* to the North and North-east, as the Sea does to the South, and to the West the *Barmar* or *Bracmar*: So as I may truly say with *Mercurio* in his *Geogr. Table of Tartary*, *Quis enim vastum illud & incognitum Regnum, vere describit?* For that of *Abulfeda* the great *Arabian Cosmographer* is no new discovery, but what we easily believe, How that the Ocean runs far beyond *China* from the East towards the North; but that it circles West about the North coast of *Russia* (as he says,) and takes its course about *Lapland*, and that the Sea fetches a compass about the East and North-east parts of *Asia* and *Europe*, I know he has it only by speculation: Which nevertheless may serve as a spur to encourage the further discovery of a North-east or North-west passage towards *China* and the *East Indies*. For the same *Arabian* borrowing his light from our Writers, calls the Inhabitants of that part of the *Asian* Continent *Gog* and *Magog*: Which with better consideration is conjectured by *Strabo lib. 1.* That by reason of the vast Defarts, the fierceness of People, noisome Beasts and deep snows, especially near the Mountains *Imaus*, which towards the North surge more and more to an incomprehensible height; so high, as one reports how that after 17 days mounting, he returned, despairing to attain the top: the reason probably being not only from the height, but withal from the difficulty he had to make way through those deep snows, with which those Mountains are ever covered; *Montes, quorum altitudinem esse incredibilem*, Mountains of an incredible height. *Arist.lib. 1. Meteor.* To penetrate the other Countries with security is held impossible; the rather, for that (as he says) the People and Languages there are not to be numbered: and yet where known comprehends them under one denomination of *Seythians*: for, *Omnis cognitus Regiones versus Septentrionem uno nomine vel Scythe vel Celo-Scythe appellantur*. But the Character of what we now found true concerning them, makes them of the same piece with the other *Tartarians*; *Vicini inter se nulli fines*. *Agrum non exercent; domus nec retum habent. Uxores liberiliq; secum in plaustris trahunt. Armenta & pecora semper paucibus & in percula solitudines vagare soliti; nullum scelus furtu gravius. Argentum spernunt; lacte & melle vescuntur*, &c. Which how strange soever it seems now to us, in the infancy of time it was doubtless the course or manner of life which most Nations practised; but found inconsistent with Civil States in after-Ages, when Men assumed their several properties, and incorporating themselves formed a *Weal-publique*, as we may observe amongst the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*. But fearing this subject has made me wander too far, I shall present the Reader only with the habit of some of them as I took it: And conclude with that of an ancient Writer, *Hoc scito certe ut Abasgi & Alani, & Sace & Dace, Rhos atq; Scromate, & qui propri Seythe, & quicunq; finitima gens flatibus Borea, communiter denominantur Scythe, Seytharum nomine, &c.*



Now concerning *Taurus*, if we were to give that Mountain the several Names it bears in the different Countries it runs through, varying indeed according to their sundry Idioms, it would be endless; I shall therefore content myself in taking notice of that part thereof which came in our way, and by the Natives is called *Albors*; a Mountain of great fame, if not infamous rather by reason of that Pyre of Idol-fire, which (if Tradition may be credited) has continued un-extinguished for full fifty generations. Of which place *Sirabo* speaks in his lib. 15. *Procopius* also lib. 2. and *Benjamin-ben-Jonas* in his Journal. The Fane was round, typifying Eternity. In the midst an Altar was raised five steps from the ground, under which within a trench the Fire was placed. The small round top of this Pyre was open, the better to let in the Air which is the Soul of Fire. But this Fire (if they may be believed) was not like our *focalis ignis* fed with Wood, Coal, Turf or like common combustibles; but (as they gave out) a flame so pure and rarified as came nearest to those Celestial Bodies which the *Sticks* say be real Fires. And as the Element of Fire is supposed to resemble those *Ignes eterni* or Vestal Fires which *Virgil* mentions in his 2 lib. *Aen.* so these have a Cabala that *Zerostoff* was their first instructor in that Idolatry: But 'tis probable that *Zoroaster* is the name, the name not varying much; for his opinion it was, That Fire was most worthy Divine esteem seeing that *Omnia ex uno Igne sunt genua*. The Sun and Moon are heavenly Fires, whence their Idol-Fire was by them term'd *Mybra*. And this their God has singular properties: for, Fire is a comfortable creature, distributing both heat and light, helping both against cold and darkness, the two greatest enemies unto Sense, a learned Man well observeth; *Ignis congregat homogenea & segregat heterogenea*: Fire gathers things that be of a like nature, and separates things of a different Nature. Fire (faith *Agathias*) *Elementum est situ altissimum, majestate plenissimum, visu pulcherrimum, natura potentissimum*. So powerful and so inflamable, as all the World, were fire let alone, would not be able to suffice its appetite: that baffle it received by *Canopus* the *Egyptian* Idol which extinguished it by the Water it held, wits but a merry sleight; as *Ruffensis* lib. 2. Hist. Ecc. and

and *Suidas* in *Canopo* acquaint us. Moreover, by *Procopius lib. 2. de bello Persico*, the Pyree at this place is also remembered. *Hic magnum Pyram est* (faith he) *quod Perse Deorum maxime venerantur, ubi Ignem perpetuum Magi custodiunt*. These Magi or Flamens some call *Magus* and *Magusai* (ironically from their incestuous Marriages,) who lived in great repute until *Abbas* a zealous Christian Bishop of the primitive times prevailed with the Persian King both to disfavour those Chærarians and to destroy their Temples. After which the *Pyromantiques* were massacred by *Waceck* whom some call *Wazek* the Saracen, as we learn from *Mircondis Tarich* in his Story of *Persia*. From whence we may conclude, That as the Devil is restless in his labours to form his Worship after the best pattern; so the original of this was probably either in allusion to the Types of the Ceremonial Law of the Jews as recorded in *Levi. chap. 9. verf. 24.* or else in imitation of that fire which for a Divine end *Moses* in *Levi. chap. 6. verf. 13.* commanded should neither be extinguished nor profaned: and for preservation whereof, when the Jews were led captives into *Persia*, the Priests took fire from the Altar and hid it privily in a dry and hollow pit; which many years after was by *Nehemiah's* direction at his return from *Persia* to the holy Land drawn out; and though at first sight it appeared like thick water, yet therewith sprinkling the *Wood* that was upon the Altar, and the Sun at that time reflecting his beams, it became a great fire quickly and consumed the sacrifice. 2 *Macc. 1. 19.* So as by this word *Fire*, wherout *Zoroaster* would have all things produced, God was unquestionably intended according to *Deut. 3. 24.* and *Heb. 12. 29.* where God is called *a consuming fire*. So as of Fire we may say what *Plato* (the Divine Philosopher) doth of Light, *Est Umbra Dei: Deus vero est Lumen lumina*. To which I may add this truth, that *Totius rerum Natura Causa & Origo est Deus*.

In these Pyree sometimes they not only immolated their Children, but men of more years than discretion. The Ceremony after the dedication usually was first to be anointed by the Jelop, crowned with Garlands, and lastly to be attended by a multitude: then giving the survivors the same reason for that fact *Mardanis* the Brahman did *Alexander* upon the like sacrifice. *Mortem votis expetere, que me marcidam senio carne liberavim in periorum meliorem?* *Vitam immuraret*, then whilsts the Musick makes a noise, throws himself into the fire, with which he thinks that he incorporates. From which Gymnosophists the *Gowers* and *Persees* differ but little at this day concerning that Tener. Furthermore, upon this high Mountain it is (say the inhabitants) that *Pisiflyon* eldest Son to *Goff-isp* (who in *Jacobs* days ruled *Persia*) is (*in potentia non moriendo ex Hypothesi*) endowed with power of not dying, with thirty other immortal *Chyrons* who by *Zeroots* doom are to continue there till Dooms day; so as if any could find the place, they may (in another sense) if thieves meet them be likewise made immortal.

Here also upon *Queqnits* high hill are some reliques of the furious Gyantes *Lamasagnes* and of *Anreok* her husband; a Gyant of monstrous shape and proportion: How many cubits he was high is incredible; but armed (as the *Persians* fabulously report) with two horns as big as the tusks of an Elephant; his eyes also were proportionably big, and his tail was like to a Cows: but in fight he was as powerful as *Hercules*. This great Thieff and his Wife were nevertheless both slain by *Ham-sha-Honcoir*, such another Souldier as was Saint *Roman* at *Rohan*. But leaving these, let me draw your eyes to our ensuing journey. After many laborious steps we got to a Village called *Ryna*, twelve miles short of *Damoan*; where we beheld a Castle, so built upon the best advantages of Art and Nature that to us it seemed impregnable: For above, it wanted no ground either for peace or War; It had sweet gardens adorned with fruits and flowers, made happy in a Rivolet of pure water which springs there, and thence delightfully streams in many meanders into the bottome; but both by its situation and description may be that of which *Procopius* writes, *Cels & aquarum salubritate praefata*.

In this place (as a *Persian* of quality travelling in our company told us) not above five and twenty years ago lived *Melcek Bahaman*, who commanded many hills and dales in *Gelack* and *Taurus*; a Prince albeit confined to the middle region, nevertheless forced with cost and care to uphold his dignity both against *Tartar* and *Persia* his great and quarrelsome neighbours: wherein such was his good fortune, and such the mutual love twixt him and his subjects, that though often invaded he stood secure; yea, lived to observe the ruine of many his emulous neighbours; his aim only tending to preserve what his predecessors had made him heir unto, and that his gray hairs might go in peace unto an eternoal dormitory. Thus thought *Bahaman*, who also added his endeavours to compleat his thoughts. But *Abbas* returning from the conquest of *Mozendram* (having forced *Shally-mirza* Son of *Abdulla-cawn* to become his pensioner) unhappily looking up towards this part of *Taurus* which seemed to threaten him, resolves to be no longer bearded

bearded by that mountainous King; but according to that Motto of *Tacitus*, *Id equum quod validius*, pretends that from his lofty dwelling he usually pried into his two Kingdoms of *Media* and *Mozendram*, by that having the advantage to ranfack his Towns, rob his Carravans, illure his Worms, anticipate his progres to the *Caspian Sea*, and to divert many Rivers into other sources, which springing from *Taurus* itreamed into *Hyrcania* and *Shervan*, and without whose source those Provinces would become barren, if not useles. *Meleck Bahaman* readily finds his drift; and comparing him with that fable of the Wolf, who drinking at the spring-head, quarrelled with the Lamb for troubling his draught when he was quenching his thirst at the stream below, premeditates what answer to return: Whiles *Abbas* in an impatient delay resolves to try the chance of War, appointing *Meticulibeg* to prosecute his design, and not return without victory.

This could not be so secretly intended but aged *Bahaman* had intelligence. At first it troubled him, in that his gray hairs were more propens to ease than War: Yet, lest his subjects from his example might be disengaged he throws away all dull thoughts and as a common father provides for safety; with Arms and Vtuals furnishing his Citadel for many years siege; yea, omitting nothing that might intitle him a careful and expert Souldier. In each defensive place he plants a Garrison, and other parts lays naked where the enemy might come; that in nothing the Countrey might relieve the *Persian*. That done, he mews himself, his Queen, his two Sons, and ten thousand select men in his Castle; in that posture not fearing any thing they could attempt.

The *Persian* General in the mean time with thirty thousand men march against him; and at their first ascent find the way dangerous by those many flowers of Darts and stones he thundered on them: they first grumbled, and then would have tumbled down, had not *Meticulibeg* by promises and threats encouraged, exposing his own head in the front of danger; so as after some skirmishes he laid close siege to the Castle, where he was told the King and victory was included. Having well viewed this inaccessible Fortress, he despaired of taking it; such was the height thereroof, and such the perpendicular ascent, two excellent defences Art and Nature had enriched it with. Nevertheless, some attempts he made, but invalidable: to shoot their Arrows at it, was one with aiming at the Moon: Small shot they had, and Lances good store; but of small force to batter Rocks. So that after many tedious assaults and bravadoes (wherin the *Persian* had stones in requital,) the General well knowing, That what strength was not able to do, Ingenuity as the most forcible Engine oft effects, he beat a parley, and with many protestations assured them of friendship: Yea that he might the better shadow pretended truth, presents the aged King with Tulipants, Shamshers, Pearls, and other gilded baits, mean enough to angle for a Kingdom; intreating him withal to descend and taste a banquet; solemnly swearing by *Moris-Ally*, the head of *Shaw-Abbas*, Paradise, the eight Orbs, and other usual protestations, that he should come and go with safety; no other reason inducing this invitation but a hearty good will he bore him, and from the hopes he had of coming to some agreement. The peaceful King, un-used to deceit and wars rotten stratagems, swallows the tempting hook, and believes all for truth; albeit his Wife and Sons dissuade, giving him instances of like dissimulation: Credulity is rather a fault than an offence, seeing it hurts none but it self; yet here is proved otherwise. Neither those, nor the tears his men shed to beg his stay vowing their constancy to the last, could avert his destiny: Necesity being governed neither by Law nor power: So down he goes without hostages, where he finds the Crocodile ready to embrace him with tears of joy: but after a short banquet, gives him an iron bed; regarding neither vow, honour, nor engagement: so as *Bahaman* now too late repents his dosage. The *Persian* General also thinks all his own, and therefore sends his Sons a mesage of intreaty but upon a spears point, the substance being, That if they wilhed their Fathers safety, they should come down and have his word engaged for their safe return; otherwise, he would slue the old man no mercy.

Nature enriches man with reason, but Time with knowledge and experience. Hence, the two gallant youths, regardless of the rodomontadoes of that treacherous Enemy, make this auswer; They would believe he was a man of honour and honesty, when according to promise he gave the King their Father his liberty; otherwise he might account them ideots, breach of faith to their Father being so notorious: and that from equal reason he might demand the Castle and Crown, as them by whom those were preserved. Adding withal, That the King of *Persia's* ill-grounded ambition would never prosper: For, though he had craftily avoided the Epithete of a Tyrant, this would rub asrech his former injustice, yea, anatomize him so as all *Asia* would esteem him ignoble; yea,

yea, the world would tax him of dishonourable avarice, who commanding over many large and fruitful Provinces, could not rest contented without the subjugating a Nation never wronging him, and vassalling a King whose predecessors had in a larger series and for more Ages governed *Larry-Jon*, then *Ismael's* posterity had done *Persia*; being within a Country so cold and barren, that in the conquest more than Title he could not boast of.

Sua retinere private Domus, de alienis certare regis laus est, says *Tacitus*; whilcs private Men think their own enough, Great ones conceive all too little for their ambition; accordingly *Abbas* will not be circumscribed: this being the usual return great Spirits make, *Fu mihi obiectus accincto gladio?* So as without further Treaty he invites them from their consolidated cloud to view their Fathers head off. They imagining Innocence a sure guard resolutely bid him do if he durst: but withal call to mind how that murder is inexpiable even in their *Alcoran*. *Methiculibeg* having torn his Foxes skin with over-stretching, sees this device prove air, and knows no way now to blow them up, himself being as it were undermined. Yet giving rage a vent, he stormed it; but the besieged made so good defence, that several *Cocelshaws* there breathed their last; and so many others were maimed that without more ado they fell into a mutiny, resolving to return whiles they had a possibility; upbraiding the General, that he knew not how to use a Victory, seeing *Bahaman* was theirs, Mount *Taurus* theirs; and doubted not the besieged would do homage if the *Shaw* would accept of it; and that with more credit and less hazard they could oppose the *Turk* or *Indian*. The General in so great a strait knew not well what to do: for on the one side, though he could infuse patience and make them stay, he knew not how to take the Fort; on the other, if he returned without conquest, he as well knew his head should off; *Ferrat-cam*, *Oliverdi-cam*, *Kurchichy-cam* and other Captains for like miscarriage having that Year been so rewarded. Therefore in conclusion he resolves upon this wicked device: He releases *Bahaman*, assuring him his confinement was only to try his temper; that leave was granted him either to go or stay as pleased him, *Abbas* his Master having sent for him; and that he should depart with full satisfaction, could he but see his Sons, whom for their valour he had in high esteem: and that if Articles might be signed, it would fetter him in a thousand engagements.

Bahaman in no wise considering his craft was over-joy'd at this proposition; for never did Musick to dull ears sound more mediocrily; so as 'tis thought some ipeil infatuated him: He believes the *Persian* and dictates a pathetick Letter, and is permitted to shew his joy to his Sons at a distance. A Messenger delivers it, and bewitches the Princes with such Pilcashes and Presents of worth as were sent; which being accepted, (scaring to irritate so potent a Neighbour, the Queen also provoking them down contrary to the Souldiers, who by many submissive dissuasions presaged their ruin,) they signed the Articles, and relying on the General's words, descended and were straight conducted to their endeared Father, twixt whom was expressed as much love and obedience as was possible; the General also seems to bear a part and invites them to a Banquet, where death attended. For when these three were smiling in a mutual consent of love, the General gives the sign: so as at one instant three *Cocelshaws* with their flying Scimiters whipt off their heads, all three at one instant being made immortal: And e're this villany was divulged they made themselves masters of the Castle, some receiving quarter, other some destruction. By that wretched policy this late thought indomitable place and Nation was subjecced. Such was the miserable end of *Atelec Bahaman* and his two hopeful Sons; forgetful of Wars subtleties; and how *Aladene* their neighbour King of the Black Mountain, for playing salt and loose with *Selim* first Emperour of the *Turk's* by equal credulity gave a like issue to his Life and Kingdom. Opposite to this Castle is erected the Sepulcher of *Bahaman's* beloved Queen, in the high-way as we passed: 'tis of four equilaterals raised above eight yards high, the material stone well squared, and very apparent and comely. The land here was well wooded; for in old times hereabouts grew many lofty Trees, which are rare now in these high places; such as induced the noble Poet *Lucan* in his 3. lib. to remember them.

D. Forum: Faming nemus, ——

Then Taurus lofy Wood forst, enwas.

A long mile from this Sepulcher and higher up into the air is the high peak of *D. m. v.*, by *Sirabo* in his 11. lib. called *Jasonia*, whose top / shaped like a Pyramid / surrounds, as some think all other parts of *Taurus*: up which defatigating Hill nevertheless we crawled but with difficulty, and from whence we had an unlimited Horizon: For

we could discover thence the *Caspian Sea*, albeit eightscore miles distant, and not so mis-takenly as *Alexander*, who upon the prospect judged it to be some out-breaking of *Pam Meotis*. Above it is composed of sulphur, which causes it to sparkle each night like *Etna*; a pleasant object to the eye, but so offensive to the smell that it requires a nosegay of Garlick in the ascending. Hence most parts of *Persia* and *Chaldaea* has their Brim-stone. The reaſon why we rode up, was out of curioſity to ſee the Baths ſo generally referred to; the Springs in this Bath are ſome hot ſome cold, yet riſing out of the fame Mountain: Three of them are more private than the reſt, being compaſſed with Walls of ſtone; the other two are open; the firſt be for thoſe of Quality, the other more common: And hither in *August* diſeased People flock apace in very great multitudes, who receive notable cures from thoſe Waters, which by their great Virtue and medicinal heat adverſely draw thither that concurſe of People, not from fevral parts of *Persia* onely, but more remote Countreys. The Earth is by Philofophers called *Elementum frigidissimum*, cold and moist; albeiit in ſome places by reaſon of Minerals it be *fusiform* and of a combustible quality. For, *Naphtha* and others of a bituminous ſubitance are without doubt the efficient caufe of hot Springs (such as theſe here be) and alio of ſubterranean fires, as Experience teaches. These hot Baths queſtioneſs receive their vertue from the Mineral veiins through which they paſs: but what ſort of Minerals the Water has either its heat or tincture from, (whether from Sulphur, Vitriol, Steel, or the like?) our ſhort ſtay would not diſcover; and I could learn little of the People, for they were ignorant. The Earth (faith *Ariſtotel lib. de Mundo*) hath within it not onely Fountains of Water, but alio of Spirit and of Fire, ſome of which flow like Water: whence it comes, that the Water it ejects is ſometimes ſcalding hot, and at other times lukewarm and temperate. But the cauſes and effects of this I leave to ſuch as delight to ſearch into Nature's Curioſities.

*How are we left by Fortune? when we keep
At Sea, we ſee the wonders of the Deep,
And tremble at the danger, where we dive
Under the hideous waves. When we arrive
On Land, we think ou happy: But e're long
We muſt to work again, and climb the ſtrong
And craggy Mountains reaching up to Heaven:
Each down-craft look is death, each way uneven
Dams our thick-panting hearts; leſt if we miſſ
One ſtep, we headlong fall the precipice.
. The top (like fierce Vefuvius) Sulphur ſpits
The mid-way wholenſom Baths, which cure all ſets
Of Aiges, Aches, Palfie, and the Stone;
All Epileptick fumer; as if alone
Nature had choſe this place, to plant in theſe
The Art of Galen and Hippocrates.*

Now whether this Mountain derive its Name from the adjacent Town called *Damoan*, or the Town from it, others may better determine than my ſelf: But from the etymon of the word in the original Language, or Dialect of theſe parts, it signifies a Second Plantation. Whence it is that the *Jews* who in great numbers inhabit hereabouts (having as they report been ſeated there ever ſince that memorable transplantation from *Canaan* by *Salmanaffer A. M. 3220*, mentioned 2 Reg. 17. 6.) ſpare not to averr (but from a Cabala or received Tradition from their Anceſtors,) that upon this Mountain of *Damoan* Noah's Ark reſted. About the place where the Ark reſted hath been no ſmall conteſt among Writers: ſo as to my apprehenſion that high place has been fo clouded or depressed through variety of conjectures, that it will be a labour of ſome diſticulty to diſcover it. *Ben-Jonas* places it near the River *Tigris*, where it ſprings not far from the *Gordian Mountains*: *Inter Armenios & Gordios in monte Lubaro confedit Arca Noe*, ſays *Epiphanius*. And in regard thereto is a Mountain called *Ariarathus* in the leſſer *Armenia*, ſome would fix it in that Region: Nevertheleſs the moſt received opinion is, That the Ark after that univerſal Deluge reſted in *Armenia* the greater; for in Gen. 8. 4. we read that the Ark ſtay'd upon the Mountains of *Ararat*; which word ſome interpret *Armenia*: and running currant with moſt probably gave occaſion to the Poet *Ayatius* in his fourth Book to ſay, *Armenia celsis iſſabat montibus Arca. Bocarius and Haython the Armenian are no leſs positive, that In toto Orbe Terrarum non eſt mons alioſor quam Arash,*

cujus in cacumine Arca Noe post diluvium stetit. But where this *Ararat* was has not a little been controverted by Divines and Geographers of the greatest rank. For by *Ararat* most agree is understood *Caucasus* and *Taurus*, which for length and height is reputed the greatest Mountain in the World; stretching from the most Northerly part of *Armenia* as far as *India*, until it be affronted by *Imau*, which in a contrary course divides *Scythia*: all which tract or ledge of Hills is usually comprehended under these three names *Ararat*, *Taurus* and *Caucasus*; which for the greater half seem to environ the *Mare Caspium*. Nevertheless, the names of these three imperious Hills are lost in many places through length of time and the several Idioms of speech, which vary according to the different Dialect of the sundry Kingdoms and Provinces they pierce through. As for example, where *Ararat* rises in *Armenia*, there the most culminating pycnor top is commonly called *Baris* and *Suhoris*; which in the *Copique* signifies a Ship: *Ingens mans Baris est super Miniadem*, says *Damascen*. And is either a Province in *Armenia* neighbouring *Ararat*, as we find mentioned in the 5 of *Jerome* 27. or is *Armenia* by leaving out the *Ar*, per *Aphresin*, as *Hispmania* for *Spania*, and as we might observe in several other places, for example. This is part of that we properly call the *Gordian* Hills which some name *Kardu*. In *Media Atropatia* it multiplies into the *Coraxi*, out of which *Araxis* springs, *Moschici*, *Pariedri* and *Barama*. Where it crosses the most Northerly part of *Parthia* nearest *Media*, *Caspis*, *Jasomii*, *Zagria*, *Gade*. Passing through *Hyrcania* it bears the names of *Sariphi*, *Coatri* famous for trees of marvellous height, *Liberia tangentes sylvas liquere Chontra*, *Plin.lib. 6. c. 7. Orones, Coronii, Acroceratum*, by which last the Greeks sometimes comprehend the whole Province. Through *Aria* and *Paropamisa* 'tis called *Istochi*, *Pharpariada*, *Bomarai*, *Mandradi*, *Gassari*, *Oxiari*, vicinating the River *Oxus*, and then *Caucasus*, where the *Scytha-Saca* live in view of *Imau*; all which multiplications are comprised in the first three: whence it is that the quest is so obscure; *Tauri*, *Caucasus* and *Ararat* being indeed one and the same Hill: For *Caucasus est pars Tauri*; & *tunc Taurus Caucasus nomine intelligi debet*, saith *Philostyrus* in his 2. lib. With good consideration therefore that glory of our Nation for Learning Sir *Walter Raleigh* in his Map placed fol. 108 gives those names of *Ararat*, *Taurus* and *Caucasus* promiscuously to the whole Hill in its full extent from *Armenia* to *Mergiana*. So that albeit we read in *Berosus* lib. 2. That *In vertice Gordiae montis Noe quicvis post diluvium: Noem tamen Scythe omnium deorum majorum & minorum Patrem appelleverunt, & humana Genit authorem & Cisus & semen mundi agnoscant*. *Tyteam vero Uxorem eius Aretiam vocam, in quam semes Chaos posuit, & ex qua langum ex Terra cruci homines prodierant, &c.* Yet *Annius, Goropius* and others fix the Ark in that part of *Mergiana* that joyns to *Hyrcania* where it views *Scythia*: And not without reason, seeing some of the most learned in this sort of curiosity judge that the first seminary after *Noah's* descent from the Ark was in *Mergiana*, a luxuriant foil fitted for Grapes and what else might encourage his Plantation: where as we find in *Ptol. septima Tabula Asia* is the City *Nysaea* or *Noysea* in 41 degrees either built by *Noah* or to his memory: and for the Clime, none fitter for Grapes; *Amanatis adeo inclyta, ut in ea Vitem inventire (inquit Strabo) cuius frumentum duorum hominum vix Uina complectatur: racemum vero duorum cubitorum orbem implere*. Which being shewed *Alexander* the Great he admired, and therupon there built *Alexandria*; and so the *Scythians* branching from the first seminary are properly called *Gens semper Antiquissima*, and preferred before the *Phrygian* and *Egyptian* in their claim concerning Antiquity. Besides, from the concinnity of Name and tradition that *Bacchus* here lived it had the name of *Nysaea*, which some nevertheless suppose to be *Agra*, a City built upon a branch of *Ganges*, and othersome say took its denomination from *Nyla Bacchus* his Nurse which with *Jupiters* gave the name of *Dionysus*, to whose memory a City also was built in *Media* of great esteem for breed of Horse; and another in *Mergiana* near the River *Hydaspes* a branch of *Indus* remembred by *Lucan* in his 6. lib. *Et qua Nysaea Hydaspes, &c.* From that analogy or resemblance of *Nysaea* and *Noysea*, of *Noachius* and *Bacchus*, and the delight both took in Vine-planting, it has induced *Goropius* with others to fancy that they were one, and in *India* both of fame at this day: the rather in regard *Noah* made not his peregrination with *Nimrod* and his party who settled in the Vale of *Shinar* at the confusion of Tongues: For *Elam* (*Sem's* Son) returned the way he came from *Noah*, and seated himself in *Persia*; but *Ophir* and *Havilah* (*Sons of Joktan*) travelled further East, first to *Lahore*, and after into *Bengala*; where, and at and about *Malacca* 'tis found they fixed their Plantation, the Places retaining their Names to many descending generations, as I shall have occasion in due place to speak of more at large; by which and much more I might observe, 'tis apparent that Opinions differ concerning the place where the Ark rested; give me leave therefore to offer my own upon

upon this report of the Jews inhabiting at and about *Damoan*, that this was the place.

First, *Goropius* and others are so far from agreeing with *Hayton*, That *Ararat* is in *Armenia* rather than any other place where the Mountain uninterruptedly runs as far as *Aurigana*, (Easterly to the *Caspian Sea* as *Strabo* and most Geographers place it, albeit mistaken in making it part of *Tartary*; and yet *Ptolomy* in his fifth Table of *Asia* places it between *Media* and *Armenia*, which I marvel at,) and may properly bear that name; That he inclines rather to fix it in the most Southerly part of *Scythia*; which I think too far stretcht; and rather agree with St. *Hierome*, That *Ararat* is not only a hill strictly so called, but in a larger signification a champaign Country near which *Araxis* runs, (over which, albeit *Virgil lib. 8. Aeneid.* layes *Araxis* scorns a Bridge, *Alexander* and *Cesar* built two) not far distant from the foot of *Taurus*: which description brings it very near *Damoan*. *Elm. in alio* in his first Book relates how that the Emperour *Heraclius* pursuing *Chosroë* the Partitian King into *Hyrcania* was by some then in the Army shewed a high hill which they called *Gendi*, upon which they persuaded him the Ark rested; which *Gendi* says the Author was near unto a Villa at that time called *Themain*: a name differing not much from *Damoan*, the (*D*) and (*Tb*) being sometimes alike pronounced. *Geographus Nubiensis* hath also some conocordance with it, saying *Mons Ternan in qua requievit Navis Noe*, legi debet *Themain*: which name upon this occasion sundry Greek Writers commemorate as *Agaibis*. Furthermore, *Vulcanus* in his 4 lib. gives us this further testimony, That upon the high Mountain *Taman Noah's Ark* rested: a name little discrepant from what *Damoan* is now called, the various Dialects of Speech in many places occasioning a greater difference; and for proof may note the different pronunciation of *London*, *Tredagh*, and *Antwerp*, by our transmarine neighbours.

Nor does that of *Procopius* upon *Genesis* weaken but rather fortifie this my conjecture in saying that *Ararat excutitur in medium inter Armenian & Parthiam versus Adiabenum ad aquilonem, non ad orientem Babylon*; seeing that *Damoan* scituation is twixt *Armenia* and *Parthia*. Being also more strengthened from that of the commentator upon *Berosus*, who perwades his Reader that the Ark rested upon those *Caspian* hills that separate *Armenia* from *Media*: Which description as with a finger to my apprehension directs unto this Mountain of *Damoan*. But having peradventure presumed too far upon this supposition, I leave the disquisition to a more accurate observer: and onely take leave to acquaint you with what the Jews here-about inhabiting report; How that part of the idolatrous Tribes of *Daw*, *Zibulon*, *Asher*, and *Naphthali* were by *Salmagasser* commanded to abide in these parts: *Tiglathpillez* the Assyrian Monarch having transplanted the half Tribe of *Manasse*, *Rheuben* and *Gad* to *Jairon* and other places within this Kingdom of *Larr*, as I have already obserued. The Inhabitants of *Damascos* also were removed by that great Prince to *Kyr* in *Media*, 2 Reg. 16. 9. about the River *Cyrus*, which is so pronounced; but the *Chuthites* were removed to *Samaria* in the place of those Jews, + Reg. 17. which *Chuthites* (as I gather from *Josephus* in his 9 lib.) were inhabitants of this Region, at that time called by the name of *Chutha*; by which word some mistakenly have understood whole *Persia* albeit more likely to be *Chuthistan* as *Susiana* is oft-times called; a Country extending from *Larr* Weltward as far as the Altars of *Hercules*, the utmost Cities of which were *Spamea* and *Ctesiphon*. And albeit *Gibon* be a general name for great Rivers, nothing indeed has more puzzled Scholars than to find where *Gozan* run: For although *Ptolomy* make it (if it be that *Gozana* he mentiones in his 6 lib. 16 cap.) a branch of *Oxus*; yet forasmuch as *Flora* which some erroneously take for *Ch.ri o. Churan* in *Mesopotamia* where the Patriarch *Abraham* sometimes dwelt, and *Hala* and *Ghabor* are Cities in *Media* as recorded in the 2 Reg. cap. 18. vers. 11. near the River *Gozan*; it is not probable to be that *Gozan* which mixes with *Oxus*, since no part of *Media* is within thuse hundred miles of it. *Gozan* then either must be in *Media*, which may be seeing that *Araxis* waters *Armenia* and runs into the West side of the *Caspian Sea*; or else this River here which is of a great breadth, streaming from *Taurus* both into *Media* and *Hyrcania*, and cut in many small Rivuletts by the People to draw her many ways to serve their occasions. And the Jews inhabiting here confirm this conjecture, saying also, That when they were brought hither captives they were dispersed into many several places, and here have rested unremoved during many overtures and changes of the Persian Monarchy.

Moreover, albeit the *Israelites* had for the extent of their Dominion what was from the Red-Sea or Wildernes of *Sin* to the River of *Euphrates* and the great Sea, as the *Mediterranean* is called *Exod. 16. 1.* and *Josh. 1. 4.* which was accomplished in *Davids* Reign: yet the Territory they inhabited strictly called *Judah* and the portion of the

twelve Tribes, was but small in comparison, scarce amounting to the third part of France : So as wonderful it is to consider what increase they had, both by what we read upon numbering the People by *Jacob*, and the force they brought when *Aja* out of the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin* drew into the field against *Zerab the Ethiopian* 580000 men. As also by what *Josephus* writes were assembled in *Jerusalem* when besieged by *Vespasian* and his Son. Yet since they were banished their own Country they have not since either had King, High-Priest, Countrey or Town they could call theirs : but like Vagabonds live scattered over the Face of the whole Earth : So as they who once were the chosen People of God, and in consideration of whom all others were of no esteem for sanctity, whose diad was to be upon all the Inhabitants under Heaven, whose fame should make the Universe to tremble whilst they obeyed the Lord ; for their Apollalie and Idolatry are now rejected, and that dreadful Prophecy of *Jer. 24. 9.* pursuant to that curse of *Moses* pronounced *Dent. chap. 23. vers. 37.* and of *Ezek. chap. 5. vers. 15.* where God threatens to deliver them to be removed into all the Kingdoms of the Earth to their hurt, to be a reprobate and a proverb, a by-word and a curse in all places whether he would drive them, to the full extent we see accomplished. For indeed, not only what the Christians revile them for their hatred to Christ, the Prophets and Apostles; the very Heathen accused them as *Mordipani* or enemies of Mankind, towards whom they bore an irreconcileable hatred say *Diod. Siculus* and *Tacitus I. 5.* being of all Nations the worst, *Amian. de Marco Imp.* and as people that of old time moved sedition, *Ezr. 4. 15.* inasmuch as they were termed *Festentes*, & *vel fortius corum occursum oculus horrebat, animo persequebamur*, men avoiding the very sight of them if by chance they met them. And though I am perswaded (by what I have seen) they are at this day the most numerous of any one People in the world were they drawn together into a body; yet being dispers'd, they appear as if they were but few. Further, albeit when they were in the promis'd Land, of all others they were the most prone to Idolatry, even when they had light and all the whole World besides sat clouded in darkness; yet being now under captivity and severe subjection where-ever they inhabit, they keep strictly to the Tradition of their Ancestors, reading the Pentateuch, and abhorring Idols. So that though by reason of the curse afore-mentioned and their unbounded avarice they be the most contumacious people upon the earth, yet by us are to be pitied, being the offspring of *Abraham* the Friend of God, and forsaking as that in *Isaiah 14. 3.* 'tis promised the Lord will in the end give them rest from their sorrow, and from their fear, and from their hard bondage. For as *Dent. 30. 4.* albeit they should be cast even to the ends of the earth, yet from thence will the Lord gather them, and bring them into their own Land, the Land which their fore-fathers possessed. With which agrees *Jer. 32. 37.* That he will gather them out of all the Countreys wherein he hath scattered them in his indignation, and return them to their own land, where he will cause them to dwell in safety. Which some think will be accomplished at their conversion and not before : according to that of *Zeobaria* chap. 12. vers. 10. They shall look upon him whom they have pierced, and shall express their repentance by lamenting for him as one mourneth for his only son; for in that day the Lord will oppose himself against all Nations that shall come against *Jerusalem*. In the mean time (with grief be it spoken) we find them every where, in a most obdurate condition. But to return.

East of *Damoan* high peak is a Town called *Nova*, in which were about a hundred Families. A young man Son to *Hodge Sware* or *Abucrus* (the Persian Merchant that died in *London Anno Dom. 1625.* and Brother to *Mahomet* whom we buried at Sea) hearing of our passing by, came out accompanied with several of his friends and kindred to invite us to his house which was about a mile thence : He was apparelled in a robe of Cloth of Gold, had upon his head a Tulipant of Silk, and was gallantly mounted. His Mein was good, so was his Civility : prevailing with the Ambassadour to go a little out of his way to accept a Collation, such as the Countrey and small warning could provide, it was with such cheerfulness as gave his Lordship and rest of the Company good satisfaction. Thence we hasted towards *Damoan* : where as we descended down a steep hill, we passed by a black Tent pitched in a pleafant place near the Road, filled with above thirty Women and Men, who at firſt I thought were solemnizing their *Batalia* and *Paganalia*, but it proved a Wedding. Staying there a while we saw the Bride, about ten years of age, but the Groom was thirty. Many Bride-maids came out to admire us, whom we no les wondered at: for their faces, hands and feet were upon that solemn occasion painted in various forms with birds, beasts, cattle and flowers; their arms and legs chained with manilio's or voluntary bracelets, or rather setters of Brads and Silver, which in their Morisco made them appear not unlike the Arcadian Shepherdesses as described in

Roman-

Romances. Having presented them with a small offering we left them, that night making Damoan our manzel.

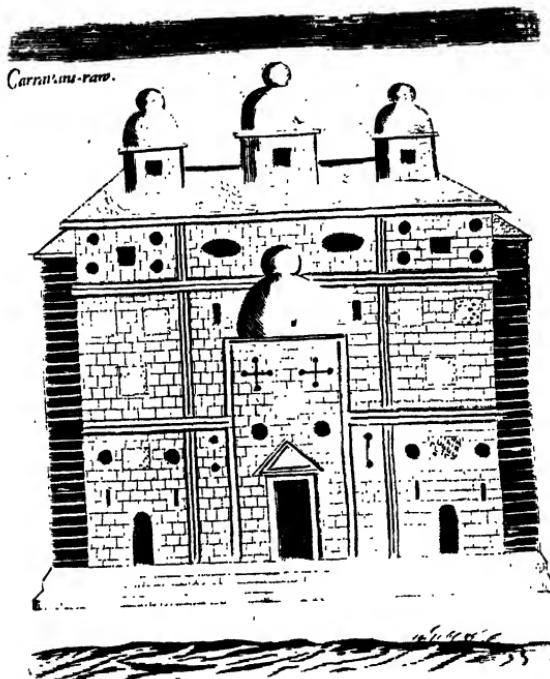
Damoan, whether it be the relict of Ghabor or Halab is uncertain : but by the Jews, in these parts called *Jehuds*, their long captivity and abode here, seems to be one of them. And that the *Ava* and the *Cuthes* were transplanted by order of the *A'lyrian* Monarch into *Samaria* from these parts is imagined : It is a Town of good repute amongst the *Perseans* : some write it *Damawan*, but I took it according to their pronunciation. The North Pole is there elevated six and thirty degrees, twenty minutes ; and longitude is eighty eight. It is included by a skirt of *Taurus*, in the *Kaboncharion* Province (part of *Ghelack*) and this was the limit of *Media* to the North. In old times here lived the *Parasitacene*, mountaineers mentioned by *Strabo* in his 11. and *Herodotus* in his 1 lib. A Town pretty well watered it is, for a branch of *Gozan* refreshes her. *Ben-Joz*. (whose Travels *Arias Montanus* had a good opinion of) draws this *Gozan* all over the *Persean* Dominion, where-ever any Jews were planted : but erroneously, for it is restrictive. *Damoan* is peopled most part with Jews, who in this place are two hundred Families. The Bazaar is built aloft, and scarce worth the climbing to, except it be to buy wine and fruit which is had here in plenty and at easie prices. Two days we stayed in *Damoan* to recreate our wearied bodies ; but on the thirteenth of June we departed, and that day rode to *Bomabeem* five and twenty miles from *Damoan*.

And now we are in *Media*, a word of her. *Media* (faith *Polybius*) is situated in the center of the greater *Asia* ; accounted a rich and noble Country. The helitious Greeks persuade that it takes its name from *Medus* Son of *Jafon* and *Medea*, *Elias* unfortunate Daughter. More certain it is that the name is derived from *Madai* Japhet's third Son, Son of *Noe* ; for the *Medes* and *Perseans* before *Cyrus* his time in Scripture as well as profane Stories are ever called *Madai* or *Medi* and *Elamita*. By the Greeks sometimes you find them called *Hare* from a City and River there ; by the *Arabs* *Algebud*, by reason it was hilly. And note-worthy it is what *Mela* lib. 4. c. 3. observes concerning the descent of the *Medes* from the *Sarmatian*, (from whence the *Saxons* also,) *Madu* (faith he) à *Sarmatis*. *Sarmatae Medorum sunt soboles. Scrum enim his inter Scylicum & Medium ex utroq; nivis, &c.* And from thence as *Trogus Pomp.* lib. 41. The *Sarmati* are called *Sarmadai* : a pretty conjecture. It was anciently divided into two, viz. major & minor : the minor was *Airopatia*, (*Tropatena* in *Ptolemy*, *Airopatena* in *Pliny*, from *Airopat* one of *Alexander's* Captains;) and *Media* major or *Azurka*, at this day *Sheeroan* i.e. milky plain where *Ecbatan* the Metropolis once stood.

'Tis divided into *Gheylan* (*Gheyle* in *Ptolemy*, *Cadusia* in *Pliny*,) *Deylan*, *Vaaz-prau* and *Thezican*, naile are *Airopatia* ; in which we might include part of *Armenia*, *Felphy* or *Chialul* being there scated, and *Nassivan* (*Artaxata* of old.) *Sheivan* has *Adrabayon*, *Harran*, *Sultania*, and *Tabrizan*, which are in *Media* minor. To the North it has Mount *Taurus*, *Parthia* to the South, *Babria* confines it East, and on the West it has the greater *Armenia* and part of *Affryia*. *Pausanias* errs in calling this *Aria*. A rich and puissant Country it was in the worlds infancy : but whether by the confounding hand of War, or Gods Justice in revenge of so many holy Christians that *Chosroe* massacred, I cannot say ; but now it is a barren and miserable soil, comparded with the Phoenix of Iles great *Britain* ; who all things considered equals the belt compacted pleasures of these Asiatic Provinces : Nevertheless, it has been fruitful you may say, if Pope *Pius* the second took his information right out of *Strabo*, as that an Hippobotos or Horse-pasture here shoud nourish fifty thousand breeders : of which the Nysean race was most of price ; so called from the City *Nisa*, one of *Bacchus* his Towns which *Hydaspes* watered ; and concerning which *Lucan* lib. 6. has this remembrance, *Qua rapidus Ganges & qua Nyseus Hydaspes Accedit pelago.* The Course of which River is much controverted, some placing it in *Affryia*, others in *Media*, but *Plutarch* rightly in *India*, *apud omnes satis conflat Hydaspes, fluvium Indianum Media, &c.* being indeed a Branch of the River *Indus*. Here also *Alexandropolis* was founded by *Alexander*, of which at this day nothing remains. And albeit by the report of Writers this Country was then verdant and pasturable ; yet little grafs is to be found at this day, not only here, but over most part of the *Persean* Monarchy, save in Valleys and where Rivers are : But in stead thereof Camels abound, who make a shift to live even in Sandy Deserts, and crop the boughs of trees or shrubs which rarely they meet with. The Dromedary and it are of one descent, but vary according to the Countrey they breed in: In *Babria* and *Perse* they have but one gib or bunch, the *Arabian* being oft-times double. In *Gesner's* History of *Quadrupedes* the *Gyraff* is also mentioned. A spotted Beast with a neck much longer than a Camel, the fore-legs longer than the hinder, begot says he by a Male Camel on a female

Female panther. But no such Beast in *Persia* either could we see or hear of. The Males in rutting time burn with too much heat, and grow foaming franticke towards copulation; yet as some write, in that distraction will by no means commit incest, nor will they go willingly without their consort: They couple backward, go great ten months, commonly have but one at a birth which they suckle two Years apart from company, not losing their milk by a second conception: They live threescore Years, labour much, feed little; refrain drink three days, but then quench their thirst immeasurably: Their milk is cordiall; their flesh rank and lean; yet in *Asia* preferr'd before Beef, Veal or Pork, which I suppose is because that *Mahomet's Alcoran* or rather *Ozmar's Psalms* commands it. For albeit Camels flesh was of old eaten by the Oriental Nations as *Prodomus* writes, yet *Camelus cibus est infalubris*, saies *Galen*. From *Bomaeem* we travelled to *Tyroan*.

TYROAN by her continued greatness, antiquity and station, seems to be that *Rha-zinda* which *Strabo* mentions: Sated it is in the midst of a large level or plain; and albeit at a distllance it be environed with Hills, yet one way it affords a large horizon. The air is temperate in the morning and towards Sun-set; but in the Sun's meridian we found it very hot. The Houses are of white bricks hardened by the Sun. The City has about three thousand Honfes; of which the Duke's and the *Bazaar* are the fairest; yet neither to be admired. The Market is divided into two; some part thereof is open, and other part arched: A Rivulet in two branches streams through the Town, serving withal both Groves and Gardens, who for such a favour return a thankful tribute to the Gardiner. Adjoyning the City, the King has a very large Garden fenced with a high Wall of mud, no lets in circuit than the City. The House where we lodged over-topped all the rest; from whose high Tarralls (early one morning) I took a prospect both of City and Countrey: I could perceive thence that most of the Masters of Families slept nightly with their *Seraglio's* upon the tops of their Houses, which were spread with Carpets; some (I easily perceived) had three, some six Women about them wrapp'd in *Cambolines* or fine linnen: but this curiositie or rashnesse rather, had like to have cost me dearly, the penalty being an Ax tow into his brains that dares to do it; which but for the priviledge of the place and that I was in my own Countrey habitat, had been executed. The Caravans-lodge here for elegancy far exceeds the *Meschtis*: the Inhabitants are pretty stately, the Women lovely, and both curious in novelties; but the jealousy of the Men confines the temper of the weaker Sex; yet by that little they adventured at, we might see *Vetus rebus gliscit volumas*. *Zend-Aban* was *Sultan* of this City, a Man of little worth in our apprehension: For albeit he had been Ambassador from *Shaw-Abbas* to *Rodolph* the second the *German* Emperour, which no doubt instructed him in some punctilio's of good breeding and expressing of civilities to Strangers; nevertheless, whether his late Employment, or his Favour with *Abbas*, or his Wealth or rather his vexation for *Nogdi-big* his Cousin; all or some of these made him so very discourteous, that albeit our Ambassador in civility sent to visit him, he returned a slight thanks without a re-visit, which we thought barbarous. The Pole Arctic is elevated in *Tyroan* thirty five degrees forty minutes; fourscore in longitude. From *Tyroan* we travelled to a Village called *Charab*, an inhospitable place; for it afforded us instead of sustenance, torment; such as the scalding land and frying Sun could operate: Nevertheless in old times this has been of that repute as gave Name to the Countrey round about it, such time it was called *Kyr* or *Chyr*, but not that mentioned *Amos* 1. 5. *Josephus* places it in *Media superior*, and by him mis-spell'd *Cyrene* or *Kyrene*, by which name the *Persians* also call the River *Cyrus*; and by reason that thither the *Affryian* Prince *Tiglath-Phlili* transplanted the Inhabitants of *Damascus* 2 Reg. 16. 9. (under-going the like detting their Neighbours the *Jews* taſted under *Salmanasser*) sometimes by some it has been called *Syro-Media*; mentioned in *Eſay* 22. 6. where 'tis faid, That *Elam* bare the Quiver and *Kyr* the Shield. This is more likely to be that *Kyr* than *Karizah*, as *Hyrcania* is called by some, as I lately obſerved. But at this day have this small glimpse nothing remaineth. From hence to *Tauris* is two days riding. The Caravans-raw is thus shaped.



TAURIS, the late Median Metropolis is situate in that part of *Media* which of old from one of *Alexander's* great Officers was called *Atroparia*. The *Turk* and *Persian* call it *Tabyr*, and *Tenoris*; but in the World's adolescence 'twas known by other Names, as of *Achmetia* which we find in *Ezra*; after that *Ecbatana* in the *Apocrypha*; *Ctesias* in his *Persepolis* calls it *Achbatana*; *Amasea* the XXXII. Interpreters; *Cordina* others; and some *Tigranocerta*; who by analogy have mis-placed her in *Syria* from a City there called *Egabatana* converted into *Epiphania* by *Aniochus*: by othersome called *Arsacia* (of which were divers) and *Eurus*, which *Ptolemy* mentions and places under thirty seven degre North. The primier Founder of this noble City is not agreed uppon: *Lib. Judith* it is said, That *Arphaxad* built it, he that was slain in the Mountain *Ragan* by *Nebuchodonosor* the great Monarch of *Affryia*; who after he had destroy'd that City returned to *Ninevah*. Otherosome *Dicless* the *Mede*; and some say *Dioctes An. Mundi* 3296. Others that *Selachus* built it. But *Diod. Siculus* attributes it to *Semiramus*, who with incredible toil brought the Water thither by a deep channel from the Mountain *Orontes*. Howbeit, *Josephus* affures us that it (or rather a Royal Palace for the King) was built by the Prophet *Daniel*. *Ad dicendum Daniel Regiam Ecbatanaum Media opus elegantissimum & arti mirabili constructum. Ubi (faith Diod. Siculus) Sepulchra Regum & Templum Anae maxime mobiliterunt*; A Temple dedicated to *Diana* whom they called *Anaea*, whose pillars were over-laid with gold, as was the roof, and the pavement was *Mosack* Marble of various colours; so excellent as gave occasion to *Polybius lib. 10.* to say, *Urbes omnes aliae Ecbatana opibus & magnificencia longe superasset*. Inthat Temple the great *Artaxerxes* sequestred the fair *Alpasia* whose Beauty made him and his Son competitors, as *Plutarch* in the Life of *Artaxerxes*. To return: By the name of *Ecbatana* she was best known, and had then her most magnificence; for saith *Strabo*, it was fifteen *Italian* miles about, having Walls strong and stately, seventy cubits high and fifty broad, beautified with many lofty Turrets and Battlements; and the like we have in *Judith*: Within were numbred many noble Palaces; but that which *Daniel* built (the *Mausoleum* afterwards of the *Median Kings*) was

was most magnificent, which remained entire and undemolished in *Josephus* his time and some whiles after: That built by *Darius* was no less splendid; for most part was of Cedar-wood, the roof being studded and plaited with burnished gold; of both which nothing now remains save memory; and I can hardly say memory, since some (but frivolously) make question whether *Taurys* be old *Ecbatani*; and whether it be in *Media* or no. But if to be under *Baranta*, if to be 36 degr. 50 minutes, if to shew the ruins of *Tobias* his Grave, if to be the Burial-place of Kings, if to be the Metropolis time out of mind, if to be the City from *Jerusalem* N. E. four hundred farsangs can make it *Ecbatani*; or if the authority of *Ananias*, *Petrus de la valle*, *Lennelavini*, *Texera* and *Ortelius* will serve, it will then appear to be *Ecbatani* in *Media*; and the rather from this additional authority out of *Polybius*, *Media sita in meditullio Asia Regio est opulentissima, cuius Caput est Ecbatana*: Upon whose destruction by the *Affyrians*, *Rages* (mentioned lib. *Tobie* and called *Ara* formerly) became the head City of *Media*: but *Ecbatani* afterwards recovered its liberty though not former glory. *Pliny* also hath this note, *Ebara* (meaning *Ecbatana*) *condita est a Seleuco Nicator Rege distans a Caspium portis 20000 passus*. So as *Ptolomy's* conceit of *Taurys* (mislaken in the *Tan*, a Gamma being printed erroneously for it) to be in *Affyria*, of *Cedrenus* and *Haiton* in *Armenia*, of *Chalcondyles* in *Persia*, of *Niger* in *Perf-Armenia*, and of *Paulus Veneris* in *Parthia*; what were these conjectures but taking rise from the Monarchical Titles of *Affyrian*, *Armenian*, or *Parthian* as they swayed then, and the rest made Provinces; but chiefly from the mistake how *Armenia* was divided; part of *Armenia* extending South from *Araxis* into *Arropatia*, *Araxata* being the Metropolis, and from whence the Name *Perf-Armenia* was compounded: which is not above 36 degrees though *Ptolomy* makes it 40. for by *Abulfeda*, *Ulughbeg* and other Geographers of those parts, the latitude of *Taurys* belt agrees with the situation of *Ecbatani*.

Tauris then is a City both great and populous, famous for an in-land Trade; and so well governed, that it is no terror to such as repair to buy and sell there, for all it is a Garrison. The situation is near the Mountain *Orontes* or rather *Baranta*, which is a part of *Tauris*. It is compassed with a mud-wall five miles about: the Houses after the common mode are flat at top; their material Sun-dried bricks. The *Bazaar* large, the Gardens lovely: That to the South-east was planted by King *Tamus* and much spoken of; but the *Turk* Horses have lately grazed there. It hath but a small supply of fresh Water; yet what it lacks in that, fire and flame supply; the Sun, Wars rage, and civil broils having more than sufficiently parched her. To pass by the revolutions of the Empire, the *Turk* first paffage six hundred Years since, *Tamberlanes* rage and the like; remember we only those irreconcileable Factions, the *Erucoydarbai* and *Namidai* that for three hundred Years so persecuted one another with implacable wrath, as they engaged in their quarrel nine other Provinces, who at length grew so engag'd amongst themselves, that not only this City but *Media* and *Armenia* became well-nigh depopulated: the *Gibelyns* nor *Roses* parties or factious out-matching them: so as in fine they made an easie entrance to any invader. *Selym* the Grand Seignior was the first espied it; and to become an eye-sore to *Tamus* Son of *Ismael* their inveterate adversary, sends a *Bashaw* thither with an Army who ranstaked it *An. Dom. 1514. Heg. 894.* without much resistance. And *An. 1530. Solyman* seconde'd it with so much fury that it flamed many days; the infatiate *Turk* pillaging without mercy, turning topie-turvie all they met with, and into a Chaos those elaborate Walks and Gardens which *Shaw-Tamus* so much delighted in. Reviving again, it again was made prostrate to *Ebrahim Baffa*'s luxury, sent by *Solyman* at the instigation of *Ulemus* a Persian Traytor, albeit Brother-in-law to the King: at which time *An. 1534. Heg. 914.* the *Turk* plundered it. But *An. 1585. Heg. 965.* it groaned under the greatest suffering, when *Osmar* the wrathful *Baffa* slave to *Amur* the third subduing it, perpetrated all manner of hostile cruelty: till thirty Years after by that incomparable Prince *Emyr-hamz-e-myrra* (elder Brother to *Shaw-Abbas*) it was re-gained, re-built, and fortified against the future insolence of those Barbarians. For twixt this City and *Aradevil* he gave the *Turk* a notable defeat: and after that, *Abbas* himself *An. 1619.* near the same place did the like; which for the future has quieted it under the Persian Government. *Tauris* is distant from *Cachyn* seven days easie journey; from the *Mare Caspium* as many; from *Arax* (a City of good Commerce in Silks, and through which *Araxis* streams) six; from *Derbent* eight; from *Spahavan* seventeen; from *Shiraz* thirty; from *Ormu* fifty; from *Jerusalem* fifty; from *Alppo* thirty, and from *Babylon* thirty or thereabouts.

Three days journey from hence is *Sumachy*, which some pronounce *Shamakie*; a Town consisting of four thousand Houses or thereabouts; well peopled and of good resort by Merchants

Merchants from *Russia* and *Armenia*, being thence the road-way to *Cazbyn*. The North Pole is here elevated 39 degr. situate it is in that part of *Media* called *Atropatia* by old Writers, and pretends that it had its foundation laid by *Shamus Zeddaule An. Dom. 995.* *Heg. 370.* from whom probably it took its Name having some coherence with it. The ground is good in which 'tis seated, and watered by a pretty River, so as it bears both Corn and Grapes in plenty: and though the place be level, it nevertheless has a large and delightful prospect towards the North-west; but of most remark is a Fountain or Spring near the Town, which instead of sweet Water sends forth a Stygian liquor, thick and clammy; both in colour and taste resembling Tar; and not unlike that bituminous liquid substance at *Haut* upon *Euphrates*, in the High-way as Travellers pass from *Bagdad* to *Aleppo*: This only is in much less quantity, and not put to like uses. *Tauris* was the Royal Seat of several Kings, the last of which was *Obdolo-chayn*, who died and was here buried *An. Dom. 1566. Heg. 946.* leaving behind him a Son called *Syrwan-Sha*, who finding himself unable to sway a Scepter so near to *Abbas* the *Perfian* King, prudentially submitted his Royalty, and enrolled himself a Tributary Prince under his Empire. Now albeit the City is commonly reputed of good defence, yet it was unable to keep out the *Turkish* Army at such time as that old fretful wretch *Mustapha* with fire and Sword invaded those parts and turned most of the Towns and Villages into ashes; this place especially parching by the heat of his wrath, and the Inhabitants suffering under the edge of his merciless Sword, the heads of so many of the besieged being upon the surrender whipt off as raised a Monumental-pillar, which served as a Trophy to express his savage fancy.

Next night we made our Manzeil at *Sangurrabat*, a Town consisting of an hundred Cottages. In this place we buried a civil Gentleman Mr. *Welsir* our Camarade and Country-man under a broad-spreading Chenoar-tree, and fixed a brazen strole over him which spake his Name and Nation. This was the utmost we could do in that posture we were: Nevertheless, *Ut te postremo donarem munere mortis*, give me leave to add this Distich to his memory.

*We have deplo'red thy death: th'ensuing Tears
Thy Kin will pay thee Tribute with their tears.*

*Mors tua non carcat fictu; linquamus Amici:
Mororem ut celebrent funera cum iachynu*

From *Tabriz* we travel through *Sultany* to *Cazbyn*, the Hills *Zagri* and *Coatri* interposing. And,

Next night slept in the open Fields under a bespangled Canopy, the Firmament; the next in *Shaw-De*, i.e. the King's Town, his Purgatory rather; if a conspiracy of loose and scalding land, burning Sun, and mean Cottages could make one; for the Housles there differ little in shape or clofencs from Ovens; so as the People all day bake themselves in them in stead of Caves and Grots, which serve well to abate the extreme ardour of the Sun: A People so discourteous, that our misery nothing afflicted them. Now, in regard that the heat derived from the Sun arises from the reflexion of his beams darted upon the surface of the Earth, where the Sun casts his beams perpendicular, (which is only within the torrid Zone) the heat where the reflex is most, must by consequence be greatest. But that the heat should so exceed here at such a distance from the Tropick, was doubtless from the quality of the Earth and inflam'd air that render it so intemperate to us, though better endured by the Natives, who from their cradles are inured to it. Custom is a second Nature. In probability this was the Land of *Nod*, i.e. banishment, into which *Cain* wandered after he departed from the presence of the Lord; for this Country is East from *Eden*. And whereas he built *Enoch* the City, albeit it has lost the Name, the Mountains *Enochi* nevertheless are not far distant hence being part of *Tauris* and neighbouring the *Bactrians*; albeit that name is found also near *Pontus* and *Albania*, as some have placed them. From that hateful Town we halld, and next night got into *Cazbyn*.

CAZBYN (or *Kazvin* after the lisp of *Persia*) is that same City which was known to ancient Topographers by the name of *Ajacia* or *Arissaca* which *Strabo* mentions; to named from *Arfaces* that valiant Persian who ruled here *An. M. 370.* and from whom the ensuing Kings *honoris gratia* were stiled *Arfaide*. This was two hundred and fifty Years before the Incarnation of our Saviour *CHRIST*; and is accounted the first that made *Media* an Empire in despite of that *Selucus* who was Son to the great Monarch of *Syria* *Antiochus* firnamed *Theos*. By command of *Nicanor* it was afterwards called *Eurus*; but lost that Name when it bended under the next conquest. It is likely this was that *Rages* (a City in *Media* as appears in *Tobit*) whither the Angel went from

Ecbatana to receive the ten Talents (of our money about three thousand pounds) *Tobias* was to receive from *Gabriel* son to *Gabrius* his kinsman. Their Talent of Silver contained 3000 Shekels, i.e. 375 pounds; the Greek Talent being but 175 pounds sterling: but a Talent of Gold was twelve times as much. I am not ignorant that some make *Edessa* in *Mesopotamia* to be *Rages*: but that is unlikely; for then what business had they from *Nisus* to go to *Ecbatana*? (in the way no doubt or not far deviate to *Rages*) a contrary way leading to *Edessa* which was situated 'twixt *Tigris* and *Euphrates*: besides, it is laid in the Apocrypha that *Rages* was in *Media*, which *Edessa* is not; and whereas no part of *Media* is nearer than a thousand miles from the holy City, *Edessa* is not above five hundred. In one Author I find it called *Hispian* meaning *Hipsum*; and if so, he is much mistaken, that City being two hundred and seventy miles from *Cazbyn*. Whence the Word *Cazbyn* is fetcht I could not learn: but I suppose from *Cowz-van* i.e. a Vale of Barley; as *Sheir-van* is a Vale of Milk, &c. or else from King *Cazvan* as they call *Achemenid* the *Armenian*: or may it not be the relict of *Cabira* an old City which *Sirabo* placed here? for if I should deduce it from *Chazbi* as the seventy interpreters translate it in Gen. 38. 5. or from *Caspia* whence several of the *Levites* and *Jews* transplanted by *Salomon* and by order of *Ariaces* were led back to build the Temple at *Jerusalem*, as in Ezra 8. 1., or otherwise from *Cesara* in *Hyrcania*, as some have fancied, it would relish of too much affectation. The signification of *Exile* is unknown by interpretation or occasion to the inhabitants, except the broacher of that conceit had recourse to the idiom of the old *Parthians*. *Heylin* in his Geography makes this City and *Spahawn* one, in which conjecture he is mistaken.

The North Pole is here elevated 36 degrees and 15 minutes, longitude 85 degrees 50 minutes. By King *Tamas* (Son of *Ismail*) it was made the Metropolis of this Monarchy the better to affront the *Ottomans*. The Kingdom it stands in is *Media*, the Province *Sheirvan*, that part which is called *Deylan*: removed from *Tabryz* a hundred and eighty miles English: from *Hamadan* (the Sepulture of Queen *Ester* and *Mordacai*) a hundred and ten. Now concerning the derivation of *Hamadan*, it is obscure; so that whether built or named in the memory of *Hamadan* the son of *Disan* the son of *Scir* the *Horbute* mentioned Gen. 36. I know not; but famous it is at this day, especially for being the burial-place of *Avicenna* (born at *Samarchand*) a man in his time of incomparable Learning and Industry as to Nature; as may appear by near a hundred books he wrote concerning Phylick and Philosophy, as also a Dictionary of Stones and Herbs, Poems concerning the Soul, &c. From *Sultany* (the residence of six Sultans) 'tis ninety, some say fifty; from *Ardavyl* (the Seigniory of the *Abasians*) eighty; from *Gheylan* seventy; from *Ferrabau* two hundred; from *Samarchand* five hundred; from *Ormus* eight hundred; from *Babylon* five hundred; from *Jerusalem* a thousand; from *Spahawn* two hundred and seventy; from *Shyras* four hundred and ninety; from *Kandahor* five hundred and fifty miles English, or thereupon.

Cazbyn is at this day for multitude of buildings and inhabitants, the chief in *Media*, and equal for Grandeur to any other City in the *Persian* Empire, *Spahawn* excepted. It is seated in a very large and fair even plain, no hill of note in thirty miles compass over-looking her: a champaign it is yielding grain and grapes, but little Wood lawl growing there. Here *Ephestion* (*Alexanders* Favourite) was buried: but the Monument upon which the Macedonian Conqueror expended twelve thousand Talents is not now to be seen, for Time has devoured it. It has a small stream flowing from *Abonda* (*Baroma* of old) which givesthe thirsty drink and mellows the Gardens: from whence by its refreshment and the Peoples industry they have abundance of fruits, rice, roots and flowers in variety. I think the reason why we saw no great Rivers in any Place, is from their forcing it into Sluces and Channels under the Earth (as *Cyrus* did the deep River *Cyndes*, which a great Scholiast wretches for *Ganges* instead of *Cydon*) to bring it by subterranean passagges to such Towns as have none but by that kind of Derivative: insomuch that if *Indus*, *Euphrates* and *Ganges* were amongst them (I mean where the Country is most peopled) doubtless they would make them kiss the Sea in five hundred ostiums or branches. Such fruits as I remember we saw here were Grapes, Oranges, Limes, Lemons, Pomegranates, Musk and water Melons, Plums, Cherries, Peaches, Apricocks, Figs, Goose-berries, Pears, Apples, Pistachios, Filberds, Hazelnuts, Walnuts, Almonds and excellent Pomgranads; Dates there were also, but such as came from *Laristan*. And several Gardens we saw here very pleasant; for being furnished with Trees of several sorts and watered with fresh springs, they become replenished with fruits and flowers of several kinds besides those lately mentioned; which together with the warbling birds that are numerous there, render the place extraordinary delightful.

Cazbyn

Cashyn is circled with a wall, but of little force against an adversary ; the compass is about seven miles ; families are towards twenty thousand, and the people not fewer than two hundred thousand that live there. The Buzzars are large and pleasant, but inferior to some about her. The Mydan is uniform and beautiful, the Kings Palace and Haram are nigh the great Market ; low it is, built of raw bricks, varnished after the mode of Paynun painting, in blew, red and yellow tinctures, mixed with Arabick knots and letters of azure and gold. The Windows are large, trellized and neatly carved. Within it is of useful splendor ; most of the rooms be arched, the roofs and sides neatly painted in grotesque : the ground was also richly spread with Carpets of Silk and Gold, than which no Potentate in the world has more or better. And here 'tis worth the rememb'ring what *Moris-Ally* (Omers General) took from *Tesdard* the *Perfum* King when he was vanquished ; a Carpet that was sixty cubits square, very curiously wrought with figures and precious stones of several colours resembling flowers : whose border had the representation of the Earth, beautified with herbs and flowers as in the spring ; and the materials with which it was woven were Silk, Silver, Gold and Stones of inestimable value : By which it appears, that this excellent Art of Carpet-making was anciently practised in *Perfia*.

Near the Palace Gate is a great Tank or Magazin of water made at the common charge, and almost finished at our being here. The Hummums (or sweating-places) are many, and resplendent in the azure pargetting and tiling wherewith they are currelled : the vulgar buildings also content the inhabitants, but to a discerning eye yield little admiration. The Gardens are many and large : but with those in *Spakawn* and *Skyraz*, not to be compared. The Meschits are not two thirds so many as *John of Persia* computed long ago to be above 600 ; nor those so fastidious in pyramidal aspirations, nor curious in architecture, nor in-side glory, as in many lesser Towns. So as I cannot enlarge her praise, save that in Spring and Autumn I believe it may be a temperate and enticing climate : but in Summer and Winter extreme in contraries ; the Sun frying them with his oblique flaming glances, and *Hyems* a while no les benumming them with his icicles.

Here we met the Pot-shaw again who got into *Cashyn* two days before us : And at his entrance into the Seat-royal instead of distributing the accustomed Royal Benevolence of giving a crown piece to all the women at his return after a long progres, (which the Ancient Kings of *Persia* ever used and *Alexander* doubled to those that were with Child, and for omitting which *Oolum* is taxed,) *Abbas* exercised his severity. For it seems that forty Camels entring loaden with Tobacco out of *India*, (the drivers being ignorant of a late prohibition, the King sometymes commanding, and restraining as reason of State invited,) *Mamer Ally-beq* the Favourite (wanting his piscalh) commanded the penalty be executed, which wasto crop their ears and snip their noses ; offering withal to his angry Justice a dismal sacrifice of forty load of Tobacco which was put into a deep hole that served as a pipe, and being inflamed, in a black vapour gave the Citizens grates for two whole days and nights an unpleasing incense.

After some stay, Sir *Dodmore Coton* to quicken his dispatch visited *Mahomet Ally-beq*, who according to his education entertained the Embassador with a supercilious look, advising him to trust his secrets to his Cabinet, wherein as he would have him to understand the Mysterics of the whole State were locked ; the King by reason of other great affairs expressing a willingness that it should be so. The Ambassador in any other place than *Persia* might have slighted his proposition : but perceiving no other remedy, and desiring to hafe home, imparted so much as he saw necessary. In answer to which, he soon perceived that touching Sir *Robert Sherley* he was to expect no further satisfaction, his adversary being dead and at the *Cappian* Sea the King having sufficiently honoured him : but to speak truly, the Pot-shaugh had then no affection for him, when probably by reason of his old-age he was disabaled to do him further service ; adding (but out of an enemies mouth) that his Amballies to the Princes of Christendom were but complements of ordinary moment. But when our Ambassador objected, he was in person there to justify his Commission ; that he had the Kings Letter of credence, sign'd and stamp'd by the Shaugh himself ; and that it had been a dangerous presumption for Sir *Robert Sherley* to look *Shay Abbas* in the face had he been an Impostor ; the Favourite was convinced we thought, for he had no further objection, save That so our Ambassador pleaded to lend him that Phirman Sir *Robert Sherley* brought for his justification, he would return it him next day, with his Malters fence concerning it.

It was no small vexation to our Ambassador to treat in this sort by proxy : but *Necessitas cogit ad turpia* is an old saying : and three dayes passed e're *Mahomet Ally-beq* would either vouchsafe to return the Letter or give that satisfaction he promised. Howbeit,

at length he came in person and told the Ambassador, That the King had look'd upon it, denied it to be his, and in pallion burnt it; and that Sir Robert Sherley had liberty to de-part. Now albeit our Ambassador very well knew this undue practice, yet it was in vain to challenge the Pragmatick Pagan; nor knew he any recourse by Justice to ease himself; such was the constitution of that time and place: and by the enquiry then made, it was very well understand'd, how that he never shewed it to the King, nor had made further scrutiny concerning it. The truth is, he was bri'b'd, but by whom is not necessary to be mentioned: for Abbas by this got the worst, seeing in this transaction he was dishonoured; otherwise his justice and prudence would have appeared more to Sir Robert's Vindication: Besides, the disentent he expressed against Nogdike (as noted) and Ibrahim-chau his Son, who durst not appear at Court whiles Sir Robert Sherley was there, nor many months after till Syam-chau had mediated his peace (albeit he but his Father had offend'd) made it as apparent as the Sun, that there was juggling. The truth is, the wicked practice of these parts is such, that when any are super-annuated, according to the Proverb, seeing they can do no more Work they are to expect no more Wages; and accordingly Sir Robert Sherley through old-age being disabled to serve the Persians, that made them both slight his person, and retrench his pension; even then when he most expected subsistence and merited their best acknowledgments. But this bad requital of good service is no new thing in Persia: witness that which Plutarch in vita Artaxerxes relates concerning Amalcidas a noble Spartan; who whiles that State was paramount, no man in the Persian Court was more regarded: but suffering an eclipse at the battle of Leuctra (attributed to the good conduct of Epaminondas) the Spartans dispatched Amalcidas to the Persian King for supplies, whose reception was then as slight as formerly it was honourable. And hence came those discontentments, nay that Arrow of Death that arrested him: for upon the thirteenth of July (in less than a fortnight after our entring Cashyn) He gave this trantitory world an ultimum vult in his great climacterick. A Family of so good antiquity, that the naming serves to illustrate it without any Hyperbole. This Gentleman made good the old Proverb, That 'tis better to die honourably than to live with obloquy. And (wanting a fitter place for burial) we laid him under the threshold of his door without much noise or other ceremony. He was Brother to two gallant Gentlemen Sir Anthony and Sir Thomas Sherley; deservedly ranked amongst the greatest Travellers of their times, and (by their great experience) qualified for most eminent services both Civil and Martial. So as in the due Eulocium of such, give me leave to apply what learned Cæsarobon has observed upon Strabo, Etiam Poecil prudensissimos Herorum pronunciant eos, qui multis peregrinationibus usi sunt & varia loca peragai. Multorum vidisse Hominum cum moribus Urbes. Together with that of Ecclesiasticus 34.9. where (in the old Translation) 'tis said, *A man that hath travelled understandeth much; and he that hath good experience talketh of wisdom: but he that hath no experience knoweth little. When I travelled to and fro, I saw many things, and my understanding was greater than I was able to express; oft-times was I in danger of death, but by those things I had deliverance.* In some measure verified in these Brethren; who in passing through strange Countreys escaped many dangers, wherein nevertheless they reaped much honour, and in which variety this Gentleman had his share; and no less tasted of sundry Princes favours: For, by Rodolph the second he was created a Palatine of the Empire; by Pope Paul. 3. an Earl of the Sacred Palace of Latran from whence he was impowered to legitimate the Indian Bastards; and from the Persian Monarch he received several honourable Commands, and for whom he performed some memorable services: but when he most expected thanks, found least, in his old-age, even when he best deserved. Yet in that not unlike Bellisarius. Which I speak not by report. And therefore seeing he wants gilded Trophies to adotn his Sepulchre (albeit his Virtue can out brave those bubbles of vanity) till some will do it better, accept this Ultima amoris expressio from him who so long travelled in his company, and so much honoured him.

eg. qui variis Terræq; Marisq; labores
sustulit, tellum jam tenet Urna Senem.
Comitem Imperii dixit Germania; Roma
Ius dedit ut faciem barbara rura Gives.
Illa, Vires, Habitus, diversa nomine Gentes
Contemplans, placuit sic novitatis amor.
¶ Persas tandem per amoenaque regna Salicorum
Hungar ut officiis, forte vocante, feter,

*To here, the limits to whose restless brain
No Travels set, this Urn doth now contain.
A German Count I was; the Papal State
Impover'd me th' Indians to legitimate.
Men, Mammers, Countreys to observe and see
Was my Ambition and Felicity.
The Persians last I view'd, with full desire
To purge my Fame, blurr'd by a Pagan's ire:*

Which

Which done, Death stopt my passage. Thus the Mind
Which reacht the Poles, is by this Porch confin'd.

Reader! live happy still in home contents,
Since outward hopes are but rich banishments.

After Land-sweats and many a storm by Sea,
This Hillock aged Sherleys rest must be.
He will had view'd Arms, Men, and fashions strange
In divers Lands. Desire so make us range.
But turning course, whilst the Persian Tyrant he,
With well-difpatched charge, hop'd glad would be;
See Fortunes scorn! Under this Door he lies,
Who living, had no place to rest his eyes.
With what sad thoughts Mans mind long hopes do twine,
Learn by anothers loss, but not by thine.

Sed gressum Mors dira vetat; tubum limne condet,
Viventi nullus cui modo Limes erat,
Lector abi, talem nec te quiesceris exta,
Summa (scias) parva gaudia fede frui.

Poii extant latos Terraq; Marisq; tab. r. v.
Parvula Sherleyum nunc renet urna letem.
Arma, Viros, Habitum, diversis nomine Gentes
Contemplans, placuit sic novitatis amor.
Deinde retro relegens cursum mandata Tyranno
Undic; Perlarum, dum placitura refert.
Ludibrium fati! tegitur sub limne reteti,
Viventi nullus cui modo limes erat.
Quam deplorandis spes longas inchoat austre
Mens hominum; exempli fed sine dñe tuo.

Let it not seem impertinent if I add somewhat to the deserving memory of his Wife, that thrice worthy and heroick Lady, *Teresa*. The Countrey she first drew breath in was *Cyrcassia*, that which *Pomponius Mela* calls *Sargacia*, near *Palme Mero*, adjoining *Georgia*, and twixt the Northerly parts of the Black and *Caspian* Seas. She was of *Christian* Parentage, and honourable descent. Her first relation to the Court was by being sent up to attend the *Sultana*, and by that means became sequestred to the *Haram*; where are many hundred Virgins admitted whom the King seldom or never sees; and for ought I could hear, to the King she was no otherwise related: He nevertheless has power to dispose of such of them as he pleases to his Officers, who esteem it no small honour to receive a Wife from his Royal Hands. According to which custom the Emperour of *Persia* presented her to Sir *Robert Sherley* as a testimony of his respect: which Lady was a constant Companion to him in all his fortunes until death.

Such time as her beloved Lord lay dead, and she half dead through a long dysentery, to add to her affliction one *John a Dutchman* (rather a Jew) a Painter, regarding neither her Sex, Profession nor disconsolate condition, complots with *Mamer-Ally-be* her Husband's enemy to ruine her; pretending an engagement her Husband was in to one *Crole Flemming*; and knowing he was dead, refer'd himself to the testimony of the defunct to Witnes it, having no other evidence it seems to prove the debt. She might have paid them by like Sophistry, That if the dead Man would affirm it the world satisfie it. But the pretended Creditors haste to the Cawfee for a Warrant to attach her goods. Howbeit, a faithful honest Gentleman of our Campany Mr. *Robert Hedges* by name, happily having notice, halstens to her House and advises her to make quick conveyance of her goods, which the poor Lady readily hearkens to, and forthwith tears the Satten-quilt she lay upon, shewing that vertue a stronger could not have bettered; and taking thence a Cabinet which contained some Jewels of value, being indeed the all was left her, intreats that worthy Gentleman to safeguard them till the danger was over. He readily obeys: and was no sooner departed, when *John the Boor* enters with his Catchpoles; who (without any Apology for their rudenes, or pity to her distres) broke-ope her Chests, and plundered her of what was valuable: for some rich Velets, costly Turbants and a Dagger of great price they took away; but finding no Jewels (such they had seen him wear, and the rich Ostrich-feather also, which they had woорied in their Ostrich-appetite) they were madded at that disappointment, and made her Horses, Camels and Asses, (being all the personal Estate they could then come by) bear them company, not caring if the Lady starved. The Gentleman so soon as the storm was past returned, and besides words of comfort gladdened her heart in delivering her her Jewels again; of double value by that escape: without which I am perswaded her other fortune reached not to fifty pounds. A small proviso: for so noble a Lady; especially seeing Money is so useful in those uncharitable Regions. But God provided better for her and beyond expectation: having as I hear since placed her in *Rome*, where of late Years she lived with more freedom and outward happiness.

Omnia que de Terra sunt in Terram converteruntur, we learn from *Ecclesi. 4. 11.* And in order thereto, like discontented, long conflict with adverse dispositions, and fourteen days confining of a flux (occasioned as I thought by eating too much fruit or sucking in too much chill air upon *Tauris*) brought that Religious Gentleman Sir *Dodmore Cotton* our Ambassador to an immortal home: the 23 of July (eleven days after Sir *Robert Sherley*'s death) he bade this World Adieu. Our duty commanding us to see him buried in the bell fort

fort we could, we obtained a Dormitory for him amongst the Armenian Graves; who also with their Priests and People very civilly assisted the Ceremony. His Horse (which was led before) had a Velvet Saddle and Cloth upon his back: his Coffin was covered with a crimson Satten-quilt (black they account not of) lined with purple Taffata; upon his Coffin were laid his Bible, Sword, and Hat: Mr. Hedges, Mr. Stodart, Mr. Emmery, Mr. Molam, Dick the Interpreter and such others of his followers as were healthy, attended the Corps; and Doctor Goch his Lordship's Chaplain buried him: where his Body rells in hope till the Resurrection.

Now, although his singular Virtue and Memory will not perish, seeing 'tis acknowledged that *Evebit ad Aeterna Virtus*; I wish nevertheless with all my heart that he had a Monument more befitting him, as some more eminent Memorial. For I may truly say he was *Vivum omnis Virtutis exemplar*; and therefore wish I could better express that *Su-premum officium Amoris I owe than by decking his Herse with these impolished Epicadia.*

Quod procul à Patriis jacer hic qui conditae oris,
Nullum crede nefas illius pepulisse, Viator.
Regis amor Populiq; fuit, pietate colenda,
Quorum iusta tulit per mille pericula Persis
Legatus: sed Fata premunt, nec feederis curant.
Si Virtus, si prifica fides, si gratia morum
Offa beant, Tumulus facer est. Quid tenderis ultra?
Macha filet, Divum resonat Cazbena Britannum.

En! procul à Patriis situs est *Cottonius* oris,
Anglus in Assyria contumulatus humo.
Præsticit hæc Patriæ, jussisq; potentibus almi
Principis, obsequiis officiosus amor.
Exute mollement, quicunq; pericula lensus
Causaris, Celo par fit ubiq; via.

*Lo! Noble Cotton far from home hath found
A refining place in the Allyrian Ground.
His Countrys love, and Duty to his King
So far, a willing heart from home did bring.
Harden thy renderings; no danger fear:
The way to Heaven, alike is every where.*

The Burial of our three Ambassadors (you cannot otherwise imagine) was no small discouragement to the progrès of our Travel being as a Body without a head. For though the *Porter* seem'd to commiserate us as Persons left desolate in a strange Countrey (as an assurance of his respect having sent each of us two Vests of cloth of Gold) yet were we convinced, That he may well call himself a miserable Man, whose welfare depends upon the smiles of *Persia*. We prepared therefore to be gone; but could not till *Mahomet Ally-beg* gave his consent. Long attendance we danced e're we could procure a *Pbirman* for our safe Travel, and that Letter we desired from *Shaw-Abbas* to our most gracious Sovereign: but at length importunity prevailed; so as we got it wrapp'd up in a piece of cloth of Gold, fastned with a silken-string, with a stamp of *Arabick* Letters curiously gilded upon paper very sleek and chamletted with red and blew, agreeable to the mode of *Persia*.

The King's *Pbirman* was thus interpreted.

THE High and Mighty Star, whose Head is covered with the Sun; whose Motion is comparable to the Firmament; whose Imperial Majesty is come from Afsharaff, and hath dispatched the Lord Ambassador of the English King, &c. The Command of the Great King is, That his Followers be conducted from our Palace of Cazbyn to Saway, by the Daraguud of Saway to the City of Coom, and by the Sultan of Coom to the City of Caahan, &c. through all my Territories. Fail not my Command. I also command them a safe travel.

July

Bahmen

Heg. 1008.

After

After thirty days stay in *Cazbyn*, about the midft of *July* we willingly bad fare-well to the *Persian* Court. But e're we go far let me give *Mahomet Ally-beg* our small friend his reward, that others may know him. His Birth-place was *Parthia* (from *Parab* which signifies to fructifie;) his *Almuten* calculated, the aspect was found happy: and in him the *Machiavelian* Motto verified, That a drachm of good Fortune is better than a pound of Vertue. In a happy minute *Abbas* by accident calling his eye upon him, Magick infusion it had it seems; for from a very mean condition he was called to Court, robed in gold, and quickly made the Magnet of *Perſia*. So that we see there is no soul so base, but is capable in some degree of exalted Vertue; as appears in this example: For by being a Favourite he quickly became *Regis aures & oculi*: and of such reputation that he was acknowledged the Idol of the time, intrusted by the King, and in a short ipace acquainted not onely with the Intrigues of State, but quickly learned to steer the Helm of *Perſia*. His yearly in-come at our being there by many was estimated *viis & modis* upwards of 100000 pounds *Sterling*: which may well be, seeing scarce any *Mirza*, *Cawn*, *Sultan* or *Beglerbeg* that depended on the *Pot-shaugh's* smiles, but in an awful complemenſt had no other way to make him their Friend but by ſome annual piftach or other. His Wealth and Favour with the King made him vain-glorious, and with delight beheld himſelf in a false glaſs, which repreſented him much greater than he was: An humour (as one well obſerves) fo poysouſon, that it uſually ſwells the bladder of Vanity with ſo much wind of Ambition as makes Men conceive they ſhall evermore be Fortune's darling; But Fortune not ſeldom in ſport, like the Eagle with the Tortoife, raiſes them aloft, on purpose to make their deſcent the greater. A Favourite therefore in the height of his propterty, ought in prudence to contemplate his ſlippery ſtanding; and how that Fortune is in nothing ſo conſtant as Inconſtantcy. His preſence was comely; his countenance pleafant, made the more amiable by many complemental ſmiles: He was of a big full Body; large eyes and noſe he had, and muſtachoes in excess: at this time aged about forty, a third of which he had been Fortune's Minion. But no ſooner was old *Abbas* by impartial Death ſtruck from the Helm of *Perſia*, and young *Soffee* made the Royal Steer-man, when *Mahomet's* ſupercilious looks were humbled; yea, his ſplendor (in the ſetting of his Maſter) quickly darkned: ſo as we ſee that true which ſaies, That ordinary Advancement and Honour change Mens minds from better to worse; *Solus Vefſasianus* (ſaies the Hiſtorian) *mutatus in melius*. For *Mahomet Ally-beg* his imperious diſpoſition and avarice heaped moſt Mens contempt upon him, inſomuch as any now dares brand him with becoming *Epithetes*; and his Estate being ſo vail, the very weight threatned to press him to ruine. In this we alſo ſee, That Vertue is the beſt baſis for Nobility: An ornament that gives Princes Courts the beſt luſtre; albeit Favourites and great Officers ſeldom trace her ſteps, as if inglorious; but ſuch rather as ſuit with their ambition, and have a tendency to delight and advantage. This makes the People ſigh, beholding the wicked in authority, *Proverbs 29. 2.* Of all others the *Shyrazian Dynaſt* moſt affrighted him when he darted him frowns of death: But (*non ſemper feriet quodcumque minabitur*) a black miſt of unexpected deſtruſion fuming from young *Soffees* brows (of the right ſtock) ſent *Emangoly* firſt to an untimely grave, and ſoon after the *Beglerbeg* his Son to bear him company: neither to be defcended of loyal and Princeſly Sires, to have *Abbas* his Oath of iſafety, to be Protector of *Perſia* during the noonge of the Infant-King, to have famouſed the Crown by many heroick ſervices, nor to be *Emangoly-cawn* could repel the deadly shaft of jealouſie; but in the meridian of his courſe and glory, in the extreme of his hopes, and when ſo long a fare-well was leaſt thought on, he and his are hewn down, making good that of the *Satyrick Poet*, *Ad generum Cereris fine cede & vulnere pauci Decendam Tyrani*; His pride amonſt the Natives, perfidy to the *Engliſh*, his cruelty at *Ormus* in *Arabia*, crying for revenge. In which examples we fee fulfilled, That as nothing is more proud, ſo nothing is more miserable than Man. Whiles *Mahomet Ally-beg* shakes off his rags of diſcontent, and afreſh uigratiates himſelf; at this day moving in ſphere of greatness.

Abbas the *Persian* Emperour was of ſtature low, of a quick aspect, his eyes ſmall and flaming, without any *palpebra* or hair over them: he had a low forehead, but a high and hawked noſe, ſharp chin, and after the mode of *Perſia* was upon the chin bearded; his muſtachoes were exceeding long and thick, and turned downwards. He was born in the Year of *Mahomet* 938. King of *Heray* fifty Years, Emperour of *Perſia*, &c. forty three, died aged ſeventy in the Year of our account 1628. of their *Era* 1008. in *Cazben*. His Heart, Bowels and Carcals were parted and buried in *Aliy-Moſched*, in *Cazbyn*, in *Ardaveil*, or at *Coom* ſome ſay; ſo as few it ſeems know the certainty of this diſtribution.



The Eastern Monarchs at this day continue the custom of their Predecessors; who delight more in Epithetes of Virtue than in Titles of Kingdoms. They accounted it an effeminate vain-glory to stuff their Letters or when they sent their Ambassadors abroad to foreign States to guild their greatness by accumulation of Names of Provinces: In which respect the German Emperour got little in the late Letter he sent *Abbas*; the beginning of which was so filled with Titles of his Empire, that after he had heard half a dozen he had no patience to stay the reading of the rest. Which also is the reason that the Multivite (unless necessity enforce) seldom or never sends thither his Ambassadors. Nevertheless, the prolixity of Titles and Epithetes is no less redundant in another kind, adorning his Letters and Dispatches with Hyperboles of his resemblance to the Sun; his affinity to the Stars; and agreement with the sweetest and rarest sorts of fruits, flowers, gems, &c. As also with the Epithetes of wise, famous, sweet, victorious, merciful, just, beautiful, courageous, &c. Howbeit, the Titles of the Persian Monarch may be these.

A B B A S Emperour, or Pot-shaw of 1 *Persia*, 2 *Parthia*, 3 *Media*, 4 *Bactria*, 5 *Ortispana*, 6 *Chorasan*, and 7 *Aria*; King of the *Ouzbeg* 8 *Tartar*, 9 *Hyrcania*, 10 *Draconia*, 11 *Evergeta*, 12 *Parmenia*, 13 *Hydaspia*, 14 *Sogdiana*, 15 *Paropamisa*, 16 *Dramiana*, 17 *Arachosia*, 18 *Mergiana*, 19 *Carmana*, 20 *Cendrosia*, and as far as 21 *Indus*. Sultan of 22 *Ormus*, 23 *Chorra*, 24 *Arabia*, 25 *Susiana*, 26 *Chaldea*, 27 *Mesopotamia*, 28 *Georgia*, 29 *Armenia*, 30 *Iberia*, 31 *Mengrelia*. Mirza or Prince of the Imperious Mountains of 32 *Ararat*, 33 *Taurus*, 34 *Caucasus*,

1 *Pharsy*, 2 *Arac*, 3 *Shervan*,
4 *Sablestan*, 5 *Candahor*, 6
Tricharistan, 7 *Ery*, 8 *Zagat*
thai, 9 *Morendram*, 10 *Tur*
quetlan, 11 *Syrgian*, 12 *Phar*
gan, 13 *Thalecan*, 14 *Maurena*
har, 15 *Kalifhan*, 16 *Sigifan*,
17 *Maqueron*, 18 *Iligiaz*, 19
Kyman, 20 *Laristan* & *Cizcan*,
21 *Synde*, 22 *Armufa*, 23
Larr, 24 *Jaziry*, 25 *Chufilan*,
and

and 35 *Persardo*. Commander of all Creatures: from the 30 *Caspian Sea* to the 37 *Gulph of Persia*. Lord of the four Rivers of Paradise, 38 *Euphrates*, 39 *Tigris*, 40 *Araxis*, and 41 *India*: Of true descent from *Moris-ally*: Goverour of all Sultans, Emperour of Musulmen, Bud of Honour, Mitorour of Virtue, Rose of delight, &c.

36 *Lathus*, 37. *Ist. loc.*, 38 *George*, 39 *Annes*, 40. *John*,
31 *Vajpracan*, 32 *Yam*,
Tatarow, 34 *Natig*,
Jaral, 36. *Desh-keralin*,
Derib-Farfee, 38 *Pior*, 39
Dighah, 40 *Araf*, 41 *Synde*

And although to the modest Reader a great deal of ostentation appear in these blustering Titles, yet will they seem but small when we parallel them with Kings of old and at this day in other places. For such was the amplitude of *Nebuchadnezzar's* Kingdom that in Dan. 2. 39. 'tis recorded, wherewever the Children of Men dwelt, beasts of the field or fowls of the air, he gave under *Nebuchadnezzar's* hands. To *Abbasius*, *Onnem Terram*, & *omnes Maris Insulas fecit tributarias*, *Hest.* 10. To *Cyrus* the Lord God of Heaven gave all the Kingdomes of the Earth, *Ezra* 1. And by Monarchs of the then known world, *Xerxes* (as *Æschines* writes) in his Letters proclaims *Se esse Dominum ex eum Hominum ab oriente Sole usque ad occidente*, Sovereign Lord of all Men from the rising of the Sun to the going down thereof. *Domitian* (like *Pharaoh*, proudly scoffing, *lib.* 1. *the Lord?*) in his Proclamations thus, Your Lord God *Domitian*. And *Caligula* blasphemously intituled himself *Deus opt. max. & Jupiter Latialis*. Now if he could have satisfied his Atheism with the title of an earthly God or of *Jove*, *Menander* and *Tzetza* had defended him, saying from *Homer*, *Rex est viva Dei imago in terris*, & *Reges omnes olim vero caverunt Jovem*, & *Reges pro Diis habebant*, &c. *Sapor* Son to *Misdates* the Persian, *Anno Dom.* 315. alio began his Letter to *Constantine* the Emperour in this sorte (as *lib.* 17. *Marcellini*) *I Sapores King of Kings, equal to the Stars, and Brother to the Sun and Moon*. Which kindred to the Sun was also claimed by *Mark Anthony* that noble Roman, who called the two Children he had by *Cleopatra Sol & Luna*: both which nevertheless were led captive by *Augustus*, and to the end it might thereby be inferred, that both Sun and Moon were his interieurs. *Cozroes* also (*Ormida's* Son) in the year of Grace 625. (the first of the Mahometan Accomp) scorning those of *Deus Terrenus* or of *Homo a Deo secundus*, blows himself up in this blaspheming procne to *Mauritius* the Emperour: *Cozroes* great King of Kings, Lord of Lords, Ruler of Nations, Prince of peace, Salvation of men; among Gods, a man good and ever, among men, a God most glorious: the great Conqueror, arisiting with the Sun, giving eyes or lustre to the night, a Heroe in descent. From which affected pride those idolatrous slaves were induced to worship and to clamour out, *Tu es nostra Salus & in te credimus*. And whence the Poet to illustrate his Bees, sings

*Egypt nor Lydia do their Kings obey,
Nor Medes nor Parthians half so much as they.*

*Præterea Regem non sic Ægyptus & ingens
Lydia, nec populi Parthorum, aut Medus Hydat
Observant, &c.*

From which examples others in later times have arrogated to themselves no less imperiency. For *Solyman Tjaccus* (that wrathful Turk) proclaim'd himself King of Kings, Lord of Lords, Emperour of *Constantinople* and *Trepizond*; Ruler of *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*; Commander of the Ocean, and Conquerour of *Affryia*, *Arabia*, &c. Alfo *Amara* his Grand-son stiled himself God of the Earth, Captain of the Universe, sacred Angel, *Mahomet* beloved, &c. At length the home-bred *Chynois* but th'other day sending his Ambassador to *Abba* with an Epistle directed, To his slave the *Sophy of Persia*, the undaunted Emperour of the World (a well read man) sends greeting: Neither the Ambassadors brags that his Master had six hundred great Cities, two thousand walled Towns, a thousand Castles, sixty millions of Slaves, and a hundred and twenty thousand millions of Crowns yearly revenue could make his King there to be admired, or priviledge his Ambassador from dirty welcome: the haughty *Persian* spurning him back again, to assure his Master they neither believed him to be the Beauty of the Earth, nor (as he writes himself) Heir apparent to the Sun. His next neighbour and he being at odds for Title, the *Tarian* *I mean* (vulgarly the great *Cham*) A *Cham* indeed in his mistaken genealogy: For as some have writ, forgetting that his great Grandire *Cingus-Cham* was a Black-smith, he blasphemously proclaims himself Son to the highest God, and quintessence of the purest Spirits: whence (as some Travellers merrily report) is ingendred that fanatick custome, some dayes after dinner to have his Herald by found of Trumpet echo out to the other Potentates of the World that he has din'd, so

as then they have the liberty to go to dinner. What may we then think of the Peguan Monarch, of him of *Matacalá* and *Manioongo*, who nourish so high a conceit of their rancidity that Heathen Ambassadors and others are required to creep like Worms and hide their Faces, lest their eyes should be blear'd in gazing on such a lustre? Or of that fastidious *Monomotapán*, who seldom goes abroad or shews himself, in compassion to his people, lest they should be struck blind in eying him, a curtain weakening the beams that otherwise would issue from his face; but are permitted to use their Ears to admire his champs when he eats and the gulps when he drinks: but pay soundly for it, at every gulp and cough (he coughs sometimes you may suppose of purpose) they shout for joy, and *Stentor*-like make the place to ring again. And seeing like pride appears in the Papal Prince *Boniface* 8. we find in *Faſc. Temp.* that not content with the Title of Univerſal Bishop, he intitl'd himself Lord of the whole World; but *Sextus* + his Successor foar'd a strain above him in that Panegyrick upon the triumphal Arch as he firſt entered *Rome* being writ, *In Tūris, crederis esse Deū*. Therefore we may leſſ wonder that *Prefter John* (*Neguz* they call him having never read *Saint Cyprian ad Quir.* *In nullo gloriam dū est, nam noſtrum mihi eſt*) adorns his Myter with fifteen Provincial Titles, adding, That he is head of the Church, the Favourite of God, the Pillar of Faith; issued from *Solomon*, *David*, *Judah*, and *Abraham*; *Sions* prop, extract from the Virgins hand, Son of Saint Peter and Saint *Paul* by the Spirit, and of *Nabu* by the flesh; In theſe, more vagrant than his other reſleſ motions; in vain ſecluding himſelf from the view of man by a thin lawn, ſince in his swelling impoſthume his Pourtraiſt is diſcovered: A Canker alſo ſpreading North as far the other way, to that other kind of Heathen Christian by name *Tuavi Vajilowich* a Tyrannick *Mufcovite*, whose Coronation *Anno Domini* 1584. was celebrated with wonderful magniſcence, beſides his Furrs loading himſelf with two and thirty bubbles of celerity. All which conſidered, we may say, Welfare *Aurelius*, *Saladin*, and *Tamberlane*, Heroes as great, as victorious, and as terrible to the world as any of theſe we have lately named; who ſo deteſted flattery that they bluſhed at their deſerved praifeſ; and ſome at their burials cauſing their winding ſheet to be diſplayed as an epitome of all they merited; proclaimed aloud, *Puluis & Umbra sumus*, &c. But to return; let us now proceed on in our journey.

We left *Czibyn* about ten at night, thereby avoiding the Suns too much warmth: and at his firſt diſcovery from the Antipodes got into *Perijoppon*: a ſmall Town, but memorablc in the sweet cool water we had there to quench our thirſt with; an Element more uſeful than Fire in Sun-burnt *Asia*. Our next Manzeil was at *Asaph*. At *Begam* our next; obſervable in a royal Carravans-raw or Hospital of Charity, erected at the coſt and care of *Tahamas* late King of *Perſia*: And, did the water (which is blackiſh and unhealthy there) but correfpond with other delights it has, it might merit better commendation. To *Saway* we got next night; a Town both great and fruitiſe: But that it is the ruine of old *Tigranocerta* i.e. *Tigrani civitas* (as *Bonacciolum* gueſſes) I cannot credit; ſeeing moſt place that City in *Media Superior* or *Arropatia* neighbouring *Armenia*. But that it was *Messabatha* or *Artacana* I more eaſily believe. The Pole is here raised 35 degrees, 7 minutes. A City I may call it, pleaſantly upon a riſing hill giving ground to twelve hundred houſes, a ſweet Rivolet from the Mountain *Baroma* refreſhing it; from which and the peoples in-duſtry, the thankful earth retributes a Tribute in variety of choice fruits and grain, as Wheat, Rice, Barley, Figs, Pomegranads, Olives and Honey; the ſeven, the promiſed Land in the 8 *Deut.* 8. is commended for. I am ſure of this, no place I ever came in more delighted me for aerial Mulick; and of all the Quire, the Nightingale, twenty together (here call'd *Bulbul*) claiming the preheminence; refreſhment very acceptable to weary Travellers: a Bird whose excellency the ſecond best of Roman Poets thus celebra‐tes,

scriberit me voces avium Philomela cogit,
Quæ cantu cunctis exuperat volucres.
Sulcis amica veni! noſcis folatia pretians;
Inter aves etenim nulla tibi ſimilis.
Tu Philomela potes vocum diſcrimina mille;
Mille potes varios ipſa referre modos.
Nam quamvis alii volucres modulamina tentent,
Nulla potest modulis æquivalere tuis.
Insuper est avium ſpiritus garnire diurnalis,
Tu cantare ſimili nocte dieq̄ potes.

I must ſalute the curious Philomel,
Which all the Birds in ſinging doth excel.
Come pretty friend! my ſolace in the night,
In all the Grove I find no ſuch delight.
A thouſand warbling Notes thy throat displays;
Which thy ſweet muſick chants as many ways.
The vulgar Birds may strive to equal thee,
Yet never can attain like harmonie.
Their mirth doth laſt no longer than the day,
But thine doth chase the ſilent night away.

Our next nights travel was over large plains, raised a little in many places by artificial mounts,

mounts, and here and there cut into trenches: notable no doubt in many gallant encampings; and memorable in *Lucullus* his captivating *Mithridates* that learned King of *Pontus*: But what that grand Epicure fortunately got, *Marcus Crassus* the covetous and richell *Roman* lost, after his impious sacrilege at *Jerusalem*, ravishing thence the holy reliques and so much treasure as out-valued six *Tun* of Gold: pust up with so much wealth and his victories amongst the *Jews*, he resolues with fifty thousand men to forrage *Perse*; but *Herodes* (Son of *Mithridat* the third) courageously opposed him hearabouts, and following his Army into *Mesopotamia* near *Charas* the *Romans* were overthown, and the avaricious Consul by *Spurnia* the General made his prisoner; yea, to glut his thirst (divine vengeance so ordering) as *Tomyris* did to *Cyrus*, the *Parthians* slew *Crassus* so, forcing him to quaff a health to Death in pouring down his throat molten Gold. *Charas* formerly was called *Charan*, *Alt.* 7, and *Haran* in *Esa.* 37. 12. and was situate near unto *Eden* in which God planted that Famous Garden we call Paradise, the place where *Abraham* once dwelt before his remove from *Ur* in *Chaldea*, where *Terab* was a Fir-idolater: called *Urebe*, and by some Authors *Orche* and *Orebo*, near the Desart *Arabia*. In *Gen.* chap. 10. 'tis called *Cathne*; in *Ezek.* chap. 27. *Carnab*: And after that *Caldene* as *Appian* supposes; albeit some think the great City *Selenia* upon *Tigris* not far distant thence to be it. The Country about it and part of *Arabia* was inhabited by the *Schenites*. But to return. By this overthrow given *Crassus*, the *Roman* power was exterminate in *Parthia*, fifty three years before the Death of Christ. Yet long the *Romans* sorrowed not; for *Mark Anthony* five years after by his General affronted them with better success; when the *Parthians* flight nor fight at that time help'd them, their Prince *Pacorus* by his death disanimating them: affrighted in greater measure when *Phraates* (*Mezenius* some name the parricide) deposed the valiant *Orodes* from Crown and Life, treason (the Devils vertue) perpetrating that the *Romans* could not do by generous conflict. Yet *Anthony* attempts revenge, but adverse Fortune suffer'd him not to thrive; such was the resistance he found by the *Sarapeni* (inhabiting *Media*) and the Armenian forces led by *Tigranes* a Captain that formerly worshipt *Lucullus*. Howbeit, *Augustus* (in whose Reign our blest Saviour became flesh, and *Janus* Temple was opened) by Frately easily effected what his predecessors could not do by force; prevailing with *Phraates* to vail bonnet to the Roman Diadem. But two hundred and thirty years after, one *Artaxerxes* a native *Perse* and royally descended, shaketh off that servitude; not only out-braving the *Roman*, but by a three dayes fight and victory over *Artabanus* revived the *Perse* name, which for full five hundred years had been subject to *Parthia*.

Alexander Severus (from *Julius Cesar* the four and twentieth Emperour) succeeding *Heliozelanus* the lustful receives a pragmatick Letter from the new King to restore what anciently adorned the Crown of *Perse*. This repugn'd the Roman Majesty, and there-upon marches to give him an account: but in careles passing over *Euphrates*, the Army was so suddenly charged by *Artaxerxes* that the *Roman* Emperour was routed totally: his bad luck not ending there; for *Maximinus* the *Thracian* soon after bereaved him of his Empire and the *German* assassinated his life; his virtuous Mother *Mammæa* (*Origens* Profelyte) affociating the Emperour in his death as she had formerly in his glory. *Licinius Valerius* surnamed *Colobus* undertook then to rule the Empire, and took upon him to over-rule the rising *Perse*: but neither his eloquence which was notable, nor Army which was great, could do what a Supreme Judge had decreed otherwise; for *Sapores* with an undaunted party denied him entrance, and in the trial the *Romans* were defeated; but which was worse, *Valerian* himself being taken prisoner was to his dying-day (and to the astonishment of all Tyrants) made a foot-stool for *Sapores* to tread upon whenever he mounted: the Justice of God herein being singularly manifested, by compensating the Emperour in this singular abasement and odious servitude for his cruelty and extreme rigour extended to the Orthodox Chritians, many thousands of which he had martyr'd, and amongst the rest Saint *Lawrence* that noble witness, who upon a grid-iron was in a most horrid and inhumane manner broiled to Death. But have I not wandred too far in reviving the memory of *Parthia*? For by this we are entred *Coom*: where having refreshed our scorched and wearied bodies three dayes, of so noble a place I could not chuse but make this following observation.

COOM (in the latitude of 34 degrees 40 minutes) is a City at this day of special note in *Parthia*; placed in the mid-way betwix those two royal cities *Cashan* and *Spahavan*: A City which (if fame say true) for Antiquity and quondam greatness gives place to no other in *Perse*; whether considered in the Name *Gauria* (a name it once bore) and by assimilation thought by some to be that *Guriana* which in old times was a Town of singular note; but erroneously as I conceive, seeing that was under five degrees further latitude

and by *Ptolomy* placed in *Morgiana*: Or in the name *Aribata*, so called from *Aribates* the *Mede* who in the year from the Creation 3146. laid the foundation or rather new-imposed the name soon after the destruction of *Nineveh*, to whose overthrow he most contributed: Or in *Coama*, which is a name I find recorded in *Ptolomy* and *Diodore*; and being then of that eminency as gave the adjacent part of that province the name *Coama*, & *Roxio Comisana*, as I find in *Strabo lib. 11.* and also in *Ptolomy*. Notwithstanding, some there be and that of approved authority, who take this City rather than *Sphawn* to be that which by reason of its hundred gates the *Grecians* termed *Hecatompolis*; and may be granted seeing the latitude is the same which *Ptolomy* gives it.

Nor was this place less considerable for magnitude than antiquity: for *et ierid* by *Arabian Geographers* it is one of the four best Cities that Empire had; and the Inhabitants have a tradition, That for bulk it was once comparable unto *Babylon*. Friar *Odoricus de Friuli* also reports it to have been full fifty miles in circumference, and that for greatness it gave not place to any other City in *Asia*. Howbeit, the circuit it then had cannot by any marks now extant be discovered: but that it was a large Town is discernable both by the rubbish appearing in several places, the foundation of Temples, and other publick Structures. Now seeing some Travellers have vouchsafed this City so immense a body, it gives me the invitation to take a retrospect of other great and famous Cities; which if it be a vanity, I have no better excuse than by rememb'ring that *S. Augustin* made it one of his three wishes, To have seen *Rome* in its glory.

The greatest Cities that ever were, without all peradventure were *Babylon* and *Rome*, (with which I might rank *Niniveb*:) Imperial during such times as those Monarchs swayed their Scepters over the Universe. That hyperbole mentioned at *Sbyraz*, which derisively term *Cairo* and *Damascus* Villages, I willingly pretermitt; for since their fall, new *Babylon* and new *Rome*, that is to say *El-Cairo* and *Constantinople*, are by most ranked amongst the greatest Cities of the World. Concerning *Babylon*, being now so near the place, I shall here only note her circuit: *Solinus* (who gives the largest measure) reports it to be four hundred and eighty furlongs, which according to our admeasurment is about threescore English miles. And *Rome* (in *Nero's* time at full growth) had fifty: of which last, the extent may best be imagined by the number of those free Denizens enrolled into Cense that were able to bear Arms, which as *Lipius* and others relate were 46300: and could not exceed one third of the whole, Women, Children and Servants comprehend. And if we should allow old *Rome* in its flourishing state to have been fifty *Italian* or *English* miles about, which is a vast circuit; yet cannot we grant that it was so thick built, nor with Housies so large for habitation or so high as are now in *Paris* and *London*; theirs seldom exceeding 2 stories, I mean the common sort of Buildings; but granting that the Housies in old *Rome* might exceed for number, yet were they not so fill'd with Inhabitants. *Rosinus* in his *Antiquit.* *Rome* divides old *Rome* into 13 Provinces, each Province contained a hundred Houses, called Regions by *Romulus* at the foundation: But the greatness of *Rome* was principally increast by the many publick Structures and Temples it had. *Quod magnitudinem Rome adauit fuerunt Templa & multisaria sacrorum locorum, ubi signa & statua decorum, hominum & animalium, ponuntur.* Thus enumerated: *Hippodromos, Equaria, Circos, Theatra, Amphitheatre ludorum & Naumachiorum foras, Canacula, Curia, Basilicas, Regias, Obeliscos, Comitia, Septa, Castra, & alia publica Edificia, Nymphaea, Thermæ, Lavacra, Mausolea, Sepulchra, 1055 Lacus, septem Campos, Hortos amplios & quanplurimos, istos praesertim Domissi & Geta Imper.* (as *Strabo lib. 5.*) *Fuentes, Vines, & plurima vacua spacia, & quidem late patnia, in quibus nullae Aedes conspiciebantur:* which put together, must needs take up a great part of the City. But that it was fifty miles about is to be questioned: *Quamvis ex Vopisci verbis depravat putant ambitum Roma fuisse quinquaginta millaria, tamen ex Raso & Vistore qui post Constantium Imperat. vii. cccc. circumut Roma non fuisse ampliorem quam nunc antiqua mura complectebatur: Bozzi de Itata Italie fol. 284.* Now whereas I named *Cairo* and *Constantinople* as the greatest Cities of recent times, it was partly for their being adopted into the names of those two former; and some Travellers as yet continue that repute concerning them, although I am of another opinion: For, *Cairo* is well known to be a long and narrow scattering piece, or rather pieces of Towns patcht together, and falls much short of that grandeur some report it: *Affectu sum admiratione* (faith *Ludovicus Rom. Parricini*, being at *Cairo*) *reperta est ista Civitas fama longe inferior.* *Tanta enim non est inventa, quantu erat rumor.* Negre Urbe *Roma* ambitu major est, licet multi frequentior; *longe plures habent indigenas, vici etiam quanplurimus disperguntur:* albeit *Villamont* report it otherwise; and *Albicius Stemmate Christianorum Principis*, who have it by report onely, the other being an Eye-witness. And concerning *Constantinople*, it is a great and populous City; yet has

not above twelve *English* miles compass, the Houses very mean and low built, and within the Walls are many Gardens and walk places: but were their circumvallations treble to what they are, they would fall short of what old *Rome* and *Babylon* are reported. Those also, when I consider the many and great Gardens and Orchards they then probably had, (for without doubt that high raised Garden which *Nebuchadnezzar* erected upon arched pillars was for admiration and prospect over the City which was founded upon a level ground, rather than that there wanted Garden-room in *Babylon*;) as at this day *Constantinople* and *Cairo* have, and according to the recent mode of *Sophia*, *Agray*, and other the greatest and noblest Cities of the Orient, (for as to the greatness of those of *China* I give little credit;) I am persuaded that those vacant and pleasurable places took up well-nigh half the ground within those Cities. So as by what I have considered and observed, I am not afraid to say, That it is probable some of our *European* Cities are not less numerous in Houses and fixed inhabitants, than those I named. For albeit in *Spain*, *Italy*, *Germany*, and the *Netherlands* there are very many large and beautiful Cities; yet there find I none that for greatness and populousness are comparable to *Paris* and *London*; which two, like the reflex of the two great Luminaries, appear the greatest: and of those, to which the precedence should be given, is work for a more accurate observer. Nevertheless, though by the vogue of most Travellers I well know that *Paris* has the first place attributed; I grant it is so increased since I was there, being upwards of 20 Years, that I am not qualified to give a judgement: But on the other side, *London* is also increased since then, even to admiration: so that were the length of *London* drawn into a circle (the shape that *Paris* bears) taking in all that Building which is contiguous, it is believed the diameter would equal if not exceed *Paris*. And as to number of Inhabitants, the addition it has from the Sea by People from exoticque places, gives it a capacity above *Paris*, and as by the Weekly-Bills of Mortality is presumed. Moreover, the number of Gardens, Cemeteries and like places adjoining Religious Houses and Churches, Colledges in the University, besides those belonging to the King, Princes and other of the Nobility there, with the great number of Tennis-Courts in *Paris*, take up much more spare place than *London* doth, which especially within the Walls is most compact and thronged with Houses, with few Gardens or like vacant places interjecting. But supposing that the narrow Launc where Coaches, and Alleys where Men can hardly pass (which also are good Buildings) were expatiated and extended to an equal breadth with the broadest Street, doubtless either of those Cities would then swell beyond the compass either of *Babylon* or *Rome*, or any other; which nevertheless is submitted. This digression I have the rather adventured, observing how that foreign Writers either out of ignorance or envy speak sparingly of our Metropolis; and in rank, place it amongst Cities that be but of a second or third magnitude. Therefore to return.

The Name this City now bears has been variously pronounced, according to the different Dialect of Nations: Some call it *Coom*; others *Kom*, and *Kome*: *Oderic* calls it *Come*; but the *Arabian* Geographers *Comm*. The situation nevertheless is unanimously agreed to be in a large and delightful Plain; the Countrey for some miles about very fruitful in its soil, and the air exceeding sweet, seldom clouded with fogs or parched with heat, save when the Sun passes from the Vernal *Aequinox* to the Northern Tropick: the breezes also seldom fail them which allays the heat; likewise abated by those fruitful Gardens they have, whose Trees are their best umbrella's for refreshment as well as shade, bearing store of delicious fruits, namely Grapes, Pomegranates, Melons of all sorts, Pomictrons, Apricocks, Plums, Pears, Pistachio's, Almonds, Apples, Quinces, Cherries, Figgis, Wall-nuts, Small-nuts, Berries, and the best Wheat in *Perfia* (*Cumba-zello* excepted;) the Peach or *Mala Persica* is also here abounding; a fruit and leaf so much resembling man's heart and tongue, that the *Egyptick* Priests dedicated it to their Goddess *Isis* as the hieroglyphick of affection: probably that which *Virgil* in his *Georg.* refers to,

*Media yields pleasant Apple of harsh juice;
'Gainst steep-dames poison nothing more in use.*

The City has about two thousand Houses, most of them of more than common structure; well built, well formed, well furnished: the Streets are spacious; the *Bazaar* beautiful; but the City is now unwalled, according to the usual mode of Cities in *Asia*. The *Mosque* is famous and Venerable, having been richly and beautifully adorned by enshrining the Body of once amiable *Fayma*, *Moris-Ally's* Wife, Daughter and Heir to their Prophet *Mahomet*. The *Mesquit* is of epirotique form; the Tomb raised three yards

yards high covered with Velvet, and the ascent by three or four steps of refined Silver. And more than this, there is *Nullum memorabile nomen* that I could light upon; for *Shaw-Soffer* who succeeded *Abbas* was here since buried.

Such time as *Tamberlang* the Victorious *Tartar* (so I may well stile him, since in eight Years he conquered more than the warlike *Romans* could in eight hundred, as his acts writ by *Albacen* the *Arab* and translated by *John de Becc* Abbot of *Mortimer* testifie,) returned loaden with spoils of war, having hammered the brazen face of the *Turkis* infolence, *An. Dom. 1397. Heg. 777.* this poor *Coom* (amongst others) parched in the heat of his fury; not from any eye of rage or envy he darted, but from an imprudent provocation and affront which *Hobaro-mirza* (called *B'chedr cawn*) caulefie jalons put up on the triumphant *Tartar*; so ill resented, that no less than the losls both of his Life and Crown would expiate, making also many Men and Towns sharers in his misery; this place especially, (which but for the *Ardaveilian* Syer his requesting mercy had been levelled with the Earth, plough'd up and salted:) But in the fable weed she is now appalled: For great *Coom* is now onely *Magni nominis umbra*. So as we see Towns die as well as Men, and may figh with melancholy *Statius*,

*Quicquid habet ortus, finem timerit, ibimus omnes,
Ibimus.*

— — — Death is the common Friend!
For what e're had beginning, shall have end.

From *Coom* we rode to *Zenzen*, of old *Zoara*; and thence to *Cashan*, *Cassian* *Cluverius* mis-spells it: a City from *Coom* removed fix and thirty miles; the way calie and plain, albeit sandy.

CASHAN, where the Artick elevation is 34 degr. 7 minutes, longitude 86 degr. may worthily be reputed the second Town in *Parrisia* for grandeur, wealth and beauty: distant North from *Sphawn* sixty long English miles: and from *Cu:byn* South two hundred and ten or thereabouts. Whence the Name derives it self, the illiterate *Cashanians* could not tell; but my conjecture is that 'tis borrow'd either from *Cushan*, which in the *Syriack* signifieth heat or blacknes; or from *Cassian-Mirza* Son to *Hocen* Son of *Ally*; or else from *Shaw-Cashan* (Son to *Axan*, begot by *Tangrolipix* *An. Heg. 582.* of our account 1202.) subiected by the *Great Chan*; or (which belt pleases me, if ancient enough) from *Ullan-Cashan* the *Armenian*, (*Axon* or *Cassian*-beg some call him) who in the Year of our Lord 1470. of *Mahomet's* flight from *Mecca* 850. vanquished *Malaonres* (whom some call *Abdulla chawn*) the last of *Tamerlang's* progeny that ruled *Persia*.

At this day it is a City both great and lovely, and ancient too; for *Oderic* intitles it a noble and renowned City in his time: and as now it is well seated, comely built, and abundantly peopled; over-topt by no Hill, unseasoned by no Marishes, nor watered by any great Stream; which chiefly augments the heat when *Sol* approaches *Cancer*: But which rages there in no leſs violence is *Scorpio*; not that in the *Zodiack*, but real Scorpions which in numbers engender here. A little Serpent of a finger long, (which makes me marvel at *Cedrenus* who fayes there are Scorpions 2 cubits long in the *Brachmans* Country, i. e. *India*,) like but leſs than our Cray-fish; and is the only creature that stings with his tail, some flies excepted: Of great terror in the sting; and so inflaming, as with their invenomed arrow some die, few avoid madnes, at least for a whole day; the sting proving most dangerous when the season is hottest, which is when the *Dog-Star* rages. And as it was laid of another, *Una eadimq; manus fert vulnus opique*: To in this malady is no such remedy as by applying the oyl of Scorpions. The Poet so advises,

*Quae nocuit serpens, fertur caput illius apte
Vulnibus jungi, sanat que fauici ipsa.
Ut Larissae curatus Telaphus harta.*

*The Serpent's head joyn'd to the wounded part
Fifty is laid to heal th' infected smart.
Like Telaphus cur'd by Achilles Dart.*

The execration is, *May a Scorpion of Cafshan sting thee*. But which is more remarkable, and agreeable to what *Pliny* in his Natural History reports of the Scorpions in *Mesopotamia*; they sav, and we found it true; some of them creeping into our our Rugs as we slept, they seldom or never hurt a Stranger. *Holler* affirms how that one who exceedingly loved the smell of Basil, being dead had a Scorpion sound in his brains: howbeit, the *Ethiops* say, That to eat Basil is an Antidote. But *Maimonides* the learned Jew in his *Comm. Ethicus*, fayes, *Contra dictum Scorpis urina filii est propinanda quadrageinta dierum, ad mensuram quarum ororum*: the quantity of 4 egg-hells full of a Child's urine drunk forty dayes cures the sting of a Scorpion: But what *Pliny* reports, That Crabs having their claws

Claws broke off and buried in the Earth, will become Scorpions, *sit fides penes Autorem*. The *Africans* report, That 'tis a present cure to anoint with garlick. And *Pontanus* writes, how that one stung with a Scorpion was helped by drinking Frankincense with the sculpture of a Scorpion resolved into powder. Howbeit, the *Perfians* usual remedy is to bleed and bathe the affected part with Scorpions oyl; or otherwise to hold it over the head of the Scorpion, first being soundly bruised.

This noble City is in compass not les than *Tork* or *Norwich*, about four thousand Families being accounted in her. The Houses are fairly built, many of which are pargetted without and painted; the *Mosques* and *Humums* are in their cupoloes curiously cernuated with a feigned Turquoise: the *Bazaar* is spacious and uniform; furnished with Silks, Damasks and Carpets of silks, silk and gold, and of course thrum'd-wool; no part of the World having better or better coloured. Here are also store of Spices and other Merchandise. Besides, the People here (the fruit of Industry) be more civil, no les active, and as trim and rich in their attire as I could observe in any other part: and by reaon they allow few to be idle, here are full Manufactures of Silks, Sattens and cloth of gold curiously wrought and coloured, no better in the World; and in such plenty that one *Carwright* an *English* Merchant who wasthere about the Year 1600. spares not to avver, That there was then more Silk brought in one Year into *Cafshan*, than broad Cloaths are into *London*. Here also they have a singular Art in dying or colouring of Silks, and staining of Linnen-cloth like the *Indian Pantadoes*. They also make very curious lively flowers and knots, and in beautiful colours upon Leather which are very lasting and for several uses. In a word, a more industrious and civil People, or a Town better governed *Perfia* elsewhere has not. Here is no want of pleasure neither, abounding in Gardens, Fruits, and Corn, by the elaborate *Tymars* made to fructifie, which being cultivated, retribute a gainful acknowledgment. The *Caravans-raw* in this City is very noble, nay I may say an unparalleled Fabrick of that kind, by many degrees preceding all other *Caravans-raws* we saw in *Perfia*; this being both large enough and fit enough to lodge the Court of the greatest Potentate in *Asia*. A Royal foundation it is, being built by *Abbas* for Travellers to repose in *gratis*, and to exprest his magnificence as well as charity. The whole Building is grounded with Marble, rising from the ground six foot; the residue is brick arised in the Sun, pargetted and adorned with knots and fancies of *Arabic* Characters, in azure, red, and white colours laid in Oyl, after the mode of *Perfia*. It is a perfect quadrant; for each angle from one another are two hundred paces, the whole eight hundred. In the umbilic of this Court is a square Tank filled (by an Aqua-duct) with crystallin water. This royal Inne has also adjoining it such Gardens as rather exceed than want to display the founders munificence. Herc is not any other memorable Antiquity that I could hear of, save that *Nycador-Oglan* the Usurper who died frantick was buried here Anno Heg. 655. and he scarce worth the Memory. More than which I have not to say concerning this City, other than that several conjectures by learned men have passed, Whence the Wise-men came that presented our blessed Saviour with their offerings, who were without doubt the first-fruits and called of the Gentiles; waiting the accomplishment of *Balaams* Prophecie mentioned in Numb. 24. 17. *There shall come a Star one of Jacob, and a Scepter shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy the Children of Seth:* which was gathered more from this of their Prophet than any other Astrologic computation. Now that they were Gentiles is evident; that they came from the East, undeniable: But from what City or Province no les disputable than the place of their burial. The word *Magus* is proper to *Perfia*, *Perfia* is East from *Bethlehem*; so as some are of opinion they came from hence; others say from *Shushan* where then flourished an Academy. Nevertheless, the people here have a Tradition, That those three Wise-men or Kings went hence; which some say were intombed in *Cullen*. Howbeit, *Melchior* perswades us they came from *Sheba in Sabea*: and *Ex orientali Arabia regione, Reges ad colendum Christum venerunt, saith Postellus*, The Kings came from the East part of *Arabia* to worship Christ. Others labour no les to bring them from the *Omeris* in *Ethiopia* South. From *Babylon* others think they came: from *Ormus* some would have them; a conjecture as likely as it was Paradise. *Ceylon* and *Taprobana* have been thought their Countrey: But if you please to trust Friar *Oderic of Friuli*, *Cafshan* was it. And his conjecture is not amiss, seeing that *Theophylact* and other ancient writers, as also Saint *Chrysostom* in his 6. *Hom.* upon Saint *Matthew* affirms, that the *Magi* who came to worship Christ, were *Perfian* Princes. But seeing this is a work of such difficulty, let me rather buse my brains in quest of what a *Magus* was, since *Simon Magus* through his black Art has in common acceptation rendred the name odious; and under which Title, Witches, Sorcerers, Enchanters,

chanters, Fortune-tellers, or pretending Calculators of Nativities, Hydromantiques, Pyromantiques, and other Diaboliques have cloaked their trumperies; altogether unworthy the name of the *Persian Magi* which was an honourable Epithete, and peculiar to *Persia*. Such as excell'd in Philology and Piety, *Suidas* terms them *Philosophi & Philothei*. Which nevertheless has been attributed though under other names to such as amongst other Nation, were studious in Philosophy and the Liberal Sciences; such as after the Dialect of their Countreys were called *Gymnosophisti*, *Brachmanni*, *Tallapoy*, *Chaldei*, *Druides*, *Bardis*, &c. who in their times were contemplative and studious in the secrets of Nature, which in the worst sense and vulgarly as commonly accepted is called *Magic*; i.e. but Judicial and Natural Astrology in a more favourable, and by the most learned. And in which, our most ancient Philosophers the *Druides* (long before the *Saxons* entrance) were excellent, as I might prove by many instances; but that one out of *Pliny's* Natural History *Plin.lib. 30. c. 1.* may serve, That the *Britains* were so addicted unto Magick as in that Art they were the first that instructed the *Persians*; an Authority that serves well to reprove *Tully*, who rashly intitles the *Britains* barbarous; albeit I suppose he did it upon the general account as they usually stiled all those Nations, *Quibus nec lingua nec legem Romanum dederint*, who derived neither their Laws nor Language from the *Romans*. And in that the *Greeks* were even with them, when they comprehended the *Romans* under that attribute. Now the difference 'twixt the *Magi* and *Pseudo-Magi* are these. Common custom (saith S. *Hieron.*) apprehends that *Magicians* are no better than *Lauishers*; such as Impollors now a days are rightly termed, who usually delude their customers with fallacious words and species, or otherwise practise an unlawful correspondence with *Satan* in his black Arts, like those *Janes* and *Jambres* who resisted *Moses*, and either by a *deceptione virus* or diabolical enchantments imitated *Moses*, until by a supreme vindictive hand upon themselves by that plague of Lice they were constrained to acknowledge the Omnipotency of God, and that *digno Dei* those wonders were performed by his Servant *Moses*, which they were not able to counterfeit, *Exod. 8. 19.* In which ranks were *Elymus*, i. e. the *Persian Sorcerer* mentioned *Alt. 13. 8.* and *Simon* stigmatized *Magus* his Con-disciple, both which us'd infernal Arts, and were accordingly disfavored and punished by the *Apostles*. Whereas contrarily, it may be presumed by the character given the right *Magi* (such as those were who come with their offerings to *Christ*;) that theirs was lawful: For, saith *Peter Martyr*, By the word *Magi* we understand Wise and Honest Men; and is the more credible, seeing that the definition of *Magia*, is no other than an elevated Wisdom and Science of the Harmony and concents of Universals in Nature, in which the *Magi* took an unexpressible delight. Now it will not be denied that the platiures of the Intellect do far exceed those of the Affections; for in pleasure there is satietas, which is not attained to in knowledge; Satisfaction and Appetite (saith the Lord *Verulam*) being perpetually interchangeable. And *Apuleius* with-all in his *Apol.* tell us, That *Perseorum lingua Magus est, qui nostra, Sacerdos*: Which is probable, seeing that the *Jews* themselves had it in such estimation as it was a rule, how that in *Gemara-leg non adsciscit in Sanhedrim Magic non ignorat, &c. 70 linguarum peritos*. With which agrees that of another; *Is Magus est qui Divinorum erat cultor & interpres*. And *Petrerus lib. de Divinit.* *Prae erant Magi religiosi Persae ut in populo Dei Levias, sicuti q[ui] vera Philosophie erant dedici; nec usquam Rebus Persianorum poterat esse, qui non ante Magorum disciplinam scirent magis; percipiebat*. Which we may the better credit, seeing *Cyrus* in that memorable conspiracy he made against his Brother *Artaxerxes*, persuading the *Greeks* to confederate with him, amongst other praises vainly arrogated to himself, one was, That he was more capable of Rule than his Brother for that he was the greater Magician; intending thereby *Bona Artes & Mira Linzna, Stellarumq[ue] via & magni Sydera Celsi*, his proficiency in the Liberal Arts, Languages and Astrology. *Plutarch* also in the Life of *Themistocles* acquaints us, that of so high esteem were the *Magi* with the *Persian Kings*, as they frequently and delightfully heard their Lectures touching Philosophy and Art Magick. *Manuan* also very rightly thus defines them,

*1. vnde Persas Magus est, qui Sydera novit,
Q. 2. vnde Herbarum vires, cultuq[ue] Deorum,
P. 3. vnde pollicant illa Magos, prudentia triple.*

*A Persian Magus call'd he is,
Who knows Herbs, Stars, and Deities,
All three learn'd in Persepolis.*

So as upon the whole it appears that the *Magi* were so called from their laborious scrutiny into hidden causes; by their practice and experience in Astrology improving the theory as well as practical part. For by their careful observing the celestial motions, they comprehend their probable influences; and from thence divined many strange and notable

notable events in Nature, as Earthquakes, Inundations, Eclipses, distemperature in Weather, Revolutions of State and the like: but which was most considerable, by their contemplating the wonderful order, harmony and providence by which the Creature is made and governed, they duly magnified and admired the Creator; and from their culmorary diving into occult causes of Nature, were thence called Magical; albeit it no other than a connexion of Agents and Patients in Nature, respecting each other; and by learned men, discovered to produce such effects, as to such as are ignorant of them causes appear strange and wonderful. But after this digression, I proceed upon our Travel.

The 23^d of August we came to a Village called *Bizdeode*, which was about eighteen miles from *Cashan*: There we rested but one day. The next night we got to *Nutane*, which some call *Tane*, and in probability takes name from *Nana*; for *Diana* was there to called and worshipped. There goes a Tradition likewise, that the last unfortunate *Darius* there breathed his last, through the treachery of that perfidious Bactrian *Bessus*. A. M. 3635. Which if so, then I may make this obseruation, The Village and Lodge aliamed of such a barbarism, seems to hide it self betwixt two lofty hills, so as until near the place 'tis hardly to be discerned. Nevertheless from the top of either of those hills we had a delightful prospect; for from thence we could see several Countrey Villages, watered by small Rivolets. That Nights Travel was full thirty Miles. The next night we got to *Reig*: but more than that it was one and twenty miles from *Nutane*, not worth remembring; and that from *Spahawn* it is distant three furlongs; but from *Cazby* two hundred and sixty or thereabouts. Whence to *Bagdat*, the first day is to *Corrandz*, and then successively to *Desow*, *Aiscauron*, *Corryn*, *Lactary*, *Corbu*, *Nizareel*, *Sabbercawn*, (near which is *Pully-shaw* and *Caromon shabout* formerly called *Coon-sha*, where was decided that famous contest for the *Perfian Crown* twixt *Artaxerxes* and *Cyrus* recorded by *Xenophon*, and in memory whereof in the concave of the adjacent Mountain is engraven Pouriants resembling those I mentioned of *Rusfan* near the ruines of *Persepolis*; onely here are added the figures of Elephants and other Beasts, such as are well worth a Travellers obseruing.) *Bagdat* is next to *Sabbercawn*, whence is but one days journey to *Bagdat* upon *Tigris*, the total being a hundred and thirty furlongs. Howbeit, from *Spahawn* there is another road; first travelling to *Golpitchan* which is forty furlongs; thence to *Toffrehan* forty more; to *Manda* fifty, to *Hemoumetz* ieven, and then by *Baroe* to *Bagdat* ieven more; in all a hundred forty four furlongs, the passage more easie, though of greater distance and therefore more travelled, especially by Caravan: Of which City old and new, suffer me to give a brief description. And first of *Babylon*.

B A B Y L O N was of old a City in that Countrey which in Gen. 11. 2. is named *Shinaar*, a Vale watered by the River *Euphrates*, one of those that ranne through Paradise: The Countrey afterwards was called *Caleda*, (*Keldan* and *Arclder* by *Berosus*, but the Land of *Nimrod* in Mic. 5. 6.) and after that *Babyonia*. To the East it had *Sippeana*; to the West *Mesopotamia*; and to the South part of the *Perfian Gulph*. The name was imposed upon that memorable confusione of speech happening there about a hundred and twenty years after the Flood, which defeated that design the race of *Cuan* (for *Hebers* Family would not joyn with *Nimrod* in that attempt) had hatcht to secure themselves from a second Deluge. The promoting which impious work is attributed principally to that *Nimrod* who in Gen. 10. 9. is stiled *The mighty Hunter*; such, as his Tyranny became a Proverb: By *Berosus* called *Nimbroth*; who with his confederates intuced such a pyle the top whereof should reach into Heaven, *Edificemus nobis Urbem & Turrin, cuspis caput sit in Calis*, Gen. 11. 4. *Berosus* adds, *ad altitudinem & magnitudinem Alionum*. And accordingly *multorum manus* (these being as good Authors report no less than five hundred thousand men) by full thirty years incessant labour that stupendous work whose basis was nine miles about, had its superstructure advanced to a proportionable height, five thousand paces say some, which make 25730 foot: a height hardly to be believed, when we consider how that wonder of the world the greatest of the *Egyptian* Pyramids exceeds not a thousand foot sayes *Huylin*; five hundred foot saye *one faves Creaves*; whose report is most to be credited seeing he measured it; which Pyramid if but five hundred foot, equals the height of *Pauls* when the Pyramidal Spire stood upon the Steeple. Yet *Herodotus* reports this Tower was in height four thousand paces; *S. Hierome* exceeds him making it iytteen thousand: but seeing the Stair or pallier to al end was circular, and of that breadth also (if we may credit *Verstegm*) it afforded scope sufficient for Horse and Carts to turn tis probable the paces mentioned by *S. Hierom* and *Herodotus* rather relate to the compass than to the perpendicular. Which consideration can best qualifie that Jewish hyperbole we meet with in the *Jalent*, averring that it was seven and twenty miles high: An edifice (let the height be what it will) so wonderful as

gave occasion to a Heathen Poet to feign his *Giganto-machia*; *mones montibus superponere,*
in Jovem de sua sede detruderent.

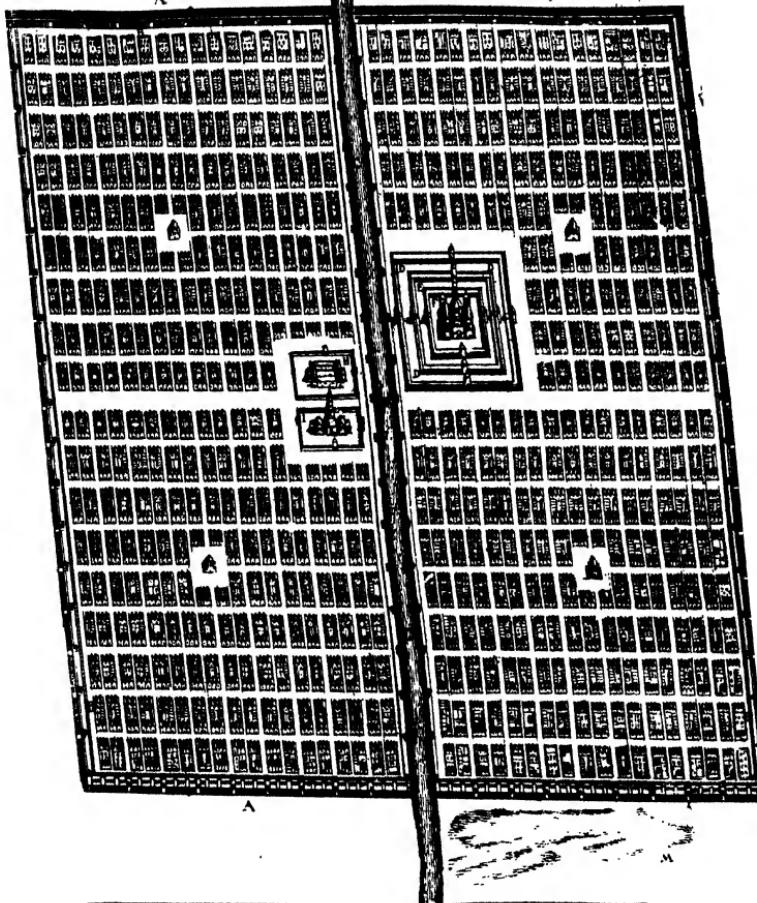
Atteisse ferunt regnum celeste Gigantes,
Mitis congeitos struxisse ad hydra montes.

The Heavens look'd pale with wonder, to behold
With what attempts and rage the Giants bold
Sought to affront the Gods, by rasing high,
Mount upon Mount, to inhabit in the Sky.

But he who from his supreme seat beheld their arrogance, to check the progress of that impious design confounds their Language, from one which was the Hebrew (*Ex quo forte Orientales & Meridionales lingue dimanant, faith Postellus*) unto **seventy two** faith corporis; by that cause of separation, *Naturale idoma & primum a Parente rerum natura De manus concessum, illic erat mutatum*, dispersing them into several parts, the better to plant the World.

Now albeit the Tower was never finished (for it was as one sayes well *Opus ultione divina incompletum* (althoug^h Alexander by wonderful exp*er*ience and labour of men many hundred years in vain attempted it, and before him Semiramis say the Fabulous Greeks, or rather *Nabuchodonosor*) the City nevertheless well'd into a vast extant: For *Nimrod* living there fix and fifty years incalped its buildings, was the first that soveraignized over men and that taught them Idolatry; to as dying the deitied him by the name of *Sudormyn*, which the *Romans* after convert'd into *Saturn*. *Arphaxad* (son Son) planting *Caldia* and *Elat* his Brother *Persia*, *Belus* surnamed *Jupiter* *Babylonia* succeeded at *Babylon An. Mundi* 1800. B. some he is called *Baal* and *Bel*; whose Son *Nimue* (called *Amraphel*) having conquered *Libya*, *Aria*, *Media*, and *Babylonia*, is accounted the first Monarch of the Earth; and the more to express his maenifestence, built or rather enlarged for in *Gen. 10. 11. Abar* or *Nimrod* is said to build *Niniveh* the great upon *Igiris* formerly called *Nysib* and *Rehaboboth*, and hence *Nigbal*, being indeed rather the ruins of *Selucia*: by *Nebuchadnezzar* afterwards made the Capital City of *Affryia*, which yet gave the preheminence to *Babylon*. After two and fifty years rule over-ruled by that *Virago Semiramis*: He was buried in the Temple he himself had built and dedicated to *Bulus* his Father, *Fuus* his Mother, and *Rheas* his Grandmother; whose Golden Statua's he erected in the middle of the City to be worshipped: agreeable to what we find mentioned lib. *Asperine cap. 14. v. 14.* *Acervo enim lucis dolens patr, cito felix rapti filii fecit imaginem, & illum qui tunc quasi homo mortuus fuerat, nunc iugum Deum colere cepit;* & constituent inter servos suos facia & scrypicias. *Denuo, in excentrico tempore convalescente iniqui confunditam, ut Error tanquam lex cuspiditus est ut Tyrannorum imperio segmenta colebamur.* When a Father mourned grievously for his Son that was suddenly taken away, he then mad an Image for him that was a dead man, whoe forsooth he worshipped as a God; and amongst his servants ordained ceremonies and sacrifices: So as in proceſſ of time, that wicked custome prevailed and was observed as a Law; and Idols by the Commandment of Tyrants became to be adored. *In hos quae in palam homines honorare non poterant, propter hoc quod longe essent i longe non, si ut a certis aliis evidentem imaginem Regis quem honorare volebant, fecerunt; ut illum qui aberat tanquam p[ro]ficiens sui sollestitudine colerem, And so: Inclit as were so remote that they could not worship them presently, they counterfeited the vilage, and made the gorgious image o. a King whom they honoured, scattering him that was absent, as if he had been a present. *Omnes tamen non fuerant in pari honore & auctoritate, verum in certos ordines & classis distributi. Alios majorum gentium, alios minorum.* Howbeit the Heathen Gods were not all had in equal honour and power, but distributed into certain orders or classis, some being accounted the greater and others lesser God of nations. *Varo, in duas classes, certos & incertos.* And *Cicero* in 2 lib. *Nomotheca*, ranks them into three distinct orders or degrees; *Unum eorum qui somp[er] Celestes habiti sum, ut Jupiter, Mars, Apollo, &c. It di celestes vel majorum gentium appellantur; alterum eorum, quos in celum merita vocavit, servidi & di terrestres, ut Hercules, Bacchus, Belus, Romulus, &c. nominantur; tertium propter quos datur hominibus auctoritas in Caelum.* The first was those who inhabited the Heavenly Places, call'd the greater Gods of Nations. The next, those Heroes whose deserts transferred them thither; and the last *di infimi* or *mediastini*; such who for their esteem amongst men, were by them canonized. *Principes quia iusti erant* (iāth l. ab. *Pistor i part.*) & *religionibus dedisti, Dei dicuntur.* Princes also because they were just were termed Gods, but no: so much for Justice as Power was *Ninus* idolized; and in adulation, by the *Affryians* surnamed *Jupiter*, by others *Amraphel*; and imagin'd that same King whom *Anaham* vanquished after his departure from *Ur* (so called because there the Fire was worshipped)*

BABY - LON.



- A. The Walls 365 stadia, 50 cubits high, 150 Towers.
 B. The Gardens.
 C. Euphrates.
 D. The Kings Palace 60 stadia above.
 E. The inner circuit or square 40 stadia.
 F. The innermost square 30 stadia.
 G. The Bridge.
 H. The lesser Palace.
 I. Temple of Belus.
 K. The Tower in Belus's Temple.
 L. The Chapel at the top of it.
 M. The Marshes.

to *Haran* to avoid Idolatry; which place was betwixt *Babylon* and *Nineveh*, where before the Flood was the terrestrial Paradise. But by the *Caldeans* this *Nimis* was called *Hercules*, for *Hercules plures fuerant*. *Diod. Sic. l. 5.* names 3. *Cicero 6.* and *Varro 24.*

This active Princess reigned forty years; during which, she enlarged the Empire from *Ethiopia* to *India*: Of that high courage as news being brought when she was dressing her head how that *Babylon* was revolted, she presently vowed never to perfect her dress till the City was reduced. *Semiramis* as she enlarged the Empire by her forces, so did she her fame by sundry great and memorable acts: For besides the elegant Gardens she made in *Mesia*, at *Babylon* likewise upon many high pillars of stone she made a Garden which for the manner and curiositie thereof was accounted one of the Wonders of the World, and by a deep channel brought Water thither from the River *Pronester* express her puissance, *faith Diod. Sic. l. 4. c. 7.* or rather to *Ecbathen*, after that cutting the *Caspian* Strait; contracting *Euphrates*, and building over it the noblest Bridge any stonewever mentioned; raising two Obelisks in *Babylon* the least of which was a hundred and thirty foot high and five and twenty in thicknes, hewn and brought thither down *Tyrrus* from *Azara*; She also erected two incomparable Palaces on either side *Euphrates*, one towards the East, the other towards the West end of *Babylon*; the first extending thirty, the other sixty furlongs; and each compassed with a stately Wall. But transcending thofe, in the center or middle of the City she raised the noblest building in the world: It was a square Tower of black polished Marble, every side being a thousand paces (entred by four Gates of burnished Brasses,) the height of the first was a quarter of a mile: Eight Towers rose one upon another, gradually diminishing: nine furlongs high and ten broad saith *Diod.* in little imitated by that *Mausoleum Augusti* which was built many Ages after in *Rome* twixt the *Tyber* and *Via Flaminia*, thought to resemble that which *Artemis* dedicated to the *Carian* King. At the culmen or top was a Chappel, wherein was a sumptuous Bed and Table of Gold, and in which were placed three Golden Images representing *Jupiter*, *Ops*, and *Juno*, i. e. her Father-in-law *Belus*, her Husband *Nimis* and her self: Statua's twelve cubits high, of pure masic Gold, continuing amongst those Idolaters for many succeeding generations the most reverenced Idols in the World: that of *Jupiter* weighed 1000 *Babylonian* Talents, that of *Ops* the like, that of *Juno* 800: there were also placed two Standing Cups weighing thirty Talents; two perfuming pots, and three other large Vessels all of pure Gold, one of which weighed 1200 Talents: thofe Pots were of nre there, for (as saith *Herodotus*) in that Temple was yearly consumed in Frankincense to the value of 1000000 Talents: a Temple un-defaced, until about the year from the beginning of the World 3490 in a frantick fit it was demolished by *Xerxes* after his beating by *Leonidas* and *Themistocles* the Grecian Land and Sea Generals. This Grand Idol had for many Ages been had in divine veneration; so as the Reformation had been commendable had it proceeded from a better principle. From the top of the highest Tower, and by reaon of the continual serenity of the Sky, the *Caldean* Astrologers (whose skill in that Art they say was practised 3600 years before *Alexanders* conquests, which if true, reaches to *Enochs* time) precisely obserued the Planetary motions; and though they could not hear their rowling harmony, yet thence they had the exact light and magnitude of the Stars, their helical acronical matutine and vespertine motions, rise and fall; the progres of the Sun; the constellations, aspects and influence of the Planets, &c. for in that Art during those times they had the greatest Knowledge of any Astrologers.

Now though the heart of *Semiramis* was put into an orb of Gold above, yet her body was interred below. And as *Xerxes* ran lacking for treasure above, in her thereof having opened the place where *Belus* a great Astrologer as well as King, was interred, he only found a large vefel of glafs which contained his body in swimming oyl which for 1600 years had it seem continued in that condition; so *Darius* afterwards in like hopes of wealth violating her tomb below, discovered her Coffin; upon the opening of which, such a pestilential smell vapoured thereout as not onely killed some that were spectators but infected the greatest part of *Asia*. The like memoriable example happened *Anno Dom. 150.* upon a mans forking open a Shrine of Gold in the Temple of *Apollo*; whence instead of the treasure that avaricious wretch expected, there issued forth such an infectious breath as if it killed the man, then infected the whole City, and soon after overspread such a vast space of the earth, as it is thought half mankind died of that pestilence; which eas'd not till it had viii. peopled the greatest part of the Universe. But concerning this great Empress accept that short character *Berosus* gives her, *Hec Virgo, militia, triumphus, deuictus, Victoria, et Imperio, omnes mortales intecfuit;* *Nemo etenim huic famina comparundus est.* And as to the City, albeit *Nimrod* began, it was exceed-

exceedingly beautify'd and enlarged by *Semiramis*: concerning whom *dicitur aliam — Cœlibus meritis cinxisse Semiramis Urbem*. And another Poet; *Perserum statuit Babylonam Semiramis Urbem*. Not only compassing it with a Wall, but such a Wall as worthily was accounted principal of the World's seven Wonders: for as *Solinus* reports, it was four hundred and four score furlongs about, which make three score of our miles. *Diod. Siculus*, three hundred sixty five; for each day one furlong. *Qu. Curt.* three hundred fifty eight; the height and thickness holding proportion. The height say the same Author's was two hundred cubits, the common cubit is the length of the Arm from the elbow to the longest fingers end, which is half a Yard; the holy Cubit was a Yard; the Geometrical Cubit three. Fifty Cubits of the largest measure, saith another; and the thickness was forty foot: fifty Cubits say others; so broad that six Chariots could well drive together at the top, and so battlemented that they could not fall. A broad graft or trench it also had filled with Water that went round the Wall, which was entered by a hundred gates of Brass. And what made this Wall no less beautiful than strong, was, that it was arched, so as under a Piazza Men might walk as in a shade. *Semiramis* begun, but finished it was for the recreation of *Amyris* the Wife of *Nabuchodonosor* the Great, or as some say by *Nucor*, his Daughter, who as *Josephus ex Bereso lib. 1. contra Appion.* and *Herodotus lib. 1.* say emulated *Semiramis*. Secounded by such a Palace, as gaining even his own admiration, extorted from him that impious boast, *Is not this Great Babel that I have built?* A City so strong, that albeit *Cyrus* by that success obtained at *Borsippa*, had the opportunity to wreath his brow with the *Median* Diadem, yet was he unable to master it until he turned *Euphrates* another way (as *Semiramis* had done when she built the Bridge) by which he made his happy approach, whilst *Belshazzar*, not perceiving danger so near at hand, was carousing amongst the Princes of his Empire and fell asleep; a perpetual sleep as called in *Jeremiah 51. 57.* being (after that dreadful apparition upon the Wall) that night slain by *Darius*, as recorded in *Daniel 5. 30.* A City so great, that (as *Arioflote* reports) one part in three days (hours says one) after it was taken knew not that the Enemy was entered: but that one Post should run to meet another to shew the King of *Babylon* that his City was taken at one end, we read in the Prophet *Jeremiah 51. 31.* and that at the noise of the winning of *Babel* the Earth was moved, and the cry heard amongst the Nations, *Jer. 50. 50.* A City so Imperial, that for many generations it was the usual place of residence for the Monarchs of the whole World; honoured with the Court of nine and forty Emperours from *Nimrod* to *Belshazzar* for about 1600 Years; for the Empire terminating in that Prince, was transferred to *Darius*, and after to *Cyrus* by the Victory he obtained over *Astyages* his Grand-father *An. M. 3400.* A City so beautiful and so stately, as *Pausanias* in *Affyr.* avers, that *Babylon, Omnia quas unquam Sol aspexit Urbium erat maxima & splendissima, &c.* *Babylon* was the greatest and the most glorious of all the Cities that ever the Sun beheld: For which cause by way of excellency in the 14. Chap. of *Isay 4.* Verse, it is called the Golden City. So that besides the superlative praises prophane Writers give, Holy Writ shiles her the Princes and glory of Kingdoms, *Isa. 47.* and the praise of the whole Earth, *Jer. 51. 41.* Now, where could the wit of Man find out a better to inhabit than that local place which *Adam* in his innocency enjoy'd¹ in which *Babylon* was situated: so rich that *Alexander* when he became master of this Place found treasured there two hundred thousand Talents of gold, every Talent being in ours 4500 l, and what sittier place could that great Monarch choose to bid farewell to the World than in what was *Epitome Curvisi* as one calls it: and at a time when Ambassadors from all parts of the Universe attended to acknowledge him Sovereign; and where a *Parlamentum* of the whole World was assembling to consult how to preserve what his victorious Arm had purchased! But to shew the uncertainty of this World's story (being indeed but a *Natura bestialis*) this great Victor in the meridian of His splendor and it's ch. th. quaffing, tonic say too great a draught of O. blood (as the richest Wines there were called) to *Hercules* his emulated Progenitor, departs with this Epithete given by an envious Critique, *Terrarum fatale malum & fides innum. Genibus;* having disturbed the World about twelve Years; whose Spur how he oick soever it was, is nevertheless censured by a *Roman* Historian in these words: *Nihil aliud quim bene auctio est vano contentum.* Now according to natural motion as all things when at the highest descend, so this triumphant City by the revolution of succeeding times unable to resist the uncontrollable decree of Heaven signified by the greater Prophet, had this judgment pronounced, The proud walls of *Babylon* shall be utterly broken, and her high gates be burnt with fire, she shall become a heap, a dwelling place for Dragons; and that it should be said, How is *Babylon* become an astonishment? a hilline and a desolation amongst all Nations? *Jer. 50. 51.* And as in the Old, so in the New; in

Rev. 17. the like judgment is denounced against mystical Babylon (for the Old was then destroy'd) Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and become the habitation of Devils, &c. of that aſtoriſhment both to the Kings and Merchants of the Earth, that ſtanding a far off they weep and wail, ſaying, Alas! alas! for that great City; but the Righteous do rejoice, ſeeing that in her was found the Blood of the Prophets and of the Saints, and of all that were slain upon the Earth; which how far applicable unto this, I intermeddle not: Nor concerning her have more to ſay, than that the utter defolation of this Great City may well ſerve as a Mirror for all others of that kind to view their destiny: for even the greatest Cities die and have their periods. Give me leave therefore only in her present ruines to erect a Monumental Pillar to her memory, whereon in Capital Letters I may affix this Elegiac Incription,

B A B Y L O N

Nil nisi NOMEN habet.

Nevertheless, as was her rise, her fall was not at one time, but languished by degrees. The greatest blow given was by *Selucus Nicander A. M. 3645.* who about 360 Years before the Incarnation of our Saviour, in that very place where *Coch* once flood built a City, at the place where *Tigris* and *Euphrates* meet, for ſome ſpace making one Channel; and after his own Name called it *Selucia*: but before that was named *Cathane* and *Cadue*, one of thoſe four Cities over which *Nimrod* ruled, mentioned in *Gen. 10. 10.* being fifty miles to the North of *Babylon*; by the diminution of the one, the other increaſing: For, partly by perfwations, but principally by menaces, that great Prince forced five hundred thouſand Souls out of *Babylon* to people *Selucia*. Agreeable to the Prophecie of *Jeremiah 51. 45.* which ſays that the People ſhould go out after her. *Strabo* also *Ib. 16.* in brief remembers as much; *Babylonis partem Perſe diruerunt, partem conſumpsit Tempus, partem negligenter Macdonum, præſervis poſquam Silenus Nicander condidit Seluciam ad Tigrim, fladiſ tantum 300 a Babylone diſtant, &c.* The *Parthians* afterwards did the like to *Selucia* when they built *Cesiphon* about a league further upon the River; and that new City in the like ſort was made defoliate upon the building of *Vologæcta* by *Vologæs* the *Parthian* King about a hundred Years after the firſt *Cesar*; the ruines of which great Cities oft amufe and probably misguide Travellers, when they view their ruines for the finding out old *Babylon* or *Nimrod's Tower*: notwithstanding all the light held forth by ancient Writers, or the traditional reports of the preſent Inhabitants who ſpeak only by heat-lay and pure ignorance: And by reaſon of Voisnage *Selucia* alioſi is but erroneouſly by ſome taken for *Babylon* rather than *Bagdath*. That *Babylon* which is in *Egypt* was built by *Cambyses* the *Perſian* King Son to *Cyrus*, but ſince named *El-Cairo* by *Ghous* Lieutenant to *El-Cur* the *Babylonian Chalypb*, *Care* in *Syriack* and *Brutish* ſignifying a City. Where, note that *Amenphis* and *Luxopolis* lie there or very near that place, as *Leo* in his *History of Africk* acquaints us.

BAGDAT (raifed out of old *Babel's* ruines) is in 36 degrees 20 minutes North; in 82 of longitude: built in that part of *Mesopotamia* the *Perſians* call *Trakein*, the *Turks* *Dyarice*, the *Arabs* *Jazirah*, the *Armenians* *Merediz*; albeit ſome place it in *Sufiana* about 25 miles North of *Babylon*. The Name *Bagdat* (I suppose) is either from *Bag-Dab*, i.e. a Lordly City; or from *Bart-dat*, i.e. a Princely Garden; for *Bagdaden*, i.e. *Hortus Eden*, others fancy it. Howbeit, ſome ſay from *Bagufer* the *Babylonian Chalypb*, who diſburſed two millions of gold to re-edifie it after that devaſtation which was made there by *Almavick* King of *Jewry*. But long the enjoy'd not that ſplendor; for *Chytas* a *Tartarian* Prince by order from *Alaika* his brother, not only ſack'd it with a barbarous rage, but waiſh cruelly tortured the then Lord *Chalypb Muſtafed-zem*. Howbeit in the Year of our Lord 702. of the Heg. 142. *Almanſor* (or *Abuſapher* as ſome name him) the three and twen. vi. : *Chalypb*, by Art Magick obſerving a preciſe time when by a good influence of the heauens it might in future times be fortunate begin to rear her up again; and a peculiar act telliſing his devotion buildest the *Mſque* in that place where once *Bagdet* an *Eremit* had made his Hermitage, and ſion whose memory probably it took the denomination. *Almanſor* nevertheless (as *Micand* the *Perſian* Historian ſayes) gave it another name, i.e. *Medina Ifdem*, i.e. the City of Peace: or according to *Ben-Cafen*, *Deo-Aſſia*, i.e. the Church of Peace. I ſuppoſe that great *Almanſor* who every month to alter his gray hairs to black, was at the charge of two thouſand drachms of Musk.

An evil Spirit it seems predominated in this place: For she no sooner began to take breath and deck her self in a Summer-livery, when another cold Northern blast bnummed her; *Tangrolipix* or *Sadoc* Lord of the *Zeluccian* Family and Father of the *Ottomans*, in despight of the *Arab* and *Perſian* *An. Dom.* 1031. *Heg.* 411. for some time forcing her to bow under the yoke of *Turkish* bondage. Howbeit, once more an *Arabian Chalypb Negmeddin-Fidal-Ally* by name Son to *Emyr Elmumnum*, set her at liberty. After whom *Addae-daud* and *Siet Saife-Deddaul* enlarged her; and to them according to *Acmad-Rbn beker* followed *Almostafer bilab Son to Almotadibila*, who ruled there *A. D.* 1100. *Heg.* 48c. Which several *Chalypb* as they were excessively rich, so they spared neither cost nor pains to redintegrate her memory. After which, *Ismal-Sophy* conquered it from *Raqizeth*; but *Solyman his Succellor* regained it from *Shan-Talum* his Son. From *Sohym* the *Perſian* King *Mahomet* (Son to *Tahmas*) recovered it again *An. Dom.* 1560. *Heg.* 936. entring unsuspited in the disguise of a Merchant, fifteen hundred of his Men in like habit driving into *Bagdat*, a *Caravav* of three thousand Camels; and giving the Watch-word, immediately threw off their disguise and brandished their glittering blades in the eyes of the abominated Garrison. The *Perſians* by that Stratagem kept it till the Year of our Lord 1605. *Heg.* 985. when it again reverted to *Turkish* thraldom: Howbeit *Shan Arba* the *Caſian* *An. Dom.* 1625. *Heg.* 1005. by pure force beat the *Turks* thence, as also their confederates the *Tatars* from *Vim* in *Armenia*: Since which the *Turks* by a like Stratagem have regained it, and at this present hold it: Such and so many have been the vicissitudes of that important place. Let us now into the Town.

Bagdat at this day scarce equals *Bristol* either for bulk or beauty; albeit the circuit may be three miles, including about fifteen thousand Families. Watered it is by *Tigris*, which there is somewhat broader than the *Thames* at *London*, but not so navigable nor genteil. *Sealiger* supposes this to be *Selucia*, but is mistaken; for *Selucia* was 50 miles lower upon *Tigris*. The greatest part of the Building was by *Multafer* the 52th *Chalypb An. Heg.* 520. removed to the Eastern side of the River.

In the City is little more worthy of observation than the Bridge, the *Mosque*, the *Sultan's Palace*, the *Cobo-Houſe*, the *Buzzar* and the *Gardens*. The Bridge reſembles that at *Rolay* in *Normandy*; having palling over thirty long Boats which are boarded and chained one to another and made to ſeparate at pleafure. The *Mosque* builded in the Well ſide of the City is large, round, and pleafantly railed of white Free-Stone, brought down *Tigris* from *Mojul*. The *Sultan's Houſe* that adjoyns the *Buzzar* or great Market is large, but low; and near it are ſome braſs Pieces which the *Turks* brought thither or from *Ornus* when it was taken by the *Perſians*. A little Chappel alſo *Paxi-b-Ally* by name is memoriable by reaſon of that imprefion of five singers which *Mortis-Ally* (uis hoc credidit) made in the ſolid Stone there. *Cobo-Houſe* are Houſes of good-fellowſhip, where towards evening moft commonly many *Muſſalmen* ordinarily assemble to ſip Coffee: a *Syrian* liquor, black, thick, and bitter; brew'd out of *Bunchie* or *Bunnu*-berries; moſt reputed of, if they hold to the old cuſtom recorded by *Herodotus*, how that not a Woman here but once in her life time ſat in *Venus* Temple: but moft eſteem'd from a tradition they have that *Mahomet* ſipt no other broth faire this which was invented by *Gabriel*: In the *Cobo-houſe* they alſo inebriate themſelves with *Arac* and *Tobacco*. The *Buzzar* is pretty large and ſquare, the Houſes comely, and the *Gardens* ſweet: yet all put together, are no way comparable to many late upstart Towns about her. Nevertheless by having the impreſion of great *Babylon* impreſed upon her, is by Travellers very much honoured; and the memory of the old City gains this new one a due obſervance from all places of the Univerſe.

Twelve miles lower towards *Euphrates* a confused Mount is ſeen, which ſome imagine the rubbith of *Nimrod's* Tower; the rather because ſlimy bricks and mortar may be digged out of it. I rather imagine this to be the ruine of that great and memorable Temple lately mentioned erected by *Semiramis* in honour of *Bel* or *Jupiter Belus*. At a diſtance it is better perceived than when nearer hand; the inſenſible rising all the way may occation it. What more or more properly can I apply than that of *Auſonius* in one of his *Epiſt.*

Miramur perifſe homines? Monuments fatiſcant,
Interitus Saxis Nominaibusq; venit.

Why wonder we that People die? ſince Monuments decay:
Tea, ſlimy Stones with Men's great Names Death's tyranny obey.

Bazdar is distant from *Aleppo* forty dayes journey by Carravan, of which above two thirds of the way be through the Deserts: but by water it may be done in fewer. For in one day we pass from thence to *Felugia*; in sixteen days more to *Birrha*; from whence in two days to *Aleppo* in *Syria*: From *Aleppo* by Carravan to *Trispoli* (under mount *Libanus*) in seven dayes. *Aleppo* is twenty leagues from *Antioch*. But to see old *Shushan* is neither unworthy our labour, nor out of our way; for it gave name to *Susiana* which has *Affrygia* to the North, the Gulph South, *Perſia* East, and to the West *Babylon*.

S H U S H A N every where famonfed, was one of the three Royal Palaces the Median Monarchs so much gloried and delighted in, viz. *Babylon*, *Susiana* and *Ecbatani*. Xenophon thus distributes the Court-motion, viz. Three Spring-mountis in *Susia*, two Summer-mountis in *Ecbatani*, and seven Winter-mothes the King spent in *Babylon*, meaning when the Sun was remotest: for their Winter is equal to our Summer in heat, when the Sun rises to his Meridian. This was built by *Darius* Son of *Hystaspis* Anno Mundi 3444, as *Pliny* in his 6 lib. c. 28. who rather beautified it with many Palace, as *Elian.* 1. lib. Some say *Laomedon* built it, such time as *Thola* judged *Ifr. i. l.* Others make *Cyrus* first Founder of *Pisogard* (called so from *Pisom* a branch of *Hiddekel*) to be the Architectur in memory of his good succes obtained in that very place against *Slyages* the Median. It is spoke of in the first Chapter of *Hefer*, That there, *Absyurus Anno Mundi 3500* feasted his Lieutenants over an hundred twenty and seven Provinces, a hundred and eighty days. But *Nehemiah* and *Daniel* (whose burial-place it is) call it *Susia castrum in Elam regione*, thereby making *Susiana* part of *Perſia*, or rather a Province. And notwithstanding the many mutations and miseries it suffered, yet was it able to live upon *Alexander* when he extracted thence to pay his Soldats and fill his baggs with fifty thousand Talents in Bullion and nine millions of coined Gold. And well may he, since *Cassiodore* in his 7. lib. 15. Epift. reports for truth, That *Memnon* (Son to *Tithon*, reckoned by *Herodotus* lib. 1. the firſt founder and to have called it *Aemonia*) so gloried in hi work, that he cemented the Stones with Gold; which made *Arista* oras proclaim unto his men of War, That if they could but master it, every Souldier there might then compare with *Jove* for wealth.

The name *Shushan* is much controverſed. *Athenaeus* defines it from plenty of Lilies; but whence ſetech I cannot apprehend, the *Arabic* or *Perſian* having no ſuch etymon or ſignification: As well I might lay from *Suzan* or *Suzan* which in the *Perſic* Tongue signifies a needle or a glas bottle: but rather believe it is derived from *Chus* (*Nothus* Grand-ſon,) *Susiana* from him being called *Chusiana*, and at this day not much diſcrepancy in the name *Crusiflau*, and not *Elbaran* as ſome have faunced. More probable, in that *Chus* (*Chams*) ſon planted a Coony here ere he removed into *Ethiopia* (a miſtake which made the Septuagint imagine *Nile* one of thoſe four ſreamings from Paradise,) his Sons alio hereabout inhabiting, viz. *Nimrod* in *Chaldeæ*, *Seba* in *Arabia*, *Havilah* in *Susiana*, (the other *Havilah* the ſon of *Joktan* removed into *India*), *Raamah* into *Arabia* firſt and after that into *Carmania*, &c.

At this day it is called *Valdac*, or *Baldach* as *Paulus Venetus*, and not far from the Gulph, and watered by *Chozes* or *Choaspes*; which ſome incongruously take for *Hydaspes*, and from tht: *Choze* the *Coffei* or *Cuthæi* were which removed to *Samaria*. Which araring from the *Europæan* Mountains it ſreams very pleauantly to this place, and not far from *Balsorac* participates with the Gulph of *Perſia*; where also *Euphrates* (called *P. r. u.* and *Almalcher*) from *Libanus* ſome ſay, from Mount *Abo* in *Armenia* ſay others; and *Tigris* (now called *Digla*, *Tegl* and *Hiddekel*) from *Tauris* (or *Nyphates*, part of *Tauris*) imbowel them ſelves: A River of ſuch account with the *Perſian* Emperours, that no water but this of *Choaspes*, no bread but from *Affos* in *Phrygia*, no wine but the Chalybonian in *Syria*, no Salt but what they had from *Memphis* in *Egypt* could pleafe their pallats. *Daniel* calls it *Ula*; *Pliny*, *Eulens*; now *Tirtir*; an anti-ſream of which glides to *Shyrax*: in *lacum quendam confluunt Tigris, Eulens & Choaspes*, at q; ex eo inde in mare exiunt, ſaith St. abo. *Saint etiun* affirment omnia ſumma que *Susiana* peruidit, in *lacum Tigris* ab eum illabi, laiti the ſame Author, and by comparing the 8 of *D.m. 2.* with the 10. c. 4. v. may be re-polled *Tigris*.

Shushan is under thirty degrees, *Ptolomy* makes it four more; in compatis an hundred and twenty fides or furlongs; to *Strabo*. *Polyclitus* numbers two hundred, which is above twenty miles English. The Wall about it was quadrangular. In building, walls, houles, and Temples in little it resembled great *Babylon*. The Royal Palace here ſome ſay was built by *Aterdeca*; and of that magnificence, that it was not inferior to that other which *Daniel* formerly built at *Ecbatani*. The out-side and the pavement of this were

were Mosaick or small pieces of chequer'd Marble ; arched also and supported by pillars richly gilded and set with stones of Julee : The roof was painted after the resemblance of the Starry Firmament ; and in all parts so beautiful in the Art and so rich in the material as sufficiently expressed the Founder's greatness as well as the Architects ingenuity. By Cyrus it was made choice of for the delight of his most beautiful *Pambea* ; a Lady celebrated by Writers in those times, and on whom Cyrus the great passionately doted. Xerxes also ennobles this City from the plenty it had of Springs and pure water streaming into *Croesus* ; which for the delight the Persian Monarchs took to drink of occasioned the Poet *Tibullus* to observe that

— Ub. Regia Iuniperi Ghospes
Prosternit —

— Where Chospes springs,
Which once was stiled, the Delight of Kings.

for no Subject was permitted to drink thereof, being wholly appropriated to the Kings use and his Children, by the Law of Persia, *Herodotus* l. 1. *Strabo* l. 15. *Geogr. ch. ult.* in which regard it was called *area aqua, aqua Regia, &c.* famous also for that Bitumen which some call *Naphtha*, on oily liquid substance like clay ; but set on fire inflames the very air : shew'd *Alexander* near *Ecbatane* as one of the rarities of *Asia*. The like is at *Hat* a hundred sixty nine miles from *Bagdad* upon *Euphrates* in the way to *Asoppo*. From *Babylon, Ecbatane* and *Shushan* it had equidistantly.

Vaduca had form and beauty till *Moses* renamed *Astar* (*Omars kinsman*) *Anno Dom. 641. Hig. 21.* depopulated it. It has now a resemblance of *Mosul* or *Nimrod*; nothing but junipers covering her. Of which, and other such noble and now desolate Cities I may say with King *David*, Psal. 45. *Come and behold the Woes of the Lord, what desolations he hath made in all the earth!* And seeing we are so near the old local place of Paradise, can I pass by without a view and some remembrance ?

P A R A D I S E or the place of the terrestrial Garden of *Eden* (*Hogea-del Holan* the Indians name it, *Gan Eden* the Hebrews, *Geserta* now, wherein God placed *Adam*) is much controverted; and where it was, no less doubted : some making it an Allegory, others a local place. Strange it is to consider the variety. Some say it was in the middle Region of the Air, whence they draw those four great streams that water Paradise: Some place it in the Mountains of the Moon; others some in the circle of the Moon, and others under the circle; supposing that thence the four Rivers flow under large and deep Seas into Paradise. Nevertheless, some there be that think the four Rivers signify four Cardinal Vertues, the word Paradise being a metaphor of delight; mans fall the punishment; and the torrid Zone the fiery Sword: fanatick fancies, such as made the brainick *Hermann* and *Selcucian* averr, there never was a Paradise. But some (and those of the soberest judgment) imagine that it was ten miles about, that the Province was *Mesopotamia*, the place *Eden* to this day retaining both name and memory. St. *Augustine* judges it was in the happy *Arabia*: Amongst the *Tartars* dreams *Goropua* (in *Holland* he might as well have said); under the North Pole thinks *Pestellus*; in *Syria Broodulus*, upon the banks of *Tigris Xerophor*; Every where before *Adam* sinn'd thinks *Oriculus*. Some say it comprehendeth *Atropotami* (that part called *Padan* or *Padan-Aram* and *Arav-Naharam* i. e. *Syria fuscus*) *Armenia*, Mount *Taurus*, incircling *Shhaar*. Others carry it further, as that it included *Nilus* and *Ganges*; a too great limit for a Garden! for *Nile* arising from *Zur* in *Afric* empties it self into the mid-land Sea; and *Ganges* from *Syba* near *Inau* in *Seylia* into the *Strelgan Gulph*. The Inhabitants in *Ceylon* lay Paradise was there; and for proof shew *Adams* foot-steps, *Eves* tears, &c. Otherfome it was in *Egypt*, *Syria* and *Judea*: that the tree of knowledge grew on Mount *Calvary*, the second *Adam* suffering where the first *Adam* offended. Some also dream that it is in a Mountain above the skie, where *Noe* and *Elias* are reserved till this World be destroyed.

The most probable is, That *Nile* nor *Ganges* had no being there: the Septuagint mis-take arid, from their supposition that *Pison* was *Ganges* and *Gihon Nile*. *Mesopotamia* no doubt was Fall from *Arabia* where *Moses* (the first that ever wrote History) about the year from the Creation 2430, compleated his Pentateuch. And as questionless, the Garden of *Eden* was watered with *Euphrates* and *Tigris*; who in their several fluxes, one from *Periaco* in *Armenia*, the other from *Libus* divide themselves into four branches; *Pisone* streaming through *Piso-gard* in *Persia*, and call'd *Piso-Tigris*; *Gihon* the other which arid became a proper name for all great Rivers in *Persia* (commixing with *Chopas*, both run into the Gulph at *Bafora*). For, whereas it is laid, *Pison* compailes the Land

Land of *Havilah* we must not imagine it to be that *Havilah* which is in *India*; but that rather in *Susiana* where *Havilah* Son of *Chus* planted before he removed into *South Afric*. Or if that will not content, make Mount *Taurus* a Wall unto it East and North; and *Euphrates*, *Tigris*, *Araxis* (or *Gozan* if you please,) and *Indus* the four Rivers to water it, will be a sufficient extreure and in the adolescence of the World (as the name imports) most delicious and till *Noahs* Flood (most think) un defaced.

Can I choose a better place to seat your patience than here? After the Death of some *Gentlemen*, my course came next, though not to die, yet to put my feet into the Grave. Whether through cold I got on Mount *Taurus* (where I wantonly stuck'd in too much cool air;) or that I played the Epicure too largely upon fruit; or that diversity of *Meridians*, or so long quaffing variety of waters might be the cause, I cannot say; but some or all of these (by Gods Appointment) upon our descent into *Media* put me into a violent dysentery; so as by continuall in that disease I was like a Skeleton, and reduced to such weaknes that I may be hold to say scarce could any man be more infiebled. I wanted not the advice and help of the Archi-ater, the Kings Doctor; who albeit he was doubtless a very skilful Physician, yet did me little good, so malignant was my distemper; albeit I took what he prescribed, (part of which I well remember were Pomgranad pills, Barberries, Sloes in broth, rice and sundry other things) and returned what he expected: so that it was hard to judge whether my spirits or Gold decayed falter. In this sad condition and misery I was forced to travel three hundred miles hanging upon the side of a Camel in a cage resembling a cradle.

Mord the *Aesculapius* of *Perisia* seeing I would rather dye than part with more fees, (for when it was gone I knew not where to borrow, Merchants were strangers to me, and I had above thirteen thousand miles home by the South-west of *Afric*,) limited my life to five days existence: But he that sits on high, in comparison of whose wisdom all humane knowledge is mere folly, in four and twenty hours after (as it were by miracle) prov'd this Oraclezler mistaken in his crisis. For I had then attending me an *Armenian* called *Magar* and a Tartarian woman who (sore against my will) would for my recovery be often invoking her heathenish Deities; but finding they had no power, whether to accelerate *Mord*s sentence or to polces my linnen and apparel (of which I had good store) I know not; but no doubt well knowing that Wine was by the Doctor forbidden me, she nevertheless in an agony of thirst presents me with a Viol full of intoxicating Wine, which both looked and relished curiously, and I poured down no lesse infensibly without wit or measure: but (as if *Opium* had been steeped in it) it quickly banihed my fentes and put me for four and twenty hours into a trance; so as in that time (had not a friend and servant resisted) I had been buried alive, they thinking I was dead, *Nam nec calor, nec sanguis, nec sensus, nec vox supereferat*, as was said of another in like condition. But through Gods mercy, this desperate Potion recovered me: For after I had disgorged abundantly I fell into a dead sleep, (Natures nurse, and as one aptly terms it the parenthesis of all our cares) not having done so for a month before, the people admiring the operation; so that by the benefit of that little rest, and binding quality of the Wine, but chiefly through Gods mercy towards me, that body which was reduced to such weaknes and like a crazy rotten vessel leaky on all sides, was through mercy as it were new careened, launched out into the World again, and in few months become strong and perfectly recovered. Howbeit, my desperate Doctress (whiles my other servants wept) when she thought me dead, opened my trunks and robbed me of my Linen and Monies: For all which I would not pursue her, the Law is so striel there against Felony, especially in behalf of strangers. I will therefore say with *David*, Psalm 71. *O! what troublis and adversties hast thou shewed me? and yet didst thou turn and refresh me; yes and broughtest me from the deeps of the Earth again!* For which I render Praies unto thee. And seeing thou hast delivered my Soul from death, wilt thou not also deliver my Feet from falling? *Oh! that I might walk before thee in the light of the living.* Psal. 50. 13.

Now concerning the Kings and other Princes ruling over this Empire in the first and second Monarchies of the World, it would require a volume to proceed in the method of an Historian: but seeing the Chronography of those parts is what I chiefly aim at, I will only present the Reader with a Summary of their Successions, inter-woven with such publick matters as I conceive may specially relate unto the places observed in our Travel; and in that I shall trace it to the last original.

God perceiving that the wickedness of Man was great in the Earth, and that all the imaginations of the thoughts of his heart were continually evil, repented that he had made man, *Gen. 6. 5.* so as by the flood of waters he deliv'rd every thing in whole Nofrils the Spirit of life did breath, whatsoever were in the dry Land: *Noah* only finding grace in the Eyes of the Lord escaped in the Ark, together with his Wife, their three Sons and their Wives, being in all, eight persons. The face of the Earth was covered with water one hundred and fifty days, fifteen cubits above the highest Mountains. In the seventh month the Ark rested upon the Mountain of *Aarat*. In the tenth month the tops of the Mountains were discovered. Forty days after, *Noah* opened the Window of the Ark; after which, in the end of the second month, *Noah* and all that were there preserved as seed to replenish the earth, sallied out; and in thankfulness to the Lord and as an evidence of his faith he built an Altar, and of every clean Beast and Fowl offered a burnt-offering thereon unto the Lord. God blessed *Noah* and his Sons, bade them bring forth fruit, multiply and replenish the earth: the Sons of *Noah* were *Sem*, *Ham*, and *Japhet*; of whom the whole earth was overspread. *Noah* began to be an Husbandman, planted a Vineyard, and liv'd after the Flood 350 years, the whole course of his life was 950 years and then d^d. *A. M. 2. c. 6.* Concerning *Asara*, and the place of *Noah's* Plantation after he so took the Ark, I have else-where spaken.

In the space of a hundred and thirty Years after the Flood *Noah*, who is called *Noachus*, and *Isisbarus* in *Acadensis*, having peopled the Orient, to the end the middle and more Western parts lying, the likewife planted and the World distributed amongst his Children, he gave several of them their mission; who accordingly travelling from the East came into the Val. of *Syphax* (as lat. as the great River *Euphrates*,) where they rested: for they found that place fit for plantation. After which, as well to get themselves a Name as for their better association, (or as some imagine, for the better securing themselves from a second Catastrophe,) *Nimrod* by thirty Years incessant labour of that great Company built a City and Tower whose top they intended should reach Heaven, *Gen. 11. 4.* But the Highest perceiving their impious design, descended, and by confounding their Language (for till then they were *Populus unus fuit*) made them dumb, and from thence scattered them abroad upon the face of the whole Earth: by which multiplication of that original idiom of speech the place was called *Babel*, in *Hebrew* and most other Tongues, signifying Confusion. Now albeit this was miraculous, it might be well worth our labour to consider, whether *Speech* proceed from Art or Nature. The most Learned agree that *Arte humana & non Natura loqua & nomina rerum sunt imposita*, but I do not think that subject fit for this place. Soon after the Creation, *Adam* and his Children planted the World from *Eden*, round about the Navel or Center of the Earth; albeit *Strabo* by his story of the two Eagles which began on their flight from East to West and met at *Pytho* in *Phecia*, would have that the *M. dilatissimum*; so *Noah's* Children near the same place commenced theirs, thence dispersing themselves into the most remote places. *Sems* posterity chose *Asia* the greatest, *Chams* *Syriaca*, and *Japhet's* *Loupe*: Albeit the *Jackes* or *Liber de generatione* published scarce two hundred Years since by *Abram Zam* a Jewish Cabalist tell us (but not his authority,) That the five Seas of *Noah* first planted all that part of the greater *Asia* which is betwixt *Euphrates* and the *Indian* S.^a, as far as *Ganges*. Put of more certainty 'tis, that in *Phaleg's* time about three hundred Years after the Flood the World was set out into partition: and as their number increased, so were Colonies dispersed for better and more universal plantation.

Nimrod, whether by reason of his more than ordinary stature and strength or for *Berosus* reports him to be ten common cubit high, which make 15. foot; from the eminency of his birth, or else by courtesy of his brethren, usurpt a Sovereignty over, is diversly conjectured, but as an Eminent Writer observes, *Is primus erat qui cepit regnare superbum, ignem quoque adorare*, the first noted Idolater, and that presumed to Lend it over his Brethren. *Cyril* nevertheless *contra Julian. l. 4.* ascribes it to *Betus* or *Abel* his Son, *A belus vir arrogans, primus duxit assubdit accepisse nomen Deitatis*; Howbeit in sacred and prophane story he is acknowledged the first Monarch of the earth. For

as the first Foundation of *Babel* is attributed to him, so is the first Kingdome; as appears by Gen. 10. 10. where 'tis said, *The beginning of his Kingdom was Babylon, Erech, Accad and Calneh in the Land of Shinar*. And out of that Land *Ashur* (or as some Translations, *Nimrod*) went forth and builded Nineveh and Calah, which is a great City. This is he whose name derived from the Hebrew Marad, renders him *Rebellis contra Deum & Naturam*: He, who by reason of his Tyranny became a Proverb, *Quasi Nimrod robustus Venator coram Domino*. By *Berosus* called *Nymbroth*; by others *Saturnus Babylonicus*; whose Father was *Chub* or *Jupiter Belus*; and his Father *Cham* called *Jupiter Chianus*; agreeable to that of *Tzetzza*, *Reges omnes olim vocaverunt Joves*, &c. And after five and twenty years rule as King, died about the year of the World 1344. his body being buried at *Babylon* say most; albeit one Author I meet with finds some part of him at *Persepolis*.

To *Nimrod* succeeded *Belus* his Son, styled *Jupiter Babylonicus*, *Baal*, and *Bel*, which in Caldee signify the Son, or Sovereign Lord. This Prince at the age of threescore years gave place to *Ninus*; who imitating his great Ancestors, added to his Empire *Arabia*, *Armenia*, and those Countries that verge upon *Babylonia*: and to deifie his Father *Belus* erected his Statua in Gold, which he commanded to be worshipped. This is the first Idolatry any Siorie mentions. After fifty years, *Semiramis* (the Daughter of *Decreta* an *Aescalonite*, her Father not known in History) being made his Wife, so captivated his reason, then in dote, as prevailing that she might command the Empire five days, made such use of her power as within that time the King was sent to his long home; so as then she swayed the Scepter without control: and being of a masculine spirit so greatly enlarged the Assyrian Empire that he not only added *Ethiopia* and *Babylonia*, but also the East-Indies, *Quo praece illam & Alexandrum nemo intravi*, saith an old Historian: but of that last had little reason to boast, seeing that she was (though unwillingly) forced to a retreat over *Indus* by *Scythobates*; in passing which, all but twenty of that great body of thirty hundred thousand Foot, and ten hundred thousand Horse, with near a hundred thousand Chariots of War (as *Crescas* writes) miserably perished. Nevertheless, to recount the wonderful things together with the memorable conquests she effected both at *Babylon* and other places, would be to repeat what is spoken concerning this Virago in the late description of *Babylon* and other parts. Her Death (after forty two years rule) is variously reported; some affirming that she was slain by her Son *Ninus* in his Fathers vindication; others, that she died a natural death; or was metamorphosed into a Dove, which in her memory the *Babylonian* Princes bore afterwards in their royal Banner or Ensign.

Ninus her Successor, by some Writers called *Ninias*, and by others some *Zaneis*, *Mars* and *Amrapel*, is supposed to be that Prince whom *Abraham* overthrew with *Chedorlaomer* the Perlian King near *Damascus* in the rescue of his Nephew *Lot*, as recorded in Gen. 14. 1. *Chedorlaomer* King of *Elam*, i. e. *Persia*, whether that was his proper name or given him from the Regal Tire or Garment he wore upon his head which was termed *Chedar* or *Cydaris*, or that he was called *Kedar* from his dusky complexion, is doubtful: But more certain, he is that same whom the Tarich calls *Cheyomarras*, Father to *Simeach*; to whom in order succeeded *Ovelhang*, *Yamheat*, *Zoac*, *Freydbuu*, *Manucher*, *Nayder*, *Afraciab*, (whom some suppose *Achemenes*), *Bazab*, *Kaycobad*, *Shelomo*, *Chozaq*, *Lorapes*, &c. But being as yet in quest of the Assyrian line, return we to *Ninus*, who began his Reign A. M. 2000, and finished it after thirty eight years Rule, being succeeded by *Arius*, by some called *Thurus*; after whom followed seven and thirty Emperours, the last of whom was *Sardanapalus* who began his Reign over that great Monarchy A. M. 3124. but by all Historians said to be a Prince so degenerating from the warlike Spirit of his great Ancestors, that he is styled *Vir, muliere corruptio*; and not without reaon, seeing he was so effeminate, that he not only wholly sequestred himself from men, but gave himself up to the society of his Wives and Concubines, both in habit and exercise imitating them: A Prince that wanted *Plato* for his Tutor, who was so far from *Sardanapalus* his opinion that *Gratias egit quod mas fuit non femina*, thanked God that he was a man and not a woman. So as it was not without difficulty that *Arbatus* his Median Lieutenant obtained admittance into his Palace at *Nineveh*; where he found the Emperour most delicately attired not with an *Ornamentum Virile* but in a Ladies dress bespangled with rich Jewels and spinning of Silk amongst the females. Nevertheless, after due reverence saluting him with a *Salve Domine Imperator*, the Emperour returned him this puling answer, *Ne me dic Dominum precor, ego enim sum Domina*: At which, astounded, the General withdrew; but so dissatisfied, that so vailt a Monarchy and so many Sons of *Mars* should be subjected under so pusillanimous a Prince, as he immediately sounded the Trumpet of Rebellion,

and drew Belochus the Babylonian Governor into his conspiracy. Whiles Sardanapalus was handling his Drifts, the two Generals brandished their Swords and marched up with all their force against Nineveh the great; so called in *Jonas* chap. 3, ver. 11. a City of three days journey, 480 furlongs in compass saith the Historian, which if true, was a hundred furlongs more than Babylon. *Diod. Sic.* places Nineveh upon Euphrates, contrary to all other Historians: threescore miles about faith *Hecatobius*; and so gallantly seated upon Tigris, that by the Prophet *Zephany* chap. 2, ver. 15. he is stiled *Torios. Civitas, habitans in confidencia dictum in corde suo, Ego sum, & exi a me non es alia amplius*; a glorious City, saying in her heart, I am, and before me there is none, (or none greater;) but withal *Civitas sanguinum*, which hastened its destruction.

The Rebels quickened their march thinking to surprize the City, which (notwithstanding the Kings neglect) was so well fore-seen, vitched and man'd, but which was most command'd by so faithful a Governor, that it not only had defiance to the besieger, but illing out at convenient times, forced them sundry times to retreat to a further distance: The City by this means held out upwards of two years; insomuch as the conspirators despaired of taking it; had not a superior Power who sets periods to all Dominions so disposed, that by the over-flowing of *Tigris* (as foretold by the Prophet *Nahum* 1. 8. and 2. 6.) near twenty furlongs of the Wall fell (a Wall that was a hundred foot high, and without so broad, that upon the Rampire three Chariots might pass on breast, adorned with 1500 Turrets,) that great and unexpected breach giving the Enemy desired entrance. The miserable Emperour then in despair, retired to his Palace, and inviting his Women into the place where his Jewels and Treasure lay set fire to it, whereby all was quickly consumed, himself for company. Such was the woful *Exe* of that great Prince, who as *Justum* observes, *Hoc solo institutus est Virum*, in this only Act express'd his manhood. The Coin then melted in that Flame is by consent of Writers computed One hundred millions of Talents in Gold, and one thousand millions of Talents in Silver; which in ours amounts unto Twenty thousand and five hundred millions of pounds: a sum not parallel'd in any story, and incredible, did not the greatness of that Empire, and the long time his frugal predecessor's had been amassing it, conuince towards it.

Thus this great Monarchy which had continued gloriously commanding the World about 1350 years, had its first though not ultimate period in a succession from *Nimrod*: And being divided between the two great Captains, agreeable to their former Governments *Arbatus* allotted to himself *Media* and *Persia* with the adjacent Provinces; (albeit some give *Persia* to *Achemenes* Son of *Perses*, who contributed a considerable assistance to the two other conspirators in this great enterprize, and from whose loins *Cyrus* the great descended, who afterwards subjec'ted the Allyian and Median Empires under that of *Persia*;) but Belochus took for his share *Babylon* and the East of *Affris*, *Nive* ne've included.

Arbatus (who in some Authors is also called *Arbaces*) by this fall of *Sardanapalus* raised to himself the Sovereignty of *Media*; and dying, was succeeded by *Manducus*: but some omitting him say *Sosarmus*, who after thirty years gave place to *Medodus*; and he after five and twenty says *Heylin*, forty say *Raligh*, did the like to *Cardicus*; who after thirteen years rule bequeath'd the Royal Scepter to *Dioctes*, as Sir *Walter Raleigh* calls him, *Dioctes Heylin*: the difference concerning the time of whos' Reign is no less, the one giving him seventeen, the other fifty three years in Government. This *Dioctes* first founded *Ecbatana*, saies *Heylin*, by Doctor *Usher* the reverend Primate reported *Arphaxad* whom *Nabuchodonosor* slew in the Mountains of *Ragan*, lib. *Judith* c. 1. v. 15. Nevertheless, I find that the distance of time between *Dioctes* and *Nabuchodonosor* to be upwards of eight years: So that how to make *Dioctes* and *Arphaxad* one, is more difficult than to agree the Foundation of the Town, seeing *Arphaxad* is not said to build the Town, but the Walls and Towers thereof, ver. 14. Now albeit the City was sadly plundered and defaced or demolished by the Assyrian Emperour; nevertheless it was repaired in his time if it be true what good Authors report that *Daniel* the Prophet re-edified a Royal Palace for the King, which for elegancy of structure and value of materials was comparable to any other then extant. *Dioctes* dyin: A. M. 3291. was succeeded by *Phraurus* a Prince of great courage and success, who died before the Walls of Nineveh, leaving the Median Crown unto *Cyaxes* his Son. Who during his forty years rule prosecuted the Assyrian War, and laid a long siege to Nineveh; but was forced to withdraw, having notice that a great body of *Cyptian* Horse had invaded his Country, and there rested: This was an un-expected chance of War, and as *Herodotus* lib. 1. reports, had no other way to recover his right, than by inviting the most considerable

Field-Officers of the Scythians to a banquet, and picking a quarrel with some in their cups, upon a signal given by *Cyaxares* all their throats were cut; which was of that dread to the other *Scythians*, that they willingly found the way back again into their own Country, with this character from *Juslin lib. 1.* *Seytha magis ebrietate quam bello vincentur.* *Astyages* his Son upon his Fathers death was proclaimed, and with all due ceremony crowned King. *Astyages* is mentioned in that *Apocryphal* history of *Bel* and the *Dragon*; and by some supposed to be that great Prince *Abu-shurner* who married *Heslir the Jew*, but the ground of that conjecture I neither find nor credit; seeing that by the belt Authors either *Darius Hystaspis*, or *Artaxerxes* by the Greeks called *Maccrhy*, one of them was undoubtedly that Prince: Besides, the distance of time betwixt those two Kings is not less than an hundred twenty nine years. Of this *Astyages* little is recorded, save that for the richness of his Apparel none ever excelled him. His Daughter *Mondina* whom he had by *Ariana* his Wife, he gave in marriage to *Cambyses the Persian*, Father of *Cyrus* the great. *Astyages* first dreamt, That his Daughter made so much Water as drowned all *Sisia*; and another time, that the Sun being under his feet, thrice he offered to embrace it, but still it avoided him: Which upon the Astrologers acquainting him that it related to his Grandson *Cyrus* which signified the Sun, he endeavoured (but in vain) the Childs destruction. To him succeeded *Cyaxares* by some called *Darius the Mede*; whom *Cyrus* succeeded A. M. 3406.

To *Belocheus* (now settled in the Assyrian Empire about the year of the World 3.146.) succeeded *Pul Assar*, called *Tiglath Pileser*; who in 2 Reg. 15. 29. is recorded to have ruined *Galilee*, one of the three principal Provinces of *Carana*; of which Province *Samaria* was the capital City; and carried all the inhabitants of *Nephthul* and *Damascus* Captives into *Affyria*. After three and twenty years rule he gave place to *Salmanasser* by some called *Nabonaffer*, who prosecuting his Fathers design plundered *Samaria*: and in the Reign of *Hezekiah King of Isra*el (who neglected the payment of his Tribute) after three years siege took *Samaria*; and the Almighty (being provoked by his people through their idolatry and conforming themselves to the Heathen that were round about them) so ordered that the ten Tribes were also removed out of his sight, none being left but the Tribe of *Judah* only, 2 Reg. 17. 18. those of the captivity were placed in *Hulab* and *Habor* by the River *Gozan*, and in the Cities of the *Medes*.

This Assyrian Prince after ten years rule was succeeded by *Sennacherib*; who going to fight against *Tirbukib* the *Ethiopian* King, in the way sent a blasphemous summons to King *Hezekiah* by his Servant *Rabsuckeh*; for which, upon the Prayer of good *Hezekiah* and pursuant to the Prophecy of *Isaiah*, one hundred fourscore and five thousand of the *Affyrians* were in one night slain by an Angel of the Lord; which made *Sennacherib* hasten back to *Niniveh*, where worshipping in *Nisroch's* Temple he was slain by his Son, *Adramellec* and *Sla-rezer* who escaped into *Armenia*, and (after seven years rule) *Ezar-Haddon* his Son reigned in his stead, 2 Reg. 19. 35. *Ezar-Haddon* having taken revenge upon the particides, by that confusion then happening between the two Brethren gave occasion to *Merodach* the Governor of *Babylon* to rebel, and succeeding therein deposed the King, and thereupon retransferred the Seat-Royal from *Niniveh* to *Babylon*. *Merodach* or *Bereda-Balladan* as called 2 Reg. 20. 12. swayed the Sceptre, of whom little mention is made, albeit he reigned 40 years, and left the Imperial Crown to *Ben-Merodach* his Son; who after 2 years gave place to *Nabopullos* or the Triumpher over *Pharaoh-Necho* the *Egyptian* King, and at the end of 25 years was succeeded by *Nabucodonosor*, who by reason of his many Victories and triumphant Reign was called the *Hercules* of the East. This great Prince was the Golden Head of that terrible Image mentioned in *Dan. 2. 32.* To whom the Highest gave a Kingdom, power, strength and glory; commanding not only whereofver the Children of Men dwelt, but also the Beasts of the Field and the Fowls of the Heaven were given into his hand as Ruler over them all, *Dan. 2. 38.* so as it will be too great a labour in this small circle to enumerate his conquests, his victorious arm subduing where-ever it was extended: *Egypt* he made a Province of his Empire; *Jerusalem* he destroyed, and fired the Temple; carrying *Zedekias* and his people prisoners to *Babylon*, the last of the four Kings of *Judah*, (viz. *Amasias*, *Jebojakim*, *Jeconias* and *Zedekias*) who by the *Affyrian* Kings were led captive to *Babylon*. *Syria* and *Arabia* were likewise subject-ed under the Stroke of his Scepter; and part of *Ethiopia*. The pride of *Niniveh* he abased, agreeable to the prophecies of *Nahum 3. 9.* and *Tob. 14. ult.* slew *Arphaxad* and spoiled *Ecbatana*. In a word, the extent of his Dominion was not straitened within less bounds than the confines of the then inhabited World. But to particularize his many sumptuous and magnificent structures, especially that at *Babylon*, would be no less tedious: For he not only beautified old *Babylon* but added to it a new City upon the opposite side

of the River which he inclosed with a triple Wall of Brick; and for the delight of his Queen (whom some name *Amyris*, supposed to be the Daughter of *Astyages the Median King*) and for the recreation of his Daughter *Nyctoris* (who in spirit and noble buildings she afterwards made seemed another *Semiramis*) by extraordinary cost and incredible number of hands raised such stately Arches of stone as for height and breadth seemed a Mountain, which gave a curious prospect not only over that mighty City and River but into the Country round about which was level, and the horizon uninterrupted by any hill; so that besides the delightful walks it had, he planted it with all manner of fruit and flowers, insomuch as it seemed a Paradise. Which, with the rich and stately Palace he erected for his Royal Seat (reputed one of the Wonders of *Asia*, and continuing perfect to *Alexander's time*) begot such admiration in the King himself as occasioned that expression, *Is not this great Babel which I have built, &c.* which boast drew upon him the most memorable Judgment any story mentions, for seven years spending his time amongst savage beasts: yet through divine mercy restored to sense and dignity, all the remainder of his life acknowledging Gods power most Sovereign and Everlasting.

This mighty Monarch after four and forty years rule paid Nature her last debt and was buried in *Babylon*, having first bequeathed his Crown and Scepter to *Evil-Merodach* a Friend unto the captive *Jews*, and in particular to King *Jehoachin*, as we find in *Jer. 52. 31.* nevertheless, a Sun very unlike the Father; much of what the one by prudence and valour got, the other lost by want of judgment and too much pusillanimity: For *Egypt* under *Amasis* revolted from him; *Media* by the good conduct of *Astyages*, and *Persia* by the lively spirit of *Cyrus* withdrew from under his subjection; and marching with resolute Armies against him, in the end deprived *Evil Merodach* both of life and reign; whom nevertheless *Balthazar* called *Belshazzar* in *Daniel* succeeded, a Prince of that tyrannical and dis-obliging nature as rendered him no less contemptible abroad than hateful at home: soas the period of that great *Assyrian Empire* which from *Nimrod* to this Prince had flourished upwards of 1600 years under a series of fifty Monarchs, had its ultimate period. For *Belshazzar* too securely and impiously feasting a thousand of his Lords, (those Gold and Silver Vessels consecrated to the Lord, and by his Grandfather *Nebuchadnezzar* brought from the Temple at *Jerusalem* to *Babylon* being profanely used by the King, the Princes, their Wives and Concubines) *digito Dei*, Judgment by *Daniel's* interpretation was pronounced against that miserable Prince, and execution immediately followed; for, the *Medes* and *Persians* who then besieged the City entered forthwith and mastered *Babylon*, yea that night was *Belshazzar* King of the *Caldeans* slain, and *Darius the Mede* (then about sixty two years old) saluted King, *Dan. 5. 31.* Where we are to note, that this *Darius the Mede* as the *Persians* call him, by the *Grecians* is called *Cyaxares* as we find by *Xenophon*: He was Uncle to *Cyrus the Persian*, and obtaining the Diadem when he was old he did not but two years, and dying ill-fueled, gave *Cyrus* an uninterrupted admission unto the whole: For as we read in *Ezr. 1. 2.* the Lord God of Heaven gave unto him all the Kingdoms of the Earth. And *Hest. 1. 1.* had his Empire extended from *India* to *Ethiopia*, which comprehended 127 Provinces. The siege of *Babylon* the Metropolis of the World may not be pretermitted without a little notice. *Cyrus* was Son of *Cambyses* and *Mandane* daughter of *Astyages the Median King*; *Cambyses* was Son of *Cyrus*, Son of *Darius*, Son of *Achmemes*, Son of *Perse*, who (faith *Isidore*) gave *Persia* its name; a Prince of that Virtue and repute as gave that Race for many years the usual surname of *Achmemida*. *Cyrus* (whose name being derived from *Chyr Sherez* in *Hebr.* which signifies the Sun) some years before calling to mind the mischief intended him at his birth by his jealous Grandfather, ambition predominating over parental respects, he marched against him with a gallant Army of *Persians* under conduct of *Harpagon* whom *Astyages* had ordered to destroy *Cyrus*; but abhorring that cruelty preserved the Infant who lived to recompence the fact, and were ministerial together in the subduing *Astyages* (whom they sent prisoner into *Hyrcania* in *Evil-Merodach's time*, where in anguish of mind he soon departed;) and after the death of *Cyaxares* his Son (old when he entered upon the Government) *Cyrus* both by birth and conquest claimed that Crown. The *Caldean* Emperour not liking his success, proclaimed war against *Cyrus*, and drew *Cresus* the rich and puissant King of *Lydia* into his league. Howbeit, *Cyrus* who well knew the *Babylonians* tempers, and the intended place of rendezvous, with a great body of Horse quickly got into *Cappadocia*, and interposed twixt the *Babylonians* and them; and soon engaging the *Lydians*, though the fight was smart night compelled them to retreat. *Cyrus* early preparing to renew the fight found no enemy, but intelligence that *Cresus* had withdrawn himself into *Sardis* his best City and strongest Hold, dismissing most of the Army into quarters. *Cyrus* drew before the Garrison and after some assaults not only took

took the City but in it an incredible mass of treasure, and which was most considerable, the King himself, whom the Conqueror notwithstanding his alliance set upon a high pile of Wood, which when ready to be inflamed he lamentably cryed out, *Solon! Solon!* which *Cyrus* demanding the reason of, was by the relation so convinced both as to his own mortality and the chance of war, as in princely prudence he not only repealed the sentence, but restored him though not to the King yet to his good opinion. The people nevertheless soon after endeavouring their liberty were not only easily disarmed, but in policy so trained up in ease and licentiousness that they who before were a redoubted and warlike Nation became effeminate and amongst men of honour of no esteem. The *Caldeans* by this blow given their friends began to apprehend their approaching troubles, and that *Cyrus* would make their Country the seat of war. So that in the first place they victualled *Babylon* with provisions of all sorts sufficient for a twenty-years siege. But *Cyrus* pre-ordained for the conquest of that City and Empire, not so much from that prophetick acclamation of *Nabuchodonosor* which some allude to, *That a Mule should subdue Lydia and subvert the Assyrian Monarchy*, the Mule signifying his mixture of blood; as from that election of the Almighty, *Isa. 45. 1.* above 100 years before his birth, *That as his Anointed he should subdue Nations, loose the loins of Kings, &c. and (which was his greatest trust) fulfil the pleasure of the Almighty, saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built, and to the Temple, Thy Foundation shall be laid.* *Ita. 44. 28.* which accordingly he piouly endeavoured in the first year of his Reign, making a Decree to build Gods House, restoring the sanctified Vessels (which *Nabuchodonosor* took thence,) to *Shebazzar* one of the Princes of *Judah*, *E.r. 1. 8. & 5. 1.* which was a Commission very warrantable for this great enterprise. The City was compassed with a Wall so high and thick as deservedly made it one of the Wonders of the World. It was, saith *Diod. Sic.* 365 furlongs about, in height 365 foot, and so broad that six Chariots could well pass in front; the great River *Euphrates* ran through the middle of the City, well-nigh double the breadth of the *Thames at London*, which *Semiramis* nevertheless made communicable by a Bridge, the like whereof was not in all the World: the Garrison also was well man'd, so abundantly victualled and provided with necessaries of all sorts and barricadoed with brazen Gates so strong that the besieged held it impregnable. But God having decreed the end, directs the means; for, as prophesied in *Jeremy* chap. 51. vers. 11. *Suscitavit Dominus spiritum Regum Medorum; & contra Babylonem mens ejus est ut perdas eum.* Accordingly *Darius* the *Mede* and his Nephew *Cyrus* perceiving how impossible it was to take the City by battery or storm, and how well they within were furnished with victual, contrive another way, (probably taking their design from the Prince's *Nyocris*, who when the Bridge was built diverted the stream by sluice, (for a large deep sluice she cut a mile above the City, which turned the Channel and gave it another course till they had laid their Foundation, and raised the superstructure so high as needed.) Accordingly whiles *Belshazzar* was lulling himself in his vain-confidence, *Cyrus* by several ruses and trenches which the pioneers and many hands cut and effected in that soft and easie ground, so strained the usual channel that it became dry as fore-told by *Jeremy* chap. 51. v. 31. And whiles the besieging Prince was carousing with his Satrapa's, their Wives and Concubines, as formerly remembred and recorded by the Prophet *Daniel* chap. 5. vers. 2. and by *Jeremy* chap. 51. vers. 57. the besiegers made the easier entrance, so as the City was surprized, and the besieged then found it their best play to save themselves by flight, in which many fell by the Sword; others in the City; amongl whom, *Belshazzar* himself, whom wine and sleep had miserably prepared for it. By which subversion this great City that formerly knew no subjection but sat as Empress of the World, now began to relish the mutability of Fortune and was forced to bow under the *Persian* Yoak; for the Victor not content with dis-robing her of her Imperial dress gave her as a prey to the insulting Souldier. A sad judgment, but no doubt by divine dispensation both to bring her to a strict account for her notorious Idolatry, and to compensate the cruelty and taunts upon sundry occasions expressed towards the captivated *Jews*, as we find particularly denounced by the Prophet *Jeremy* chap. 51. vers. 24. *Sic reddit Babylon & cum lis habitatoribus Caldea omne malum suum quod fecerint in Sion*, and also that the world by the ruine of this masterles piece might know, there is a set time for the undoubt dissolution of the whole; and that mans impiety is a forceable attractive of Gods Indignation and Vengeance.

The Fame of this great enterprize was such as with littl trouble served to reduce the rest of *Asia*: But unable to forbear giving the reyns to his houndle's desire, his great spirit would not be satisfied whiles his Empire had any bounds; so that he marched with a numerous force against the *Scythians*. *Tomyris Queen of the Massagetae*, (a people some

some reduce from *Mazog*, but I rather think from *Messag*, i. e. *mixtura* in Hebrew) the Princes (he formerly though in vain courted for his Wife) affronted him with an Army equal for number and not inferior for resolution. So that both sides appearing dextrous to engage, after a hot dispute the Queen became victorious; and having *Cyrus* in her power, the death of her Son *Spargapizes* (to whom *Cyrus* refused quarter nor long before) coming fresh in memory, she commanded his Head should off, and then threw it into a Vessel filled with blood, with this expression, *Cyrus! now drink thy fill.* So writes *Herodotus* and *Juſtin*. Nevertheless, *Val. Magnuſ* and *Strabo* report otherwise: as, That at the age of seventy years, and the nine and twentieth of his Reign he died in peace, and was with all due ceremony buried at *Pafargada* a City in *Sufia* which he had founded. With which agrees *Xen. lib. 8. Inſtit.* So that how uncertain soever the place and manner of his death be, 'tis more certain, That his body was intombed at *Pafargada*, seeing that *Alexander* the great returning thither out of *India* inconsiderately put to death *Oriſta* a Prince of the Blood-Royal of *Perſia* upon a suggestion of that malicious Eunuch *Bagoas* that he had violated *Cyrus* his Tomb, upon which was only this plain Epitaph,

Hoc! tu homo! Ego sum Cyrus, Cambyſis filius,
Qui Perſicum imperium conſtitui.
Regnator fui totius Aſir.
Ne mihi ergo Monumentum invidias.

Ho! man! I Cyrus am, Cambyſes Son,
Who first the Perſian Monarchy began.
The Aſiatic Empire I controll'd.
Envy not then that this ſmall place I hold.

To *Cyrus* the magnificent (for ſo he is called) ſucceeded *Cambyſes* his Son; a Prince in nothing reſembling the magnanimity of his Father; being infamous for his cruelty and prodigious lust: But his Reign was ſhort (not exceeding nine years,) yet turbulent. Outrage as 'tis obſerved is commonly attended with a ſhort life. For, having subdued *Egypt* and *Ethiopia* as far as *Elephanina* (whose neighbour the *Tragodius* (never having been tributary to any) refuſed ſo much as to ſend him of their Earth and Water (which laſt they could ill ſpare) in token of their ſubjection; ſo well fenced were they with rowling lands and heat intolerable) in a jealous humour by the hands of that villain *Traxaspis* he made away his only Brother *Smerdis*; and having no illue of his own the anguill thereof diſpoſed him ſo to frenzy, that it increased upon the tidings brought that fifty thouſand of his men (whom he had ſent to burn the Temple of *Jupiter Ammon* which stood in *Barca* that conſining part of *Cyrene* formerly called *Marmoria*) were buried in thoſe hideous waves of Sand, which Satan (who oft-times commands the air) had raised for the paſteſion of his Worſhip: A ſtorm againſt which there was no ſhelter nor eaſon, as *Herodotus L. 2.* albeit pre-cautioned by the *Pſiſi*, who ſuffered the like fate for that ſimplie challenge they gave the South-winds for the injury they did them in drying up their few Rivolts. With which not being admouſified, but rather hardad, in revenge he forthwith demolished the Temple of *Anubis* at *Memphis*, broke the neck of that beaſtly Deity, of great veneration with the *Egyptians*; who indeed were fo prodigiously idolatrous, that *Varro* reports of them, *Omnia animalia (exceptio porco) iniquam Deos colebant*. And at *Damascus* going about the like pranks (which had been good had the zcal been rightly grounded,) he was caſually wounded by his own Sword, fo mortally that he could not be recovered, but in that extremity died frantick and unpitied.

The Deputy he had left to ſuperintend *Perſia* had a Son reſembled *Smerdis*: whom he veſted with the Imperial Robe and Crown which *Cyrus* left: and that device pall currant until the imposture was diſcovered by a Lady of his own Seraglio who was Daughter to *Orianes* a Satrapa of no mean account; who one time telling her Father what he obſerved he acquainted the ſeven subordinate Princes how that the pretended *Smerdis* wanted his ears. Quickly they found the means to give him his defert, after he had as an imposture worn the Diadem eight years.

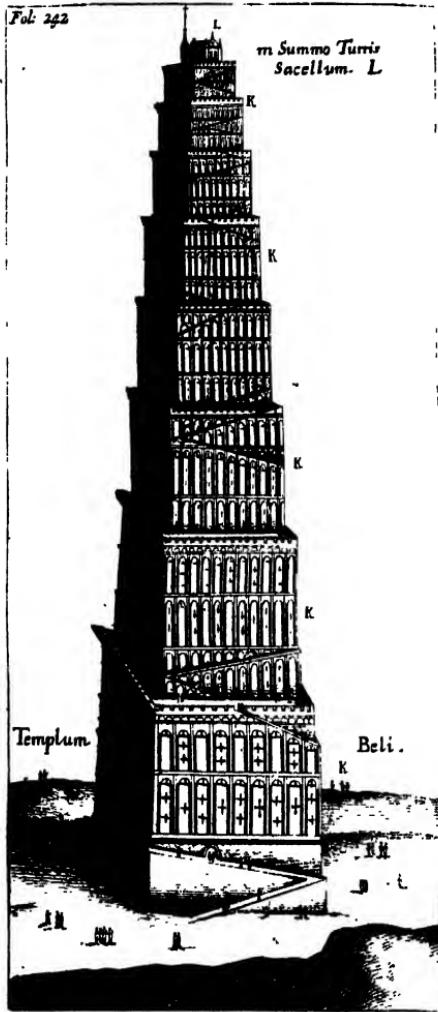
The ſeven Princes who had the ſuperintendency of the Realm not knowing of any right Heir to the Crown, found out no better exp. dient for an Election, than by agreeing, That he ſhould Reign whoſe Horſe neighed firſt next morning after the riſing Sun: which being published, that night *Darius* his ingenuous Groom made his maffers Horſe cover a Mare in the place appointed; lo that he no ſooner entred the field next morning, but the Horſe (mindful it ſeems of his late entertainment) fell to neighing couragiouly; which the reſt of the competitors (ignorant of that craft) accepted as an undoubted preſage of his merit, and with all due ceremony ſaluted him with the Regal Name; at *Pafargada* the Arch-flamen put upon his ſhoulders the Veſt and upon his head the Crown or Royal Tiara which the great *Cyrus* had on at his Coronation. Howbeit, by being lineaſely deſcend-

descended from *Asannes* who was Grandson unto *Cyrus* the great as saith *Herodotus*, he had a Title to the Crown; albeit others are of a different opinion, believing that descent was invented after his accession to the Crown. Nevertheless, seeing he acquired his greatness by the favour of his Horse, inasmuch as a Horse in the *Perſian Tongue* was then and yet is called *Aſp* and *Aſpis*, it hath induced me to think that his agnomen of *Hypaspis* was thence derived.

During the *interregnum*, *Babylon* not yet well acquainted with the Yoke, revolted; but by the faithfulness of *Zopyrus* was reduced. This is that Prince, whom the captived *Jews* minded of *Cyrus* his great Ancestors good intention to the holy City and Temple which *Nebuchadnezzar* had deftroyed, and stirred up his heart to re-build both. In the interim, he exprelled much kindness to the *Jews*: whence it is, that some of their *Rabbis* will needs have him to be that *Abasuerus* who upon the repudiating of *Vashti* married *Hester*, *Mordecai's* Niece. After which, he prosecuted the *Grecian War*, and extended his bounds beyond the *Hellepon*: the war was upon this occasion. He dispatched Ambassadors to *Amittiu* the *Macedonian King*, ut *Aquam & Terram tradenter Dario*: while his Council was deliberating what anſwer to make, the King in Civility invited the Ambassadors to a banquet, where ſeveral Ladies were; to whom the Ambassadors, either from their intemperate drinking, or the haughtines of their Masters Empire, exprefſed ſuch rude behaviour that ſoon after at a like collation the Ambassadors were ſlain by ſome of the *Macedonian* Youth who had diſguifted themſelves in women's habit. A raiſh attempt. For, being known to *Darius*, albeit he exprefſed his diſlike of the Ambassadors miſbehaviour, he would haue puniſhed; yet looked upon it as a violation of the Law of Nations, and confequently an affront towards his perſon: which he was ſo ſenſible of, that having first acquainted them with his apprehenſions, with all poſſible ſpeed (making this the colour of that War) he marched towards them with a Royal Army, and without much reſiſtance harralled their Countrey as far as *Marathon* a Town near *Athens*; where the *Athenians* with a small force encouerted that great Army of *Perſians*, who by apparitionis were put into that pannick fear that they were shamefully put to light, not raiyng till they had paſt the *Hellepon*. A Victory albeit attributed to the singular courage and good conduct of *Miltiades*, yet by the ingrateful State of *Athens*, to their everlasting infamy moſt unworthy requited. This great deſeat, aggravated by the revolt of *Egypt*, and the diſſent amongst his Sons about their Title to the Crown, and ſome add the grief he tooke for being diſappointed of his hopes to enjoy *Amhina*'s lovely Daughter, were of that force as they broke his great heart; after he had reigned ſix and thirty years, having ordered that his body ſhould be buried at *Perſepolis*; and directing (notwithſtanding that *Aria-Bahanes* was his firſt-born Son) that *Xerxes* his ſecond Son born after *Darius* had obtained the Crown, ſhould ſucced in the Throne.

Xerxes the firſt year of his Reign reduced *Egypt*, and the next made what preparatiōn he could to prosecute the War againſt *Greece*; the diſgrace his Father received at *Marathon* was foſreh in memory. The Army he raifed was ſo prodigiously great, that men thought it was not only enough to over-run *Greece*; but the whole Universe: no leſs (as moſt Historians ſay) than eighteen hundred thouſand Foot; *Herodotus* heightens them to five millions two hundred eighty three thouſand two hundred and twenty men; and also fourſcore thouſand Horse; his Navy alſo were a thouſand Ships which *Justin lib. 2. centuples, Naves quoque decies centum milia numero habuisse dicuntur*. With that monſtrous body this great Monarch marched undiſturbed as far as the *Hellepon*, without ſeeing the face of an Enemy: There he took the ſecond muſter of his Army. It is reported, that from a ſudden conſideration of the mortality of his men, he could not reſrain weeping. Ominous tears! for they preſaged what happened ſooner than peradventure he then apprehended. To joyn the two Worlds he forthwith cauſed above ſix hundred great boats to be coupled and planked, and thereby made a Bridge over the *Hellepon* twixt the two Caſtles *Abydos* which is on the *Aisan* ſhore and *Selos* in *Europe*, where the Sea (albeit a mile broad) is narrowest. Having thus paſſed his Army, to exprefſe equal care for his Fleet and withal to leaue ſome ſignal of his magniſcence he converted the *Peninsula* where Mount *Athos* ſtood into an iſland, the place he cauſe being about two miles. This great body of Horse and Foot (which as they lay drank the River *Cyſſudry*) devoured alſo ſuch a world of Proviſions that the Providers found it impoſſible to builft long in thoſe ruinous quarters; ſo as it forced the *Perſian* Monarch to engeage the *Grecian* Army ſooner than otherwife was intended: which albeit they wiſely delayed, nevtheleſs waiting for an advantage, the *Perſians* were no ſooner advanced to *Thermo-pyla* (io called from the hot Baths there, a ſtrait or narrow paſſage not exceeding half an Acre of Ground, betwixt the Mountains that ſeparate *Theſſaly* from *Greece*,

some say five and twenty foot) but that *Leonidas* the *Spartan* King with three hundred *Lacedemonians* (the remainder of five thousand that first appeared) defended the Pals with such incomparable resolution that for two dayes they withstood this World of Men. An opposition so memorable, as albeit *Leonidas* with his Men were slain, yet so noble a sacrifice lives and will live in Fames honourable Roll to all posterity, as not without cause the *Greeks* in that place raised him a Statua with this inscription, *aliquando hic coura myridas, cum recentis hominibus pugnavit Leonidas.* Howbeit, *Xerxes* after this smart entertainment marched as far as *Athens*; which being abandoned by the Inhabitants he easily fired, by the way having plundered the Temple at *Delphos*, which was marvellous rich by the offerings of many Princes and people of preceding generations: Sacrilegic (for so 'tis called, seeing he acknowledged *Apollo* for one of his Gods) so notorious fayes *Herodotus* and other Historians of those times, as occasioned many fatal calamities to pursue him: albeit he framed this excuse, That it was irrational, nay impious, to confine the Celestial Gods to Earthly Habitations, for thereby they immured them within Wood and Stone, but was otherwise understood by the *Greeks* who gave Judgment against him, by the bad success of his affaires, as followeth. For first, his great Armado was soon after beaten and sunk by *Themistocles* the *Athenian* Admiral, with his four hundred sail near the Isle of *Salamis* in the Gulph of *Negropont*; and such havock made by the incensed *Greeks*, that *Non vici sed vincendo faigari inter ingentes catervas stratorum hostium occiderem*, saith an Author; a sight or execution so dreadful to the *Persian* King that his Spirits sunk so as he could not think himself safe amidst his Royal Guard so long as he continued on the wrong side the *Hellestom*: And accordingly leaving *Mardonius* (his General and Uncle by marriage) three hundred and fifty thousand select men, he hastened to *Sifos*; where finding the Bridge disordered by a late storm, he was necessitated to ferry over in a small Cock-boat; thence giving one Historian occasion to say, He was *primes infusa, potremus in prae*; and to another, and that very truly, *Ejus introitus in Graciam non tam terribilis quam discessu fuit turpis, &c.* Nevertheless, to dissemble his grief for that instability of Fortune, he began to play such mad pranks as rendered him more and more ridiculous: For, in the first place to be revenged for the breaking his Bridge, and loss sustained at Sea, he commands a Sea-Captain to give the Water three hundred lashes; and having the Images of *Neptune*, *Boreas* and *Proteus* brought as Delinquents before him, to express his own greatness (being Brother to the Sun and Moon, as he usually styled himself) and what low esteem he had of those marine or inferiour Deities he committed them Prisoners to his Provost Marshal who was ordered to manacle their hands and lead their legs with fetters during pleasure; for which irreverence and impicity as they imputed, the *Greeks* proclaimed him *Deorum immortalium Hostis*: but he in requital thereof, and to shew that he loved to imitate *Cambyses* his Ancestor, chained the *Palladium* and fired the Temple of *Misraim*, the rather, for that he was the *Athenian* Tuteulary Goddess; and with like frenzy burnt the Temples of all other Gods interposing his return (that of *Ephesus* excepted:) whence so soon as he understood how that the rest of his great Army was wholly broken by the overthrow given *Mardonius* at *Plataea* by Land, and *Aria-Imes* at *Micale* by Sea in one same day, he continued his flying march as far as *Babylon*; where to shew that he put not his confidence in those strong Walls, he causly pulled down part thereof; and then also without the least provocation first defaced and after that demolished the noblest structure and piece of Antiquity that was at that time extant throughout the world, the Temple of *Belus*, which *Semiramis* with charge incredible and Art incomparable had erected and dedicated to the memory of her Husbands Grandfatre *Belus*. It was a square Pyramis saith *Strabo lib. 13. c. 3.* made of brick; in the midst rose eight Towers, the first of which was one furlong high, and the rest proportionable: so high, and so curious that it superadded to the other seven Wonders of the World. He also ravished thence the Statua of *Belus*, which was twelve cubits high and of massive Gold; and as *Herodotus lib. 1.* slew divers of the Flamens that would have refuted it: *Alexander* would have repaired this broken Pyramis, but after an essay found it not practicable. Howbeit this act of his, albeit Historians reproach him for it, nevertheless seems alluded to by that memorable prediction of *Jeremiah chap. 15. vers. 18.* where inveighing against the gross Idolatry of the *Chaldeans* the Prophet concludes, That *Vana sunt opera & risu digna, in tempore visitationis sue peribunt.* And in Vers. 44. *Visitabo super Belum in Babylone, murus quoque Babylonis corruet, &c.* Thus having satiated his humour against those imaginary Gods, with like barbarous outrage he exercised his Tyranny against men; most inhumanely putting first the Wife of *Messis* the *Bactrian* Lieutenant, and after that himself and Children to Death; with several others, of whom he had conceived some causelets jealousie: So as becoming more feared than loved.



K. Temple of Belus.
L. The Chappel at the top.

'loved, Ariabazus his Uncle and Captain of the Guard, doubting he might have his share in that scene of blood, conspired with Mithridates an Eunuch his Chamberlain, and having found a wicked opportunity to execute their Treason, they cut him off. A fact fully recommended by Artaxerxes his Son who succeeded in the Throne.

Now notwithstanding these prodigious extravagancies of Xerxes, that he had some Virtue and bravery intermixed, appears by Alexander the great, who at his entering Persepolis perceiving a Statue of Xerxes thrown under foot by the Soldiers, viewing it a while said to some Officers standing by, He was considering with himself whether in respect of his Virtue he should set it up again or let it lie upon consideration of that mischief he had done in Greece; which laid, he ordered its standing, as formerly. By this we see the Custom of the Persian and other Eastern Princes was to erect Statues in memory of the Dead rather than Sepulchers: So did the Romans of old, *Majores nostri Statuas multis decreverunt, Sepulchra vero paucis; Cicero 9. Philip.* Xerxes was buried at Persepolis.

Artaxerxes began his Reign Anno Mundi 3500, and ruled the Empire most honorably full four and forty years. This Prince is usually called *Longimanus, quia dextra fuit longior quam sinistra;* so long, that standing upright he could touch his knee with his right-hand; By the *Arabians Tamias-sharsi;* and by the *Persians Ardshyr-Bahman.* Affected with the loss his predecessors had sustained by the *Grecian War* he dispatched his Ambassadors in the first year of his Reign to conclude a peace with the *Athenians,* inclined to it by *Timagoras* who had received a bribe of ten thousand Dariques or Sagittaries which with his giving adoration to the *Persian King,* according to the custome here, at his return cost him his life; he had the better means to reduce *Egypt,* which he effected in the end. During that, Themistocles the great *Athenian Captain* incurred the jealousy of his own and the Spartan Democratical States, and had the sentence of Ostracism inflicted; so as forced by his ingrateful Country-men to shift for himself he adventured to the Court of Persia in disgrace, where he received as generous entertainment as could be devised; of such high esteem was a noble Enemy with the *Persian:* But soon after being by the *Persian King* desired to serve under him in *Egypt* against the *Grecians,* he being of a Heroick Spirit chose rather to bid Farewell to the world in a cup of poyon, than engage against his Country, notwithstanding their cruelty.

The rest of this great Monarchs Reign was peaceable and full of Honour. He was a Prince of great civility and a constant well-wisher to the *Jews;* in *Ezra 7.* and *Nehemiah 2.* much spoken of, and therefore by most is taken to be that *Ahasuerus* who for the most part kept his Court in the Palace of *Shushan:* and the rather, for that *Artaxerxes* by the *Persians* is pronounced *Aria-shausr,* art is great, which some make *Ahasuerus.* But that *Nehemiah, Ezra,* and *Zorobabel* were by this *Rex Regum* as he titles himself permitted to return to build and inhabit *Jerusalem* is by none I meet with so much as questioned. He was contemporary with the High Priest *Zoachim,* which gives *Krentzheimius* and others occasion to affirm that *Hester,* (or *Aiessa* i. e. a mirtle, *Formeister* and *Edissa,* as by several Nations she was called) was the Wife of this Prince. He died at a ripe age and was buried at *Persepolis.*

Darius the Bastard (by the death of *Xerxes* and *Sogdianus Queen Hesters Children)* for some time established the Empire to himself. *Egypt* in histime rebelled; and contracting a defensive League with the *Athenians* utterly expelled the *Persians* thence and preserved their liberty during his and his Successor *Artaxerxes Mnemos* Reigns. In the interim, to his illegitimation he added incest; an unnatural and impious act, yet familiarly practised by the *Persians.* *Perse, Medi, Indi & Ethiopiaes, cum matribus & aviis, cum filiis & nepibus copulantur,* says *Hier. ad Jonin.* and thence called *Magulæi* derisively by other *Ethniques.* By that Lady he had *Artaxerxes* whom we lately named, and *Cyrus* his Brother, that for some years governed *Asia* the less: a Prince of equal magnanimity to any in his time; but withal so ambitious, that his Father still kept him at a distance, being indeed jealous of him; and the more, observing that the Queen passionately affected him.

After nineteen Years Reign *Darius* died, and his Son *Artaxerxes* was placed in his Throne. The greatest of this Princes troubles took rife from the restless ambition and pursuit of his Brother *Cyrus* after the Crown; heightened thereto by the partial favour of the Queen-mother and secret insinuations of *Tissaphernes* his pretended Friend, who first made him believe he had most right to sway being born after his father was King; but finding that project not likely to succeed, faced about, informing the King of the Princes intent: Which occasioned a summons to be sent him, and appearing, being secured but in fetters of Gold, at the importunity of his Mother *Parisatis* he was soon set at liberty

berty and restored to his Lieutenancy of *Lydia* and the adjacent Provinces; at that distance ruminating how to compass his ambitious ends under colour of revenge for the late disgrace he suffered; and having a considerable interest in *Greece* they were willing to widen the difference thereby to make *Perseia* the less capable of offending them; so as they readily furnished him with ten thousand Auxiliaries expert in War. But the preparations that *Cyrus* made, made it appear he was in earnest, and that he resolved either to win the Crown or find a Grave: Accordingly with a considerable Army of Horse and Foot he passed through *Syria* into *Affrygia*, and without opposition possessed himself of the two principal Seats of the Empire *Babylon* and *Susa*, which made him believe the rest his own, and was no less the opinion of most. Howbeit, at length, intelligence being brought that *Artaxerxes* was advancing with nine hundred thousand men, it somewhat altered his former apprehension. *Cyrus* nevertheless prepared for fight; what he wanted of number was supplied by skill. Both Armies being on their march, at or near *Cunaxa* (or as the *Persians* pronounce it *Koom-shaw*, about 4000 surlongs from *Babylon*.) came first in view of each other. The Generals having disposed their men into such order as they thought best, quickly engaged: for many hours Victory seemed doubtful. *Cyrus* for his part exprelled as much resolution as man could do: for first with his own hand he killed *Arrageres* a *Caddusian* Prince, soon after made way into the thickest of his Enemies, and perlonally charging *Artaxerxes* gave him such a testimony of his valour, that by the Enemy (who with a shout applauded the Fact) it was thought he had been slain: But the King being rather enlamed thereby required him so with his Sword, that *Cyrus* had no further desire to engage the King. In fine, perceiving the Imperial Ensign (which was an Eagle of Gold) advance, *Cyrus* resolved to put it to an issue; so as too eagerly exposing his own person it happened that his Tiara or Regal Cap (which he wore as pretending right to the Crown) fell from his head; which being observed by *Mithridates* a *Persian* Youth, with a bold thrust he wounded the Prince in the Face, so that he was forced for some time to withdraw out of the fight and towards night was accidentally and miserably slain by some Pioneers Inhabitants of *Coon-sha* who by mistake fell into his naked quarter. In this expedition *Xenophon* the Historian had command but so soon as the whole Army fell into a rout, in despight of the *Persians* he made a safe and memorable retreat through the *Caddusians* Country into *Georgia* and crossed the River *Phasis* to *Trepisond* where he embarked for *Byzantium* and thence with honour brought his Courtrey-men into *Greece*. In this great fight many thousands were on both sides slain; nevertheless, *Artaxerxes* becoming master of the field taking a view of those that were lain, amongst others *Cyrus* was discovered by the long hair he wore: His head was quickly severed from his body and presented the King; and *Mithridates* to whom his death was imputed, (albeit the King would have had the honour of it himself) was highly rewarded; but soon after by the craft and cruelty of *Parissatis* the Queen-mother in a most horrid manner put to death, as we find by *Xenophon* and *Plutarch* in the life of *Artaxerxes*; who not satisfied therewith also made *Statira* the Queen away by poison, only for expressing her detestation of the fact.

Amidst the spoiles it happened that *Darius* the young Prince light upon *Appasia* a Lady of such extraordinary beauty that *Cyrus* upon the first sight became amorous, and after some discourse so passionately affilcted that without her he could not live. The aged King upon the report of her beauty would needs see whether Fame spake truth; and upon view became equally captivated: so as this unhappy competition occasioned a difference not to be reconciled twixt Father and Son. The King nevertheless perceiving how extreanly the Princes soul was endeared to her, and considering that *indecora sum intusa* gave way to his Son, endeavouring all he could to abate his own desire; which though smothered a while broke out at last into such a flame that he violently seized her from his company, and pretending that it was in zeal, sequestred her within the Vestal Temple of *Anaya* as they call *Diana* at *Ecbatan*. Which enraged the Prince; and being further heightned in his jalouisy by *Terebates* an Eunuch in near relation to the King, without the least consideration (finding no other way how to recover *Appasia*) he practises how he might assassinate the King his Father in his Closet: A Treason of an ugly dye, and according to its demerit no sooner known but that the Conspirators were slain in the attempt, and the Prince himself (though Heir apparent) secured, tried by a Council of War, most of which were Princes, condemned, and the sentence put in execution. Now albeit the King for his own preservation approved thereof at first, yet afterwards the los's of so hopeful a Prince so overcharged his thoughts that in a languishing condition it at length broke his heart. Such was the end of this great Monarch after six and thirty years Reign; being likewise buried at *Persepolis* in or about the year of the World 360.

* *Ochus* his third Son was crowned King: who during his six and twenty years rule acted as many tragique parts as the wort of his predecessors ever did: so as of him 'tis said *Nulla non sanguinis, non sexus, non aetas misericordia permotus est.* And for Example, not content with the cruel persecution he made abroad against *Egypt* which he reduced, and the blood he spilt in the conquest of *India, Bactria, Syria, and Cyprus* where he gave little quarter; at home he inconsiderately made away his two Brethren: and as he was contriving more bloodshed was himself cut short by *Bagoas* the Eunuch, who finding it impossible to ascend the Throne, mounted the right Heir *Ariaces* thereon, whom nevertheless he soon after slew fearing he would revenge his Fathers death. In this unhappy Prince the Royal Race of *Cyrus* the great took end, having ruled the *Persian Empire* about two hundred and thirty years.

Bagoas albeit of great power was nevertheless so hateful to the subject by reason of his treasonable practices that he saw it was in vain in his own behalf to attempt the Crown: so that not knowing how to secure himself better than by obliging his Friend he pitched upon *Codomanus* who at that time was Lieutenant of *Armenia* by Commission from the late King. *Codomanus* nevertheless was of the Blood of Kings, and of such noted valour and courtesy that it was no sooner proposed than generally approved of. Having the Royal Scepter in his hand, according to custome he allumed the name *Darius*, the better to ingratiate himself with the people who had that name in veneration. This is he whom the *Greeks* call *Ultimus Darius*, the *Perians Parvus* or Cowcheck from his misfortune rather than want of prowes, in which and other Princely Vertues he was equal to any of the greatest Monarchs preceeded him. But the Supreme who from his highest Thrones disposes of Monarchies and States as to his Divine Wisdom seems best, set a period unto this; as fore-told by the Prophet *Daniel* chap. 11. vers 2. And in order thereto, albeit *Philip* the Father of *Alexander* so soon as he could prevail with the *Grecian States* to be their Captain General had invaded part of the lesser *Asia* by *Parmenio* his Lieutenant General and *Attalus* his Field-Marshal, and laid a Foundation for *Alexanders* Prosecution of the *Persian War*; nevertheless, was so opposed by *Memnon* a *Rhodian Officer* under *Darius* that *Philip* made but little progres in that Work: for the design was laid aside upon that unhappy death of *Philip* who was slain by *Pausanias a Macedonian Youth* whom *Attalus* against nature had abused, and being complained on to *Philip* receiving but a slight return provoked the young man in a treasonable way to vent his passion upon the King. So that it appeared, the overthrow of the *Persian Monarchy* was clearly designed for *Alexander*. Who no sooner had composed his domestick broils at home which gained the Son the same reputation with the *Grecian Princes* and States the Father had, to retaliate the *Persian* for the many invasions and vexations they had given *Greece*, but principally to quench his ambitious thirst and to give the reis to his boundles spirit, he first disposed of his own Kingdom to *Antipaters* trust, and then distributed most of that he had amongst his Friends, giving this reason to *Parmenio*, *Spes sola & Asia mihi sufficiet.*

Inconsiderable was the number he raised for so great a task, not exceeding thirty thousand Foot, five thousand Horse, and one hundred and eighty Ships; which nevertheless expressed the greatness of his mind: yet notwithstanding in this is not to be too much censured, seeing what his Army fell short for number and bravery was supplied by courage and skill, most of them being Veterane Soldiers who had received many honourable scars in the Wars under *Philip* his Victorious Father, *Ut milites & militia Magistri fuerunt*: Whereas on the contrary, albeit *Darius* infinitely exceeded *Alexander* in numbers and wealth, and that through long peace and plenty most of them were richly clad and delicately fed; yet withal were given over to luxury and grown effeminate.

Alexander (whom the *Perians* call *Scander* and *Alexander*) then crossing the *Helleponst*, gave defiance to the *Perians* by throwing a Dart. He landed without much opposition, and had leisure to offer a solemn sacrifice upon *Achilles* his Ancestors Tomb. The first encounter he received was near the River *Granicus* which divides the Trojan Territories from the Propontis in the *Adriatican Field*: the more noted place this is, not only from this first battel with the *Perians*, but for that *Pompey* the great at *Stella* near this place defeated *Mithridates* the great King of *Pontus*, and *Tamberlane* the like to *Bajazet* with his five hundred thousand men, of which, two hundred thousand lost their lives that day in the field. In this first fight *Spiorrhades* the *Perian General* performed the part of a gallant Commander; nevertheless, being slain the rest fled; *Quos terre Nomini magis quam Armis viri*, saith *Plutarch* concerning *Alexander*. The Victory was *Alexanders*; who in that fight expressed so much skill as well as valour, that the glory of the day was wholly his. Of the *Perians* fell above twenty thousand says *Quintus Curtius*, *Plutarch* reduces them to two thousand; but

but of the Greeks not above thirty Horse and Foot, to whose memory Alexander forthwith caused Statues of Bras to be erected by Lysippus the best Statuary at that time in the world.

This success gave him the command of most parts of Asia the less, and not only furnished him with recruits, but what they most wanted, provision. Passing through Phrygia towards the Euxine, at Cerdis, with his Sword he dissolved that Knot upon which the conquest of Asia by Oracle was said to depend. Darius by this time found the Maxim true, That the meanest enemy is not to be contemned, much more so great a Soldier as the Macedonians: so that at length he resolved in person to engage Alexander, and like himself advanced with an Army of three hundred thousand Foot and a hundred thousand Horse according to Justin; Plutarch doubles their number. Concerning the method of his march Curtius and others give us this memorable relation. In the Van of the Army the Arch-lamen carried the holy Fire, attended by the Priests and three hundred sixty five Youths who were their relators all cloathed in red. Next followed the Chariot of Jupiter drawn by white Horses, the Riders being apparelled in Scarlet and holding Rods of Gold in their Hands. After them came the Chariot dedicated to the Sun, which was attended by ten other sumptuous Chariots richly wrought with Silver and Gold. The Vanguard of Horse was forty thousand, consisting of several Nations and Habits. The Kings own Regiment of Foot which the Persians termed Immortal were adorned with chains of Gold, their Coats imbroidered with Gold and Sleeves powdered with oriental Pearl. After which marched fifteen thousand more splendid than the former, apparelled like Women; these were called the Kindred of the great King. Next whom rode his Life-guard excellently mounted and clad like the Servants of so great a Monarch: and after them Darius himself, sitting in a triumphal Chariot which was of burnished Gold embellished with glittering Stones and supported by several Gods of his great Empire; upon his own head was the Royal Tiara, and the head of the Chariot resembled a *Sambro de Sol*, two Eagles spreading their Wings over him; on either side were two little Pagoda's or Pillars, all being Gold set with precious gems. Two hundred Satrap's or rather Princes of the Blood with rich Partizans went nearest his person. In the last place came Sisygambis the Queen-mother, and the Wife of Darius, whose attire was so rich that it was not to be valued: they also were drawn in Chariots of Gold, with sixteen Cajua's in which sat the Kings Children and Nieces, a large train of Persian Ladies, with an infinite number of Concubines, and their guard of Eunuchs as richly apparelled as the rest attended them. Near these marched the Treasurer at War with his charge, which was so great as that it burthened two thousand Camels and Mules. After which followed two hundred thousand Foot and fifty thousand Horse; but Seneca well observes, that *multitudine non habet vim sed pondum*. An Army so nice in diet, so rich in habit, so different in language, and generally so effeminate, as without doubt it was their very numbers they thought would amate that little force Alexander was in the head of; who though few, were little frighted with their enemies great body, and upon the description made of their wealth their courages were so inflamed they thought it long ere they engaged. The fight was soon begun, and continued not long: for the Persians more minded to preserve what they had, than to run the uncertain hazard of War upon such unequal terms, or to adventure their Golden Robes and Jewels against those coarse despicable fellows that with Iron and Steel advanced against them. In this short fight or skirmish rather the Persians lost 100000 Foot and like number of Horse saith Quintus Curtius; others say 60000 Foot and 10000 Horse, most of which fell in the chace. Darius himself was so perfused, that fearing to be known in that posture, he threw the Crown from his head. The Treasure also was all taken; but which was of most note, his Mother, Wife, Children and Kin were Alexanders prisoners, who used them like a nobl' Prince; for albeit they were of incomparable beauty, yet commanded he his affliction so as they had not the least violation or disrespect given by any; the Victor also ordering that what Jewels they lost should be forthwith restor'd: yet the spoils were many and rich, even to admiration. Amongst which I onely mention a Cabinet of Gold, thick set with Diamonds and other precious Stones, which for materials and Art was reputed the best Jewel in the World. Alexander taking that in his hand and shewing it to Perdiccas, pleasantly demanded what was fittest to put therin? Some laying Gold, others Pearl and Stones of price; No, says he, nothing but Homers Iliads. *Plu. lib. 7. c. 29.*

Soon after this conflict Parmenio routed Prince Memnon's Brigade near Damascus: in which flight the Prince was slain and the Daughter of Oebus the former King together with the Wives and Daughters of most of the Nobility of Persia taken Prisoners;

Prisoners; as also a further mass of *Darins* his Treasure, amounting to 6200 Talents of money coined, and in Bullion 500 Talents, over and besides other wealth which was incalculable. *Phoenicia* also and most of *Syria* prostrated themselves to *Alexander* upon that Victory: who likewise after seven months siege mastered the City of *Tyre*, and for their obstinacy made the Inhabitants feel his wrathful temper. *Gaza* also made him some resistance; but being taken, *Alexander* advanced without further interruption to *Ferusalem*; out of which, to entertain the Conqueror issued *Jaddus* the High-priest attired in his Pontifical Robe with a Miter upon his head, and attended by the Priests and Levites in their Sacerdotal Habit, which faith *Josephus* was so full of gravity and State that *Alexander* first admired and then prostrated himself before the High Priest for his benediction; who for his better satisfaction likewise entertained him amongst other things with the Prophecy of *Daniel* which in express terms prefigured his Victories.

Thence he marched into *Egypt*, which submitted. And having an ardent desire to visit *Jupiter-Ammons* Temple, albeit the way was exceeding difficult, nevertheless after five days treading the looſe and ſcalding ſands (in all that Desert ſeeing neither graſs nor tree, beaſt nor bird) which comes to paſs, in regard it very ſeldom rains there, and that by reaſon of the extreme heat all or moſt of the Spings be dried up; fo as 'tis apparent that Water is the Mother of all generations, if *Paracelsus* may be credited, no vegetable nor animal being procreated above, nor mineral beneath without it; & *rērum omnium ex aqua procreatione, veluti ex primo principio*, faith *Thales Milesius*. But after ſo great toyle being at length arrived at the place, he was ſaluted with the affected title of *Jupiters Son*, as the Parafites interpreted the equivocal Greek word wherewith the Oracle entertained him. Returning to *Memphis* he quickened his march towards the North part of *Affryia* called *Adiabena*; where he had notice that the chaste and beautiful Wife of *Darius* notwithstanding her princely uſage was ſo overwhelmed with grief upon the thoughts of the declining condition of her Husband, that Death only could give caſe to her affliction.

Soon after this the *Persian* King profered *Alexander* his fair Daughter with thirty thouſand Tackts together with *Egypt* and all *Asia* the leſs for portion. But *Alexander* who had theſe already in poſſeſſion and the Sovereignty of the whole world in his Idea, replied, That the Firmament could not endure two Suns. So that they prepared on either ſide for another fight. *Darius* recruited his Army to five hūndred thouſand Horſe and Foot, ſome Authors make it much more; and *Alexander* his to fifty thouſand Foot and eight thouſand Horſe. Theſe great Bodieſ ſoon met and engaged each other. This Battel was muſt better fought than the former, moſt of them having gained experience. *Darius* expreſſed sufficient perſonal bravery that day and the ſoldiers, the one ſide for liberty the other for conqueſt, ſtood ſo well and ſo equall to their charge that Victory ſtood hovering a good while with doubtful wings, ere it appeared to which part ſhe would incline: but *Alexander* who well knew that upon this the whole depended and would decide the quarrel, expreſſed ſuch extraordinary valour as well as expeſience in the fight as at length albeſt he loſt three hundred of his beſt men, and that *Parmenio*, *Perdiccas*, and *Epbolion* were hurt in the fight, he renewed the battel with ſuch fresh courage that the *Persian* Army were conſtrained to give ground, and then fled; *Darius* himſelf in the laſt place, who in the battel having given great proof of his courage, in this condiſion would have ſlain himſelf: In the purſuit more were ſlain than in the fight, 30000 fayes *Arrianus*, 40000 fayes *Quintus Curtius*, but *Diod. Siculus* makes them double the number: how uncertain ſoever the number be, this day's Victory over that part got him conqueſt over the whole. *Quo prælio* (ſays *Inſin*) *Asia imperium rapuit Alexander*; *Cuius tanta fuit ſalicitas, ut poſt hoc, nemo rebellare audiuſt est. Perſe enim (poſt imperium totum) jugum ſervitutis patienter accepertim*. Which Words of the Historian were true; for the reputation of this battel quite broke the heart of the *Persian* Nobility and ſet the Imperial Crown upon *Alexanders* head: Who purſued the Victory, forcing the remains of the *Persian* Army to diſperſe themſelves into divided quarters and ſuch places where they could find belt shelter. Invitations alſo came from Provinces and Cities in moſt places thereabouts to *Alexander*, to take what he had victoriously acquired by right of War. *Arbela* was the ſirſt that rendred, nigh which place the Battel was. *Arbela* buiilt by *Betus* a City under 37 degrees, by *Prolym* called *Arbelitis*; by *Mercelimus*, *Gangabola*; is about fifteen (ſome ſay five) leagues North from *Nineveh*, in that part of *Affryia* which was then called *Arrapachita* ſevered from *Armenia* by the *Nyphates* hills. *Babylon* was next in course to entertain the Conqueror in this kind of complement, which place for a long time had been the objeſt of *Alexanders* deſires: fo that thither in the beſt equi-page he could, he cheerfully marched with the greatest part of his Army, having first ſent ſome

some Horse after *Darius*, who with a flying party was passed the Mountain that divides those parts from *Media*, to preſerve himself where he could find most safety.

Alexander therefore marching through the Country called *Adiabene* the North part of *Affryia* twixt the *Arrapaches* (corruptly so from *Arphashite*, that part of *Affryia* being the firſt Plantation of *Arphaxad Son of Sem*) and the *Gara-menii* (before the Flood the ſame where *Eden* or the Garden of Paradise stood,) at length the Victor came in ſight of the high Walls of *Babylon*, which put him into an eclipſe of joy; for indeed, that was the celebrated place he coveted, having as it were from the beginning of Time ſtrukc terror not into *Grecia* alone, but all other Kingdomes and Provinces through the Universe. To welcome the Conquerour, *Mazens* or *Mazines* as ſome call him a *Persian* Satrapa at that time Governor of the place (who had faithfully promised his Maſter *Darius* he would keep it for him, not only againſt *Alexander* but all the world,) falſily illuſt with the Captain of the Caſtle and the Treasurer who preſented *Alexander* with a particular of his charge being no leſs than fifty thouſand Talents of Silver in Bullion or as ſome report two hundred thouſand Talents in Gold; followed by the *Magi* or *Caldcan* Astrologers as forward as the reſt to adore this riſing Sun, accompanied with an infinite number of Horse and Citizens all in their beſt Livery, having ordered that the way all along ſhould be ſtrewed with ſweet flowers and Altars erected ſmoking with Incenſe, with what other ſymbols of joy and ſubmiſſion they could poſſibly exprefſ to make his entrance more acceptable and magnificent; without the leaſt outward appearance of fear or terror for their inevitable iuſtuction and losſ which they were ſure would follow this new chance of War. *Alexander* rapt with admiration beheld the ſtatelinenſ of the place, the height and strength of the Walls, the beauty of the Towers, the many noble ſtructures and places of pleaſure all along the River *Euphrates*, eſpecially that incomparable Garden which was ſupported by Arches; the greatness and curioſity of the Royal Palace, than which the World had not its ſuperior, that excepted of *Perſopolis*; and no leſs magnifying the Temple of *Belen* which *Xerxes* had defaced. *Alexander* gave immediate order for repair thereof: but having a little before ſpoken more particularly of this place, I may not repeat. Nevertheless, ſuch contentment *Alexander* found here, that he ſat more than a month's time in banqueting and other excels which had well-nigh viatiaſed the ſpirits of his Country-men who had been educated after another manner of diet in a ſtrict but wholsome discipline of War.

At length, leaving the ſuperintendency of the place with *Mazens* the former Governor, the Conquerour marched directly towards *Shushan*; his way into *Susiana* was through *Sitacene* and *Sarapene*, cloſe by the Altars of *Hercules* which he viewed for the honour he bore that Hero his emulated Anceſtor. Into *Shushan* he was received by *Abulites*, according to his principle ſtill adoring the riſing Sun; who expreſſed little leſs ceremony in his entertainment than *Mazens* had formerly at *Babylon*. Here the Treasurer preſented the Conquerour with an invoyce of his charge which was Nine millions of Gold and fifty thouſand Talents of Silver not put unto the mint as ſay moſt Writers; albeiſt *Plutarch* mentions onely four thouſand Talents, and in Purpleſilk from *Tyre* to an equal value.

The pleasure of this noted place detained him longer than he intended at his firſt coming: for indeed, the curioſity of the Gardens and magnificence of the Palace were not to be parallel'd. *Alexander* at a Princely Banquet which he made his Favourite *Ephesien* and other prime Officers of the Army with ſeveral of the *Persian* Lords, ſitting in *Darius* his State which was of pure Gold moſt richly ſet with precious ſtones, could not forbear exulting, that what he had long desired was now accomplished, viz. to be Maſter of *Xerxes* his magnificent Palace. And having here as at *Babylon* placed a conſiderable Guard, he haſted towards *Perſopolis*, invited thither by *Teredates* the fearful Governor. By the way (as I noted in our paſſage near *Jarrow*) he was to march through the ſtraiſt called *Pyle Persiaſis*, where *Ariobarzanes* (a noble *Persian*) gallantly defended the paſſe with a ſmall party of well-reſolved *Persians*; fo that *Alexander* after the losſ of more Captains than in the two firſt Battels againſt *Darius*, and many companies of Foot, was forced to find another way: At which the noble *Persian* halting to *Perſopolis* in defence of his Maſters right, was baſely refuſed entrance by *Teredates*; fo that wheeling about, he immediately fought the *Macedonian* Victor, in which attempt he found an ho‐nourable Grave.

Perſopolis, albeiſt the gates were opened to give *Alexander* free leave to enter in a friendly and ſubmiſſive fort, nevertheless, ſuch was the ſpight they bore this gallant place for the miſchief *Xerxes* had done in *Grecia*, that the Soudiers were inconsiderately licenceſ to kill and ſpoil as they lifted. This was the Metropolis, the Principal Seat

and Burial-place of the *Persian* Monarchs. No place in the world being put into the balance with this City would have weighed it down; for after the Souldiers had loaded themselves with three dayes plunder of Money, Plate, Jewels, Images of Gold, and Bullion in abundance, the Conquerour for his share had a hundred and twenty thousand Talents in coin: But not content therewith, he set the City and Palace on fire, at the instigation of an infamous strumpet; not wort naming the second time; *Urbem illam Regiam, et Monarcharum atricem, totum Orientis imperatricem, Cracca et veterarum gentium terrorem, flammis miserime incendit*, sayes *Mansiſt Cosmog.*

And not finding any fitter place to take a survey of the *Persian* Exchequer, which clearly appears by the several vast sums *Alexander* seized in this itinerant War to be prodigious, suffer me a little view, that it may evidence how properly the *Persian* Kings arrogated to themselves the Title of *Rex Regum, Dominusq; omnium hominum, &c.* their annual Revenue being answerable to the amplitude of their Empire, which extended one way from the North side of the *Hellepon*t to the River *Ganges*; and the other way to the *Aræ Philenorium* and Country of the *Garamans*: so as if only from *India* they extracted yearly three hundred and threſcore Talents of Gold; out of the rest of the 127 Provinces how great must be the receipt? for no les was yearly brought into the Exchequer by good Authors than 40500 Talents of Gold, every Talent according to the Hebrew amounting unto 4500 pounds; so as the several vast sums which *Alexander* disposed out of these several Treasuries may well be credited equalling (tis thought) the publick revenue of the Roman Exchequer, which in *Augustus Cæsar's* Reign, was 150 Millions of Crowns as by ſome is reported. Let it not then be lost labour to enumerate thoſe ſums as I find regiſtered, and probably agreed with the Accomp'th given *Alexander*.

At the battell of *Iffus* *Alexander* took from the Treasurer at War 620 Talents of coin designed for the pay of *Darius* his Army, and 500 Talents more in Bullion, unminted. What the Silver Talent was, is doubtful: For if it were the *Babylonian* Talent, that was 218 pounds; if the *Alexandrian*, 375 pounds; if the *Egyptian*, 250 pounds; (for I obſerve that the Attique and Euboioque with the Talents in different Kingdoms were not the ſame, no more than was the Weight which had its equal variation, and such as hath occationed ſundry miſtakes amongst Historians.) At *Memphis* he found 800 Talents; at *Damascus* 2600. at *Babylon* 50000. at *Ecbatana* 26000. at *Shishan* 50000 un-minted and nine millions of Gold; at *Parſagard* 60000. and in *Persepolis* 120000 Talents; or as *Sirabo* reports (if he mean not rather the Total) thirty two millions seven hundred and fifty thouſand pounds: So that the 50000 Talents or eighteen millions of Crowns which *Darius* proffered *Alexander* with his Daughter *Statira* in portion, and the 10000 Talents for ranioming of prisoners, would easily have been paid, ſeeing that prodigious mafs of treasure *Alexander* ſent thence into his native Kingdom was ſo great as loaded five thouſand Camels, and ten thouſand Mules.

Moreover, ſeeing I am upon this ſubject, ſuffer me to balance these with other ſtupendious ſums I meet with in authentic ſtories. And firſt, concerning that which *Sardanapalus* ſacrificed with himſelf in flames when *Nineveh* was taken by *Belochus*: It is reported to be no les than One hundred millions of Talents in Gold and a thouſand millions of Talents in Silver, which in our money amounts unto twenty thouſand and five hundred millions of pounds; ſcarce credible, if the vaf extent of that Empire and arbitrary authority of thoſe Kings were not conſidered, and that it was ſoon after the golden age; and compared with what King *David* amallied together out of a far les Dominion: For *David* (as appears in *Ciron.* 22. 14.) bequeathed *Solomon* towards the building of the Temple One hundred thouſand Talents of Gold and ten hundred thouſand Talents of Silver, which in our money amounts to eight hundred and ſixty seven millions, three hundred eighty two thouſand and five hundred pounds ſterling, or thereabouts. Marvellous it is likewile to conſider where and in what manner *Cyrus* ſcaped ſo fast a ſum together out of his Lieutenant in the leſſer *Asia* ſuch time as he marched againſt his Brother *Ariæxerxes*, being as *Xenophon* reports One hundred and five and twenty millions of pounds.

Now as in the firſt I gave but one instance out of the Tax that was yearly raised from *India*; ſo in the laſt I shall onely mention *Egypt*, which in *Cleopatra's* time brought every year into the publicke Treasury Twelve thouſand and five hundred Talents of Gold, which according to our computation makes 750000 Crowns; ſums ſo very great, as puts to ſilence that mafs of plate which was offered *Pizarro* a *Spaniard* Commander in *America* by *Attabalipa* the *Peruvian* King for his ransom. Oi! how has our Mother Earth groaned through the violence that has been offered her bowels by extracting this Maſmon of darkneſs? How many millions of lives have been ſpent in Mines for the producing that which miſ-ued has helped to put the Universe into a combustion?

And seeing the very entrails of the Earth has been thus incessantly torn for this precious Oar as the world ceteems it, strange it is to consider what is become of this accumulated heap, appearing that the Exchequers of most Potentates at this day as in most former timer are rather empty than full, and that all Nations complain for a supply; and yet those many publick Treasuries would hardly amount to what was imbodyed in one Exchequer in the Worlds adolescency: insomuch as it may be presumed that the greater part is lost and buried in the Sea, where it is irrecoverable; but not to be lamented, seeing Covetousness is but Idolatry, and 'tis not wealth but content that makes men happy. Nevertheless, that great wealth the Persian Kings were masters of made them so reputably with the Romans that by them they were stiled *Reges beatissimi*; as amongst others Horace has an allusion in his *Perseum Rege beator*: Concluding this parenthesis with that invective against Avarice, *Ullum est officium vel locum tam sanctum aut solenne, quod Avaritia violare non audeat?* And drawing our Eyes from the prospect of these enchanting metals I have the more liberty to follow Alexander into India, with this caution, *Non alienis Castris tangam explorator, sed viator.*

Alexander then having intelligence brought him how perfidiously Bessus had dealt with his declining Prince, and the death wounds given him by those trayterous hands, delayed not to give order for a speedy march in quest of that infamous Regicide; the rather, for that it was also told him, *Darius* at his death retained so grateful a memory for the civility he expressed to his nearest Relations that he heartily invoked all his Gods, Alexander might have his desires, as to an Universal Conquest of the World, accomplished; *Precatur Superum Inferumq; Numina & Regales Deos ut Alexandro Imperium Orbis Terrarum omnium contineat*: with which words he expired and with him the Persian freedom, *Vitam pariter cum Persarum Regno sic finivit, Justin lib. 10.* Nevertheless, revenge quickned Alexander's march towards *Bactria*, serving withal to spur on his desired entrance that way into the *Indies*: so as selecting twenty thousand Foot and three thousand Horse, with those few he designed the prosecution of his Universal Conquest towards the East.

Marching therefore first through *Parthia*, in fifteen dayes he past through *Hyrcania*, which by the natural defence it had in Woods and Fastnesses might easily have obstructed his passage had Bessus but endeavoured it: but self-guilt sufficiently tortured him; for he was now become the reproach of men: and found it accordingly; for upon *Alexander* coming into *Mergiana* not far from the City *Cyropolis*, built by *Cyrus*, he was apprehended by his own party and brought bound to *Alexander*; who abhorring his sight, ordered he should be delivered to *Oxatres* the Brother of *Darius* to be disposed of as he should think fit. *In ultionem perfidae fratri Darii exscrucianum tradidit*, saith *Justin lib. 12.* This done, the Conqueror gave order for the interrment of the embalmed royal Corps; which was done in military form and with as much ceremony and expellions of sorrow as was possible: but *Alexander* being the principal mourner, by the sadnes of his countenance sufficiently discovered the anguish of his Spirit: a generous compassion; and so well resented, yea having so forcible an impression upon the Souls of the Persian Princes then attending the obsequies, as albeit the Countrey was formerly subdued, not till by those tears he shed could he make an entire conquest over their affections.

This great Funeral thus performed, *Alexander* then passed his Army over the River *Oxus*, and afterwards the like over *Jaxartes* which *Plutarch* calls *Orexartes*, the Greeks it seems not very expert in Geography took it for *Tanais*, *Urbem Alexandriam super amnem Tanaim condidit*, and in seventeen days compassed it with a Wall six miles about: A great mistake, this emptying it self into the *Caspis* Sea and that into *Palus Mervis* or *Mare di Tanna* which in 48 degrees flows into the *Euxin*, the distance 'twixt thofe two Rivers being little les than two thousand miles. *Alexander* still thirsting after the Conquest of India directs his course through the most Southerly part of the *Massagetae* Country leaving the Paropanisian hills and *Arachosia* on the right hand; during which he laid the foundation of twelve Cities: but falling into some riot, in that distemper flew *Clytus* his old and trusty Servant. After which he intended to repose a while at the City *Nysa* built by *Bacchus* upon the banks of *Hydaspes*, now called *Bodaspis* and *Hyrtis* branches of the River *Indus*, of great repute in those dayes for the sacred Mount and incomparable Vines there abounding; which from thence and the neighbourhood to *Ararat* in *Mergiana* and thename it bore gives some good cause to fancy that it was built by the Patriarch *Noah* and was his first Plantation. Hereabouts it was, where they shewed *Alexander* a most ancient Moasument, the Tomb of *Cainan* the fourth in descent from *Adam*, who (as in the *Tachasim fol. 6.*) reigned over the *Indians* of these parts before the Deluge. Here he constituted his *Argyrapides* who had their Armour damasked and filleted with Silver.

Porus a valiant and powerful Indian Prince having notice that *Alexander* advanced towards his Country (which comprehended a great part of what the Mogul now holds in *Indostan*), waited for him on the banks of *Hydaspes* with a great body of Horse and Foot and many Elephants of War; where they fought, and gave the Greeks such testimony of their valour that albeit *Alexander* got the better of the day it gave the Greeks nevertheless fresh cause to rest satisfied with such Victories as they had got, without further hazard into the Orient. To put which out of thought and for their refreshment after so hard labour, *Alexander* let loose the reins to all manner of debauchery; for at the Mountain *Meros* he celebrated the *Bacchanalia*, and for fifteen dayes glutted the Army with those mystic sopceries. After which he forced his way through *Dedda* and *Acadera*, took by assault a Fort situate upon an inaccessible hill which could not be subected by *Hercules*. After that *Mazaga* and *Nora*, principal places of strength in those parts; and with some difficulty passed his Army over *Acesines* another branch of *Indus*, and then set Foot in *India*; for saith the Historian, *Ad amnum Acesinem per hunc in Oceanum devolvitur* which I note only to shew that *Indus* and this River are one in that story, albeit indeed but a branch of *Indus*: all which he apprehended his own by that little pollution.

The consideration whereof made him acquaint his great Officers with his design to penetrate as far as *Ganges*, which they seemed to approve of; but being known unto the Army, the length of the way, the increase of heat, wasted quarters, infinite numbers of Indians assembled in their own defence, the difficulty of passing over *Ganges* (which was reported to be thirty furlongs broad and an hundred fathoms deep,) these and the like had so vive an impression in their fancies, that as one and all by a general murmur they expressed their discontent: so as finding that neither by threats nor promises he could allay the mutinous humour of the Camp, at present he dissembled his thoughts and seemed to rest satisfied, albeit soon after he made several of them feel the weight of his displeasure. The Horse he marched through *Patadena* upon the Eastern banks of the River *Indus*, the Foot in boats past merrily down the stream until they came to that we now call *Din* formerly *Parala* near the Tropic and in view of the Ocean: where drawing his Horse and Foot into a body he straightway invaded the Countrey of the *Oxidracans*, stormed the principal place of defence the *Mallians* had, and temerariously mounting the parapet and violently leaping into the Town to the amazement of the *Barbarians*, followed but by two officers, for a while sustained the Darts and other Weapons the Enemy lent; and by that inconsiderate act (if the Historian say true) had perished, had not the Army as men desperate in his rescue enforced their speedy entrance.

After which he subiected the *Brahmans* Countrey: and preparing for his march against the more remote Indians assembled near the banks of *Ganges*: the Camp broke out into a fresh murmur; so that albeit he used all possible means to perswade their further march, vehemently declaring, That unless they opposed their fortune against the numerous but naked preparations about *Ganges* which gave them a bold defiance, they would retreat with shame and (faith *Plut. vita Alexand.*) all they had thitherto done was neither memorable nor thanks-worthy. Notwithstanding which, the Army having the old idea before their imagination, glutted with victory, overcharged with rich spoils, and tired with travel, and unable to endure the extream heat of those parts, first they shewed him their white hairs and the many maims received in battles, and then with tears besought him to put a period to his conquests and ambition: By which they gave him cause sufficient to understand their unwillingnes to storch their bodies which already looked like Mummy, any longer in those fiery Regions; so that in fine, forced he was to condescend.

Nor was it ill resolved; duly considering the great way they shoud have marched ere they had arrived at *Ganges*, the intollerable heat they must endure, the uncertainty of provisions, and losse probably they might have undergone in an Enemies Countrey, who having no dependance upon the *Persian* were not at all shooke by the fall of that Empire but rather as one man embodied upon the banks of *Ganges*; part of which, namely the *Gangarida* and the *Praefons* were reputed two hundred thousand Foot and four or five thousand Horse, besides eight thousand warlike Elephants, all bent in his opposal: withal, finding upon a murther, that albeit in the fight against *Porus* and the *Mallians* his Army consisted of an hundred and twenty thousand Foot and fifteen thousand Horse, full three parts of that number were since dead, part being slain in fight, but most dying of flux and fevers occasioned through excess of grapes at *Nysa* and their other intemperance at the celebration of the frantique Orgyes. *Alexander* therefore seemingly submitted to a return into a more moderate clime; and the rather, that he might be recruited with

those fifteen thousand men he had notice were advanced as far as *Jasques*. He thereupon published his resolution to retreat, which was received with general acclamations of joy; and after a months rest upon the estuarium of the River *Indus* prepared for a march towards *Orme*; whilsts the Conqueror himself, heedfully observing the flux of the River, the situation of the Maritime coast, and that large horizon the place afforded, was infinitely delighted with the novelty, but especially with the prospect of the Ocean.

Now give me leave to pause a while, and consider why *Alexander* had the Ocean in such admiration. The Ocean was deservedly the subject of his wonder: for *Teza*, the place of his birth, being situate near the Thessalonic gulph which neighbours the Archipelago without doubt gave him not only the prospect of that but in the course of his conquest had the view of other Seas, as the *Mare de la Tana* now *Zabache*, the *Euxine*, the *Mediterranea*, and the *Mare Caspium*; all which may well be termed Seas, although much inferior to the *Mare magnum* or Main Sea, which is properly called the Ocean. The *Mediterranea* we find called *Mare magnum* the great Sea in *Exodus*, and in *Joh. 1. 4. Pons Euxinus* also has the name of *Mare maggiore*, and well deserves that attribute seeing it is well nigh three thousand miles in compass; so great, as warranted *Ovid* and other *Roman Poets* to denominate all other Seas by that, as *Omnia pontus, Nil nisi pontus, &c.* And for the *Caspian*, though by reason it is every where encompassed with Land it indeed rather resembles a great Lough or Pond than Sea, nevertheless from its greatness and other properties is worthily ranked *inter Dei magnalia*, and by Cosmographers in the Catalogue of other Seas: For *Pliny* terms it *magis*; and *Maginus, Vastum mare*, a large and vast Sea; albeit the circuit be usually taken for little above a thousand miles. And for the *mare Tauris*, or *Palus Moticis*, 'tis also great; seeing that from the middle part, Land can hardly be discerned. So that upon the whole, I may conclude the Sea is great; for it is *Congregatio multarum Aquarum & Oceano conjunctum*, a collection of many Waters, and joined unto the Ocean: but comparatively, the disproportion is great betwixt the Ocean and the Sea: for, if I may so resemble, such as Loughs are to the Sea, so may the Sea be compared with the Ocean, which is so great, that in *Gen. 1. 2.* 'tis styled *facies Abyssi*, for then it was an over-spreading Element, in extent and depth exceeding all other Seas: of which, four have most properly the attribute, viz. the *Atlantick*, the *Aethiopick*, the *Indian* and *South Ocean*. Albeit the *Hebrews* of old *immersum vim & congregacionem aquarum Oceanum vocant*: But as in Vers. 10. when the Waters were gathered together unto one place, that collection was then called *maria*. Also the circumfluent *Ocean Universum circum-ambiens Terram* on every side surrounds the Earth, giving life both to all Springs and receiving into its Womb all Rivers, renders it inexhaustible; from whence it is aptly termed *Fleviorum fontium; Pater*; by *Virgil*, *Patrem verum*; and by *Homer* and *Orpheus*, *Patrem Deorum, Hominum, & aliorum*, the Father of Gods and Men, and all other things; for that in the constitution of all sublunary bodies moisture is necessarily required. *Mela* also calls it *Immensum, Vastissimum, ac infinitum Pelagus*; and *Seneca* that *Nihil est infinitum nec imperfornabile nisi Oceanus*. Nothing is endless, or bottomless, save the Ocean.

Moreover, as it exceeds the Sea for magnitude, so doth it in depth; for the Sea in most places may be fathomed: yea, it is well known, that the deepnes of the Sea usually anwers to the height of Mountains, which seldom exceed three miles perpendicular; but in our narrow Seas is scarce found half so much. So that albeit the Earth, as most ponderous, be ordinarily aligned the lowest station; nevertheless *Solyma* authoritatively maintains, that the Ocean is deeper than the Earth: so profound, that in a vulgar acceptation, albeit erroneously, it is styled bottomles. For though in sounding the narrow Seas they seldom fail of ground, 'tis otherwise in the Ocean: and I very well remember, that in the great Ocean (in the mid-way betwixt the two great Continents of *Afria* and *America*) when we were for several dayes becalmed, the Captain of our Ship, to satisfy his curiositie, one time let fall his Lead which had all the Log-line he could possibly make or borrow, probably upwards of three thousand fathom, and having vicer'd it out to the very end could find no ground; so as he would have periwaded us it was abyss; albeit that tryal gave no such consequence.

I may observe this further difference: Albeit in our narrow Seas there is commonly a *fluxus & refluxus maris* an ebb and flood, the *Euxin* and the *Mediterranea* have but their flux in most places discernable: for the one streams through the *Thracian Bosphorus* and *Praeponis* into the *Archipelago*, but both through the freight of *Gibraltar* into the great *Atlantic Ocean*, sic dictus ob velocitatem & per interiora maria discurrens, from its bellowing near the *Moer* by Poets usually stiled *Tanricept*, and by Painters represented in that similitude:

litude: Nevertheless, the Ocean where far from Land and when undisturbed by wind is *placidus in loco*, in its own place still and pacifique; and yet it may not be deny'd, That for the preservation of its purity and the Life of its Inhabitants from corruption it has both motion and internal activation. So having spoken this little concerning the greatness of the Sea, forasmuch as Sea and Land make but one Sphere, give me leave to contemplate the Earth with like admiration *Alexander* did the Ocean.

That the Almighty created the first Chaos out of nothing is evident, *Gen. 1. 1.* and *Wisd. 11. 14.* which sufficiently convinces Aristotle's supposed *materia prima*, for out of that mass both the heavenly and other elementary Bodies were constituted and formed. By the *Fiat* of the Almighty the subtler-celestial Waters were separated from the super-celestial, so that the third day the Earth was visible, and appeared firm and distinguished from the Waters; yea, in such a beautiful and harmonious manner, that both Earth and Water had their bounds: so as the Water which at first over-spread the Earth was gathered into one place, limited, and not suffered to invade the Earth's proportion; *Occlusis Mare valv'*, He shut up the Seas with doors; *dicens, Huc usq; venies & non amplius,* hitherto shalt thou go and no further, *fletum tuorum superbia littus hic opponit,* here shall thy proud waves stay, *Job 38. 8.* And both not as *Ovid* fancies *ponderibus libratis suis* poiz'd or ballanced by their own weight; but by the direction of the Great Architect hung in the Air: *Terram uniq; Calo distantem, in equilibrio manere,* says *Parmenides*; or as *Job Chap. 26. vers. 7. Terram suspendit super nubilum,* the Earth he hung upon nothing; with which that of the Psalmist differs not, *Terram fundavit super Maria,* He founded the Earth upon the Waters; the Waters compassing the Earth and mixing with it in the most intricate places: whence probably it is *Thales Milesius* was of opinion that the Earth floated and was aptly resemable to a ship swimming in the Water.

Now whereas *Solymus* maintains That the Ocean is larger and deeper than the Earth as I lately mentioned with an experiment, we are to understand that the terrestrial Sphere is a globe or round body comprehended within the superficies of the Earth and Water; which though by some supposed to be equally dispos'd, may by the Ancients who comprised the Earth within an hundred and eighty degrees of longitude, had attributed scarce one half of the Sphere, that dimension is increased very much since Land has been discover'd within the Polar circles, and by the addition of that vast *Terra firma in America*. And albeit *Scaliger* in his 38 *Exercit.* is of opinion, That were it possible to level the Earth by spreading the lofty Mountains and making them even with the plain ground, the Water would be over-spread and have no place: Yet he acknowledges That the Earth and Sea by their various windings mutually imbrace each other; the one orderly and indifferently setting bounds unto the other. Which *Rec. Cof. lib. 4.* exceeds in averring that the Earth is ten thousand times greater than the Sea; an hypothesis very much differing from most Colmographers; and what authority he has I cannot apprehend, unless he take that for his guide We find in the 4. lib. *Ezdras chap. 6. vers. 47.* where it is said, *That the Waters were gathered (at the Creation as I suppose) into a seventh part, so that six parts of the Earth were kept dry.* Which for that it is apocryphal how far it may be *sive dignus* credited for truth, I leave to better judgments than my own, and in reverence to the Author forbear further to question.

But how disputable forever the disproportion be betwixt the Earth and Water as to magnitude, the profundity or depth is more satisfactorily demonstrated. For notwithstanding the Ocean be usually stiled bottomless, and in the deepest parts(which may be presumed where it is broadest) albeit there are rising grounds and Mountains in the Ocean where the plummet or lead may touch, yet in other places I believe it is not, or at least never hitherto has been fathomed. Howbeit the judgment of most is, the deepest exceeds not thirty miles; an uncertain conjecture, but commonly taken from that simile of answering to the height of *Teneriff* or other the highest Mountains: yea, granting that the depth were an hundred nay a thousand miles, yet will it not adequate the crafitude or thicknes of the Earth, whose diameter is acknowledged to be seven thousand and two hundred miles, allowing the circumference to be one and twenty thousand and six hundred: nay, it will fall short of the semi-diameter, seeing that from the center to the superficies of the Earth are reckon'd three thousand and six hundred miles; which as to depth clearly gives the Earth the superiority; and in comparison of which, depth in the narrow Seas is very inconsiderable; being evident, that the log-line in most ships when veered out, usually finds ground as I have sometimes observed, and find likewise reported by *Priscian* concerning *Julius Caesar*, who for his private satisfaction fathoming the Seas, found it not exceeding thirty *stadia* which make about three miles and a half *English*; although *Solymus* allows 54 fathades, which almost doubles the former.

Now in this parallel though I have noted a seeming difference in those two, they nevertheless agree in one center; for Earth and Water are concentrical, the center being an imaginary infensible small point fixed in the mid-part of the Earth, from whence height is to be measured rather than from the superficies of the towering Earth or Sphere of the swelling Water, though both are practised. But the more to admire this wonderful abrick, and thereby to glorify the Creator, such as the center is to the Sphere of the Earth, the great Terrestrial globe is no other when it is made the center of that vast infinite & visible circle of the celestial motions, comprehensive only by him who is infinite and incomprehensible: *Cujus centrum est ubique & c. circumferentia nusquam;* A circle whose center is every where, and no where his circumference. Howbeit, Man, the most exact and admirable piece of the Creation, is the *Microcosm* and *Compendium* of all God's Creatures, his rare structure with the faculties and abilities of the Soul considered, a miracle far surmounting not only the Earth and Ocean, but Heaven it self with the rest of the Creation: Which consideration induced St. Aug. to say, *Omni miraculo quod sit per Hominem, maius miraculum est ipse homo;* Man is a greater miracle than any miracle done by Man, lib. 10. Capit. Dec c. 12. The Kingly Prophet also in the 8. Ps. 6. and 139. Psal. and 14. verfe, says, *Man was fearfully and wonderfully made; Yea, the Lord hath given him dominion over the Works of his hands, and subjected all things under him.* Which abundantly obliges Man to praise the Lord.

These and the like rightly weighed, Alexander (albeit a scholar to Aristotle) was not amiss in that his admiration; who for his further recreation would needs adventure upon that Element he admired: and accordingly went aboard his Admiral then riding near Diu; and having a gentle gale quickly weighed anchor, hoist sail, and launched so far, That

*Nec jam ulli apparent Terræ,
Cælum undiq; & undiq; Pontus.*

*Lands now no longer do appear,
Heaven and Sea being every where.*

probably twenty leagues South-west into the Ocean: A great adventure for such a Person, and upon such an occasion; being merely to satisfy his curiosity: but the contrariety of the Element having its usual effect, it soon became unpleasant to him: but more when the Sky threatened a storm and the Wind in a loud and churlish tone seemed to proclaim, That albeit he had triumphed over the Land and (as the Poet said afterwards) *Pontus quoq; servet* that over the Seas Kings may assert a Jurisdiction, (yea, seeing *eadem Tellur non pars omnia*, that by their ships they associate the remote Nations and communicate to one another whatever Nature or Industry hath provided,) the Winds nevertheless are not under their subjection, but referred to his sole dispose, who, as he is Supreme, governs all; which having acknowledged, he willingly returned ashore, finding that merry ironick Proverb true, *Prope Aguas dulcissimæ est ambulatio, Navigatio juxta Terras, &c.*

The boundre of Alexander's march into India being in the tract obscure, I take leave also to offer my own apprehension in short concerning it. Historians some fix his *Nē plus* at the River *Indus*; others at the River *Ganges*: there is not any leads it further that I meet with. Now for his penetrating India as far as *Ganges*, if he went so far (as no doubt he did in his desire,) oft-times saying, That *Caucasus* and the *Æmodian Mountains* (named so from *Æmodad* Son of *Jocætan*) should be the limits of his Dominion; having likewise sundry times expressed his emulation of *Bacchus* and *Hercules* whose Pillars raised near *Gibraltar* and *Babylon*, he had heard were erected further upon the Eastern banks of *Ganges*; and for *Bacchus*, that he pierced both *intra* & *extra* as far as *China*; where he erected two Pillars upon the *Æmodian Mountains* as a Trophy in memory of his Eastern Conquests: Thus taken notice of by *Dionysius*,

*Hec & Thebani Dionysi terra columnas
Monstrat, ad Oceanum atq; extrema littera Ponti
Montibus Indorum, qua vasto gurgite Ganges
I. mare se volvit Nyssamq; impulit undam.*

*This Land, to which the furthest Ocean flows,
The Columns of the Theban Bacchus shows,
On th' Indian Mountains set, where Ganges sweeps
Nyssæan waves amidst the swallowing deeps.*

Which granted, I know not by what Authority a great Historian writes, *Prater Semiramis & Alexandrinum nemo Indianum intravit.* If *Ganges* was the boundre, then probably his march was soon after the Battel with *Poms*, and his nearest way as Men now travel was 'twixt *Labore* and *Agray* where the River *Jeminy* at *Praje* streams into *Ganges*: but if he past down *Indus* as *Arrian* puts us out of doubt, then his way was to *Cambaya* by *Amadavat*,

Amaderavat, which made it near a thousand miles e're he could attain the *estuarium*; which is not improbable, that thereby he might have a view of his Navy, which as most imagine failed little beyond *Swalley* road or *Choul*; near which place is a vast Cave cut by great labour out of a Rock, which after Ages held sacred: Under it is a Spring of fresh Water very deep. Some name this place *Alisam*, which as *Babyl* relates is beautified with many Statuas, and supposed the work of *Alexander*, who (as *Arrian* in his *Periplus* observes) made many great intrenchments, and erected sundry Temples, Altars, and other matters of admiration, meerly to preserve the memory of his Conquests in those remote parts for future Generations: albeit the direction *Alexander* gave his Admiral seems to inferr that some of the Fleet adventured as far as the Gulph of *Bengala*; for he commanded him to set a compais about and to leave *India* upon the right hand, which he could not do without doubling the Promontory called *Cape Comrhy*, as we read in *Plut. Vita Alexandri*. And by the relation which *Onescritus* gave may be thought that he discovered *Taprobane*. So that if the Fleet onely coasted as far as *Chaul*, or *Goa*, or *Cochin*, or *Callicut*, in returning they must consequently leave the *Indian* coast upon the right; but the directions he gave to compais about has a greater latitude, and seemingly a contrary signification. Besides, when *Nearchus* failed to the bottom of the *Persian* Gulph (leaving his Fleet near *Balsora*) he found *Alexander* disporting himself a little before his death upon the *Euphrates*, and amongst other strange things which he then related, mention is made of an Iland that had plenty of gold which probably was *Taprobane*: But this inequet being to discover the extent of *Alexander*'s march, I shall onely follow that.

Pliny writes that *Hypasis* *Indie fluvius Alex. fuit terminus*. Now to find that River is no les difficult. I suppose it is the same which *Philistinus via Apoll. Thian.* mentions in that memorable expedition *Bacchus* and *Hercules* made into those Oriental Countreys when they were oppoled by the *Oxidracans*, people inhabiting between the Rivers *Hypasis* (the same no doubt with *Hypasis*, though it want the aspiration) and *Ganges*, being by (artificial) thunder and lightning forced to retreat. This most understand to be Ordinance, which the Eastern world pretend to have had the knowledge of many hundred years before *Swart* the *German Franciscan* Fryar in his Chymick Experiments invented about the Year 1330. *Hypasis* in my opinion is no other than *Hydaspis* now called *Hyrcos*, and *Bodaphi* the same which *Srabo* calls *Hypanis*, *Ultra quam Alex. progredi non au-
sum est*, beyond which *Alexander* marched not: but *Protomy* in his 10 *Tab. Asia* calls it *Bi-
basis*, and from *Imaus* makes it flow into *Indus* sub 35 degr. And the ignorance we are in concerning the *Oxidracans* Countrey makes the quest still more dark; for that they were of *India* is evident: Albeit some there be that place them amongst the *Oxiani* in *Meryana*, the *Oxiatri* in *Scythia*, and the *Oxidraca* whom *Protomy* finds inhabiting near the *Sogdian* Mountains in the latitude of 46 degr. Therefore seeing in the Life of *Alexander*, that fighting against the *Oxidracans*, from the Parapet *Alexander* gave a thundring leap (as *Plutarch* calls it) into the Town, and amongst the thickest of the Enemy exposed his single Person for a little time; and notwithstanding the admiration the *Bar-
barians* were in of his attempt had perished, had not his Men (fearless in that exigent of the greatest danger) to refcuse their General taken it by storm: though the Name differ, the story does not from that already mentioned against the *Mallians*. Now that the *Mallians* or *Mali* are those we now call *Malua* (not much varying in the Name) 'twixt *Indus* and *Goujurat*, is apparent: which granted, then it will follow that *Alexander* was not so far East as *Ganges*; albeit *Craterus* his Favourite and of great Command in the Army, in a Letter which he writ unto his Mother *Arisipatra* then in *Grecia* concerning their march, reports that *Alexander* was advanced into *India* as far as *Ganges*: with which *Lucan* seems to agree; for having spoken of *Ganges* in lib. 3, he subjoyns,

*Here Alexander stopp'd, being taught to find,
The World was larger than his boundles^s mind.*

*Hic, ubi Pellaeus post Tytheos æqua Duci
Constituit, & magno vinci se tassis ab orbe e*

And in the 10. lib. by like Poetical authority speaking of *Alexander*,

*'Mongst those strange floods that bloody did appear,
The Perlian Phrat, and Indian Ganges were.* ————— *ignotus miscuit amnes*
Perfumari Euphraten, Indorum sanguine Gange

Notwithstanding which, observing the course of History, it appears, how that after his fight with *Porus* he past down *Indus*, where he staid two Months to refresh his Men, and withal to observe the Ocean: But it is writ that in the other five he subdued the *Brach-
mans*

mans Countrey; now *Barma* is *extra Ganges*. I answer, 'Tis true at this day that place is so named; but of old so was all that about *Calicut* and *Narsinga*, where the customs of the old *Indians* are as yet retained; yea, in *Alexander's* time the Countrey about *Cambaya*, *Diu*, *Brampore*, and all the *Indian* coast from *Indus* to Cape *Combyn* were *Brahmanas* or *Gentiles*. So that *Alexander* in subiecting the Countrey about *Choul* and *Bacob* may properly be said to subjugate the *Brahmans* Countrey. Besides, upon the difciont the Army exprefled when given out that *Alexander* intended for *Ganges*, we find that returning he was quickly in *Gedrosia* which *Indus* wafhes. Sir *Walter Raleigh* do observes, That the *Indian* Kings he had subdued informing him that *Agramanes* was a most puillant Prince and commanded many Narions beyond *Ganges*, *Alexander* was informed more than ever to undertake the conquest of that great King; but for all the art he could use was not able to perfwade his Army to march further East or to adventure over thofe vafle-deferts twixt *Indus* and *Ganges*: onely prevailing with his Men to follow him Southward, the River *Indus* guiding them to the Ocean: and thence by *Gedrosia* returnd towards *Persia* in the way to *Babylon*. So that upon the whole, to me it is most likely, his furthef progres was not much beyond the River *Indus*: the *melius inquirendum* I leave to others, and return to *Alexander*.

Alexander having given his Admiral instructions to surround not onely *Arabia* but *Afrik*, it seems that rodomontade was more to exprefs the greatnes of his mind than to expect the possibility of so great an adventure; and by the course *Nearchus* steered which was up the *Persian Gulph* appears no leſs: For *Alexander* in the mean time continuing his march came before a City which *Ambiger* had mann'd against him; and after an affault took without quarter to the defendants, for (to the great terror of the *Greeks*) they had their weapons envenomed ſo as ſuch as were wounded hardly escaped, and amoung others *Ptolomy* (after *Alexander's* death King of *Egypt*) miraculoſly cured by vertue of an herb *Alexander* dreamed he ſaw in the mouth of a Serpent. There he laid the foundation of *Bacca*, the laſt of ſeventy he built in that his nine years Government: there alio he paid his vows, and ſupplicated his gods that no mortal Man might exceed the bounds of his conqueſt: alſo as an everlasting monument of his fame, and to amufe ſucceeding Generations, or rather to shew he was a *Greek* of whom 'tis ſaid, *Ex misera ſore faciunt Elephants*, he cauſed Armour, Bits and Mangers to be made of an extraordinary ſize and height; by this artifice of repreſenting things greater than indeed they were albeit of admiration to ſimple ſpectators in after Ages, to the ingenious nevertheless they gave juſt caufe to have the truth and reality of his great atchievements ſuſpected; a fit requital for ſuch a delusion. He alſo erected twelve great Altars as high as Towers, which he dedicated unto *Hercules*, ſuch as not onely attracted thoſe in after Ages to admire but to adore; and amoung others the *Persian* Kings, who for ſome Generations there preſented their accuſomed Oblations: which had they been upon the banks of *Ganges* would haue been too far a progres, *Indus* being the terminus of their following Empire. So that *postquam parva manu immunitabiles exercitus fudisset aq; ultima Oras quas vire supra ſum humanam peragat*, &c. After he had (faith the Historian) with a few Men overcome innumerable Armies and travelled to the utmoſt parts of the Earth, to behold which was beyond the hopes of Man, and extended his Dominions from *India* to *Ethiopia* and *Libya*, from *Danubius* to the *Indian Ocean*, and from the *Ionic Sea* to *Tar-w*, which ſoon after was ſub-diuided into thirty great Kingdoms, again with a ſigh bidding farewel to *India* and the Ocean he advanced into the Countrey of the *Oryes* where the penury he firſt encountered was compenſated with that plenty he ſoon after found in *Gedrosia*: whence alſo marching along the coaſt, near the City *Arbis* under the Tropic of *Cancer* he met his recruits, not a little to the rejoicing his well-nigh ſpent Army. But again forgetting the faid evene of his former luxuriance he fell afreh to the trānck ſolemnization of the Feaſt of *Bacchus*; ſoon after at *Thapaces* viewed his new Fleet, and took ſome recreation again at ſea; but that Tradition of coaſting about the South of *Arabia*, and landing at *Sechora*, is of little credit.

After which he removed his Camp to a conuenient place for pitching his rich and glorious Tent wherin he intended to give Audience to an hundred Amballadours who with noble Preſents were come from the remoſte parts of *India* on this and the other ſide *Ganges* to congratulaſe his Victories and to crave his Alliance; by the Earth and Water ſome of them brought, implying (at leaſt as *Alexander* ſancied) a total ſubjeſtion. These strangers he entertained, and after Audience ſtaffed moſt magnificently upon an hundred Beds of burniſhed gold; at which time he alio preſented each of them with Plate ſuitable to his greatness, their aſtoniſhment. Which done, he marched through *Carmania* to *Lur*, and thence to *Persigard* (now *Halqatra*) where *Orſines*, a Prince of the Blood royal

royal of *Perse*, was lamentably destroyed by *Alexander's* inconsiderate crediting *Bagoz*, an Eunuch that mortally hated him: The accusation was, That he had violated *Cyrus* his Tomb, in which was no wealth, as was informed, but a Sword and Bow. Howbeit, upon further examination the fraud being discovered the Eunuch had the like reward, and his rich House and furniture were given *Perdicas*, estimated at six hundred thousand Crowns. There *Calanus the Brachman*, in contempt of death, and to shew that life is but somnium us'bra brevissimum built his funeral pile, predicted *Alexander's* death in *Babylon*; and taking a solemu farewell of his acquaintance in the Camp, according to the Indian mode, burnt himself to ashes.

Alexander after that returned to *Sushan*, and married *Statira* the Persian Princess, whose Sister he then gave to his dear *Ephesian*; and other Persian Ladies to as many great Officers of his Army. For the greater magnificence of which marriages he prepared a most ample and royal Feast for nine thousand Guests, to each of which he gave a Cup of Gold to use in their Sacrifices; and as a more abundant testimony of his love to the Army, as well as to express his own greatness, he discharged out of his own Treasury the debt his *Macedonian* Souldiers had contracted, which amounted to nine thousand and seventy Talents, being in ours five hundred Millions and seven hundred thousand Crowns: easie for *Alexander* to spare at his death, (which soon after happened) having found coffered up at *Babylon* an hundred thousand Talents, as *Justin* reports, in ready coin, which some others double; and his Revenue at that time being three hundred thousand Talents per annum. Nevertheless, having some apprehensions of fear in going to *Babylon*, (for sundry Prophecies were rumoured that he should dye there) he turned with his Army towards the North, and came to *Ecbatan*; where his Favourite *Ephesian*, notwithstanding his Physicians utmost care, dyed of Feaver; whose death *Alexander* so passionately bewailed, as *Justin* taxes him that contra decus Regum diu luxit. But for the greater solemnity, for seven days a general howling (in which the *Prefice* exprelle their Art sufficiently) was made; all the Horses in the Army also were shorn, the battlements and walls of Houses thrown down, Instruments of Musick put under silence, as not the least noise appeared: yea, to complement the Conquerour, the sacred Fires in each Pyre were by the *Surene* extinguished: a Monument lastly was erected, upon which was expended twelve thousand Talents, which is seven millions of Crowns: and having offered up his afflicted Doctor as a Sacrifice (for which *Alexander* is worthily reproved) the Altars were made to smoak with Incense and the dead Corps worshipped as a Deity, the highest Honour he could ascende unto.

Now whilst these Obsequies were in hand, *Alexander* had notice that Ambassadours attended him at *Babylon*, not only from *Carthage* and other African parts, but also from several Kings and States in *Europe*; namely, *Spain*, *Sicily*, *France*, *Sardinia*, and most parts of *Italy*, *Rome* excepted; which though but growing to what it aspired of *Caput Mundi*, yet being four hundred years old from the foundation laid by *Romulus*, was then so great that, as *Plutarch* reports, it could set out an hundred and thirty thousand warlike Citizens. These came to congratulate his success in the East, to divert his journey West, and to crave his Alliance: yea, *Adeo Universum Terrarum Orbem Nominis ejus terror invaserat, ut omnes Gentes veluti definato sibi Regi adularentur*, being become so terrible to the World, as all Nations courted and seemed to acknowledge him their Sovereign. Then was accomplished that Prodigy of those two Eagles observed to sit upon the highest Pinacle of the Court of *Pella* that whole day on which *Alexander* was born, *Duplicis Imperii Europe & Asia omen preferentes: and as others, Universum Terrarum Imperium Infanti portendebant*, portending the Infants conquest of the Universe.

The access of those extraordinary Ambassadours from the furthest occidental parts, (I may so say, seeing the *Morini in Picardy* are by *Lucan* called *Extremi Hominum*) these, or rather his inevitable fate accelerated *Alexander's* remove to *Babylon*; which being near, the *Caldean* Magicians interposed and prevailed with him to turn aside for some time to *Birs* beyond *Euphrates*; whence, by *Anaxarchus* the Philosopher, who derided their Arts, he was induced to return to *Babylon*, though not without some bad Omens at his entrance, which nevertheless was as splendid and great as Art and cost could invent. After Audience given, Summons issued for the holding a Parliament of no less than the whole World; and entertainments as sumptuous as luxury in the highest degree could set forth, took place: during which, this great Conquerour having delivered to *Perdicas Darii*'s Ring, with which he sealed all his Commissions and Dispatches, he dyed: *Qui (as Justin) cum nullo hostium unquam congressus est, quem non vicerit; nullam Urbem, quam non expugnaverit; nullam gentem adiit, quam non calcaverit; Deniq; fore Etatis sue ac Victoriarum, non virute hostili sed fraude & snorum insidiis erexit est.* His death was not without suspicion of

Poison given him by *Cassandra* his Cup-bearer, and the treasonable directions of his Father *Anтипатр*, who with the Son afterwards prosecuted their cruelty even to the utter extirpation of all *Alexander's* royal progeny. Such was the *Exit* of this great Prince, in the three and thirtieth year of his Age, and twelfth of his Reign; whom living, one World would not suffice; *nec Orients nec Occidentis satieverit*, saith *Tacitus*, being dead, *Sarcophago contentus erat*, a Grave contained: and in this Mirrour behold the narrow bounds of earthly glory.

— Naturam solum

Hunc poruit finem vesano ponere Regi:
Qui secum invidia qua totum cuperat Orbum
Aboluti Imperium: nullusq; herede reliquo
Totius Fati lacerandas praebuit Urbes,
sed ecclit Babylone sua — *Lxxvi. 1. 10. Phars.*

— That check alone

Nature gave this King's wild Ambition.
Who to his Grave the World's sole Empire bore
With the same Envy it was got before.
And wanting Heirs, left all he did obtain
To be divided by the Sword again.

For so soon as his body was conveyed by *Ptolemy Soter* to *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, where with all due solemnity it was interred, (the Corps being so well embalmed that the two first *Cæsars* at their being there two hundred and fifty years after his death opening his Tomb found him perfect to view and incorrupt,) the disposition of his Empire to the Worthiest seemed to revive the bones of *Pyrrhus* afresh: For ambition and self-opinion so inflamed those great and emulous Captains, by that word each supposing himself pointed at and principally concerned, that *Virtus mibi Numen & Ensif quem geru* was as may be thought each Man's Motto: so as albeit the Crown was by suffrage of the Army given to *Ariædes* natural Brother to *Alexander* and *Perdicas* assigned his Governour, (both which were soon after slain, the first by *Olympia*, the last by *Ptolemy*) the Empire nevertheless was piece-meal rent asunder; and albeit sufficient to satiate their ambition, by the Sword all was nevertheless in short time reduced under four, of which *Selucus* was one that grazed the Syrian Scepter and made *Persia* a subordinate Province of his new Empire. Thirty years was *Persia* held under that subjection, notwithstanding the discontent of the *Persian* Nobility; until *Theodatus* Governour of *Bætria* which then was intituled *opulentissimum milie Urbium imperium* a Kingdom having a thousand Cities, by the advantage he had through distance from *Syria* and the engagement that Crown was in against the lesser *Asia*, he revolted and took upon him the Supreme Title: by whose example the rest of the Orient threw off the *Macedonian* Yoke and elected to themselves Kings being Natives of their own Country.

Amongst whom, *Arsaces*, one of an obscure birth as his name partly implies, *Ar-Sacæ* or *Sacæ* or rather *Art-Sacæ* i. e. noble *Scythian*, sufficiently famous for his active life though ill employed (for with a crew of profligate associates he commanded the hills and extorted Tribute from Caravans and Passengers,) observing what *Theodatus* had done, and being well instructed with the discontents *Persia* was in, but principally moved with ambition, suddenly enters those Countreys in hostile manner, defeats *Andragoras* the Lieutenant of that Province, over-runs *Hyrcania*, and upon *Theodatus* his death enters into confederacy with the young King; so as by that supply he lent he dared to affront *Selucus*, surnamed *Callimachus* in the field, and having after a sore fight obtained a clear Victory utterly abolished the Syrian Government in those parts; and thereupon arrogated to himself the name of Conquerour, yea in memory of that Victory commanded that day to be annually observed with solemnity. By this acquisition which was *Anno Mundi* 3718. he invited the *Scythians* to share in his good fortune, and by that elevation the Countrey was new-named *Parthia* which signifies Exiles in the Scythic tongue; *Parthi* scire *Exules Scytharum, nam Scythicæ sermoni Parthi Exules dicuntur*, *Just. lib. 41.* people, who during the Monarchy of the *Assyrians* and *Medes* were the least known as the *Turks* after them throughout the Orient: but by this change the *Persians* were nevertheless kept under subjection.

Arsaces enlarged the bounds of his Dominion well-nigh from *Euphrates* to *Indus*; living so highly honoured by his subjects, that *Cyrus* was not in greater esteem with the *Persians*, *Ptolemy* with the *Egyptians*, nor *Romulus* with the *Romans*, than this *Arsaces* with the *Parthians*. *Arsaces* was he that built *Dara* since called *Aphadara*, after that Spawne. The ninth from him called *Herodes* had the honour to give the Roman General *Craesus* a memorable defeat at *Carra*; and *Phraortes* his successor forced *Marcus Antonius* (with loss sufficient) to retreat over *Araxis* into *Syria*; albeit *Ventidius* his Lieutenant two years after redeemed his credit, *pacorn* the Prince being slain and the Countrey reduced had not *Anthony* envying his glory re-called him. Nevertheless, of such terror was the Roman

man name by that defeat, that then and not till then they acknowledged subordination to *Cesar Augustus*, who having deposed the parricide elected another *Praeator* in his room. At this time was echoed *Pacem te postimus Omnes*, the Prince of Peace our Saviour Christ then taking flesh of the Virgin *Mary*, and for some time dwelling amongst the Sons of sinful men.

To *Praeator* succeeded *Orodes* whom some call *Dorideus*; him, *Vonones*; to whom, *Tiridates* the last of the *Arsacidae*, slain by *Arabianus* whom the *Perians* call *Ard-Bahamen*, twelve of whose blood successively swayed the Parthian Scepter after each other, until the last bearing the same name with the first was treacherously slain by *Caracalla*: the Roman Emperor that was *Septimius Severus* his Son; who to the ignominy of the Roman Majesty, after he had perfidiously slain most of the Alexandrian Youth, also under pretence of marriage with a Daughter of the Parthian King *contra fidem datum* massacred the King and such of the *Parthian* Nobility as attended him for the confirmation of the Wedding Union: which breach of faith so highly incensed the *Parthians* that they maintained a gallant and desperate fight against the *Romans*; nor could be reconciled till they understood how that *Marcinus* the General had revenged their quarrel upon *Caracalla's* person: Nevertheless, they were so out of heart by those several losses, that *Araxerxes* an active and valiant *Persian* observing the opportunity to recover their freedom, (to all Dominions the Almighty having set a period) in order thereto, this *Persian* suddenly headed a considerable party by whose courage abundantly expressed by three days fight; he broke their Yoak aunder and once more restored freedom to the *Persian*, Anno Dom. 230. after near six hundred years subjection under the *Greeks* and *Parthians*.

Macrinus enjoying the Purple Robe but one year was succeeded by that monster *Heliogabalus*, who after three years more gave place to *Alexander Severus* that was buried at *York*. *Araxerxes* (whom the *Perians* call *Ard yr Baba chan*, i. e. Father and Lord in War) was no sooner invested in the *Persian Throne*, but taking a retrospect of the ancient greatness of that Empire upon much of which the *Romans* had encroached, by his Ambassador he demanded restitution: to answere which, *Severus* with a considerable Army advances towards *Perse*: and having divided his body into three, the part he led himself was so weakned by that distribution, that the *Persian* by continual alarms having broken that which marched into *Media* the second was put into a pannick fear, so as the Emperor *re infelix* retreated. And though little blood was spilt, yet helped it to heighten then the *Persian* spirit and reputation, so as *Valrianus* about five and twenty years after (during which, seven Emperours interven'd) marched thitherward in hopes (hearing that *Araxerxes* was dead) he should succeed better than his predecessor *Severus* had done; but fell out much worse: For *Sapores* the *Persian* King beat the Roman Army and took *Vulcian* surnamed *Colobus* prisoner, whom to his dying day he made his Footstool; a greater contempt having never formerly been expressed to the Roman Chief. But this judgment some impute to his severity against the Christians whom he cruelly persecuted, and for his inhumane broiling that blessed Martyr S. *Laurence* to death, which *Eusebius* in his Ecclesiastical story at large mentions.

Gallienus succeeded *Valorian*: but so bad was the others entertainment, that albeit *Sapores* survived four other of the Roman Emperours he had no further molestation from any of them, which gave him the more leasure to exercise his tyranny at home: but A. Dom. 273. Death giving him a Superseedes he bad the world an unwilling farewell, after twenty years rule; during which, he had exceedingly disturbed the World, having with his Army wasted *Syria*, *Cilicia*, *Mesopotamia*, *Cappadocia*; and returning, amongst his Trophies had inter-mixed many curies for his cruelties: which too had been required, had not the Roman General been treacherously made away by *Philip* an *Arabian* renegado during his siege afore *Ctesiphon* once the Seat-Royal of the *Arsacidae*. Howbeit *Trebellius in Gallicano* affirms that *Sapores* was slain by *Odenatus* the Palmyrian King, Divine Justice so directing, in the self-same place where *Gordianus* was murdered.

Hormizda reigned after *Sapores*: the *Perians* call him *Kirmar-Shan*, who ruled thirteen months; and after him *Vararanes* three years. *Narses* (*Tessal-gird* say the *Perians*) followed him, who after sixteen years left the Crown to his Son *Vararanes* 2. surnamed *Sogaman*: the *Perians* call him *Bajaran*; He after a few months gave *Narses* (albeit an alien) leave to succeed. This *Narses* with all possible rage prosecuted the War against the *Armenians* and *Mesopotamians*; in whose aid *Galerius* the Roman General fought with bad success at first; yet trying the second bout, was Victor; which so disaninated *Narses*, that in the height of despair and impatience he burnt himself, after eight years Government. *Mizdaces* reigned seven years after him: after whom came *Shapores* or King *Porus*; by *Teixira* called *Shabur*; by *Scicardus Xabul Xabulkeraph* (in Spanish the

*X is founded as our Sh.) D'bulk Aktef by others : to the Romans a restless adversary ; to the Persians tyrannical ; and to the Christians most malicious. This is he that was acknowledged Sovereign before he was born, the Crown being at adventure set upon his Mothers Belly before he was delivered. Julian the Apostate raged not more against the Christians in the lesser Asia than Sapor did at the same time against them in the great ; the Jews aggravating the King by persuading him that the Christians were unanswerable in their loyalty to the Romans : so as in ten years, viz. from the year 337. to 347. he massacred above thirty thousand Christians as *Metaphrastus* reports ; it being the practice of those primitive Christians in all the time of their persecution, to oppose the Sword of those under whose jurisdiction they lived with Evangelical fortitude and vanquishing patience : the Churches Arms then being no other than *Precies & L. cryme* Prayers and Tears, and of sufficient advantage against the Enemy, reaching no less way than into Heaven : yea graciously submitting their cause to the good pleasure of God, albeit in his dispensation and as a Symptom of his displeasure his strokes are as to humane apprehension towards all sorts of men undistinguishable, as with an equal hand afflicting the innocent with the nocent ; but with several operations. And albeit this Apostate Julian, Sapor and other Tyrants by the horrid Malaeres they made, thought to have destroyed the very memory of Christ, and to obliterate every remembrance of holy writ, they found that the Martyrs Blood was verily the Seed of the Church ; according to that old Verie, *Sanguine fundata est Ecclesia, Sanguine crevit, &c.* In those dayes the Oriental parts for the greater part embraced Christ ; in Sozomen you have the particulars.*

Julian not only out of cruelty to Christs flock, but in ambition invading his Territories, under the Walls of *Ctesiphon* was mortally wounded by an invincible hand ; a judgment of that affliction and conviction, that with horrour of mind throwing his blood into the air he expired with this despairing exclamation, *Tandem uicti Galilee !* and Jovian who then commanded the field with the joyful acclamation of *Omnis sumus Christiani*, was saluted Emperour in his place : for *illis vero temporibus res fuit ingeniosa esse Christianum*, in those times it was an ingenious thing to be a Christian, saith a good Author. Whose attempts proving of little force against the Persians, in his return towards Constantinople to the unexpressible sorrow of the Army he was arrested by grim death, after he had been but eight months Emperour,

About this time Sapor also being at *Mopsirive* a Town under Mount *Taurus* sighted out his affrighted Ghost at the age and reign of seventy one, *Anno Mundi* 4350. *Anno Domini* 380. leaving *Artaxerxes* his Brother to rule after him ; who in the eleventh year of his Reign gave this world a farewell. Sapor after five years followed him in that inevitable path ; *Varanes* surnamed *Cermizas* him after ten, *Tzardgird* a constant Friend unto the Romans succeeding him ; who (as *Socrates Scholast.* reports) was converted by *Marullus* Bishop of *Meopotamia*, sent into *Perse* to that end by Pope *Innocent* and *Theodosius* the Emperour, by whose persuasion he destroyed the Pyre or Idol-Temple, and extinguished that Fire which for many preceding generations had by those Gentiles been heathenishly worshipped. The Persian stories give out that he apostatized ; who can tell the truth ? However, this is certain, that in the twentieth year of his Reign *Anno Dom. 426* he died ; and *Varanes* 4. (or *Bathar* as the Persians term him) inherited his royalties.

By some this Prince is taxed for perfidie and cruelty, especially against the Christians : in whose defence *Theodosius junior* sends *Ariaburus* with a gallant Army. *Varanes* diffiding in his own, requests aid from *Alamandurus* an Arabian Saracen : whole Armies when they met were so numerous that they covered the Earth for many miles. At *Babylon* was their rendezvous : but ere the battel began such a pannique fear struck the Pagans that they fled amazedly ; by Land some perished, but more by Water, for *Euphrates* without pity ingulph an hundred thousand of those miscreants ; and by that loss the Persian King was heart-broken seeing a hand of Divine vengeance out-stretched against him ; so that he made his *Exit* after he had tyrannized twenty years, and another *Varan* the fifth of that name succeeded in his stead. This Prince made truce with *Marianus* the Emperour, and died in the seventeenth year of his Reign.

Perozes succeeded him, called *Pherus* by the Persians, a Prince more rash than valiant : in the twentieth year of his Reigne the Wars of *Seythia* made an end of him. *Valens* (or *Belax* and *Yalar* as some say) was then chosen King ; he ruled four years. After him *Ca-bades*, (called also *Chobad* and *Canades*) dethroned by *Lambates* in the eleventh year of his greatness : which *Lambates* (or *Bleses*) was also deposed by the Nobles of *Perse* in the fourth year of his Reign for that he had published a brutish Edict That women should be used in common, and *Canades* was re-established in the Throne again ; but at last through his too much

much lenity and indulgence to his Brother was unexpectedly made blind, and the Tyrant restored again.

At this time great Wars were commenced 'twixt the *Romans* and *Persians*. *Cabades* the *Persian* storming extremely that by their means his potent neighbour and Ally *Zatus* (Son to *Gurgenus* King of the *Lazars*, a part of *Colches*) had received Baptism at *Constantinople*, the Emperor *Justinian* as Godfather witnessing for *Zatus* at the Font, and most of the Nobility of *Asia* honouring the solemnity: So that after this *Persian* Tyrant had gorged himself with the slaughter of many thousands of the *Lazars* and *Armenians*, Death summoned him to an unwilling account after thirty years Reign; and *Cozroes* his Son (they call him *Chesir-buzzak* or great, *Ani-syron Teixeru*, and *Nusir-avan* the *Arabs*) was with accustomed solemnity crowned King. About this time the Roman Monarchy in the West took end.

Of all the Tyrants that ever were in *Persia* this *Cozroes* was the most wicked: for first, albeit he had concluded a Peace for an hundred and ten years with *Justinian* the *Roman* Emperour, he quickly broke it, and to the utmost exasperated him. 'Twould be endless to speak his relentless motion, his barbarism, his hypocrisy: take a few for many. In mere malice he first put to death his innocent Brother *Balax*, and then *Alpebides* his aged Uncle; which the People murmured at: but to provoke them the more he commands them to follow him into *Syria*, where he engaged them in a desperate War against the *Palmyrians*, by whom, under *Zenobia*'s conduct they were soundly beaten: In revenge whereof he plundered *Barbosa*, *Antioch*, *Seleucia*, *Apamea*, and other parts thereabouts. In *Phoenicia* also he acts more mischief: there he violently forced *Euphemia* a Christian Lady, and of her begot *Hormida* who succeeded him. He also compelled the chaste Nymphs of *Daphne* to offer incense to him as a Deity, which they did, but with this excuse fearing he would have ravished them. He then consumed the stately Temple dedicated to Saint *Michael* the Archangel, accounting it no sacrilege to rob Churches. After this he besieged *Sergiopolis*; but being forced thence with dishonor he attempts the spoil of *Jerusalem*: yet hearing that *Bellarius* (in his time the most rich, and after the poorest of men) was approaching, to avoid that storm he renews his League with the *Romans*; never purposing to keep it; for next year with a great force of Horse he forraiges *Armenia*, and then *Phoenicia*, where he killed *Narces*, *Anno Domini* 556. In requital whereof *Justin* the Roman Emperour enters *Mengrelia*, and by the death of *Nachorges* the *Persian* General obtained a Victory. Nevertheless, restless *Cozroes* next year assaults *Edessa*, but fruitlessly; for at *Sagaribon* the Christians vanquished him. *Anno Domini* 547. he commands *Artabanes* (or *Adaarmanes*) with a very great Army to invade the lesser *Asia*: which accordingly they did; spoiling *Syria*, and unpeopling *Ani*: into *Iberia* also and *Armenia* they entered with no leis voracity; but by the *Armenians* were forced to a shameful retreat.

At this time the *Armenians* received the Christian Faith; the *Romans* about the same time received complaints from the Christians of *Cozroes* cruelty. *Justin* the Emperour sends *Tiberius* (elected *Cesar*) to relieve them: His Army was great, and consisted of many several Nations, as *French*, *Italians*, *Peonians*, *Ilyrians*, *Mysians*, *Laurians*, &c. Towards *Armenia* he marched to meet with *Cozroes*; who upon notice took the Field with a numerous Army beside *Persians*, having a supply out of *Battria*, *India*, *Arabia*, &c. *Casarea* (the Cappadocian Metropolis) was soon mastered by *Tiberius*, who after a long march came in view of the Enemy. The two Armies with equal courage hastned to face each other; and being met, the signal was given, and the Armies quickly engaged. *Cozroes* wanted neither skill, nor personal resolution; nevertheless, perceiving that the number of the *Roman* Army was great and orderly imbatteled, and having a sting in his Conscience that set before him his many cruelties, especially against the innocent Christians; he could not but vent many sighs, and apprehend his danger, so soon as he perceived *Curse*, a *Seyrian* Commander, (who at that time led the right Wing of the *Roman* Horse) with good order first charge and soon after rout the Enemies left, and after that the main Body; which after some resistance they broke, leaving many *Persians* dead upon the place.

The chafe was pursued for many miles, in which more fell than in the Field. This proved a Victory of extraordinary advantage to the *Romans*, and deliverance to the Christians, who in this Battel did good service. *Cozroes* himself escaped narrowly, passing the *Euphrates* upon an Elephant: with a sad heart he relents this loss, which he feared would draw along with it other prejudices: but what most aggravated his trouble of spirit, was the loss of his Fire-God which fell into the Enemies hands who made themselves sport with it; for recovery whereof he made some attempts, but in vain: so that finding

finding himself scorned by his Adversaries, disaffected by his Subjects, and forsaken, as he thought, of his God, his heart broke, and his body was buried at *Cesipion* a City in *Safiana* not far from the Altars of *Herculis*, after he had reigned forty eight years: leaving this report behind him, That to the Christians he was cruel; to the *Greci* perfidious; and to the *Persians* tyranical.

In his place his Son *Hormisda*, named from *Hor*, i.e. *Ignis* Fire (*Ormous* by the *Persians*) was crowned King, Anno Dom. 580. of the World 4550. His eight years rule was troublesome; for in his third year *Mauritius* (Son in Law, and Lieutenant, to *Tiberius*, and also Emperour afterwards) entered *Perisia* with an Army, foraged where he pleased, and perpetrated all manner of Hostility: albeit to prevent it *Tana-Corhoe* the *Perisan*, *Adaarmen* the *Mede*, *Alamandure* the *Scanic*, and *Theodoric* the *Seyrian*, did what they could to oppose the to-rent. Anno Dom. 589. *Philippicus*, with some *Roman* Legions, having passed *Amida* entered *Perisia*, especially to comfort the poor Christians in those parts, who were threatened by the Magicians to be slain that year; if not by Massacre, yet by Miracle. *Cardarige* the *Perisan* General fancies to himself that they were brought thither by some uncontrollable destiny to be destroyed; but the event proved contrary to the Magi's predictions, instead of the Christians above thirty thousand *Perisans* being in sight slain by the valour and diligence of the three great Captains *Philippicus*, *Heraclius* (Father to the succeeding Emperour) and *Vitilian*.

Baranes, a noble *Bastrian*, by hap escaped from the *Romans*, but not a second disadventure: for *Hormisda* grew so distract, by reason of this late overthrow, as in scorn he forces *Baranes* to put on Womens apparel; and with a Distaff in his hand disport the insulting Multitude: which year cost him dear; for *Baranes* returning into such parts as affected him, and prevailing with *Ferra-chai* and *Byndis* a *Perisan* Noble-man of account whom the King had also disengaged, by this confederacy they speedily raise so great a force and pass to *Shiraz* so privately, that ere many knew of their approach, they enter the City and seize upon the King; yea, that same day they deposed him they crown his Son *Chosroes* in his place, into whom the soul of his cruel Grandire seemed to be transmigrated. The barbarous Traytors not content herewith, execute their wrath upon the innocent Queen and her innocent Children, whom most cruelly they sawed asunder: at which, *Hormisda* expresses all the symptoms of a distracted man; his Son being not able to comfort him, because his beloved Wife was irrecoverable. *Cozroes* fearing his passion might make him unacceptable for his usurpation, commands some Villains to assassinate the wretched King; whom the People had in that high esteem as they deified him, (*Orosimedes fuit Deus Perisarum* faith *Plutarch*:) an act so infernal that all *Perisia* abominated him as an unnatural parricide. This makes him an absolute Tyrant: but *Baranes* that had mounted him, with the same hand thought to pull him down, howbeit the King having notice of his intent, gives order to raise some force for his security; but into such hate was this *Cozroes* grown, that none would appear upon the service; whereby to save his Life he flies with *Cesarea* his Wife to *Byzantium*, his Parents dreadful Ghost every where haunting him: By the Christian Emperour *Mauritius* and his Empress he is with his Queen and little ones courteously received. After he had repos'd a while in *Thrace* and pretended a desire to become a *Christian*, he prevailed with the Emperour to assist him with an Army commanded by *Narses* and *Commentius* to re-invest him in his Empire; the Emperours Kinsman *Domitian* Bishop of *Malta* and *Gregory* the Patriarch of *Anioch* bear *Cozroes* company, the better to instruct and confirm him to the *Christian* Faith.

Into *Hieropolis* and *Martyropolis* they entred without resistance: at *Dara* the rebel *Baranes* affronted them with an Army of *Scyibick*-*Perisans*; but such was the courage of the Christians that *Baranes* was vanquished, *Cozroes* returns the Emperour his thanks with tears of joy: and knowing nothing would better please them than his conformity to Religion, he first presented them with a rich Crosf of great value in gems and gold; and then returns that other (which *Theodora* Wife to *Justinian* had devoted) brought from *Anioch* by *Cozroes* the elder, and dedicates another made at his own charge circumscribed with *Hanc Crucem ego Cozroes Rex Regum, &c. misi, &c.* *Quoniam ope Sancti Sergii Martyris honorabil contra Baranum iniurissimum adepti sumus, vobis facimus, &c.* *Nos autem Crucem lapilli distinctam ad ejus Templum missuros, &c. una cum Crux quam Justinian Imp. ad Templum ejus misit, & quam Cozroes Rex Regum, &c. filium Cabadi nostri Prostrati, &c. hoc adorabit, &c. ad Edem Sancti Sergii mittendum curavimus, &c.* as at large is memorized by *Baronius*. A Chalice of gold also he devoted, with this inscription, *Ego Cozroes Rex Regum filius inclivis Hormizdi, hic in Disco inscribenda curavimus, non ut spellerent ab hominibus, &c.* Nay, he went further yet in his hypocrisy; for he gave out that he would delay no longer to become a *Christian*.

But

But how subtil soever he was, his Queen *Cesarea* knew him to be a dissembler: She (good Lady) therefore to espouse *Christ*, fled to *Constantinople*, and there received Baptism, *Cosroes* following her with 60000 Men; but when he saw she was not to be recovered by force or without he would become a *Christian*, he also was Baptized, and by his example such as followed him, to the admiration of the *Perians* and amazement of the *Asiatick* World, as *P. Diaconus* in his 4. lib. 15. ch. in *Victor* also, and in *John Abbot* of *Biclar* is extant in these words, *In his ergo temporibus quibus Deus Omnipotens prostrato veterano heres veneno, pacem sue restituit Ecclesia, Imperator Persarum Christi fidem iusciv piens, & pacem cum Imper. Mauritio firmans, &c.* Neyertheleſ if I should here relate his apostasie, his cruelty against the *Christians*, and those other barbarisms which he soon after perpetrated, it would require a volume. In brief, so soon as he heard of the massacre of *Mauritius* with his Wife and Children by *Phocas* a Captain of his Army; and the arrogance of *Boniface* the *Romish* Bishop who about that time assumed the Title of *Universal Bishop*; he makes this the pretended ground of his new war.

Accordingly first he rejects *Lilium* the *Roman* Ambassador, and then denies *Christ*; but vowing to sacrifice himself in *Mauritius* his quarrel; and thenceforward re-allium'd hisagan Titles of *Cosroes King of Kings, Lord of Lords, Ruler of Princes, Salvation of Men, &c.* by such his blasphemy giving the *Persian* Idolaters what assurance he could that he was returned to his former Heathenism; and, which was worse, enforcing such as would continue *Christians* to suck in the Heretie of *Nestorius* who held That in *Christ* were two Persons as well as two Natures, &c. a pernicious error that has well-nigh infected all the Orient.

This done, *Anno Dom. 603.* with an Army of an 100000 Men he entred *Syria*; there, in *Palestina* and *Phoenicia* doing all the mischief imaginable. The lesser *Ajia* parched also with his fury: the poor *Christians* he chased as far as *Chalcedon*; after that took *Cappadocia* and *Edessa*, and to his satisfaction *An. Dom. 612.* there hears of the untimely deaths of *Narses* and *Phocas* his enemies who were beheaded by *Heraclius* the Emperour. That year also he sackt *Apanea, Cesaria, Cappadocia, &c.* At *Aniob* also was over-joy'd with a Victory he obtained against the *Christians*: which encouraged him to over-run *Palestine*, and in hostile manner to enter *Jerusalem*; where he derided *Zacharias* the venerable Patriarch, the more to vex the poor *Christians* inhabiting that once holy City; then he ravished the Croſs from thence, and brought it unto *Shyrac*, where for some years it was forcibly detained. After that he subjeckted *Egypt* and part of *Libya*; yea, made the black-fac'd *Ethiopians* admire his frenzie.

The *Roman* Empire not without cause were troubled, when they felt his wrath in *Anatolia*, chiefly in *Ancyra* the *Galatian* Metropolis. 'Tis reported how that in this frantick out-breaking he massacred not leſ than three hundred thousand *Christians*; partly occasioned by the *Jews* who followed the Camp and paid ready money for many, whom (as story says) without mercy they slaughtered. *Heraclius* having his hands full elsewhere, sent seventy *Roman* Gentlemen to treat of peace: *Sax* the *Persian* General putt up with succels, accounting them no better than Spies, in savage fort made them return again, which *Heraclius* resented as so high an indignity that with a choice number of Men he fought with *Sax* and had the Victory: *Sax* for his ill succels was by *Cosroes* command flayed alive, and *Sarbaras* made General in his place. *Heraclius* in the interim wintered in the *Pontique* Regions, whilst *Sarbaras* with a great Army of Horse pacles through *Cilicia* and one Moon-shine night assailed the *Roman* whom he thought to have found unprepared in their Quarters; but by that haste lost 50000 of his Men, which gave as it were new life to the drooping *Christians*.

Cosroes not content with this, next Year sent *Sarnabassa* against the *Roman* Army; but the *Roman*s having other work nearer home, *Heraclius* desired a Ceſſation: *Cosroes* not considering that War is the effect of God's offended Providence, but rather suffering his Reason to be inflamed by a revengeful paſſion vows never to give himself rest until he had exercised the utmoſt of his power to exterminate the *Christians*, notwithstanding he had many that lived inoffensively under his Empire and Government: to that end he tends *Sabyn* into *Trepizond*, but at *Azorus Heraclius* fought with him, and gained a ſeafonable Victory. At *Gazacor* *Cosroes* dares the *Roman* Emperour again with an Army of 50000 *Persians*, moſt of which were Horſe: never was Battle better fought, nor more doubtfully; but at length the *Persians* flee, and *Cosroes* himself upon a swift *Arabian* Courier dildained not to poſt to *Theobatman*, hoping there if any where to find ſafety. But ſuch was the general hate he had plunged himſelf into, he durſt not truſt that Sanctuary. *Heraclius* therefore reſolving to ferret him purſues the Tyrant; but *Cosroes* hearing of his approach, thinks it more ſafe to flee into *Media* than look for help from that helpless Deity. *Heraclius*

Heraclius, whom the *Perſians* call *Hercoll*, when he had thoroughly searched that Idolatrous place and could not find him, was ſorry he miſſ'd his aim, but rejoices again that his Idols were there to execute his wrath upon, and in ſome fort to expiate for the cruelty he had ſhewed the Christians who were then under the *Roman* ſubjeſtion: So that of the people, ſome he flew, the reſt he banished; the *Famens*, or *Pyromantiques*, he ſacrificed to their *Idol*; the Pyreæ he extinguished, and made other common fire to be commixt with that impoſture; and together made it active to confine the whole City into Ashes: at *Gaza* also he did the like, where was another Pyreæ much reſorted to, and worshipped by, thofe *Gentiles*, as *Cedrenus* tells us: an abomination taught them by *Zereth* in *Gustaff's* time, and ſeems either that which *Moses* forbade the *Israelites* that they ſhould not let their Seed (or Children) paſs through the fire to *Moloch* (a brazen hollow heated Statua) or as the *Sephervites*, of whom 'tis ſaid, that they burnt their Children in the fire to *Adramelec* and *Anammelech*, Gods of *Sephervaim*, as in *Levit. 18. 21.* and in *2 King. 17. 17.* and *31.* concerning which, who deſires further ſatisfaction, let him read *Lucian, Strabo lib. 15. Procopius lib. 2. de bello Perſico, Agathias lib. 2.* and others.

Amongt other things which *Heraclius* found in that Temple dedicated to the Sun, was a remarkable Image of *Cosrhoe* which the people fondly worshipped: the frame was round, reſembling Heaven; *Cosrhoe's* head was wreathed with the Sun, the rays whereof ſpread themſelves to the umbilique of the Image: upon the one ſide was another Sun, on the other the Moon and Stars his Brother and Sisters painted; and under his feet, the Angels with Crowns and Scepters, as it were adoring him: now albeit the work was curious and the materials rich, being moft part refined Gold glittering with ſtones of price, yet did the good Emperour throw all into the fire, to incorporate with that Deity. *Cosrhoe* not yet quite out of breath, by this had gathered a freſh Army out of *Hyrcania*, and gave order for *Sha-Rablecca* to forrage *Albania*: but having intelligence that they were in a good poſture of defence, *Rablaeca* returned, till *Sarbaras* with new forces forc't him back again; and much hurt in all probability would they have done, had not *Heraclius* ſpedily interpoſed and happily defeated both thofe Armies in one day, neither knowing of the others loſs. *Mahomet* the Pseudo-Prophet was a Common Soldier in *Heraclius'* Army all this while, ſoon after which commences his Hegyra or flight from *Meca*, whose Inhabitants at firſt threatened to kill him for his Innovation, *Anno Dom. 622.* and of the Emperour's reign 13. *Sarbaras* the *Perſian* General by command of *Cosrhoe* his reſleſt Master takes the field again with a numerouſ Army, and without much reſistance maſches over *Euphrates*, on purpoſe to try the fortune of war once more againſt *Heraclius*: who ſo ſoon as he was acquainted with his advance gave him reaſon to repenſt his confidence; the good Emperour himſelf discharging his duty fo excellently that day, and with ſuch admirable perſonal valour and reſolution, that it is reported how that *Sarbaras* upon view thercof cryed out to *Cosma* his Companion, *O Cosma! ſeeſt thou with what courage the Emperour fights? certaintly he alone is able to vanquish all our multitudes.* And accordingly after a ſhort, but hot, diſpute the *Romans* had the victory. Many loſt their lives that day, nevetheleſs the *Perſian* General with ſome Horſe made a fair retreat. That Winter the Emperour marched to *Sebasia*, and crossing the River *Haly* made *Paphlagonia* his Rendezvous. *Cosrhoe* yet ſwells with paſſion, and by diabolical Witchcraft invents how he might vex the Christians againſt whom he raged with all forts of cruelty; and e're he made his laſt exiſt once more adventures a Battel with the incenſed *Romans*: 15000 men he muſters, marches, and diuides in three: to *Sayn* he diſtributes one part, to *Sarbaras* another, to himſelf the third; imagining by ſome, or all, of theſe to attain his end. *Sayn* with his 5000 hastens againſt the Emperour. *Sarbaras* with his 5000 marcht to *Conſtantinople*; and *Cosrhoe* ſtaies upon the Frontiers with the reſt. *Heraclius* having intelligence of his force and drift, diuides his alſo into three: the one to halten into *Thrace*, the other to beſtow a Camifado upon *Sayn's* Quarter, and the laſt he led himſelf into the *Lazic* Territories; to which place the *Cazars* (a fort of Turk) came to ſerve in the *Roman* Army: *Theodore Lieutenant General to Heraclius* haltened to meet the Enemy; and notwithstanding the *Perſian* bravery and courage of a Regiment of the *Chryſoloca*, whom *Sayn* had moſt conidence in; the *Perſian* Army was rousted; and no wonder, ſeeing the Christians (moſt of the *Roman* Army being then ſad) had Heaven to Friend; ſo terrible a shower of Hail ſo dreadfully thunders againſt the *Perſian* Horſe, that it was viſible how that God appeared in their deſence: in fine, the *Perſians* fled, and *Sayn* loſt his life in the Field: the *Perſians* nevetheleſs redeemed *Sayn's* Body with a conſiderable ſum, which being brought into their Quarters, inſtead of a decent Burial, the *Perſian* Tyrant commanded his Carcaſs ſhould firſt be arrayed in rags, perfumed him then with Dogs-turds, and laſtly ſlapſt his ſenleſs trunk into many pieces. That

That year the *Gazars* (to gratifie *Heracilius*) under the conduct of *Ziebitz* broke through the *Caspian* straits and did the *Persians* much mischief; but to the *Roman* Army exprest no small service by that action: This was the first appearance, or time the *Turks* were taken notice of, who from so obscure a beginning, in few years after made a conquest of most of *Asia*, with a great part of *Europe* and *Afrique*. Anno Dom. 626. *Sarbaras* with a very great force entred *Thrace*, pillaged *Calcedon* a Town built by *Iason* and *Argias*, much traded to, being in view of *Byzantium* and the *Bosphorus*. After that they laid siege to *Constantinople*, and for ten days, more or less, stormed it: but such was the noble resolution of the Christians, and such her natural defence, that the *Persians* could not enter, so as upon notice that *Heracilius* was approaching they raised their siege and made a safe, though dilhounourable, retreat into their own Quarters. Anno 628. the Emperour having resolved to retaliate the *Persians* for their former violence against the *Romans* and their Friends, with a considerable Army entred *Armenia*, and in a long fought Battel obtained a great victory over the *Persian*. After which he pursued *Cosroes* and made a forcible entry into *Ctesiphon*, which after he had soundly plundered, he totally demolisht and fired: *Ctesiphon* was a City in *Susiana*, not far from *Apamia* and *Babylon*, but upon *Tigris*; not a little famoured in Writers; built it was by *Belochus*, who by the death of *Sardanapalus* began the *Affyrian* Empire, albeit *Anianus lib. 23.* writes *Vardanes instituit Ctesiphon & res Pacoris amplificavit*: the *Persian* Kings used to keep their Conrt, during the Winter season, there: *Basil*, *Cyril*, *Nazianzen*, and other grave Authors are of opinion that at this City the Tower of *Babel* was erected. Howbeit most are of another opinion, for other Writers place it in the Vale of *Shynaar*, where *Babylon* upon *Euphrates* was built, being about two days journey from *Ctesiphon*: nor are there any remains of *Nimrods Tower* at *Ctesiphon*. To return, *Cosroes* when he heard that *Sarbaras* had sped but ill in *Thrace*, and had i.de-delivered *Calcedon* to the Christians, inflamed with passion sends an assasinate to murther him: by strange hap the Emperour's Son having notice thereof, in honour acquaints the General therewith; who, by this ingratitude of *Cosroes*, raised a very dangerous Rebellion. *Cosroes* when he few things succeed thus unfortunately, fell into a Fever first, and then a Flux infieble him so, that upon his death-bed he nominated for his Successor his Son *Mardeses* begot of *Syros* his beloved Wife: but e're he could set the Crown upon his head, *Mardeses* was slain by *Syros* his Brother, before his Father's face: an act so horrid that *Cosroes* bitterly curses the fratricide; but *Syros* (as bloody a Viper as ever lived) heaps greater sins upon his Head, by commanding some Villains to shoot *Cosroes*: at that instant, his loathed Soul calling to mind his like cruelty to *Hormisda* his Father, could not but acknowledge that God was just in that retaliation, insomuch that in anguish of Soul he breathed out his wretched Spirit, having reigned, or rather troubled the World, full fifty years.

So soon as *Heracilius* heard of *Cosroes* death he hoped the old quarrel was at an end; that year therefore he travelled to the Holy City and presented *Zacharias* then Patriarch with the Cros of Christ found by *Helena* (a Britiish Lady). Anno Dom. 326. May 3. ravish't thence by *Cosroes*, and rescued by *Heracilius*, as I lately remembred. His triumphant entring there was the 1st. of September 628: the same year that *Boniface* published to the World his Catholick Supremacy; and in or near which time *Mahomet* divulged his Alcoran.

Syros (by *Teixera* called *Chobud-Xirvile*, in the Tarich or Annal of time *Scyriah*) in the sixth year of his reign had the reward of a parricide, for he was cruelly murdered by *Sarbaras*. *Sarbaras* by the *Persians* called *Shawryr*; by *Shicard Sharibar*, the third month of his reign also slew *Ardohyrben Xirvial* right Heir to the Crown: but eight months after that, himself was slain by *Joon-sha* or *Shyn-shaw*, Lord of that part of *Taurus* now called *Larry-Joon*. The Successors to this Prince are uncertainly delivered. The Roman Authors from him to the Conquest of *Mahomet*, reckon three Kings of *Persia*, the *Arabs* six, the *Persians* five, the Tarich four, *Teixera* seven, the *Armenians* eleven, which will be difficult to reconcile; *Joon-sha* at the end of three months was banisht by *Turan* or *Turan Dott* natural Daughter to *Cosroes*. She had as bad a fate, for at the end of sixteen months she was made away by *poison*, but died much lamented: to her followed *Jazan-Zeddah*, by the Tarich called *Jar-ku kar-connah*; by *Elmacyn*, *Gascan-Zedda*; who ruled nine months and then dyed: to him succeeded *Azarmy Dott* (*Cosroes* young Daughter) who after sixteen months Government dyed; and left *Sherir* (or *Kesr*) to succeed her: He also at the end of six weeks was slain by *Phoro-Zeddah* (*Shyriar* some call him) who after a like way died of *poison*; *Teldgyrd* followed, who was forthwith made away by *Bornarym*; he by *Hormisdas*; Captivated, and the Kingdom conquered by *Mahomet* and his *Arabians*, being the last of those twelve vanishing Turrets which *Cosroes* in a perplexed Vision saw one night after he had been reading and admiring *Aristotle*, as he himself related.

land. Now as in all mally Bodies there appear certain trepidations and waverrings before they are able to fix or settle, so by these various revolutions of State in this perplexed *Persia*, the Almighty seemed to decree the period of those that claimed a right by succession, and to bring it under the stroke of a forraign Authority. Such time as *11. years* after five years rule (ten some say, others six) was slain by *Omar* the second Caliph after *Mahomet*; this great change happened in the year of our Lord 640. or the world 461. and from the year of the *Hegira* 20. by whole fall, *Persia* after long glory fates in an Eclipitick Cloud, and becomes fettered and forced for a time under the iron Yoke of Saracenic bondage. For after an uninterrupted succession of 28 Kings from *Arsaces* who ruled *Persia*, *Anno Dom. 232. Anno M. 4184.* after *Alexander* the great 540. years and after 400. years obedience to those Persian Kings, *Mahomet* then under the Roman Army, first putting his *Arabian* Brigade into a mutiny for want of pay, revolted, and being made their General quickly reduced *Arabia*, *Egypt*, and *Syria*; of which Prophet *Mahomet* I have formerly spoken so much as was pertinent.

To *Mahomet* succeeded *Ebnobchar*, *Abdalla*, *Eubochar* some name him. By *Elmatin* in his *Saracenic* History called *Abneer-jusfa*, and said to have warred against the *Abassines*, *Dybanes* and *Bernaziffos*. In the great Climacterick year he dyed; having sat as Caliph and King of *Persia* two years. *Omar* succeeded him. He is called *Hofmar* and *Homer*, Son to *Kattab-Faruques*, a wealthy Merchant. *Ali* Son-in-law to *Mahomet* for pretending to the Caliphship was by this restless Caliph every where pursued. And having advanced a great Army, he sackt *Basra* an *Arabian* City, walled by *Muslyn*; yea as an over-owing to rent, rashed as far as *Gabata*, tyrannizing over *Syria* and *Egypt*; after that he forrages *Palestine* and *Iberia*, and as an unlucky comet blazes with fire and Sword into *Assyria*.

At *Bardat* (which he made his Head-quarter) he resolves to repose, and dedicates the small remainder of his time to exercises of devotion: nevertheless, studying how to disturb the World, and to enlarge his Empire by an irrefragable vow obliged himself *perjuratus* to endeavour to the utmost extirpation of Christianity, which he judged the furest way to propagate the *Alcoran*: So as giving a Commission to *Mavi*, he sends him with a numerous Army of *Arabs* first against the *Syrians*; and with small opposition took *Damascus*, a City at that time wealthy, and so full of delights as *Mahomet* acknowledges he durst not trust himself there for fear of temptation. For of all the Cities in the World *Damascus* may worthily be placed in the first rank both for antiquity, commerce, and beauty. The *Hebreans* call it *Damascos*; *Julian* in his Epistles, *Veram Jovis Urben*; ad agree that it is *tumus Orientis Oculum*; the *Turks* *Shan*: and not a little famous too what Tradition commonly reports, That *Adam* and *Eve* are buried there; there can shew *Abel*, the Tomb of *Zachary*, Father of *John Baptist*, is there shewed; with other antiqui rarities of that kind: but that *Adam* and *Eve* were rather buried at *Hebron* is agreed by most. In *Helyon* (*Olim Kiriat Arba*) David regeavit Anno 7. *Ibi erat* *sputum a sp. duplex, in quo sepulti erant Adam & Eva, Abraham & Sarah, Issau & Rebecca, iac b & Peal, iux: a quin et ager Damascenus, Brocard Djer. Ter. Janice*, and again, *Sepultus est Adam apud Damascenum in spelunca duplice, Comefor. in Com. 3. cap. Cen.* by which *Damascen* is intended *Muzlab*; but the analogy or similitude of the Name occasioned the multitude doubtless, that *Adam* was buried at *Damascos*, the distance being 100 miles and upward; it being an ancient Tradition amongst the *Syrians*, that *Noah* knowing where *Adam*'s body (or bones) rested, took them into the Ark to be preserved, and afterwards distributed them amongst his Children. In like sort he sends sundry other Officers with considerable Forces to reduce other Countries with the Sword, the best way he could devise for spreading the *Alcoran*. *Rufian* beg accordingly, with fifteen thousand Horse, enters *Cappadocia*, but at the siege of *Escair-Mercon* was slain; and in the Army *Mofet*, *Ibrahim* and *Ughar*, commanded after him. This *Arab* forcibly entered the City, and mad: *Ama*, *Sabur*, *Arkan*, *Corresian*, *Taeroun* and *Larr* acknowledge *Mahomet*, and entitle themselves *Omars* Tributaries. *Habu-Obed-ben-Masdu* also, with thirteen thousand Horse, subected *Irak*, walled *Rastack*, of a poor Town made it a City, and new-named it *Kufa*, or *Kainf-sophrat*, i.e. the holy City upon *Euphrates*, since which time it has been the place of Coronation for several Kings of *Persia*. Forty miles from *Babylon* is *Ku fa*, and conjoins *Mosqued-Ally*, the burial-place of *Mortu-Ally*, Saint, King, and Propriet of the *Persians*.

Habu-Obed the next year subdued *Wasit* upon *Diglat*; a Town afterwards aggrandized by *Abdal Melig*, *An. Dom. 705.* of the *Heg. 85.* *Eljeer* also he attempted to take, but in the trial lost five thousand Men, in the storm *Obed* was slain himself, and the *Saracens* Army forced to retreat. *Omar* re-animates his Men, and persuades them that the *Eljeerians* over-

overcame them by Magick, which he also knew how to practise. They dare not disobey their Prophet but return again to *Elbey*, where that siege was renew'd under the conduct of *Siet ben-Abi-Vakez*, who had such luck through *Omar's* skill that *Elbey* was taken and forced to feel his tortures. At *Elcadisia* (a frontier Town) in that angry mood he slew five and twenty thousand *Persians*; and at *Galula*, *Spa-hawn* and *Tezd* at several times made *Tezdigird* the *Perfian General* fly; who had no heat left him when he beheld how fortunately *Omar* subjected *Cusistan*, *Parc*, *Carman*, and *Iraack*; and in *Majeroon*, *Jarrow*, *Edgan*, *Deacon*, *Larr*, *Shyrax*, and *Moyoon*, had made all Men there submit and swear themselves Mussulmen.

Tezdigird dics, *Hormysd* heads his party and labours to repl the *Saracens*, but in vain; an uncontrollable decree hastening *Persia's* bondage: For fifteen thousand Men with himself he sacrificed as a farewell to the Liberty of his Countrey. *Omar* six months after this Battel was slain treacherously by a Varlet, and in the *Alcaba* in *Mecca* near to *Ebu-bocar* his predecessor, buried. *Ozman* (in despite of *Aly*) succeeded him. *Omar* sat twelve years; this Man ten, and four months in the Pontificacy. By *Hucba* his Field-Marshal, to whose conduct he committed a great body of Horse, he subjeeted divers parts of North *Africk*, viz. *Numidia*, *Mauritania*, as far as *Tune* or *Carthage*. *Mavi* Sultan of *Damaco* in the *Cahip's* behalf also over-run *Syria*, *Egypt*, and in 1000 Galley-foits transferred such a swarm of *Saracens* into *Cyprus*, that upon their entry they seem'd enough to cover it: There they sackt *Constania* (or *Cerannia* a City built by *Cyrus*.) Thence they fell upon the *Rhodes*, where they perpetrated much savage cruelty; and amongst other spoils demolished that *Coloflus* which was built by *Chares of Lyndus* (*Scholar to Lysippus*) in twelve years; and in regard 'tis said the Sun shines daily in that Illand, was to the Sun dedicated. This huge Image was of gilded brafs, and eighty cubits high; the thumb as big as a large Man, the legs stood on either side the River; so wide, that there under might pass a large Vessel under sail: In the one hand it held a javelin which it pointed to the East; on its breast was a Mirrour wherein thos that dwelt within the Isle might descry ships sailing at a distance. This Wonder of the World which cost 300 Talents, *Mavi* sold to *Emisa* a *Jew* for two hundred pounds *sterling*; who demolished it, and with the brafs thereof loaded away nine hundred and thirty Camels. In that Isle he also defaced an hundred other Colossuses, and most barbarously of costly Monuments 70000. *Heraclius* the *Roman Emperour* died *An. Dom. 640.* after thirty Years reign, and in his place *Herac. Constantinus* succeeded; who in the seventh month of his Empire was poysioned by *Martina* his step-dame, the better to advance *Heracionas* her Son: but unexpectedly were forthwith both of them exiled by the People, their noses and tongues cut out, and *Conflans* saluted Emperour in his place.

Ozman having by this time finished his Paraphrase upon the *Alcoran*, digested it into seven small Tracts, which he subdivided into an hundred and fourteen Chapters. It so happened that by accident he lost a Ring of gold which *Mahomer* as a Legacy bequeathed him, but was to defend unto the succeeding *Caliphs*: The vertue of it was supposed great, and probably not unlike that magick Ring mentioned by *Philosratius Vita Apollonii*, said to be effected by a constellation of Planets: so as no means was unattempted to recover it. Which taking no good effect, he conceals the los', and counterfeits another like it of silver, embowelling a Motto to this purpose, *O Pertinaces, ô Panitemes!* from which pattern most *Mahometans* to this day wear Rings of silver.

Now forasmuch as *Mahomet*'s perswasion is with a naked Sword to embrace the *Alcoran*, in the second and third *Azaora* promising the greatest share in Paradise to such as shall destroy most Unbelievers; *Ozman* having done his Church-work, devies with himself from that Doctrine how to enlarge his Empire, but yet under a pretext of charity to teach other Nations their way how to attain Paradise. *India* in those dayes was rich and well peopled: To any would undertake the Conquest he promises (besides other advantages) his Blessing, which is as a thousand benedictions. *Abdal-ben-Emyr*, a Man both valiant and superstitious, accepts the task, and with 30000 Horse haltes thitherwards; but by new instructions from *Ozman* who had considered how long a busines 'twould be to subdue so remote a Countrey, directs his course first towards *Tartary*. *Aria* he enters and easily subjugates; after that *Corsan*, *Maurenabar*, *Gafneben*; then with little oppotion took the Cities of *Nizabur*, *Thalecan* and *Tucharistan*; yea, all *Dilemon* to *Balk* as far as *Febun* and *Ardoc* would give leave, Rivers beyond *Oxus*. A wonderful progres in War and enlargement of Empire these now *Mahometan-Popes* made, no les' to the terror and amazement of the World than the spreading of the *Alcoran*, *Saran* about that time (as 'tis thought) being let loose. *Ozman* the *Caliph* by these acquisitions of Conquest made himself the most puissant and redoubted Prince then living. Nevertheless, how victorious soever he was abroad,

he died miserably at home by poison, which he suckt voluntarily rather than he slain, as story says, by the enraged multitude, in the eighty eighth year of his age, in the fifth year and eighth month of his Caliphship, *Anno Dom. 655.* of the Heg. 35. In his place *Aliy* the right Heir attended with ten thousand Persians and twenty thousand *Arabians* was at *Meccha* saluted *Caliph*: but his Reign was full of misery; for *Mawi* the *Syrian* chief of the *Ommian* Race, storming at *Omar's* fall and thinking himself worthy to succeed, with an hundred thousand Men enters *Arabia* with a resolution to depose *Aliy*; but in the encounter was well beaten and lost ten thousand of his Men: Howbeit, at the second trial, *Aliy* lost not only the day but his Life and Myter. Of the *Egyptians* in this bloody fight were slain fifteen thousand, of *Saracens* twenty thousand; by which Victory *Mawi* or *Mawia* was saluted King. *Mortis-Ally* (so called from *Hilal*, i. e. *Luna*, upon her descent to evidence the Prophets Election) died aged 63, and was buried (near to *Cuse* upon *Euphrates*) at *Masque* or *Messad-Ally*, *Karb-Ally* some miscall it. He left a Ring with which the *Persian* Kings wed their Queens: its Motto is to this purpose say the *Molai*, *Corde sincero Deum reveror*. By the *Persians* he is called *Emyr-el-mennumim*, i.e. Prince of the Faithful.

By *Fayrouz* (*A' shur's* sole Child), he had *Ocen* (or *Hocem*) who after few months pretended to die poisoned, *Anno Dom. 666.* of the Heg. 46. and was buried at *Mesquie Ally*; his Symbol, as fayes the *Juebasin* was *Solus Deus Potens*. *Mawi* (*Ally's* tormentor) soon after *Hecc*'s death slew eleven of his Children; the twelfth escaped, *Musa Cherefim* or *Musonet Mahadim* by name, from whom the Kings of *Persia* at this day say they descend. This *Mahomet Mahadim* is thought still alive, and to return again; which causes the King, to have a Horse ever ready for him; though I believe the Horse is rather continued from the o'd emblem of that Horse which was dedicated to the Sun, as I have elsewhere related. *Mawi* Lord of the *Ben-Humian* or *Ommian* Family having staled himself in the Government, sent *Sufiades* his Kinsman with a great force against the *Grecians*. Accordingly *Sufiades* besieges *Syracuse*, and after that *Byzantium*: but by *Constantine* the Emperor successor to *Heraculus* was slain with thirty thousand other *Saracens* of his Army. That same year the Plague raged so terribly in the *Mahometan* Empire that the like was never formerly known: amongst the rest *Mawi* expired, aged seventy seven, and in his Reign over *Egypt*, &c. twenty four; his Symbol this (as is reported) *Ignosce precor*. Which *Mawi* was so implacably bent against *Mortis-Ally* and his Race, that not content to have destroyed him and eleven of his Grand-Children, he caused an *Anathema* to be daily said in the Common-Prayer against him, continued by the *Ommian* Family for eight Descents, till by *Omar* the fifteenth *Caliph* it was abolished: It was required by *Abdalla-Sophy* the Ancestor of *Abbas* now reigning who was the two and twentieth *Caliph*, and no sooner seated but that, after the slaughter of *Murvan* the one and twentieth *Caliph*, he extirpated Root and Branch the *Ommian* Race, *A. Heg. 142.* and that with such a barbarity as is not to be paralleld: For, inviting all the Family to receive their scat, eighty of them being assembled and suspectles of harm, upon a Signal which *Abdal* gave they were all knockt down; and contrary to Nature which abhors cruelty, caused them to be laid together and a Carpet spread over them; upon whose wretched Carcasses he feasted, intulping in the sad groans which many of them (who were not quite dead) made; and causing this Dirge to be sung, *For the day of Huzzan and his eleven Sons*; and nothing else: So that his *Ignosce precor* was a Morto very necessary to be remembred. About this time there were terrible Earth quakes in *Asia*, which in one night overturn'd six hundred Cities and Villages.

To *Mawi* followed as *Caliph* *Tezzid* or *Yezid*; memorable for his vein of Poetry: He it was that put the *Alcoran* into Rythme. His riot and venvy so exasperated *Mata-Mariam-*
Abdelz as at the age of forty he made him away, having ruled but three years. *Matar* was as quickly dethroned by *Abdal-ben-Ye ad Ben-Humian*: Some are of opinion that *Ocen* and his eleven Sons were slain by this *Caliph*, and not by *Mawi*. *Murvan* after he had sat nine months dispossess'd him, as he was by *Abdal* again; but both by *Aben* or *Abdal-*
melech were both of Life and Kindred bereaved. *Didares* dethroned and forced *Melce* to flight; *Oyledore*, *Didaces*; and *Solyman* by help of *Inslinius* the Emperor slew *Oyledore*: *Melce* returns from Banishment, expulses *Solyman*, and to the utmost took revenge of *Murvan's* murtherers. The Christians were the worse for this establishment; for *Melce* forthwith forraged *Syria*, *Armenia* and *Thrace*, and in the fifteenth year of his Empire dy'd, ordaining *Obiy* (called also *Ulucus* and *Levyl-Miraiman*) successor in his stead. This *Caliph* died of grief to see that the Armies he had sent into *Spain* rebelled against him. *Zulzeman* succeeded him; him, *Omar-ben-Abdemazed*, deposed by *Tezid* Son to *Melce* the late *Caliph*. *Tezid* matched off after him, a Prince hardy and unfortunate. After his death the Empire was divided twixt *Tezid* and *Uvalid*; who having sped so well

well in *Asia* and *Africk*, wth all the Forces they could make they invade *Europe*: Into *Spain* marched *Uvalid's* Army led by *Abdiramo*, first having in Vessels crossed the Strait; and *Gezid's* Forces led by *Sha-Rablan* entered *France*: the first had better fortune than the second; for those under *Uvalid* landed and conquered *Granada*, and rooted themselves for seven hundred years in *Spain* till *Ferdinand* of late expuls'd, and his successor forced them back to *Barbary*. Those that entered *France* (albeit they were invited thither by *Eudo* Duke of *Aquitain* who hated *Charles Martel* Grand-father of *Charlemaine* mortally) were resisted by *Martel* and thirty thousand French Gallants, (*Eudo* the *Welt-Goth* upon better consideration siding with the Christians,) so as after a long and smart fight in view of the City of *Tours* in *Touraine* in *France*, and not at *Turin* in *Piedmont* as some have imagined, the Saracens were beaten, and of their numberless company three hundred thousand slain, July 22. 726, as *Beda* and others at that time living, tell us. The two *Caliphs* died mad when they heard of these misfortunes.

Marwan was placed in their stead; in whose time *Hyblin* his General purposed to invade *Tartary* with an hundred thousand Men; but in the way was affaile'd by *Sophy-Salyn* Saint *Azmulli*'s Son, of descent from *Ally* and *Lamonit* the *Arachosian*, in which conflict *Hyblin* was slain. *Marwan* in revenge, with three hundred thousand Saracens enters *Persia*, where *Salyn* encounters him, and near to *Spahava* vanquished the *Arabian*, an hundred thousand of his Men being slain and scattered. *Marwan* affrighted at this los's lie, from *Babylon* to *Mecca*, and thence into *Egypt*; but thither also *Salyn* pursues him, and by his Banishment or death put an end to the Race of his inveterate Enemies the *Ben-Hunians*, begun by *Mervi*, by *Marwan* ended.

The Family of *Mortis-Ally* or *Ben-Abbas* in this Man began again to recover the Scepter of *Persia* Anno Dom. 750. of the Heg. 139. For albeit *Abubilla* a while opposed Saint *Azmulli*, *Azmulli* at *Cafe* was crown'd King and sat as *Caliph* also. Authors here a little vary; for some say it was *Azmulli* who brought so great a force out of *Chrosia*, that made *Marwan* fly from *Persia* to *Egypt*, and thence into *Barbary*, where he seated in *Fes* and *Morocco*, and peopled divers parts of North *Afric*; the *Alarbes* being from them descended, distinguished from the *Brebbers* or Mountaineers the old Inhabitants of those Countreys. And about this time it was that the *Turk* living then in the most Northerly parts of *Zagathai* made an irruption through the *Caspian Straits*, and for some time seated themselves in *Turcomania* a Province in *Armenia* the greater. This *A: nulli* is he that revived *Mu'min's* Tenents to the honour of *Ally* and disgrace of the three Successors of *Mahomet*; published afterwards by *Sic Gunei of Ardashir*.

Saint *Azmulli* being dead, his Son *Salyn* was fatulat'd King; who after three years dying, *Abu-beer*, called *Bojafir* and *Almanor*, succeeded him An. Dom. 758. of the Heg. 138. This is he who repaired *Bagdat*. *Mehadi-Abnalla* followed him, by some called *Negmedden Phidul-Ally*; to whom, *Moles* or *Elad-mirza*, Father of that *Anarumius* of whom the French speak so much. In his time viz. 798. *Charlemaigne* flourished, and this our Isle under *Edgar* altered its Name from *Britain* to *England*. Twixt this *Anarumius* (or *Aaron* King of *Persia*) and the Christian Emperour *Charles* was great amity; Ambassador's and Presents being reciprocally sent from each other, as we find recorded by *Ægianardus* his Secretary and *Æmilius* 3. lib. *Aaron* some say died a Christian. In his time many Fanatick Scholars in the sight of thousands undertook to fly, but in the tryal from one Rock to another notwithstanding the height of the wind, perished.

Aaron after three and twenty years rule died, and *Mahomet* his Son reigned 5 years after him: *Abdalla* after him; who when he had for some time raged against the Christians and troubled divers of the Islands in the Mediterranean Sea, died; and was succeeded by *Mul-s-cawn*, who equally vexed the Christians, disturbed *Italy*, and alarmed *Rome*. but he alio in short space vanished, and was succeeded by these *Caliphs* successively, *Uzacek*, *Almora*, *Monacer*, *Abbas*, *Miftacdzem*, in whose time happened the greatest Earth-quake that ever was felt in *Asia*, *Almotec*, *Abdullah-Bila* An. 875. of the Heg. 355. *Almet-Hamed*, *Almazed*, *Abutaji* *Byla*, *Molt-uder*, *Elhaker*, *Rasha*, *Razi-bila*, *Nucteji*, *Morub*, *Tayaba*, *Kaderkamet* and *Mahomet-El-takert*, i. e. God's Servant; in whom ended the *Caliphs* of the *Arabick* or *Persian* item. For then An. 1030. of the Heg. 410. came in the *Turquemen* led by *Tan-yol-pix*, who had his first call into *Persia* by *Mahomet* the then Sultan, to assist him against the *Babylonian*: but the *Turk* (after he had freed *Mahomet* from that danger which *Pisafir* threatened) desiring leave to go into *Armenia* to visit his Kindred who were lately seated there, refutes the denial with such impatience that *Mahomet* ere he could appeal the wrathful *Turk*, was bereaved both of Life and Kingdom. In his death the Family of Saint *Azmulli* was extint, till *Sha-Ismael* dispelled the interposing cloud, and revived the splendor of his Ancestry. The *Bojaan* Kings who began

Anno Heg. 319. ended *Anno Heg. 480.* In the *Juchasim* they are chronicled, as at *Shyrac*, I have spoken in short concerning them.

The Successor of *Tangrolipix* was *Ottoman* Son of *Ertogul* the *Oguzian*, who in the year 1300 of the Heg. 480. laid the foundation of the *Turkish Empire* in *Europe* and *Asia*: and the *Salsucian* (of the same Extraction) commanded *Persia*; begun by *Togrul-beg* Son of *Salghucius*, Son of *Didacus* a *Turqueman* or *Tartarian*. *Togrul-beg* (someday) was slain by treason; his Successor was *Pharug-zed*, *Mafud's* Son, slain by *Olo-ben-Efolan* Prince of *Gaz-reben*. To him followed *Ebraim-ben-Mafud*, whose Son *Mafud* married the Daughter of *Melik* the King of *Turkestan*. *Mafud* from *Coresan* entered *Persia* with a great Army, and near to *Tabryz* slew *Almoftarsib* bila-Caliph, and in another fight *Rashed-bila* his Son at *Spaharn*. To *Mafud* in *Gaznebin* succeeded *Sha-Efolan*, slain by *Raharen-sha* his Brother, *An. Heg. 490.* to whom ruled *Cosrbao* his Son; who after he had foraged *Indus* died *An. Heg. 640.* and in him took end the *Sabatique Family*.

In those times as *Caldips* of *Babylon* and part of *Persia* were *Ghaladud-daul*, whose 7th Successor *Mustafa* was slain by *Cingis-chan* *An. Heg. 580.* and *Almoftarsib* bila-*Mansor* in his place governed *Caldea* and *Persia*. Of those *Tartars* I have spoken; descend we therefore to the year of our Lord 1415. of the Heg. 795. such time as *Cicara-Mahomed* the *Turk* re-entered *Persia*. He ruled three years and left *Kara-Issimb* to succeed him; who also after three years died at *Cashyn*, and left six Sons, viz. *Pirbuda* *cawn*, *Scander-mirza*, *Zoos-sha*, *Sha-Atahomet*, *Abuzedda* and *Mirsia-Abdal*; all which died untimely. Of those 7 *Zoos-sha* was the last; who also was slain with *Acen-Ally* his Son by *Acem-beg*: so as at that time the Family of the *Gulfan Carauli* or Black-sheep ended, and the *Gulfan Acorlu* or White-sheep took beginning: The first of these were *Turks*; the last *Armenians*.

During this, the *Ottoman* Race so enlarged their Conquests in the lesser *Asia*, that the *Grecian* Princes (to stop that impetuous torrent) by their Ambassadors represented their sad condition unto *Tamberlane*, at that time highly fam'd for the Victories he had a little before obtain'd over *Calisia* a *Seylbeck* Prince, and some in-roads he had made into *Chyna*, if *Paulus Jovinus* in that be not mistaken: So as that Noble Prince in commiseration to those distressed Christians, but principally detesting the infidelities of the *Turk* from whom he had but lately received some affronts near the River *Borishenes* and contempt done to his Ambassadors, with a willing heart and all the force he could make he marched against *Bajazet*, who with equal numbers and more spight advanced against the *Tartar*. Near Mount *Stella* (the Plain where *Pompey* worsted *Mithridates*) was maintained a long and bloody Fight; but the Almighty being pleased that a hook should pierce the jaws of that *Turkish Leviathan*, the Spirits of the Christians were so animated that the Victory rested with *Tamberlane*, who in the Fight slew many thousand *Turks*; and the better to check the insolence of *Bajazet* put him into an Iron Cage as accustomed to wild Beasts, and carried him in that ridiculous posture through all his march: after which, without any considerable resistance he subiected the rest of the *Turkish Provinces*, and received acknowledgments of subiection from all that part of *Asia* and *Africk*; For, besides the lesser *Asia* and *Armenia*, all *Affryia*, *Syria*, *Egypt* and other parts of *Africk*, *Arabia*, *Persia* and the Dominions under that Crown, he added to his Empire all those Eastern Countries that stretch as far as *Ganges*; in eight years subduing more Kingdoms than the *Romans* could in eight hundred, as formerly instanced: so that for extent of Dominion and speedy Conquest he is without parallel.

I.D.1327 The *Persian Annals* further acquaint us, That *Tamberlane* returning through *Media* towards *Samarcand* gave a friendly Visit to *Syer* or *Sheque Sofee* a reputed Saint at that time living in *Ardevel* (a Town under 37 degr. 30 minutes, about seventy English miles to the North-east of *Cashyn* and half that distance from *Sultany*,) who perceiving that by *Hoharo-mirza's* advice the Conquerour had destined many thousand Prisoners, of which the most were *Persians*) to perpetual slavery or death, the *Saints* begg'd their Liberty; which *Tamberlane* granting, the mercy was deservedly attributed to *Sofee* and highly increased the opinion of his Holines. Soon after which, viz. *An. Dom. 1407.* of the Heg. 787. the *Tartarian* Emperour died and was honourably buried at *Anzar* in *Cahaya*; and almost three years after the *Persian* Saint follow'd in that inevitable path, being no less ceremoniously intombed at *Ardevel*, albeit some say at *Sumaky*: Concerning whom give me leave to apply that which *Horace* did not more aptly to another,

Crescit occulto velut arbor zvno

Fama Soplii.

Sofee

Soffee left behind him a Son called *Siet Gunet*: for of such esteem was his Fathers Sanctity, that as *ex traduce* they held it requisite to give the like attribute of *Siet*, i. e. Saint unto his Son, who also at least by a pretended zeal seem'd meritoriously to acquire that Epithete: For he delighted much in contemplation and separation from the People, and not in vain; Contemplation having a special vigour to sharpen Wit; and separation from vulgar Spirits both opening Nature's Cabinet and by Meditation borrowing Angels wings to fly into Heaven. And by these artifices it was *Siet Gunet* accommodated himself towards the pulling down the Black-Sheeps Race, of which *Zoon-sha* Son of *Chnissoph* at that time only remained; to which end he hatches this design: First he invited *Acen* or *Usem*, otherwise called *Usan-Cassan* the *Armenian* King, to the conquest of *Persia*, which by the overthrow of *Mulawares* and death of *Zoon-sha* An. Dom. 1470. of the Heg. 850. he quickly effected, and thereby reduced under subjection the Provinces of *Hyrcane*, *Iraekyn*, *Aderbayon*, *Cabomchara*, *Mozendram*, *Sheirvan*, *Cherman* and *Chnissian*: During which there was that amity 'twixt the Victor and the Saint of *Ardaevil*, that he was so far from opposing the new model of Church affairs *Gunet* had compiled and the better fancied perceiving the *Siet*'s drift to make a perpetual Schism or rent from the *Turk* in their persuasion, as he gave it all the countenance he could, and imposed that new *Curravm* as they term it upon the *Persian*, who from the belief they had of the *Siers* Learning and Holiness, without any dispute or further examination freely accepted of it: in no wise considering that the introducing a Novel Doctrine is no other than an affliction of Tyranny over the Understanding and Belief of Men: for albeit till then *Ebubocer*, *Omar* and *Ozman* the three succeeding *Kalypis* after *Mahomet* were venerably esteem'd of by the *Persians* and reputed Prophets; yet now being told by *Siet Gunet* that those were no Prophets but impostors and intruders into the Caliphship (which *Mortis-Ally* the *Persian* by matching with *Fatima Mahomet's* sole Child had most right unto, notwithstanding which *Ally* was not only by their power and subtle practices kept out of possession during their Lives, but by their procuration slain by *Mnazy* the *Syrian* General, and not therewith satisfied his Race to prosecute that *Ocen Ally's* Son was likewise cut off, and his other Sons eleven in number, destroy'd by *Abdall the Ben-humian*, the twelfth called *Mufit* or *Mirsa Cerism* by miracle only escaping, of whom the crafty *Siet Gunet* himself descended those and other like considerations so wrought, that it was thought fit those three pretended Prophets should be reputed rather Devils than Saints, expunged their Kalender, and instead of invoking, the *Persians* were instructed to execrate them as Heretics and abominable Valets: a declination the *Turks* have never been able to reconcile to this very day; they nevertheless *vice versa* having as high an opinion of those three as they have of *Mortis-Ally*, or rather more, in regard *Ally* was a *Persian*; upon which account, the *Turks* esteem the *Persians* no better than Heretics, and as is related, the *Turkish* *Mufti* not many years since upon some occasion declared it as an Article of his Faith that he held it a more meritorious work to destroy one *Persian* than a hundred *Christians*. Howbeit, this great breach prudently designed by *Gunet* the better to advance his own Tribe and to make his access the easier to the Crown, was not so secretly contrived but that *Zoon-sha* had some whispering of it; which so soon as the *Siet* understand he wisely withdrew himself into the *Arabian* Territories, where he took the opportunity to quicken *Usan Cassan* towards the invading *Persia*, as lately mentioned. But the *Armenians* giving law unto the *Persian* was so badly resented that *Gunet* perceived it contributed not a little towards the attaining his ambitious ends, which *Usan-Cassan* was altogether ignorant of; otherwise he would not so easily have concurred to match his Daughter *Martha* (whom the *Persians* stile *Kadryon-Katu*, begot of *Dessina* the Daughter of *Cale-Johannes* or *John* the good Emperour of *Trepisord*) with *Ayder-marza* his Son, whom *P. Jovius* calls *Harduelles*; By which high affinity he made his nearer approach unto the Throne: Nor was the match much to the young Lady's disliking, for she had liberty granted her to continue the profession of that Religion which her *Cristian* Mother instructed her in; nor was it held an undervaluing, seeing *Ayder's* Descent was in a direct Line drawn from *Mortis-Ally* and *Fatyma* Daughter and Heir of *Mahomet* in an uninterrupted Stem of thirty five Princes and Saints, some of which are as follows, *Abba Mirz*: had *Aby-Taleb* the Father of *Mortis Ally* who by *Fatyma* had *Hocem* whom some call *Ocen* and *Imfaz* (Father of *Mirza Cerism* whom some name *Makbedin*) from whom *Mirzaz*, *St. Amondi* and *Sdyn* descended; and from whom *Sheq-Sophy-Eddyn-Isaac*, who for his Learning and Sanctity was surnamed *Cuth-el Eulis*, to whom succeeded *Shee* or *Siet Mfs*, who was Father of *Mirza Sedrydin*, the Father of *Shec-Ally*, Father of *Shec Elzdim*, Father of *Shec-Soffe*, Father of *Shee* or *Siet Gunet*, Father of *Shec-Ayder* who by his Wife the Princess *Martha* had *Ismael* surnamed *Sophy*.

Usan-

Ujan Caffan (Son of *Tecrit-cawn*) expelled his Country by *Bajazet*, and re-invested by *Tamberlane*; happily kept what he had conquered, and spent the remainder of his Reign in peace; maintaining a good correspondence with *Mahomet* the great *Turk*, to whom by his Ambassadors among other things, if wroth the memory, he presented a pair of playing Tables which were of Crystal, the Dice and Men of Gold set with precious Stones; being part of the spoils which *Tamberlane* left there after he had foraged *Persia*. To this great Prince many Christian Princes dispatched their Messengers; and amongst others *Zenus* came Ambassador from the *Venetians* to engage him against the *Turk* for some loss they had received, but upon pretence to repossess his Wives Brother of *Trepizond*: in order whereunto he invaded the *Turk's* Dominions, and engaged at several times the two great *Bassa's*, *Musaphi* and *Anwarib*, and had the better a while; but at last was over-powered, and worshipped by *Mahomet*; insomuch as his Son *Zeynal-chaw*, who commanded the Army, was forced to retreat to *Tabriz*, whither the *Turks*, at that time, feared to follow. At length either of grief for that bad success or age, in the year 1477. *Ujan Caffan* dyed at *Casyu*, where he was royally interred.

He left seven Sons behind; namely, *Ogorlu-mirza*, *Sultan Chatyl*, *Jacob*, *Josias*, *Issuff*, *Maczud*, and *Zenal-chawn*, most of which came to untimely ends: For *Ogorlu* was destroyed by Poison; *Chatyl* was slain by *Maczud-beg*; *Josias*, and *Zenal-chawn*, dyed in fight against the *Turk*; *Jacob* was murdered by a Whore at *Tabriz*; and *Issuff* died of an Impotheum. Their Children also had little better destiny; for *Baisanger* and *Elvan-beg*, Sons of *Jacob*, the third Son of *Ujan caffen*, for some time strove who should first grasp the Regal Scepter; and albeit *Baisanger* prevailed, long he enjoyed it not, being by *Rufiav*, Son of *Maczud-beg* (*Ujan's* second Son) forced to fly for safety of his life; but returning out of *Armenia*, next year with a considerable party, dyed by the way; which made *Rufiav* think he should not meet with any further disturbance, yet it hapned otherwise: for *Hamei-mirza*, Son of *Ogorlu*, (the eldest Son) having most right, at length sound Friends who settled him in the Throne; notwithstanding which, a few months after, he was de-throned by *Kacem* and *Hayb-Sultan*, two powerful Rebels, who were quickly dispatched out of the World by *Elvan*, *Baisanger*'s Brother, and in *Spahaw* lie buried. *Elvan* by that means slept into the Royal Seat, and ruled peaceably full five years: but upon the suggestion of *Jack* who had a jealousy of *Ayder* his Brother-in-Law (grown popular by his sanctity, but more by reason of his match with their Sister, and most of all for his high descent,) could not think himself safe so long as *Ayder* lived, so that very treacherously he caused the *Syet* to be murdered; and not therewith satisfied, gave order for the like to *Ishmael* his Son: but he had such timely advertisement by a secret friend, that withdrawing to Pyr *Ally* the Gouvernor of *Mozendram* he scap'd the danger, and found security in a strange Land.

Ishmael mean time, as his years increased so did his reputation, especially with his Country-men the *Perians*; who perceiving in him an extraordinary ingenuity, as well as courage, wished for a fit opportunity to advance him higher. The name *Sophy*, some say, was given by the *Greeks*, his Mothers Country-men, who were his instructors and followers, albeit I find that some of his Ancestors had that attribute or surname given, so as 'tis dubious, yet I shall speak further concerning it. *Morad* or *Anwarib* (*Elvan's* Brother) aiming at the Crown, was disappointed of his hopes by the rout of his party: nevertheless, that competition gave *Ishmael* opportunity to raise what force his Friend Pyr *Ally* could upon the just pretence of securing himself and revenging his Fathers untimely death; so that with speed he professed himself of *Sinachy*, which he fortified. *Elvan* to suppress this Rebellion immedately advanced against him with what Horse and Foot he could; but the *Taurians* mindful of some late rigour he executed there failed his expectation, which put him into that disorder as well-nigh distractred him; increased by the intelligence he alio had that his Brother *Morad* had so far influenced into *Bajazet* the great *Turk's* favour as he not only gave him his Daughter to Wife, but commanded the Gouvernor of *Babylon* to assit him against *Elvan*. Notwithstanding all which, so happy was *Elvan* in that first expedition as *Morad* was worsted and forced to fly for safety into the stony *Arabia*. Howbeit, otherwise was his success with *Ishmael* who by the additional recruits he had from *Taurus* *Arax* and other parts of *Sherwan*, but principally out of *Armenia* where the great Tribes or Hoards called the *Anzarkjars*, *Romlu*, *Suffab*, *Elaya*, *Kayadas*, *Shamlu*, *Znaderlu*, &c. gave him assistance, he first slew *Pisarac-Issup* his Father's murderer, and then thought it advisable to ingage his Uncle *Elvan* so soon as possible; and accordingly at or neare *Tesdu-w*, the midway 'twixt *Spahaw* and *Shyras* the two Armies met, and after an hour's fight *Ishmael* had the better of the day: *Elvan's* Army fled towards *Shyras*, himself being, by a private Souldier, slain in

in the chase : so as no other Claymant appearing, *Ismail* surnamed *Sophy*, both by right of Blood and Conquest gat the Scepter into his hand, and then entred the City of *Skyraz*, where he was welcomed with such demonstrations of joy as is usually afforded Conquerours : but what made this change the more acceptable, was the long wifht restauration of the Diadem to a Prince of the Blood of *Perſia*.

In *Perſia* I endeavoured to inform my ſelf concerning the genuine signification of the word *Sophy*, a Name usually attributed to the Kings of *Perſia*; but the Natives could give me little ſatisfaction: Some ſay it signifies elect. *Minador* derives it from *Sophiti*, i. a conquered People. *Scaliger* from *Tzophi*, an *Arab.* word, ſignifying Orthodox. Others make it a Mendicant, or Beggar; but I imagine it a derivative from *Sha*, i. King, or *Sho*; and thence *Shoff*, or *Soph*, as now pronounced; albeit I find it not more ancient than *Iſmael* at his Coronation; either (as I ſuppoſe) in memory of his Auncelor who bore that name, and indeed laid the first foundation of *Iſmael*'s greatness, and whence *honoris gratia* it might be attributed according to that ancient cuius one of the Oriental, and other Nations; for, in *Egypte* the *Pharaoh's*, and *Ptolemy's*; in *Syria*, the *Antiochi*; in *Perſia*, the *Achemenes*, and *Artuſide*; and the *Cæſars* amongst the *Romans* were in uſe, as now the *Sophy* with the *Perſians*. Nevertheless, it ſeems to me, that, either the Agnomen might be given by the *Greeks* upon *Aydar* his Father's Marriage with *Marta* the Daughter of *Desina*, Daughter to *Calo-Johannes* Emperour of *Trep zond* as lately mentioned, and by reaſon of his prudence probably might merit that name, as *John* did *Calo*, i. e. *good*, and according to the ancient uſual cuſtome of the Kings of *England*, *France* and other places; but if the Greek derivation will not ſerve, if I may criticize without offence, I do obſerve that in the *Armenian* idiom *Sophy* ſignifies Wool, of which the Saſhes were made the *Perſian* Kings uſed to wear, in eileem with them, as may be obſerved by their diſtinguithing their race by the black and white Sheep; or otherwise may relate to the word *Shoff*, as I find the *Shahs* in ancient times was termed, which diſſeed from the Turbans now worn; for, it was a high narrow peakt Cap lined with the rich Wool of *Chorazan* reſemblinh the *Cyadriſ*, which ſome ſay *Cyrus* firſt invented: but in the *Scalazoni* it ſigniſceth studious, and by reaſon hereof *Bajazet* was ſurnamed *Sophy*, he that was Son to *Solyman* by *Roxellana*; as appears in the *Turkis* History *Vita Solymanni*: but though to me the word *Shoff* ſeems derived from *Shaugh*, i. e. King, yet ſeeing that in the *Scyriſc* tongue *Soffey* is famous, and that much of the *Perſian* language, as well as their extract, flows thence, the greater is the probability that thence the name may be deduced; and the rather for that the word *Mogol* is impoſed by the *Tartars* upon the race of *Tamberlane* ruling *Indiſtan*, which word in their ſpeech imports great or illuſtrious, though in the firſt Original, laborious; but again, when I conſider that ſeveral of the intervening Kings ſince *Iſmael* have intermiſſed that word, namely *Mahomet* ſurnamed *Codobanda*, *Tabamus*, and *Abbas*, it may be granted that the wo. d. *Sophy* is a proper Name, and that the former is *datum & non acceptum*, giuen by the *Europeans*, but not taken by the *Perſians*: for the Prince that ſucceeded *Abbas* having his name *Sophy* or *Soffee* as they pronounce, the preſent King ſucceeded him is called *Abbas*; ſo as it appears to be a proper and alternate Name without any further relation. To return,

The Crown was no ſooner ſet upon *Iſmael*'s head but by Proclamation he ratified the Reformation his Grand-father had contrived, declaring thereupon the *Turk* to be Hereticks. This glorious rife continued ſo to the *Meridan*: for to give the *Turk* ſome better auſſurance of his fitness to rule the *Perſians*, and anuomity to the *Ottomans* race, he forthwith entred *Diarbec* with a conſiderable Army, moſt Horſe, with which he reduced that, as ſoon after *Armenia*, *Albania*, *Iberia*, and *Sarcashia*, which he challenged as his right by deſcending from *Uſan-Caffan*, and quieted the poſſeſſion with his ſword, to the unexprefſible joy of the *Perſians*, but amazement of the *Turk*s, and dread too, perceiving they ſhould now have work enough with the *Perſians*. About this time, viz. 1506. it was that *Techellis Aydas* Disciple out of zeal to propagate theſe new broacht opinions, and to force the erroneous *Turk* to a conforimity, with a conſiderable party of Horſe which *Iſmael* gave liberty to raile and to be equally diuided betwixt him and *Caffan* his con-disciple by ſome ironically called *Kaliph*, for ſome time gave a notable diſturbance to the *Turk* and not a little advantage to the *European* Christians, had they made right uſe of it. Strange it is to conſider with what confidence theſe reputed Saints, with a ſmall party, advanced againſt a numerouſe, and the moſt formidable Enemy at that time in the Universe; which neveſtheleſs zeal, in their apprehenſions, rendred eaſie to be effected: having therefore in the firſt place adjudged the *Turk* Hereticks, and proclaim ed them Enemieſ to the Muſelmaniſh faith, worthy to be proſecuted with Fire and ſword, in hostile manner they entred *Natolia* with 20000 Horſe and Foot, at *Iconium* near *Lyci*.

one in a pitch Battel gave *Orcan* who commanded those parts in chief under his Uncle *Bajazet* a notable defeat, and soon after the like to *Caragores* the Balha of *Narolia*, so as without lett they entred and sackt the rich City of *Cuthes*; after which, hearing that *Aliy Baffa* was advanced against them with a great body of Horse and Foot, Souldier-like they drew out and met the *Turke* in the Plains of *Ancyra* and worsted them by pure force, the General *Aliy Baffa* in that conflict being sound dead in the Field; a successe that got *Tekelles* so high a reputation that even *Bajazet* himself was startled as if *Amberlains* Gholt were revived, insomuch as if *Ismail* had but furnisht his Captain with recruits, and given him that due countenance he deserved, 'tis thought he would have succeeded better in that military progres; which failing, he was forced to maintain his Men upon free quarter; so as the pillage the Souldiers got made many steal away to secure their booty, which also alienated the affections of the Provinces where ever he came, who formerly gave him an uninterrupted entrance amongst them, and good quarter, as the *Persians* well perceived when they drove away their Cattel and withdrew themselves into the Mountains without giving him either help by Men, Victual, or intelligence: an advantage the crafty *Turk* quickly elyed; so that he marcht towards him with a great Army which the *Persians* by reason of their unequal numbers feared; so as they made what haste they could to secure themselves in the high Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, whither the *Turks* pursuing the *Persians* made a hasty retreat into *Media*, and by the way some of them unadvisedly plundering a Caravan of raw Silk belonging to the Merchants of *Tabris* and configned for *Trepzond*, *Tekelles* as soon as he came into *Tauri* was secured and by *Ismail's* appointment seemingly to gratifie the *Turk* burnt or otherwise miserably put to death, with several of his Officers. This storm over-blown, *Bajazet* observing nevertheless *Ismail's* prudence and good conduct apprehended that he would not only disappoint his aims of extending his Empire East as far as *Indus*, but by his courage and risticke motion prevent his Western Piogrels against the Christians; so that he thought it wifdom to firm a truce for some time with the *Persian*, that he might with more liberty prosecute his other design; for to undertake both at once would be too great an enterprize, and it was not without cause he dreaded *Ismail*, whose virtue and martiall success was such as he nor only stood his ground against the *Turk* but made the Tartar and Mogol sensible of his discipline, which so elevated his fame that Ambassadours from sundry Kings and Princes had been with him to congratulate; and amongst other admirers the *Jews* were so taken with him that they mistook him for their Messias, but (by the iutl hand of God) had so unexpected a returne as quickly made them feel their errour, finding him rather a second *Vespasian*: during this short peace, as *Bajazet* was one way active, so was *Ismail* another; for well knowing the ancient boun-
drie of his territories he forthwith reduced all *Sheirvan*, and after that *Ghylan* towards the North, as alio what other Princes were not feudatory in *Hyrcan*, *Chusistan*, *Kerman*, and *Macron*; but made *Coon* his usual head quarter: and by *Elias-beg* he incled the *Onz-beq-Tartar*, having by the way forced part of *Mozendram* to submit: howbeit near *Boghar* his succels was otherwise by an ambuscade laid by *Ocen-beg-Gheloley* Lord of *Chalat-Pheruzky*; who albeit he had news that *Ismail* was personally advancing thitherward and found himself unable to keep the Field, nevertheless fortified some places of defence, in one of which he immured himself, having a great opinion of his Men and that the Castle was tenable; so that at some distance being summoned he refused to yield: but a Royal Army drawing before it, 'twas expected he would then resign; yet such was his great heart that he kept the place until Flux and Famine constrained him, whereupon submitting, his former confidence in defying his Army so inflamed *Ismail*, that *Ocen* and fifty others suffered under his displeasure, but the rest were pardoned. During this, hearing of some resolution the Prince of *Mozendram* had to prevent his recruits, he fell speedily into their Country and did them no small mischief; and having taken Hostages for their future good behaviour returned to prosecute his intended war against the *Zagatabay*. With twenty thousand Horse he entred that Country in hostile manner; and albeit he understood by good intelligence that the *Tartars* had got together near three hundred thousand Horse and Foot led by *Ulacuc-cawn*, he declined not the fight, which the *Tartar* notwithstanding their odds did for some time, so that *Ismail* took up his Winter Quarters in and about *Taron*; but with the first opportunity of weather entred *Tuzz* and enlarged his Quarters as far as *Samarchand*, which was formerly spoiled. That Summer he engaged *Sha-beg-chan* who commanded thirty thousand Horse and Foot selected from those under *Ulacuc-cawn*: For *Sha-beg-cawn* upon the death of *Ocen-beg* had it seems usurped the Crown of *Corazan*; and *Ocen's* Sons not being in a condition to defend their right took the advantage of *Ismail's* presence; so as having declared the wrong they suffered and voluntarily proffered subjection to his imperial

perial Crown he undertook their defence : and accordingly entered Rhumestan, where after a sharp but short dispute at Maran Sha-beg-eawn was slain, and Accen-Ally Son to Occubekho upon doing homage was placed in his Fathers stead.

Ismael having thus enlarged his Dominion, with all the force he could make directs his march towards Ogyz ; and having passed the River, in a pitcht field flew Cham-Silba the Maurenabar King ; yea without much opposition, harraled far and wide those Scythic Provinces : By whom he also took the Strong Castle Aelcam ; and after that Dargan, Farghwan, Az-faker with several other considerable Forts in Tjogd, Ken-naugh, Gazneben, Maurenabar, Rhumestan and Turqueshan, and far beyond Bule the Onz-beg Metro-polis ; most of which Garrisons he fledgited. So that Ismael crowned with Victory, and his Army laden with spoils of war, upou notice sent him that Bajazet at the importance of the Tartars was drawing towards the confines of Persia with a great body of Horse and Foot, retreated, but by the way fackt revolting Tuzz, Sakaland, Sykamest and some other offensive Towns that interposed. Thus having sufficiently retaliated the Tartar for the in-roads and disturbances they had several times given the Persian to oblige the Turk, and for the depredations he had suffered from those vagrant Tribes which take their name from the Caravall or black-sheep, he marched through Mozendram to Persia in triumph, the Countrey all the way he past sending in provision and expressing their rejoycings by all the merriments and modes they could, very much to Ismaels satisfaction : and in magnificent manner making his intrade into Coom, his reception was with all possible demonstrations of love and joyful acclamations.

In few dayes, intelligence was brought him how the Turks were drawing towards Ryvan : so that by way of diversion, Ismael with fifty thousand Horse fell into Dyabec, which he harrassed to purpose upon this occasion. The Mesopotamians under the Turk, so soon as they had certain notice that the Persians were invading Tartary, through treachery got into Bagdat which they plundered, and used the Persians who were soldiers of that Garrison, very barbarously : for not content to call them Railladins which signifies Heretics, they cut off the noses and thumbs of several of them, and in that savage manner expellid them the Town ; to revenge which, Ismael made that spoil in the Turks quarters ; and eugaging the Enemy near Caramit, had the better of them, insinuall as he had the chace to the very banks of Tigris. Which effected he returned to Coom ; where for the greater provocation of the Turk, he caused a swine to be nourished in the Count, and hanged it Bajazet. But what immediately followed more perplexed the Turk : for anno Domini 1511. Heg. 8. i. Ismael recovered Bagdat, into which, he was permitted to enter at a pollern, which Barrice-beg for a sum of money opened, so unexpectedly to Mahomet Baffi, the Gouvernour thereof, that without the least resistance, he made what he could to leave the Fort and save himself, believing that the soldiers were all likewise corrupted. This year Lemina a Portugal Agent was civilly treated by Ismael at Cashan, and by Mirza-Abucas the Field-Marshal shewed the Army, as encamped ; who at his return to Coom, told Albuquerque (at that time Vice-roy) that he verily thought Ismael had not fewer than fifty thousand Tents, in which were lodged a hundred and thirty thousand men.

Bajazet was that year (as 'tis reported) poysoned by a Jew, and his Son Selym succeeded. About which time it was that Morud or Amurah Son to Sultan Achmat, Bajazets eldest Son whom Selym had put to death for self preservation, fled to Ismael, his Brother Aladin doing the like to Cimpon-Gaurus the Egyptian Sultan, where both were welcomed, though soon after it colt them deat : for it was the occasion of the utter ruine of the one, and of a quick and sharp war with the other. Ismael nevertheless seemed glad of any good occasion to engage his adversary ; and to obviate the invasion threatened by Selym, hearing that Ebr-dim-Bassa was halting towards Armenia, he put Morud in the head of ten thousand Horse, promising that Ustreff-Oglan with twenty thousand more should second him. In confidence whereof Morud advanced as far as Erzirum : but there having intelligence that Selym was halting that way, he thought it most adviseable (with leve of Aladires the Prince of Ani-Taurus) to retreat, well knowing that his Uncle would hunt after him.

Ismael upon the first intelligence of Selyms approach in good order marched against him with thirty thousand Horse and three-score thousand Foot lay the Turk, albeit the Persians allow not above half that number. The Turkish Army upwards of three hundred thousand Horse and Foot without opposition past as far as the River Araxes, and with help of their great guns, being over, both Armies resolved to engage. The Emperours were both there in person and drew up in a large even place called the Calderau plain not far from

Coy and nearer unto *Nassivn*, where for full sixteen hours a most memorable field was fought with such fierceness and equal resolution that the Turkish Annals call that battle the day of Doom : in which fight such was the singular personal valour *Ismael* expressed, as the Turks themselves spare not to give their Enemy high commendations : also so gallantly and in so good order his Cavalry appeared, that had not the noise of the Turks Artillery affrighted their Horse more than their numbers did their Riders 'tis thought the Persians had obtained a clearer Victory, for every single *Persian* ten *Turk* being found dead in the place. Now inasmuch as there was no chase, but rather that part of either Army kept in a body all night until next day they drew off on either side leaving the Country people to bury the dead, the mastery of the field is not decided by indifferent Writers, who yet agree in this, That fifteen thousand men lay dead upon the ground. The Turkish History nevertheless speaks partially in their own behalf ; but this is equally acknowledged, That *Selym* immediately after the fight (probably disliking his churlish entertainment and satisfied with the sight of *Persia*) retreated with his whole body by the skirts of *Armenia* into *Caramania*, by the way causing *Aladoules* the Anti-Taurian King to be strangled for his correspondence with *Ismael* and his Nephew *Morad*. Soon after, with all the force he could make invading *Egypt*, by the treachery of *Caer-beg* the Sultan of *Aleppo* he vanquished *Campson Gaurus* and reduced that Kingdome into a Province, which from Sultan *Saladin Anno Heg. 680.* had continued in that race to the year *Heg. 896.* and albeit the recovery was in vain endeavoured by *Teman-beg*, the Turk holds the possession unto this day. While *Ismael* retiring to *Caxbyn* took care of his wounded soldiery, and having recruited his Army prosecuted the subjection of *Moxendram* : and that he might extend his Empire North and South unto both Seas ; and withal, for the better preservation of his Person and Honour, and in imitation of the Mamalukes who then guarded the person of the Egyptian King, instituted a Life-guard called *Couzel-basha's*, which at first consisted of an hundred Horse, most of them *Georgians* ; but since, the number is increased to a thousand : into which order none are admitted until they are experienced in Arms and are of more than ordinary repute ; in the execution of which trust they accordingly have extraordinary pay, which they well deserve ; for I have been in the company of many of them, and at all times found them exceeding civil as well as sociable, and especially to strangers. *P. Jovius* and some others report That in memory of the twelve Sons of *Hozen Son of Mortis-Ally* (from whose youngest Son *Mirza-Mahadin Ismael* drew his descent) this order had its beginning, and that their Mandils or Turbants were folded in twelve plaits and the tag or point like the end of a Sugar-loaf piercing the Turbant was red, and from that colour takes the name of *Coozel-bashes*, i. e. Red-heads. Howbeit, for several moneths I was convervant with these Coozel-bawahs in *Persia*, and to the best of my remembrance never observed that the fashion of their Mandil or Turbane was such, or to differ from that form you see represented in this Narrative fol. 157. and 216. and if any difference be it is in the elevation ; but for the tag or point I am sure I never saw any ; nor any of that shape worn, unless it be in the *Coola* or cap that is usually by the more inferior sort worn in *Moxendram* and other parts of *Persia*, being cloth on the out-side and shag or fine and short curling sheep-s fleece on the in-side, large towards the Head, sharp like the top of a sugar-loaf at the point, and rising a span from the head, as you may see resembled fol. 183. But concerning the name I have the less scruple, seeing that in Turkish the word signifies Red-head : albeit the truth is, when I demanded the signification of the name from some of them they pleaded ignorance as we understand it, as also the ground of their institution.

In that interval, *Tabriz* by a party from *Diarbec* suffered by *Ebrahim chawn* (afterwards a Favourite to *Solyman* the magnificent) upon the invitation of *Ulem-beg* a discontented *Persian* ; who notwithstanding he had the honour to marry *Ismael's* Sister, yet upon some special favour expressed to *Zinal-chawn* held a treasonable correspondence with the Turk ; and not content therewith, so corrupted *Mahomet-Ally-beg* then Governor of *Bagdad* that the place was treasonably delivered up to *Solyman*, to the extreme vexation of the Persian King and little comfort of *Ally-beg* who soon after received the reward due unto such treachery. This year *Sha-Tamas* was born at *Ardaveil* ; and in the five succeeding years after (but by several Wives) *Ismael* had *Helcavon*, *Sormizas*, and *Bacram-cawn* otherwise named *Elias-beg*, *Som-mirza*, and *Barbon-cawn*. *Anno Dom. 1520.* *Selym* the great Turk died, succeeded by *Solyman* : Five years after which *Shaw-Ismael* died in the twentieth year of his Reign and fortieth of his age, and was buried near unto his Ancestors at *Ardaveil* ; in his place, *Tamas* (or *Tabanas-Shaw* as some call him) being crowned King.

Babylon thus taken, it gave the Turk the easier reduction of *Diarbec* and part of *Chusifstan*,

stan, with all those adjacent Countreys that confine the North of *Arabia*: inasmuch as with very little resistance they became Masters also of the Isle and Town of *Balsora*, and consequently of the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, which gave them a desirable prospect into the gulph of *Persia*, with some further hopes of all those Regions that extend as far as *Indus*, and that they might have the opportunity of requiting *Tamerlans* Issue for that memorable loss they suffered at Mount *Stella* under *Bajazet*. In order thereunto the Grand Signior forthwith appointed a great quantity of timber to be cut in *Cilicia* now called *Caraman*, and shipped it thence for *Pelusium* and *Cairo*, whence by Camels it was drawn to *Suez*, where a Navy consisting of an hundred Vessels great and small was in short space built and fitted for Sea. Which was no sooner made ready, but he appoints *Solyman Bassa* to put ten thousand sooldiers aboard at the Port of *Mocha*, and coasting the South of *Arabia* to endeavour the surprize of *Din*: those were his Instructions. Which great design how secretly soever it was managed was seafonably communicated to the *Portugal* in whose hands the Castle was, albeit they pretend they had no notice until the Fleet was discovered near the place: so that albeit they could not so well provide against their landing as they would, yet the Turks being ashore and marching immediately towards the Fort which without a summons they rudely stormed, were so gallantly repulsed by the *Portugals* that many Turks there breathed their laft: and finding that the Castle was neither so weakly mann'd nor flanker'd as they were made believe, and that the *Portugals* were in a gallant posture of defence; but which most amated them the Mahometans thereabouts gave them little encouragement to stay, the Frigars from several parts also embodying threatened to intercept them in their return, those and other considerations not onely hastened them aboard but made them hoise sail: for all which they were so well beaten by the *Portugal*, that a great part of the Fleet was sunk and dispersed, so as few of them came safe back to *Aden*: those that got ashore near *Muscat* and other parts of *Arabia* being also (according to the usual custome of War after ill succes,) so courstly entertained by the Natives, that not above one third of the number got back to *Aden*. A succes so grateful to the *Persian* that he congratulated the Christians; and the Mogul expressed the like fence, altogether disliking such a neighbourhood as the Turks.

Solyman heartily vext, nevertheless thought fit to dissemble this loss the best he could, and therefore draws all the Horse he had out of *Dyarbec* and *Caramania*, with which he fell so unexpectedly into *Media* that he entred *Tabriz* before *Tamaz-shaw* could be in a posture to resist. Most miserably was that poor City used by the enraged Turk, albeit no opposition was made: for not content with plunder, they cut down their fruit-trees and trees for shade, spoil'd all their delightful Gardens, yea levelled with the ground the Kings Palace and such other Houses of the Nobility as might best exprefs their malice; and then laden with spoile marched back to *Caramit* in *Dyarbec*, whicre for some time they rested, and ruminating further mischiefs, the Turkish trade.

Tamus and the Persian Nobility sufficiently incensed, were not idle in the mean time to find means to retaliate: For having ordered *Delementhes* (one that had many times engag'd the Turks) with six thousand Horse to follow close in the rear, he so galled them with continual alarms that *Ebrahim-Bassa* not well enduring because not formerly acquainted with such a bravado made a stand, and near to *Bethlis* (then a Persian Garrison) drew up with a resolution to fight; and well might, being upwards of two hundred thousand Horse and Foot: notwithstanding which inequality the Persian Horse taking the opportunity of the darkness of night fell into their Enemies quarters with a mighty noise as if they had been treble the number, secouding that with such courage and good order as the Turks by this unexpected alarm after a little resistance fell into great confusion, inasmuch as at length they fled whither they apprehended they could best secure themselves: In the purfuit five Sanziacks, eight hundred Janizaries, and twenty thousand private sooldiers were slain, forty pieces of Cannon taken, *Ulem-beg* the Persian Rebel and the two *Balla*'s narrowly elscaping; but what most madded old *Solyman*, they took his Scraglio which was then mounted upon Camels backs and were Beauties he not a little doated on. A Victory not more joyous to the *Persian*, (for 'tis annually celebrated upon the third and tenth of *October*) than vexatious to the *Turk*; and of that influence, as *Ebrahim* the great *Bassa* from thence-forward declined in his Maffers favour: for unwilling that the *Bassa* should *in bello bi peccare* he first remanded him to Court, and then so ordered, that without seeing his face, he was immediately strangled by a Mute, who surprized him sleeping. By that delinquency the vast wealth he had heaped together whiles he was a Favorite and in great command, was then also seized by *Solyman*, who presented a great part of it to his chief delighte the fair *Roxellana*, who (the truth is) for his siding with *Muskapha* against her Son, had principally contivised and after this manner affircted this late year *Ralla's* destruction.

Roxellana's Sons sad end.

About this time, *Bajazet* (*Solyman's Son by Roxellana*) was worrited by his Brother *Selym*, so that he fled for safety to *Tamas* whom he found at *Cazbin*, where he was really welcomed : but *Solyman* imagining he would provoke the *Persians* to an unwilful invasion having then bent his whole design against the Christians, peremptorily sent to demand his Son ; which being denied, he seconds it with a communatory Letter, yet whilish assuring *Tamas* that he came designedly to allassinate him : so that contrary to his Faith and Honour he unadvisedly delivered up the poor Prince to *Hussan-agha* the Turks Ambassador, who thereby had the opportunity not only to murder the Prince but also four of his children, namely *Omar*, *Morad*, *Selym*, and *Mahomet*, to the everlasting shame and reproach of them that so counselled the King, and to the immoderate anguish of *Roxellana's* spirit, though to the seeming satisfaction of an enraged Father whom *Tamas* thought would have been pacified with such a Victim, and that by this compliance he had put a lasting obligation upon the Turk ; which he quickly found otherwise : for *Solyman* upon a pretence of righting *Ere-u-mirza* one of *Ismail's* Sons and at that time Governor of *Shervan* but retired to *Derbent*, with a considerable party moll Holic enters *Armenia*, surprized the City *Van*, and persuading the Mirza to go to *Bagdad*, the Turks drew back : whereupon the Governor of *Bagdad* having received a large bribe delivered the poor Prince up to *Sha-w-Tamus*, who after a moneths imprisonment caused him likewise to be strangled.

Notwithstanding which, *Solyman* next year in the head of an hundred and fifty thousand men re-enters *Persia*. To oppose whom *Sha-w-Tamus* (having by lad experience found the advantage the Turks had by their great Ordnance) prevailed with the Vice-roy of *Goa* to furnish him with five thousand *Portugals* good fire-men from *Ormus*, *Diu*, and other their Garrisons, who were the more willing for the late invasion the Turk made against *Diu* near *India*. The *Portugals* were all Foot, and brought along with them a Train of twenty pieces of Cannon, which in the fight was so unexpected that it both amazed and mischieved the Turks, insomuch as the *Persians* had the better of that dayes contest ; the success whereof they attributed and accordingly gave the Christians a due acknowledgment of their good service : and from that day forward the *Persians* were acquainted with the use of Guns, and of small shot they have attained the maistry.

Solyman by this mischance was constrained to draw back into *Natolia*: during which *Musapha* another of *Roxellana's* Sons) incurred his Fathers high displeasure ; and forgetful of his Brothers tragick end simply commits himself to the favour of the *Persian* King ; who having first exclaime upon the villainous *Bessa Hussan*, then gave the Prince assurance of his Life during his abode. Notwithstanding which, *Solyman* (who was prett well practised in the road-way to *Persia*) marches thitherward with eighty thousand Men, doing all the mischief he could ; albeit to prevent further spoil, *Tamas* advanced with all the force he had as far as *Erez*; where coming to an engagement, the *Persian* Horse not yet enduring the noise of Gun, would not be ordered, so that many of the *Persians* were kill'd by shot, and the rest forbok the Field, leaving poor *Musapha* to shift for himself ; who by some sinister advice, flying to his Father's Tent and prostrate at his feet in a lamentable manner humbly beseeching pardon even for his Mother *Roxellana's* sake, the cruel and inexorable Turk (unworthy the name of Father) wanting bowels of compassion Turk-like forthwith commands him to be hanged ; albeit he was the onely Son by that venter then living. But long he lived not after this savage cruelty, for that year 1566, he fighed out his affrighted Ghost at the Siege of *Zigeth* in *Hungary*. Ambassadors from molt parts (according to custom) congratulating his Succelors access to the Crown. *Sha-Tamus* also dispatched *Shashy* *chan* to *Stambul*: A Soldier both well known and feared amongst the *Turks* and *Indians* : and in his passage to that Court gallantly attended, one time he gave a visit according to form to the *Tser Buffa*, and was shot at by a desperate *Giomoglan*, upon no other provocation than for that he was a Heretic : he narrowly escaped ; but the *Giomoglan* being apprehended, his blind zeal could not prevent his immediate and visible torture.

The *Turk* in the interim took *Nicofia* and *Cyrus* from the *Genitians*, which occasioned a perpetual League with *Spain* and all the Princes of *Italie* ; yea, *Vinc. Alexand.* a Secretary to that Republique was dispatched into *Persia* to awaken that King. This Gentleman had the *Sclavonian* Tongue ; inasmuch as he palld through *Poland* down the *Danubius* into the *Euxin*, and so *incognito* and in disguise to *Tripoli*, whence by *Erzrum* (a *Cappadocian* Town upon the skirts of *Armenia*) he came safe to *Cazbin*: There having produced his Credentials he was civilly entertained ; and albeit no rhetorick wanted nor arguments to enforce the *Persians* to fall readily into the *Turkish* quarters seeing he had drawn all his Force against the *European* Princes ; yet such was *Sha-Tamus* his propensity to evil, or else the dread he had of the *Turkish* puissance, that no perfwalions would

at that time serve to make a satisfactory return unto the *Venetians*, still imagining that the *Turk* would gratifie. Now the thanks he gave was this. *Amurath* no sooner put an end to the *Cyprian War* (Anno 1575.) and recruited himself after that great and memorable defeat given him at *Lepanto*, but he fell afresh to quarrel with the *Persian*, upon no other pretence than the death of *Ercas-mirza* his late friend. Accordingly he prepares to renew the War: whilst the *Persian King* ignorant of those preparations with what Force he could invades the *Ou'-beg's Country*, and happily took *Kabul*: but hearing that the *Turk* intended to prosecute the *Persian War*, he forthwith retreated to *Cashan*; where amidst his Martial consultations and provisions Death gave him his *supercedas* and summoned him to another World (the 11th. of May 1576.) after fifty years Rule and 14-days sickness, at the age of sixty eight giving up the Ghost: A great age, the Proverb considered, *Rara in Nobilitate senectus*; and at *Ardaveil* with all due Ceremony was interred amongst his Royal Ancestors.

Sha-Tamas left behnd him twelve Sons and three Daughters: the Sons were *Mahomet*, *Ismael*, *Aydar*, *Sulyman*, *Emangoly*, *Morad*, *Mustapha*, *Ali*, *Hamed*, *Ebrahim*, *Hamez*, and *Ijma-chan*. *Mahomet* by right of primogeniture claimed but could not have the Crown, so strong a faction was raised by his *virago Sister Peria-Conconna* in the behalf of *Ismael* the second Brother, *Sahamal-Chan* joining in the conspiracy, pretending that by reason of *Mahomet's* imperfection *Tamas* had nominated *Ismael* to succeed; so that *Mahomet* for the safety of his Life was forced to flee into *Georgia*, the Conspirators in the interim putting *Aydar* and eight others of the Sons of *Tamas* to untimely deaths. *Ismael* nevertheless soon after was served with the same saunce; for one night expecting the admittance of some of his haram, *Peria-Conconna* with four young *Sultans* disguised in Womens apparel entred his Chamber and took off his Head: By which we see, That Lust and Ambition are two vices the molt odious of all other; in regard they usually are molt vigorous and powerful ministers to fordin actions; which this Princes being stained with, her cruelty was quickly required by *Mahomet*; for inforsing his way with 12000 Horse the *Corgians* and *Cardyes* supply'd him with, he was no sooner seated in the Throne of his Royal Ancestors but command was given *Salmas-Mirza* General of the Horse to retaliate his Amazonian Sister, and accordingly her head with her long curled hair dangling down was upon a Spears point presented *Mahomet*, who in the beholding it was affrighted as if he had viewed *Medusa's* head.

These intestine broyles so weakened the common interest that the *Turk* who wants no foresight espying his advantage prepared with all the force he could draw out of *Asia* the lefs, *Diarber* and parts about *Bagdad* to make an entire conquest, or at least to over-run the *Persian*, which Countrey alone had spent him more Men, Treasure and time than all *Natalia* and *Mores* had done by reason of the intestine divisions that happened in most of those Provinces: and having the like hopes of *Peria* by these disfractions *Mustapha* the cruel and perfidious *Bessa* was ordered to undertake that task: which agreeable to his nature was readily accepted: so that albeit the haste the *Turk* made was great, yet the preparations being such also, *Mahomet* in that interval got himself quietly possest of the Crown, insomuch as upon first noise of the *Turk's* approach, *Sultan Tocomac* (who was at that time Governor of *Kirvan* and famous for an expert Souldier, so as he was both known and feared by the *Turk*) with a very gallant Body of Horse encountered the Enemy upon the Frontiers of *Armenia*, and in a quick engagement exprest so much resolution that day as albeit *Mustapha* had treble his number, the Van led by *Beyram-beg* was routed, and prosecuting that charge broke through the whole party, molt of which was cut off without giving the least quarter: which bravery so enraged the wrathful *Bessa* that immediately ordering his whole Body to advance, by their numbers they over-powered the *Persian*; who albeit they fought molt desperately and in that charge flew above ten thousand *Turks* were nevertheless in fine forced to retreat and leave four thousand of their company dead in the place; with whose heads and those of his own whom the *Persians* had slain the savage *Turk* faced a great Balkwark, insomuch as nothing could be seen but ghastly Faces and Heads, which made it a terrible object; and this he erected as a Trophy of his Victory or rather barbarism: But represented to his Mafter in the best fence, as if the slaughter had been much more than really it was: for all which *Mustapha* disliking his late entertainment, and hearing that *Salmas-mirza* was advancing with a fresh party of Horse, withal finding upon a Mustre he took that 40000 of his Men were lost by Fluxes, his Enemies Sword, and the bad weather they endured passing the Mountains in the way to *Teflis*; those considerations swayed with him to retreat: but by the way being encouraged with a large recruit of Men conducted by *Meinchar* a *Georgian* Prince, *Alex.* his Brother and Son to *Leventhebeg* taking like care for his supply of victuals,

he now resolved to re-enter *Sherwan*. For more expedition and better safety part of his Army marched through unrefrquented paths shew'd them by the Apostate *Georgian*, and other part through *Armenia* which the *Persians* had made desolate to prevent the *Turk* of relief; and having notice that towards *Derbent* a great part of the Cattle of the Country was driven away, in the first place he ordered a party of Horse that way for forrage; which *Tocomac* the *Persean* General no sooner had notice of, but that with the like sprig, and party he beat up the *Turk* quarters as they lay dispersed in a Valley which was well-wooded compass'd with the River *Conac*, a River that of it self is sufficiently rapid but by some late rains so increas'd that the *Turk* in flying from the Enemy lost by the Sword and Torrent 10000 of his Men, the *Persean* by their precipitate pursuit losing also a considerable number in the Stream, which was so fierce that the *Turkish* General himself upon the alarm making all the haste he could to succour his Men is said to lose eight thousand more in that River and in *Arazis*, into which *Conac* and *Cyrus* run.

Notwithstanding these abatements, *Mustapha* continued his march as far as the City *Erez* where he expected some opposition; but the People were all fled, and had removed much of their Goods into the mountainous parts, so that the Town was left desolate and once order'd to be burnt, but upon second thoughts spared and garnished with 5000 Men, most of which were *Georgians*, forced thither by the Sons of *Levambi beg*: this done, they took *Sumachy* without resistance, which they might well do the Gouvernor being withdrawn. *Mustapha* overjoy'd with this success, first constituted *Oman-beg* Commander in chief in those parts, and then with the greater part of his Army fell back towards *Erzrum* his usual head-quarter, while *Oman* in the mean time was p'mpt in *Sherwan* with want and not a little disheartned by the running away of many of his Men, whereby and by the *Taxi-arise* advice he fell back to *Tiflis*; yet not so secretly but that in passing through *Georgia* he was so hotly alar'm'd by the Country People who had abundantly smarred by the insolence of the *Turk*, as with sufficient ious he continued his march till he attained *Erzrum*. There he took up his Winter-quarters, but dispers'd his Army into several Villages therabouts, *Mustapha* being remov'd: during this the Preceopence, the *Turk* left hand, under the command of *Abdul-Chery* marched through the *Circashian* Territories with 30000 horse and foot, in all their pallage along the *Caspian* shore as far as *Derbent* not meeting with the least interruption, which gave them the greater confidence to enter *Sherwan*. At and about *Genge* were quartered all the *Persean* horse under command of *Emangoly-Chan*. *Erez-Chan* having notice drew all his horse together, and resolv'd with the first advantage he could spy to welcome the uninvited *Tartar*: but *Abdul* by the good intelligence he had, prevented that design, and contrarily began with the *Persean*, and with that courage as most of the *Persean* Horse was routed, many Officers and Souldiers slain, and *Erez-chan* himself doing what he could to rally, was taken Prisoner and sent to *Oman*, who without any consulting with a Council of War caused him to be hanged up in that Garrison. Such was *Erez* his sad exit: but in this alarm *Emangoly-cham*, albeit he narrowly escapt a surprizal, yet could not he prevent the taking of his *Haram*, which extreanly troubled him, there being some beauties which were presented the *Turkish* General.

Mohamed surnamed *Codobanda* by the *Turk* for that he was purblind (though as I apprehend it may be rather from *Cognabanda* as the place was called where he had both birth and education) by his first wife had several Sons, namely *Ismael*, *Mustapha*, *Myrcawn*, *Gunes*, and *Soffee-mirza*. *Ismael* by the malice and power of *Messom-beg* the King's Favourite at that time, was first confined, and at length famish'd to death in the Castle of *Cayake* near *Tabriz*, and the rest came to untimely ends. By *Joomanna* Prince of *Heriz* he had likewise four Sons, viz. *Emerhamze*, *Aydar*, *Abbas* and *Tabamas*; of which, *Ismael* was reput'd most valiant and popular, but *Abbas* most politique and ambitious.

Emry-hamze, *Mahomet-Codobanda* eldest Son during these broil's was practising the rules of *Mars*; and having got some experience in the Indian War, so ill indured these continual bravadoes of the *Turks*, that he never gave over soliciting the King until he Commission'd him to raise what horse he could to oppose the *Turk*. In the head of twenty thousand Horse this valiant Prince prosecuted the enemy with such resolution and speed, and attended with so good success, that through all *Afia* his fame quickly spread, insomuch as the *Turks* gave out that *Castrion* was revived: for first with twelve thousand Horse this hopeful Prince (the Begum his Mother in company) set out of *Cashyn*, follow'd by *Mirza Salmas* with eight thousand more: In the first place he defeated *Cayas* *Bassa* and his party that were foraging those parts; he then took *Erez* by storme and caused all the Cannon which *Mustapha* had planted for defence of that Garrison, to be drawn out and sent to *Cubyn* as a Royal present to the King his Father, the first-fruits of his contest with his inveterate adversary the *Turk*.

This

This done, without the least unnecessary delay, having intelligence where and in what manner the Tartars were quartered, he gave them such a thundering alarm that the Preco-
pence being amazed and in disorder gave the Prince the opportunity with ease to destroy
most of his Men, the rest flying every way they could, confounded with shame and fear, the Persians following the pursuit as far as the Caspian Sea, where not being able to fly further
they begged quarter, which was given them; but Abdul Cheray the General could not
escape, the Prince taking him Prisoner and using him with good respect: this prosperous
success gave him fresh courage to prosecute the Turk. Accordingly approaching with
his victorious Army before Sumachy he summoned the Garrison to yield; but Ozman de-
manding time to return an answer, being in the interim certainly informed of the Tartars
defeat, and finding no fence against fear, that night stole secretly out of the Town, spuri-
ring all the way till he got into Derbent. The Garrison next morning understanding their
condition offered to yield the place upon condition of mercy, but being exasperated by
their late easie submission to the Turk, the Prince had them stand to their Arms, which
they refusing to do, the Army entred without opposition; and the Prince selected some to
make examples of his rigour, the rest he pardoned upon fine; but the Turk were
made Prisoners of War: thus the Turk Army of seventy thousand Men by the valour
of this gallant Prince was broken in pieces, so as for some years after the Country
had rest.

The Turk in this sort being happily expulst, Emir-hamze loaden with spoils as well
as victory in triumphant manner returned into Casbyn, where he was imbraced by the
King, his Mother, and the Tartarian youthful Prince in company: the Tartar giving
his parol to be a true Prisoner had what liberty he pleased, and more than did him good:
for being of a comely aspect and for courage of good report, his character took so
deep impression in the Queen, that albeit she had purposed a marriage twixt him and
Emir-hamze-mirza's Sister, the better to make an alliance with the Crim to whom Abdul
was Son, she nevertheless became amorous her self and could not be satisfied till she en-
joyed him. To effect it, she found opportunity agreeable to her wish; but in the dalliance
spent so much time and took so little care for secrecy, that albeit Mahomet either
could or would not see, the Sultans nevertheless took notice, and envying the repute a
stranger had got they contrived his death. One evening observing his pallage to the
Queens usual place of retirement in the Gardens they so secured their way that before
the Queen or Abdul had any warning the Sultan rush'd in and finding them too familiar
first removed the Queen, then castrated the Prince, and in a very barbarous manner dis-
played them to the People without; who enraged therewith quickly took away his life,
which in some respect was a mercy: howbeit that act so disobliged the King and Prince,
that the Conspirators received other rewards than probably they expected: for this dishonour,
and for the murder of that Prince, the Crim also was so provok't that he soon
after joined with the Turk to be the more revenged.

Amurath also upon the sad account he received from Ozman then in Derbent and how
formidable the Persian Prince was like to appear the ensuing Spring, gave Mustapha fresh
orders to levy a greater Army than he had before, and to prosecute the War with Fire
and Sword: but the Persians by their emissaries having timely intelligence of those
preparations, accordingly provide for their defence. Emangoly-chan late Governour of
Genge was constituted General for the Persian; whiles Mustapha glad of the occasion to
vindicate himself, drew together all the Cavalry the Turk had either in Syria, Assyria,
or Armenia, the great and less; and of Foot a numerous body: and Hassan-agha (one of the
Vissers Sons) in the Van marched towards Tiflis, where he incamp't; whither Oz-
man also repaired with all the Horse and Foot he could make.

In the Persian Army commanded by Emangoly-chan, amongst other Noble personages
was Synon or Zenal chawn an exiled Prince of Georgia, but feudatory to the Persian: of
known courage in fight he was, and of approved affection to the Persian and constant to
his Christian profession: but the contrary was his Brother Dau or David, who did what
in him lay to oblige the Turk and offend the Persian. Hassan again rising with his party
with an intent to fall into Shervan the Persian General had so good notice of his design
that taking the advantage of a pass he fell upon the Turk, and so seasonably divided their
party, that after a notable execution the rest fled towards the Hills, Hassan by the speed
of his Horse very narrowly escaping. This success persuaded them to hunt the Enemy in
the Woods; where whilst they were too carelessly ranging suspecting little danger, the
subtil Turk having ambushed a thousand Horse in those uncooth pallages charged the Per-
sians with so great hast and out-cries that the unexpectedness striking more terror than
needed into their Adversaries hearts, they fled after little opposition, but much loss;
albeit

albeit the *Georgian* Prince with his party made a better retreat : but which was of most import, the *Persian* General himself was taken Prisoner and under a Guard sent to *Erzrum*, and the *Turks* refusing both ransom and exchange so continued for three years, until at length he made an escape, such time as *Ferrat-Bassa* invaded *Persia*.

Hassan-aga being now Master of the Field advanced to *Tephlis* for the seasonable relief of many half starved Men : whence, continuing his march towards *Derbent*, the *Georgian* Prince with a smart party of Horse gave the Enemy so unexpected a charge in their Rear and with such admirable courage, as the *Turk* was first disorder'd and then put to plain flight. *Hassan* and *Osfan* again making use of their Spurs, left their Men to the mercy of the *Persian* Swords ; but their Train and Treasure as a due unto their valour, and a testimony of that memorable defeat. At *Tephlis* old *Mustapha* had taken up his quarter, intending to follow *Hassan* with the rest of his force : but when *Hassan* himself brought the Balla the first tidings of this loss, so great was the old Mans passion that he had forthwith caused him to be strangled had not his taking the *Persian* General Prisoner, and no less, his relation to the grand Vicer, been good arguments in his behalf.

This disaster, and the approaching Winter, put *Mustapha* upon new resolutions : so that instead of prosecuting his Instructions which were to fall upon *Sherwan* with Fire and Sword, he disposed his whole Army into Winter-quarters ; so divided that it would require some time to rendezvous ; the *Persians* by gaining a breathing time and space to prepare against the Spring. But *Amurath* the great *Turk* had no sooner notice of the little effectual progreſs his old Favourite had made (his Enemies at Court also representing every thing in the worst dres) that albeit *Hassan-aga* by his Fathers interest had a favour exprelled from *Amurath*, who as an acknowledgment of the signal service he had done in taking Prisoner the *Persian* General had a Silver Battel-axe double gilded and set with Precious Stones sent unto him, with a Shield of pure Gold embellished with Pearl, and a Veil of Cloath of Gold ; *Mustapha* contrarily was not only discharged from his command, but summoned to *Stanbul* to anſwer his miscarriage : so as notwithstanding his late ſpecial favour with *Amurath* with whom he was educated from a Child, and the many coniderable field-services he had done againſt the poor Christians, so induſtrious were his Enemies at Court, and ſo powerful his old back-friend *Sinan-Bassa*, that both his Life and Eſtate had gone, had not the Sultan by the mediation of ſome Ladies about her interceded in the old Mans behalf. Notwithstanding he had a *Supreſdeas*, and (which vexed him moſt) his Antagonift *Sinan-Bassa* for the prosecuting the *Persian* War was appointed General in *Mustapha's* place.

During this, jealousies and fears ſo increased in the *Persian* Court through the different Interests of the two Brothers *Emir-hamze* and *Abbas*, the latter of which was then Governor of *Heri* or *Aria* and intruſted with the management of the War againſt the Mogul, that the neceſſary preparations to oppoſe the more than threatned Invaſion of the *Turks* was wholly laid aside ; the *Persian* King forgetting the late ſucces he had, by the advice of *S. Imaus-mirza* (whose Daughter Prince *Emir-hamze* had married) choosing rather to diſpatch *Mazni-chan* Ambaſſadour to *Amurath* with a rich Preſent, to uſher in his propoſitions for peace. The *Persian* Ambaſſadour took his way through the skirts of *Armenia* to *Trepizond*, where finding a fit Vefel he imbarqued, and by the benefit of a fair gale made a ſhort and eaſie paſſage to *Stanbul* ; into which Port he was with due ceremony received ; and after four days repole had audience and acceptance of his Preſent, which indeed was muſt as well deserved the Grand Seigniors thanks. At this time *Mustapha-Bassa* died, of age and grief, ſay fome ; but otherſome rather think he was poyſoned : and the Emperor by his death made himſelf Heir to his great perſonal Eſtate.

Mazni-chan preſſing the Viſier for a diſpatch brought it to this iſſue, That peace would be granted for what time he would propoſe, conditionally the *Persians* would deſiſter *Tabriz*, *Cazbyn*, and all *Sherwan* unto the *Turk*, to be for ever enrolled in the List of Provinces under that Crown. But the Ambaſſadour wiſely deferring further Inſtructions from his Maſter e're he could give anſwer, by his Courrier acquainted his Maſter with the unreaſonableness of the *Turk's* demands, grounded upon the diſition of the two *Persian* Princes and the expeſtations he had of *Sinan-Bassa's* ſucces in prosecuting that War, which being taken into conſideration by *Shaw-Madiomet* (who to that end had convened moſt of the coniderable Officers he had unto *Cazbyn*) the reſult was, That not one inch of Earth ſhould be given their iſolent Adverfary more than he could maſter with his Sword : To prevent which a great force ſhould forthwith be drawn unto the Frontiers of *Armenia*, which the victorious Prince *Emir-hamze* ſhould command ; and that *Abbas-mirza* with another Army ſhould prosecute the War againſt the Mogul towards

towards *Cabul*. This being agreed in Council was put in speedy execution; and it being thought fit to re-call *Maxe-shan*, he made his return through the Enemies quarters purposefully to discover their order and force: and being come to *Cubyn* so well satisfied the King with his discreet carriage in that trust as induced him to make him his Treasurer; an Office not onely honourable but of great profit; which nevertheless acquired him great envy at Court, and amongst others *Emir-chan* (who never loved him;) so as making use of his favour with the King, he so insinuated and suggested false apprehensions into his weak' brain, that the Treasurer perceiving the Kings kindnes lessened and his countenance changed, and that the craft of his adversary was likely to take place, rather than suffer further under their power he chose to withdraw himself and his Family with some portable goods into the Enemies quarters, where being friendly received by *Sinan Baffa*, he had the liberty to live peaceably at *Van*.

Emir-Hamze-mirza during this drew towards the Turk: and having intrusted *Simon-shan* the *Georgian* and *Tocomac* the *Persian* with six thousand Horse they disposed part of that body into an ambuscade, and with the rest fell into *Sinans* quarters; whence being repulsed and counterfeiting some fear drew the Enemy to a loole purfuit, till being past the place where their men were hid, breaking out upon their rear *Tocomac* faced about, so that the Enemy was charged both wayes; who finding themselves intrapped, rather sought how to escape than adventure the fight: howbeit, above six thousand of the Turks were lost, the rest escaping to *Erzirum* which the old Balla had made his head-quarter at that season. *Erzirum* is a Town of great strength, both by scituion and Art, and by reasoun of its voicinge to the Persian Dominions usually made the place of rendezvous when the Turks have any design against that Empire: a place of great import to them; in that besides the advantage it gives of recruits it affords portage of necessaries both from the Mid-land Euxin and Caspian Seas: The Countrey it stands in is *Cappadocia*, *Lencofria* of old; divided by the River *Euphrates* from *Armenia*, and on the other hand hath *Caramania*, which comprehends those Provinces in former times called *Lycia*, *Cilicia*, *Pamphylia* and *Cara*, places now totally under the Mahomettan, who have extinguished the Christian light and interest as if it never had been, and in all their conquests give Kingdoms, Provinces and great Towns new Names, best pleasing their fancies; but thereby rendering the quest obscure; nay, in barbarism burying in oblivion as much as in them lies the very memory of those and other famous places.

Amurath resolving to fall into *Hungary* and those parts thought fit to call home *Sinan-Baffa* to advise concerning that War. To which end he constituted *Mahomet-Baffa* (Nephew to *Musapha*) General against the *Perians*. At *Erzirum* he took the muster of all his Army, which was so numerous and the season so good that he forthwith took the field and marched unresifted as far as the River *Araix* (now called *Arafsh*,) burning and doing all the spoil he could. *Emir-Hamza* by his Scouts having notice of their numbers and approach, ordered *Tocomac* with *Symon the Georgian* (the *Perians* approved friend) to hinder the further entrance of the Turk so well as they could, the General following with the rest of his Horse and Dragoons.

The Turks animated by the succes they had, and by the running away of the people still where they came, supposing no force near, continued their march towards *Taurus*, till upon a sudden the Persian Horse discovered themselves and engaged with so great haste and valour, that notwithstanding the inequality of numbers, the Persian Horse made good the ground until they were over-powered by some reserve of Horse *Mahomet* ordered to renew the charge: but by some prisoners he took, understanding that the Persian Prince (whose Name was terrible to the Turk) was at hand, he thought it the best way to retreat, and accordingly marched back with double the haste he came on; which the Persian Prince no sooner knew, but that with unusual speed he followed the Enemy in the rear, and with such advantage that in their over-hasty passing the Rivers many of the Turks were drowned and no leis number killed in the field: a losse so discouraging the youthfull Balla, that after he had reproached the Apostate *Georgian* Prince as if he had occasioned that mischance, he ceased not marching till he arrived at *Tephlis*; not daring to look his Enemy in the face until he had recruited. About this time *Ebrahim-chawn* Ambassador from the Persian King received an unusual affront at *Constantinople* at the Circumcision of *Mahomet* eldest Son to *Amurath*, without any provocation given by the Ambassador; the Ambassador being *contra ius Gentium* made close prisoner for some time, and his Attendants likewise confined in houses infected with the Plague. The design was principally to let the other Ambassadors see how little the Grand Signior valued the Persian King.

She-Mahomet, albeit the mis-usage of his servant was ground sufficient to desie the *Turk*,

yet seemed to take little notice of that affront: so unhappy was he in the difference 'twixt his two Sons; which grew to that height as made it seem past reconciliation, and at length threatened a civil War: For *Abbas*, albeit the younger Brother, having courage enough, and much more craft than *Emir-Hamze*, was not afraid to proceed in his disloyal practices to supplant his Brother and vex his Father, whose age inclined him rather to pursue peace than war. Notwithstanding which, perceiving *Abbas* restless in his designs, he was, by the advice of his great Officers, perswaded to proclaim him Rebel; and with a considerable power to march towards *Heri* to reduce him if he could. *Abbas* so soon as he understood his Fathers intent, prepared for fight; but through the advice of some friends he had about the King, was at length prevailed with to submit, and by the King (upon promise of future obedience) embraced and pardoned; to the great dislike of *Emir-Hamze*, and also of his Father-in-law *Salmas Mirza*: the last of which, through the subtil and false suggestions of *Abbas* to the King, was soon after made shorter by the head; and but introductory to *Emir Hamze's* approaching ruine: for *Abbas* perceiving that his Brother was not to be overcome by force, by fraud attempted it. In the mean time *Ferrachan* was made Commander in chief over the *Turks* against *Persia*: and having prepared all things necessary for an Invasion, a Mutiny unexpectedly hapned in the Camp, which grew to that height as lost him that Summers opportunity, and made him continue about *Ezirum*: but gave the greater advantage unto the *Persian*.

Emir-chan, at that time Governor of *Tauris*, falling (how justly is not known) onto the King's displeasure had his Eyes thrust out; and being under close restraint, in few months dyed, thereby having easc: but his command was given to *Alliculi-chan*, who being taken Prisoner by the *Turks* in their march through *Georgia*, made his escape from *Ferrat-chan*: who having done as little as those before him, was called home, and *Osman-Bassa* succeeded in his place. This Bassa was quick of resolution, and by nature here: from all those parts of *Asia* as far as *Babylon* he had power to draw together what force he pleased: and resolveng with himself to harrahs the *Persian* Territories with Fire and Sword, he imbodyed at the usual place of Rendezvous two hundred thousand Horse and Foot, and with a suitable train of great Guns he drew from *Tripzon* and through the *Georgian* Country pass'd uninterruptedly into *Media* almost in view of *Tauris*, destroying the Enemies Quarters all the way. *Emir-hamze* the *Persian* General, formerly acquainted with the *Turk's* manner of march, advanced against them with ten thousand good Horse, the King following the Prince his Son with eighty thousand Horse and Foot more: so that a more gallant Army was not seen, nor better commanded in *Persia* in the memory of Man.

Five leagues to the Southwards of *Tauris* the *Persian* Prince encamped, expecting the coming of *Osman*; who continued his march: and having the advantage both in numbers and a large train of Artillery which he heard the *Persian* Horse would not endure, resolveng to try the fortune (as they call it) of the Field. The *Persian* Prince desiring his Father to quicken his march, revolled the like: So as the City *Tauris* interposing and garrison'd by the *Persian*, *Alliculi-chan* being Governor, *Osman* thought it not safe to have so considerable an enemy in his rear, and therefore drawing before the place, e're he could summon it the Governor made so brave a sally that above a thousand *Turks* were slain, and the *Persians* made a safe retreat with little los. This exasperated the *Turk* so that hastning his approach and planting his battery he plaid so furiously upon the City Wall that a breach was made, and being resolvold to storm, the besieged perceiving their danger beat a parley and upon conditions to march out Souldier-like surrendred the Town, which had fair Quarters afforded, till such tyme as report was brought the General how that some Janizaries going into a Stove were by some of the Inhabitants secretly made away, which incensed the *Turk* that he gave them free liberty to do what they list; whereupon the Town was plundered, unarmed Men killed by the Sword, Women abused, and all sorts of violence exercised, some few Prisoners escaping to the *Persian* Camp with the relation; which served to exasperate their minds, and so inflamed the Prince *Emir-Hamze* tht he immediately drew out a small party of Horse with which he faced the City Walls, which *Osman* could so ill endure that albeit he himself was at that time under a sore distempfer of the Flux, he nevertheless ordered *Mabomet-Bassa* to beat him thence. The Bassa accordingly drew out forty thousand Horse and Foot with a small train of Artillery; but the *Persian* seeing the number so unequal held it prudent to retire, yet with so moderate a pace as expressed their valou, and only until he reache some part of his Army: so that when he had twenty thousand Horse more added, he drew up with a resolution to fight the Enemy who had the same desire. So that they soon met and skirmished, and after that engaged the whole Armies: but the *Persians* having the better, the *Turks* by the help of their train made a pretty good retreat, leaving towards six thousand Men to the mercy of the Enemies Sword. Upon

Upon this the Prince sent a defiance to the *Turkish General*; who accepting the Challenge within five dayes drew out what force he had being upwards of an hundred thousand Horse and Foot, the *Persians* scarce amounting to half that number: but seeing it falls out that in great Armies the far lesser part onely engage, the *Persians* had so much the superiority in resolution that day as that after the *Bassa* of *Caramis* was observed to fall by *Emir-Hamzé's* sword the *Turks* gave ground, and in the confused haste they made lost more Men than had formerly been slain in the Field, and amongst others fell the *Bassa* of *Trepizond*, six *Sanczicks*, and twenty thousand common Men; so that had not their great Guns disordered now and then the *Persian* Horse, they had doubtless obtained a full Victory: the *Persians* lost two thousand. But *Ozman* was so daunted with *Emir-Hamzé's* high courage, that having constituted *Giaffer-chan* (who had been Governor of *Tripoli*) the Governor of *Tauris*, and leaving there a great part of his Army, with the rest he marched back to *Erzrum* the better to recover of the flux.

Now, al'beit *Ozman* with a good Guard of Horse passed thither undisurbed, yet his Foot and Train that could not march above their usual rate were interrupted by the *Persian* Horse, who by a nearer way got before and skirmished with them to so good purpose as near *Sanczian* they seiz'd upon their Caravan which had above 6000 Camels and Mules and valuable burthens, besides Amsinges in abundance loaden with provisions of all sorts necessary: and the rest of the *Persian* Horse being come up they engaged the whole Army; which was so well commanded (though *Ozman* was not there) as for some hours a fiercer fight was not known than that in the memory of any then present: but (as at other times) the *Persian* Prince expell'd so great personal courage and dexterity that by his example there was a general resolution in the *Persians* to die or conquer: so that in conclusion they had the Victory though with considerable los's; yet requiting the Enemy by the los's of twenty thousand of his Men who then gasped their last, and had pursued the *Turks* had not night and the contiuall firing their Cannon, prevented the *Persian*; and yet some stories report, That in the discharging their Guns at random the *Turks* received the greatest los's. That part of the Army which escaped made so unpleasant a relation unto *Ozman* that it increased his distemper, insomuch as within few dayes after he gave up the Ghost; leaving the conduct of his shattered Army to the *Bassa Synan Cicala*, a good Souldier and a wary, and who in a retreat he made towards *Van* gave the *Persian* a notable blow, yet when he came to *Erzrum* and took the musters of his remaining Force, found that in this unhappy Expedition *Ozman* one way or other had lost a hundred thousand of his Men. The *Persian* Prince not thinking it advisable to follow the Enemy too far returned back to *Caybyn*, where he was imbraced by his aged Father, honoured by all the Officers, and little les than adored by the vulgar sort; but after a little refreshment, remembering that *Tauris* continued under the power of the *Turk*, he was resolute in his desires to reduce that considerable place; notwithstanding that by his scouts he was truly informed of their strength and good accommodation, most of the Souldiers having Huts in a large Fort or Barbican *Ozman* with great labour and expence had raised and fortified notably with great Ordinance, so that *Giaffer* with his 15000 Foot having victualled the Forts supposed that he was able to defend the Place against all the Force *Perse* could bring.

In this interim *Mahomet-chan* had the command of the *Armenian Auxiliaries* who were upwards of 10000 Men, with whom he marcht towards *Tauris* which he summoned, but in vain; and being without order from the *Persian* General knew it would be ill resented; therefore as one in despair and to increase his account he proclaimed *Mirza Thomas Mahomet*'s youngl Son, King and with joyful acclamations directed their way towards *Caybyn*. The old King marvailed at his insolence, and forthwith sent *Emir-hamzé* against this Conspirator; who for some time stood his ground against the Prince, but being worsted took him to his heels; and being close pursued was apprehended near *Cajhan*, and his head being cut off presented to the King then at *Caybyn*: but the poor abus'd Prince upon the acknowledgment of his fault which he neither designed nor well could help, was forgiven; albeit for some time confined to his Houle.

These alternate out-breakings of the King's Sons not onely disturbed the old King's rest, but retarded the necessary preparations to oppose the *Turk* fresh Forces that were ready to march for reducing the City of *Tauris*: and withal perplexed the Spirit of *Emir-hamzé*, whose whole design was the publique welfare of his Countrey and an honourable defence against the *Turk*: whereas his Brother *Abbas* had other devices in his head, which were by what means he might make his quickelt access to the Crown; and his unnatural wiles as wicked as it was wanted not instruments to effect his desires, amongst whom was *Alichnuy-Chan*, who in meer envy bore a constant ill will unto Prince *Emir-hamzé*,

hamze, and as occasion served was still ready to eclipse his splendor and to lessen him in his Father's repute, which was the easier to be done, the *Emyr's* Victories and popular applause drawing most Mens eyes and expectations upon that rising Sun, which made him jealous of his own estate and of the others setting before his time.

Ferrat Basse in the interim with a great Army, most of which were drawn out of the Garrisons in Provinces round about, quickens his march for the seasonable relief of *Tauris*, which though not besieged was distract for Victual and by Fluxes and other Distempers had lost many of its Men. The Persian King roused by this advance of the Enemy, by the persuasions of his Son *Abbas* commissioned *Aliculi-chan* his friend to go Commander in chief of an Army distinct from that his Brother *Emyr-hamze* commanded: for which end he drew what Horse he could from his Government in *Hiry* and *Mozendram*, having order also to joyn with *Emaypoli-chan* who from his Government about *Larr* and *Slyaz* brought about 15000 Horse, the Prince intending to follow with the main Body of Horse and Foot which was about 40000 more. *Emangoly-chan* by the Princes directions hastened to discover the Enemy, and in beating up the Quarters of *Zeynal-chan* near *Salmas* made sonie execution; and with like good hap the *Basse* of *Revian*; which accelerated *Ferrat's* march: - But so soon as *Aliculi-chan* saw the *Turkish* Army, without the least resistance he drew back, incouraging the Enemy to prosecute their way; har-ralling the Countrey where ever they came, suffering him to relieve *Tauris* and to waft the greatest part of *Shervan*. This treacherous act of *Aliculi-can* was well worth punishment; but the Enemy over-spreading the Country with his Horse hindred the Prince to give that opposition he intended and would have been enabled to do, had his Brother *Abbas* his Men been at his command: so that instead of looking towards the Enemy he marcht after *Aliculi-chan*, who fearing to encounter the Prince, kept on his way towards *Kabul* and marcht after such a rate that the Prince thought it not best to prosecute that wretch at that time, but rather to return and joyn with *Emangoli-chan*: which being done, and many Volunteers coming in beyond imagination to serve the Prince against the common adversary, he was so over-joy'd therewith that he was fully resolv'd speedily to encounter *Ferrat* in the open Field. But alas! when he was in the meridian of fair hopes and in a place thought most free from any treasonable attempt, he was by a corrupted *Eunuch* murthered whilst he took some rest upon a pallat in his Tent: suppoed by the procuracy of *Aliculi-chan*, and not without the suspicion of *Abbas* his knowledge, who by his Brothers death was undoubted Heir unto the Crown. An act so villainous, and at such a time, as gave the *Turks* cause to rejoice; but *Perse* became overwhelmed with amazement and grief. The King by the breaking of his staff sound himself weakly supported and ready to drop into the Earth, never having one joyful day more, but spending the little remnant of his Life in continual sorrow. The Army likewise had such sad apprehensions, as if in the Prince's death they had all gone with him to the grave, seeming careless and heartless to give any further resistance to the *Turk*: so large a share had this generous Prince in the hearts of the People: yea, the whole Nation by the setting of this bright Star seem'd clouded and vail'd with everlasting night, their light being thus miserably extinguish'd by the baseness of a treacherous Varlet, employ'd by base and cowardly Men: but the *Eunuch* after strict examination was exquisitely tortured; whilst the Body of this great Prince was with all possible demonstrations of love in September 1586, convey'd to *Ardavest*, where he was interred near the Dormitories of his Royal Ancestors.

Ferrat-chan the *Turkish* General though as a noble Enemy, he could not refrain some shew of sorrow for this Hero's death, yet let not slip his advantage; but in short time made tributary the whole Territory about *Genge*, and forced contribution from *Sumachy* and all the Countrey twixt that and the *Caspian Sea*: Notwithstanding which good service, being called home and succeeding worse in the *Transilvanian War*, the next year he was summoned by the Vizier of *Stambul*, and by a secret order put to death.

Cicala Basse Governor of *Bagdad* by order from the Royal port succeeded *Ferrat* in his Charge for the *Persian War*. He wasted the *Median Territories* which lie upon the Frontiers of *Mesopotamia* called *Diarbec*, which were Quarterts that had not been spoiled of long time: but whiles *Mahomet* was ordering *Emangoly-chan* to attend *Cicala's* motion, *Amurah* the better to prosecute his intended War in *Europe*, by his Ambassador desired a Ceſſation of Arms with the *Persian*; which the *Persian* the better to inlarge his Dominion towards *Candabor* and *Chabul* willingly condeſſended unto; fo as Articles were agreed and signed, and Hostages on each ſide given according to form: and peace proclaimed at *Constantinople* and *Cashyn*. Howbeit in les than three years the *Persian* Hoſtage dying at *Constantinople*, inaſmuch as he was the King's Nephew, his Body was imbalmed,

balmed, and by Sea conveyed to Trepizond; and thence into his own Country; where he was honourably buried amongst his friends.

Shaw Mahomet put to a period to his disconsolate life died in the year of our Lord 1597. and with all due ceremony was Intombed by his princely Ancestors. In his place *Abbas* his Son was proclaimed and soon after Crowned King. Ambassadors from most parts of the world were addrest to congratulate his access to the Crown: amongst whom, one from the great Turk, who was rather a Fecialis or Herald than an Ambassador: for no sooner was that Ceremony over, but in an insulting manner he menaced war, unless *Abbas* would send his Son or some other eminent Officer Hostage in His place that was lately dead: which being done in the face of other Ambassadors, the manner of it was so highly resented by *Abbas*, that to let him and the rest know how little he valued the Turk his Masters amity, he commanded him forthwith to be gone; which the Ambassador smiling at gave the King so great offence, that in high passion he commanded him to be slain: but the great Officers of the Court disliking such a president, and well knowing it was in passion the order was seemingly given, to satise the King and to be quit for some uncivil treatment a former Ambassador from Persia had at Stambul, with a Cane they onely chabuct him upon the soles of his feet, and then posted him out of the Country miserably disgraced, an act very much below the report that went of *Abbas* for his prudence, and indeed to the violation of the Law of Nations, which holds the persons of Ambassadors as inviolable and sacred. For 'tis an Undoubted truth, there is nothing in civil affairs more sacred and more cautiously to be observed than the priviledge and freedom of Ambassadors; seeing that in their person they represent the honour and greatness of their master and are intrusted with the managery of his affairs. So as no Prince where he is imploied ought by the Law of Nations to affront an Ambassadors person by Arrests or outrages, not being in open War, and staying after cong to depart, or practising against the State, or unles the like Violation was first offred to his own Ambassador: for in doing otherwise, the Law of Armes, Nature and Nations is broken, and an Example not of imitation but detestation therein given. Nor was it otherwise resented by *Amurath*, who upon the return of his Ambassador, first blasphemcd, and then breathed defiance, vowing the utter extirpation of the Sophian race; which nevertheless was a while deferred by reason of his Wars in Hungary and some intestine troubles occasioned through the revolt of a great part of his Forces in Anatolia which is Asia the less: so that albeit he received additional and unwelcome tidings of the loss of Tabriz, he was not then in a condition to make good the threats he thundered out against Persia, or to endeavour the recovery of the Town, soon after being arrelied by impartial Death in the year of our Lord 1604. Sultan Achmat succeeding as Grand Signior in his place.

Achmat notwithstanding his being thus bearded by the Persian, and that his predecessor bequeathed unto him the taking revenge for the affront done his Ambassador, was so intent upon the prosecution of the entire conquest of Hungary to come the nearer unto Vienna the Seat-Royal of the German Emperour, that *Abbas* had the more advantage to recruit and encompas his designs. In the first place therefore understanding how that by order from the Imperial Port Cicala-Bassa the Governoour of Babylon with all the force of Horse and Foot he could make against Zel-Ally a famous Rebel formidable in his time, and by the Auxiliaries sent him out of Persia hearing of Cicala's advance, was so far from an affright that he marched towards his adversary, and in the Palmyrian territories engaged and routed Cicala, who was forced to leave the field and some thousands of his best men dead in the place: *Abbas* taking the opportunity of the Governoours absence caused several of his Officers and Coozel-balshaws to be disguised like Merchants, and under colour of a Caravan entred Bagdat unsuspected, and by that stratagem quickly became Master of the place. Cicala having a good interest at Court had this ill success interpreted in the best sence: and having received fresh orders to levy a powerfull Army to invade Persia, and being master of the field, to lay close siege to Bagdat, accordingly the next Spring he rendezvouzed at Erzrum, and fell upon Obdolo-chan the Vice-rovs quarters in Shirvan, committing what spoil he could: but young Emir-Hamze-mirza *Abbas* his eldest Son (inheriting his Uncles vertue as well as name) with a strong body of Horse and Dragoons confronting the Bassa near to Sultany gave him such a bruish that the Turk retreated as far back as Van: where in a scound encounter the Persian had much the better of the fight, many being slain upon the place on both sides; but by the flight of Cicala and the Balla of Trepizond the Persians kept the field, had the spoil of thole that were dead, and by that dayes success in little more time cleared all the Persian Provinces of the Turks.

Sha Abbas

Sha Abbas now moving prince-like in his own Orb, for the better spreading of his fame and engaging against his inveterate adversary the Turk, dispatched Ambassadors to several parts of the world: *Zenal-chau* was sent to *Rodolph* the Emperor; *Mehiculi beg* to the King of *Poland*; *Isubaffa Huzzan* to *Henry* the Fourth of *France*; *Philip* the Fourth of *Spain*, and the *Venetian Republicke*; with Instructions to treat with them about commerce with *Persia*, and a joint League against their common Enemy the Turk; and *Mahomet Rofurbeg* to *Shaw Selym* the great Mogul. *Achman* having intelligence how active the *Persian* was to disturb his progress abroad against the Christians, to find him work at home commands *Nassuph-Bassa* to draw all the force of Horse and Foot he could to the usual place of rendezvous in order to the prosecuting the *Persian*: but those levies came to little effect by reason of the peace that upon the Persian Ambassador repair to *Constantinople* was soon after agreed betwixt those two great Mahometans, contrary to the *Persians* late proposition, and unhappily to the disappointing the Christian Princes design.

In the year 1613, *Sha-abbas* for the better establishing that Truce and more vigorously to proceed in his begun War with the Mogul, sent *Ally-chau* his Ambassador with an extraordinary Present to the Imperial Port. The Ambassador was treated with extraordinary respect, and so cajol'd by the Vicer, that as it is reported he was tempted to exceed his instructions; for he condescended that his Master shoud as a feudatory pay into the Turks Exchequer an annual sum or acknowledgement for the Territories in and about *Shirvan* and *Cylstan*: which was denied by *Abbas*, and the Ambassador at his return, (one daring to intercede in his behalf) was for that mistake put to death. So penal it is, we see, to act contrary to instructions; for an Ambassador being limited by express terms, hath no liberty to be guided by his own reason or sight of advantage, until his charge be unlimited; in which case, he may warrantably act for his masters good, as prudence shall invite and circumstances in affairs of State administer occasion. Otherwise he may take Warning by those Athenian Ambassadors, who being sent into *Arcadia* and prescrib'd their way, albeit they returned with good success, yet were put to death only for going another way. *Elian.* 6. 5.

The Turks soon after this, viz. *Anno Dom.* 1618. by the way of *Erzirum* entered *Mesdia*, the Army being commanded by *Ally-bassa*; who taking the opportunity of the Kings absence in *Cuidzor* passed unopposed as far as *Ardaveil* which he plundered, and harassed the Country about, *Cardagy-chau* the Governor of *Tabriz*, and at that time President of those parts not doing any thing considerable for prevention: upon the advance of *Emir-Hamz-e-mirza* the Turks retreated to *Van*, and a Truce was presently concluded. But the Turk ere long inflicting upon the restitution of the City *Tauris*, the War was freshly prosecuted. The command of the Persian Army was given *Emir-Hamze* the Prince, who in the expression of his courage, quicknes, of execution, and happy success, appeared to the Turk no other than as if his Uncle had revived; and withal so prudent in managing the War, that though he well knew it was attended with jalousie and accidents of several kinds which rendered the event uncertain; nevertheless such was the excellency of his spirit, and so just and honourable the work he was upon, that to engage against that insolent Enemy was his choicest recreation: insomuch as the Turks albeit they could not but command his courage, yet failed they not by secret artifices at Court to destroy this gallant person by an invisible hand; amongst other engines secretly insinuating into the heart of *Abbas* the danger he was in through the popular esteem of his active Son: so as what the Enemy could not effect by dint of sword, was compassed by base deceit; the Prince being first made blind, and soon after away by the treachery of his Barber, as w^t commonly reported. However, his death was sudden, and without question by foul practise of some who whilst the King was engaged in the wars of *Chorazan* thought to have seized the Crown: but more certain it is, that albeit the King was at first worried in *Azozendram*, nevertheless by the feable recruit brought him by *Ferraz-chau* he quickly recovered that loss, quelled those parts about *Larry-Joon*, and returning, beat the Rebels near *Cubyn*; where having made terrible slaughter, amidst his passion *Hamir Hamze* by the Kings command was made blind by a hot polished steel drawn afore his eyes: which having formerly related needs no repetition.

Abbas not staying for the Turk as the custome of his Ancestors had been, thought fit to begin with them: and taking the opportunity of their being engaged in *Hongary* with the entire conquest wherof the Turk is restles in design in the head of a royal Army he quickly cleared *Shervan*, then expelled the Enemy out of *Ius* and *Tephlis*, and soon after mastered *Balfora* and *Pogda*; the last of which through treachery was soon after retaken by the Turk. The Persian King in this interval had good intelligence from *Stambul* concerning the distractions of that place, which was welcome news to the Court of *Persia*.

of Persia. For indeed, so insolent appeared the Janizaries there at that time, as upon some slight disgust given by *Delovir* the Grand-Viser, they broke in upon the *Baffa*, and by violent hands put him to death; an outrage so intolerable, that *Ossman* the Grand Seignior could not choose but reprove them for so rash a fact: but to such a height of presumption were they soared, as they first secured the Emperour under a Guard, and soon after murdered him; not without the secret insinuations (as some imagine) of his Uncle *Mustapha*, whom thereupon the mutinous Janizaries first mounted into the Throne and as quickly dethroned, having a better opinion of *Achmat* the Brother of *Ossman*, whom in that confusion they proclaimed King.

This uproar at the Imperial Port gave the Christian Princes hopes that great Body would burst through its own weight and intestine distemper: the rather for that the Baffa of *Natalia Aboff-Baffa* (or *Apaphy* as they pronounce) taking the advantage of that disorder thought fit to try what he could do to set up for himself: *Abbas* also equally valuing that opportunity, with a considerable Body of Horse and Dragoons invaded *Diarbec*; and having with a round sum corrupted one of the principal Officers in *Bagdad*, he not only appeared but got entrance into the City before *Achmat* the Governour had any timely notice for prevention: so that having mastered the Town, the Governour durst not truft unto the Citadel and Barbican within, so as he secretly withdrew with a small party of Horse into *Karamania*; which flight so discouraged those he left behind, as upon first summons the Forts were delivered up: Yea, such was the reputation of mastering that important place, that not only *Misdin* and *Merdin* two oth. r notable Forts yielded to *Abbas*, but the whole Province dispatched Persons to acknowledge their submission, infomuch as all those People who inhabited those Countreys through which *Tigris* and *Euphrates* run, even from *Armenia* to *Balforac* upon the *Persian* Gulph (terrified with this sudden and sucessful in-road) as one Man submitted to the *Persian* Crown; the reduction of those warm Countreys encouraging several *Persian* Subjects to repair thither to plant; whiles the *Turks* (such as would not list themselves under the *Persian*) utterly deserted those parts, and in several Bodies retired some into *Syria*, others into *Egypt*; whereby the *Persian* had the sole Dominion over those Provinces, both to the heightning the *Persian* reputation abroad and confection of the *Turks* that by this time were composed at home, and *Aby-Baffa* (who had the command of those revolting Countreys,) for his negligence in that affair was made shorter by the head.

Natalia also was in a trembling motion at that time: for *Aboff-Baffa* stood upon his guard. It so happened that the *Persian* judging he was really revolted doubted not but he would contribute what he could to espouse the *Persian* in his defence; and for tryall they tempted him to deliver *Erzyrum* into their hands: the crafty *Baffa* counterfeiting a willingness so disposed of his own Men that a thousand (most of them *Georgians*) of the five thousand that were sent to take possession, were cut off. An act so welcome to the *Turk* as ingratiated him at Court; inasmuch as rich presents were sent him from *Stambul*, with solemn protestations of oblivion for his Revolt, and an encrease of force and continuall of Command; all which so well satisfied the young *Baffa*, that after a return of thanks he immediately fell into *Diarbec* with all the force he could make, and near *Moful* happily gave a notable defeat to a considerable party of Horse and Foot which the *Persian* had ordered for the better security of that Garrison and Countrey thereabouts.

This los startled *Abbas* somewhat, but more when he received news how about that time the *Georgians* who were in Alliance with the *Turk* had killed many of his Men near *Van*; and as a further evidence of their hatred, sent their heads to the Imperial Port as a testimony of their service: which complement was requited with thanks from thence; but otherwise soon after by *Abbas*, who paid them in their own coyn for their future instruction. *Aboff-Baffa* in this interim improved his time: for being master of the Field he both ranged and harrassed that miserable Countrey without any mercy. *Abbas* by those that fled had notice of the *Turk*s strength, and of his drawing before *Bagdad*, which resolutely refused his summons: and for the better preservacion thereof in the head of thirty thousand Horse marched towards the Enemy notwithstanding they were double his number. The *Turk*s nevertheless resolved to continue the Siege. *Abbas* by an Herald challenged the *Turk*s; but by the advice of a Council of War it was held advisable rather to intrench themselves and to strengthen the Siege, than to draw off and fight. Howbeit, the *Persian* Horse gave them continual alarms, and so cut off provisions from abroad that in les than thirty dayes they were reduced to more want than they within the Town. Which so perplexed the *Turk*, that to the amazement even of their own Camp taking the advantage of the night *Aboff* drew off, and having

got the *Tigris* twixt him and his adversary made the best retreat he could with bag and baggage: but having a Train of Artillery withal to draw, could not make such halte but that the *Persians* got over *Tigris* at length, and had a nimble pursuit of the *Turks* for ten dayes, and with such effect as very few of them escaped. A Victory so remarkable and obtained with so little los as in twenty years time a greater was not recorded; so as the memory of it at this day lives fresh all over *Persia*; as appercd by several Sonnets amongst them at my being in that Countrey about five years after.

Abbas having sufficiently scorched thoſ Western parts, was no leſt active and ſuccellent elsewhere: For the next year viz. 1627. by the good conduſt of *Curchiki-cawn* he totally expulfed the *Turk* out of *Sherwan* and *Ghelyan*, and reduced the Natives to their allegiance; and by *Tamas-Cooli-beg* likewife annexed *Mozendram* to his Empire; having done the like a little before by *Lolla-beg* and *Emangoly-cawn* in the conqueſt of *Larr*, *Karmaen*, *Ormus*, *Chufifian*, *Macron*, and part of *Ajaman* and *Jazirey*: ſo as he extended his Territories one way from *Indus* to *Euphrates*, and the other from the *Cafian Sea* to *Babylon* and the *Gulph of Persia*; which to this day they keep, to the elevation of the honour of that Crown, and conſernation of the neigbouring Pontefates.

In this ſort, *Abbas*, after he had attained to a higher exaltation of glory than any of his Race, the whole course of his command being full of ſplendor, died in the year 1628. of the Heg. 1008. after he had lived ful fourcore years, and ruled the Empire forty threc. His Body was from *Cubyn* tranſlated to *Ardaveil*, and buried near the Corps of his great Anceſtors, and in his place *Soffee* his Grand-ſon was proclaimed King; who after he had ſwayed the ſcepter about fifteen years being likewife summoned by impartial Death was buried at *Coom*, and ſucceeded by his Son *Abbas*, a Prince of great courage and prudence at this day, and likely to preferve what his Royal Progenitors committed to his iſpection and Government.

Thus having run over the Series of the Kings; in the next place I shall offer my mixt Obſervations concerning that Kingdom: together with a little ſupplement relating to their Religion; after which I shall proceed in our Travels. But firſt, ſuffer me to take a farewell of *Persia*, in this ſhort Epidicticon.

*Why do the windings of inconstant State
Moleſt us Weaklings? ſince the ſelfſame Fate
Turns Kings and Kingdoms with an equal doom:
Whiles Slaves, too oft, poſſeſſ their Masters room.
So prickling Thiftles choke our faireſt Corn,
And hopeſel Oats the hugging Ivies ſcorn:
Men are but Men, and be they ſtrong or wife,
All their Designs ſubject to hazard lies.
Millions of helps cannot ſupport that Crown
Which ſin erretts; Fate juſtly pulls it down.
Witneſſ fair PERSIA, large and rich of ground,
(The firſt Nurse of War:) In it was found
(Even in thoſe golden times which Poets vant)
Villegious Cyrus; who yet did ſuppplant
His Father. Oh, that Men would learn to ſee
What life were beſt, not what doth pleafe the eye!
But ou, alas! when they have drunk of blood,
That bitter potion's ſweet: yea, even a flood
Of Lives food canna their hot thirſt alay,
Till Tomyris that blood with blood repay.
So hape to Cyrus, whom th' insulting Queen
Upbraids with blood-ſeed. Vengeance is too keen:
For in a bowl of gore, dead drowned heſ
His crowned temples and inflatiue eyes:
That King affix'd, and for his itching vein,
Two hundred thouſand Subjects there lay slain.
Thus fares it ſtill with thee, fair PERSIA!
Whose various Native Beauties freely may
A Stranger's love entice. Thy breath is ſweet,
Thy face well made, a Nursery of delight;
Thy Breasts not dry of milk, thy arms are ſtrong,
Thy Body fruitful, legs both clean and long,*

Thy

Thy Veins are large, blood pure, quick Spirits hast:
But for thy back, Oh stay! there lies the waſt.
To this fair ſymmetry of outward parts,
The Giver great (to engage by great deserts)
Infused bath into thy Children Wit,
Wifdom and Courage, belt to manage it.
Nor waiſt thou barb'rous or indiſciplin'd;
For had thy ear unto its good inclin'd,
Thy Country Propheteſ fore-told theeſe how
Hell and its wrath by CHRIST to diſavow.
Since which, thy Sages, Kings, or more than Kings
(If I miſtake thee not!) their Offerings
Unto my Infant G O D humbly preſent.
O Faith exceeding almoſt Faiths extent!
But now this Light of Lights on Earth did ſhine,
See how thy Virtues retrograde decline:
Holy Thaddaeus, (whom Saint Thomas ſent
To cure thy King) thy Flamens did preſent
With Hellish torments: and with like foul banas
Simon the Canaanite's good News wiſtſtands.
In after-times thy Cozroic (Persia) made
A pond of Christian Blood: Nor here thou ſtaid,
But (in diſlike of CHRIST) the Arabian Thief
Thou chose to be thy unlearned Judge and Chief.
Hence, hence proceed thoſe groſſ Impieties,
Which swallow'd, greedily deliv're thyne eyes!
Blood-shed and Injū, the fouleſt out of Kind,
Which my chaſte Muſe is feare'd to name: the rind
Thou onely keeps of zealous awe: the Heart
Is foul defil'd: for ſo thou learm'd the Art
Of Lust and Pride from thy ciuile Mahomet,
Whoſe thoughts unbound'd all on Thrones was fet.
Nor did his Successors as Prophets live,
But one another muſcled: All did gripe
At Neighbours Diadems. The God of Peace,
For ſoþt thy ſins, thy power will ſure decaſe.
And thou that oft haſt felt a Forreign Power,
Once more maſt feel a Scythic Race ſo lower,
That all the World ſhall know, how greatest Kings
Are thral to change as well as weaker Things.

Having given a brief memorial concerning their Kings and Revolutions of State, I shall think it worth my labour to add ſome miſcellaneous obſervations I made relating to the Men and manners of the Country. And firſt concerning the Country it ſelf; than which, no other, as I ſuppoſe, has had greater variation: For in *Nimrod's* days it was called *Ciusa* or *Cub*, a name alluſed from the Son of *Cham*, who removed thence firſt into *Arabia*, and after that into *South Africk*: but in *Chedor-laomer's* and till *Daniel's* time it was named *Elam*, from *Elam* Son of *Sem*, Brother (if prophane Authors ſay true) to *Mudai* or *Atlas M.urus* Sons of *Japhet*; and thence called *Elamite* and *Elame*: the next it changed to was *Perſia*; *Perſa* ſunt vocati à *Perſo Rege*, qui nomen ejus ſubacte geni imposuit, ſaith *Isidore*: a Crecian Hero he was, Son to *Jupiter* by *Danae* the Daughter of *Acrisius*: albeit others rather think it is derived from *Paraph*, i.e. a Horſe in *Persian*; or *Perelis*, which in the *Hebre* signifies a Horſeman; howbeit in old Language of that Country it signifies a Ram (as typified in *Daniel*,) and in the *Chaldeæ* a Horſes hoof, a hooked Nose, or a diuiſion. The *Greeks* called it *Panchaya*, and *Cephœne*, in memory of *Cepheus*, who was after King of part of *Ethiopia*; Brother to *Cadmus*, *Agenor's* Children. This *Cepheus* was Father to *Andromeda*, Wife to *Perſes* and Parent of *Perſis* the renowned Archer, who flouriſhed in the World before the building of *Rome*, twelve hundred and feſty Years. *Cog* and *Magog* ſome have named her, and *Magnesia* other ſome, but ironi‐cally. Such time as *Achæmanes* Son to *Egæus* King of *Athens* ruled, it had an *Achæmanian* denomi nation, as *Metaphenes* the *Persian* Historian, *Lucas*, *Herodotus*, *Suidas*, *Cedrenus* and others obſerve. After which it was named *Aſſea*, from *Aſſaces* the Heroick Parthian.

Asia after that by themselves, importing a noble Countrey; from whence many illustrious Persons assumed their fore-names, as *Aria-xerxes*, *Aria-banus*, *Aria-phrenes*, *Ari-apes*, &c. But the *Tartars* in their over-running this and a greater part of *Asia* named it *Chor-foris* or rather *Corsica*, for the *Persians* called them *Saca* as *Syrabo lib. 11.* and *Solinus note*. The *Arabians Avo. Dom. 598.* (such time as *Mahomet* subjeceted it) new named it *Saracenia*, *Azemia* by the *Turk*, for that it was part of the *Affyrian Empire*, by the same reason the *Scythians* called them *Aramai* by neighbouring the *Syrians*: but in envy to *Sixtus Cicerus* the late Reformer of the *Alcoran* call'd *Etnia-aria* and *Acamia*: since when, they have added those of *Sophianai*, *Jesel-bassi*, *Izmaelita*, *Shec-Ayderis*, *Circassia*, and other names unworthy the notice, leave that Time herein seems to dilport and please it self with this kind of variety.

The Empire is situated on East West North and South, with *India*, *Arabia*, *Mesopotamia*, the *Caspian* and *Persian Seas*. From *Candahor* to *Babylon* East and West it stretches four hundred and forty farsangs, of *English* a thousand three hundred and twenty miles, in seventy days usually travelled; and from *Ciuphal* or *Felphy* near *Van* in *Georgia* to *Cape Cavidar* in twenty five degrees the furthest part of *Gedroia* or *Macron* upon *Indus*, North and South are four hundred ninety and six farsangs, which are a thousand four hundred eighty and eight *English* miles, in eighty days commonly journeyed: from whence we may compute, the circuit according to our miles is not less than four thousand. The North and East part of the Country is fruitful in *Grafs*, *Corn*, and *Fruit*; for there they have plenty of beneficial showers and a temperate season: the South and West (except where *Rivolets* are) appear to be sandy, mountainous and sterile: for the vehement heat scorches the Earth and makes it barren; and from whence, the soil yields no exhalations the Mother of Clouds, and consequently wants Rain to moisten the Earth: but instead thereof God vouchsafes them frequent breezes. All considered, no part of *Asia* yields a more healthy Air: only, as the Empire is large so the temperature of places differs in heat and cold according to the variety of latitudes.

Concerning the publique Revenue of this Kingdom, as there is not any thing amongst civil affairs more subject to error than a true and intrinsique valuation concerning the wealth, power, policy, and force of an Estate; so in this conjecture I must go upon uncertainty. The Kings publick revenue of old was 14560 *Eubuc Talents*, which by tribute coming from several Provinces in different sorts of Coin, was here made one, but first melted and kept in Earthen Pots, and minted as there was occasion. But how small soever it seem now to others, the *Persian* nevertheless makes many sorts of Harvests; siling every year his *Coffers* with above three hundred and fifty *Scuer* thousand Tomans, (*A-Toman* is five Marks *Sterling*.) in our Money about 110,000 Pound *Sterling*: a Revenue the more to be admired, since he extracts it principally from raw *Silk*, *Customs* and *Cotton*; albeit he thinks not any way dishonourable that brings in Money. *Turpis que non-Auri suadet Amor?* So thought *Abbas*: and thence derived that custome of sending into the Market his daily Presents of Fruits and Flowers: a kind of thrift ordinarily practised by the greatest Potentates in *Asia*; and of which he not only boasted (not as *Aesopus* did of his polt-foot) but seemed to complain of the nicey of other Princes in that particular. Nor is he without example: for we read in *1 Chron. 17.* King *David* notwithstanding his enlarged Empire and conquests, thought parsimony a Revenue: and thence neglected not the increase of his Exchequer, at home appointing Officers to oversee his Labourers that tilled the Ground, his Vineyards, Olives, Fields, Sheep, Camels, Asses, and the like; which was a good Example to his Subjects, and not held dishonourable; for the profit of the Earth is for all, and the King himself is served by the Field, saith *Solomon*, *Eccle. 5. 9.* They also had their Merchants. And no doubt, if all the Potentates of the Earth were enquired after, none would exceed *Abbas* in frugality: for albeit having a *merum imperium*, he could command what he pleased, nevertheless was more delighted in his Artificers, by Letter confessing his admiration upon sight of some massive piece of Plate; which if he but commended, they knew the signification: And in Gold having received a Present; if rich and heavy, then it was commendable work though never so lumpish: for he values more by weight than workmanship. Ninety walled Towns are under his command, and Villages above forty thousand; few of which, one way or other, eschew this kind of Courtship: for though they practise nothing less than Goldsmiths work and Imagery, yet upon an imaginary report, desiring to see whether fame had not been niggardly in their commendation, they dare not but return him as an acknowledgement of their thanks the best sort of metal. Forgetting that *turpe Regi, vinci beneficis*. Considering which, that great Treasure which is commonly taken out for ostentation at the reception of Ambassadors or Travellers of note, is the less to be admired. But his Genius travels

travels with other fancies: for he hath many Factors abroad, whom he dispatches through the Universe; some of which return in three, in five, some, few pass seven years without giving an account to his Commissioners: if they return empty they are rarely sent abroad again; for he is a strict Auditor: but when they return full fraught and to his liking, he rewards them considerably; further gratifying them with a woman out of his Harem, a Horse, a Sword, a Mandil, or the like. Under such hopes and promises they live; and *Pollini: dives quisibet esse posse.*

Again, from *Indusian, Tartary, and Arabia* every year move towards *Perse* many Caravans that import merchandize of several sorts; as *China* ware, Sautens, Silks, Stones, Drugs, Tulipants, &c. of whose approach he has early notice; and sometimes, for reason of State prohibits his Subjects to trade with them as contrabanda; when upon none dare traffique, but by that artifice bringing them to his own price: Or else his Factors meet them upon entring his Dominions with a report that the passage is not only long but dangerous, or that the late dearth makes the Countrey incapable to buy; by such devices to startlting them, that rather than run their resque or incur his displeasure they oft-times condescend to a reasonable mart; sometimes receiving money for goods, or by exchange for what the Persian Emperour can best spare; to his owne subjects and others his merchants, then dispersing those new merchandizes at good rates; and having coin or bullion (to prevent its pilgrimage into other regions) moulds it into plate of large aisse, too heavy to go far; work, poor in shew but not in value. Besids, by a custome Law he makes himself heir to whom he pleases; so that few men die but he claims a propriety; none daring to call his claim in question. Forgetfull of the old Adage, *Regium est durare non desiderari* more princely to inrich than to be rich, and it was a noble speech of *Cato* well worth the remembryng, *Malum cum optimis de Virtute quam cum deditissimis de pecunia certare*, I had rather contend with the best for Vertue, than with the richel for Silver. The covetous will never have enough, *Avarus non impletur pecunia*. Eccl. 5. 9. He also according to the old mode expects annual presents. One mans offering a year or two before our being in *Perse* is remarkable: it was the Duke of *Sbyraz* who presented the King in Larrees the value of four hundred sixty and five thousand ilorenos, forty nine goblets of gold, seventy two of silver, and such other rarities, as in all burthened three hundred camels: a royal present from a subject. Yet this might be tolerated were *Afras* here adored: but contrarily, corruption oft renders this brave Prince too much distempered. So as

Where money over-rules, what good do Laws?
For there the poor are crushed without a cause.

Quid faciant leges ubi sola pecunia regna?
Aut ubi pauperes vincere nulla potest.

Nor do the Persian Kings now resemble those their great Ancestors who were governed by the Statute Laws: for in *Dan. 6. 7.* it is recorded That the Presidents of the Kingdome, the Governours, Princes, Councillours and Captains consulted together to ordain a royal Statute, established by *Darius* his signing, which expressed the Royal assent: but rather what the same Prophet told *Belsazar* that *Nebuchadnezzar* affumed, *Dan. 5. 19.* *Whom he would he slew, and whom he would he kept alive; he set up and pulled down as he listed: and according to that pattern the Eastern Princes whether Mahometans or Gentiles demean themselves, usurping an absolute Dominion: against which, the Civilians in defence of the Law of Nature complain *Quod Principi placuit, Legis illuc habet viorem, &c.* Law, made adequate to the will of the Ruler. A memorable precedent we have in that fearfull shift or exposition the Magi gave one of the Persian Kings when he desired to marry his Daughter, telling him There was no Law to warrant such a fact; but a Law they found that the King might do what he list: but *ad litem mutare Leges, quia Regnum datu proper Regem* was no good Comment: for it is a maxim that *Omnis Regni potestus referris debet ad bonum Regni*, whereas a *Pambasil* levels Princes with Peasants. And indeed in this glas I wish we that live under Christian Kings and States could see our own freedome and happiness: especially above those that live in unnatural bondage under such as acknowledge *Mahomet*: For not without due acknowledgement be it remembred, that in *Europe* the Subjects under most Christian Kings and States are governed by wholesome Laws, have lives and properties preserved, yea, besides municipals have the *Jura naturalia* which are held immutable, preserved; agreeable to that great Aphorism of Nature, *Quod fieri non vis, alteri non feceris*: upon which Basis, all our wholesome Laws are founded. *Cicerio* also *L. + de legibus*; *Lex est fundamentum libertatis*; Law is the foundation of liberty. And again, *Leges invenient sum ad salutem Civium Civitatumq; incolarum, Vitam, Hominum ut esset quieta & beata*, Laws saith he are enacted for the*

the preservation of Cities and Men ; to the end, they may enjoy a happy life : yea for that reason it is the Apostle enjoyns us to *pray for Kings and all that are in authority, that under them we may live a quiet and peaceable life, in all godliness and honesty* : the true reach of the Law being only to maintain property, to secure the persons and Estates of men, and to order all things so as may conduce to publicke good : such is the happiness we enjoy. But in viewing the reverse shall find that in *Persia, Turkie, and other Mahometan Countreys* it is otherwise : for there the Princes exercise a *merum In p[er]ium*, not enduring to be limited or bounded by any Law : so that the fence being broken down, what defence is there for the poor subject against rapine, lust, or what may otherwise destroy and render the outward man as to this life most miserable ? Nay, the inward too ; albeit there be a seeming toleration : for how many affions and maladies acted upon trivial pretences are they that profess Christ subject to ? How oft are their children ravished from them and forcibly circumcised ! with other cruelties, too many to be here remembred.

That therefore which the Persian Kings of old so much gloried in, *Se esse Dominos omnium Hominum, &c.* is now their doctrine : for they have power of life and death; condemn without hearing ; dispoſt of mens persons and estate, when and as they please without any respect of right, especially at mens deaths, where there is any considerable Estate; the law not permitting further than to inventory, seeing the King hath the sole power of disposal ; and so, as in the dividend 'tis well if a tenth come to the right inheritor, as we understand right. Such alas is the custome and constitution of those Eastern Countries ! where the best reason they have is That in all Ages they have been nuzzled under that sort of Government, and though long custome used to adore their King : so that as of old they are not content to reverence him as the Image of God who (as *Plutarch* in the life of *Themistocles* a Gentle doth confess) by his infinite wisdom governs and preserves all things, with *Orpheus* account him *Animata Dei imago in terra*, and with *Hom[er]* the well beloved Son of *Jove* ; but have a more transcendent esteem and opinion concerning him : For they retain the same repute as in former times their Ancestors did of their elemental Deities : *Perfas loco Deorum habere Reges*, faith *Aeschilus*, a Worship assumed first by *Cyrus* upon his conquest of *Babylon*, after which time proſtrations were ordinarily made by the subjects. So as one in their excuse faith, *Perse son pi[us] sollem sed etiam prudente Reges suis inter Deos colabant, prostrato corpore Regem venerantur*, *Plutarch in vita Thamipet.* : with which kind of adoration, *Heliogabalus* was served, *more Persarum*, faith the Historian. But we may suppose this was a civil not a divine honour. Nevertheless from that reverential awe, they presumed not either to spit or cough in presence of the King, a custome anciently practised (as *Xenophon* observes) or in publicke assemblies appear other than inanimate Statua's ; and as of old, pull their hands within their sleeves in sign of servitude, forbearing for those times in his presence to speak to one another, or probably to think amiss ; for some of the simpler sort suppose he knows their very thoughts : So as at the receipt of any Letter from him they first give it a monbarroc or solemn respect by the bowing their hodiis and kissing the paper before they read ; and swear usually by his head, as *Sherambast* and *Serry Shaw*, than which they have not a more solemn attestation. But herein they imitate others of old ; for in *Gen. 42. 16.* we find *Joseph* swearing by the life of *Pharoh*. The Greeks also as *Iuvetus* observes *juro paratis per Caput alienum* were used to swear by one anothers head ; which the Romans themselves likewise imitated as appears by *Ovid* in his Epistles, *Perque tuum nostrumq; Caput quod junximus una juro* ; and by *Sil. lib. 10.* *Adjuro tique tuum;ne Capit* : but the *Perians* besides the head swore by the Kings right hand ; for that was the Oath *Darius* gave *Tereus* the Eunuch when chosen to attend the Princes *Statua*, afterwards married to *Alexander*: yea, they apprehend that the King sees in all places, as may be presumed by pointing their finger to the eye and saying *Chus* i. e. the King sees ; and his words esteemed Apophthegms are many times registered as well as deeds in Cedar Tablets gumm'd with Canaher, his Name usually writ with gold upon paper of a curious glos and fineness varied into several fancies, effected by taking oyl'd colours and dropping them severally upon water, whereby the paper becomes sleek and chamlotted or vein'd in such sort as it resembles *Agat* or *Porphyry*. In a word, they spare not to parallel their King with *Mahomet* and *Ally*, and as accustomed of old, ingennate

De nostris Annis tibi Jupiter augat Annos, By loss of ours the Gods preserve thy life.

Yea,

Yea, the better to illustrate his perfections, amongst other his Provincial Titles they give him the Epithetes of Amber, Nutmeg, Rofes, and such sweet odours and flowers as most delight the Sense; which also is the form of most Countreys in the Orient. So that upon the whole, under most miserable servitude these wretched *Mahometans* do live; happy onely in not being sensible, which they the better endure, not knowing what free Subject means, and for that they are indulged to the height of corrupted appetit. And yet, although the King himself be incircumscribable and have his *Sic volo, sic jubeo* allowed him; nevertheless (well knowing that maxim truc *Scipiorum vis tota perit cum porderet iusta Incepit;* for 'tis Justice that supports the Crown; and that *sine Lega quid sunt Regna nisi latrocinia?* without law, what do Kingdoms differ from places of Robbery?) for the avoiding confusion and preverfation of the peace, Laws or rather Customs they have which are strictly executed: for the Souldiery they are subjected under Ordinances of War; the rest under a kind of Imperial Law, which serves to distinguish *mcmum* and *tuum* betwixt the Subject: For which end in most Cities and great Towns Cawfes and other Magistrates are appointed, who have power from the King to call persons, examine witness(es), and to hear and determine busines' twixt party and party, yea to award judgment in causes civil and criminal, with little charge and short attendance; and in criminals, no place affords more severe proceedings: which is the reafor that the Country is so secure, and Travellers can scarce find a more quiet place than *Perſia*. But seeing the Cawfes have a latitude allowed them in Adjudications and accept of gifts, I fear they may be corrupted and biased; which too oft blinds the eyes and makes Innocence the Delinquent.

Now concerning the Natives they are generally well-limb'd, and straight; the *Zone* they live in makes them tawny; the Wine cheerful; Opium falacious. The Women paint, the Men love Arms; all affect Poetry: what the Grape inflames, the Law allays, and example bridles. The *Perſians* allow no part of their Body hair except the upper lip, which they wear long and thick and turning downwards; as also a lock upon the crown of the head, by which they are made to believe their Prophet will at the Resurrection lift them into Paradise. A figment, whether proceeding from *Mahomet*'s own brain or the Apostle Monk his Associate, uncertain: but probable it is he had read the Scripture, and there in *Ezech. 8. 3.* and in the Apocryphal story of *Bel and the Dragon* finds *Ab-euc* so transported from *Judea to Babylon*; for elsewhere their head is shav'en, or made incapable of hair by the oyl Dowac, being but thrice anointed. This has been the moe of the Oriental People since the promulgation of the *Alcoran*, introduced and first imposed by the *Arabians*. But that the wearing hair and covering the head was otherwife of old, appears in History very plainly.

Hair was worn according to the humour of several Nations, agreeable to the temperature of the place and Natures dictate: for in Countries more inclining to the Poles than the *Equinoitl* usually Men fence their Heads from cold with long hair; but in more temperate climes hair is curt, and commonly exposed to the air for refreshment: but within the torrid *Zone* their head was kept warm to ward off the penetrating beams of the Sun, whose ardour could not be endured. The *Romans* living in the mid-way twixt the Tropic and Polar Circle shaved not their heads, yet wore their hair short according to the modern fahion of the *Spaniard*, as may appear by Medals and other Antiquities, in which the *Cesars* for the first two Centuries are so represented; albeit the first was so called for having a bulk of hair upon his head at the Birth. Amongst the Jews also of old it was the custom to wear it short, as may be gathered from *1 Cor. 11. 14.* where by way of interrogation the Apostle faith, *Doth not Nature it self teach you, that if a Man have long hair, it is a shame unto him?* with consideration had unto the Climate. Nevertheless in some cases long hair was allow'd; as to the *Nazarites*, who separating from the World dedicated themselves to the Lord, and by that Vow suffered no rafour to come upon their heads, but permitted their locks to grow to full length, *Num. 6. 5.* as exemplified in *Sampson, Samuel, the Baptist* and others: For albeit our Saviour in *Math. 2. 23.* is called a *Nazarite*, that was rather from the City *Nazareth*; seeing he refrained not Wine, as may be supposed by the Marriage at *Cana* in *Galilee* and the Institution of the *Eucharift*, and by that the Jews detractingly imputed *Luke 7. 34.* But that Princes and Persons of Quality in those times wore long hair is evident by several presidents: I shall instance *Abſalom*, who wore his hair so long and so large that cutting it once every year it is said to weigh two hundred shekels by the King's weight, which made six pound and four ounces allowing the shekel half an ounce: nor mentioned by way of reproach, (albeit what he made his pride became his judgement, for it is said, *That none in Israel was so praised for beauty, as Abſalom,*) but rather an ornament. Nor can it be deny'd, but

but short hair at some time and in some places was a symbol of servitude. Besides, it appears by the effigies at *Chil-mynar* (where I touched a little upon this subject) that most of the Monarchs of old wore their hair very long and crisped, and as particularly instanced by *Plutarch* in the description of *Astyages*. A comet with a bush appearing in *Vespasian's* reign, and by some Astronomers judged to portend his death, he wittily made this reply, That bushy star points not at me who am bald, but rather at the comet-like locks of my brother the King of *Parthia*. The Gauls also of old were denominated from their hair, *Comati*; *Neque enim fas erat Francorum regibus comam rondere, sed à pueritia intenso lauebant, adeo ut a tergo crines deflant; nam à frante discriminati urinq; sfruntrur. Car anciennement tous les Nobles portoient de longs cheveux*, &c. says a French historian. In a word, *Cesaries signum erat nobilitatis*. And the *Britains*, our Ancestors, of old, as now, imitated their transmarine neighbours, as appears by antique Coins and otherwise. So that albeit the Monks from a Tradition shave the upper part of their head by way of distinction from the Laity and for dedication, yet therein they differ from the Levitical Priesthood, who (except in lamentations, as in *Isa. 15. 2.*) were not suffered to make bald parts upon their head, shave their beards, or make incisions in their flesh, *Levit. 21. 5.* which last is now practised amongst Mahometans.

But not to run into extremes: as amongst the primitive Christians it was a reproach to wear long hair, so was it to be bald; therefore to avoid that contempt, such as had short hair wore raised caps, such as shaved wreathed their heads with rolls of linen not only for ornament but to expel the Sun's piercing rays, and for defence against an Enemy; for undoubtedly tho'c large Turbants the Turks wear over a flat-crown'd quilted cap is a very serviceable head-piece. Those in *Perse* are excessive large and valuable, albeit commonly of Callico; for the superiour sort of people have them woven with Silk and Gold with a rich fringe or tassel of Gold and Silver at the end: but at feasts, entertainments and gaudy-days I have seen them wreath their Shafshes with ropes of orient Pearl and chains of Gold set with precious stones, of great value. That which the King himself has on differs not in shape from others, unless it exceed for magnitude: all the difference I could observe was that he wore it the contrary way and more erect than others. Which put me in mind of that which *Plutarch* mentions concerning *Ara-xerxes*, who in his old age causing his Son *Cyrus* to be proclaimed King, gave him the royal prerogative of wearing the pico or top of his Cydaris upright; nor permitted any subject. Some glimpse of that head-tire or Tiara we have in *Plut. vita Antonii*; which noble Roman gave order for a high and rich Tribunal to be erected in the most publick place of *Alexandria*, where he and *Cleopatra* seated themselves in Chairs of burnished Gold: two of a lesser size were set for their two Sons; the eldest was called *Alexander*, to whom for his share of the world he assigned *Parthia*, *Media*, and *Armenia*, who that day wore upon his head a rich Tiara which resembled a high-crown'd Hat, and upon his shoulder a long Vest according to the royal Robe of *Perse*: but *Ptolemy* the younger (to whom he bequeathed *Macedon* and other parts of *Greece*) upon his head had a broad-brimm'd Hat, about which was a fillet or band richly set with Stones, upon his shoulder a long Cloak after the *Macedonian* cut, and upon his feet were embroidered sandals.

With these Shafshes the *Perians* go covered all day long, not excepting the presence of the King, nor their set times of devotion: for to bare or uncover the head is held irreverent. Now as the *Europeans* in their salutes usually take off their Hats in presence of their betters to bare their heads, the Mahometans signify the same only by a moderate deflexion of the head and directing their head towards their heart, by which they usually express their complement, as noted by *Q. Curt.* But this custome came in with the Alcoran; before which, the Oriental people, *Perians* and others wore a sort of Hat and Bonnet, as yet continued in *China*, where unless by the late invasion of the *Tartars*, *Mahomer* is not acknowledged: yea, both at salutations and in presence of superiours they were uncovered. So say *Eustathius* and *Dionysius* two credible witnesses, and *Plutarch* attests the like; for saith he, *Contra Hostes Caput regimus, Amicis nudamus*, In fight we cover the head against our Enemies, but saluting our Friends are uncovered. A practice not only commanded but commanded by *S. Paul*, 1 *Cor. 11. 4.* where it is said That at the exercise of Religious Duties to be covered the head thereby is dishonoured; for, that a man ought not to cover his head at those times, appears by the seventh Verse: but as to the other sex, it is otherwise. Now how rigid soever the Turk may seem in abhorring the moving his Turbant, especially towards a Christian in salutations; the *Perians* nevertheless have more generosity: for with them it is a Maxim, and might be so with others, That singularity is discommendable, as being an humour either sleighting order and degrees of men (allowed Angels,) or otherwise the civil customes and good manners of Countries

Coutryes in things indifferent and meerly ceremonial, serving only to cement affection. And albeit to one another they are strict enough to that mode or custom of being covered; nevertheless, at *Ashkaff* after Sir *Dodmore Cotton* had his Audience, at which *Sir Abbas* was present with the Ambassador, the King his Master's health being by *Sir Robert Sherley* remembred, the Ambassador standing up uncovered, the Persian King (frolick at that time, or rather in civility) took off his Turban. Another time, as I heedlessly croffed the Court where the King was sitting in an open Tent hearing Petitions, I, according to the European mode, made my due respects, by uncovering my head and bowing reverently towards the King, who observed it, and was so well pleased therewith that he raised his Turban a little from his brows, both to honour me the more and to express his satisfaction; especially, as I was afterwards told, for that I appeared in my own Country Habit: otherwise it had been a presumption punishable; but as it proved, a grace that procured me the more respect, especially with the better sort, where-ever I passed. The King indeed took great delight and esteem'd it an addition of lustre to his Court to behold exortees in their own Country Habit: so that the greater the variety appeared, he would say the more was his Court and Country honoured at home, and in estimation abroad: insomuch as upon any affront done a Stranger, if in his own Habit, he should be sure of reparation; but in case he went in the Habit of the Country where he travelled, undistinguishable when the injury was offer'd, it would be oft' twise upon address for vindication: the emphasis it seems wanting that inclined it. Such was then the rule of Court and populous places: albeit in travel Forreigners have their liberty to please themselves as to their Garb, and without cause of exception to any.

The *Afzicks* wear no bands; their *Aljabs* or out-side Vest is usually of Callico stichit with silk, or quilted with Cotton: but the better sort have *Vestes polyniae* Garments of party-coloured silks; some being satten, some gold and silver Chambles, and some of Bodkin and rich cloth of gold figured; for variety belt pleases them: no colour displease but black, which is not worn, because they hold it dismal and unlucky. Their sleeves are strait and long (varying from the *Turk*, who have them wide and short;) their close coat usually reaches to their calves, and bears round. Their waltes are girt with fine towels of silk and gold about eight yards long; those and the Shashes distinguish the quality of those that wear them: Dukes and other of the Noble sort have them woven with gold; Merchants and *Cosel bashes* with silver; of silk and wool those of inferiour rank.

Next their skin they wear smocks or demi-shirts of cotton, in colour resembling *Scotch* plaid: their breeches like the *Irish* trooze have hose and stockings sow'd together; the plucking falls not always into their shooes, but from the ankle down gives to the eye two inches of the leg naked. Their shooes are of leather well sow'd, but without latches, and of what colour you can fancy, sharp at the toe and turning upwards, the heels high and small stod with iron or nails ingrailed. Thisalfo I noted, they do not wed themselves to these iron hemi-cycles for thrif or ease, they seldom journey far, or go swiftly, exercise and spare diet never agreeing but to tread in a venerable path of antiquity. A custome also deriv'd from their Fore-father, either symbolizing with *Mahomet* whose Arms was a crescent *Luna*, his Motto *Cresce*: else borrow'd from the Cygales of the *Athenians* or from the *Romans* who wore Tescuts or Half-moons upon their shooes as an Ensign of honour, or rather as *Isidorus* observes, *Nisi un cencenarii numeri significasse; quia initio Patricii centum fuerant*. By *Martial* and *Pancirolius* termed *Lunata calces*; *Lunata misquam pellis*: and by *Statius* in his *Bosages*, *Primis; parvula clavis vesti, et Luna, &c.* In old times also used by the *Jews*, as may be gathered from the 68 Pfal. 30 verf. That tread under feet pieces of silver, i. e. garnish their shooes with silver plates, according to the vulgar Tranlation. Over all, the *Perſians* (especially such as travel) throw short Calzoons or coats of cloth (without sleeves) furred with sable, foxes, mulwhormaws, squirrels, or sheep-skins which is a furr highly prized; in hotter seasons endure to wear short wide stockings of *English* cloth heel'd with leather, and serve sometimes for boots: howbeit, they want not such.

Glove: are of no cleem amongst them, nor Rings of gold; for silver Rings are most worn: not that gold is less valuable (for in other utensils they have it,) but because *Mahomet* according to Tradition had one of silver which was left *Ozman* for a Legacy, and charmed with singular properties: None have their Rings of iron, except those of baser sort; a metal some account a symbol of slavery. They paint their nails and hands with *Alcamis* or *Cinnas-powder* into a red or tawny colour, which besides the ornament it gives cools the liver, and in War makes them (they say) valiant. Their nails are discoloured with white and vermillion; but whyso, I cannot tell, unless it be in imitation of *Cyrus*; who as an augmentation of honour commanded his great Officers to tincture their nails and faces with vermillion; serving both to distinguish them from the vulgar, and (as did our warlike *Britains*) in fight to appear the more terrible.

In their Rings they wear Agats or Turquoises, which stones most delight them: some have their Names or some word out of the *Alcoran* engraven in it, with which they sometimes stamp their Letter: for not one Sword-man amongst a thousand knows the use of letters, the *Mulayes* and Clergy ingrossing that Science; who when they write, frequently do it kneeling; either because that posture is easier, or that what they dictate in that form is reputed holy. Goose-quills they write not with, but reeds or canes, in which they imitate the Ancients. Their paper is very glorie, and by dropping oyl'd-colours chambette and veined like marble: the materials are not rags or skins but Bombasine or Cotton-wool, coarse and requiring much toil to perfect.

In waling they are not less ceremonious than the *Jews*, whom they seem to imitate, by joyning the tops of the fingers of both hands together with the thumb, which is parabolical: this they do, not onely afore and after meals but when they use nature; and to that end have Boys who carry an Ewer filled with Water, which in the open Streets they are not ashamed to make use of.

Their Swords (Shamshers they call them) are not straight as ours be, but more hooked and bending than our Faulchions; of pure metal, broad and sharp as any rasour: nor do they value them, unles, if the arm be good, at one blow they can cut in two an Aisnego. The hilts are without wards, being of gold, silver, horn, ivory, ebony, steele or wood; somtimes of the Ribzuba or Morses teeth usually taken at *Pocchora* in *Russia*. The *Persian* Scimiters were of that esteem in old times, that as *Herodotus* lib. 4. writes it became the *Scythians* God, being accounted no less than *simulacrum Martis*. *Scytha Acinaci sacrificant*, saith *Lucian in Iove Tragado*. And *Arnobius* lib. 6. *Ridetis priscis temporibus, Persas furios, Arabas informem Lapidem, Scybas Acinacem coluisse*. Their scabbards are of Camels hide, on solemn days covered with Velvet embroidered with gold and stones of price. They seldom ride without bow and arrows: the quiver and case oft wrought and cut very artificially: the bow, short but strong; the arrows, long and well headed: and albeit some think incomparable in execution to a Gun, yet time has been they have with that (as we in *France*) in many parts of *Aia* obtained memorable Victories: those most remarkable wherein *Craffus* lost his, *Valerian* and others; occasioning those Dirges of the *Roman Poets*, *Terga conversi metuenda Parbi*. And *Lukan* lib. 1.

More swift than Parthian back-shot shafts.

And *Virgil* in his 4. lib. *Georg.*

—*Thick as a Summers shower:*
Or as a cloud of Arrows in their flight,
When the bold Parthians are engag'd in fight.

And *Ovid* in their commendations,

Gens fuit & terris & equis & tutu sagittis, &c.

By *Lucan* at the Battel with *Craffus* said to be invenomed,

Spicula nec solo spargunt fidentia ferro,
Stridua, sed multo saturant Tela Veneno.

Nor were there trusty shafts steel'd as the head
Alone, but also deadly paysoned.

At this day of little repute in Archery unles they can in a full career cleave an Orange which is hung athwart the Hippo-drome, and (when past the mark) with another hit the rest, turning (in his short Stirrups and *Morocco* Saddle) backwards. In this Weapon and their Sword they more delight than in great Ordnance, which nevertheless they have mounted as we could perceive at *Jasques*, *Ormus*, and *Gombrown*, &c. most of which were taken from the vanquished *Portugal*. Some Cannon we saw mounted at *Larr*, some unmounted at *Shyratz*, *Spahann* and other places; but seldom use them in a Train upon Field-Services; which in forge late Battels has given the *Turk* no small advantage over them, especially by disordering the *Persian* Horse who with that terrible noise are not a little affrighted. The use of Musquets they have had onely since the *Portugals* assisted King *Tahamas* with some Christian Auxiliaries against the *Turk*, so as now they are become very good shot. Howbeit, *Cedrenus* in his History relates That *Cosrhoe* the *Persian* King (who lived about the sixth Century) invented an Engine which *Gustus demiseret*

tangam pluviam & tonitruj sonitus resonare: but of what use gives no relation. And *Apparata* (with another, referring to this place) sunt fulgorum imitationes, & fragores tonitruis similes; quibus terrori homines sicut est Denu, conatus est. Which I apprehend were in imitation of those *Claudiana tonitrua* mentioned by *Hieron. Magnum lib. 1. Miscell. c. 1.* and probably may take their model from that *Machina Salmonis* noted by *Virgil, Flomer, Valerius* and others.

The Women here as of old in other parts of *Asia* veil their faces in *publique*. This veiling the face is very ancient both amongst the *Jews* and *Romans*. *Rebecca* when she approached *Iacob* covered her face *Gen. 24. 56*. Yea, amongst Men it was a note of reverence, as we find by *Elijah*; and by the Apostle intimated *1 Cor. 11. 10* yea, by the *Romans* used; for the Bride was commonly presented to her Husband with a yellow scarf thrown over her face. *Subpitius Gallo* (the first that found out the Eclipse) repudiated his Wife for shewing her face when she went abroad. But to describe them: I observed that generally they are low of stature, yet straight and comely; more corpulent than lean, Wine and Musick fattens them; the Spleen is curable, where passion rules not: and as to complexion it is usually pale, but made sanguine by adulterate fucus's. Their hair is black and curled; their fore-heads high, skin soft, eyes black; have high noses, pretty large mouths, thick lips, and round cheeks. Honest Women when they take the liberty to go abroad, seldom speak to any in the way or unvail their faces. When they travel or follow the Camp, the vulgar sort ride afride upon Horses; but those of better rank are mounted two and two upon Camels in Cages (or *Cajues* as they call them) of wood, covered over with cloth, to forbid any Man the sight of them.



Nor is this a new custome, for *Plutarch* in the life of *Artaxerxes* mentions the like, saying, That the *Perſians* were ſo jealous, that to ſpeak to or touch any of the King's Women was no leſs than death; nay, to approach near their Coaches when they travelled; and instances ſome particulars, as in the Story of *Darius* when he begged the fair *Aphro-ſia*, for his Concubine, whose perfections had Captivated the King alſo. And in that Story of *Themistocles* the exiled *Athenian* he relates how that the *Perſians* jealous of their Wives and Concubines, keep them ſtrictly mewed up at home; but abroad carry them in cloſe Cajuaes, which were ſo covered that no Paffenger could ſee them: nor were they drawn with Hoftes, but travelled hanging upon Camels. In one of theſe, *Themistocles* diuinified in a Womans habit was ſecretly conveyed out of *Gracia* to the Court of *Artaxerxes*, where he found more ſafety and better welcome than amonſt his ungrateful Country-men. In one of theſe the laſt *Darius* was conveyed into *Meryana* by *Bessus* that had shackled him with golden Fetteres, *Juſt. lib. 11.* Agreeable to this, we oft-times had a proſpect of the travelling Scraglio's, and could well perceive that their Guards were pale lean-faced Eunuchs, fo jealous of their charge, that as we travelled 'twas the hazard of our lives if we neglected to haſten out of the way fo ſoon as we ſaw them; or elſe by throwing our ſelves upon the ground to cover us with ſome veil or other, that the Eunuchs might be ſatisfied we durft not, at leaſt, were not willing to view them. In one of theſe, for eaſe and warmth I my ſelf was forced to travel upon a Camel above three hundred miles, being to inſeebled by a Flux as I was not able to ride on Hofte-hack, and to keep company with the Caravan was neceſſitated to this kind of accommodation. Howbeit, that the cuſtome was otherwife, appears by that sumptuous entertainment *Belshazar* made a thouſand of his Lords, (then coope up in *Babylon*) where the King and his Princeſs, his Wives and Concubines drank Wine in thoſe golden Vefſels *Nebuchadnezar* brought thither from the Houſe of God which was at *Jeruſalem*, *Dan. 5. 3.* and likewife at that magniſick Feaſt which *Abaſuerus* made for an hundred and eighty dayes to the Nobles and Princeſs of his Empire, *Hef. 1. 11.* where it is ſaid, The King ſitting on his Throne at *Siphan* the Palace, commanded the Eunuchs to bring Queen *Vashni* with the Crown royal to hew the People and the Princeſs her beauty; which was excellent. *Plutarch* alſo in the life of *Artaxerxes* notes how that *Statira* the Queen uſually ſate with the King at Meat in publick, and was placed near the King in an open Chariot when he took the air abroad; the beholding of which (ſays the Author) gave great content unto the people. But the Amorola's, or thoſe of the order of *Lati*, like thoſe *Ambubacis* of old amongst the *Syrians*, be more ſociable, have moſt freedom, and in this Region are not worlē elecmed of: No queſtion but (to free themſelves from jealous Hufbands) many there wou'd be of that order: thoſe therefore that are ſuare not admitted without ſuit and giving Money; after which toleration none dare abuſe them; being company for the beſt or greateſt: in which reſpect they go no leſs richly habilitmented than what is recorded by *Heliodorus* in his *Ethiopian History* upon *Theagines* his uſhering *Artſaces* the *Perſia*: Lady, *Indycatur* (ſaith he) *vestem Perſicam, ornabaturq; aureis torquibus & mo-*
bilibus, diſtinctis gemmis, &c. Their Hair curling, diſhevels about their Shoulders, ſometimes plaide in a Caul of Gold: round about their Face and Chin uſually they hang a Rop: of Pearl: their Cheeks are of a delicate vermillion dye, Art (oſtaer than Nature) cauſes it. Their Eye-lids are coloured cole-black with a fine Pencil dipped in that mineral Alcohole which *Xenophon* ſaith the *Medes* uſed to pain their Faces with: which was the old way of painting; and from the Vulgar Translation of the Bible, where 'tis ſaid *Jezebel depinat Oculos ſuos fibris*, 2 *King. c. 9. v. 30.* may be prelumed that ſhe was ſo painted: With which Antimony the *Grecian* Dames in old time coloured their Eye-brows, *huncius, caput* their Poets call it; now alio ued in *Turkey*. They have alſo artiſcial inciſions of various shapes and forms, as have the *Enamorado*'s likewiſe. Their Noses are ſet with Jewels of Gold imbellifhed with rich Stones; and their Ears alſo have Rings of equal luſtre. In a word, to ſhew they are Servants to Dame *Flora*, they beautifie their Arms, Hands, Legs, and Feet with painted Flowers and Birds; and in a naked garb force every Limb about them to dance after each other, elaborately making their Bells and Timbrels answer their turnings. Shonge nevertheless of the *Indian* Curtezans call'd *Bogawars*, who at ten years of age when their *Bodies* are tender and flexible, will in their Dances ſkrew themſelves into admirable poſtures: for ſtanding upon one Leg they will raife the other above their Heads, and leuiſurely lay their Heels upon their Heads, all the while ſtanding upon one Leg, as I have heard a Merchant relate he ſaw done at *Golconda* and other places in *India*. Their habit (not unlike themſelves) is loofe and gaudie, reaching to their mid-leg; under which they wear Drawers of Cloth of Gold, Satten, tiffued Stuff or costly Embroidery. This kind of Creature is of no Religion, ſave that of the laſt

last Assyrian Monarch, whose Doctrine was *ede, bibē, inde*: for these look temptingly, drink notably, and covet Mens Souls and Money greedily. They scorn, nay upbraid the soberer sort with epithetes of slave, rejected, unfaciocable, and unworthy their notice. So as, true it is at this day what *Trogus Pomp.* observed long ago, *Parbi Uxoribus & feminis non convivii tantum virorum, sed etiam conspicuū interdicebam*, &c. But that the Women had greater liberty, is observed by an Author of good credit, *Persarum regibus in cena ac convivio adsidet regina*. *Verum ubi ludendi & inebriandi incessit voluntas, eas amandant, & musicas peliceq[ue] advocant*: The Queen is present with the Persian Kings at Supper and Banquets, but withdraws when the King is disposed to drink and be merry: for then they call for Musique and Curtefans, *relictis hoc quidem, quod christias & libidinis sua particeps fieri uxores nolunt*; done in regard they would not have their Wives partakers in those intemperate and wanton Enterprizes. *Plinarchi moralia in conjugalia praecepta*. And yet *Xenophon* in the Institution of *Cyrus lib. 1.* fayes, That the Persians custome was to kis each other at meeting and parting. And in the 15. ch. and 15. v. of the Apocryphal part of *Hester tis* said *Tulit auream virginem & posuit super collum ejus & osculatus est eam*. Howbeit, that manner of salute is now very offensive to the *Persian*.

Concerning the Arms of *Persia*, *Zonaras* in his first Book and nineteenth Chapter out of an ancient Monument observeth, that in old times they bore *Luna* an Eagle crowned of the *Sun*, displayed *Saturn*; which continued for many decessants their Royal Ensign, till *Cyrus* (as in the Empire, in Escutcheon also) made an alteration. *Xenophon* gives us the view thircrof; *Era Cyro signum aurea Aquila in longa hasta suspensa, & nunc etiam id insignie Persarum Regibus manet, &c.* Born till *Craspis* perished by them, at which time a Sagittary was blazoned in their Royal Standard: A fit Emblem of that people, who few skill in Horsemanship and frequent riding might properly be resembled to a Sagittary: from whence also that Coin of Dariques came, a round piece of Gold (fifteen shillings in our Money,) *Darius* being stamped on the one side, and a Sagittary (his Coat-armour) on the other; memorized by *Plinarch* in the life of *Ageilans*, who complained that his design of conquering *Asia* was prevented by thirty thousand Sagittaries; meaning a Bribe of so many pieces of Gold bearing that stamp, given to betray his Enterprize. But *Mahomet* when he had yoked their Necks under a two-fold bondage, the other were rejected, and a Symbol of greater mystery in their Banner displayed, viz. *Mercury*, a Crescent *Luna*, with this impreza, *Totum dum impieat Orbem*; alluding to an univerſal command: which since was borrowed by the French, how properly I know not, but may appear to such as go to *Fountain-bleau*, where that device I saw iterated. But *Mahomet's* predicion failed when that Santon of *Ardaveil* invented a new Ensign, viz. *Venus*, a Lion couchant *Sol*; the Sun orient in his Face, of the same: minted also in their Bras medals, and (as a tie of amity) accepted of by the great Mogul and other neighbouring Princes in *India*. But the Cawas, Beglerbegs, Sultans (the fame the Greeks called *Homotimi*, i.e. *Persian Nobles, Sarraups the Romans*,) Agaes, Soldagars, and Coofel-bahes bear no Coat-Armour; not that they are intituled slaves, but from their ignorance in Heraldry: for no honour there is hereditary. Nevertheless, this I can say in praise of the *Persian*; They are very humane and noble in their natures; differing in their ingenuity and civility to one another, but much more to strangers, very much from the *Turks*, who are rugged and barbarous. For the *Persians* allow degrees amongst themselves, and of other people have a due esteem according to their birth and quality, yea, give respect agreeable to merit.

In old times (commonly though corruptedly so called, seeing as one says well our Times are the ancient Times, in that the World is now ancient, and not thofe we count so by a retrograde computation) they were Idolaters, such as the *Govers* be now, the *Cardis in Syria*, the *Perses in India*, the *Pegonans*, &c. but by converse with *Greeks* and *Romans* abolished their Celestial worship, and (as *Strabo* relates) received Demonomie, continued till *Mahomet*. The Firmament they called *Jupiter* the *primus mobile* of other God, him they feared: but *Apollo* (the Sun, or *Mutor* as they termed him) they most affected, and to whom they dedicated many Temples, attire him with epithetes of honour, health, and gentlenesses; as yet memorising his Image in the stamp and Coat-Armour of their Emperours. The Moon also had adoration amongst them, supposing her espoused to *Apollo*; and for her benevolent influences towards production, *Crescent Luna frumenta grandeant*, *Plin. 18.* as yet continued: for upon the first view, they give it a Mombarrack. They also had Reward and Punishment rank'd in the Catalogue of their Deities. *Venus* had equal reverence: the Earth alfo, Water, Air, and Fire, wanted not the names of Deities, Fire and Water especially. *Zerstoof* charged them to keep a continual

ritual Fire, not fed with common Fuel, nor to be kindled with profane Air; only such could come from the Beams of that glorious Eye of Heaven the Sun, Lightning, Flints like. The Water also was by no means to be corrupted with dead Carcasses, Dirt, Rags, or what exprest foridity or naftiness. Images they esteemed but indifferent; usually actuating their rites in Groves, Mounts and other places.



Their Marriages were commonly celebrated in the Spring, such time as the Sun makes the *Equinoctium*; the Bridegroom the first day junketting on nothing save Apples and Camels marrow, a diet they thought proper for that dayes Festival. Polygamy they liked of, the King giving the example, honouring them with most applause who proved Fathers of most Children. They feldome saw their Infants till past four years of age; from which to twenty, they learned to ride and shoot; alfo to fare meanly, lodge hard, watch, till the Earth, and be content with small things. In the Institution of *Cyrus lib. 3.* mention is made of a Souldier that freezing at a Court of War the whole company bowed and blessed the Gods; that sign serving as a good Omen to the busines they were about: a custome continued amongst the *Persians*. The Old Men went plain; but the young Mens habit was rich, their arms and legs fettered with voluntary chains of burnished Gold or Brass, whose fulgor they delighted in from its conformity to the Sun. In War their attire was either Steel or Mailed work curiously linked, and their Breast-plates scaled: their Targets were of Ox-hides, large and round, their Cap was Linen multiplicated: Bowes, Swords, and Axes their Arms; all which in excellent good order, and through long practice they managed dextrously.

Parallel

Parallel to these is what *Xenophon* says, In *Cyrus* his time their common Arms w^t:t. bow and arrows in quivers, short crooked scimiters, battel-axes, light shields, and two lances apiece. Their Arrowes greater than now they are, for the bow they drew was not less than three cubits. Children from the fifth year of their age to the twentieth used little other exercise (faith *Herodotus*) than these, viz. to ride the horse, shoot, and speake truth. *Cyrus* was their first instructor; before whose time it was rare to see one ride; but after, as rare to see a *Perisan* of any rank a foot. Howbeit *Dionysius* reports otherwise of *Parthia*: that is was *Regio tota plana, ob quam rem accommodata, &c.* which we found otherwise. And this custome was imitated by *Arsaces* when he introduced the *Parthian*: *Equis omni tempore vestitans; illis bella, convivia; illis publica & privata officia obeunt: super Equis ire, consistere, mercari, colloqui. Hoc denique disserunt inter servos & liberos; Quod servi pedibus, liberi non nisi equis incident: equitare & sagittare magna industria docunt, &c.* Jult. lib. 41.

The great mens tables were splendid in rich furniture and dishes of gold; but in meats very ordinary and sparing. *Bacchus* their Countrey-man taught them the Art of drunkenness (*Noah* some imagine him, *Omnia vero Bacchanalia coramque ritus à Noah ebrietate originem habent, &c.*) insomuch as no matter of moment past currant save what relied of *Bacchism*: their ordinary negotiations and bargains were seldom ratified unless consolidated in froth and drunkenness. Nevertheleſt, their complements were hearty; to equals affording embraces; to ſuperiours the head and knee; which mode is to this hour continued without alteration.

Superstitious they are, as may be noted from our adverse fortune as we travelled: for in ſome places whⁿ we stood at their mercy to provide us Mules, Camels, or Horſes, how haſty ſoever we appeared, they cared not to ſet us forward except by throwing the Dice ſuch a chance happened they thought fortunate: a ceremony deduced from the *Romans*, who had their *abii & arri & fasti & nefasti dies*. In miſchances alio or in ſickneſs ſome uſe forcery, prescribing charms, croſs characters, letters, antiques, or the like, taken commonly out of the Alcoran. Necromantick ſtudies they applaud because preſonnd, and tranſcending vulgar capacities; ſo as many in thoſe parts make a living of it: few ſiets there but can exorcize. Friday is their Sabbath; licentiously kept; and may therefore be ſuppoſed ſuch a Sabbath as *Plutarch* speaks of, which is derived from *Zacarias* or *Bacchanals*: for, *Sabas* is *Bacchus*.

Amongſt them four degrees are molt remarkable; Chawns, Coozel-baſies, Agacs, and Cheilby or Coridschey. The Timars or Turqmars are more deſpicable.

Persia est terra potens Armis. Upon muſter the Persian King can march (as appears by roll and pension) three hundred thouſand Horſe, and ſeventy thouſand Foot or Muſque-toons: ſuch force he can readily advance, but ſeldome exceeds fifty thouſand; enough to find forage or provant in ſuch barren Countreys. For example; *Mirza Fetta* has in his Brigade fifty ſub-Baſhaes of note, each of them commanding three hundred. Horſe-Officers are *Emangoly chan* Duke of *Shiraz*, who commands thirty thouſand Horſe; *David-chawn* his Brother, *Kaza-can* Lord of *Sumachy*, *Aſſor-chawn* Lord of *Myreyvan*, *Zedder* Lord of the *Kaddies* and *Gafferſtoſt*, *Mayar* Sultan of *Tabriz*, each command twelve thouſand Horſe; *Soffi-chawn* Sultan of *Bagdas*, *Akmet-can* Lord of *Mijcarroon*, *Gaffer-chawn* Sultan of *Koom*, *Zenal-can* Lord of *Tyrwan*, each hath a charge of fifteen thouſand Horſe; *Isaac-beg* twenty four thouſand; *Erbaaman* the Vizier ſeventeen thouſand; *Soffi-Kooley-chawn* ſixteen thouſand; *Gaffer-chawn* Governor of *Arabestan*, *Perker-can* Lord of *Gorgefian*, *Huff-n-chawn* Lord of *Ery*, *Munwezir-can*, and *Sinal-chawn* Lord of *Sigefian* ten thouſand each; *Ababour* Governor of *Genge* eight thouſand; *Ham-sha-can* of *Dars* ſeven thouſand; *Aliculi* of *Perſicow* four thouſand; *Morad* of *Ajharaff* ſix thouſand; *Budur-can* the *Daraguod* ſix thouſand; and *Dargagoly* Son to *Gange-Ally-chawn* Sultan of *Candidhor* four thouſand: three hundred and twenty thouſand Horſe or thereabout: wonderfull, when I conſider the little palturage and other provant the Countrey affords; for their horſes have but chopt straw and a little barley to ſerve the turn; yet that thin diet renders them leſt apt to diſeases, and keeps them in as good heart as ours, having better proviſion.

In peace they are not alwayes idle, ſolacing their active bodies in fundy ſorts of warlike exercises. They dance not, except as *Pyrrhus* taught the *Epiros*: but love to hunt and chafe the Stag, the Antelope, Gazal, Tyger, Bore, Goat, Hare, Fox, Jackal, Wolf, and the like: in which paſtimes they exprefſ singular courage and dexterity. They alio know well how to uſe the Bow, Dart, Scimiter, Gun and Javelin: Their Harquebus is longer than ours, but thinner; they uſe that very well, but detest the trouble of Caanon and ſuch pieces as require carriage. They have Greyhounds large and not unlike the Irith, of courage to encounter a Lion: have Spaniels alio, but not ſo good as their Hawks may challenge. Eyeries they have of Eagles, Lannars, Gohawks, and Hobbits;

bies; but their best Falcons are out of *Russia* and the Scythic Provinces: they fly commonly at Hares, Jackals, Partridge, Pheasant, Hern, Pelican, Poot, Eltrich, &c. Their Lures and Hoods are sometimes embroidered or richly set with stones of price. The vulgar sort delight in Morrice-dancing, wraffling, assaulting, bandying, swinging upon ropes, Ram and Cock-fighting; in which exercises they spend much time: Nor do they value their money to see boys dance, or lavoltoes upon the rope; in which feights they are excellent. Cats be in more request with them than dogs; very large they are and tabby-coloured, streak like those of *Cyprus*. They frequently have them in their arms; in imitation it may be of their Prophet *Mahomet*, who usually carried a Cat in his sleeve, it may be likewise from the enmity the cat hath unto rats and mice, which as *Plutarch* observes in lib. *De odio & ira in India*, were reputed enemies to some deities the *Persians* in old times worshipped.

Merchants here are in estimation: they adventure into *Turkey*, *Russia*, *India*, and other parts of *Asia*, and more seldom into *Europe*. Such Mechanicks as be amongst them are industrious and ingenious; whether you consider those that labour in Silk and Bombafin, or that dye and weave Carpets, or other Arts, with which their Buzzars abound: Besides, they have a rare Art to print Flowers of all sorts in Leather and in colours; of which they make buskins, sandals, saddles, and furniture for houses: also they stain linen cloth, which we call Pantadoes.

These Physicians are great admirers of Nature, doting so much thereon as they make that oft times the first cause which indeed is but instrumental or secondary: moral Men they be; humane in language and garb, both which beget esteem from all that converse with them; and did not avarice (a vice predominating there, and by occasion of sickness in me full dearly experimented) and Magic studies too far sway them, I could value them above the rest. They have degrees transcending one another in Title as their skill and seniority merits. So well as I could apprehend, these are learned in the Sciences, and few but are Philosophers: Nevertheless, their Libraries are small, their Books usually Arabic, but choice and useful; wherein they agree with that rule in *Seneca*, *Non refiri quoniam multa fieri quoniam bona libet*, commonly such as advance their practice and profession: and in the proper Art I perceived that they prefer Plants and other vegetables before Minerals. Some Schools I visited, and observed (as I formerly mentioned near L. xxⁱ) that according to the old Adage *Necessarium est silentium ad studia*, they affect silence, anditting ev'ry legg'd wag their bodies, imagining that such motion advantages study and serves for exercise. Indeed *Seneca* seems to be of that judgment, *Abi necessarium est concutere corpus, ut si aliqua causa spiritus densior erat, extenuaret illum jactatio, quam profusa mibi sensus*. The Doctors are named *Hackems* (it may be radically from the Hebrew word *Hachzim*, that is, a learned man; or *Chaelan*, which in old Persian signifies great, or a Philosopher, or the same that *Magus* was, and a preserver of life;) *Mulaii* in the Arabic. But a Mountebank or Impostor is nick-named *Shitan-Tabib*, i. e. the Devil's Chirurgeon. They are Masters of much knowledge, and not a little delighted with judicial Astrologie, and not in vain, seeing that *Hippocrates* in 2. lib. *Aries*, holds *Scientia Astrarum non est modica pars scientie medicinae*. Many Arabick Writers learned both in Natural philosophy and the Mathematicks have flourished in those parts, most of whose Books they read; namely *Hippocrates* to whom the great *Artaxerxes* wrote an invitational Letter, *Galen*, *Averroes*, *Allarabius*, *Avicenna*, *Ben Ijauck*, *Abbu-Ally*, *Mahammed-Abdilla*, *Pen Eladib*, *Abu beer*, *Rhazes*, *Algazzallys* and *Albumazar*. In Geography *Abul-suds* the great Arab Cosmographer whole Works they have, (one of whose Maps I saw at *Com-brown*, and I thought differed from ours both in Lands and Seas; it was to be sold, but what money I offered would not be accepted) as also *Alphragamus*, from whom they better their discourse, and by such helps become admirable. Nor want they the knowledge of herbs, drugs, and gums; witness the Mydan in *Spabann*, than which, no place in the world I think shews greater plenty of herbs and drugs: having alio no les choice of fruits, pum, and odours. I observed, that to such of usas had fluxes, they gave Sloes, Rice, Cinnamon, Pomegranad, Barberries: to purge melancholy, *Aloes*, *Senna*, *Rhubarb*; for phlegm, Turpeth; for colds and sweatings, oyls of Beaver, Leopards, Jackals, *Herba maris*, our Ladies Rose, &c. Beside which, the Countrey affords plenty of Galbanum, Scammonia, Armoniac, Manna, Pillachoo's, Dates, Rhubarb, Opopanax, Sarc-o-olla, and Alla-seetida; which latter is in greatest measure found about *Labora* and other parts near the River *India*. Howbeit, sweating is the epidemic Phylick there, of least charge, and most usefull; insomuch that some inns have above three score hummums or baths; some lay three hundred. By which frequent bathing their skins become very soft and fine, and by a continued activity and tenderness of their muscles are much
more

more agile and flexible in their body than we in Europe be, where bathing is not so much used.

In antique paths of ignorance they chuse rather to tread, than by any new invention to call in question the reverend judgment of their Ancestors. Hence it is, that they continue their maimed Calculations, out of a blind conceit that Antiquity commanded them: for they have used to compute their years rather by the Moon, than by the motion of the Sun; affirming, That the Firmament or eighth Heaven finishes its revolution in two and thirty years: which is false; his diurnal motion from East to West compleating it self in four and twenty hours; his other from West to East, but one degree in an hundred years; which is the violence of the first mover. Notwithstanding, it is probable they mean the Heaven of *Saturn* which adjointeth it, (whose revolution comes near their time) finishing its journey from West to East in thirty years. Hence their Lunary account is become subject to error, reckoning from the Autumnal Equinox twelve Moons, the number of days in a whole year three hundred fifty three: so that our Solar Computation exceeds theirs twelve days at least every year; whereby it comes to pass, that thirty of our years make one and thirty of theirs; whence the difference ariseth twixt us and them in their Hegyrath, which by protract will doubtless occasion more confusion.

These differences in Accompt were observed of old: For, the Caldean Astrologers who kept the Registers of Time, perswaded *Calisthenes* (*Aristotle's* Nephew, and an Attendant upon *Alexander* at *Babylon*) that their Records ascended forty three thousand years: which *Diod. Siculus lib. 8. 1.* by reducing to Months, found to reach precisely unto the Creation, and no further. The *Egyptians* used the like accompt; for they (as *Solon* reported) pretended Annals of nine thousand years: which *Plutarch* by the like computation found to intend Months or Moons rather than years. But the *Iberians* who boasted of the Antiquity of their knowledge in Letters, and of having preludents of six thousand years, their year was found to consist of four months; which being likewise calculated was found to fall short of the time that *Moses* lived. But whereas the Jews ever computed their times by *Jubilees*, the Christians by *Indictions*, the Romans by *Lustra's*, and the Greeks by *Olympiads*; these that follow *Mahomet* have a different Epoch to accompt by; as the *Era Gelatin* from *Gelatin*, *Era Jezardzirdina* from *Jezardzird*; besides the *Hegira* they have from *Mahomet*, which is their Epochia or accompt of Time.

Such as practife manufactures have an inferiour repute to the Souldiers: nevertheless they live plentifully, and more secure from the jealous eye of the King than do the great ones, who oft deceive their thoughts that they are happier. The Peasants here as elsewhere in *Asia* are slaves; they dare call nothing their own; such is the rapine of the Begs of that Country; nay, every Coofel-bahl dares domineer, as we could perceive in our travel: yet upon complaint, the Cauſee ordinarily yields them reasonable justice.

The *Persians* had this Character of old, *Cunitorum hominum sunt mitissimi*, of all men the most civil; which disposition they reserve unto this day, being generally of a very gentle and obliging Nature; facetious, harmless in discourse, and little inquisitive after exotic news; seldom exceeding this demand, if such and such a Country have good wine, fair women, serviceable Horses, and well tempered Swords. Few of them can read, yet honour such as can; that Science being monopolized by Church-men, Clerks, Santos, and Merchants. Some little skill they have in Musick; that they have resembling the Doric and Phrygic, a soft and lofty sort of Consort. Above all Poetry lulls them, that Genius seeming properly to delight it self amongst them. Howbeit, Mimographers I must call them, their common Ballads resounding out the merry disports of *Mars* and his Mistresses, to which Saints they dedicate their amorous devotion. *Abul-Cafn* who lived A. Heg. 385. *Elgarzuly*, *Ihsul-Frid*, and *Elfargani* are their principal Poets in those fancies. Nor have I read that amongst the *Romans*, or in any other parts, Poetry has been better rewarded; witness Poet *Aeruan*, who for those 70 Diftichs which he presented *Mahomet* the great *Almansor's* Son, received as a reward 70000 Staters. *Taber* also who was General to King *Abderhaymon*, for three Verses which a Poet gave him, requited him with 30000 pieces of Gold: and *Abdalla* his Son, (he who for cure of a Consumption fed only upon Lions flesh boiled in red Vinegar, of which confection he took two drams daily,) was no less liberal to that Art, and as I might intance in many other Princes of the Sophian Pedegree of later times, not a little to their reputation. And how lame soever the Verses are, their graceful shaking their notes in chanting and quavering (after the French air) gives it to the ear harmonious. So that in my opinion it was rigidly said by a Father, when he called Poetic *Vivum Daemonum*: for (says the Lord *Verulam*) Poetic not only refreshes the Soul by chanting things rare and various, but also exalts the spirits with high raptures; and being joined with Musick sweetly intinuates it self, so as it has been esteemed

esteemed of even in the rudest Times, and amongst those Nations which were accounted barbarous. And albeit the Men affect not to dance themselves, (though anciently dancing was in request with men, as Stories tell us,) nevertheless, dancing is much esteemed there: for the Ganymeds and Layesians (wanton Boys and Girls) foot it even to admiration. Mymolianian dances I may properly call them, seeing the Bells, Bras Armlets, Silver Fetterers, Timbrels, Cymbals, and the like so revive *Bacchus*: in this kind of dance being so elaborate, that each limb seems to emulate, yea, to contend which can express the most motion; their hands, eyes, and bums gesticulating severally and after each other, swimming round, and now and then conforming themselves to a Doris stillness; the Ganymeds, with incanting voices and distorted bodies sympathizing, and poesie, mirth, and wine raising the sport commonly to admiration. But were this all, 'twere excusable; for though Persons of Quality here have their several Seraglio's, these dancers seldom go without their wages: and in a higher degree of baseness, the Pederasts affect those painted antique-robed Youths or Catamites (completing the *Roman Proverb*, *Persicos odi Tuer, puerum*, a vice so detestable, so damnable, so unnatural as forces Hell to shew its ugliest before its season). Hear S. Chrysostom: *Cogitato, quoniam grave illud sit peccatum, ut quo ipsam Gel erum etiam ante tempus apparere coegerat.* And for the detection whereof, . *lvander*, is honoured to all posterity.

The Art of painting the face has been a mode more ancient than commendable, and sufficiently blemished by *Jezabel*, as lately mentioned. *Xenophon* by an example he gives, makes it appear that Men likewise used it: for, in the description of *Abygges* the Median King, he tells us, That his Face was languished with Vermilion, his Eyes struck with a semi-circle of Azure, and his Neck adorned with a Carenet or Rope of Pearl, and sometimes with a chain of Gold, in use then amongst such as were Favourites or Princes of the flood. An Ornament more ancient than *Abygges* amongst other Nations; for *Pharaoh* when he promoted *Joseph* to be second in the Kingdom of *Egypt*, amongst other the regal attire was put about his Neck a Chain of Gold, *Cbn.* 41. 42. *Daniel* at *Babylon* had the like by order of *Belhazzar*, *Dan.* 5.29. *Zorobabel* by *Darius*, *Eldr.* 3.6. and by like order of the Syrian King *Alexander*, there was sent unto *Jonah* the High Priest a Chain of Gold, as the custome was to such as were of the Kings blood, *Macchab.* 10. 18.

Persia continues the ancient custome of emasculating youths; practised to preserve the excellency of their voice, but principally for guarding the Seraglio's of great Persons: Which, though it sufficiently eliminate them, yet some Eunuchs have neither wanted courage nor reputation, seeing that both in *Barbary* and other Mahometan Countreys out of them they have elected Generals for the field: But in the execution of their ordinary tuit about Women find them mischievous enough; for, being armed with Sword and Target, Bow and Arrows, they express their jealousie too oft to the prejudice of ignorant and careless Travellers. They are of most ancient standing, for we read of them in Scripture in oldest times, especially in this Empire. So that *Donatus* in *Terence* and *Petronius Arbiter* spare not to aver, That *Persia* made the first Eunuchs. By which word is sometime understood Chamberlains, or those great Officers whose nearest attendance was upon the King: but those other that wait upon the Harem have their Testicles cut off, which so enervates Nature, or at least the exercise, that they are utterly disabled as to procreation. And yec it is the opinion of some, That when the Testicles are forced away, there is such a remainder of Seed stored up in the Glandules of Generation which be spermatique, that it is possible for Eunuchs to generate. Notwithstanding which, until a jealous Turk observed a Gelding to cover a Mare, the extreme now used was not practised.

Honest Women rarely shew their Faces to strangers, eclipsing by a white Sheet (the note of innocence) those Beauties which are exquisite; no Man daring to praise any of that Sex, especially another's wife: such is their jealousie.

Now concerning Circumcision, it is here used, and accounted so necessary, that without it none calls himself a Musulman. Men, and sometimes Women, conform to it; the Men for Paradise, the Women for honours sake, or *Ben-sidi-Ally* Fables whoso paraphrase: from nine to fifteen the females may; and in *Caro* and the adjacent parts, at this day it is frequently practised: nor is this a recent custome, for *Strabo lib.* 16. in that case makes this physical observation, *Quemadmodum viri prapurum habent, mulieres habent etiam quandam glandulosam carnem quam Nympham vocant, non ineptam accipiendo characteris Circumcisio:.* The Males at *Izmael's* age (whom they imagine was *Abraham's* best beloved) are castrated; c're twelve hoping he may be able to speak his profession. Howbeit, the Arabs practised it before *Mahomet's* time; yea, some think he himself was not circumcised; nor that he imposed, but suffered it only to please the *Arabians*.

A fee is to be paid amid the ceremony, for want of which, the poorest sort are seldom cut. The ceremony is more or less according to the difference of their degree, acted either at home or in the Meschits : If son to a Mirza, Chawn, Sultan, or Chelaby, it has more pomp ; for, his kindred and friends in their best equipage assemble at the parent-house, as a symbol of their joy, presenting him with gifts of sundry prices ; and after small stay, mount the Boy upon a trapt Courier, richly vested, holding in his right hand a sword, n̄ his left his bridle : a slave goes on either side, one holding a Lance, the other a Flambeaux ; neither of which are without their Allegories. Mulick is not wanting, for it goes first, the Father next, and according as they are in blood the rest, others follow promiscuously : the Hodgee attending at the entrance into the Mosque, helps him to alight, and hallows him. To work they straightway go : one holds his knee, a second dirobes, a third holds his hands, and others by some trivial conceit strive to win his thoughts to extenuate his ensuing torment. The Priest (having muttered his orisons) dilates the prepuce, in a trice with his Silver Scissars circumcises him, and then applies a healing Powder of Salt, Date-stones and Coton-wool, the standers by to joy his initiation into Mahometry throwing down their *Manera Nasalitia* salute by the name of *Musulman*. But if the ceremony be at home, they then provide a Banquet : before which, the Boy enters well attended, unclothed before them all and circumcised ; and in commemoration of such a benefit (imitating therin *Abraham* when *Isaac* was weaned) continue a Feast for three dayes together : at the end wher'cōl, the Child is led about in state, bath'd and purg'd, a Turban of white Silk put upon his Head, and all the way as he returns, saluted with acclamations.

But such as turn Apostates to swill in luxury the more, or to robe themselves with some title or advancement, (forgetting that for a base and momentany applause or pleasure they disrobe their Soul of everlasting happiness, such as run parallel with the lines of Eternity) are brought before the Caddi, who upon this signification leads him into the Mosque and without much ceremony, only by cutting the fore-skin, are thereby Believers. Which done, those Devils incarnate to witness their new perswasion, or rather to aggravate and indeed accelerate their damnation, spurn with their accursed Feet the Croſs, the hieroglyphic of our salvation : which in the primitive and pureſt Age was of that honour amongst Christians as not only they ſed it in Baptism but upon their fore-heads to defight the Jews and Heathens, and to glory in that fame thing the more which the Enemies of Christ upbraided the Christian with as a calumny. Superſtitio I detest ; but that it ſhould become a derision, is miserable and to be pitied. To return.

The Renegado in token of defiance ſpits thrice at it, having this miſbelief, That Christ never ſuffered, but *Jesus* ; and then exults in the uſual Battologie, *La, li, la illab, Hyllus, Allougb, aybyr, Mahomed refud-Allougb* : God is firſt, praise him, and next him, *Mahomet*. After which imprecation the wretch holds up one Finger, thereby renouncing a Trinity : three Muſulmen then dart three ſtaues three times towards Heaven, and e're any touch ground his new name is impoſed. Which done, he is led ſlowly upon an *Al*, his emblem, about the City that every one may note him for a Denizon and Proſelyte to *Mahomet*. But (praised be God) I have not heard of any European Christian, who in this Countrey of late times hath denied his Faſhion, which is caufe of rejoicing.

Their Weddings have not much variety. Firſt, obſerve that Polygamy is tolerable ; for *Mahomet* to excuse his own infirmity (but borrowing it from the *Romans*) honours ſuch moſt as have ſeveral Wives and beget moſt Children : wherein they agree with *Scatiger*, That the pleaſure of Generation is a ſixth ſenſe : but their common excuse is, To furniſh the Emperour with Souldiers for defence, Paradise with Saints ; and to reſound the meritorious praifes of their *Mahomet* : the Derville an order of beggning Friar excepted, who from a tranſcendant conceit of their own purity forbear Matrimony, but ſuppoſe Natures blackeft villany no ſin, producing *Mahomet* for their prototype, who both by precept and example defended it. I have peradventure tied your chalfe ears too long to ſe impure a ſubject. Such therefore as dare wed provide a ſum of money and buy her good-will, her Parents being no further charged than to bath and purifie her. They chafe their Wives more from report of others than particular acquaintance, the friends of either party commonly recommending and concluding. The day being come, the Bride is veiled with a lawn and bravely mounted, a troop of friends accompany her to Church, in the mid-way ſhe is met with an equal number of friends, all together agrandize the ceremony. Entring the Mosque, the Mulay takes the protest of their good liking, ſhe demands three things (ſuch as the Jewish Women did of old) bed-right, food, and cloathing : Their Fathers having declared themſelves content, the Priest circles them with a cord, conjoins their hands, takes a reciprocal oath, and calls *Mahomet* to witneſſe.

nels. After which, the Caddi enrolls their names, the hour, day, month, and year of Nuptial; and with an *Euge* dismisses them. The first day vapours away in Tabaco, Feall, and other jovialty, Men and Women being severed: at night, the Bride enters a Stove, where she is washed and perfumed, that her degree may the better appear and her Person be the better accepted of. Next night they bathe together, and seven dayes after: during which, the feasting holds in some measure, according to the old custome of *septem ad Coriovum*, in which time if he discover her to be no Virgin she is returned to her Parents with dishonour; otherwise kept till Death make the divorce. The Alcoran agreeable to the ancient practice of those Eastern Countries allows incestuous marriages, pretending that thereby love is better contracted and conserued. In case the Man be weary, or that the barren, he acquaints the Mulay therewith, who (Jew-like) gives a bill of Divorce upon his allowing her a Dowry: after which, if he require her again and she agree, they are secondly married; yea, five, six, seventimes rejecting and returning, as hate or love stimulate: by that disorder, love vanishing, jealousie budding, rage advancing, clamours roaring; and by which confusione many times the Fathers neither know their own Children, nor they their Parents. They marry none of another Religion, but use such as Slaves, or Concubines; refrain them in their Distresses: Four Wives the Law tolerates, Concubines are unlimited; never wed common prostitutes; give suck two years; and permit not Widows to marry again, till an hundred and twenty dayes be expired.

Their Burials revive some ceremonies that of old were used amongst the Jews and Gentiles: at his farewell to the World the next of Kin close the Eyes, as did *Joseph* in the 46. of *Genesius*; and *Telemachus* in *Ovid*, *ille meos oculos comprimit, ille nos*. The nobler sort of People had their Sepulchres in the sides of Mountains or Hills about *Persepolis*. Howbeit, some used to embalm, the Brains being exaulted by a Silver Engine, the Belly (the innards dissected and the Bowels extracted) cleansed with Wine, farced with Caffia, Myrrhe and other Spices, was then cloed and buried in extraordinary deep Pit or Vaults; or in places boled in the sides of Mountains. But the poorer sort used once Bitumen, or else the juice of Cedars, which resists putrefaction. Howbeit the most usual way of burial is this: First, they wash the Corps with clean Water, (as we find practised to *Tawiba* in *Ad. 9.*) they carry it orderly and with silence to the Grave; then lode the Carcals not in the Machits or Churches but Church-yards, and where none lay for merrily; supposing it a vile part to disturb the dead, whom in the Grave they think sensible of torment: they place his Head towards *Medyna*, and (according to the old *septem ad luctum*) for seven dayes the next of Kin watch, to keep if possible the evil Angel from his Grave, incessantly warbling out Elegies, Threnodies, as the last expiatio. of love they can shew. But *Videt enim lacrymas, & est pars fraudis in illis.*

Others thus: In the first place go those of his Blood; next them his Varlets naked to the waiste, the rest in trooies; who to express their zeal burn or scratch their Arm and Breasts, and cut and print circles in their Flesh, (a mode borrowed from the Jews, practised by *Moses*, *Levir. 19. 28.* and in *Deut. 14. 1.*) so that the blood oft trickles down in many places: next them are ranked youths whose shoulders bear some Texts out of the Alcoran, mixing with them Eulogies of the defunct, which they ingeminare. Next these follow many Persons of best rank, each putting his hand to the cord that draweth Hearses: and on every side throng the multitude, some bearing in their hands Laurel & Cypress, others Garlands of Flowers, Fruits, and what bilt befits the season: some sem naked Horse-men play along, and oft-times, to demonstrate their love, spare not to wound their carcasses. In the last place go the *Præfice*, or Women hired to weep and howl, wh tear their false hair, probably smell to Onions (*hunc illa Lachryme*) and use such imprecations as did the antique *Romans* noted in *Livy*, who made it an Art to mourn; and by the counterfeit tears and shrieks to provoke others to passion and like lamentation. The we find mentioned in *Jerem. 9. 1.* which custome the People of God borrowed from the Heathens. *Præfice dicuntur mulieres condulae ad lamentandum mortuum, que dant ceterum plangendi, as Nonius Marcellinus*; also noted by *Ovid* in his *Art. amand.*

—discunt lacrymare decenter,
Quoquo volunt plorant tempore, quoq; modo.

And by Juvenal in his 6. Sat.

*Fruitful in tears! Tears that still ready stand
To sally forth, and but expect command.*

And

*Lacrymas non sponte cadentes
Effundunt, &c. by Lucan.*

In which *decorum* they march slowly and with a commendable silence; but at his Dormitory ululate *Lala-Hillula*, i. e. Let us praise God. There they first uncloath and then cleane the Carcals, for his sins thereby as they say vanish: then they anoint him with Unguent, and so wrapt in fine linnen bury him, placing his head towards *Meccha*, his face towards Heaven, (the rather noted, in that the other Sex are buried with their faces downwards, and his arms spread, as prepared to embrace his Prophet *Mahomet*. Upon the Grave they fix two Itones, at his head and feet, which in *Arabick* characters engraved and coloured, note his Name, Quality and time of Burial. There they leave him, but give not over twice every day to sing his *Requiem*, beseeching *Mahomet* to succour him against his bad Angels: of whom, as part of their Creed, they nourish this Opinion:

So soon as any *Mussulman* is buried, forthwith *Muengar* and *Quarequa* two ugly Devils assail him; the onc armed with an iron club, the other with a hook of flaming brafs: in which frightful posture they view the Carcals, and in an imperious or rather insolent manner command him to lift up his head, to fall prostrate upon his knees, and beg his Soul, which it supposed was till then departed: The dead Body re-entertains his Soul, and together give an account of their passed Life: Now upon confession if it appear that his Life was good, the Devils as Spirits flee away, and give way to two good Angels (apparell'd in white silk) to comfort him; to the day of doom not budging from him, nor seeming unwilling to protect him. But in case his Life upon examination or confession appear bad, then the black-fac'd Caco-dæmon with the iron club hits him so pat on the head as thumps him ten yards deep into the ground; where he sleeps not long, for immediately the other spiteful Hel-hound with the flaming hook pulls him up again: in that horrid fort tormenting him till *Mahomet* calls a Parliament and gives deliverance. In one place of his *Alcoran* he promises to save them all; but in another (forgetting his promise) appoints them to pass over a narrow Bridge (he calls it the Bridge of Judgement) each Man carrying his sins in a bag behind him; but in passing over, with such as have heavy loads the Bridge breaks, and they fall into Hell; such as have less weight, into Purgatory, &c.

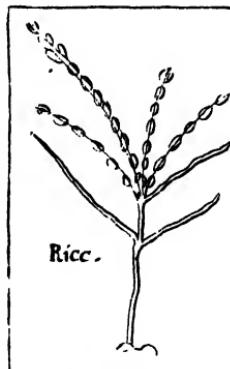
In former times they used to burn the Bodies, as did the *Romans* and most *Ethniques*. The Carcals was folded in linnen called *Linen T'rum* made of the stone *Asbestos*, which was both spun and woven into linnen; and being put into the fire would not consume, but preserved the alies from mixture with other things, and so was committed to the Sepulchre. This precious sort of incombustible-linnen at the first was sold at a high rate, but afterwards became more common: for such time as *Sylla* besieged *Athens*, it was observed that what was anointed with that oyl became free from burning. *Pliny* also reports That he saw Napkins frequently used, which when dirty or foul, were cleaned by Fire and not by Water. A rare kind of wauling! Of this also were confected the famous everlasting Lamps and Tapers. The stone is called *Asbeston*, i. e. Unextinguishable; but the linnen or stuff *Ani. ambo*: some of which Lamps have (as Historians say) burnt 1500 Years, cloed in glasses and placed in Caves and old Sepulchres: the aliment being this *Asbeston* mixt with *Naphtha*, or other like bituminous matter or substance.

Concerning the Future of their Housers, call him to mind who by the foot of *Alcides* found out his other dimension: A Pan, a Platter and a Carpet is the Epitome. Their diet is soon drest, readily eaten, and quickly digested as described. Their Table is usually the Ground, 'covered with some slight sort of Carpet, over which they spread a pintado cloth, and sit crois-legg'd as Taylors: But this manner of sitting was not so amongst the *Persians* of old, nor so with other Nations, as appears *Gen. 43. 43.* where 'tis said, That *Joseph* sat at Table with his Brethren: And, *Prisci sedebant ad mensam*, we find in *Homer*. Howbeit, in after-times the Oriental Nations *non sedebat sed jacentes in lectul*, *moliens canabant*; also practised amongst the *Jews* in the time of the first *Cesars*. Above each Man they lay five or six thin cakes of wheat, or pan cakes, for other Bread they make none: this, some tear asunder when they eat it, with their ten fingers, representing (forsooth) as some imagine the *Ten Commandments*, and carefullly scattering many

many wooden spoons, their handles being above half a yard long, and the spoon it self so large as my mouth could seldom master. They have a meat resembling the old *Maza*, which was meat mixed with Water and oyl, with goblets of flesh. They have withal little pasties of hash meat, not unlike the *Turke* Sambouscs. They seldom go beyond Pelo; but in that dish express they think a witty invention, setting before you sometimes forty dishes called by forty names, as Pelo, Chelo, Kithmy-pelo, Cherry-pelo, &c. albeit indeed it differ but in the cookery; all are of rice, mutton and hens boiled together; some having butter, some none; some having fruit, some none; some having turmerack and saffron, other-some none; some onions and garlick, some none; some having almonds and raisins, some none: and so ad infinitum: making us also believe they make gallant chear and great variety, though the ingredients be one, differing only in colour; some coming to the Table as black as coal, some as white as curd; others (that you may know their Cooks are witty) be yellow, green, blew, red, or in such a colour as they fancy. Wot you (forsooth) why Rice is so generally eaten, and so valuable? Not that it exceeds Wheat or other grain in goodness, finenes, roundnes or the like, (though I cannot deny but it is a solid grain, and in boiling swells so much, that a pint unboil'd will increase to near four pints in boiling;) albeit some and thole not the least learned think that *Manna* which the *Israelites* had given them for Bread in the Wilderness of *Arabia* (being a small round thing) was this grain; so supposed both from its shape and excellency; but from a Tradition delivered by their grand Annalist *Jacob ben-Siet-Ally*, it is affirmed That on a time *Mahomet* being in prayer was convey'd into Paradise, where earnestly beholding its varieties, at length he cast his eyes upon a glorious Throne, and fearing he should be punish'd for his presumption, blusht for shame and sweat for fear; but loth to have it discovered, wipcs from off his brow the sweat with his first finger and threw it out of Paradise: It was not lost it seems by the story; for forthwith dividing it self into six drops, the first was metamorphosed into a fragrant Rose, (and thence it is Rose-water is so much used, and in honour of the Rose an annual Feast yet solemnized:) the second was converted into a grain of Rice, (a holy grain:) the other four became four Doctors, *Acmet*, *Hameet*, *Meleczed* and *Vaffyn*, who assit *Mahomet* to publish if not to compose his *Alcoran*. And forasmuch as Rice is the only estimable grain and common ingredient at the usual Entertainments in all *Mahometan* Dominions, give me leave to enlarge a little upon the Description.

Rice, is for the most part sown about the time of the Vernal Equinox, usually in watrical grounds; in four months or less being ripe for gathering. Sometimes they set it grain by grain, not two inches deep in the Earth, which they close; and in Harvest time gather ear by ear. The flower it bears is purple, the leaves be long and slender like fedge or doggs-gras; the ear it puts forth is not like that of Corn, but hath a thin straw 2 yards long, full of joyns; the top onely swelling, in which are many round knobs which contain several grains of Rice, and every knob hath a long beard like to our Barley: So soon as the first-sown Rice appears they plant again, and after that the like, the seed being under Water some few dayes; so as all the Year long (in some parts) they have Rice in the leaf, flower and ears, which puts the Husbandman to a delightful though painful labour. And they have fallads, acharrs, and hard eggs, which usually are variously coloured; hard, that their stomachs might not be deluded in too quick a digestion. Their Mutton is sweet, but fat principally in the tail, the weight commonly twenty pounds; in *Turcomania* they weigh fifty pounds; *Leo Afric.* at *Cairo* saw one whose tail (supported by a little Cart with wheels) weighed 80 pounds, and sayes he heard of another weighing 100 pounds, and may well ballance the rest of the carcass. Camel, Goat and Pheasant the Country yields, and the Law allows the eating; but not of Beef, Veal, Swines flesh, Hares and Buffols, which are prohibited. Camels flesh they sell in the Buzzars roasted upon scucts, or cut in mammocks and carbonado'd; three or four spits are sold for two pence. Bad Pastry-men they are; for I have seen them put a Lamb whole into an oven, and take it out as black as a coal; they say (I dare not second it) it tastes the better: it may be so to them, but I thought otherwise.

The poor are not so voluptuous: they content themselves with dry Rice, herbs, roots, fruit, lentils, and a meat resembling Thlumimery: well satisfied with that slender diet;



diet; and calling to mind the Proverb, *He that will eat much must eat little*, finds the benefit of a moderate diet: For it diminishes crudities already bred, reduces the humours of the Body to a wholesome order of nature, allays fumes, yea cures most infirmities which are commonly bred by full meals and other intemperance. Nature in no wise delighting in excess or delicates: a simple diet and temperate Life are Nature's best Physicians. Yea, I have seen them also eat locusts, the Serpents enemy as well as theirs, in species resembling grasshoppers. Dates also preferred in sirrup mixed with butter-milk is precious food. But to memorize their Cheese and Butter will either make your mouths water or turn; In good earnest, the worst any ever tasted of, both that it wants Art and material; for 'tis dry, blew and hard; ill to the eye, bad to the taste, and worse for digestion: the worst is towards the Gulph, the best in *Morondram*, but neither of them praise-worthy. Their butter usually comes from the Gupsans tails, which saves them churning: howbeit, some boil the cream in a raw skin, so as it is commonly very illitish, full of hairs and unsalted: This sort will keep fresh (sweet I do not say) six months; but when we drew our knives thorow it, a thousand flots hairs came along with it: they nevertheless command it.

Their liquor is sometimes fair Water, Sugar, Rose-water, and juice of Lemmons mixt, and Sugar confectioned with Citrons, Violets or other sweet flowers; and for the more delicacy, sometimes a mixture of Amber; this we call Sherbet. Wine they also drink, having (as they pretend) a peculiar priviledge from *Ally*, and from the indulgence *Siet Gunet* in his Commentary afforded them, whch the *Turks* are not worthy of; heartily laughing at the reason the *Turks* give for their abstinence. The *Turks* indeed forbear Wine, upon a Tradition that two Angels *Arot* and *Marot* by Name being sent down to instruct the *Turks* in Morality, and amongst other things to forbear drinking of Wine, it seems fell under that temptation; for they themselves having drunk above measure, became enamoured of a beautiful Virgin, and solicited her to wantonness: but the Damsel understanding whence they came, dissembled her consent upon condition they would teach her the *Elfus* that would carry her to Heaven; which they no sooner did, but she immediately ascended and informed against the Angels, who were therupon excluded Heaven; but the Virgin was metamorphosized into the Morning-star, or *Lucifer*. But this Fable of the two lapit Angels, was probably borrow'd from that History of the Angels mixing with beautiful Women before the Flood; mis-understanding that narrative of *Mos's Gen.* 6. 2. That the Sons of God seeing the Daughters of Men were fair, they married them: *Lut. viii. l. 2. c. 15.* & *Euseb. prep. Evang. l. 5. c. 4.* Thoſe Sons of God being no Angels but the posterity of *Seih* that took Wives of the Progeny of *Cain*, which hastened the Deluge. However, it is from this Tradition that Wine is abhorred by most *Mahometans*. The *Egyptian* Kings of old did the like, saith *Plutarch*, till *Ptolemy* in his reign: nor held they it fit to be used in Sacrifices, from a Tradition it was the *Giant's* blood that warred against the gods; its property being still the lame, to make those heady and outrageous that drink it excessively, Wine is abhorred and refrained. *Aras* and *Aquavite* they also drink, and Tabaco fumkt through water (that it inebriate not by long canes issuing from a round Vessel: and above the rest affect *Coko* or *Coffee*; a drink black as foot, thick and strong scented, distained from Bunchi, Bunnu, or Bay-berries beat into a powder and boiled in Water; wholesome, but not toothsome, they lay; but if lipt hot, comforts the brain, expels melancholy and sleep, purges choler, alleviates the Spirits, and begets an excellent concoction; yea, however ingrate or insipid it seems at first, it becomes grate and delicious enough by custom. But not regarded for those good properties so much, as from a Romance that it was invented and brew'd by *Gabriel* to restore *Mahomet* decay'd moisture; who never drunk it, but made it a matter of nothing to unhorse forty Men; and in *Venus* Camp with more than an *Herculean* fortitude, amongst Women to effect wonders. Sure 'tis more ancient than *Mahomet*: For story sayes, The *Lacedemonians* were stronger than their Neighbour *Greeks* by shunning excess, and keeping to their black broth; which when *Dionysius* would have drunk, the Cook told him he must also use ex-rifice.

Opium (the juice of Poppie) is of great use there also; good, if taken moderately: bad, nay mortal, if beyond measure: but by practice, they make that familiar, which would kill us; so that their medicine is our poſon. They ſhaw it much: for it helps catarrhs, cowardize, and the epileptic; strengthens (as they ſay) *Venus*: and which is admirable, ſome extraordinary Foot-pofts they have who by continual chawing this, with ſome other confection, are enabled to run day and night without intermission, ſeeming to be in a conitant dream or giddiness, ſeeing, but not knowing whom they meet though well acquainted, and miſs not their intended places; by a ſtrange efficacy expulſing

sing the tedious thoughts of travel, and rarely for some dayes deceiving the body of its seasonable rest and lodging. Opium, Coffice, the root of Betel, tears of Poppy, and Tabaco, condense the spirites and make them strong and alegre; which both make the Persians believe they expel fear, and enable them to run continually. In America their disparties by foot-men differ not from our way of postage by horses from stage to stage; for in Peru, the Indian Inguaes or Kings settled their stage 8 miles asunder, so as a foot-man conveying letters from one stage to another without intermission, in 24 hours would run 50 leagues or of our miles one hundred and fifty, *Lipsius 59. Epist. 3. Cent.* And how strange foever this report of the Foot-posts abstinence may seem, yet this out of *Miraldus cent. 2. 55.* agrees with it; *Avicenna refert quendam peregrine profectum, libram unam olei violacei cum adipe mixta bibisse, & in eisdem abigue illa fami decim dierum sustinuisse.* *Olympiodorus of Alex.andria* also writes That in his time a certain man lived without sleep, having nothing else to sustain nature save the air and light of the Sun. And Besides the soporiferous pellets which the Foot-man chawed, *pedibus timor addidit alas.* But however myterious be, I perswade not every man to imitate *Velleius* the Epicure, who scared nothing so much, as to doubt of any thing. Now this relation of their shoutars or zantells, i. e. foot-posts peradventure may gain credit but with few, give me leave therefore to offer some Examples of the like kind, *Diodorus Sic. l. 19. In rebus Eumenis ait, Cum ille milites & arma expediret, quosdam Periarum qui triginta dierum strato absent, illi eodem die cognovisse, &c.* The march of his army was in one day made knowne to some Persians who were then 30 dayes travel thence. Intelligence probably given by signes made by men purposely placed upon the tops of mountains (as our Beacons be) or by voyces transmitted from place to place, and where conveniency was by trunks or hollow places in walls, as was usual with the Romans in *Britain* and other Provinces. *Persis* saith the Historian *pleraque montana est & vallibus interrupta in montibus, opportunis locis sunt specula, in quibus consistunt homines maxime vocales, (cursores Angarii in lib. 8. Herodoti) sicut enim autem ita divisit, quantum vox ab una ad alteram venire & excipi potest. Re igitur nuncianda, unus exclamat proximo, illi alteri, & sic deinceps per omnes Satrapias ad extrema Regni. Numero vere triginta dierum, &c.*

The Turkish Peatle.
or foot Post.



But more agreeing with these Persian foot-men are the *Peichi* amongst the Turks. *Turcarum Peichi in comitatu Principis & antecursorum, cum opus esset, huc illuc mittuntur, tanta velociitate currentes, cum secundula in manu & phiala aqua odorante, ut adfertim eos à Byzantio ad Adrianopolim una die & nocte pervenire, quod intervalum est circiter centum & sexaginta millaria Romana.* Foot-men attending the Army and employed to and fro, as occasion requires, who are so exceeding swift, as holding a small hatchet in one hand and a bottle of sweet water (for refreshment) in the other, they will in a day and a night run from Constantinople to Adrianople being 160. Italian (or English) miles asunder. *Corpus succingunt ne doleant in cursu,* they gird themselves well & taut they fail in their course. Nor is it important to add what *Suidas* records of a Jew that was singular in this kind. *Postriori evo sub Leo. Imp. Constant. narrant quendam Iudaicum, qui in cuncti conflictus subito evanescerat, fulgoris instar; nec currents magis quam volanti similis; certe quod iter homo mutatis equis uno die confidere non poterat, hoc ipse suis pedibus & sine molestia conficeret,* a Jew so swift, as after his setting out, he was soon out of sight, vanishing like Lightning, and seeming rather to fly than go; in one day running as it were with ease, further than any one can post it away with change of horses. Too much, I fear, upon this subject.

The *Perians* for the most part eat in Porcellane or earth, not valuing Silver, (the King by such attracting it to his own Table:) they have another reason, but ridiculous, That *Mahomet* at his descent into Hell seeing the Devils at dinner, observed that they were served in silver. In feeding they use no knives, or employ one finger or two, three or four being enjoin'd them from Tradition. Nor do they cut their Bread, but break or rend it: equally fictitious; for *Ozman* in his Parody assures them the Devil (*Shitan* they call him) doth cut what he eats; which makes it no fable, seeing he eats not. And for the mode of breaking Bread, *Ozman* borrowed it from the Jews who had that cultome; practised likewise by the Gentiles, as we find in *Xenophon* in his description of the *Perians*: Nevertheless, ignorance makes them attribute all to Miracles.

At meals they are the merriest Men alive: no people in the World have better stomachs, drink more freely, or more affect voracity; yet are harmlessly merry: a mixture of meat and mirth excellently becoming them: For here,

Qui canit, arte canit; qui bibit, arte bibit.

Jovial in a high degree; especially when the Curtezans are in company; the Men account that for good manners which we thought barbarous; when in compliment, or rather squalid wantonness, they would overcharge their mouths with Pelo, and by an affected laughter exonerate their chaps, throwing the overplus into the dish again; and as a symbol of good will (fir-reverence) offer others to eat what they had chewed formerly. To end, having foak'd their hussiness or water-bags, wine-bottles are then usually emptied: at that exercise they sit long and drink soundly, condemning that precept in the Alcoran as an idle toy, invented by *Ozman*, That it is Giants blood, the blood of those Giants the *Greeks* call *Theo-machi*, or the Devils gall as some have resembld it; albeit the *Turks* forbear to drink it partly from that perfusion. Nevertheless the *Perians* in this are commendable, That they never quarrel in their cups; nor compel any to sit longer, or drink more, than he pleases: *Perse potabuntur potatione legitima, nemine coquente, Atheneus l. 4.* a sobriety that held till the *Greeks* subjected them; and then, *aut bibat, aut abeat*: Yet by that which *Xenophon* relates, who was in *Perse* 120 years before *Alexander*, it appears that the *Perians* in his time had left off that vertue of temperance in drinking. *Vetus lex erat ne amphora ad corvivia importarentur, &c.* *Nunc vero tantum bibunt, ut non importent, sed ut ipsi importarentur, Xenoph.* Nor drink they Healths, or one unto another; a civil cultome, but too much abused amongst Christians; *Minos*, a Heathen, strictly forbud it the *Cretans*, as *Plato* rehearses in his Dialogues: But compared with those of old, are without resemblance; these being homely, those full of excess. *Dion* and *Cresius* give some instances; as that in old times the *Perian* Monarchs made many Feasts, and many times invited no less than fifteen thousand Men; *Rex Persorum cum 15000 Virorum conas*, saith *Athenaeus l. 4. c. 10.*; in every entertainment expending four hundred Talents, which amounts in our Money to two hundred and forty thousand Crowns; and at private Feasts where forty or fifty were entertained, as *Ephippius Olyntius* reports, a Supper stood in a hundred Mynas of Gold, each Myna, or Dyna, in our Money valuing six and twenty shillings and eight pence. A large allowance in that juvencillity of Time, for we say *plures opes nunc sumi, &c.* yet credible when the vast Revenue the *Perian* Empire extracted from many Nations is considered; for, what accrued out of

those hundred twenty seven Provinces, was not less than forty thousand and five hundred Attic Talents, in our account forty hundred thousand Crowns or thereabouts. Out of *India* also they yearly received three hundred and threescore Talents of Gold in dust. Nor is the Crown-revenue at this day much les, albeit his Territory be not half so great: for *Tahmas An. Dom. 1560.* received eight millions of Crowns, gathered from fifty Sultans who farmed his In-comme; besides annual presents from great Officers, some of which may be considered by the wealth of a late Neighbour of theirs, the Goverpour of *Lahore*; who at his death bequeathed unto his Master three millions of coined Gold, a great quantity of bullion, Jewels of great price, and many Elephants, Camels, and Korses of great value: it is well known, that *Levenbibeg* seldom failed to send him yearly the value of twenty thousand Crowns as a New-years-gift; twelve thousand Horie the *Cordyes* twixt the two Seas also yearly presented: and *Abbas* at this day from Silk and other duties receives yearly above nine millions, fourteen millions and two hundred and eighty thousand Florins some say, three hundred fifty seven thousand Tomans in *Persian* Money, which in ours, is about eleven hundred and ninety thousand pounds sterleng.

Now though the ground be for the most part barren, yet, especially towards the North, the soil is rich; and elsewhere, where Rivers or Springs make the improvement. And it hindres not that her Womb is uberous: for besides that plenty of marble, we could from her bosome oft-times discover many minerals and stones of lustre, as Jacyntus, Jasper, Chrysolite, Onyx, Turquois, Serpentine, and Granats: Pezars and Pearls also (than which no part of the whole World has better) are no les valuable. That Mince of Gold in old times have here been found, *Plaum in Stiche* is proof in that particular.

*Mercat Periarum montes, qui
esse aurei peribantur, &c.*

*The Persian Hills he may deserve to hold,
Which (if the Proverb lie not) are of Gold.*

And *Varro* by like allusion,

*Non demunt animis curas ac religiones
Periarum montes, non divitis axia Croesi.*

*The Persian Mountains nor the Lydian state
Our minds from care or zeal can separate.*

But at this day of small esteem, the Natives either wanting skill or will to discover them.

Coins at this day used, are the *Abbasiee*, in our Money sixteen pence; *Larree*, ten pence; *Mamoodiee*, eight pence; *Sahee* four pence; *Saddee*, two pence; *Bistee*, two pence; double *Cozbeg*, a penny; single *Cozbeg*, a half-penny; *Fluces* (like the *Turks* *Aipars*) ten to a *Cozbeg*: But the Gold Coins are Sultanies, equal to a *Venice* Chequin; *Duracs*, alike in name and value to the old *Dariques*, thirteen shillings and four pence, &c. but few seen: All but the *Cozbegs* and *Fluces* are of pure Silver, these are *Brafs*, but currant all over his Monarchy. Now 'tis to be obserued, That no Mahometan Prince stamps his Coin with Images but Letters, purporting their Names or some Text out of the *Alcoran*: howbeit before the eightieth year of the *Hegyra*, certain it is they commonly used Images and not Letters.

I have elsewhere described their buildings: Their Beds are Cots of two foot height, or four low posts strengthened with girth-web; a shag, or *Yopangee*, spread at top, of double use, for it serves as an Umbrella abroad, and at home for a Coverlet: in Summer, their Slaves attend about them: some to waft and beget cool Air, others to scare away the Gnats and such like buzzing vermine, which during hot weather pester them exceedingly.

The Men account it a shame to urin standing; their reason is because Dogs use that posture: they have slaves attending with Ewers of Silver filled with Water, to cleanse pollution; albeit not so with all Mahometans in other Dominions: and to difference the Sex *Herodotus* writes that in *Egypt*, *famina stantes viri sedentes mingeantur*. The better sort are so oft on Horseback, as they hate to see Men walk; such they think distempred in mind; a madder thing to see them ride, though not half a stones-cast.

Their Horses especially for service, are of the *Arabian* breed, bodied like *Jennets*, swifter and of more courage: they curb their mettle with sharp bits, a ring of Iron helping them: Their Bridles are long, and sometimes studded with Gold; of Gold oft-times are their pummels and stirrups. Saddles of the better sort are usually of Velvet, high and close, like our great Saddle: the trees are curiously painted. That form they borrow from the *Tartar*, is hard, small, and close; sure, but not easie. Generally in good liking are their Horses, albeit their fare be mean; a little bag filled with barley and chopt straw hung about their heads, is both livery and manger: they strictly tie them to a certain proportion.

Mules

Mules are no less valuable than their Horse; of better service where the passage is sandy or mountainous. Men use Horses, Women, Mules and Camels: every Camel usually is loaden with two Cajaues, which hold two Women: the Cage is of Wood, covered with Cloath; so low, as suffers them not to stand upright: but less grievous, in that for the most part all sorts sit, and endure not long standing. When any Haram travels, they are guarded with Eunuchs armed with bows and swords, both for defence and offence, as formerly hinted. Their Alphabet is writ in their proper Character.

ligh. bea. tea. sea. Team. hea. chea. t. u. l. zaul. rea. zea. zean. sheen. s. i. c. - en. l.

اب ت ث ج ح خ د ذ ر ز ب س ش ب ر ح م ن ط ا ط ع غ ز ق ک ل م :

zizaea, inc. kine, phca, caufc, coffe, som, encam, nucn, wem, hea.

۸۴۰

Encephalomy. yea.

10.987654321
1.9106040201

لیکر دو سه چهار پنجم ششم هفتم هشت هنگ هنگ نه ده

کلکوبه سدر باریه خورک جملان سیاهه قرآن

(umq; subiecta fore Bavariorum fortitudine testi).

To which, if I add somewhat of their Language, it may both shew the affinity it has with the Saxon, (who after their descent from *Ararat* first planted in *Saxa* a part of *Baltaria*, and after in *Sarmatia*, before their progress into the Cymbric Chersonese) from whom we borrow our Teutonic; and peradventure be of some use to the future Traveller.

<i>English.</i>	<i>Persian.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>Persian.</i>
G O D	<i>Whodden</i>	Gentleman	<i>Angaw</i>
Heaven	<i>Ajman</i>	Merchant	<i>Soldager</i>
the Sun	<i>Afta, & Samon</i>	Souldier, or Golden- head.	<i>Cowcel-balib</i>
the Moon	<i>Maw</i>	Lord Ambassadour	<i>Elchee-beg</i>
a Star	<i>Scarra, & Nawib</i>	President	<i>Vifler</i>
the Skye	<i>Kabendas</i>	Judge	<i>Caufee, or Caddi</i>
Wind	<i>Baud</i>	Justice	<i>Darragoud</i>
a white Cloud	<i>Sephye</i>	Physician	<i>Huckeam</i>
the Earth	<i>Zameen</i>	Chancellour	<i>Mordaeer</i>
Emperour	<i>Pat-shaw</i>	Constable	<i>Calendar</i>
King	<i>Shaw</i>	Purveyor	<i>Mammandar</i>
Queen, or Empres	<i>Bog-roon</i>	a Christian	<i>Franjee</i>
Prince	<i>Mirza</i>	a Moorish believer	<i>Mujulman</i>
Duke	<i>Cawn</i>	a Jew	<i>Jebedw</i>
Marquis:	<i>Boglerbeg</i>	an Armenian	<i>Armence</i>
Earl	<i>Sultan</i>	Persian	<i>Pharfee</i>
Lord	<i>Bog</i>	Indian	<i>Mogul, or Indee</i>
Lady	<i>Comma</i>	Georgian	<i>Gorges</i>
Lords Son	<i>Bog-zedday</i>		<i>Sarabian</i>

English.	Persian.	English.	Persian.
Sarcastian	<i>Carcash</i>	Belly	<i>Slykam</i>
Turk	<i>Torc</i>	Yard	<i>Kery</i>
a Church	<i>Dear</i>	Stones	<i>Sekym</i>
a High Priest	<i>Mustaft-dini</i>	Matrix	<i>Cus</i>
an Archbishop	<i>Kalypb</i>	Thighs	<i>Roam</i>
a Priest	<i>Mulai</i>	Knees	<i>Zoanow</i>
a Holy Man	<i>Hodgee</i>	Foot	<i>Pee</i>
a begging Friar	<i>Abadal</i>	Wine	<i>Sherap</i>
a Saint	<i>Mer & Emry</i>	Water	<i>Obb</i>
a Prophet	<i>Emoom</i>	Fire	<i>Attasf</i>
a Prophets Son	<i>Syer & Emnoon-zedda</i>	Wind	<i>Band</i>
a Church	<i>Machit or Mesquit</i>	the Sea	<i>Deriob</i>
a Great Church or Cathedral	<i>Jewma-machit</i>	a Ship	<i>Kishree</i>
a Holy Father	<i>Padre</i>	a Boat	<i>Kijfet-cowcheck</i>
a Father	<i>Bobbaev</i>	Fish	<i>Mobee</i>
a Mother	<i>Mamma and Madre</i>	a Sheep	<i>Gulpan</i>
a Brother	<i>Broder</i>	a Goat	<i>Booz</i>
a Sister	<i>Qbrhaar</i>	Roast-meat	<i>Cobbob</i>
a Son	<i>Zedda</i>	Rice	<i>Brindag</i>
a Daughter	<i>Daughter</i>	boyled Rice	<i>Pelo</i>
a Boy	<i>Oglan & Pissar</i>	Wood	<i>Tzom</i>
a Girl	<i>Daughter</i>	Apples	<i>Sib</i>
a Maiden	<i>Whoreon</i>	Pomgranads	<i>Narr</i>
a Cousin	<i>Choul</i>	Musk-melons	<i>Corpoes</i>
a Friend	<i>Mirmam</i>	Water-melons	<i>Hendoon</i>
a Slave	<i>Collom</i>	Myrobalans	<i>Alliba</i>
a Servant	<i>Marda</i>	Dates	<i>Webornay</i>
a Foot-man	<i>Shooter</i>	Almonds	<i>Bedoom</i>
a Groom	<i>Mitar-bache</i>	Raisins	<i>Kijfumish</i>
a Cook	<i>Ajh-pash</i>	Walnuts	<i>Gardon</i>
a Butler	<i>Suffrage</i>	Sugar	<i>Sucker</i>
a Barber	<i>Syrirah</i>	Small-nuts	<i>Pisfachoes</i>
a Docrress	<i>Dayab</i>	Sirrop of Dates	<i>Doojab</i>
a Mountebank	<i>Slyran-Tabyb</i>	pleasant Liquor	<i>Sherbet</i>
a Scribe	<i>Vikel</i>	Bezar	<i>Pezar</i>
an Interpreter	<i>Callamache</i>	a Rose	<i>Gull</i>
a Speech or Lan- guage	<i>Zavaan</i>	Grapes	<i>Angvor</i>
a Mechanick	<i>Osfad</i>	Figs	<i>Anger</i>
a Man	<i>Adam</i>	Orange	<i>Norenge</i>
an old Man	<i>Pyrb adam</i>	Lemmon	<i>Lemon</i>
a Woman	<i>Zan</i>	Carraway-seed	<i>Giznees</i>
The Head	<i>Serry</i>	Annise-seed	<i>Zera</i>
Hair	<i>Mow</i>	Nutmeg	<i>Goose</i>
Eyes	<i>Chasim</i>	Cloves	<i>Meket</i>
Eye-brows	<i>Browz</i>	Mace	<i>Babas</i>
Nois	<i>Bynny</i>	Cinamon	<i>Dolcheen</i>
Ears	<i>Goujbs</i>	Spice	<i>Filsill</i>
Checks	<i>Row</i>	Ginger	<i>Gingerfill</i>
Face	<i>Taboun</i>	Pepper	<i>Pepperrill</i>
Mustachoes	<i>Sibyl</i>	Ophium	<i>Triack_ or Tberiack.</i>
Lips	<i>Lab</i>	Rhubarb	<i>Rhubar</i>
Teeth	<i>Dandoon</i>	Onions	<i>Peose</i>
Chin	<i>Chynofer</i>	Spikenard	<i>Sembul-rib</i>
Arm	<i>Barow</i>	Manna	<i>Sheer-quest</i>
Breast	<i>Sinow</i>	Sena	<i>Machyi</i>
Hand	<i>Dast</i>	Poppie	<i>Pufrie</i>
Finger	<i>Angustut</i>	one Year	<i>Tecck-Sol</i>
		one Month	<i>Tecck-Maw</i>
		a Day	<i>Rowfe</i>

Engl. b.	Perſian.	Engl. b.	Perſian.
to day	<i>Amrounje</i>	a Door	<i>Darr</i>
Yesterday	<i>Dig-rounje</i>	a Table	<i>Taqbāh</i>
to morrow	<i>Sabbaw</i>	a Chair	<i>Cerfee</i>
two daves hence	<i>Past-sabbaw</i>	a Cup	<i>Paola</i>
Night	<i>Sheve or shab</i>	a Candle	<i>Sham & Mum</i>
Soon	<i>Zood</i>	a Candlestick	<i>Shandom</i>
Much	<i>Pishār</i>	a Bed	<i>Mefriſh</i>
More	<i>Diggar</i>	a Pillow	<i>Nazbolish</i>
Good	<i>Cowbus</i>	a Quill	<i>Callam</i>
Bad	<i>Baddaſſ</i>	a Garden	<i>Baugh or Bawt</i>
Naught	<i>Cowb-nees</i>	a Town	<i>De</i>
Great	<i>Buzzurk</i>	the Devil	<i>Slytan</i>
Little	<i>Cowcheck</i>	Hell	<i>Jehendam</i>
Small	<i>Kam</i>	Rogue	<i>Haram-zeddy</i>
Leſs	<i>Andac</i>	Slave	<i>Colloom</i>
Write	<i>Binwees</i>	Whore	<i>Cobba</i>
Sing	<i>Bowboon</i>	Cuckold	<i>Ghyddee</i>
Bread	<i>Noon,</i>	Fool	<i>Doomma</i>
Butter	<i>Rogan</i>	Balfard	<i>Haram-zedda</i>
Cheſſe	<i>Paner</i>	old Whore	<i>Moder-Cobba</i>
Milk	<i>Sheer</i>	the Kings Evil	<i>Boagma</i>
sowr Milk	<i>Mosse</i>	Dog	<i>Segg</i>
Vinegar	<i>Sirca</i>	Cat	<i>Chas</i>
Rofe-water	<i>Gale-ob</i>	Mule	<i>Aſtor</i>
Honey	<i>Dow-shabb</i>	a Goat	<i>Buz.</i>
Salt	<i>Namak</i>	Cow	<i>Gow</i>
Water	<i>Obb</i>	an Afs	<i>Owlock</i>
Rain-water	<i>Ob-baroon</i>	an Elephant	<i>Behad</i>
Salt-water	<i>Ob-namak</i>	a Nightingale	<i>Bulbul</i>
Hot	<i>Garmas</i>	a Camel	<i>Shontor</i>
Cold	<i>Sermawas</i>	Mule-man	<i>Aſtor-dor</i>
a Book	<i>Catubb</i>	Camel-man	<i>Sheunter-dor</i>
a Cheſſt	<i>Sandough</i>	Horse-keeper	<i>Myter</i>
a Carpet	<i>Collee</i>	a Horse	<i>Aſp</i>
a League	<i>Farlang</i>	a Saddle	<i>Zeen</i>
half a League	<i>Nym-farfangas</i>	a Saddle-cloth	<i>Zeen-puſh</i>
a reſting place	<i>Manzil</i>	a Shooe	<i>Cofſh</i>
a common inn	<i>Caravans-rav</i>	a Nail	<i>Cheat</i>
a Nurſery	<i>Haram</i>	Shepherd	<i>Ulock</i>
a Houſe	<i>Conney</i>	Bird	<i>Quoy</i>
a place	<i>Joy</i>	Beef	<i>Gouſt de gow</i>
Straw	<i>Jo</i>	Hen	<i>Morgh</i>
Barley	<i>Cow</i>	Hens-eggs	<i>Tough-morgh</i>
Wheat	<i>Gandown</i>	Boiled	<i>Poatas</i>
Money	<i>Zarr</i>	Half boiled	<i>Nym-poatſt</i>
Iron	<i>Pholot</i>	Paper	<i>Cogelb & Cartas</i>
a Knife	<i>Cord</i>	Thred	<i>Reſfun</i>
a Sword	<i>Shamsbeer</i>	All boiled	<i>Hamma-poatſt</i>
a Gun	<i>Tophangh</i>	Kitchen	<i>Mowdaugh</i>
a Glafs	<i>Shuſha</i>	Old	<i>Chomay</i>
Ink	<i>Moorakabbas</i>	New	<i>Novas</i>
Silk	<i>Abruſhumas</i>	I, Thou, He	<i>Man, San, O</i>
Lace	<i>Cytoon</i>	Nothing	<i>Hech</i>
Buttons	<i>Deugma</i>	a High way	<i>Raw</i>
a Furr	<i>Fufi</i>	a Tree	<i>Drake</i>
a Dagger	<i>Hanger</i>	a Turquoſe	<i>Pherwaz</i>
Spur	<i>Mabaniſ</i>	a Paſport	<i>Phyrman</i>
Boots	<i>Chayma</i>	a Cap or Turbant	<i>Mandael</i>
a Window	<i>Pangera</i>	a Coat	<i>Cahoy</i>

English.	Persian.	English.	Persian.
a Key	Cleet	Stop	Bast
a Ring	Hanguster	Wah	Bashur
a Tower	Myner	the Market	Buzzar
a Needle	Susan	the great Market	Mydan
a Looking-glass	Dina	You lie.	Drugmaguee
a Whip	Chabuck	You say true.	Rosmaguee
a Towel	Desmal	Very right.	Drenfa.
a Gift	Piscaj	Neat, far off.	Nazecca, duras.
a Platter	Langaree	Bring it hither.	Bear ingee.
a Plate	Nalbachee	Wh' say you?	Che-chefas?
Colour.	Rough	Crycall him.	Bro, awascun.
White	Sevittas	He is asleep.	Cobbedat.
Red	Sourck	He is abroad.	Swarshudat.
a Misbeliever	Caffer	He is not within.	Conney neese.
a Privy	Adam-conney	He is beheaded.	Shaw cufit.
a Clof-stool	Ob-conney	He eats and drinks.	Moughbhorat.
a Cradle	Cajua	Come quickly.	Zood beav.
a Glass-bottle	Shuzan	Go quickly.	Zood burroo.
a riding-Coat	Bolla-push	Know you? yes.	Medamny? baly.
a Hill	Achow or Kowhy	Where is he?	Quo jaas?
a Hot-house	Hummum	Who? my Father?	Che? pader man?
a Sweet-heart	Jenanam	I know not.	Che medamnam.
a Cap	Koola	Can I tell you?	Che sunnam?
a Turbant	Mandil & Dusfar	Not far off.	Dur-neese.
a Bridge	Pully	What say you?	Chemi-gwee?
a River	Root-connab	I drink to you.	Eesco-suman.
Strength	Zoor	I thank you.	Biz-milla.
Full	Pooras	With all my heart.	Allquanderalla.
Strait	Tangheea	Much good do it you.	Arpheat.
Weak	Sangbe-nees	Give me.	Biddy.
In health	Choggea	Do you love me?	Dax me dace?
Sick	Na-chogges	Take away.	Verdare.
Dead	Mordajs	You trifle.	Baxi-mecunee.
Gone	Rafas	Fill full.	Poor kym.
Here	Ingee	Boil the meat.	Goust-suppose.
Above	Bolla & bollanda	Stay a while.	Andac wiesf.
Below	Poin	Even so.	Hamshiee.
Angry	Tangheea	Beat him.	Bejome.
Hungry	O jam	It is day.	Row/haff.
Sope	Saboon	It is night.	Shah-haff.
Broken	Shekefas	It is dark.	Tareekar.
Laden	Barkymas	Say thou.	Gufia.
Loft	Gumshottas	I have forgot.	Man varama/beardam.
Found	Paydown	Bravely done, or said.	Barra colla.
Tabaco	Tombacco & Tuseon	Brave game, or good	Tamus-shaw.
a Tabaco-pipe	Callown & Lula	sport.	

English.

Peace be unto you.
The like peace I wish you.
Whither do you go?
Not far.
How do you to day?
Well, I praise God.
Good, I am very glad thereof.
Where have you been?
Not far.
I am your Servant.

Persian.

Sallam-alleekam.
Alleekam-sallam.
Quo ja merue?
Dure neeso.
Chaldery, or Che-haldory amrooz?
Coogee, Shocora-Whoddaw.
Koozas, Whoddaw basnar.
Quo ja boodee?
Nazeecat.
Man merda suman.

God

English.

God thank you.
 Welcome, Sir, heartily welcome.
 Tell me, how you do? healthy?
 Where is your house? at Babylon?
 Have you a Wife?
 Yea truly, fifteen, Sir.
 How old are you? Twenty four.
 How are you called?
 My Name is called Teredore.
 Is this the way to Tauris?
 Yea, but how many leagues thither?
 I suppose 'tis twenty.
 Is the way good or bad?
 Is there good Wine?
 Yea, in the high-way:
 Whose Garden is that?
 'Tis the great King's.
 Know you Caubeen?
 I do, Sir: Have you seen it?
 Why not? I know all Persia.
 Come hither, good Boy.
 Give me some Wine, soon.
 Fill me but one Cup.
 Then saddle my horse.
 I thank you, Sir.
 It grows dark, I'll sleep.
 Give me some Water, Slave.
 Here, Sir; take it.
 Much good do it you, Brother.
 What busines have you here?
 Little: But stay a while.
 I have some occasion.
 Tell me; where is the King?
 I believe in Hyrcania.
 God bles you.

Persian.

Whedan-negatur.
 Hosnomdee, Agaw, Suffwardet.
 Gufia, chehldery? chegge?
 Quo jauz chenna jumaa? Bagdat?
 Zan daree?
 Bally, pounzdata, beg.
 Chan sol daree? Char-beef.
 Che nom daree sumaa?
 Nom'd mamas Teredore.
 Een raw haft Tabyris?
 Bally; o chan Farjanguun utraf?
 Man medonam, beef.
 Raw koob o baddas?
 Unjee koob sherabbas?
 Bally, raw haft.
 Een baugh mally chee?
 Mally-Pot-shavbas.
 Caubeen medamny?
 Man bali beg : sumaa dedee?
 Cherec-na, hamma Farsee dedam.
 Ingee bear, koob Pissar.
 Sherap be dec, zood.
 Powcun yec paola.
 Afp zeen pufice.
 Whoddan-negaturat.
 Tareekas, man mechobed.
 Ob bedee, colloem.
 Ingee, Agaw, haft bedec.
 Amphur bajbas, Broder.
 Che corr daree sumaa ingear?
 Coocheck; Andac wifst.
 Man corr daram.
 Gufia; Pot-jaw quo jauz?
 Man medonam Mozendram.
 Whedan bajbas.

English.

Persian.

One	Tock
Two	Do, or Dew
Three	Se
Four	Char
Five	Panch
Six	Shefs
Seven	Hafz
Eight	Hafte
Nine	No
Ten	Dah
Eleven	Tauzda
Twelve	Doxda
Thirteen	Serda
Fourteen	Charda or Chabarda
Fifteen	Poumza
Sixteen	Shoomza
Seventeen	Hawza
Eighteen	Hajhda
Nineteen	Nouzda
Twenty	Beest
Twenty one	Tec-beest

Turkish:

Bear	Wahad
Eke	Teyne
Ewch	Telay
Dewrt	Arba
Beash	Xamfe
Altee	Sitte
Tedee	Sabaa
Seckez	Temania
Dockez	Tifsa
One	Afira
One-beer	Hedash
One-ekhe	Tenash
One-ewch	Telatajlo
One-dewrt	Arbacash
One-beajo	Xamtajlo
One-altee	Sittash
One-jedee	Sabash
One-seckez	Temaneash
One-dockez	Tiffesajlo
Tgaromy	Afircash
Tgaromy beer	

Arabick:

Twenty

English.	Persian.	Turkish.	Arabic.
Twenty two	Dora-beest	Tgarmy ecke	
Twenty three	Se-beest	Tgarmy evch	
Twenty four	Char-beest	Tgarmy dewrt	
Twenty five	Pounce-beest	Tgarmy beash	
Thirty	Se	Oiooz	Tletyne
Forty	Chehel	Kark	Arbaim
Fifty	Pangoh	Elle	Xamsim
Sixty	Phast	Altivish	Sittiem
Seventy	Hafsat	Tatemish	Sebaine
Eighty	Hafshat	Sexan	Temarine
Ninety	Navat	Duxan	Tissein
One hundred	Satt	Uje	Meye
One thousand	Dahazalt, or hazar	Been	Eif
Ten thousand		Uje been	Melouf
One hundred thousand		Meloon	Meloon

Now concerning their Religion, (if such I may term it, being as one says rather a confused hotch-potch or mass of superstition) at this day it varies not from the Turks in any particle of the Alcoran; yet account they one the other Hereticks, being no less divided in their profession than we and the Papalins. A Schism begun *Anno Domini* 1400. by a Syet of *Ardasir*, the better to advance the Sophian Title derived from *Morte Ally* who was both Kinsman and Son-in-law to their Prophet *Mahomet*: which *Ally*, albeit by those Relations he had right to sit as Kalypth at *Mecca* after *Mahomet*, yet three others stopt up before him, who during their lives excluded him. These were *Abuboker*, *Omer*, and *Ozman*; by the Turks venerably accounted of, but by the *Perſians* (as appears by the Commination invented by *Siet Gunet*) reputed Hereticks: from whence arises such hatred betwixt these two mighty Monarchs, that to *Europe's* good they divide, and prosecute each other as it were with hatred irreconcileable.

M A H O M E T (Son of *Abdar* a Pagan and *Emma* a Jew) was born at *Jasreb* (or *Irrarip*, *Jezrab Postellus* calls it) in *Arabia*, the year from the Creation 1544. and of Christ our bleſſed Lord and Saviour 573. *Justinian* at that time governing the *Roman Empire*, and *Cozroes* Father to *Hormisda* the *Perſian*.

His Parents were poor, therefore as an Apprentice with much patience he served *Zayed-ben-Harrab* a rich Merchant; who dying, left his Servant a coniderable Legacy: but by reason of those broils 'twixt *Cozroes* and the *Romans*, Traffick decayed, and most men were compelled to dance after *Bellona's* Musick: so as *Mahomet* amongst others enlifted himself and served under *Heraclius*, and after that the *Perſian*; nor caring who was vanquished, so he gained. Nor did he erre in his imagination: for by the great Estate left him by *Ben-Harrab* and acquired in the Wars, he had the credit to command ſo many *Tatars* and *Arabians*, as at length he adventured to ſet up for himſelf; and had the hapſirh to beat the Christian Forces, and ſoon after the *Perſian*, which got him more reputation: inſomueh as having acquainted his Army with the diſcord at that time happening in the *Roman State*, for ſo it was that *Phocas* having ſlain his Maſter *Mauritius* the Emperor, and allowed *Boniface* the Title of Universal Bishop, ſo much to the diſſatisfaction of the Christians, that agreeable to the Character *Gregory the Great* gave *John the Constantinopolitan Patriarch* they called them Antichrift; and pot without ſome ſhew of reaſon, ſeeing that ſixty six good Bishops of *Rome* from *Linni* (feuen years after the Paſſion) to that Pope, more minded to feed Chrift's flock, than to arrogate to themſelves Lordhip over men; and much leſs an universal Supremacy: conceiued himſelf that He was ordained from the beginning of the Creation, not only to eclipse the pride of that Pope, but withall to instruct the world in a better way than either *Moses* did the Jews, or Chrift the Christians; moft blaſphemouly withal giving out That he was the Comforter promiſed: and yet ſays he came to give his Law by the Sword and not by Miracle, and to advance the *Arabian* name and dignity above all other in the Univerſe. The Jews also ſeeing his glorious riſe, cryed him up for the Messiah, till they percieved him to eat Canels fleſh, and then they abhorred him: but the illiterate Savages admire, and though ſome thought meanly of him) moft part hoped he could effect his promiſes, and accordingly credit his pretended Revelations.

But e're he could finish this new model by him called an Alcoran, or Laws more resembling Ordinances of War than Instructions to conquer Lust, as one has noted; the *Persian* suddenly broke in among them, and in memory of their late hostility and plunder retaliates them so to purpose, that *Mahomet* (to save his life) made use of his Dromedary, leaving the rest of his company to the fury of the *Persian*.

With a sad heart *Mahomet* hastens back to *Mecca* (*Mecca* and *Mimyebates* of old, and then the stony Arabian Metropolis;) but when he calls to mind his miserable estate, by this last defeat being abridg'd both of money and men, yea such men whose impulse was prepared to propagate his Alcoran, consumes in the meditation, and by his fretfulness and incessant vexing had at that time like to have made death his Executioner.

Some safer way he therefore ruminates. And in the first place, to sojace his unquiet spirit and enrich himself, lays close siege to *Chodage* a Woman of great wealth and by some thought Queen of *Cordouan*; whom after an amorous assault he won, and of her begot three Sons and three Daughters, namely *Ebrahim*, *Tajeb*, and *Tabor*, which three died young, *Fatyma* and *Zaynab* (both married to *Moris-Ally*) *Om-Kalhom* and *Rulya*, Wives to old *Abuboker*. But his stomach growing weak, one sort of *Meat* began to loath him; for *Chodage* was stale, and others better fancied him: In his Alcoran he therefore thought fit to allow carnal liberty, the better to excuse himself who was so infatately libidinous that he is not ashamed to become a president, and countenance his incontinency by a Law. Accordingly, and with solemnity (as *Ben-Casen* a Writer of his belief report,) he espoused *Aysse* the beloved Child of his Son-in-Law *Abuboker*. A Child (though *Mahomet's* Wife) I well may call her, for at that time she exceeded not six years; yet soon after so acceptable to her Husband, that he calls her his best beloved, dictates a whole Chapter in her commendations; and for her love to him, and civility to others; for her witty conceits and skill in Story and Languages, she is made superlative, and intituled Mother of the Faithful; and (contrary to a tenet in his Alcoran) desired to be buried in her Grave, as by old *Abuboker* his Survivor afterwards was performed. His third Wife was *Miriam* (or *Mamrys* which is *Mary*) of whom he begat *Ebrahim-Cassen* who at the age of six months by the arrow of death was directed the inevitable way. *Zaynab* (the repudiate of *Ben-Hartab*) was his fourth and last Wife, (for of Concubines he had above an hundred, but in no Author any of their names recorded.) This was a Lady credulous of Viscons, (and *magnes mendacis credulitas*, credulity is the magnet of lies;) for she verily believed that his Epilepsie was occasioned by an Angels conferring with him, so that amongst Mahometans she also is sturnamed a Mother of Musulmen or true Believers.

But that his Doctrine might not want a confirmation by Miracles, some of those his bosome friends and other familiars, taught Doves to feed out of his ear, and Camels to expect their food from him, which blazoned his holiness: (albeit ever since *Semiramus* her time, who was fed and educated amongst Doves, in the Oriental parts Doves have a more than common estimation.) However, by this practise he not only eluded his familiars, but also put all *Arabia* into an expectation of some extraordinary consequence. So as having by the help of *Sergius* an Italian, a nest of uncleannesses, a Monk, a Sabellian, a discontented wretch for missing the Bishoprick of *Byzantium*, and of *Johannes of Antioch* an unsound and heretical Nestorian, two subtil spirits, (who as *Lactanius* faith, by mixing much with falsehood and sowing the seeds of error disturbed the tranquillity of all things;) which help, or rather by the help of such, he finished his Alcoran in the year of our blessed God 620, at that time being aged forty six. It so transported him, that from *Isra* to *Mecca* he goes to have it credited; but therein his prediction failed him; for so as the Arabs perceived his design (being formerly acquainted with his birth and doting) they banish him, and (but for his Wives relations) there had crushed him and Cockatrice Egg, which was but then hatching. So that involved with more perity now than ever, he was at his wits end, and once resolved to burn his Book and run to trading: but *Sergius* whose Interest was involved pacified him, telling him, that a Work could not but be attended with opposition. The disanimated Prophet ves upon this, and apprehends this affliction propitious to his memory: so that to *Isra* he goes, where for two years he secludes himself from company; therein imitating other Law-givers; as *Pythagoras*, who concealed himself ten years, *Zoroaster* twenty, and *Socrates* for some certain time: so *Mahomet* having finished his plot, and commanding the accomplice *Ara* lince oblidcved by his Sectaries to commence from his late persecution, he again adventures, and by gifts and other persuasions attracted so many followers that within seven yeirs his Alcoran was received in *Mecca*: from this root branching out so many sects as in short time infected all the Orient.

Mahomet (whole name Arabically signifies Deceit, and many times *Convenit rebus nominis*

nomina sepe sunt; affording also the number 666, the mark of Antichrist,) having accomplished his design, was summoned to appear before the Lord of all flesh, the God Omnipotent, and Judge of all mens actions; at whose Tribunal (no doubt) he hath received a just judgment for his impiety. He died in the year of his climacteric sixty three, of the Hegira 17, and of our Saviour (say some) 637, others 666, ordaining *Aliy* to succeed him, and his carcass to be interred in *Aytes* grave in *Takrip*, which per *Ammonition* he now-named *Medina Talnabi*; it or *Meccha*, from which it is distant one hundred and seventy miles, being that *Muryciates* mentioned in *Prolyon*; albeit I rather think it *Meccha*, because I read that *Medina* (or *Takrip*) was built *Anno Domini* 364, by *Asch-saddad* then King of *Babylon*: by *Ozman* allegorically called *El-haramain*, and by others *Dc-A'salem*, i.e. a holy place or Town of mercy; none daring in the garb of a Souldier tread East, West, North, on South, nigher than six one way, twelve, eighteen, or twenty four miles the other, upon pain of death.

His Alcoran or *Sura*, i.e. the Book of Truth or a Legend for the Faithful, is stuffed with Philosophy moral and natural, and mixed with so many fantasies and inventions as renders the whole full of absurdities and contradictions; and larded with such trash as may powerfully provoke any sober Student to a height of laughter. The Preface is, That the Book was sent from God by *Gabriel* to *Mortis-Ally*, (so say the *Persians*;) but he, mistaking the right man, gave it *Mahomet*; whom when God saw replenished with equal virtue, the Angel was not blamed, but the gift confirmed. They report withal, That as soon as he was born, an Angel brought him three Keys made of three great Orient Pearls which he snatched from the Angel, and therby got a triplicate Dominion over Law, Victory, and Prophecy.

To begin then: The Alcoran or Bible by them called *Kurrarn*, from *Kara* which signifies Scripture as *Scaliger* and *Dulius* note, and *Alesalem*, i.e. the Law of Peace, or *Alcoran*, i.e. Judgment, as it was digested by *Ozman* fifteen years after the death of *Mahomet*, is a Volume twice so big as the Psalms of *David*; divided into a hundred and fourteen Azoaras or Chapters, put by *Ozman* into a kind of rythme, and writ original in Arabic, a Language to magnifyed by Mahometans as they believe the Angels in Heaven spake it: albeit, it is well known that till *Mahomet*'s time the Arabian Tongue was little different from the *Coddie*; I might object, That the Hebrews has the preference, it being the opinion of a great Doctor, That in *Calo Hebreu lingua usq' sumus*. *Nam Nationes ubi redibit, quae primus hanc linguam tenuit, confusa cum linguarum maledictio fuit, &c.* This Alcoran then is nor so much a continued tract of Devotion or direction to good life, as a Chaos or Mass of his own acts, having intermixed the Art of War and Peace, 5. items of Rhetoric, Mathematicks and Eticks borrowed out of *Apis* (as they call *Ariostio*) and other Philosophers, but grossly and confusedly handled. His Mother infuscated him in the Jewish Rites, and *de gnia* in the Gospel: whence it is, that in the seventy one Azoara of *Nobla*, and in the tenth of *Juni* he records the History of *Noah* and *Jesus*; and in other Chapters speaks of *Enoch*, *Abraham*, *Joseph*, *Moses*, *Elias*, and *David*; whose Songs called *Zebur-Daleod* or the Psalms of *David*, and the *Tenra Moissi* or Pentateuch of *Moses* he extols highly. The *Injal* or Gospel of *S. Iude* he quotes at large in the fourth Azoara of *Amraza*, and in the fifth of *Almyeda* names Christ *Rooth-noor Allah* and *Hazret*, i.e. *Messias* the Spirit or word and light of God, holy *Iesus*; not omitting his bodily ascension into Heaven in the sight of his twelve Apostles, seventy Disciples, and five hundred others. Nevertheless, does not confess him to be the Son of God, but that the Virgin conceived by sinning to a Rose presented her by *Gabriel*; and that he was born out of her breasts. Albeit it was not he that was crucified, but *Judas* or some other wicked thief; Christ being withdrawn from them by a cloud from Heaven that covered him. Thence it is, the Cross is to no judicious amongst them. They say also, That he was the most holy, chaste, and powerful Saint that ever conversed upon Earth. And in the second Azoara of *Albacara* in the Alcoran, it is declared, That *Moses* and Christ shall save the Jews and Christians at the day of Doom: yet in the next Chapter of *Amram* (forgetting it seems what he had said) avers, That no soul shall be saved but by his Alcoran, he being sent into the world to moderate the strictness of the Gospel a. Christ the severity of the Law ceremonial; varying also from what in the twelfth Assiratio he commands, that they should be held in equal repute with the Alcoran; running thus: The holy and merciful God first sent the ceremonial Law, and then the Gospel to direct all men in the right path, and lastly the Alcoran, a faithful Book, for instruction. No man therefore amongst them dares undervalue the old Law and the Gospel, but practise it no less than what is commanded in the Alcoran. From whence it is, they reverence the holy Sepulchre, visit Saints Tombs, honour the memory of our Saviour; and abhor the Jews. Saint John Baptist also

also he speaks modestly of, and of the blessed Virgin with singular reverence; saying in the nineteenth Azoara to this purpose, "Hail Mary thou art blessed; yea, in purity and holiness excelling all other women: the meditation of Gods Laws was ever in thy heart, therefore he hath selected thee, refined thee, and made thee his happiest dwelling; thou art full of knowledge and mercy, free from pollution, hatred or ambition: yea, thou, the Virgin Mother of the great Prophet Jesus, art only of woman-kind most lovely and perfect in the sight of the Almighty, &c. Which I name, not that his Book is any way more valuable, (the end considered, which was his plot for Apostasy) but that the Devil and *Sergius* his Coadjutors could not derogate from their Majesty; and to whom we may say in the words of our Saviour to the Demoniack, hold thy peace; for as another says, *Ex ore tuo Lawa fordet.*

Now albeit the Alcoran for its greater repute feigns, That three Angels flying with Mahomet into a high Mountain, one ript up his breast and washed his Guts with Snow; the second opened his heart, thereout picking a black kernel that was Satan's part, which the last Angel clofed up and made perfect: Then weighing him in a scale, many men not being heavy enough to counterpoize him, the Angel set him upon the lower earth, saying, No number shall be able to weigh against him. Now what these Angels were, appears by the Book it self, which consists of Heresies against our blessed Saviour: for, with Arius it denies the Divinity; with Sabellius the Trinity; with Macedonius the Holy Ghost proceeding; with Manichæus the death of Christ; and such like Errors as those wretches broached. In the 32. Azoara, he politickly commands That no man be so impious to question any particle of his Law, nor to dispute about it; yet in another Chapter confesses that 'tis stuft with Untruths. Their Commandments are eight.

1. Commandment. *There is one, and but one great God, and Mahomet is his Prophet.*

The Muezins and Talismanni every fourth hour sing aloud from the steeple tops of every Mosque, or Alcorans as some allusively call them, *Quia è cacumine Turrium fragmenta Alcorani priuiter ploramus, vociferam.* The usual words are *Llala y-lala, Mohammed resfulla;* but the Persians (by Syet Guness direction) to the honour of their Prophet *Llala y-lala Mortys-Ally vel hillala;* iterated as a word of praise borrowed from the Hebrew *Halleluja,* or as by the old Persians used in their Pzan or warlike Songs, which commonly began with *Alala,* as *Xenophon c. 2. observeth;* or *Hillula Urania* and *Eluleus* a Song to *Bacchus.* The acknowledging one only God they borrow either from the Decalogue or fourth of *Ezkel.* Upon which also our ancient Bards and Druides beat, in those dark times making it an Article of their Faith.

2. Command. *'Tis neither good nor just that any Musselman live unmarried, lest the Professors of the Alcoran be diminished.*

Polygamy is from this Commandment tolerated; yea, such are thought most honourable who super-abound in Wives and Concubines: *Mahomet* in the Azoara of *Bacara* boasts of his singularity therein; and that he had strength at most times to satiate forty Women. In that Chapter of *Assabrim* he confesses that he had violated his faith and troth; but, that he had received pardon from God; and had to witness it, *Rachel* and *Gabriel* two Angels.

But who sees not, that in this precept he had respect to the natural disposition of the *Arabians?* better pleased with freedom and voluptuousness than virtue: not caring how, so by any Magic he could yoke them under obedience.

3. Command. *It behoves Musselmen to be charitable; and to hate contention.*

Travellers find special advantage by this Commandment: for whereas Inns are not to be had in Heathen Countries, there are Buildings of purpose for the accommodation of Travellers always open for entertainment, and clean kept; and near them is a large and convenient Stable. In one of these Inns, fifteen thousand pound sterlinc hath been disbursed upon a charitable account: yea, so remarkable is their charity, that they not only erect Hospitals for lame men and diseased, but sometimes for aged, starved, or hurt birds, beasts, and such Creatures.

4. Command. *It behoves Musselmen to invocate their Prophet every day five times at least; and to attend his coming patiently.*

They accomplish this with such regard as when the *Muezin* is heard to cry aloud from the steeple of the *Mosque* they fall to prayer, though busied in profane talk, drinking, drabbing, or the like. Before they enter the *Mosque* they wath their feet, lay aside their shooes, and being assembled turn their faces all one way; and in their prayers shut their eyes, sometimes their ears, drop their heads, and with a submiss voice or murmur ingeminate their devotion, bending, prostrating, and kissing the ground or some Relique of consecrated earth brought from the *Haram* or the *Aleba* two Chappels in Mecca erected (says the *Alcoran*) by *Abraham* from the Idea or pattern of that which *Adam* built in that little time he stay'd in Paradise, holding nevertheless that he stay'd there not above one day, and that it was translated by Angels into Heaven at the Deluge. In every *El-fauz* or prayer they sized or kiss the Earth at every epithete or name of *God* and *Mahomet*; and after they have battologized *Lla y-lala*, or *Hilula*, i. e. Praises, they iterate another to this effect.

In the name of the good and holy God. Praised be the Sovereign of all Worlds, the only merciful God of Doom: Tice we serve, thee we call upon: shew us the best way; that which thou hast receaved to Mahomet; not that whereby thou punishmentst the Ungodly. This also they use, I have noted amongst them, being a Tautologie of the Names of God and *Mahomet*: *Bismillah ar-rahman ar-rahim Allhundill-Ally*: *Ento by-all, almo barakato, assulwato, Atiyo batto; Leyla, hessalem, Alcyka, I, Jaana, nebeen rough met Wallough beeveer-catto. Esslalamalena, Wallab Ebadulla, hessolabecm Eshaddo. Asila-El-abu, El-Allabo, Essladdar, Abummed resfull Allogh. L'alla, Esslalamalena Ebadulla Solahcem. Esslalamaleckam Esslalamalecka. Allybonma Shl-hillilla. Allaw Mokummed don Wallaw, Wasselem-chamma Salle, ita, Alkunderalley, Whoddaw.* Which form the *Mahometans* in *Arabia*, *Persia*, *India*, *Java* and other parts have, or most part of it.

Now though this be most usual, yet are they not without other set forms of prayer, compiled by *Osman* in his *Parody*, and more largely by that famous *Almotamaby*, who in his high-flown conceits endeavoured to exalt his Name and reputation above that of *Mahomet*. Their *El-fauz*'s are either for the safety of their Kings, a happy issue, welfare of their Countrey, Thanks that they are *Muslimen*, *Bosarmen*, true Believers or the like: five times in four and twenty hours exercising prayer. The hours observed canonically are about day-break, noon, three in the after-noon, sun-set, and mid-night: called by them *Ahara*, *Magrib*, *Addeleher*, *Kalamab* and *Erkeb*; Arabically *Dahur*, *Lashoor*, *Mogrib*, *Sallie* and *Sabada L'hair*. The first hour is acted by four *Tessalems* and two prayers; the second by ten times kissing the earth with five *El-fauz*'s; the third hour requires eight grovelings and four ejaculations; the fourth hath five *sizedas* and three orations; and the last hour hath fifteen *Tessalems* and eight repetitions: after that hour to day-break 'tis held unnecessary to invoke. Howbeit the *Persian* since their reformation think it enough to pray thrice in four and twenty hours; at *Sob*, *Dor* and *Magareb*, Arabick words which signify morning, noon and night. On the *Cyumas* or Sabbath (by the *Persians* called *Towma* and *D'siuma*, by *Turks* *Zuma-q'ury*, *Dumad* by the vulgar *Arabs*) they assemble in the *Mosques* (which are without seats and Bells;) first wathing their face, hands and arms to the elbow, then kneeling with faces towards *Medina*, speak not one to another, spit nor cough if they can avoid it.

5 Command. See thou observe yearly a month Lent, a Byram, &c.

The *Lent* or *Ramadan* (called also *Ramadan*, *Ramazan* and *Ramulan*) begins commonly at the Sun's entrance into *Aries*, *Libra* other times, no time certain; and is in imitation of our Lent, or rather the forty dayes *Moses* was in *Horeb*, by some said in memory of *Mahomet*'s forty dayes obscuring himself in the *Defart* when he fled from the rage of Mecc.ⁱ's Inhabitants, and for that in this month he divulged his *Alcoran*: but most likely (as in the 47 *Asoora* of himself, and 25, in which he treats of the excellency of the *All-surean*) from his being so long in the sixth Heaven called *Alahal*, where this Anthropomor-phite blasphemously reports, He had the honour to shake hands with the Almighty (which he sayes were seventy times colder than Ice;) and that being upon the Earth, to make the People credit him the more, he commanded the Moon to descend; half of which the *Horus* put into his own sleeve, and the other half served as a zone or girdle for his Son-in-Law *Moris Ally*; Howbeit, to others amazement, he afterwards pieced it together and with a like sleight placed it in the same Orb whence first he invited it. Borrow'd ('tis probable) from *Joseph*'s dream mentioned in *Gen. 37.9.* where the Moon made obeysance to him: *Sergius* the Apostle Monk helping him with the Allusion.

During this Ramdam, all day long they abstain from all sorts of viands or refection, he is counted the veriest Heretick in the World that dare eat any thing in the day: yet the Sun is no sooner set, but that then their Carnival begins, then they let loose the reins of their appetite, Epicurising in all kinds of licentiousness and pleasures imaginble. Prospers saying, That to fast from sin is the best Fast, is here no good Doctrine. So soon as the nine and twentieth day is past (for though the Alcoran commands forty, yet by those of the late reformation it is limited to one Moon) they begin the Byram (as we do Easter) and continue their merriment till the third day be ended: the two dayes after the Byram are commonly called *Chuef-bahram* (or Byram.) The last hour of the last Festival they usually resolve upon a Pilgrimage to visit their Prophets Sepulchre; not magnetically attracted, nor intombed in an Iron Coffin as some report, but laid under a fair Marble, polished and engraven with Arabic sentences out of the Elefalem: and in the way (as we have observed) they wallow in all kind of turpitude; yet no where persecuted, being palliated with a Pilgrims coat and hypocritic sanctity.

The Buccare they solemnize in November or *Chodad-maw* (by the Turks called *Silcads*, by the Arabs *Rabiel-owis*), a Feast observed in commemoration of the Ram which was sacrificed by Abraham at such time as *Izmael* (they say) should have been offered.

Other Festivals they celebrate: The *Oud-Hussan*, the *Norrouz*, *Imamy*, *Caddyer-Ally*, *Jedi-Ousant*, *Anwtpatian*, the *Sophyan*, the *Roses*, *Dassadillics*, the *Is'nd*, the *Ceraghan*, the Feast of Brother-hood, &c.

The *Oud-Hussan* is from *Hocem* or *Hussan* Son of *Ally* who was slain with eleven of his Sons by *Mary* the Chalyp of *Damascus* Nephew to *Ojman*. A Festival begun (they say revived) by *Syet Gunet*, followed by *Aydar*, and commanded by *Sha-Izmael*, as a triumph against the *Ben-Humanians*, who left no means un-attempted to have extirped *Ally's* Family root and branch; which nevertheless was providentially preserved in one of that stem named *Mirza Sheresin*, (they call him Saint *Azimuly*,) who at his birth was secretly conveyed into some good hands that preserved him from the Ben-Humanian inquisition: from which *Azimuly* (who lived near an hundred years after Mahomet's flight from Mecca) *Syet Gunet of Ardaveil* (Son of that venerable Saint or *Syet Sheque Sopby*, of so great esteem for sanctity in *Tamberlane's* time, as gave him the invitation to visit him in his march through *Persia* against the Turkish Tyrant) is lineaely descended: Which *Syet* not only incivigled against the Turkish Tenet concerning Mahomet's three Successors *Abubeker* and the rest, but anathematized such as honour them; yea, he spared not those four other great Hodges or Doctors who were contemporary with Mahomet; those four (if not deceived) whom Mahomet in fear for his presumption in Paradise wiped from the sweat of his brow, and by miracle were metamorphosed into four learned men, by name *Achmet Semblim*, *Abu-hamet*, *Melec-zeddah*, and *Shet-Vaffam*. A new-broached Opinion, so offensive to the Turks, that of late the Muphti condemning an innocent Persian swore a great Oath he thought it a better act and a more meritorious to kill one Persian than seventy Christians.

Hussan, most agree, was slain treacherously by *Chuse*, a Slave to *Mnavi*. *Mnavi* was accellory; the *Persians* therefore punish him yearly, though rotten a thousand years since. For, first, they frame a deformed Image, whose face is black, his nose pierced thorow with a Dart, and clad in Straw: which done, they hurry it through the streets in a hurlyburly of thousands of credulous people; who when they have dragged it sufficiently through the City, draw it to some rising Hill where to all mens view they elevate this Cattiff: the Caddy bawls out a pathetic Oration to this purpose, That after strict search, *Ally* had directed them where to apprehend the Traytor, unworthy, the least shew of mercy; this being that same Villain who slew *Hussan* (*Ally's* Son) and his eleven Sons, *Sherefin* only escaping: so that every good man is bound to curse him, yea, to help to torment him in the vilest manner possible.

In token of joy, they unanimously sing their *Epinicias*, and cry aloud *Tough Ally*; yea, strive to rend the Clouds with clamours. At a set time they cease, when Fire is given to a train of Gunpowder which setting divers squibs on fire, blow up the detested *Syrian*; and by a hideous noise make the Air echo at his Funeral. *Hussan's* Gholt they think now sleeps quietly; each *Persian* commends one anothers zeal, and spends that night in merriment.

The *Jedi-Ousant* was observed when we were in *Spahavan*. They have a Tradition that *Houssan* (*Ally's* Son) was lost in a Wildernes, where thirt or rather *Merv* the Kalyph killed him. Nine dayes they wander up and down, all that while having neither head nor beard nor seeming joyful, but incessantly beating their breasts, some tear their garments, and crying out *Hussan*, *Hussan*, in a melancholy note, so long, so fiercely, that many can neither

neither howl longer, nor for a months space recover their voices. The *Dervis* and other *Santoons* or Enthusiaſticks being in the crowd expref their zeal by turning round, fo long together, and with ſuch ſwiftneſs as will hardly be credited, which by cuſtome is made inoffenſive: and others I have ſeen in this vertiginous exercife at the Cavalcades when Ambaſadors were met upon the way, a circumgyration we beheld with admiration. The tenth day they find an imaginary *Huſſan*, the Mahometan Tetragrammaton, that *Nunquama; ſatix quæſitum Adonis*, whom they echo forth in Stentorian clamour, till they bring him to his Grave; where they let him ſleep quietly till the next years zeal fetch him out (*Semper enim perduim semper & inventum*) and force him again to accompany their devotion. Parallel to which is that in Ovid, 10. *Metamorph.*

— — — I uictus monumenta manebunt
Semper Adoni mei, reperitaq; mortis Imago
Annua plangitis perget simulamina noſtri.

*Our sorrows Monument ſhall ever Left:
Adonis! thy Deaths Image every year
Shall in our ſolemniz'd complaints appear.*

And may be in imitation of that annual cuſtome which was obſerved by the *Egyptians*, howling in like manner for their lost *Oſyris*, as the idolatrous Jews did for *Tammuz* mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel* chap. 8. & 14. and firſt celebrated by the *Pharicians*.

The *Newrouz* is in imitation of our *New-years-day*; but they begin (after the old manner) in *March*, ſuch time as the Sun in his equal ſhine to either Pole makes the *Aequinoctium*. A Festival of jovialty this is; for one prayer, preying upon variety of pleaſures the *Talijmanni* pipe now to *Bacchus*, *Ceres*, and *Venus*. I have obſerved, that in many parts for eleven months in the year we could fee very few Women of any extraordinary quality, and thoſe we ſaw were veiled; being offenſive in the ſtreets, or gardens to conveſe with any: yet these twelve dayes of the *Newrouz* they have liberty; ſo as all places were full of them, yea, their naked faces diſcovered; frisking in amorous poſtures, and drawing the eye by a forced magic. Gifts also and reciprocal preſents are retorted up and down from one to another, with Garments of ſilk and gold, horſes, fruits, and pifcashes of other ſorts: nothing but riding the horſe, drinking, cock-fighting, fortune-telling, ſinging, ſwinging in the air, courting, and the like being obſerved to the laſt minute of that Festival.

The *Imamy* has ſome dependance on the *Buckaree*: This takes its riſe from a Camel, that from a Ram; that for *Iſmael*, this for *Mahomet*. In *November*, the Meccan Proto-mift ſends a Camel by an adopted Son (fometime natural) who is welcomed to *Spahaws* by many thouſand Muſulmen, who ſhow the extreme of joy for ſo holy a Preſent. After they have tried and tired their voices, the Hodgeſ from an exalted place acquaints them with the cauſe of his long journey, perſuades them to a thankful remembrance, and bleſſes them. The multitude, without any reſpect of men or danger, throng about the Beaſt; who is no ſooner in the field where Death arreſts him, but that they fall upon him, and pluck off his ſhort hairs with an admirable dexterity, keeping them as ſanctimonious reliques, prevalent againſt ſudden death, (though many dye in the aſſault, and thouſands return maimed) hunger, thirſt, poverty, and what not? After which, the tormented Camel is by the Hodgeſ again ſigned for ſacrifice. The Darraguod firſt tranfixes his Javelin. The Viſier beheads him, and gives it the King. The carcaſ then is torn piſcemeal by the fool-hardy multitude; ſo greedy to obtain this charm of long life and plenty, that immortality and the place where meat and drink is needless, oft in the clay enterain them.

The *Caddyer Ally* is a Feaſt in memory of *Ally's* victory over the three old Caitiffs of *Mercha*, by Death (not *Ally*) conqueſted: After ſome threnodies many prayers are muttered, ſongs chanted, and Alms beſtowed: the King is at moſt charge in this ſolemnity, the greateſt honour reflecting on him, in regard of his ancestry.

The *Anwippafion* (or *Owdi-bapſion*) is in memory of *Mahomet's* baptism by *Sergius*. Many of the ordinary ſort of Muſulmen assemble, and (after the Darraguod has put a period to his Oration) promiſcuouſly beſprinkle with water one anothers faces, then ſoil their flesh with dirt and filth, and the great ones many times to pleafe the King act the like among them; laſtly, they cleanse themſelves with water, ſuppoſing all deformity waſhed off, and their bodies cleaner ever after.

The *Sophian* is a Solemnity of faſting, feaſting, and praying for the proſperity of their King, and continuation of the *Sophian* pedigree.

The Feaſt of *Rofes* and *Daffadiſies* is begun by a Proceſſion of *Santoons* at the firſt buil ding of thoſe Flowers, and for thirty dayes celebraled with all manner of ſports and recreations

creations to be imagined. This annual Feast seems to be continued from the custom of those memorable ones which in old times were celebrated in *Perſia*, ſuch time as the Kings thereof had the Supreme Monarchy of the World; as we read in the Book of *Hefler* and elsewhere: for, at the keeping of this Feat we beheld an infinite number of Tents pitched, with ſuch flux of Men, Women, Boyes and Girls, with Arms, Muſicks, Songs, and Dances, as would make one think that either the Games of *Olympia* were revived, or *Bacchus* his *Orgyes*.

6. Command. *Reverence thy Parent.*

Which how they perform, many Tragick stories daily inform.

7. Command. *Cursed be the flayer.*

So well practised in *Perſia*, that what by rigour of the Laws, and what from this, one may travel in any place at any time without danger: and although they be generally Martialists and affect much Wine, yet I scarce ever ſaw any quarreller or homicide amonſt them. But to enlarge their Territories and propagate their Faith, think it nevertheless a meritorious act to kill and flay without mixture of mercy: And, *Iniqua eſta Religio, que verberibus Eadem exigit*, ſaith *Greg. Naz.* l. 2. Epift. 52.

8. Command. *Do ſo to Others as thou wouldeſt Others ſhould do to Thee.*

From whence they are humane and courteous; but that bribery hath lately crept amonſt them, is eafily diſcerned by such as have recourse to them for Juſtice.

The *Alcoran* then being a miſcellany treats further in the 53, How that *Digital* or *Shytan*, i.e. the Devil ſhall at length be faved by *Mahomet's* means. And in the 72 *Azooar*, That *Eglebemy* or the infernal Ghoſts ſhall after I know not how many Years be treed. How far *Sergius* in this made uſe of *Origen*, I know not. The 85 *Azooar* treats of the Zodiac; the 91, 92, 93, of the Moon, Night, Morn; the 113, of the Firmament; but is Philoſophy of ſuch counſeals, that I may well lay *Dicimus potius quim Philoſophum*: for how can it well be otherwise, ſince in his seventeenth *Azooar* he confeſſes he could neither read nor write, but hath this ſalvo, that all his learning was ſupernatural? In one Chapter he is bold to ſay, That *Solomon* was a great Magician, and that he learned it from *Muroo* and *Arot* two bad Angels: With more reaſon we may ſay, That *Mahomet* was ſkilled in that infernal wiſdom, if half of thoſe miracles be true he records of himſelf: One is this: Being one time compaſſed with a great assembly of *Arabians* he pointed at the Moon (he oft courted) with his thumb and long finger; it ſeems it knew his mind; for the Moon in obſcience immediately clove afunder, and in two pieces fell upon the Hill of *Mecca* upon which *Mahomet* at that time stood; with a piece of his linsey-wolſey coat he patched and made it whole again; which after it had alio (ſay the *Perſians*) embraced *Moris-Ally* in way of complement, it re-ascended, and from that day became the Badge or Coat-armour of *Boſarmen*. In another, He affiſhes his profelytes, That *Mecca*, *Medina* and *Jerusalem* be holy Cities, built by *Adam* in Paradise, but framed in Heaven: and thence it is that *Jerusalem* is honoured by *Turks* as well as *Christians*. Four Cities ſprung out of Hell at the Birth of *Mahomet* (at which time all Idols fell, and *Lucifer* was thrown into Hell, fo deep into that abyſs, as he was ſome years e're he could get up again;) the names of thoſe Towns are (as pleaſes *Mahomet* to ſay) *Elmedin* in *Cilicia*, *Antioch* in *Syri*, *Vaffa* in *Egypt*, and *Eh-beram* in *Armenia*: places that have this black wizard put upon them, probably for that they reſifted the progres of his *Alcoran*.

In the 47 *Azooar*, he records his pilgrimage or aſcent into Heaven; where he had a rare object, and thence brought a decription of the ſeveral Spheres, Heavens, Hells, and Paradise: as alio of Angels and Saints; Judgement, the Reſurrecction, joy and pain, &c. of which I shall afford you a compendium out of their own Authors. One eve (as *Mahomet* was ſporting privately in his Chamber at *Mecca* with *Ayſe* his young Wife) *Gabriel* (*Seraphiel* the *Perſians* call him, the fame ſay they that foſtered *Mahomet* and *Ally* three years, ſuch a *Genius* peradventure as haunted *Bruus*) in a flaſh of fire entring their Chamber, thus ſaluted *Mahomet*: Hail thou, beloved Man! I come to fetch thee; the God whom thou lo'zealouly worhippett desires to ſee thee at his own habitation. *Mahomet* going to mount upon the Angel's wings (of which he had ſeventy pair) being hindred, demands what way he ſhould take to ascend? Thereupon the Angel ſhews him an *Alis*, *Albarack* by name, and bids him mount. *Mahomet* eſſaying to get up, could not, till he had pray'd for him. From *Mecca* he poſted as ſwift as thought, for *Albarack* at four ſteps brought

brought him to *Jerusalem*: there dismounting the Angel took him into his protection. In few minutes *Mahomet* past the seven Seas, and ascended Heaven, into which he was let by *Gabriel* the Porter, who keeps seventy thousand Keys that open several divisions of Paradise. From one Heaven to another (according to his computation) it is five hundred years travel; howbeit, *Mahomet* past through the seven in a moment. In those Orbs he saw many strange things: but first take notice what mettle the Orbs are of. *Erisum tenacissimum*

The first is of refined silver, wherein all the glittering Stars are fixed with chains of burnished brafs: In this Heaven he saw a Cock so great, that standing upon the Moon his comb reached into the Imperial Heaven: everytime this Cock crow'd, all other Chantreers upon the Earth re-echoed him. The second Heaven is of gold, such as has been seven times tried in the fire. The third of Pearl: In this Heaven he saw innumerable troops of Saints and Angels, each of which saluting him by his Name, he pray'd for them. Amongst the rest, he took notice of *Adam*, *Enoch*, *Abraham*, *Samuel*, *David*, *Solomon*, &c. all whom he knew by revelation; and of which, some lie taxed, others he commended, as occasion served. The fourth was of Smaragd; where he saw infinite companies of other Angels, who made a mighty noise and incessantly praised God: every Angel there was a thousand times bigger than the globe of the Earth; each had ten thousand heads; every head thousand and ten thousand tongues; and every tongue praised God in seven hundred thousand Languages. Amongst them, he noted one especially, *Phatyr* or the Angel of Mercy; a creature of that vast frame, that every step he trod was twelve times more than the distance is twixt both the Poles: *Mahomet* enquired of him why he wept so; the Angel reply'd, It was in compassion to see the deplorable state of Man. This is that Angel has the holy Pen in keeping; a Pen of Orient Pearl; so long, that an Arabian Courser in five hundred years galloping can hardly reach to the further end of it. With this Pen, God registers all things past, present, and to come: the Ink he writes with, is pure Light; the Character so mysterious, that none but he and *Seraphael* can read it. All the hundred and four Holy Books are written by this Quill, viz. those ten which *Adam* received, *Seih* had fifty, *Edrus* (or *Enoch*) thirty, and *Abraham* had the rest: It also writ *Moses* his Law, *David's* Psalms, *Christ's* Gospel, and *Mahomet's* *Alcoran*. The fifth Heaven was of Diamonds; where he saw a mighty Angel, of all other the wifest: he had as many heads and tongues and voices as any two in the inferior Orb; and had the keeping of that Book wherein all Men in the World have their Names written: he did nothing but turn over leaves, and blot out one Name or another; for by that (as by the arrow of death) they die suddenly. The sixth was of Turquoise: The seventh of *Alabud*; some interpret it *fire*; others *pure Light* or *Breath congealed*. All these circumvolve or, another like Pearls or Onions: they be translucent, and yet of metals! Above all is the Heaven of Heavens, full of Light and silence; immense, and within which all other Eddies are comprised, but it incomprehended. There *Mahomet* saw or rather dreamt he saw the highest Throne, rich beyond expression: very great also; for it was supported by seven Angels, each of them being so great, that a Falcon if he were to fly a thousand years could not go so far as is the distance of one eye from another. About the Throne hung 14 Candles everlasting burning: the length of every one of those Candles (as *Mahomet* conjectured) was from one end to another as much space as a Horse can ride in five hundred years. There this blasphemous fears not to say he saw the *Almighty*, who (if it be lawful to mention) in sign of welcome, laid his hand upon *Mahomet's* face: his hands (says this Anthropomorphite) were a thousand times colder than ice. For all which, *Mahomet* in acknowledgment of his own baseness blushed for shame, and sweat for fear; and with his long finger sweeping the sweat from his brow, threw it into Paradise: Rare Sweat! for each drop (he notes them to be six) turned into some rare thing: one drop became a Rose; another turned into a grain of Rice; the other four into four Learned Men, *Achmet-Sembelin*, *Abuhamed*, *Melec-zed*, and *Seh Vissin*. After he had full instructions he descended with his *Alcoran*. What course he took to promote it, and being entertained how notoriously it has over-spread the greatest part of *Aisa* and *Africk*, is too visible: Here only let us note his *Quatuor novissima* concerning Angels, Judgement, Paradise, and Hell.

Angels are either good or bad; both are subject to death: the good because they consist of flame, an Element; to sin because *Lucifer* an Angel for his ambition was expulsed Paradise. Bad Angels are imprisoned in Dogs, Swine, Toads, Wolves, Bears, Tygers, &c. After the day of Doom they shall be tormented in Hell some millions of Years; but in the end are to be delivered.

The Great and General Judgement is as certain as the day of Death, and will happen suddenly

suddenly such time as all the World is wrapt in a careless security: the Angels know not the time till *Mahomet* point it out by a great and fearful duel 'twixt *Adriel* and Death, whom in the end he vanquishes; thereby becoming so enraged, that in this manner he doth roar; all living Creatures in the World: new arming himself with flaming bras, in each quarter of the World he sounds his dreadful Trumpet, whose affrighting clangor makes not only Men, Beasts, Fishes, Birds and other Creatures die, but the Angels also give over living: lastly, *Adriel* himself whom God commanded to follow the rest in the inevitable path, by wrapping his iron wings about strangles himself, with such a dreadful noise as is unexpressible.

After this ensues an univeral Earth-quake, attended by a shour^r of purling brimstone which devours all grafs, trees and vegetable Creatures; yea, the Palaces of the proudest Tyrants: and turning topsie-turvie the Earth, Water, and other Elements reduces them into their original, a confused lump. Forty dayes it rests in this new Chaos: during which God grasps it in his fist, and (beholding it) speaks to this effect: *Where are now the haughty Princes, cruel Tyrants, lascivious wantons, and greedy Earth-worms?* Which said, for forty dayes and nights Space he incellantly rains down a shour of mercy, and by a gracious and gentle breath reduces the World into a fresh and glorious estate. Which done, he calls up *Seraphiel*, and bids him take his Trumpet in his hand: the Trumpet is of gold, and (speaking to common Understanding) above five hundred years travel from one end to another. At the first sound, ensues a re-vivification of Angels and Men: at the second, Angels re-allume their glorious Robes, and Men their naked flesh again. *Michael* the Arch-angel (perceiving the Tribunal raised upon a high Mount in *Jehosaphat's* Vale) approaches with his Ballance, and poises every Man's deeds in either scale: Such whole good out-ballance their evil are put upon the right hand, the other on the left. After that, such as are loaden with their sins (packt up in a satchel and hung about their necks) pass upon a narrow and wack Bridge towards Hell: such as have few sins, get over safelly; but those that be heavy laden break the Bridge, and fall into an abyss. Upon the other side stands *Mahomet* transformed into a Ram, and in his deep fleece lodges his Sectaries, whom after long travell he brings to some gap which he finds in Paradise; where skipping in, he dis-burthenes himself and shakes them out: at that instant assumling new forms, more lovely, more strong, and every way more excellent; with eyes as big as the Earth, with eye-brows bigger and more beautifull than the Rain-bow.

The *Alcoran* further tells you what and where Hell is, and what is Paradise. Hell is the Umbilick of the World; circled with a thick wall of Adamant, and by seven gates of flaming bras, divided into many cells, some of which are more bathsom and fuller of torment than others. In it are divers holes or Caves; some so deep, that in a thoufand years a mil-stone cannot find the bottom; in the descent are sharp Swords and Pikes placed purposely to torture Souls in their fallings: Some places be abysses, full of oyl and brimstone ever-flaming; and so terrible, that the Devils forbear not to howl and sciech, and rage there without measure. Other Prissons there be that are full of Toads, Serpents, and all other sorts of noisom creatures imaginable: The damned eat nothing there save the forbidden Fruit; which being in their guts, inflames like fulphur, and makes them roar continually. Some Rivers be full of Crocodiles; others so cold as makes them gnash and chatter. Howbeit, These pains of Hell mull not abide for ever, say their Doctors; for after each Soul hath suffered so many thousand years as the sins amount unto they have committed, *Mahomet* will deliver them (and the Devils also;) first changing their affrighting shapes into shapes more tolerable, and then bringing them to *Alcanzar*, a Stream flowing out of Paradise; there they are to cool their heat, and wash away their black-scorched mummy, and then they vary into a moit flesh whiter than the driven snow, and thence-forth sing *Lala-billulaes*, which is, *Praise be to God and Mahomet.*

Paradise is a place of as much delight as *Mahomet's* carnal apprehension was able to imagine of his fancy contrive. Uncertain of the local place, he supposes it will be upon the Earth after the day of Doom, when all deformity shall be removed: for till then, the Souls and Bodies of Men (though they sleep in their Graves) be sensible of joy and torment. Paradise (sayes the *Alcoran*) is so many miles about as there be motes or atoms in the Sun: it is inclosed with a wall of gold ninety times refined, ten thousand miles high, and in thickness about three thousand; has seven gates to enter at, (Seven is a mystery;) of Carbuncle or purest Rubie is the first gate; the other six be of Pearl, Emerald, Turquoise, Hyacinth, Smaraqd, and Amethyst; reflecting upon the Spheres: Divided into 7 spacious Gardens, sub-divided into seventy times seven places of delight; each filled with Inhabitants, Musick, Wine, and all sensual pleasures imaginable: all have cool refreshing Rivolets of Crystal,drilling over pibbles of Amber. Summer-houses it also has shaded with

trees ever-fruitful and verdant: In center of that *Elysium* is a Tree higher than all the Mountains of the World were they heaped one upon another; so broad, that Paradise becomes delightfully shaded by it. The trunk of this Tree is of Diamond, the leaves of Gold, and the boughs of Jet; each leaf is wrought into an antique shape; in this most admirable, for that on one side in letters of light are the Name of God, on the reverse the Name of *Mahomet*. From several quarters 4 Streams gush out of purest Water Milk, Coho and Honey; these empty themselves into *Alechanor*, whence this mixture of *Nepenthe* flows into other parts of Paradise. Aromatic flowers are there in abundance, such as ravish both eye and smell: Aery Choristers, the meanest of which as far excel our Nightingales as they do Ravens. The air is a compound of sense-ravishing odours. *Mahometans* there (for Christians, Jews, nor Gentiles have not such glory) are ever young and sprightly, a hundred times bigger and more frolick than ever was *Mahomet*. The Women are sever'd from the Men; not that they are kept from them (for *Gabriel* is never absent or averse to let them in) but that by such a screen they may become more ardently amorous and affected to their Damozella's, who have such visages as fair *Ayfe* had (*Mahomet*'s best beloved;) their hairs being threads of gold, their eyes Diamonds as big as the Moon: their lips resemble Cherries, their teeth Pearl, their tongues Rubies, their cheeks Ceras, their noses Jasper, their fore-heads Saphire: round-fac'd, courteous and merciful. In this Paradise is (say they) a Table of Diamond, seven hundred thousand dayes journey long; about which are Chairs of gold and Pearl, for use and ornament.

The Males are to be of *Mahomet*'s favour and complexion such as their Prophet had when *Gabriel* mounted him towards Heaven: none but will be much brighter than the Sun, with such eyes, eye-brows and ears as scarce credible. To conclude, *Gabriel* the Porter of Paradise has seventy thousand Keyes which pertain to his Office, every Key being seven thousand miles long; by which you may imagine the Doors are no Pygmy ones. In a word, 'tis no less ingenious than the rest that *Mahomet* confessed he writ three parts of four, Untiuth in his Legend or Romance rather: To confute them would then be a labour needless, though *Abelanthon* hath done it; so that I may well say as *Seneca* did to *Lucilius*, *Non tanto plus quam ad tantum inspirauit*. For indeed *Persidum eorum recessasse, suprassis est*.

Such are the tanatick Dogmata of the *Alcoran*, credited by most *Asiaticks*, whose Disciples are of above twenty sorts of Orders or Degrees: some of which with heed I have obserued, and here (as the cover of their Legend) shut up, ranking them in an Alphabeticall way, lest I should any way injure their seniorities.

Abdali, Alambeli, Aliqua, Aliscani, Anesit, Apuphi, Bedvini, Benefuni, Bosarmani, Buani, Caddi, Cadulechi, Calypn, Calsi, Cioggi, Cobini, Cumeraati, Deptardarus, Dervisi, Dervisiwi, Duanni, E'dnebi, Emersi, Enawm-zeddi, Fylalli-kadri, Herewi, Hodget, Hugemali, Imami, Kalenders, Malabedi, Melichis, Mendes, Morabut, Morabowri, Mudreessi, Mufti, Muhai, Muhever, Muizzan, Mustadim, Mutevelis, Muzalmanni, Naappi, Nimerulahi, Ozmanni, Papassi, Ramdani, Samoni, Scriphi, Shahi, Sopluni, Sunni, Syetti, Taisfmanni, Tecknas, Torlaem, Torlaqui, Zuidi, Zophulari, &c. whose Tenets how ridiculous soever they be, yet are so esteem'd of here, that in their desente they will become Martyrs. But Saint *Augustin*'s definition is true, That *Causa non penit facit Martirum*. And 'tis well observed, That these false Teachers are so ravished and transported when they have found that they have a dominion and sovereignty over the Faith and Consciences of Men, as no persecution nor torture can ever make them to relinquish it. Now since this blasphemous Anthropomorphite perswades his Sectaries That at his Ascension into Heaven the *Almighty* touched him with his hand, it seems he was ignorant That God is infinite as well as Eternal, and without any composition: so as that Tenet of his is an Error against the very Essence of God. *Maledictus est* (says *Augustin*) *qui Deitatem ad hominem linamenta referit. Dicu enim non est humana forma particeps, neque corpus humanum Divina. Yea, Trismegistus could say, Anima est imago Mentis, Mens imago Dei, Deus enim mens praedit, mens anima, corporis anima:* The Soul is the image of the Understanding, Understanding is the image of God; God rules over the Understanding, Understanding over the Soul, as the Soul doth over the Body.

Their Rules are various. The *Mufts* is chief in hearing and deciding cases of error: which if he fail in, the *Meccan Protomust* determines. The *Cocdi*, *Cuddechi* and *Muhamedis* are next in Ecclesiastick Dignity. The *Hodges*, *Emersi* and *Muladis* the first are Expeditors, the other Mendicants, eating their bread in idleness. The *Fylalli* converse molt. The *Demifare* wandering Wolves in Sheeps clothing: (*Dicitur Oratores Persici* are mentioned by *Herodotus lib. 9.*) The *Taisfmanni* regard the hours of prayer, by turning the four-hour'd glass. The *Mujezzini* cry from the top, of *Mosques*, battologizing *Lala Hyllida*.

The Calenderi, Abdalli, and Derviflari be Pæderasts, and dangerous to meet in solitary places. The Terlaqui and Cobtini are of the Family of Love. The Lefhari and Papali, Fortune-tellers and Star-gazers. The Sunni, Naappi, and Tecnai vow silence, and aliaſſitate. The Sictti and Imami sometimes pull out their eyes, having once seen *Medina-Tulnabi*: others of them have pulled out their tongues. The Huguemali sing amorous songs: some for penance go naked, other-some are covered in albes. The Dooanni are fools or mad-men, yet thought inspired. The Mendex afflict their bodies by thirst, lalhing and wounding themselves; and, in charity, carry burthens or do any servile labour gratis: some abjure flesh, fish, wine, and rose-water; some live Eremites; and some build houses to safe-guard birds and beasts, feed them, and have musick to prevent their melancholy: Other-some build Hospitals, Inns, Bathes, Moſques, and the like. Some are Poetasters or Mimographers: other-some have feeds and charms to make Women fruitful. Some scorch their skins in the Sun: others of more pity and piety oyl their naked bodies, and to allure the poor Flies to pasture roast themselves in the burning Sun. These and many other paths they tread, directed by the Alcoran the way to Acheron. So as I ſhall conclude with that of Saint Hierome, *Sin non placet non legas, &c.* and take leave with another to lay, *Quid ultra dioram in re tam exultare ubi à capite ad pedem genit fanas.*

This (more crafty than learned) Law-giver, perceiving his Divinity and Philosophy insufficient to abide the trial, has this Salvo, by commanding, That none upon pain of damnation presume to question a syllable of it. And with good reaſon; for, *Suspecta est Lex* (ſays Tertullian) *qua se probari non audeat.* From whence few except be Ecclesiastics, trouble themselves to read or ſtudy it; hoping by a reverend ignorance, and the Colliers faith, to be ſaved. But by your favour I will anſwer you out of Martial.

Decipis alias verbi,
vultus; benigno;
Sed mihi tam notus,
Dissimilator eris.

Others with words and pleasing looks
thou mayſt deceive; but me
Thou ſhalt not, for I know thee
a rank Hypocrite to be.

Howbeit, the Persians (since Gunet's reformation) have contracted the Alcoran into a leſſer Volume. Ozmans labours they ſleight: the four great Doctors who had their original from the sweat of Mahomet's brow, Gunet also execrates. These are the moſt material difference 'twixt Turk and Persian. And yet let none think that Syets was the firſt ſchism: for Ozman was no ſooner dead, but according to the Adage *Pojſhami Haresi filii, Iblul to inſeeble Ozman's labours commented upon the Alcoran, and differed from his opinion.* After him, *Ibnu-Abel-hafen of Balsora, An. Heg. 88.* by his auſtere life and eloquence not only oppofed the Melchian, but in comparison of whom *Iblul* himſelf was counted erroneous. At his death they ſainted him: but truſting to Tradition (for they could never prevail with *Haffen* to commit any thing to writing) his diſciples differed fo far amongst themſelves, that it came to blows, which was but course Logic, not agreeing in any point, *Uno tertio, till Elbaru-Ibnu eſed of Babylon did his beſt in an elaborate Paraphraſe not only to reconcile but withal to make Canonical Elheſins expositions.* It ſeemed calm weather a while: but e're long a thunderclap was heard from Mecca's Territories, anathematizing *Elbaru-Eſed*, persecuting him and all his fautors. Purſuant to which, by *Melech-ha's* command they not only burn his papers, but excommunicate him from the conuerſe and ſociety of Muſulmen.

Nevertheleſs, King Cazel afterwards was induced to have a good opinion of *Elbaru* and his Tenets: and at that time being a Favourite to his Uncle the great *Melech-a* (a Turk and late Victor over Babylon) makes uſe of his power, defiring ſome favour for the late excommunicated men. *Melech* could not eaſily be perwaded: but *Nydam Emul* another Courtier of note and ſavourer of *Elbaru's* Doctrine, ſeconds *Cazel*, and prevails to have the Auelian Sectaries called home again. *Elegaz-zuli* a nimble-witted man undertakes it, and by little leſs than miracle closes the late made breach: fo as now *Mahomet* ſhines without interpolation; but an alteration quickly followed. For Saint *Azimilli* from the Caſpiān thore defies all ſuch as thought well of *Mahomet's* three intruding Succellors. This ſeemed a terrible Apoſtacie at firſt: but while all *Asia* were in admiration what the event would be, a crack of no leſs amazement comes from the Welt, where *Almorabbib* exalts his own piety and learning above *Mahomet's*. This ſeemed intolerable; fo that being apprehended, as a reward of his Apoſtacie and to prevent further Schism that upstart Doctor was put to a miserable death.

After this, both the Clergy and Laity grew exceeding voluptuous: a foolish thing it was then to affect learning, or to appear honest. *Lascivious Poems* was the only

opinion, and Mahomet's Paradise seemed then in being. This corruption in good manners was nevertheless inveighed against by *Eſſebraver Differaverd* a Bactrian; whose ſevere Satyres foftung thoſe ranting Epicures that many began to examine their lives and conveſation; of which being convinced, made them abſhamed; and being perceived by *Ibnuſ-Pharyd*, one well learned in his time, he (as one well acquainted with the humour of the Persian) ſweetned all by his amorous Poēſie: which was ſeconded by *Elfargany*, whole Lines were applauſed by ſome, but by oþerſome exploded as a bude Cabalift. A Chaos ſeemed then to cover that face of *Perſia*, till *Eſfarni* a sober Historian took upon him to ſet right what was amifs: Seventy two Sects he reduced to two, the *Leſbari* and *Imami*: the firſt of which Eulogically extols Mahomet, and is received through all *Morea*, *Natolia*, *Egypt*, *Paleſtine*, and *Syria*; the other *Ally*, which is received all over the *Perſian Monarchy*, and beyond *Indiu*. In the laſt place, *Sye Gunet* displays his Enſign, to ſuch effect as keeps its credit to this day in opposition to the *Turk*. It would here be tedious to rehreſe their brawls, wherein I have gone, I fear, too far already: I will therefore ſhut up with that of the Paftral,

Non noſtrum inter nos tantas componere litis.

After this repofe let's abroad again, and ſee what obſervation we can make in other parts of *Indiæ*: than which, the World, for pleaſure and wealth, has none more conſiderable. To encompaſt it we muſt to Sea again; for, without ſuch helps it cannot be accomplished. To which end,

April 12. We took Ship at *Swalley*; and being three or four leagues off at Sea, the wind came fair and made the liquid billows ſwell ſo advantagiously as next day we had ſight of ſome noted Towns, viz. *Gundavee*, *Daman*, *S. John de Vacas*, *Choul*, *Dabul*, &c. moſt of which were ſubjected by *Albuquerque* to the Crown of *Portugal* about the year 1512. *Dabul* (*Dunga* of old) excepted, which yielded to the mercy of *Andradins* Gouvernor of *Choul*, from whom 'twas loon rapr by the *Decances*; but by that made a Basis of greater miſery. For, *Fr. Almeida* a few years after recovered it by ſtratagem, and after great slaughter of the inhabitants and rich ſpoil, burnt the City and demoliſht the Fort, ſurrendred by *Sha-beg*, who but a little before was put into that command by *Melece-Sia* then Prince of thole Countries: Howbeit, by command of the Goan Vice-roy 'twas again re-paire, and flood in good condition till Captain *Hall* (if I miſtake not his name) about the year 1622. took the Town, and made the daring *Porngal* know their bravadoes to the *English* were not terrible.

The South point of **DABUL** as I obſerved has Artic elevation 17 deg. 35 min. variation West 15 degrees 34 minutes. Heretofore it obeyed the King of *Decan*, but at this day the *Lufitanian*; ſeated at the foot of a high, pleaſant, and fruitful Mountain; whence streams a rivolet of fresh water, beyond meaſure uſeful in that hot Climat. The Road gives reaſonable good Anchorage, and the Town it ſelf (eſpecially towards the Sea) appears beautiful to ſuch as view it: albeit the Houses be but low, and tarralled at the top; a mode that beſt ſerves to qualifie the extremes of heat and cold. An old Caſtle and a few Temples at this day are all ſhe boalts of; for the Buzzar is but ordinary, and the Streets narrow: nor is her Mart now ſo conſiderable as at first, ſeeing that *Surat* and *Cambay* to the North, *Goa* and *Calicut* to the South have eclipsid her; ſo as now ſhe condoles with other her diſconſolate Neighbours, and is to acknowledge there is a deſtiny and decay in Towns as well as other temporaries.

CHOUL (in *Ptolemy*'s dayes called *Comare*, if *Caſtaldus* guesſ right) is removed from the *Æquinoctiall* 18 degrees 30 minutes North: ravished from the Diadem of *Decan* by *Almeida* in the year of our redempcion 1507. and in which (to perpetuate his Conqueſt) he erected a Fort which he fortifyed with Cannon. Howbeit, *Anno Dom. 1573.* it was for ſome months besieged by *Misamoluc* the Decan Prince with a numerouſ Army of Horse and Foot, beſides Elephants: but by the gallant defence made by the *Portugal* were forced to riſe with losſ and shame. The Inhabitants are a mixture of *Portugals* and *Bamyanians*: it affords little elſe worth noting.

Here the Expedition bearing up to ſpeak with us, both fell foul one another's houſes, through which miſchance her boltsprit gave our miſen ſhrouds a churliſh ſalute; but by a happy gale were parted without further damage. After five dayes ſail we were again Nadyr to the Sun, his declination being fifteen degrees North: we were then close by the Iſle in which *Goa* is ſituated. Ere long we were becalmed, whereby the air ſuddenly became inflamed, ſo as we were forced to ſweat and live like Salamanders. During which, we were likewiſe annoyed not a little by the biting of an *Indian Fly* they

they call Cacaroch, a name agreeable to its bad condition: for, living it vext our flesh; and being kill'd, smelt as loathsome as the French Punaife, whose smell is odious. This extremity continued not above a week: for then we had a fresh gale, by help whereof of the three and twentieth day we came to an Anchor at *Mangalore*, a City that ober; & the *Mallabar*. In the road we found towards forty Mallabar Men of War riding, who notwithstanding their numbers and appetite to do us mischiefe hoisted sail towards *Gos*; one onely miscarrying, that suffered the *Jonas*'s Barge to come up with her: but after variable strife by rowing and making more sail got away, yet not without some shot in her side which she unwillingly received. That night we came to an Anchor in Mount *Ely*, or *Delyne* Bay, a Port under the vassalage of the Mallabar: we rode in nine fathoms not above three being near the shore, and gladly would have landed, but durst not be too prodigal of our belief; for albeit the Natives seemed willing to have us come ashore, we knew them to be treacherous: seeing we would not trust them, they came aboard our Ships, daring to trust us; and in their Canoos brought us Cocos, Mangoes, Jacks, green Pepper, Caravane, Buffols, Hens, Eggs, and other things which we were glad to buy though not at very easie prices: but for every tun of Water less than a Ryal would not content them, albeit they had plenty; by that barbarism infringing the very Law of Nature and Nations. Accordingly the Poet brings in his Goddes blaming the Rusticks for their immanity.

Why are these waters stopt? whose use is free; *Quid prohibet Aquas? ulus communis aquarum est;*
The Sun and Air disperse to all we see: *Nec Solem proprium Natura, nec Aera fecit,*
Why not those Brook? I crave community. *Nec temus Undas; in publica munera veni.*

Nevertheless, what was wanting in Water was supplied in Fruit and other rarities; for here we had the Wood called Calambuco, a Tree much valued and used at Funerals: the richer sort have gums and odours of *Arabia* put in flames, wherein the dead body being laid is confum'd; but first involved in Linen which is pure, white, sweet and fin.; or in Taffataes of transparent finenes. Of all sorts of Wood they most affect that called *Aquila*; and next that, *Calamba* or *Calambuco*, which some think *Lignum Aloes*; much burnt in these parts at Funerals; Trees very rare, growing but in few Regions. It is very sweet and delightful to the smell, grows high and even, and is found commonly in the lofty Mountain of *Chemoy* in *Cochin-chyna*; and being rare and hardly got, the people sell at excessive rates; both in regard the Bannynans delight to have this wood in their Obsequies, and that the *Japonians* so much value it for ornament in their Houses. They imagine no Pillow wholsomer, nothing more conducing to health than that to sleep upon; extremely hating what is soft, for they find that such both heats the blood and perturbs the fancy, especially where the Countreys are torrid. Of old they used to wrap thofe dead bodies that were to be burnt or purified in the fire in that kind of Linen called *Linum vivum* or *Abeflos*, of which I have formerly spoken: I shall but add the description out of *Hierocles* treating de *veste Bracman*. *Indorum uniuersi vesti linea ex lapidibus, quod quidem texit; molia sunt lapidum stamina & membrana ex quibus pavni sunt, quis neq; igne neq; aqua expurgantur, sed cum fôrde & maculas contracterunt in flammis injecti, albescunt & incidi sunt.*

Here we had the fairest Lemons I eves saw. It is an old saying, *Omnis vita gustu ducitur*; Life is upclid by the taste of some sweetnes: give me leave therefore to name some Fruit may be worth the notice. Pappas, Cocos, Bananas, and Plantains, all very sweet and delicious: Orenge we had also store of, which may well be remembred they were so succulent and dainty, and of so curious a relish as affects the eater beyond measure; the rind also was no less pleasant than the juice, seeming to have dulcify and acrimony mixed together. The tree has not only blossoms, but green and ripe Fruit all at once; the root where the sap lies constantly conveying vegetation to the tree in thosse warm Regions. The Bananas were no less delightful: the tree is but low, yet spreads gracefully; the fruit is not unlike a Soffage for shape, but in taste is most pleasant: they ripen though you crop them immaturity; and from a dark green, turn into a bright yellow: the rind peels off easily; and the fruit being put into the mouth, dissolves and yields an incomparable relish.

The Jack grows upon a tree which is very low, yet not easie to be ascended: for shape it resembles a Pompion: without, 'tis of a yellow colour mixed with veins; but within full of golden coloured cloves, each of them being full of kernels, not unlike the largelt sort of French Bean, but somewhat more globous: the fruit hath in it a stone, which being boild the Buffols eat. The fruit is somewhat unpleasent at the first gust, which as I suppose the heat and rarenes causes; and 'tis glutinous in the mouth, but of double benefit in the stomach being restorative and good for the back, of singular use against that French Disease was brought first from the Wars at *Naples*; and in taste has some resemblance with that the *Africans* call *Cola*.

Mount Ely.

The *Ananas* is not inferior to the *Jack* in bulk, albeit the plant it spring from be no way equal: for it arises not from seed, but a Root like that of an Artichock: at maturity they rise not above two foot, whereby with less labour they enrich the gatherer: without, 'tis armed with a moistless rind which is hard but pleasant within: and though a little seem to satiate, yet experience teaches that the stomach covets it and admits an easiedigestion. The *Duroyen* resembles the *Jack*: the shape is round, and the out-side beautiful, yet that beauty exceeds not the inward vertue; for albeit at first opening it give a smell not unlike a rotten Onion which to many seems offensive, the meat nevertheless is of a whitish colour and divided into a dozen cells or partitions which are filled with stones as big as Chestnuts, white and cordial. In *Malacca* and *Java* they abound most and are worth the enquiring after; for it is a fruit both nutritive and dainty, yea, without an hyperbole an Epitome of the best and rarest fruits throughout the Orient. *Arec* and *Betel* trees are here much in use. The *Arec* tree grows very high and resembles the *Palmeto*: the wood is fuzzy and soft and hangs like shaded grapes in clusters: the fruit is shaped like a Wall-nut, and of like bigness; white within, and not easily penetrated; but like good oyl hath neither taste nor smell: for they eat it not alone, but wrap it in a leaf of *Betel* or *Betree* which hath neither flower nor moisture, and chew it in morsels. Some (as I have noted) mix with it a kind of Lime like that of Oysters-shells; which together (if they lay true) cures the cholick, removes melancholy, kills worms, purges the maws, preserves the teeth, prevents hunger, and stupifies the sense: which last vertue occasions the *Indians* Women to chew it when they go to burning with their dead Husbands.

Mount *Ely* is in 12 degrees latitude, in 55 degrees 30 minutes longitude; variation 13 degrees: A place as eminent in Hills as any other part we saw upon the coast of *India*, and limits the two rich and populous Kingdoms *Decan* and *Mallabar*. It gave this resemblance as we rode before it.



An unhappy accident happened us here, before we weighed anchor: For, on the five and twentieth day destroying at the point of the Bay a Junk of seventy Tuns fraught with merchandize and bound for *Atheen*; we could likewise perceive a *Mallabar* Pirat sculk near this Junk, which he doubted not to board being off at Sea and past our help. As accordingly fell out: for being under sail, the Man of War gave her chase: the Junk perceiving danger, chose rather to put her self under our protection than hazard the rapine of that Frigat. But her condition (with grief I speak it) was little better; for the *Jonas* boarding her with her Barge, tow'd her to our Admiral, where (after short consultation) she was adjudged prize. For my part I could not reach the offence, but this I could, (as some reported) that she had a Cargo of Cotten, Opium, Onions, and probably somewhat under the Cotten of more value, which was her crime it seems. But how the prize was distributed concerns not me to enquire; I was a passenger, no Merchant nor Informer. The Sea-men it appeared were to make what advantage they could unto themselves: for, they first gave the *Indians* that were aboard a cherlisch welcome, by which they perceived they intended to make them slaves and sell them to the *Tatars*, who usually give fifty Ryals for every Slave; which rather than suffer, three score of those poor wretches threw themselves desperately into the Sea, choosing rather to expose their Carcasses to the waves than the mercy of our Men, if I may so call it: which seem'd sport to some there, but not so to me who had compassion: nor could I be informed what provocation had been given our Men to make such a proceeding. The Canoo's from the shore shew'd them more mercy, for they saved some of them; but those our Boats took up resented our dealing so passionately as they seem'd more willing to be drown'd. That night we had terrible weather, much rain mixed with thunder and lightning. This stormy weather is usual here when the Sun is nearest and makes their summer;

Summer ; for then upon this *Indian* coast they have the greatest sign of Winter, from the Summer Solstice to the Autumnal Equinox continuing wind and rain, which makes it exceeding boisterous and unsafe to travel. These extraordinary rains are without doubt, the causes of the yearly over-flowing of the *Menan* in *Syam*, and *Suhar* in *Pegu*; as also of the two great *African* Rivers *Niger* and *Nilus*; seeing that like weather at the same Season is in the *Ethiopian* Mountains. Howbeit, those months of *June*, *July* and *August*, albeit they be stormy in *India* are the fairest months of the Year, and calmest weather in the Mediterranean and those Countries that are about that Climat. But I looked upon it then as a sign of God's displeasure. And it is well worth our observation, That whereas all *May*, *June*, *July* and *August* our Summer; and the like with all or most parts of *Europe* from the Pole Arctick to 30 degr. and more towards the Equator where it begins, the Sky is for the most part serene and the Season warm and mild; it is Winter in the Oriental Regions (in some parts stretching from the Tropick of Cancer to the Equinoctial Line) during those four months. Inasmuch as their Summer begins in *September*, such time as the Sun enters into *Libra*. For, from the mouth of the River *Indus* in 2 degr. to Cape *Comryn* in 7 degr. North latitude, all along the *Indian Coast* of *Cuzurat*, *Decan* and *Mallabar*, the Weather during those four months is exceeding stormy and outrageous through continued rain, wind, thunder and lightning; but is fair Sun-shine weather all the other 8 months : Albeit it is not so in the other Neighbouring parts of *India*. For whereas the mighty Mountain *Bellagate* (which I formerly resembled to the *Apennyn*) runs in a continued ledge of Hills crost from *Imau* to Cape *Comryn*, the utmost Cape or Promontory of *India* towards the Line; through the middle of the Continent; and, as it were, in an equidistance between the *Indian Ocean* and *Bengalaw Gulph*: It is observed by several Travellers, and by *Linfoton* amongst the rest, That in crossing the Country betwixt those Seas at the same time, on the one side that Hill they find it Summer, and find it Winter on the other. So as when it rains and blows, with dreadful thunder and flashes intermixt, all along the Coast of *Mallabar* as far as *Diu* near *Indus*, (and all those four months I lately named) no Sun appears: Contrarily on the Coast of *Chormandel*, in which are the Kingdoms of *Gulcunda*, *Narsinga* and *Visapore*, all along from the River *Ganges* to Cape *Comryn*, those Countries on that side *Bellagate* have then clear Sun-shine weather, without mixture of rain, wind or stormy weather; and yet from the Hill to either Sea is not above 100 miles : And vice versa, the seafor varies, which is very rare, the little distance duly considered. Such also as sail within the Gulph of *Persia* find the like difference for the most part, when they weather (or as Sea-men phrase, double) Cape *Rofelgate*: It being halcyon fair, mild and Sun-shine weather on that side of the *Happy Arabia* which respects *Persia*; when on the other towards the Ocean, the wind and rain bluster outrageously during all that Season: Which evidences a great influence the Planets have over the Air and Earth, and contrarieties that are in the Upper Regions.

Then we failed due South, and that evening passed by *Canavar*, *Montingue*, *Onor* and *Batticula*, which some repute part of *Canara* or *Decan*; and then by *Manzalor*, *Mandagara* of old, in which as the *Jesuits* report were seventy thousand Christians. *Calicus* called *Camunes*, and *Cochyn Colchin* in *Ptolomy* and the Bay *Sinu Colchicus*, *Cranganore*, *Cowlam*, and *Brun John*, as far as Cape *Comryn* the utmost Promontory of *India* in seven degrees and a half North, variation 14 degrees: A Cape well known of old, for it is by *Ptolomy lib. 7.* called *Cory*, by *Strabo Conomencina*, by *Pliny Calasca*, and *Comar* by *Arrbian* in his *Periplus*, and *Comara extrema* by other Geographers; but by other Cosmographers *Colaicum*, *Calligicum* and *Calingou*, where the *Maro-Calingi* are by *Pliny* seated: Howbeit at this day by the luhabitants 'tis called *Tutian Cory*. Where, ere we pass further, a little concerning the Custom, Habit and Superstition of the *Mallabars* with such as mix among them: this serving for caution,

*To observe the mode is safe; by moving much,
Religious faith oft gets a doubtful touch.*

*Observeare modum laus est; nimiumq; movendo
In dubium trahitur religiosa Fides.*

MALLABAR is at this day a great and famous part of *India* stretching along from *Batticula* a Port under 14 degr. to Cape *Comryn*, which is about 7 degrees North from the Equinoctial: about four hundred miles in length, but in breadth no where above a hundred, which some reduce to fifty, that is, from that ridge of Hills we call *Bellagate* to the Western Ocean: so populous, that the *Samoryn* of *Calicut* is able upon occasion to take the Field with 200000 Men to oppose the *Narsinga*, the *Decan*, or *Gulcunda* Kings, his powerful Neighbours. His Country is most of the Year verdant and abounding with Cattel, Corn, Cotton, Silk-worms, Pepper, Ginger, Tamarind, Cassia, Cardagome, Rice,

Rice, Myrobalans, Anana's, Pappa's, Melons, Dates, Coco's and other Fruits; and boasts also of several defensive Towns and Harbours as *Coulam*, *Cochyn*, *Calicut*, *Mangalore*, &c &c, and to say truth, the Ocean it self forty leagues into the Sea is all along the Indian shore so anchorable and so secure that the Roads it affords are comparable to Harbours in some other places. But for the better understanding such part of the *East-Indies* as is on this side *Ganges*, this small Map will serve to direct the eye to the most remarkable places, especially such as I shall have occasion to speak of.



And first of *Mallabar*: A well known Region upon the Western part of that great Continent, and subdivided into sundry petty Toparchies, which are subordinate to the Great *Samoren*: a naked *Negro*, but not a little putt up by being the Principal *Brahman*, and no les tyrannical than proud; and not so much by provocation, as wicked practice: which the People are so used to, that they are the les sensible of that bondage.

The *Nayres* are his *Magnates*: They exercise no less Authority over their inferiors than the *Samoreen* doth over them; being freely tolerated an arbitrary liberty, Life excepted; and withal are so extremely libidinous as, no part in the World affords a more obscene Generation: their beastly appetite not so much provoked by the heat as by the

Art

Art and Dic^t they invent towards provocation. Amongst others, they have the *Deutros* in special request; both for that it contributes towards the accomplishing their corrupt ends, and with that security and mode as heightens their recreation. An Herb or Drug it is which being infused or otherwise prepared and taken, has a marvellous force: For it is not so much of a soporiferous quality to procure sleep, as to stupifie and infatuate the Intellect; since the patient or rather abused party sometimes appears merry as if a *Tarantula* had infected him, and hath his eyes open, but sees no otherwise than if a *guita siren* or heated Steel had deprived the optique; so as during the operation the Nayro many times makes that his opportunity to visit and act his Amours, whilsts the good man by that delusive spell is rendered a ridiculous spectator, and seemingly an ascensor to their machantries. I confess I never saw it practised, but related by *Lynschoten* and other such as may be credited.

Maffaus in his belief That these Nayroes are of the cast of the *Cutteries* one of the descendants of *Pouros* and *Parcouy* in the foregoing discourse more fully mentioned, is not amiss; or in the report That they are generally proud and lazie, usually go armed, and will not abate one jot of the common ornament of thos Oriental parts, which is to beautifie or rather load their arms and necks with Silver bracelets, ropes of Pearl and other effeminate pieces of bravery: and so stately, that they expect more than ordinary respect; as appears in passing through a Crowd, only by striking his Sword upon his Target makes that voice serve both to express his Dignity and to obtain a speedy and clear passage. *Theret Vertoman* and *Paulus Venetus* go further, saying That an inferiour person dare not look them in the face or appear within fifty paces. But this is more certain, That as the Sword awes the indefencive Villager, so custom has enslaved them in such sort, that in Peace the common people seem daftardly, but in War are found spirited. Nor would one think otherwise, when he takes the prospect of their visage and limbs, which express both ingenuity and strength sufficient.

Of colour, they are rather black than olivaster: their hair crisps, but grows longer than the *Africans*. And albeit they wear their hair, yet conform they to the mode of Shashes: for, about their Temples they wreath a curious sort of linnen sometymes wrought with Silk and Gold. Their waife is circled with a piece of Callico; but from the thigh downward, and from the middle upwards are naked. The vulgar wear about their waife a party-coloured Plad, and pink their skin. The Women vail themselves like other *Indians*. Their greatest pride is expressed in the adorning their ears and noses; supposing them most courtly who dilacerate their ears widest (which they effect by many ponderous baubles they hang there,) and ring their snouts with Jewels of Silver, Brabs, or Ivory; their arms and legs also are richly chained.

Concerning their Marriages, formerly it was the custom That the *Bracman* had the first nights company with the Bride, supposing the ground of better value by that holy seed, as they call it: a practise now wholly abrogated. And which was no les rare, the Samoreen to make sure work used to confer his Command upon his Sisters issue; assured it seems that she was of his blood and they of his by consequence.

The men are more addicted to Arms than Arts. The *Portugals* at their first intrenching on their shore thought them a very simple sort of people because unlearned; and easie to be overcome because most were naked: but both deceived them; for Nature instructed them in their own defence, and long contest with the *Portugals* taught them experience, so as in short time they learned how to use their bow and arrow, darts and targets; and of late years have attained the Art of making Hand-granadoes and other Fire-works; where-in they are pregnant, and of which they have such store that they proffered us as much and of what sorts we would for money. Their Country abounds with Minacras and Stones of price, and no part is without plenty of fruit and other provision: Howbeit, the Land (especially near the Sca-shore) we could perceive was woody and mountainous. And in those which divide *Mallabar* from the Kingdom of *Narsinga* are many wild Beasts that make the way perillous; especially Serpents which have wings and feet, if report speak truth: *Mons dividens regnum Narsinga à Mallabar nurit multus serus, pricipue alatos Dracones, qui in arboribus versant, & pedes habent, &c.* Olor.

Moll of the people in their diet abstain from Flesh, Wine, yea Wine-Vinegar, and Strong-water; not allowing themselves the liberty of Radish-roots, Onions, Garlick, or other roots and herbs that have a tincture of red, a resemblance of blood; so very strict they be to rules deduced from the Shafer and the example of their precise Ancestors; contenting themselves with Milk, Rice, Sugar, Herbs and Fruits of several sorts and Spices: for they are of the *Bamyan* persuasion, who have a detestation against any that for preservation of their own will take away the life of another. *Ovid* 15 *Metamorph.* has this in their Apology.

Quam male confuerit, quam se parat illa crux
Inipiis humano? Virtu qui guttura cultro
Rumpit; & immotis pectori mugitur aures;
Aut qui vagitus simili puerilibus hoodum
Edentem jugulari potest, aut alite vesci
Cui dedit ipse cibos quantum est quod deit in istis
Ad plenius lacum, quis transitus iste paratur?

To shed the blood of Man
How wickedly is he prepar'd? who can
Asunder cut the throat of Calves, and bears
The bellowing breeder with relentless ears.
Or silly Kids, (which like poor Infants cry)
Stick with his Knive; or his voracity
Feed with the Fowl he fed. Oh! to what ill
Are they not prone, who are so prone to kill?

Palling from thence, we came afore

C A L L I C U T (ten leagues from that place where our men took the prize forementioned) thought by some to be that Town *Ptolomy* calls *Cimhaپیا*, a City in 23 degrees, an eniour broached by *Niger* and *Berina*. Above a thousand years ago it was called *Callicaris*; then of some note, but not so well known as now; and had increased her fame by more trade had she prospered better against the continued differences it had with the *Portugal*: who when they could not conquer by force (as *Seleucus* did with *Babylon*) ruined her by policy; for they transferred their Mart and Staple to other Towns; by which removal in small time this City became poor and desolate. It declines from the Equator towards the North-pole eleven degrees, and from its standing in the burning Zone must needs be at some time of the year insipidaceous. The earth is but meanly fruitful in grafts; nevertheless, her Gardens by industry and help of some Books are most part of the year verdant and redundant in variety of fruits and flowers. The City of it self is large, but of small elegancy in building: for the houses are low, thick and dark, and the streets narrow: The Harbour is a pretty way distant from the Town, and but indifferent to anchor in: yet shews the remains of two strong Forts which were raised about the year 1515. by the *Portuguez*, in a fort demolished since by the *Mallabar*. The Samoore in this place has his usual abiding: a Prince of great power and awe, and not more black of colour than treacherous in disposition.

Many deformed Pagoda's are here worshipped; having this ordinary evanion, That they adore not idoli; but the Deemo's they represent: most of which at one time or other have been defaced and destroyed by the *Portugal*. The Chappel where the grand *Cuo Deumo* used to sit, was uncovered, and about three yards high: the wooden entrance was engraven with hideous shapes: within, their beloved *Prasipus* was enthroned upon a mount. *Oculo mirabile Monstrum*; for upon his head he wore a Diadem, whence issuing four great Rams horns such as *Jupiter Ammon* in memory of the Ram that conducted *Bacchus* and his female Army through those Deserts was represented, and being distressed for want of water had it given (upon his prayer to *Jupiter*) by a stroke of the Rams Foot upon a Rock, and if not that, typing out some other mystery. His eyes were small and squint; his mouth large and opening like a Port-cullice, from whence branched four great tusks; but his nose was flat; his beard spread like the rays of the Sun; his hands resembled the claws of a Vulture; his thighs and legs were strong and hairy; feet and tail most like that of a Monkey: which put together, rendered the Devil not unlike himself, wickedly formed, and the Men beyond measure gross Idolaters. Other Temples they had, studded with other Pagods of like prodigious deformity; ugly all, yet all differing as to invention: for some of them were painted black, others red; some devouring fowls; and usually such as were in Hell were white ones. These are of the old stamp; for they seem to threaten or otherwise to express satisfaction in mens offerings: but what they could not do, their Chemarins effected; for, each morn the Priest (a Jogue) perfumes and washes them: It seems the Devil ever leaves a filthy smell behind, being his manner of benediction. Every new Moon their custom was to sacrifice a live Cock, the symbol of ill and courage which they found in themselves predominating. At this ceremony the Priest was pontifically attired in Lawn, armed with a sharp silver Knive, his arms and legs garnished after the *Monico* mode with Bells or round silver plates which made a jingling: and after he had sacrificed the yielding Cock, and filled his hands with Rice, goes retrograde, not daring to look upon any other object save his idol; till being come near an Acherontic lake, suddenly he turns about and disembowels his offering: after which, he advances his hands some times above his head, and so returns, supposing that his Holiest dust was accepted. The Samoore used not to eat till it were first offered, and so acknowledged as food sent him from his Deumo: what he leaves, is not given the Poor; for it is the Crows pittance: good reason too, They think them his servitors. The people to this day (as they suppose) retain some in commendable customes: for they exchange their Wives: nor seem the Women displeased at it, Polygamy is so tolerable

or

or rather acceptable: but in this they differ from other libidinous Law-givers; as the men have many Wives, so one woman here is allowed many husbands, and the wife bequeathed as she nominates. The old custom of the World is here retained, in the sedde and Palmeto leaves they use for paper, the pen being then a stile of iron, but now a hardened piece of wood cut sharp. Thence we passed by

COWLAM a Town and Province called *Sopaps* in *Arlyan*, and *Colay* in *Prolomy* who places it in 13 degrees, but we found it in 9 degrees North, included in the Travanzorian Kingdom. Once it obeyed the Narlungan Monarch, and once the Millaar, but at this day neither. About two hundred years ago, the Town was rich, and great and populous; traded to by many *Indous*, enlarged by the Samoyu, and able to number a hundred thousand inhabitants; of such repute it then was for situation, trade, and industry of the Cowlamites. But now, the period of her excellency is outworn; for *Calicut* in fl., and then *Goa* have not only monopolized but attracted the trade of this as well as other parts the coastlands.

Now albeit I have mentioned the *Zambyas* in sundry places as I meet with them; here also all along this coast I find they swarm in multitude, sucking in the sweetnes of gain by an immeasurable thirst and industry; but *sic vos non vobis*, for it is ravished from them by Drones, the Moors and Gentiles lording it over them. Alas! the Basman is no swa- gerer, no royster: he abhors domineering and fighting; yea, suffer himself to be fleeced by any man, rather than risst or shed blood by breach of peace or making the least opposition; they love no tumult, no innovation; are content to submit rather than govern, and with all were of their mind; that is to say, morally honest, courteous in behaviour, temperate in pallion, decent in apparel, abstemious in dyet, industrious in their calling, charitable to the needy, humble, merciful, and as innocent as not to take away the life of the unoffender, and no marvel, seeing that if they should defile any living thing, thereby they might dislodge their friends of a peaceful Mantion, or devoure the souls of such as were dearest to them: for as I have elsewhere noted, they verily credit the transmutation or pallage of souls into beasts. A perswasion how strange soever it be to us, was not so of old to our Countreymen the *Druide*; who not only believed the immortality of the souls of men, but after separation from the body that they passed from one man unto another. *Ovid* seemeth to allude unto it,

*Let's home, and in our beds our bodies bide,
Where happily our Parents may abide,
Our Brothers, or some by Alliance tied:
One man or other sure!*

inq[ue] ferias
Possumus ire domos, periculum in e[st]rema condit;
Corpora qua possunt animas h[ab]uisse Parentum,
Aut fratrum aut aliquo junctorum tecere nobis,
Aut hominum certe!

But the Countrey is not wholly overspread with these Gentiles; for amongst them here and there are scattered Christians: yea, the Jesuits report, that anno Dom. 1554. 'twixt *Cowlam* and this Cape were then above twenty Villa's of S. Thomas Christians. More certain it is, their Ancestors were converted by S. Thomas the Apostle; for both here and most other parts of the habitable World the Apostles without all doubt divulged the glad tidings of salvation, as fore told by the Prophet *David*, P.al. 10. *There is no Speech nor Language where their voice is not heard: their sound is gone into all Lands, and their words unto the ends of the World.* *Martian* also gives this attestation.

*As when the Flood o'refresh'd, old careful Noe
His Sons desir'd throughout the World, to shew
The Law of God, and sacred rites to pay:
So when our Saviour would no longer stay
On Earth, a m[an]y o[ur] of his Scholars he
To th' utmost boundes of th' Earth with Charter free
Doth make, & instruct the World b[ut]h how to pray,
And to appease God w[th]th w[th] sacred Lay.*

*Sicut aquis, quondam Noe sua misit in orbem
Pignora fidaris, ut Gen[us] humana per omnes
Debita coelum Patri daret orygna terras;
Sic Iua cum vellet Deus alta in regna reverti;
Discipulos quosdam transmisit ad ultima Mundii
Littora; docturos Gentes quo Numina ritu
Sint ornanda, quibus Coelum placabile facis.*

and accordingly, History abundantly acquaints us that in both the *Afars* the Gospel was thoroughly preached: but for their ingratitude removed, and through the subtlety of Satan that cruel Law of *Alahomet* hath since infected these parts, so as it hath spread it self almost through all the Oriental Islands and Continent. Notwithstanding which, Christ has his flock; which though scattered, in due time will be gathered. For in *Perse* are many thousand; and in *India* a no less multitude: nevertheless, compared with other Idolaters, but a handful: Which mult not discourage, seeing 'tis better go to Heaven alone,

than to Hell with a multitude. *Arnobius* of old could say, *Nationibus enim est nos summa Christiani*: Some Christians are found in every Nation. And we find in many chiefly Maritime Towns of India, that Name of late years has been honoured; and that in Meliapore, Nagara, Cooram, Cucurran, Chirigan, Bipur, Tavor, Rattacala, Onor, Cranganor, Goa and other Places, Christianity is own'd; yea, in many of the Indian Isles some are found. And one reason is, for that among Mahometans liberty of Conscience is allow'd: agreeable to an *Azwar* in the *Alcoran*, which declares That none are to be dissuaded from the Religion they suckt from their cradle: which gains Christians peaceful Habitacions, and inclines them to live without disturbing the publick.

Now these Indian Christians have sundry Ceremonies and Forms of long time practised amongst themselves, differing from those the Papacy use, or the Reformed Churches of Europe. Their Churches are low and poorly furnished; yet neat they are and sweetly kept; matted, and without painted Images, which the Greek Churches abound with. They assemble cheerfully, and at their entring shut their eyes, the better to contemplate the Exercise they come about, with their own unworthinesses: kneeling they look towards the Altar, near which the Priest is seated: Him they salute with humble reverence; who returns his blessing by the up-lifting of his hands and eyes: and at a set hour begins Prayers, seldom exceeding two hours in the whole Exercise. First, a brief confession is made, not unlike that in our Liturgie, and all end too in an unanim *Amen*. After that, follows an Exposition of some part of Scripture: during which their attention, looks, and silence is commendable. They sing a Hymn, and at parting out of the Church re-sainte the Minister: who ceaseth not to elevate his hands till all the People be departed. At home they usually read a Chapter in either Testament, both which they suppose they have import after the Originals, translated for them by Saint Thomas the Patron of the Orient: The *Chutace* also is not unknown, but few save the Clergy understand what is writ in any other than their Mother-tongue: for their Schools are few, and only teaches them to read; being without Academies or Instructors in Philoerphy or other like learning. Every first Sunday in the month the Priest reads a Homily, wit (as they say) by the Apostle or some of his Disciples. They baptize commonly at the fortieth day, if the Parent desire it not sooner: they sign the fore-head with the Cross, and then wash all over with Water. The Lord's Supper they administer in both kinds, and Communicants receive it kneeling: they observe two dayes preparation, during which they eat no flesh, revel not, nor accompany with Women; and in the Church, if need be, make their Confession. The Clergy marry but once, the Laity twice; Widdows if they marry before the year he expired are ill reported of. None save in case of adultery have licence to divorce. In sickness the Priest is usually sent for, both to pray and give the *Luctuosity*, if desired: Which done, they take a long farewell of Wife, Children and others; and so rid themselves of worldly distractions, which too oft hinder that last great work; so as by a contemplation of the joyes of Heaven they strive to mitigate the grim aspect of approaching death. Being dead the survivors rather joy than mourn; and having first washed the Corps they afterwards wrap it in clean linnen. Friends accompany him to the Grave, and place the Body with the head West, either in respect of *Jerusalem* or the old local place of Paradise: Five dayes after they visit the Family. Feast and fast as we accustome: their Lent begins in the Spring, and is observed forty dayes. Their Year is, the *Solarian*. Our three chief Festivals they celebrate; the first of July they also commemmorate the Martyrdom of Saint Thomas. They have many *Protomis*, the chief of which used to reside at a House built upon a Mountain nine miles from Cranganor: but since the Portugals have planted India have their heads. Laicks pay their Deemas, affect Justice, profess Truth, practise humility, and believe no Purgatory.

May - we had eight degrees; 'c're Sun-set we were close by the high Mountain called *Brim-John*, i.e. the Mount of John, a Cambrian word; but when, or by whom imposed, is past my finding. Next day we had 7 degrees 30 minutes, variation 13 degrees: than which place that famous Promontory of East-India called *Cape Comryu* (*Tamus* by Mela) extends no further South towards the Equator. The next we failed by the *Maldive*, Isles memorized by *Tyrard de Laval*, who reports that the King styles himself Emperour of thirteen Provinces, and twelve thousand Islands, *Jerome de Sauto Stephano* makes them eight thousand: the most and least any King in the World (the Spaniard excepted) is owner of. Several of them little other than Rocks and Mountains: according to the Poet, *Innumeris surgunt scopuli montesq; per alium*. Near these are the Isles of *Candu*, *Nicubar* and *Sumatra*, in view of *Zeylon* and *Sumatra*: all of them abound with Date-trees or Palms; of old so celebrated that both Spiritual and Temporal Victors have it in their Triumphs. *Palma, Martribus est suavis ad cibum, Ambrosia ad requiem, honorabilis ad Triumphum; Arbor semper*

semper vires, semper vestita folis, semper parata Victoria, saith Saint Ambrose very elegantly in its praises. So excellent (saith Sir Walter Raleigh) that wherein soever the Earth, Nature and Sun can most vaunt that they have excelled, yet shall this Palm be the greatest wonder of all their works. This Tree alone giving unto Man whatsoever his Life begingeth at Nature's hand. I imagine he means the Coco tree rather than the Date, which most take for the Palme. The Poet also notes it, in saying

The noble Palm which high doth rise,
Equals Great Men with Deities.

Palmaq; n.d. iis
Terrarum Dominos exicit ad Deos.

Thence our course was by

ZEYLOON, one of those five Isles Ptolomy calls Baruffa, albeit Cluverius thinks the Phillipine to be them, not unknown unto the Ancients if that which Ptolomy called Panigarenis; and since him by Arabian Authors Sifwara, Tenaris, Navigatis and Sancub. But at this day 'tis called Chingal by the Inhabitants: who are a very comely People, having good features, and nothing like the African save in colour. Besides, they are ingenious, and excel in the Mechanick Arts. The better for wear silks, but the vulgar are naked from the waist upwards. Now this place muſt needs be hot, seeing 'tis so near the Equinoctial: severed from the Asiatick Continent by a Sea which is not forty leagues over: limited from eight to eleven degrees North latitude; the length is about seventy leagues, breadth forty, and circuit two hundred and fifty or thereabout. Famous through some old erroneous conjectures, That this was Paradise; and that Solomon had hence his Gold of Ophyr: But in regard all or most fix the ruins of the one in Mesopotamia, and the other in Malacea or thereabouts, that Tradition is of little credit. But that Melce Pyramidal King of this Island, was one of those Magi, Wise-men or Kings (pre-monitored by that Prophecie of Balaam the Edomite) that as to a King, Priest and Prophet, offer'd Gold, Frankincense and Myrrhe unto our Bleſſed Saviour; fore told alio by the Persian Sibyl and by a new Star as by the singer of God miraculously directed, is the Tradition of this place; and also that at his return he made known the myſtery of God's Incarnation for Man's Redemption, and by his labours teaching, many Profelytes: which come to this very day maintain for truth. But more certain it is, the seeds of Christian knowledge have there been sown, whence sprung Profefſors, though the greatest part are ſince turned Apostates. Howbeit, this is obvious in History; That Candace's Eunuch baptizeth Philip preached Christ in many parts of Arabia and ſundry Isles thereabouts, and India alio; as Socotra this, and Taprobane or Sumatra; if Dorotheus Bishop of Tyre who lived in the days of the great Constantine had good Authority for the reporting it.

In Claudius Cesar's time ſome of the Natives of this Island having made ſome shift to cross over into Malabar travelled through Persia unto Rome; where albeit they pretended ſome knowledge in Aſtronomy and the Sphere, bewray'd their ignorance by admiring to oblige the Sun contrary to what it was ſeen to be at Zeylon, *Solem levia oriri mirantur* are the words of the Historian: which by the Romans might equally be wondred at, ſeeing that thoſe Indians by being within the burning Zone have their shadows on both ſides according as the Sun makes his progreſs to either Tropick. Nevertheless probable it is, what understanding theſe Zeylonians had was borrow'd from the Gymnophiſts who had their light from Zoroaſter the moſt ancient and in his time the moſt excellent Philoſopher: He lived full five hundred years before the Trojan War, ſaith Suidas, and was the firſt that gave Name to the Magi of Persia; Zoroaſter, Perſo-Medus Sapientis apud eos qui in Afronmia excelluerunt, etiam qui primus dedit Nomen eis Magis quae civiliſt. triclinariū: 4 libros ſcripsit de Natura: 5 de Afroſcoopia, & unum de preioſis lapidibus, &c. And Picus Mirand. ad Ficinum de Dogmati Chaldaica Theologie; Tun Perſum, Cræcorum & Chaldeorum in illam Divina & locupletissim. tui r. avit, &c. And albeit at C. bar I had occation to ſpeak more largely concerning theſe Oriental Philoſophers, I ſhall not add that testimony which Porphyrius gives concerning their definition and the nature of their Learning, Apud Perſas (ſaith he) qui circa Divina ſunt Sapientes, corung, Cultores, Magi appellantur. Hoc enim propria Dialecto eis Regionis, Magus significat. Howbeit, the honour of the firſt European diſcovery we owe to Laurentius the Son of Almyda, who about the year 15. o firſt arrived here, but did not alter the Name from what the Natives called it. At preſent it is over-run with tinking weeds of Heathenſm: For, as is ſaid of another place,

Here, grow theſe heaps of Errors, which we ſee
Of all uncleanness and Idolatry.

Hic, errorum cumulus; hic, omniſpucit
Hic, infelix populus gaudet Indolatria.

So great, that scarce any Village or Mount without its inanimate Pagod, their supposed Deities or *Mali Genii*; such as *Lactantius* and *Prudentius* describe, *Cum portis, domine, thermis, stabulis, solcatis assignare nos Genios perq; omnia membra Urbis perq; locos Genitorum milia multa fingere*: And are to observe, that *Genii locorum sunt Demones*. Amongst others, (which I mention only for the impotency) was that infamous *Hannuman* or Apes-tooth God which was highly esteemed and resorted to by millions of *Indians*, till *Constantine* a late *Joan Vice-roy* landing five hundred men at *Columbo* first forcibly took away that Apish Idol; and albeit the Idolaters proffered a vast ransom of three hundred thousand Rupees he burned it to ashes: his zeal against that gross impurity expressing therein a sacred indignation. Notwithstanding, a crafty *Bannyan* so well forged another counterfeit, as was believed by the *Jogues* to be the same (willing to be deluded;) thereby exceedingly enriching himself, and joying not a little these simple *Zeylonians*.

Another was that not far from *Mattatala*, conspicuous in its standing: concerning which, the *Singales* and *Jogues* report, That many years ago *Johna* their King nourished a conceit, That this *Diabolo* was no better than a senseless Idol: But lo, a *Jogue* (*Vocatus imperial arte Ditis*) by the Devil's craft so wrought, that upon a time when *Johna* entered he beheld (as he thought) the Pagod breath out fire, his eyes seeming to be coloured with rage and the Scimiter in his hand wrathfully bent against him; at which, the amazed King cries out for help, accuses his infidelity; and having satisfied for his error, ever after became a zealous Idolater. The place where this grand Pagotha stood was enveloped with a Cloud of Arms for its defence: And not without good reason, seeing it was their belief, That upon the fall of that Idol the final ruine of the Universe should immediately follow by fire or otherwise. Now (without any countenancing that impotency) that the World shall be consumed, is credited; but not till he that made it shall please to order the dissolution. *Lucritius* hath that observation, *Inq, brevi spatio mutantur Secula Animantium, &c. c.* And the like another *Roman* Poet,

E sic quoque in Tatis reminiscitur auro Tempus, *The Time shall come, when Sea, when Land, when all*
Quo Mare, quo Tellus, correptam regia Culi *The Heavens vast moving Regions burning shall*
Ardeant, & Mundi meles operata labent. *Consume, and to their ancient Chaos fall.*

Certo die & hora a suo decimeti, nec hominibus tantum sed oppidis, terris, elementis, & quicquid nec nos suspirnet, magno illo die vertetur & peribit. And albeit of the ancient Heathens we may say, They had some seeming devotion, drawn from the very dictates of Nature like those mentioned in *Rom. 2. 14.* who had a Law written in their hearts; so as it was a Maxim, There was not any who had not some spark of civility to man, and zeal to some one or other Deity: that principle nevertheless now seems extinguished amongst the Gentiles we meet with in these Regions.

Upon *Columbo's* high peak a place dearly bought by the *Portugal*) was shewed and credited the foot-steps of old *Adam*: born and buried here if we will believe them. Here also they shew a Lake of Salt water upon a high hill, said to be no other but the tears afflaid *Eve* shed a hundred years together for the loss of her righteous Son *Abel*. A Cabala, how strange soever it be, Friar *Oderic of Friuli* not only believes but vehemently persuades others to give credit to it. The foil is good and abounds with sundry sorts of Spices; as Pepper, Ginger, and the like; but in most plenty with *Cinamon*, which gave the occasion to *Ptolomy* and *Sirabo* to call it *Cinamomifera regio*. *Cianion* is a precious bark; the Tree is straight, and the branches are no way ruinous but grow in comely order. It resembles the Olive Tree in height, but the leaves are more like the Bay or Orange. The blossoms are exactly white; the fruit globous, hard, and dark coloured. It is apparellled with a thick rind, which in Summer (when it may best discover its Virgin nakedness) 'tis dressed of, and by the churlish Peasant cut in many pieces; and being hardened in the Sun, so gathered. I might here present you many other rarities this noble Isle affords; as Oranges, Dates, Coco's, Anana's, Plantanes and Maltick (which *Coriat* erroneously believed grew nowhere but in *Syo*.) Elephants, Buffaloes, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, &c. Smaragd, Rubies, balsas Diamonds, Amber-griefe, and the like; which gave the *Dunes* a fair invitation for commerce unto this place, their Ships usually riding near the Port of *Candy*: and put together seemed so attractive to the victorious Lusitanian *Almeyda*, that in despite of her united Heptarchy he landed *An. Dom. 1506.* and for *Emanuel* his King exacted an Annual Tax of two hundred and fifty thousand pound weight of their best *Cinamon*, which *Sonja* began to load away the third year after: But the King, more rich than crafty) to shew how little he regarded the loss of so much useles barks of Trees, and to set a better

better edge upon the appetite of the *Portugal*, one day he invited them to see him walk upon a Tarras arrayed in an imbroidered Coat thick powdered with Gold, Smaragds, Pearl and Diamond, all together darting out rayes of wonderful lustre : to which albeit the Sun wanted not to increase the splendor, yet as if that were not enough, in the night season five hundred Flambeauxes or Torches were (as Story says) put in flames to make this Prince seem a greater object of astonishment: but it rather was as a *Corpo Santo*. For forthwith *Silveira* judging the cost and labour well worth his pains built a Cittadel there under pretence to aid them against the *Mallabar* Junks, but rather to be his Jewel-keeper : for in short time he so purfied the King that he became a Ravisher of what he had ; and by a forced nakednesse learned him a future better way of politick bravery.

Garcias ab Horto Phylician to the *Goan* Vice-Roy reports, That the King ufed to be served in dishes of Loadstone; not onely for the rarity, but medicinable vertue thereof, as having a power to discover poyson and continue Youth. Store of Pearl-Oysters have been taken twixt Cape *Comryn* and *Zeyloon* of good value: and here is no want of gold; but the King thinks not that so valuable as to be served in Porcellane dishes and other materials.

From *Zeyloon* we hoise sail for some eminent Ports and Maritime parts of *India*, Lorded by black but daring *Pagans*. The *Mouyl* has incircled within his Diadem many of those noble Kingdoms or Provinces; the reft, the *Decan*, *Samoreen*, *Narfangan*, *Peguan*, *Syamite* and others : but the chiefeſt Iſles neighbouring this we laſt landed at are *Sumatra*, the *Jave*, *Borneo*, the *Manelie*, the *Celebes*, *Molucoes*, *Banda*, *Amboyna*, *Philippine* or *Boruffe*, &c. which I ſhall briefly ſpeak of: and in order therunto, firſt of the Coat of

CHORMANDEL (*Ptolomy* calls it *Cartagardenna*) which ſtretches above three hundred leagues from Cape *Comryn* under eight degrees North towards the extreamum of *Ganges* or the *Argarie* Gulph, which now we call the Gulph of *Bengala*, *Magnum Gangis* ſetim in *Ptolomy*, as far as *Charighan* under 22 degr. North. Upon that Coat are ſundry Towns of note, viz. *Negapatam*, *Meliapore* (the Burial-place of Saint *Thomas* the Apostle of *India*, and of Saint *Bartholomeus* ſay some, but miſtaken in that Tradition, ſeeing Eccleſiaſtical Story leaves him buried at *Albanopolis* in *Armenia*.) *Polycaſt*, *Armagan*, *Narsinge*, *Melipatan*, *Biplipatan* and ſundry more; in ſome of which the *English*, in others the *Dutch* have Factories. Here *Strabo* places the *Aſſacani*, from which ſome from the congreuity of Name derive the *Aſſassin*; whose wicked Tenets have rendred them in more than Name not to be mentioned. Now concerning *Ganges*, (which one (how truly I know not) fayes was called *Chiara*;) probably ſome River running into *Ganges*: or as it may be named in thoſe or ſome other obscure places) amongſt Rivers is ſecond to none: For, after a flux of three thouſand miles, having increaſed her Channel by fifty other Rivers that run into her, which for above an hundred miles double the breadth that *Euphrates* bears at old *Babylon*, and thrice its depth, divides *India* in two, branches it ſelf into ſeveral ſtreams, and has many noted Towns built upon her banks, affording them Earth and Water as good as any, and by the *Bannians* held ſacred, as *Lucan l. 3.* albeit miſtaken in its course, takes notice.

Sacred Ganges onely croſt doth run
Of any River to the Rifeſ Sun.

Qua colitur Ganges toto qui
ſolus in Orbe, &c.

At length under the ſame Tropick with the River *Indus*, in five great mouthes or *Oſſia*, of old called *Cambiyum*, *Magnum*, *Cambericum*, *Pſeudotomum* and *Antibolum*, diſembogues it ſelf into the *Bengala* Gulph, as I have a little before mentioned; and then into the Indian Sea: the ſea being the ſtore-house of all Rivers, *In quo definiuntur, & in quo curri-
mus omnes*, *Ovid. de Poeno*. The *Bannians* have the water of *Ganges* in that divine eſteeme, that in deadly fits they covet to have their mouths wet with it, imagining that the Rock whence it firſt flows bears the figure or ſhape of a horned Cow, a creature with them of a ſingular reſpect; albeit a fancy others are alſo taken with, as appears by the River *Po*, according as *Virgil lib. 4. Georg.* mentions; and as might be iuſtanced of other places: agreeable to what the ancient Poets feigned of the Ocean, which from the noise it makes they reſembled to a Bulls head, and thence called it *Tauriceps*.

NEGAPATAN (i. e. a Town upon the River *Nega*) has 12 degrees latitude North, odd minutes; is in a Climat hot and unwholeſome, both in regard the wind and rains there are for ſome part of the year high and unfeafonable. The Town nevtheleſs has good water, fruits well reliſhed and no leſs nutritiv: notwithstanding the People are much vexed with Feayers, Fluxes and other diſtempers; blockiſh they be, and unapt for Study or Exercice: Heat indeed here predominates, probably debilitates their appetitie, and

and invites them too much to easie, the mother of Luxury : A small thin but fine Shuddery Veil of Lawn they draw afore their secret parts ; their head has a small wreath about the rest being exposed to view and all sorts of weather. They want no gold, stones of value, nor such things as the Merchant covets ; for but few years since they prized them little better than we do trifles. Here any Religion is tolerable ; and *Virgil's Omniaquæm, Deum Monstra* seems translated hither. But the manner of their Marriages is extraordinary : For many times the Priest with a Cow, and the Man and Woman go together to the Water side ; where the *Bramyn* first mutters a short prayer, and then links their hands about the Cows tail, pours upon them all his hallowed Oyl, and lastly forces the beast into the River, whereinto he goes willingly so far as till they be to the middle in Water : neither returns she nor do they dis-unite till the waves advise them : when being on shore they untie, and hold that mysterious tie forcible and sacred ever after. Mr. Finch the Merchant in his travels through these parts makes the like obseruation. The *Heathen* are averse to Law, and also to Morality ; as if in a malignant sort they resisted the very liberty of Nature for their preservation, as *Plut. in Alexand.* — *Et quod Natura remittit Invida juri contumacem* : as also may be observed by *Dendamy* the Indian expostulating with *Alexander* against *Pythagoras*. Suitable to which the People upon this allow the *Bramans* Wives the liberty to burn with their dead Husbands : So that Death having cut in two their Union, the relict conceits her self a loathed Carcass ; and revolting to make her self an Holocaust, robes her Body with a transparent Lawn ; her arms, legs and thighs also are fettered with chains expressing love ; but her ears, nose and fingers are adorned with Pearl and precious Stones : with one hand she holds a Nose-gay of flowers, in the other a ball ; both which are emblems of Paradise. She is attended with a great number, some accompanying her for love, others for civility, but most for her encouragement and honour of the Ceremony : the Priest all the way he goes describes the joys he is to possess, and the assurance she has to enjoy her Husband speedily in *Elysium* : she returns a modest smile, trips on, chawing something in her mouth that intoxicates her brain, and upon sight of the flame seems transported with satisfaction. So soon as she sees the Carcass of her Husband laid upon a pile and the fire burn, like a mad Lover she whirls about the pit, and having bid Farewel to Parents, Children, and Friends, livilingly incorporates with the fire ; which quickly makes them one in ashes : Musick of sundry sorts, and acclamations of Spectators yell aloud at the same instant, both for the greater honour of the Obsequy, and that the screeches of the poor Wretch may not be heard, whereby others may be disengaged. It seems the *Roman Poets*, though at a great distane, had some prospect of it, by this funeral Song they have warbled out in their memorial :

*Ei certamen habent lethi, qui viva sequatur
conjugium ; puder est non licuisse mori.
Ardent viétrices, & præbent pectora flammæ ;
imponuntq; suis ora perulta viri.*

*They strive to die, and who best speed shall make ;
They blush, grim Death so slowly to o'retake.
The Conquerors burn, their breasts yield to the fire,
And to their Husbands their burnt lips aspire.*

Now albeit some Women of this perswasion living under a *Mahometan* Prince being denied this liberty to burn their Bodies with their Husbands Corps, have been known of late years to make themselves away ; yet others more wife and less valuing a place in the Catalogue of those fiery Zealots, do refuse to burn : but in such cases, by way of ignominy they are commanded to shave their heads, and to sequester themselves from company ; which is a punishment. Howbeit, this custom of burning is much more ancient with Men amongst the *Bramans* of those parts than with the other Sex : for with the later it came not in practice until several of their Husbands were made away by poyson, which their lascivious Wives would frequently administer upon giving them distaste, or other slight provocation : for prevention whereof, this *Draco's Law* was devised and enjoyn'd the Re-lict : And though in its institution it seem'd severe, it was to deter them from that wicked practice, which long custom hath made familiar and reputabla. We find it so recorded by *St. Hierome lib. 1. ad Jovinian.* and *Aelian* in his *Var. Hist. lib. 7. c. 8.* But amongst Men much more old, as I might instance from several Authorities and Examples : one of which may be that of *Mandana* the *Gymnosophist*, who as *Strabo l. 15.* reports, was courted by *Alexander the Great* to accept of a rich present he made the Philosopher ; but contemning it and his glory, it (at least seeming) incensed the King, that the *Braman* for his arrogance was condemned to death : and being told he might be pardoned so he would but desire it, with no less mortify answer'd. He would indeed petition *Alexander*, not for Life, but liberty to burn himself ; giving this reason, That death was in no wise terrible where 'tis only an inlet unto immortality in exchange of his old perishing flesh expecting a more durable and excellent condition.

Besides

Besides this heathenish custome, here are many other lewd practices: such and so many, that *Peccata sum in deliciis*; for Satan seems here to erect his Throne, and imperiously to display his Banner of Idolatry, and under various dresses to proclaim a toleration for all manner of wickedness. Such is the miserable vallalage with which this wretched Generation are enlaved, and so far from any sense of their misery, that they have devised sundry tragic scenes to heighten the reputation of their Pagod, though with their own destruction. And amongst other *Actus Triumphales* a massive Idol of auri-calk is placed upon a Chariot with eight wheels richly gilded; the ascent is by several easie steps, upon which especially upon gawdy dayes the Jugges and many prostituting Girls were placed. *Ob ignis infernalis luxurias!* Hellish zeal! seeing Parents delinate their pretty Children to inchiarity, merely to enrich the Idol: Not unlike those Babylonian Votaries of *Melypta* (as *Venus* was there called,) who received their price with this excuse, *Tanti tibi Deum Melypta implorâ*, and by the Courtezans was offered to adorn her Temple. Thus mounted, they go on in procession: a procession not unlike the Thensa used by the superstitious *Romans*, or that idolatry of the *Danes* recorded by *Ditmarus* and *Dodo*: for, happy is that man, be he rich or poor, great or base, that can lend a hand to draw the Chariot; yea, they account them happiest who out of a frantick zeal temerously throw their naked bodies in the way, to the end that by the ponderousnes of the Chariot they may be crushed, that thereby they may become the Devils Martyrs. Thus remembred by a Poet,

—Vigor inde animis & mortis honore
Dulce faciem: gaudent Naturam in fata parentes
Hortanturq; moti; deflet jamq; omnis cœphubus —Turba, &c.

But concerning those, a Poet gives this caution,

What helps it thus to hasten your destiny
In all post haste? since all this wretched fry
Shall with full sail to Hell through Cocyt fly.

Quid juvat durum proferare Fatum?
Omnis hæc vaga tuba ibit ad Manes;
Facietq; inertis vela Cocyt.

Which bad objects removed, we come to

MELIAPORE, a well known Town upon the coast of *Chormandel*, and in the Kingdom of *Risnagar*. The Arctic Pole there has 13 degrees 20 minutes: It was first called *Salamina*, then *Alclinge*, but *Meliapore* after that, and now *S. Thomas*, for that in this place he suffered martyrdom: Distant it is from Cape *Comrlyn* two hundred leagues or thereabouts. At this day it is but small and poor, and under a Moorish command: it yields little for Trade save Cotton-ware and such common commodities; howbeit, is exalted in her memory, in regard that (according to Tradition) this was the place where that holy Apostle finished his labours after he had published the glad tidings of Salvation through *Persia*, *Hircania*, *Bactria*, *Sogdiana* and many parts of *India*, and by Divine Grace obtained many Proselytes, and those converts not of the meaner sort; for *Syagamus* the Emperor himself was baptised, and by his good example several other of the Nobles; who in testimony of their change, converted the Heathen Temples (by some said to be three hundred) into Houses of Prayer and Preaching of the Gospel. Howbeit, the Devil so wrought, that some Apostates enraged the multitude, so as in a blind zeal the Apostle and the King both suffered, the one being shot to death, the other brained, but both crowned with glorious Martyrdom: This hapned about thirty years after our Saviours passion; and in memory thereof a commemorative Feast is yearly celebrated the first of *July* by the Native Christians through *Indiæ*. And, however *Abdias Babylonicus* (who writ, That after death they appeared and preached again their former Doctrine) may seem questionable, this is more certainly reported and credited, That in memory of their ingratitude, Divine Justice hath marked their posterity (as some Jews, how truly I know not, say the Tribe of *Benjamin* are to this day, who of all others were most fierce against our Saviour who was of the Tribe of *Judas*) these have one leg bigger in the calf than the other: which 'tis probable gave *Pliny lib. 7. cap. 2.* the occasion to feign them to be the *Monoculi & Sciopedi, qui umbra pedis se protegant*; and as a false light mis guided our Country-man Sir *John Mandeville* in his relation concerning them. The *Cynocephali* and *Monoculi* being alike credited by *Solinus*, *Mela Pomponius*, *Strabo* and others. Notwithstanding the peoples rage the two Martyrs had each his Sepulchre there, honoured and resorted to by the Christians inhabiting *Indiæ*; till about fifty years since, their skulls and bones were brought away, and (as holy reliques) are at this day enshrined in the Virgin *Mary's* Church in *Goa* according to the command of *John 3. King of Portugal*,

who sent *Emanuel Fries* (directed by *Alphonsius Sousa*) to *Meli pore* for that purpose. By an old Manuscript found at *Crianganor*, which *Campanine* the Jesuite translated out of Chaldee into Latine, it appears also that Apostle preached the Gospel first amongst the *Indians*; *Pir D. Thomam error Idolatrie ab Indis evanuit*: and after that unto the *Chineses*, as by part of a Breviary in use amongst the *Indians* may be gathered, where it is said that *Pir D. Thomam regnum Celorum volavit & ascendit ad Synas, &c.* By the preaching of *S. Thomas*, the *Indian* Idolatry was dissipated, the *Ethiops* and *Chineses* converted; so as *Indians*, *Persians*, *Ethiopians*, and *Chynas* in commemoration of *S. Thomas* offer their adorations to the most holy name of God, &c. as in that Manuscript, relating the Apostles Acts, is at large exprefled; and whose Plantations were afterwards watered by *Frumentius* in the days of *Constantine the Great* by the encouragement of holy *Athanafius* the Patriarch of *Alexandria*; who in recompence of his labours constituted him the first Bishop of that great Diocels.

Many pertinent stories might be added out of *Spanish* Reporters, but the most warrantable is this. In the year of our Lord 883, as *Malmsbury Flor. Wigorn.* and others assure, *Syghelman* Bishop of *Shirborn* in *Dorsetshire* encouraged by *Alfred* a pious English King travelled to this place as a Pilgrim with Alms and Offerings: and after nine years returned home with many rarities, yea gave so good an account of his travel, as from that time this plac was famouſed and had in veneration with molt in *Europe*.

In the year of our Lord 1277. *Myranga* an Atheift conquered *Narsinge* and all the Regions about *Malipore*. This Prince is branded for extreme covetousnes, and for being a severe enemy to the Christians. Having one year abundance of Rice and other Grain, and room enough to hoord it in, to despight the Christians the more, no place would serve his turn to lay it in but the Chappel where Prayers were daily offered by thofe poor Christians. With all submission they intreat him to refrain; but that stimulates him to greater profanenes: for, supposing himself fit to be worshipped, he enjoins the people that adoration. But see Gods vindictive hand: That night in an affrighting Vision the Apolle approaches, both threatening and with an Iron Whip proffering to lath the King; who suddenly awaking, relents and befeches the Christians to pray for him and acknowledges his own infirmity, himſelf putting to his hand to purge the Chappel and fatisfe for his ſacrilege. A Miracle not a little joying the mournful Christians, as the Tradition of that place reports for verity. Near this are other noted Towns, viz.

Polycat in 14 degrees, *Armagun*, *Calcutta*, *Tanaffery* and *Petipoly*, all in our way to *Narsinge* and *Meslipotam*; ſome being in the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*, other ſome in *Golconda*; and of late years made English Factories. The Natives differ in customs, colour and other things little from the *Narsingans*.

NARSINGA is a noble part of *India* where ſome would have *Chormandel* to terminate: famous it is all over *Asia*: confined by *Mallabar*, *Gulkunda*, *Bengala* (*Baracura* and *Gandarida* of old) and the Ocean. The King fo rich, that he despifies his Neighbours; and fo powerful, as he values neither Mogul, Decan, Samoryn, nor Pecuan. The Country fo full of all things requifite for uſe and pleafeure, as fair Towns, Strong Forts, pleafant Fields, and choice Minerals; alſo having Rivers which fo enrich the earth as it abundantly produces Corn, Cattel, Fruits, &c. that with good caufe he is reputed as conſiderable a Monarch as any in *India*. This may appear by his Annual Revenue which ſome compute to be no leſs than two millions of pounds; and by the Victory he obtained againſt *Idulcan* the Ocean, leading into the Field three hundred Elephants, thirty thouſand Horſe, and double that number of Foot; after which, *Tarneſſeri* was by him ſubjeeted. The Banianys swarm like Locuſts here; and the Bramyns are no where more reputed of, having ſeveral Temples; albeit in the ſtructure they boast of no great bravery, being molt proud within by having many deformed Idols. Near this is

BISNAGAR (*Modura* of old, *Arcate* ſays *Castaldus*, *Pentagramma* one conjectures, but more likely to be that *Binagra Urbs India intra Gangem* mentioned in *Ptolemy* and once the Metropolis, but being about a hundred years ago ſubjeeted by the King of *Decan* abated of its ſplendour by the remove of the Court to *Pengard* five days travel thence) is now the ſecond City for grandeur and Trade in that Kingdom: circled with a wall of near four miles compas, regularly fortified, well built, and no leſs wealthy. The Haven alio is good, and the City frequented by European ſhips and Junks from *Malacea*, *Pegu*, *Cambogia*, *Culyn-Chyna*, *Chyna*, *Japan*, *Philippine*, the *Molucca*, *Borneo*, *Java*, *Sumatra*, *Zeylon*, and many other parts of *India*, *Arabia*, *Pefia*, &c.

The Cuſtom heretofore was, That a Traveller when he came to the Court usually had ciwil entertainment; many times being invited by the King, the better to ſhew his bravery; for his Coat was thick ſet with ſtones and gems of luſtre; which when robed with

with (for the resemblance they had with the Sun which they worship) he was little less than adored: his Court was full of Majesty, and his Guard consisted of a thousand men. Polygamy he affects, and therefore wrote himself Husband of a thousand Women; many of which have him all his life in such esteem that at his death they voluntarily make his flaming Grave their Sepulchre. More Northward upon this coast is

MESULIPATAN, by contraction commonly pronounced *Meslipatan*: a Town removed from the Equinoctial 16 degrees and a half, North; now under the Gulcundan King, and in the skirt of the Bengal Gulph. The Province admits a mixture of idolaters: the Gentiles are most in number, but least in power, since the Mogul subjected them. *Mahomet* was first blazoned amongst them by a Colony of *Perians* who were conducted thither in the 28. year of the *Hegra*, of our account 648. by *Abdal-bin-Hemyr* a man of no small command under *Oznan* then Calyph of *Babylon*: since which invasion their offspring have here continued. The Town it self neither for bulk nor beauty is considerable: one reason may be, for that fifty years ago by a raging mortality and famine it was almost unpopl'd and made desolate. The streets are but few, and those narrow; the houses low, and the fields parched by the extremity of heat which here rages from *March* to *July*; from whence to *November* wind and rain as incessantly disturbs them: so as of twelve months they have but four, that is to say, from *November* to *March*, salubrious and moderate. These rains nevertheless prepare the Earth for seed, and require the Labourer so well, as of Rice, Caravans, and other Grain they usually annually reap two Harvests. Howbeit, the Town by reason of the English reside there, and of late traffique for Callicocs, Rice, and the like, begins to revive; and will increase, unless the deceitful disposition of the people occasion their remove thence unto *Armagan* and *Polyca*, Towns upon the same coast neighbouring *Meslipatan*, where they may fit down with more ease, less charge, and have as choice variety of Merchandise. *Bengala* borders upon *Culumba*, *Arracan* upon that part of *Bengala* which is watered by *Chaberis*, and well nigh th: midway 'twixt *Bengala* and *Pegu*, which borders upon *Arracan*, *Siam*, and *Tanassery* upon *Pegu*, and upon *Siam* *Cochyn*-*Chyna* and *Chyna*; which some make the boundary of *Bacchus* his Eastern conquests. Of these, the *Siamites* and *Cochyn*-*Chyna's*, both from their persons, manners, way of worship, and identity of speech, are thought to be extracted from those of *Chyna*; as be the *Japonites*, and other Islanders near that great Country, albeit from the long Wars they have had with them it will not be acknowledg'd.

Hence remove your chaste Eyes to an unchaste Town, though *Casta* by name: a Town no less infamous for Idolatry. The Mosques shew Art in Sculpture, but are hateful in the stink of their devotion: for here the Pagods bear have some resemblance with *Priapus* and *Pan*, as described by *Servius* in the 2. *Eclat*. of *Virgil*; having great eyes, flat nose, wide mouth, four great horns, a long beard shaped like the radiance of the Sun, claws for hands, and crooked-legg'd; so, as it is all over deformed.

Among other their solemn Festivals, the mystic fopperies dedicated to *Bacchus*, in these parts are not utterly extinguished: as may appear by the dres, mimique frisks, and nightly pastimes the women practise. There they cover themselves with skins, adorn their heads and tresses with Ivie, in one hand holding a leav'd Javelin, and Cymbals or Timbrels in the other, attended by many Boyes and Girls who ramble like distracted people up and down, striving to rend the air with their continued clamours: Little differing from that description we find in *Ariensis* the Poet.

— Hic Chorus ingens
Faeminei cœtus pulchri colit Orgya Bacchis;
Producit Noctem ludus sacer. Atra pulsant
Vocibus & crebris late foli calcibus urgent,
— Non qua celeri ruit aquima Ganges
Indorum populi stata curant Feita Lyxo.

So that it may well be admired, this licentious Festival should survive all others celebrated in memory of those Ethnic Deities, which as *Varro* enumerates were not less than thirty thousand. And albeit *Bacchus* was the first known Conquerour of the East, the first that circled his brows with a Diadem, and in an Ivory Chariot drawn sometimes with Elephants, at other times with Lynxes rode in triumph, (seconded some Ages after by *Tarquinus Priscus* at *Rome* as *Plutarch* records in the Life of *Romulus*,) the great distance of place and time (for he was, some think, contemporary with *Moses*) might have put this with others in oblivion. But the vast extent thesē *Bacchanalia* spread, is no less observable; either proceeding from the pleasure of the Grape, or toleration they gave to all manner of debauchery: insomuch, as under various names and attributes

alluding to its several operations, through most noted Kingdoms of the World this Wine-God has been acknowledged; as in part may be collected from *Elias Venetus*.

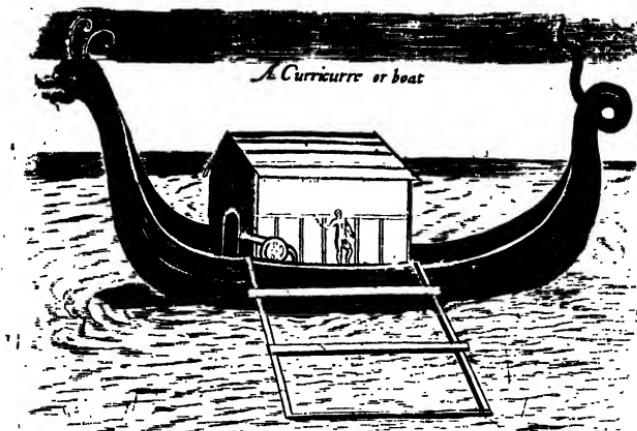
Orgya me Bacchum vocant,
Osyrim Egypci putant.
Mytil Phanacem nominant;
Dionyfium Indi exsifmant.
Romana Sacra Liberum,
Arabici Adonem,
Leucantaci Pentheum,
Graci Nydileum,
Peris Jacchum,
Temulenti Lyzum.
Fremibundi Bromium, Elioleum, &c.

A few of many (were not these too many) might be enumerated.

Some of these nevertheless bid the World farewell when the corps of their deceased Husbands are incendiated: albeit some Virago's rather chuse to out-brave Death's terrors by going quick with him into the Grave: A dreadful *Exit!* but such, as they say, expresseth most affection. Such, and so many, sad delusions Satan practiseth amongst his deluded Votaries; and for his greater variety finds that *Virgil's* monstrous brood of Deities are here exceeded: for not only the Cow is equally adored with the old *Egyptian Apis* or pide Bull, but the Sun, Moon, and Stars as souls celestial; and very much resembling thoic miserable idolaters registered in *libro Sapientia cap. 13.* *Qui Ignem, Spiritum, aut ciuam Aerem, aut gyrum Stellarum, vel nimiam Aquam, aut Solen & Lunam, Reftores Orbis Terrarumq; Deos praeuerunt,* Who acknowledged the Fire, the Wind, the swift Air, the course of the Stars, the great Waters, or the Sun and Moon to be the Gods and Governors of the World. Not content with which, others there be who have Rivers and Trees in like veneration; parallel with the *Celtae* our Neighbours described by *Tacitus*, *ubi multa Simulacra, mulum peregrina superstitionis vestigium videre licet:* Deities, or rather Demons of another nature than those the Heathen *Romans* adored, mentioned by *Cicero l. 2 Nomothesie*; where amongst the classes of those they worshipped were *mens*, *virtus*, *pietas*, *sides*, *spes*, *pudicitia*, *concordia*, *pax*, *quies*, *salus*, *felicitas*, *libertas*, &c. *Quorum laudibus (proprietate qua datur ascerfus in Calum) delubra sunt*, &c. Scarce credible are some solemn Festivals they keep: in one of them they had a lewd custome to fasten sick or needy men (stupid by too much zeal) to an Engine, which being hoisted elevates him equal with the Pagod: the blood trickling from his wounded shoulders (it may be said *Excusit medicina modum*) at his descent (as a meritorious sacrifice) is dashed against a Tree; and after he has invoked the *Demon* to accept his offering, returns with hope to thrive the better ever after. This bloody, or rather butcherly, sacrifice is mentioned in *2 lib. Virg. En. Sanguine placantis*: and of old was used by the *Rhodians*, *Cretans*, and *Carthaginians*; who when their City was besieged, caused two hundred of their principal youths to be slain as a double Hecatomb: In *Africa* and *America* the like hellish custome is to this very day observed, as we read in *Acofta*. They oft offer in the night; but first make the streets bright with lights, and then stuff their hands with Rice, and glomerate in dances; in every corner (where a Poppet sits) throwing Rice or fruits; but being once out of the ring, hafle away, not daring to look back lest the Devil tear them by way of gratitude. To which poor wretches give me leave to apply that in *Eccles. 30. 19.* *Quid proderit libato Idol?* *nec enim manducabit nec odorabit.* This, *Tuledensis* and others witness: but many of those abominable practises are prohibited and discontinued since the Mahometans have born rule; who as bad as they are have nevertheless exprest their abhorrency against that custome.

They have a different kind of Burial to what we find in most other places: for here the Carcas is placed either in a deep Cave which is long and narrow, or else betwixt two Walls built on purpose; wherein the simple relict voluntarily immures her self, by that self-sequestration never after speaking to any, but expecting death by that Arrow of Fame, which of all sorts of Deaths, as it is the most languishing, is the most formidable.

Their Habit is for the most part nakednes, the zone by reason of its distemperate heat well excusing cloathing. They delight in fishing, and to sport upon the Water in Boats or Curricuries resembling the Venetian Condaloës; thus shaped.



But seeing we are now at *Malacca*, and in or near the *Aurea Chersonesu*, places so celebrated by reason of that plenty of Gold has been brought thence, as induced several Geographers and Historians to fix *Ophyr* there: Nevertheless, finding the local place no less controverted, and according to various apprehensions drawn into several contrary quarters of the World; albeit in that brief discourse I made concerning the Red sea and *Carmania* where I made mention of the Burial-place of *Erythreus* there are some glances at it; I shall here nevertheless (as in the most proper place) speak a little further upon that subject.

And first concerning the Name: It is agreed by most That it is derived from *Ophar* Son of *Jokan*, Son of *Eber*, the third in descent from *Shem* the Son of *Noah*, mentioned in *Genesis*, chap. 10. vers. 26. upon the fixing his plantation: which albeit the Scripture clears, nevertheless from analogy of the Name and from the abundance of Gold and Ivory found in several opposite parts of the Earth, the place is tossed to and fro, whereby the discovery of the true place is obscured and becomes more difficult: yea, not any Historical part of Scripture more controverted than I can meet with, than this *Ophyr*. Amongst many others I shall instance *Rabanus Maurus*, and from his light *Chr. Columbus*, whose Authority *Stephanus* inclines to, and whose joint opinion it is, That a great Isle that verges towards the Gulph of *Mexico* was *Ophyr*; to which conjecture they are led by no other reason I can find than that the *Spaniard* has thence extracted a mass of Silver, Gold and precious Stones; but no Ivory: albeit what they have drawn thence is little, compared with what other parts of the *Terra firma* in South *America* especially about *Potosi* have afforded; which Mines nevertheless are far more uberior in Silver than Gold, the last being the emphasis of *Ophyr*: a metal we see by daily experience much more plentiful in *Afrik* and *Asia* than the new-found World that hath hitherto been discovered. Howbeit, 'tis probable that removal of *Ophyr* into the Occident, but especially the similitude of the Name in like manner persuadeth *Coropio* to infer (and not without some v. hemency) that it was rather in *Peru*. Now the reason he gives is, Because *Pernyan* and *Peru* are harmonious in sound; and indeed it is not deny'd that *Ophyr* and *Pernaym* are terms convertible; as may appear by comparing the 1 Kings 9. 29. with the 2 Chron. 3. 6. Where for the better fortifying that conjecture, they with like reason persuade their Readers that *Sepher* is that mighty Mountain or rather chain of Hills now called the *Andes* which surge to a marvellous height and penetrate the heart of *Peru*, not ceasing their course until they come in sight of the Streights called *Magellane*. Notwithstanding which *Ortelius* rejecting that of the *Tiutonic* persuades that he has made a more real discovery of the place in *Agisymba* or South *Afrik*: for in his *Thesaurus* he mentions a Town and Province called *Plura* a part of *Saffala* which was attainable by *Solomon's* ships from *Ezion-geber* without the help of any Compas, and where there is such store of Gold, precious Stones, Ivory and Ebony (which some take for the *Algummin* wood) as no other part of the World affords more plenty. Yea, to strengthen that imagination others suppose that by the word

word *Sophyra* (which is *Ophyr* anagrammatized) mentioned in the LXXII Interpreters is intended or meant *Soffila* or *Sophra*, as to attain their ends, they wretf it; albeit St. Jerome by that name intends *Sepher*. But which is more strange *Pyneda* a learned Man for the greater honour of his Countrey from the like Analogie of Name fancies That the lfe of *Cadiz* was *Ophyr*: which *Montanus* dislikes, and therefore removes it into *Africk*, as far as *Cartilage*: and some others disapproving his, into *Guinea* and the River *Gambra*, which for plenty of Gold gives not place to any part of the Universe. But *Daneus* no less taken with his conceit pretends that he has found it at *Ormus*; upon no other account I can find, than the golden Trade it had in his time. So that we see, merely to please the imagination, several otherwise learned Men have laboured to discover *Ophyr* in several quarters of the World opposite to the opinions of Saint Jerome, Saint *Angulifin* and other reverend and judicious Authors, who have more accurately suffered their reason to be directed by the un-erring Rule which plainly instructs, That *Ophyr* and *Havilah* with the rest of *Zoktan's* Sons had their dwelling from *Mesha* as thou goest unto *Sepher* a Mountain of the East, Gen. 10. 30. East must be understood from *Babel* where the first division was of the Sons of *Noah*; and East also from *Arabia*, where 'tis presumed was writ the *Pentateuch*: and that being infallible, convinces and puts to silence those opinions I lately mentioned; none of the places they assign being East from thence, but in diametro opposite and repugnant to that of *Moses* his manuduction.

But for the better manifestation of the true place we are therefore to consider, That *Ophyr* is verbum prefusum, *Obrizum* and *Ophrizum* being the same: *Quia ex insula Ophyr auem est presumi mus*, saith S. Jerom: albeit the word *Obrizum* or *Obrizon* signifies *Aureum suorum et lignum purgatum*, Gold well refined, as *Pliny* obserueth. It is also called *Ophyr* in 1 Kings. 2. 48. but *Ophir* and *Ophaz* in *Jerem.* 10. 9. *Dan.* 10. 5. *Anphar* by the *Arabians*, in whose Countrey the Name is likewise placed; and in the *Targum* or *Babylonian* paraphrase *Ophir*: Yea, in some other ancient Authors *Mophaz*; and *Urbree* by *Eusebius*. Moreover, sometimes *Ophir* is glanced at under the name of *Tharsis*. But that *Ophyr*'s Colony planted in *Lash-India*, where *Mesha* and *Sepher* in their *Istigia* may yet be found I shall in brief demonstreate; not only from the current of Authentick Writers, but also from the Names and memory of the Originarie Planters: albeit rationally it cannot be imagined but that through length of time, revolutions of State and diversity of idioms, they as well as other things have been subject to variations. In the first of *Kings* chap. 9. vers. 26. also in 2 *Chron.* ch. 8. vers. 18. it is recorded *That King Solomon made a Navy of ships in Ezion-geber which is besides Eloth and the brink of the Red sea in the Land of Edom: and Hiram sent with the Navy his Servants who had knowledge of the Sea with Solomons Servants, and they came to OPHYR, and from thence brought four hundred and fifty Talents of Gold; in our money about three million and six hundred thousand Crowns.* In the 2 *Chron.* 9. 15. *Hiram and Solomons Servants* who brought Gold from *Ophyr*, brought also *Alummia* wood. And in 1 *Kings* 10. 22. *Solomon had upon the Sea the Navy of Tharsis with Hiram's Navy; and once in three years came the Navy of Tharsis, which brought Gold, Silver, Ivory, Apes and Peacockes, &c.* By which it appears the Port from whence that Fleet set sail was *Ezion-geber*. Therefore to evince *Ortelius*, If the Navy sailed from *Ezion-geber* to *Safilia*, the course they were then to steer would have been West from *Guardafin* a Cape land that gives the first in-let into the Red-sea from the Ocean; which is the contrary way or point of the Compas to that part of the World the Scripture tells us *Ophyr* made his plantation. Besides, the Port that Fleet set sail towards was certainly a much greater distance than *Safilia*, which from *Ezion-geber* with a fair wind might well be attained in a months time; whereas the voyage to *Ophyr* was triennial, or in less than 3 years not to be accomplished: nor that they spent that time in providing the Cargo, which probably by Merchants and others was still in preparation; but rather through distance of place, and the long way they made ere they could attain their port; for in regard they had no Compas to direct their way, 'tis likely they feared to put to Sea without ken of Land, but crept along the *Arabian* and *Indian* shores, as at this day the *Mogul's* great *Shubee* or *Junk* used to do when it sets sail from *Swally* road to *Mocha* in the *R-d-ka*, once in two or three years most richly loaden. And albeit it cannot be deny'd, That King *Solomon* was the richest Prince in his time, seeing that in *Eccles.* 47. 'tis said, *Collegit Annum quod Aniculum, &c Argentum ut Plumbum*, He gathered Gold as Tyn, and Silver as Lead, so was he the wisest: for he was filled with Understanding as with a flood, he furnished the Earth with grave and wise Sentences by reason of his Songs, Proverbs, Similitudes and Interpretations; he discoursed of Trees from the *Cedar* in *Lebanon* to the *Hyllop* upon the Wall, and People from all the Kings of the Earth came to hear and to admire his Wisdom, *Kings.* 4. 22. whence it may be inferred, That his knowledge was admirable in

in Nature's Secrets: Nevertheless that he expressed his knowledge concerning the wonderful nature and use of the Magnet is not mentioned in any of those of his that are extant. For the use of the Magnet was found of late years by *Flo-Malphi a Calabrezz*. Of such vertue and use saith *Bodin cap. 7.* that *Tota rerum Natura nihil admirabilius; usus enim eius est plane Divinus, &c.* So as had the use of the Magnet been then known and practised, the Voyage in all probability might have been overcome in six months space, as ships at this day give frequent proof of. Navigation was then but in its infancy; neither the use of Sea Chart nor Compas being in those dayes known, nor in probability the Celestial obseruations, which by Sea-men now are commonly practised: so as then to adventure into the Ocean out of sight of Land, would have been an act very daring if not desperate. But we do not read that the vertue of the Magnet was known or made use of in that Age or long after by the *Phenicians*, who nevertheless were the first that perfected Navigation. For that the Polary Direction was altogether unknown unto the Ancients, is agreed by most; notwithstanding that noted speach *Plautus* writ two thousand years since, *Ventus jam secundus est, cape modo Versoriam*, The wind being fair steer your course, seems applicable; for the most judicious rather think the Tacking or Sail by whch the Vessel was to be turned is meant by that direction. Nevertheless, that those parts about with Loadstones is well known, seeing the King of *Zeyloon* used them as others do Porcellane: being in such plenty, that some have from their attractive property marvelled how ships could pass with large Anchors and iron Sakers; and no less, that there is no greater increase of variation, as *Pliny* and *Serapion* have imagined. For confutation of which we need no other example than that of *Eba* an Isle in the *Thufca* Sea where stoe Magnets, and but little variation are found or observed. But to return.

Forasmuch as sacred Writ instruct us That *Ophyr* and the rest of *Joktan's Sons* (upon that memorable division of the Earth which happened in the dayes of *Peleg* Brother of *Joktan* Sons of *Eber*) had their partition or lot assigned them in the Orient, i.e. from *Mesha* unto *Sepher*, without further argument that serves to confute those speculations of *Columbus*, *Maurus* and *Stephanus* as to the pretended discoveries of place in contrary quarters of the World. And in answer to *Goropius* also concerning *Ferus*, by r.a.o. &c. affinity it has with the word *Peruaym*, that criticism will not avail, seeing that are to be in *Syam* and the neighbourhood of *Malacca* now called *Pern* and *Perna* which both serve the memory of old *Peruaym*; albeit, if I may be allow'd the like liberty, the *probane* seems most to shaddow it, being according to the Translation of *Juanes de Taramella* from the Original writ *Tapronaym* and *Taperuaym*, words that have very little discordance with *Peruaym* by which is understood *Ophyr*. But that *Taprobane* is an Island under or near the Equinoctial is agreed by all, although some difference there be whether *Sumatra* or *Zeyloon* be it, *Mercator's* judgement being for *Sumatra*, and *Orelius* for *Zeyloon*: howbeit, most incline to *Sumatra*, both for that it is nearest the Continent and consequently the more easily discovered by *Onescivitis Alexander's* Vice-Admiral, who wanting the use of a Compas doubtless crept as near the shore as well he might and for that stoe of Gold has both of old and yet is obtained at *Sumatra* more than in *Zeyloon*; whence it was called *Aurea Insula* by the Ancients. That great and learned Expositor St. *Hierom* likewise in his Paraphrase upon *1 Kings 22. 48.* where it is writ That *Jehoshaphat* made ships of *Tarshish* to sail to *Ophyr* for Gold but broken in pieces at *Ezion-geber*, the Lord disapproving his design; from the word *Tarshish* infers That *Ophyr* est hinc *India*, in quo *Aurum opimum nascitur*, *Ophyr* is a place in *India* where is the purest Gold. And in another place, *Ophry Regio necessario posita est in Orientalis India*, *Ophyr* is without all doubt in the *East-Indies*. Of the same judgement is *Tzetzae*,

*The Golden Indian Isle by Poets sung,
A Pen-insule some call it and no *Ile*;
The Hebrews name it Ophyr in their Tongue:
All sorts of Stones and Mines of Gold e're while
Are found there, with the choice Praline-Stone.*

*Insula est India quam Poetæ Auream vocan
Alii vero peninsulam, & non Insulam.
Hebrei autem Ophyr in sua Lingua vocant.
Habet enim metalla Auri & Lapidès omnibus
Excellenter magis vero Prasinum Lapidem.*

A Stone of price, abounding in the *Prasian* Country saith *Pliny lib. 6. cap. 18.* from the name resembled to a Leek though probably the Emerald, for it was of a greenish colour. But the Country it self is most famous for that resilitia the Citizens of *Pataliputra* made against *Bacchus*. And albeit by some it be more strictly confined to *Bengala* and that part, yet *Strabo* gives it a greater extent; *Totum maritimum tractum ab Indo ad Ganges Prasian appellavit*, calling all that Coast *Prasi* which lies betwixt *Indus* and *Ganges*. So as albeit the *Insula Auroa* be by *Platony* and others placed here, yet the *Aurea Terra*

Terra and the *Aurea Chersonesus* is not so well agreed upon: For *Josephus* by *Aurea Terra* intends *Ophyr*; and by that general consequently comprehends all those Regions that verge Easterly from the River *Indus*; seeing all that Oriental part of the World even from *Indus* to *Polsunga* (if such a River be not feigned) and most Islands from the *Maldiva Insulae* to *Japan* more or less have Gold: *India abundat Auro*, *Plin. lib. 6.* Which if so, I do not know by what Authority *Varrerius* confines that metal to *Pegu* and *Sumatra*, maintaining That no other place in the *East-Indies* produces Gold on either side the River *Ganges*: His words are these, *Cura & ultra Gangem nulla pars Indie sit que Aurum gigas praeceperit Pegnam & Sumatram*. An Hypothesis found unsatisfactory by such as drive a Trade for Gold in those maritime parts that verge towards *Cochin-China*: Upon which consideration it is, as I suppose) that *Mercator* stretches *Aurea Chersonesus* from *Sumatra* to *Japan*, both in reference to the Isles and Coast Maritimata: too great a space doubtless and disagreeing with a Pen-insule: therefore upon better grounds it may be reduced to a less, as of late some have confined it to *Millabar*, albeit *Ptolomy* and *Niger* place it about *Malacca*, *Jacor* and parts thereabouts. But *Solinus* converting the species calls it *Argyrus*, which *Pompon. Atla. lib. 3. c. p. 8.* seems to reconcile, *Ad Tamanum cum Indie promontorium est Insula Chrysa ad Gangem Argyrus, &c.* by that Promontory meaning either Cape *Comryn* or that other which shoots into the Sea and becomes an equal boundary to the two Straits of *Sunda* and *Malacca*. And by *Pliny lib. 6. c. 21.* *terra Ostium Indi Chrysa & Argyre fertili metallis; sed quod aliqui tradunt Aurum & Argentum cum ei solum esse, haud scilicet credidisse.* By which that Author places it nearer *Indus* than *Ganges*. But that *Ophyr* was at and about *Malacca*, at least in some contiguous maritime part of *East India*; and that *Jokan* withall, or most of his Sons planted in the *East Indies* rather than in *Arabia*, and that their Colonies though dispersed for better accommodation were in the vicinage of one another, will appear by the continuation of the Names of the principal Planters; as may be imagined, yea proved by what is this day extant notwithstanding the alteration of Names and change of Language that unavoidably hath hapned.

And last concerning *Mysa* and Mount *Sepher*: That their station was thereabout, has been the constant opinion of most; until of late a modern Writer finding *Mysa* the Son of *Sham* Son of *Shem* in *Mesopotamia*, thence imagines those places are to be understood to be in that Country: but that Country being neither East from *Shinar* nor the *Arabia*: Divers, that conjecture is not forcible. Another finds it in *Arabia Felix* upon that old mistake in not distinguishing the Plantation of *Havilah* the descendance of *Cham* from that other of *Havilah* who descended from *Shem*: which error also mis-led the Septuaginta, by the River *Gher* (a branch of *Euphrates*) understanding *Ganges*. But *Ptolomy* with better consideration finds it in *East-India*, calls it *Mons Mazins*, and places it under *deg. 1. Nels mons est Indiae*, *Plin. l. 2.* notwithstanding all that large tract the same Geographer extends from the Promontory *Manancommu* to *Sabrama* being above 100 leagues is b. *Sribo* termed *Terra Musiana* or *Mesican* as some write it.

Nor is *Sepher* that noted Mountain in the East at this day utterly forgotten; seeing some there be who find *Sophra* there; as also *Syba* and *Sypha*, which differ but little from the ancient Name it bore, or from the latitude allowed *Mons Mazins* or *Nisicus*, where *India* begins and gives *Parops Nysa* its Name as some call it, but more truly *Parops-Misa*, from *Mons Matis*, and out of which (it is supposed) *Ganges* springs: albeit in the Easterly part of *Asia* another *Sypha* is known of late to the East of *Mazins*; whose distinction may be salved by that of *Caucasus* which keeps its Name a vast distance and through several Regions: but *Ptolemy* helps that supposition; for he takes the great Mountain *Bella* (as which in that Dialect signifies a high Mountain) to be *Sepher*; albeit *Bellato* branches from *Imaus* and in a continued ledge of springing Hills pierces through the heart of *Indofiar*, *Decan* and the *Narsinga* Countries in the middle betwixt the Gulf of *Bengala* and the *Indian O.* can uninterrupted as far as Cape *Comryn*, not unlike the *Appennine*, which in a chain of Hills cuts quite through *Italy*. And concerning it *Saint Jerome* vouches That *Sophra* (as he calls *Sepher*) *Mons est Oriens in India, juxta quem, sibi Ictian habitaverunt*, *Sepher* is a Mountain in the *East-India*, near which, the Sons of *Jokan* inhabited. *Quos a Cophene fluvio & Regione Indie usq; ad ipsam Seriam occupassent*, (saith *Johannes*) by which the *Seres* is underflood, and in which was *Alous Sepher*: *Arrianus* calls it *Pyrthus*, *Ptolomy Beprrhus*, and *Adecurus Sephrus*. But this *Cophene* or *Sophene* must be distinguished from that *Sophena* which is in *Cilicia* upon the *Armenian* Confines that *Euphratt* waters. *Sub Basilena, inter Antaurum & M. sum monte, jacet Sophena, in quad. m. corvalli, in a. Antropolis est Carthiocerita*: an error that has mis-guided some Writers; for, *Cophen Pergo & lavins est India*, saith *Mela*, *lib. 7. c. c.* and *Pliny l. 6. c. 23.* So that tis very strange, any would have *Sepher* to be the *Andes* in *America*, as I lately mentioned.

Concerning

Concerning their several Plantations, it may warrantably be supposed That *Joktan* the Father of those thirteen Sons mentioned in *Gen.* 10. 26. seated himself somewhere near the River *Ganges*: the rather, for that it is granted by some and those not the least learned, that *Noah* before *Nimrod* and his associates removed Westward towards *Euphrates*, fixed his Quarters somewhere in *Mesopotamia* or upon the banks of *Indus*, that being the richest soil; and the first choice was doubtless allow'd him, both in the relation he stood, as upon the account of Seniority. Thence it is, in some Authors we find that River called *Joktan*, and alternately *Joktan* called by the name of *Ganges*. Now the Father having made his Election, the Sons in all probability dispersed themselves about in contiguous places; so as to continue a neighbourhood, both for their better allocation and preservation: and accordingly by an easie inquisition we find the several Plantations of *Ophyr*, *Havilah*, *Hadoram*, *Abimael*, *Obal*, *Elmodad*, *Jerah* and *Sheba*, eight of the Sons of *Joktan* originally seated on either side *Ganges*: for those Nations the Ancients called the *Orites per apertum* in the *Ophyrites* and the *Tapiro*, which some who take a little liberty to please their fancy without much torture of the word write *Tobipri*, were Inhabitants *infra Gangem*, and in good measure preserve the memory of *Ophyr* their originary Planter, who either removed or extended his dwelling towards *Malacea* and that maritime Coast which is *extra Gangem*, may be acknowledged; seeing it is the belief of some, both in regard *Malacea* is a *Chersonesus*, and that it has its situation upon the Sea; but principally for that in all Ages there and in the neighbouring Isles plenty of Gold, Ivory and Ebony (which was most likely to be the Almuggim wood, seeing it was used for the garnishing and trimming the Stairs and Pillars of the Temple, and there was none such seen before in the Land of *Judah*, which excludes Cypres and Cedar wood of which there was plenty, but of Ebony no where but in *India* if we credit *Virgil*) and in regard that Apes, Peacocks and precious Stones, &c. have at all times been had there, it is the more credible that *Ophyr* was in that part of the World placed. For the Name *Malacea* is but new say some, being called *Pisitan* when the *Siamites* first made their Plantation; and yet was called *Malacea* in *Strabo's* dayes, and *Strabo* lived in the reign of *Tiberius Cesar*; for he reports in his Geogr. That *Malacea* *salsamentis abundat*, &c. and varied from *Tacola* as I find mentioned in some Authors; and more particularly by *Plutarch vita Alex.* where the People of that place are called *Taxili* or *Tashili*; they, who with the *Sabai* were active for the defence of their liberties upon the Greeks threatened invasion. After which it was named *Malacea*, where Geographers of old placed the *Aurea Chersonesus*; and after that *Maleicola*, which with little alteration was contracted to *Malacea*, in which Name it now reflecteth; and is the better demonstrated, for that the River which serves that Town was called *Gaza*; a proper Name where Gold is hoarded, and holds the Name in part as yet; and upon those banks it was, that noted City *Burigaza* in seventeen degrees was built, whose foundation was laid by the *Arauri* by some thought the *Oriti* lately mentioned who first inhabited the *Gedrosian* Territory near *Cambaya* upon the Eastern banks of the River *Indus*. So that upon the whole matter, *Malacea* and the adjacent parts and Isles may warrantably be concluded the place which in old times was called *Ophyr*: the Gold had at that particular place, and from the Neighbouring Islands, came likewise under that general denomination.

Moreover, to trace the foot-steps of the other Sons of *Joktan*: In *Pegu* we find the memory of *Havilah*; seeing part of that Countrey now called *Burma* and *Brama* but of old *Brachmanorum Regio*, is at this day called *Chava* and *Chavilah*, the People *Evilei* and *Chainlei*, and a contiguous Principality late a fiefatory to the Crown of *Pegu* and since to *Taung* is called *Ava*; which apparently continue the memory of *Havilah* Brother of *Ophyr*. Of *Hadoram* the *Aramei* or *Aramie* in the *Guzarat* Province are descended. Of *Abimael*, i. e. *Pater Mallorum*, those that planted the Coast of *Mallabar*; those also inhabiting *Malua* a Province in *Industan*; and the *Malli* noted by *Plutarch* to live thereabouts; for so were those called of old: and at this day his Name is continued by some considerable Towns upon that Coast, as *Maliba* and *Maleta*; all or some of which in all likelihood from *Abimael* deduce their Original. Of *Obal* are the *Obalites* and the *Abelites*: mentioned by Historians and placed about *Ganges*. From *Elmodam* the *Emodian* Mountain takes Name, may be supposed without much straining. But concerning *Jerah*, albeit they of *Jerico* near *Larr* pretended some interest in that Name, as I mentioned at that place; upon better view I may discover his *Vestigia* near *Malacea* amongst his other Brethren, seeing the Town and Province of *Jor* or *Jeroh* and *Joor* (as some pronounce) preserves his Name in that part of *Siam* which confines *Malacea* and affronts the Isle *Sumatra* to the East: for I likewise find that Countrey called *Jeria* of old, part of which was watered by the River *Copen*; not that of the same name which runs into the River *Indus*: yea, by the names

names of *Seria* and *Siria* (doubtless mistaken by the Amanucensis or in the transcript) glanced at by *Josephus*. And as to the last of the Sons of *Yokan* named *Sheba*, here are sufficient remains both from the *Syba* and the *Sabzi*, who in confederacy with the *Tacol* lately mentioned gave some stop to the Macedonian torrent : *Sabai in India accula Dion Peric*, also from that River which streams not far from *Joor* through the Malaccan Territories into the Ocean ; and from that Promontory likewise which thrusts its head into the salt-water near *Sinapora*, *Ptolomy* and others of old called *Magnum*. The Kingdom of *Syan* withal was heretofore termed *Sabanna Regio*, as attested by *Strabo* in his definition of the *Terra Muscana* : and not many leagues from *Audacea* there is at this day a Town so named. *Dionysius* also in his *Periegesis* makes *Sabalassa* one of the *Ostia* of the River *Ganges*.

Now albeit this essay may serve to point out *Ophyr*, yet seeing *Tharfish* is an adjunct with *Ophyr*, and a word admitting a various signification, it will not be lost labour to discuss it a little, being a term that by curious pens has been no less argued than *Ophyr*. But by a parenthesis; first accept the description of what has been the subject of this disquisition, Gold; discovered very rarely; for that the *Anaria* run not in Mines and Veins so apparently and so plentifully as Silver, and seldom (as Silver) wrought in the Mine, but for the most part hid and undiscovered till found in shallow Brooks and Rivulets near unto Mountains, usually after storms and rains, sometimes in dust and powder, but at other times in grains, which for bigness and shape resemble Melon-seeds; which sort is most pure and needs least refining. For the quality or nature of it is such, as exceedeth Silver twelve times in value : so pure, as it is not subject to rust; and so solid, as endures Age and Fire above other Metals: yea, most improvable in its product; for *Pliny lib. 33. cap. 3.* observes, That one ounce may well be beaten with the Hammer into seven hundred leaves, every leaf being four fingers broad and the length proportionable. In *Africk* and *Asia* is store of this precious Earth: so much being imported by *David* and *Solomon* (as provision for the Temple) that 'tis mentioned in 2 *Chron. 9. 22.* *Solomon* excelled all the Kings of the Earth in riches and wisdom : for Silver was there as plenteous as Stones, and Cedars as the Fig-trees that grow abundantly in the plains. And from those two parts of the world much more Gold is brought into *Europe* (where the least quantity is concealed) than from *America*; albeit of Silver-ore *America* yields more than *Africk*, *Asia*, and *Europe* put together. And yet I have not heard of any lump of Gold thence so great as *Oviedo* reports he saw in *America*; one of which was an entire grain or piece of Gold of seven pound weight, valuing seven hundred Pezo's; a Pezo is thirteen Ryals: the other was five pound weight. *Peter Martyr* also saw an Ingot there that weighed 3310 Pezoes entire of it self without any artificial addition. A rarity fit to be presented the Portugal King; to whom it was accordingly carried in the *Boadilla*, but mis-carried by tempest.

Now concerning the word *Tharfish*, so much criticiz'd, it is *Verbum ambiguum* and admits a various sense: For, sometimes it signifies a City; other-some a Region: as also the Chrysolite or Sea-Beryl a precious stone of the colour of the Sea: but at some time the Sea it self, as may be gathered. That there was a City so called in *Cilicia* appears by that of the Prophet *Jonas*, who being sent by the Almighty to admonish *Nimue* took a contrary way, and at *Toppa* shipped himself for *Tharshis*: of which City St. *Paul* the Apostle was a Native, *Acts 22. 5.* The Name is probably deduced from *Tharsis* the Son of *Javan*, *Gen. 10. 4.* who in the dayes of *Peleg* planted in that part of the lesser *Asia* which the *Turks* at this day call *Hamza*. But whereas *Tharshis* is mentioned in 1 *Reg. 10. 22.* and in 2 *Chron. 9. 21.* that *Solomon's* ships went to *Tharshis* with *Hyram's* Servants; every year once came the ships of *Tharshis* bringing Gold, and Silver, and Ivory, &c. seeing Gold in the 10. verse of that Chap. is called Gold of *Ophyr*, with subission, the word *Tharfish* there may signifie the Sea. For it appears by the 1 *Reg. 9. 26.* that King *Solomon* built his Navy at *Ezion-geber* which failed to *Ophyr*. So as albeit 'tis styled the Navy of *Tharshis* and *Hyram's* Navy, 'tis probable those two neighbour Princes were concerned in the returns of that Voyage; the *Phoenicians* at that time being more expert Sea-men than the *Jews*. Notwithstanding which, that those ships were either riding in the *Mediterranean* or upon the *Nile*, unless brought over by sledge from *Cypros* or *Pelusium* as *Cleopatra's* was, is very improbable: For otherwise it will be said those Navies went to *Cades*, which place at that time being called *Tarshis*, *Pineda* fancies were Vessels belonging thereto. otherwise, passing that Streight they failed through the Atlantic, and doubling Cape *P. na Speranza* made that their way into the Red sea, as some have conceited. But a vain conception it is, seeing the Scripture in express terms acquaints us, That the Navies were built at *Ezion-geber* near *Eloth* upon the shore of the Red sea: so as had *Ophyr* been in any part in or near the Mid-land Sea, or come from *Tarshis* in *Cilicia*, then the voyage might

might have been accomplished in far less time than three years, seeing that *Tarsis* was not above a weeks sail from *Toppa* a Port twenty miles West from *Jerusalem*, and not above three days sail from *Scauron* (*Alexandretta* of old) the most noted Syro-Pennician Port at the bottom of the Streights. But those that think by *Tharshish* is meant *Ophyr*, or else that there was some Country in *India* of that name, are more to be credited.

Further, from 2 Chron. 20. 36. where it is written *That Jehoshaphat built ships in Ezion-geber, which being broken were not able to go to Tharshish*, some judge that *Tharshish* there signifies the Sea; and the rather, for that the word carries it in several other places, as noted by several learned Expositors. Saint Hieron is one, who in his Paraphrase lately mentioned speaking of *Ophyr*, *Locus est India* (says he) *in quo Aurum optimum nascitur*: adds, *Tharshish vel est Regia Indie ut videt Josephus; vel certe omne Pelagus Tharshish appellatur: Etenim, Hebrei Tharsis Mare dici generaliter autumantur; secundum illud, in Spiritu vobementis confringat Naves Tharshish, i. e. Maris.* And in his Comment upon the second chap. of *Ezay*, he also saith that *Tharshish* in Hebrew signifies the Sea. In *Ezay* also chap. 23. vers. 1. *Utricque naves Tharshish*, is interpreted, *Howl ye ships of the Sea.* And in the 6 verse, *Go' over to Tharshish* in the Vulgar Latine it is *Transite maria.* In like sort the *daughter of Tharshish* is in the 10 verse translated *silia mari.* And in *Ezek. 27. 12, 25.* *The ships of Tharshish* is rendered *Naves Maris* in that Edition. But by being thus variously construed, thence it is that by *Tharshish* sometimes is understood a Chrysolite, for the colour of that stone hath a resemblance with the Sea. Howbeit, to find it in an Indian Region, as that great Author I lately named imagines, is past my undertaking; nor am I willing to prescire their conjectures any further.

Return we therefore to *Malacca* it self, where the Pole Arctic is elevated five degrees: a City within the Kingdom of *Siam*, to whose Sceptre it was subject until about the year of our Lord 1508. when by the *Portugals* it was forced from *Abdal* at that time King; whose life they also very inconsiderately took away, as appeared by a dangerous mutiny soon after hapning in the Town, which *Albuquerque* quieted and by *Sequnya's* advice was converted into a Garrison: It had a sufficient number of Ordnance planted to fortifie the place, seeing it is reported there was no less than three thousand. Also setting the Kings Exchequer into his hands, by Inventory then taken so much minted Coin came to the King of *Portugals* particular share, albeit but a fifth, as amounted unto two hundred and fifty thousand Ryals of eight. But the unexpected and undeserved death of the King was so ill resented by the *Siam* King and the neighbouring Potentates, that by a general combination taking the advantage of *Albuquerque's* absence they suddenly appeared in a very great body before the Town and by a desperate storm malstered both City and Cittadel; the *Siam* King very generously giving the *Portugals* leave to ship themselves away, but withal commanding the Works they had made to be forthwith slighted. Howbeit, some few years after it was reduced under the Crown of *Portugal*, and so continued until lately it hath been wrested from them by the *Hollander*; whose Plantations are scattered through those parts and Naval power so increast by the encouragement of that rich *Indian* commerce as hath rendered that industrious Nation very formidable; and which indeed hath given them welnigh the dominion of those Seas, and the opportunity of ingrossing to themselves not only the *Molucco-Isles* but in a sort the sole Traffick of the *Orient*; to their exceeding great advantage, but prejudice of many others; yet more especially to the damage and diminution of the English trade and reputation in those parts; for which we are justly to be reprehended; and imputable to our want of equal industry, or neglect of appropriating to our selves some convenient places for Plantation and increase of Men as well as Merchandise, according to that example the *Portugal* and *Dutch* have both given; who by that means have made themselves Lords of all or most of the maritim parts of the West and South coast of *Afrik* and *Asia* the great, and in a manner now give Law to the greatest part of those indolent people, who though they want no will, want power to obviate those intrusions. Whereas the *English* by a joint flock and select Company content themselves in managing their Factories under the superintendance and inspection of Presidents and Agents, who it cannot be denied live both in *India* and *Perse* with splendor and reputation, and make frequent and considerable returns unto their Masters: Nevertheless, by living wholly amongst Mahometans and Gentiles, they are doubtless under strong temptations to wantonies with those black beauties; and having their constant residence in places where men exercise Authority and Heathenish Superstition and Idolatry, our men are under a constant offence to see God dishonoured, and have not that protection and indulgence they expect and merit; seeing that many times they are subjected to the causeless bravadoes of the Military, as also to the craft of the Civil sort of *Indians*; and upon sleight cause and false information have too often been exposed to the rapine and arbitrary

try disposition of those Infidels; who of late times (if report say true) have been known to cast our Merchants into prison, where they have been fettered in chains, and not set at liberty without considerable sums extorted from them; and all this without any just cause or provocation: which affronts would have been avoided had our East-India Company fixed Plantations in some secure places either upon Isles or Sea Coast there, where Men might exercise their Religion with more freedom and purity, and with more security to their Persons and Estates than possibly can be expected in the moving Factories they only for some time are resident. The *Portugal* found it so when they had *Ormus*, *Goa* and *Calicute*; and the *Dutch* no less by their commanding in *Cochin*, *Malacca* and *Jacatra*, they now call *Batavia*, a most considerable Port and kept all along in despite of the numerous and resolute *Tayans*. Upon which considerations I have sometimes thought That if but one half of those *English* which have removed into the *Cariba* Isles and planted Colonies in *Virginia*, *New-England* and other parts of *Norumbega* in the *West Indies*, had (if the Royal Authority held fit) been employ'd upon Plantations in *East-India*, *Madag-scar*, *Mauritius* or other fit places, that design in all probability would in far less time have made another kind of product, both as to command by Land, and power by Sea, enlargement of Trade, and propagation of the Gospel: the Oriental Countries being superlative to the Occident in reference to all sorts of mechanick Arts, and also to a more valuable Commerce in Jewels, Gold, Silks, Spices and Drugs than *America*: *In Oriente omnia suciiora sunt & majora quam in Occidente: Orientales enim partes exidiiores sunt: Occidentalesque, quoniam Aromaticas similis genera & odores & delicias veluti ornatae, in illis ruderis videamus: in Occidente qui frigidior est minime nascuntur: Vicomercat. in Meteor. Afric. & Olympiadibus lib. 1.* And the Earth being over-spread with gross Gentilism gives no less invitation for the preaching of the Gospel and rescuing those poor Wretches out of Satans tyranny than any part of the New-found-World; which is and ought to be the chief end of all such generous and publick undertakings. And this in all likelihood might have been compassed by such a number (for as I apprehend, there are in our Wellcrown Plantations double the number of *Portugal* and *Dutch* now extant in the *East Indies*) and by Persons of such ingenuity and so good a purse as might advance the honour of our Nation, Growth of Trade and several other publique advantages. But to return.

Malacca is a Port of good account, whether we consider her strength or Trade; albeit by reason the Land is low where 'tis situate, it is not reputed healthy. The Town in shape is rather long than round; extending almost two *English* miles in length, but not half so much in breadth: The Buildings are low and ordinary, and the Streets narrow; the Bazaar being the only place that has any thing either beautiful or pleasurable. It is watered by the *Gaza*: upon whose banks *Bargaza* stood of old, formerly called *Mazore*: sufficiently deep and broad three leagues near the Sea; yet admitting a Bridge here, which makes the Inhabitants on either side able without Boats to communicate with each other. For its better defence it has a Cattle well stor'd with Cannon, and a wall about reasonably flanked and better by a late Grall and Counterfarp. The *Siamites* who were banish'd from their own homes feated themselves here, and being civil and industrious, Merchants from most parts of the East resort to them for Trade: so as in short time they became wealthy and considerable; after which they built the Town more large and beautiful than was intended at their first Plantation. The Gardens and Fields abound with fruits; amongst which the Duroyen is principal and the Pine-apple; albeit they want nor Corn or grain of several sorts; for the Land being low and the soil fat, gives the Labourer sufficient encouragement. Nevertheless, being so near the Equinox the air is usually warm, and at some time above measure, so that the *Solit Ophi* are here placed. Here is frequent thunder, but qualified by the long nights, and frequent showers and breezes. They observe here that the Monsoones blow West and North-west from *August* to *October*; about which month the wind veers North, and continues so, and to the Eastward of the North until *March* be ended: at which time the wind turns South, and holds there until the beginning of *August*. The *Indians* are numerous hereabouts; the better sort wear rich Apparel, but the commoners go most part naked: They are generally witty and hospitable; love Mulick and novelties: civil in peace, fierce in war; desirous if too much credited. Their Language is of great extent; no less there than in the World elsewhere are the *Lame* and *Arabick*. *Sincapura* divides this Continent from *Sumatra*; being scarce half a degr. to the North of the Equinoctial, and the most Southerly Cape of the *Aisan* Continent: it was a Town of considerable Trade with the *Chineſes*, *Tayans*, *Sumatrans* and People of other Isles therabouts, until *Malacca* drew the Commerce from thence; by whose growth *Sincapura* became impoverished: The *fretum* so narrow

as a musquet will reach over, and by reason of Rocks very dangerous for passengers. *Ptolemy* calls it *Simila*; but *Sinicora Castaldus*.

Hence to *Patania* is not above twelve hours travel. *Ptolemy* calls that place *Potinga, Castaldus Balanga*, others *Perimula*: but all agree it is in the Gulph of *Bengala* which of old was named *Sinus Argonicus extra Gangem*. There the Arctic Pole is elevated seven degrees: A Town it is situated betwixt *Malacca* and *Siam*; of good trade by reason of the commodities it affords, which attracts Merchants: Under Regal Government: for the Princes derive themselves from one *Ginge* Son and Pro-rex to the King of *Delly*, here substituted when *Patania* was subjccted. The Mogul his great neighbour has oft threatened to deshrone him, yet he keeps his own being safe-guarded by interposing *Ganges* and some small but usefull Islets where he advantageously fortifies. The Town is by situation strong, and by twelve pieces of great Brads Ordnance better strengthened; one of which our men call a Basilisco being twenty six foot long and well proportioned both in bore and squaring. Some Temples of Idolatry here as in *Joor* its neighbour are seen: but of better note are those ancient Monuments of some of their Kings who are there buried.

The people are black, and by reason of the heat shew most part of their body naked: Great delight they take in chawing Betche and Opium, Arac (or strong liquor) they also drink exceedingly: The better sort usually eat in thin plates of Gold, others in Porcellane. The people usually speak three Languages, the *Malai*, the *Siam* and that of *China*: but their writing differs, for the *Malai* write from the right hand to the left as the Hebrews use; the *Siam* from the left unto the right as we; but the *China* down-right or perpendicular: all three usual, and no lesse useful to those that traffique there.

They are a mixture of Mahometans and Gentiles: the one so worship God, as the other do their Pa God; both erroneously. Hospitable they are to such as from desire of novelty or gain reside amongst them, and enquire not much of their Country, busines or Religion: but fo addict to Vice that Strangers who thither come as Travellers or Merchants, have extraordinary need to pray for grace to resist Female temptations; and to remember that truth the Poet mentions,

*Parva voluptatis quanquam sint gaudia, longa
Pena tamen sequitur, misero permixta dolore.*

The French also, who are as amorous as others, have experimentally given us this cautionary lesson:

*From Women light and liquorous,
At all times God deliver us.*

*De Femme volage & friande,
En tout temps Dieu nous defende.*

For assuredly, the custom as well as the heat, in most places of these etherique Regions, incline and allure men, especially Strangers, to lubricity and debanch'd courfies; *Ob! miserum cui peccare lucet*; such as if grace does not restrain have reason to take heed of punishment, seeing Adultery they nevertheless punish. Howbeit, the young Women are carelessly frolicke and scarcely merry; the married melancholy, because strictly observed. Killenes and heat provokes them, so as they wallow in all manner of turpitude: The Grape moves them they say to wickednes; for they delight their gulf and pallat with choicelest Wines, Waters, Arac, Rice and fruits: but by this their intemperance abbreviate their dayes, so as sixty years is accounted an old age, which if you contemplate their excels (Deaths Harbinger) and the Zone they sweat in, may well be granted. Adjoining this is

S Y A M (*Sabanna* and *Cortathas* of old, a City and Kingdom so named, declining North from the Äquinoctial 14 degrees) a great and famous part of *India*, having *Patania* to the South, to the West *Pegu* and part of the *Bengalan* Gulph; *Joor*, *Malacca*, a great part of *Pegu*, *Brama* and *Cambogia* were tributary to him; *Patavia* also, *Tamobay*, *Odica* and other Territories watered by *Ganges* acknowledge him: so as his power is large, and well known that within the memory of Man he was able to bring into the Field five hundred Elephants and two hundred thousand fighting Men armed with good Swords, Bows and Arrows, Shield and Lance. The King pretends to a large Race of kingly progenitors. The Zone is hot, which makes the Men black, and in such places little cloathing is requisite; so that they content themselves with a Cambolin of Lawn of a sordid colour which is trebled about their shoulders: Howbeit, some tie a leather skin about their neck; and as a badge of devotion gird their middles with a thong, and hold a Sumbreno in their hands to abate the heat, but wear no sandals; both that the scorching sands may mortifie

mortifie their flesh, and that the *Tallapo* may be thought meritorious. Now albeit liberty be allow'd Christians, Moors and other superstitions, nevertheless the Natives are transcendent idolaters, carving their Deities after the shapes of *Pan* and *Prisapus* with other goatish fancies; yea in postures not fit to be remembred. They have Groves and Altars also whereon they offer flesh, fruits, flowers; and many times when the *Tallapo* tell them gheir *Dreams* is melancholy, they warble out harmonious musick, and do what they can to make him chearful. Others by break of day run to their *Pagoda* with a basket of Rice, hoping that day will be happier. The Kings of *Arrachan*, *Tamassery*, *Syam*, *Pegu*, *Anva* and *Tacca* are all Gentiles, and have their Temples studded with *Pagods*.

The *Tallapos* preach usually every Monday (their Sabbath) in the Market, and assemble their Auditory by the sound of a copper Basin. These seem Mendicants by profession: yet what by awe, for as some say the very infernal Spirits obey their incantations; and what by policy, for they contemplate humility externally very much, the People have them in high estimation: By their prediction of future events, and marvellous knowledge in things past and present; by magick and moral observation, resolving, dislaundering, applauding, directing and delighting such as credit them; and credit them most of those *Ethnicks* do, they are in great esteem, as believing them

— Interpres Divum, Qui Numina Phœbi,
Qui tripoda Clarii laures, qui Sydera senti,
I : Volucrum Linguis, & pœpctis omnia pennæ.

Of gods th' Interpreters and Phœbus lays,
The three-legg'd charming Stool, the Claryan Bays,
Planets, Birds Language, and all old assays.

Such be their Priests: And for the People, as report goes, they have been detestable Sodomites; sin so hateful to Nature as not to be named; for as an unnatural uncleanness it abhors it: now to deter these Catamites, a late Queen Rectrix prudently commanded that all the male-Children shoule have a Bell of gold in which was an Adders-tongue dried put through their prepine; which by custome took away the contempt, and became their ornement; so that at this day some will exceed, and not unlike the *Chor-bances* of old, have three or four of thos Bells, pendent. But when they have a mind to marry, the Mid-wife presents a soporiferous potion, during whose operation the Bell is loosed from the flesh and fastened to the fore-skin, and the unguent being applied the one is quickly perfected. This practice and other the uncomely habit and lascivious practices of the Women there, *Cesar Frederic* observes in his Travels; as also Mr. *Fitch* a *London* Merchant, *Antonio Gatsano* and others: and how incredible soever it seems to some, I suppose there are born in *London* and other parts of *Europe* Merchants and Sea-men who have been in those parts, and seen what I have here related. Here Sedge and Palmetto-leaves are used for paper.

The usual place of residence for the King is at *Indy*, a Town situated within an Isle compassed well-nigh with the *Menam*: His Palace is large, pretty well built, and held tenable. Howbeit most other Houses are low and mean, the Streets narrow; but available to keep out the extreme heat which at some times rages. Those of the Coast of *Chormandal* the one way, and the *Chynes* the other trafique hither with Sattens, Porcelaines and other rich Commodities, which makes the place the more noted. The Boyes oft-times paint themselves with a celestial colour from top to toe, and as an augmentation of beauty cut, gash and pink their skins, which they apprehend to be a noble and ingenious ornament: but to us rather bred horrour than affectation. The Men affect perfumes and praetice complement.

The soil, notwithstanding the River *Menam*, is but indifferent for Grass; but uberonous in rich Stones, as Diamonds, Chrysolites, Onyx, Magnets and Bezards: it hath plenty of *Lignum Aloës*, Benjamin and Cotton: it hath also Mines of Iron and Copper; there is Gold and Silver also, which causes *Ptol.* to call it *aurea regio*, and *aurea continens*, *Oriellus*. Silver is plentifully brought thither from *Japan*, but Victuals and like commodities they have abundantly from other parts; which is the reason that they are bought here cheaper than in many other places. Amongst Stones, most memorable is the Cabriz or Blood-stone here generated; the marvellous vertue wherof is such as *Oforius* tells us, That when the *Portuguez* had War with the *Samarans*, one time they delièred a Junk at Sea, which after some resistance was boarded by *Nahodabeg* the Captain: but after a long and smart fight, the armed *Portuguez* entring among the naked *Indians*, easily put to the Sword all that besid's not quarter. Amongst others *Nahodabeg* himself, who bled not albeit they had slain and wounded him in sundry places. They were amazed at the sight, and thought it magical; till having taken from his arm a Bracelet of Gold wherein was set the Cabriz-stone, the reason then appeared: for that was no sooner removed, but blood issued abundantly

dantly from every wound he had. Doubtless this is the best Blood-stone in the World ; and could it prevent wounding as well as staunch blood, might worthily be ranked amongst Stones most precious. The Beast out of which this Cabriz-stone is taken is called Caball. The Chineſes reſiding at Bantam are best acquainted with him : albeit ſome ſay that in Syam and the Jave he is ſeen the oſteſt. Adjoining this

P E G U, *Leftarum Regio in Ptolomy;* confined by *Syam, Ganges, and the Ocean;* a Monarchy of greater extent fifty years ago, and till the *Syamite* plucked forceably from that Crown ſeveral great and wealthy Seignories : Howbeit, ſhe is yet Commandreſs of many large Territories and Islands, as *Monym, Barongo, Nogomallo, Duradura, Cocos,* and others.

By *Caffaldus* it is ſuppoſed to be that old *Triglipon* or *Triglipon* which is mentioned in *Ptolomy*, and by him placed under 18 degrees : the *Braman Metropolis*, and has Arct elevation 16 degrees 40 minutes. The City is walled with Stone, beautified with Turrets, and to iſſue out and in ſhews four fair Gates, and thrice that number of Poſterns : but made moſt deſtitute by a deep Graff that compaſſes her : ſo large and deep, and has ſuch entercourſe with the Sea that Crocodiles are many times ſeen to ſwim there. The Streets are not many; but thoſe that are large and broad (which is rare in hot Countries) and ſeldome crooking. Afore moſt Doors grow Trees, whose fruit and shade make them uſeful and acceptable. It is diuided into the new and old : the old is greateſt, and beſt inhabited. The Country is now very bare in Wood, albeit in old times it abounded with Timber of great height, of which, *Virgil* in his 2 lib. *Georg.* ſeems to have ſome knowledge :

*Of thoſe great Woods in th' utmost India bred,
Near the Worlds furtheſt Border, whofe high head
No Shaft can well the tops thereof ſurmount,
Though ſhot by thoſe we Archers good account.*

*Antiquos Oceano propior gerit India lucos
Extremi ſinus Orbis ; Ubi aera vincere ſumnum
Arboris haud illuc jactu potuere Sagittæ,
Et Gens illa quidem ſumptis non tarda pharetris.*

For near the River *Hyrtis* (ſaith an Historian) grew Trees ſo exceeding high, as their meridional shadows extend five furlongs, which exprefs a due temperament of heat and moisture: But that theſe are ~~ancient~~ is evident by their *Varella's*, which are obſervable: for moſt of their *Varella's* are ſtuffed with ugly Idols. That at *Doggonee*, the moſt remarkable for ſtructure without and ornament within, oubraving any other in the Orient: the Wildernes or Garden about it and ſuperftition there uſed are ſo strange as might very well challenge a large deſcription.

This Kingdom abounds with moſt ſorts of Natures breflings; for here is ſtore of Gold, Silver, Lead, and Iron; also Smaragds, Topazes, Rubics, Saphires, Garnats, Emeralds, Espinels, and Cats-eyes: as alſo plenty of Rice, Caravances, long Pepper, Sugar, Benoyn, Musk, Lac, a Gum prepared in like ſort as Bees do Wax, and of which our beſt ſcaling Wax is made; Bamboo, Cotton, and Callicoes: But all theſe if they were concupited are not able to make them happy, wanting the true Pearl, that which the godly Merchant bought, though to obtain it he fold all his frail poſſeſſions: For albeit the holy Apolte Saint *Thomas* brought them tidings of ſalvation; yet they love Darkneſs more than Light, delighting at this day in obfcur and loathed fins, and the Kyacks are filled with filthy Idols: inſomuch that *Bomferrus* an old Francifcan after four tedious years labour to reduce them to ſome conformity with the Church of *Rome*, came home, profeſſing that he had rather with Saint *Anthony* preach among Pigs than ſuſh a ſwinne Generation. The truth is, like thoſe mentioned in the 4th of *S. John* 22. they believe they know not what; and *Quanam eſt iſta ſimplicitas neſcire quod credas?* ſayes *Hierom* to the Luciferians: yet ſomewhat, if all be true he tells, is worthy your notice. As, that they believe the World (consiſting of Heaven, Sea, and Earth) had four Creations, (which Tradition is from the Bannyan;) and that for impiety it was four times deſtroyed, viz. by Fire, Wind, Water, and Earthquakes: Each Age was governed by a tutelary Numen; miſerable in this, that he was tranſitory and not immortal. They reckon that the laſt deſtruction of the World and the death of their laſt God was thirty thouſand years ago (in *Plato*'s great year perhaps;) and that all ſhall once more ſuffer a Chaos. They alſo imagine, That a great Lord who is omniscient and omnipotent lives and rules in Heaven: but they do not worship him, in that Satan (who ever loves to cover Truth in dark mifts of ignorance) assures them he desires it not, and doth them no hurt, howbeit they worship that Lyar left he do them miſchief. They believe a revivication of the body after death, co-union with the ſoul; and (as *Bomferrus* believes) confeſſs a three-fold recep-tacle of ſouls departed, *Nahac, Niſhac, and Schua*, i.e. Heaven, Hell, and Purgatory:

by

by which, the Friar labours to convince us of equal ignorance with these Pagans.

Their habit is a thin fine Lawn; some call it a cambolyne, which differs little from that they wear in *Indostan* and *Siam*: but in this they vary; they wear no beards; and had a fancy to dye their teeth black because Dogs teeth are white, whom they hate to imitate. They also cut and pink their flesh to become no less modish than their Neighbours. The Crows and Parats here are gray, as usually in *Afric*. The Land is low in many parts, and subject to inundation: but which trouble them most be ravenous Beasts, as Tygres, Wolves, and the like offensive Creatures; to avoid which they raise their Houses upon Arches or posts of Bamboos that be large Reeds, and they ascend usually by easie Ladders.

About an hundred years ago the Peguan Monarch was far more formidable than he is at present: his Diadem then sparkled with the lustre of twelve wealthy Provinces which acknowledged *Pegu* their Sovereign: some of those were *Siam*, *Aura*, *Chavilan*, *Barmaw* or *Brama*, *Jangomer*, *Tangram*, *Cablan* (where are found store of Rubies, Sapphires, Espinels, and other precious Stones which are digged out of the Rocks) *Lawan*, *Melotalk*, &c. out of which he yearly extracted two millions of Crowns and a million of Men to serve him upon all occasions. This hardly could content him (for what will satiate the ambitious?) seeing that by a too lofty conceit of his greatness he had his neighbour Princes in contempt: Tyranny succeeded his pride, and that begot destruction. For the Vice-roy of *Aura* when he found no priviledge by being his Uncle, nor that he willingly submitted under his Government, broke asunder his silver yoke of servitude: Howbeit, e're he could ripen his design, the Peguan having notice suddenly arrests him; so that in amazement he acknowledges his fault and begs the others mercy: but the Peguan King, not liking a reconciled Enemy, quickly made his Uncle shorter by the head; and to terrifie others by that example, made Wife and Children, and forty others whom he most suspecked, bear a part in that sad Tragedy. It was Justice upon the Rack no doubt, and served rather to exasperate others than to secure their Loyalty: as appeared by the Vice-roy of *Siam*, who perceiving his own uncertain standing, (the least cause breeding Jealousie, & the least jalouie ushering death) he suddenly rebels; and with all the force he could raise e're the Peguan returned from *Aura* enters *Pegu* in a hostile way. But the King having proclaimed him a Rebel and threatened terrible revenge, marches against the Siamite with an Army as some report of nine hundred thousand fighting men: That world of men could not contrarie the Decree of the Almighty: for such was the confused haste he made precipitated by fury, such the hate his cruelty had gained him, and such the affright his Uncle's *Malus Genius* every where presented, that after three hours fight his monstrous multitude turn tail and yield themselves a prey to the enraged Axe of War, which was guttred with blood: so as by that dayes victory the Siamite advances in Triumph. Howbeit, not willing to make more haste than good speed, he returns and fortifies the most considerable places in his own Kingdom: whiles the Peguan King winged with rage in the head of another numerous Army enters *Siam* with a resolution to pursue him to his very door: but the Siamite (arming himself with the Foxes skin) refuled to fight; not so much out of fear as refolved upon an easier way of conquest. For whiles the Peguan darts many fiery defiance, and calls him Rebel, Coward, and what not; the Siamite opened the Sluces and gave way to the swift Rivers *Suhan* and *Medon* or *Menon* to break their banks, which flushed so violently into the Peguan Army that for want of Boats, which they call *Paros*, above seven hundred thousand of the Peguan Army perished; and the rest with fear, or famine, totally were destroyed. Nor was this strange, seeing that the *Suhan* and the *Menan* (like *Nile* and *Niger*) overflow, and supply their want of Rain, mellowing the Earth so as it compares with *Egypt* for plenty, and with any other part of *India* for rarities. *In solo tanta est fiducia Mero*: And not only these but several other Rivers running in divers Countreys within the burning Zone overflow their banks, such time as the Sun is in or near their Zenith; the Sun being then usually obscured by Clouds, which break and pour down Rain in abundance: by which continued storm of Wind and Rain Summer is turned into Winter; for when the Sun is furthest from them, their season is then serene and pleasant. Now as the reason of the overflowing of the *Nile*, *Niger* and other Rivers in *Africk*, is imagined to be from that influence the Sun in his order hath upon those many sublime Mountains, which being covered with Snow, melts not in Winter, by reason of the intense coldness of the air, but at the Suns approach thaws, and by its violent course or flux of Water causes those inundations: So about these Rivers in the greater *Afia* the Rains occasion the like, being very immoderate and of several months continuance, especially at such time as the Sun approaches their Vertical point; at those seasons attracting more Vapors than he can

can well dissipate: which being drawn up into the middle Region, is by the coldness thereof condens'd; and turned into Clouds: but within the temperate Zone 'tis otherwise, unless where the Climate is near the Tropick. Nevertheless, the King made shift to save himself from that inundation: for notwithstanding that incredible number their Records say were destroyed by that accident, the ensuing year he used the means to raise another Army which entered Siam; but with so little success, as besides the rout of five hundred thousand of his Men the death of his Son was added: so that he made a sorrowful retreat to Martavon with less than one third of his Army.



But which was worse than that, through these continued brawls of War his Treasure impaired, his Cities were impoverished by want of Trade, and his Kingdom in a sort depopulated through loss of so many men: Which proved not motives of pity with the other subjected Provinces, but provocatives rather to unfetter themselves as *Siam* had done. Accordingly the Vice-Roys of *Braman*, *Tangu* and *Rachan* confederate: and whilsts the King of *Pegu* was contriving new designs at *Martawan* enter *Pegu* with a desperate and numerous Army, foraging and destroying such as the late famine had spared; where though they found few people and less food, yet got they riches inestimable: For, out of the City of *Pegu* they took no less treasure than loaded two thousand Camels: and as a reward, not only made the wretched King crownless, but crowned their conquest with the loss of his life, his Wife and three Sons sorrowfully accompanying him.

This success was attended with misfortune of another kind: for the Sovereign of *Arakan* and the other two disagreeing about the dividing that great spoil, were beaten home by the Braaman King; who also enjoyed it but a while, the Siamite entering so furiously that the Braaman was content with a safe retreat leaving the Siamite victorious: who since, upon a marriage 'twixt one of the Royal Family of *Pegu* and his Daughter has quit his claim and gives the right Heir leave to re-police both City and Kingdom, which a short peace has recovered to little less trade and beauty than it had formerly. But to facilitate our travel, accept the preceding Map to that in fol. 336. This describing India on the other side *Ganges*.

From *Pegu* to *Bengala* are ninety leagues: the second Town of note is *Martawan* under 15 degrees; which some imagine to be *Triglinton* noted by *Ptolomy*, rather than *Pegu* as thinks *Cipaldus*. The next good Road is *Neraris bar*; nigh which is *Colmyr*, whence we pass to *Pegu* in Paroes or Boats by water. Vessels which are pretty large and tow'd together with *Cairo* as here called; a Cord made of the rind of *Cocos*, for they have no Iron: In these they load their curious Quilts and Carpets, stich'd and wrought with raw silk and threads of Gold and Silver, and the bark of a Tree they call *Moggi*; Calli-coc-Rice, Pepper, Ginger, Sugar, Honey, Butter, Lac, Wax, and other things Merchantable. *Madon* upon that River; from whence we go to *Bela*, to *Crion*, to *Mucao*, and then come to *Pegu*. At *Coptan* are found stones of price, as Merchants told us. To tell you what is reported of the vanity of this Monarch, both when he shows himself in his Royal Paradyse, or wh.n*i* is disposed to load himself with Gems; his head, ears, arms, hands, legs, and feet resembling a bejewelled Firmament; such as may amaze the sense, and dazzle the eye: or of his deifying his Elephants because milk-white and of greater bulk than usual, would be, but repetition: I will therefore content my self in giving you the prospect of that his Deity; not that he is unknown in *England*, but for other things than his shape rendering him worth the observation.

The Elephant, for growth and understanding, reputed the chiefest of unreasonable Animals, has been the subject of sundry learned Pens; as of *Aristotle*, *Plutarch*, *Pliny*, *Strabo*, *Annius* and others. They go two, sometimes three years with young, and have extreme torment in their labour; the tears 'twixt their fore-legs, which the young easily find and suck with eagerness. At three years of age they wean themselves and fall to other provant, as herbs, boughs of trees, shrubs, and like vegetables: but when in service have more dainty fare, as corn, fruits, roots, sugar-canies, milk, whey, and such as may increase both strength and courage. They grow and they be fifteen years old, and are usually eighteen foot high, but some of the highest mount to four and twenty. Notwithstanding which marvellous greatness they are not dull and unwieldy but quick and spirited. They can and usually do lie down and rise as other Beasts contrary to the report of some old Writers: so active notwithstanding their cylindrical form of leg as at *Rome* in *Nero* and *Gaius*'s time they were taught to dance upon a cable or great rope as we find reported by *Ammonius*; and so full of courage as no Glory gives more commendation to any beast than to the Elephant that King *Persia* fought upon against *Alexander*. And albeit his Tusks and his Proboscis are his best Weapons, yet can he frame his mighty body as occasion serves into offensive and defensive postures. In rutting time which is commonly when the season is hottest, the males are mad, and hardly to be ruled without the females company. Some confidently report That their testicles are in or near their fore-head; which being a tender part is the reason the Conductor sits upon his head, and with his iron rod or hook there corrects him: Howbeit, *Aristotle* places his stones near his reins. His Trunk is long and composed of small Nerves which befull of strength and very agile. His skin is tough and ash coloured: his Teeth proportionable to his body; some are thirteen foot long, and weigh upwards of a hundred and thirty pound. Muddy Rivers and cool shadowed places best please, but Swine, Serpents and Mice displease them;

Cock.

Cock-crowing also doth offend them. The *Persians* call him the Symbol of Fidelity; *Egyptians* the Hieroglyphic of Justice; *Indians* of Piety; *Siamites* of memory; *Arabs* the Ensign of Magnanimity; *Sumatrans* the Embleme of Providence: *Pliny* in 8 lib. *Nat. Hist.* gathers them together; *Intellectus illi Sermonis patris imperiorumq; obedientia, officiorumq; didicere memoria, amoris & gloria voluptas, imo vera Religio quae*; *Syderum Solisq; ac Luna veneratio, &c.* Whence it is says another That *Elephantum Belluarum nulla est prudentia, &c.* attributed to the coldness of his Blood; for (as *Aristotle* observes) Beasts by how much they partake of cold, so much are they adjudged to approach the Sagacity of Man. I shall sum up all in that excellent description lib. *Job.* c. 40. as by Mr. *Sandy* is paraphrased.

*With Thee God made the mighty Elephant,
Who Ox-like feeds on every herb and plant.
His mighty strength lies in his able loys,
And where the flexure of his nose joys.
His streches out Tail protrusts a mountain Pine;
The frownes of his Stones like cords combine,
His Bows the hammer'd Steel in strength surpasses;
His Sides are fortify'd with Ribs of Brass.
Of Gods great Works the chief. Lo, He who made
This Behemoth, hath arm'd him with a Blade.*

*He feeds on lofty hills; lives not by prey:
About this gentle Prince the Subjects play.
His limbs he couches in the cooler shades,
Oft when Heaven burning Eyes the fields invades
To manifes: he roights, obscur'd with reeds
And hairy willows, which the moisture feeds.
The chiding currents at his entry rise,
Who quivering Jordan quallows with his eyes.
Can the bold Hunter take him in a Toil?
Or by the Trunk produce him as his spoil?*

Musk Cats here are also storie of: she exceeds the Castor for bigness; her head is little, her eyes are clear, and has a long muzzle; but her teeth be sharp and offensive: her hair parti-coloured, hard and bristly; yellow above and white downwards. Her pocket is near the genitory, except sometimes with a spoon or stick, but when out of servitude of her own accord the parts with it, which by its fragor is oft discovered by the carlels pallenger. Come we now to the Indian Islands, the chief of which is

S U M A T R A that famous Isle which *Aristotle lib. de Mundo* and others of old called *Taprobane*; and from the plenty of Gold found there supposed to be *Ophyr* or *Paravaym*, and the Isle thence called *Taparvane*, with which agree *Junius* and *Tremellius*, as formerly noted. *Odoric* calls it *Symota*; *Josephus Samora*; others *Alramis* and *Zamara*; *Symunda* in *Plotomy*; by the Inhabiters *Salyca* or *Salura*: and if *Japan* be not an Isle may truly be reputed the third great Isle throughout the Universe: six hundred, some say nine hundred of our miles long it is, and in breadth some were two hundred and forty: traded to as some suppose by *Solomon*; unknown to *Alexander* unles (as *Megasthenes* thinks) by *Oeneferius* his Vice-admiral discovered. *Jambulus* an errant Greek was here two hundred years afore Christ's nativity if *D. Sic.* had true information; and if so, may be reputed the first discoverer: but of a Christian *Alvaro Teleszo* is thought the first, who *Anno 1506.* to find out Gold failed whither wind and weather guided; since when most Merchants of the World have knowledge of it. 'Tis Nadyr to the Equinoctial: so that our Pole-star is not in the Southerly part of the Island at all visible but deprest under the Horrizon. Many petty Kings there advance their Scepters; but the richest Crown incircles the ecliptic brow of that Tyrant of *Acbeen*: Howbeit, all of them are well stored with Gold and Stones, but miserable in their Mawmetry and Superstition. Most of them were not many years since so engulphed in the abyss of Paganism that they used to adore Cat, Rat, Dog or Devil; but since the Alcoran has crowded in, the worship of these elementary creatures is abolished. Both Sexes go most part naked. The soil is good where Rivers are near, but barren where Gold is obtained.

Several Towns of note here be. The mediterranean arc *Manancabo* formerly called *Syn-docanda* where is Gold: But of best note are *Acbeen* by them called *Ahey* (not far from that Cape called *Jovis promontorium* in *Plotomy*), *Peder*, *Pacem*, *Dayi*, *Tico*, *Priaman*, *Jambee*, *Tyko* (East of *Jambee*), *Barwzee*, *Caratinga*, *Menancabo*, *Gambir*, *Aru*, *Daru* and (though last not least in Gold) *Pafzman*. In the Strait twixt the Island and the Continent against for which the King of *Acbeen* subjected in the year 1613 are the *Barella* and other small but very pleasant islands. The Rivers flow with fish and might prove more delightful for the Net and Angle, did not those hateful Crocodiles (here more than in *Nileus*) frustrate both. *Natura se potissimum prodit in minimis* has reference to *Democritus* his Atomes; otherwise this might have challenged it, seeing these *Amphibii* are observed to be one of the greatest wonders we meet with, in that from so small a beginning as an Egg, not much bigger than that of a Turkie it increases to eight or ten yards in length: and whereas all other creatures have their growth unto a period and then decay, the Crocodile only grows bigger and bigger until his death, *Pliny Nat. Hist. L. 3. cap. 25.* Their bodies are not longer than their tail, a weapon of like use with them the Proboctis is to the Elephant: Their mouth is very wide, at one gulp being able to swallow horse or man;

their teeth are ingrafted; have no tongue; cannot move the upper jaw: and albeit the belly be penetrable the back is hardly to be pierc'd. The brumal quarter they fast from food: but the rest of the year devour all sorts of prey, and that with voracity. No less notable is the number of 60 in the Female; for sixty days past e're she lay her eggs, which are usually sixty in number; sixty days she conceals them; and when she sits, spends sixty days in the hatching; she has sixty teeth, and sixty joints; and sixty years is usually the age of this detested Amphibium, whether it be Beall, Fish, or Serpent. By Seamen called *Alligatior* corruptly from *Allegedor*, a word compounded of Spanish and Almain: the name we give is *a croco colore*, or per Autiphrafin *quid crocum timeat*. The most noxious of all Sea-monsters is it, and rightly becomes the Dissemblers epithete, *In quibus est astutus*. *Hyses, & pieas Crocodili*: the *Egyptians* make it the Emblem or Hieroglyphic of Impudence: and yet as daring as it is, we find them fearful of such as are bold, and bold only towards the fearful: awed by none more than the Ichneumon, who oft-times steals into his belly and gnaws his guts whilst he opens his chaps to let the Trochil in to pick his teeth which gives it the usual feeding; but the flesh is food so good and sweet, as by many it is accounted a dainty.

Hence we sail by sonic small Isles called *Marrab* and *Iampon* in the Straits of *Sundy*, so named by *Ptolomy*, and from a point and Town in the next great Island. Of *Polyzandry* we might better speake than land, such bad luck by malevolent *Venus* or ill dict had our late intend'd Plautation there; where was such mortality of men that the name was ironicaly changed into *Kill abundance*. *Sumatra* is divided from *Java* by the Straits of *Sunda*, so called from the Isles *Synde* as *Magnis* imagines; but *Sunda* is better known than the Isles so called.

JAVA Major is an Isle declining 7 degrees 40 minutes towards the Antarctic from the Equinoctial; and placed in the 120 degree of longitude. A very great and noble Isle: for, from East to West it stretches one hundred and fifty leagues, or of miles four hundred and fifty; and from North to South ninety leagues, or two hundred and seventy miles English. The mid-land is for the most part mountainous, and meanly peopled; but the maritim low, and very populous: the first is very subject to wind, but healthy; the latter marshy, and infalubrious. *J. Scaler* calls it a Compendium of the World; for it abounds with all things that be either useful or excellent. The coast (by reason of Trade for Pepper) has Towns best built, and most wealthy: upon the North side, and to the North east, are *Bantam*, *Palumban*, *Jackara* (new-named *Batavia* by the Dutch but formerly *Sunda Calipa* by the inhabitants); and not unlikely to be that City *Synda* where the people used with a dead body to bury so many live Fish as in his life time he had slain Enemics,) *Jepara*, *Tuban*, *Joriam*, *Grecy*, *Chyringin*, *Serbaya*, &c.

Bantam is under Antarctic declination or latitude 6 degrees 20 minutes, and of Westerly variation 3 degrees. Is is the biggest City in the Island, owned by the Natives, and stretched well-nigh two miles in length: the most remarkable places being the *Pengrans* Palace, the Bazaar, a few irregular streets; and at the furthest end the *Chymfes* there associate as do the Jews at *Amsterdam*, but nothing so splendid. The Town of its own growth affords little save Rice, Pepper, and Cotton-wool; albeit Pepper for the greatest part is brought thither by the inimitably industrious *Chyfes*, who each January come to an Anchor in multitudes at this Port, and unload their Junks or Praws from *Jamby* in *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, *Malacea*, and other places; making *Bantam* their Magazine; out of which for Rials, or by exchange for other Commodities they supply the English, Dutch, and other Nations. The *Coxymfes* are no quarrellers, albeit voluptuous, venereous, scoffly in their sports, great Gamblers, and in trading too subtil for young Merchants: oft-times so wedded to dicing, that after they have lost their whole Estate, Wife and Children are staked; yet in little time, Jew like, by gleaning here and there are able to redeem their los's; if not at the day, they are sold in the Market for most advantage.

The Isle has but one Supreme, or Sovereign Prince; they intitle him the *Mattaran*: He has four Tetrarchs, or Deputies his Subordinates. Is of that power that (as reported) he can draw two hundred thousand men into the Field upon occasion: ignorant in Martial Discipline, at least according to our form; but of approved courage and dexterity, and sufficiently ingenious both as to the invention of their Arms and Execution. They commonly use Lances, Darts, Arrow, and Shields. but their greatest bravery is in their *Cizes*; a Weapon that is commonly two foot long and four inches broad, waved, sharp both in the edge and point; but contrary to the Law of Nature and Nations, invented: the handle is usually of Wood or Horn, (howbeit some have them of Gold, or Silver or Ivory,) cut into the shape of a misshapen Pagod: Yet were they a thousand times more ugly these Savages would dare to Idolize; especially, in that they ask the

Idol on their crest pardon after they have perpetrated an homicide. Not unlike what was practised by *Lewis* the eleventh to the Crucifix in his Hat. But withal, theſe *Javans* are drunk in Demonomy; and the more earnestly embrace it by how much their corrupt natures abhor honeſty: whence it happens, that they trade in murder, adultery, theft, rapine, deceit, and all other wickedneſs. Magick alſo and Astrology delight them; alſo their Priests are excellent in, and in which Satan 'tis thought inſtructs them, the better to oblige their gratitude, and to worship him as the *Apollo* of knowledge: which we may inculcate with that of the Prophet *Isaiah* chap. 44. *Is there any God besides the Lord (Jehovah?) yea, there is no God, we know not any. He maketh the Divines mad, he turneth the wſe men backward, and maketh their knowledge foolish.* And in *Jerem.* 10. *Let us not learn the way of the Heathen, they are altogether brutiſh and foolish; his molten Image is filthiſh, and there is no breath in them: they are vanity, and in the day of account they ſhall perib.* But in the Lord ſhall all true Believers be justified, and ſhall glory. And to convince theſe, I may likewiſe oppole them with a Heathen informing them, that *Etsi Dei populares ſunt multi, inuicti tamen eſcē naturalē*: albeit national Gods there are many, there is but one natural the God of Nature, *Cic. l. 1. de Natura Deorum*, and much more with that of the Apostle; *Idolum nihil eſt in Mundo. Etenim eſti ſunt qui dicantur Dii, ſive in celo ſive in terra (ſicuti ſunt Diuini & Domini multi) tamen nobis unus Deus; Pater, ex quo omnia, & nos in illum; & unus Dominus, Iesu Christus, per quem omnia, & nos per ipſum.* An Idol is nothing in the World; and there is none other God but one: For, though there be that are called Gods, whether in Heaven or Earth (as there be Gods many and Lords many) yet to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him, *1 Cor. 8. 4.* To return,

The Natives, till of late, were not acquainted with Navigation: but in the Art of swimming (as moſt Negroes) are very excellent. And ſeeing they are not (for want of Ships and marine knowledge) capable of affairs abroad, thoſe that live ſome diſtance from the Sea make hunting their chief recreation: and ſuch ſport as tries their courage as well as agility; the Isle having ſtore of Tygres, Ounces, and ſuch Beasts as give chafe and reſiſtance. The Alcoran is known of late years in moſt parts of the Isle, and as an infectious air spread into the moſt remote Islands. Friendly they are towards the *English*, eſpecially ſince the *Dutch* forced *Jacatra* from them; betwixt whom is ſuſh variance, that fifteen Ryalz have been given by either as a reward for a Prisoner dead or alive: nor is there ever hope of true amity with Barbarians. The Oran-kays are the prime ſort of people; who are lazie and ſociable, but deceiſtful. They repute themſelves descended from *Chyna*; and have a Tradition that they landed there out of a Junk which was ſeven hundred years ago forced upon that Isle by tempeſt. They are a very proud race, wear their hair pretty long, and about their heads ſometimes wreath a valuable Shaſh which none but themſelves dare touch; but ge elsewhere naked to the waſte, where they gird themſelves with a party-coloured Mantle which falls no deeper than the knees. Their ordinary food (and not at eſte rates) is Rice, Wheat, Pinange, Betel, Opium, Goats, Hens, Eggs, Co-coſ, Plantains and Jacks; for drink they have excellent good Water; and for Wine, Rac-a-pe, which like the *Irish* Uſquebaugh drunk immoderately accelerates death; but tem-porarily exhilarates the heart, cures fluxes, kills worms, and helps diſtillation. These parts are for the greater part of the year ſuject to ſuich loud thunders and flashes of lightnings, as are very dreadful to ſtrangers.

Whence this noble Isle is called *Java*, I confeſs my ignorance. From *Javan* (*Japhet's Son*) would be ridiculous to ſuppoſe, in that moſt agree his Plantation was in the leſſer *Asia*: but in regard his Brother *Tharsis* peopled theſe parts, might he not ſi om his Brothers name, and to his memory, borrow the denomi nation? *Niger* apprehends that it is the fame was called *Inſule Javadiæ*, which ſounds like *Java*: ſome call it *Jamboli*. There is another in *Mora*, of that name: ſome alſo take it for *Taprobone*.

Nothing ſave Pepper and Cotton, preſent themſelves in this Isle worthy our noting. Pepper is a ſeed ſirſt ſown, and in the growth like Hops or Vines ſupported by poles, till by maturity it gets the strength of a bulky, round, and pleasant Tree: the Pepper hangs four inches in length and one about in many cluſters; each yielding fifty or lixti corns which be full, and round and fragrant: the ſmooth is beſt accounted of.

Cotton is no leſs observable. The Tree is ſlender but ſtreight, a yard high and like a Briar. *Vagil* in his *lb. 2. Georg.* ſeems to have notice of it,

*Trees grow in Ethiopia white with Wool,
Where, from the leaves the Natives fleeces pull.*

*Quid Nemora Æthiopum molli canentia la
Vellerat, ut foliis despectant tenuia Seres?*

At the top it divides itself into several branches, each of which is charged with many balls that contain the Bumbast: the shape thereof is round and equal to a Walnut. At maturity the pod opens and discloses her treasure; but being cropt, is in an entire heap with stails or such like useful though churlish instrument forced out, and by the enriched Owner cheerfully gathered.

The Malayan like those of *Indostan* have twenty six Letters in their Alphabet and write like the *Arabick*. The Language in these parts is no less epidemick than are the *Latine*, *Arabick* and *Sclavonian* elsewhere. These few common words may be useful to a future Traveller.

English.	Malay.	English.	Malay.
A King	Ruage	a barrel of a Gun	Sombo-body
a Noble-man	Oran-kay	a Looking-glass	Sarmi
a Lord	Kay	a Glass	Lora
a Priest	Cadda	a Lamp	Pudita
a Merchant	Pheor	a warm thing	Penas
an Interpreter	Jorbissa	a Cap or Turban	Cayo
a Man	Oran	a Marriage-maker	Coemodo
a Woman	Paran-poan and Tadon	a Command	T' sykya
a Child	Buds	a Year	Tawwa
a Boy	Cusson	a Day	Aris
a Youth	Monda	a Book	Nimoda. Kytab
a Father	Bubba	a Bed	Bantell
a Mother	Mamma	a good Day	Tabea
a Brother	Addal Ally	a Royal of 8	Serpi
a Sister	Adda-papar-as	a Christian	Vrangby
an Uncle	Niana	All	Samoanga
a Friend	Marry-lowry	the Head	Capell. Coar
a Strange man	Or-an-Leya	Hair	Rambojet
a Chirurgeon	Coching	Ears	Talinga
an Iror. Smith	Goads	Eyes	Martic
an Elephant	Catgah	Eye-brows	Alys
an Ox	Cambi. Al ombla	Nose	Irotton
a Goat	Carbow	Neck	Gondon
a Sheep	Domba	Lips	Lambider
a Dog	Hanghe	Tongue	Ilat
a Bird	Borrion	Teeth	Auton
a Hen	Ayam	Beard	Tianga
a Duck	Bebee	Back	Balacea
a Musk-Cat	Catto-Dalgallia	Shoulder	Baon
a Sow	Sabi. Sieleng	Arm	Backeyen
a Fish	Ican	Hand	Tangan
a Water-Pot	Laude	Finger	Tary-Laree
a Herb	Oberbedil. Lanchas	Belly	Penot
a Musk-Nut	Palls	Blood	Darno
a Ship	Capel. Juncuk	Privy part	Perot
a Boat	Prap. Paca-sura	Thigh	Backy
a Coat	Nassec	Leg	Gula
a Needle	Narcon	Foot	Bhacckye
a Cuffton	Negry	Toe	Ghoumo
a Rope	Tali	Fire	Api
a Stone	Batu	Air	Bayu
a Ring	Chansim	Water	Eyer
a Wimble	Allforces	Earth	Zam
a Shoe	Apon	the Sea	Chay
a Sword	Ita. Padang	Gold	Max. Cabo
a Dagger	Cryze	Silver	Peca. Salorca
a Knife	Pieson	Brails	Temba
a Javelin	Tomba	Copper	Tambagle
a Shield	Salvack	Lead	Tyma
a Gun	Bedyl. Pissit.	Iron	Negle

English.	Malay.	English.	Malay.
Mony	Sarfi	the other day	Bulmari-dula
Scarlet	Facc-a-lata-miera	Early	Pagi
Dath	Mattu	Night	Malam
Merchandise	Bayick. Dimana	to Morrow	Tsouck
Melancholy	Chinta	What say you?	Abba-catta
Silk	Sabuck	Is he not here?	Bee?
Paper	Cartas	What's done?	Bijimana?
Quills	Cazamp	Well done	Sooja
Ink	Mangsi	Where is it?	Murauten?
a Book	Khytab. Nymoda	Bring it back	Combali?
Wine	Aracca	Now	Bacabaren
Vinegar	T'suka	How much?	Barappe itu?
Strong water	Pinangba	Give place	Lalan
Bread	Sagu	Require it	Minta
Boil'd Rice	Braas	Regard	Nanthy
Fruit	T'acat	Lct pals	Gazga
Drink	Larnick	Near hand	Gila
Sugar	Gula	We will go	Maree
Salt	Garam. Matary	Leave it	Jangemast
Oyl	Niagzia	I have	Ada
Flefh	Lalyer	It is found	Botonvum
Fih	Iuack	It is	Dalar
Crabs	Horra	I will bring it	Addadizano
Plates	Pienig	I see	Green
Pepper	Lada. Sibang	I thank you	Terimacache
Ginger	Alia	I understand not	Tan, or Tyed-i-taw
Mace	Bengo	I care	Tage
Cloves	Chocbo. Sianck	I have not	Tyeda-da
Cinamon	Cajumayus	I defre not	Tyeda-man
Alocs	Garro	I am sick	Bite-secaria
Tamarind	Affa	to eat	Macan
Rice	Braas. Parce	to remember	Engat
Nuts	Calappen. Palla	to stretch out	Dufla
Sweet Gums	Daringo	to beat one another	Buccalayo
Sweet Spices	Dingyn	to afahme	Malor
Plantaines	Gardang	to choose	Damare
Cocos	Calapa	to pay	Chymi
Mustard	Sajani	to give	Bering
Eggs	Teloor	to buy	Biby
Woc	Saya	to live	Jagarus
Better	Parma	to poyon	Ampo
Great	Bazaar	to observe	Dodouer
Sweet	Marys	to be silent	Dyem
Heavy	Brat	to gain	Menang
Strong	Cras	to delftroy	Ilan
Needles	Calvenetten	to cover the head	Kocodang
Bags	Corni	to arise	Passai
Hard Wax	Caju-laccas	to burn	Baccar
Friendlhip	Pondarra	to kill	Benne
I	Manyr	to spin	Thedd
Thou	Pakameri	to fell	Towall
He	Itowen	to do	Bretoon
We	Dep	to fwear	Sempa
Ye	Pachanerius	to help	Toulong
They	Itowe	to us	Quis-bora
She	Dyz	to let blood	Rowang-darner
Sunday	Jon-mahes	to question	Betangia
to day	Mari	to know	Kyunal
Yesterday	Bulmari	to die	Bantaren

English.	Malay.	English.	Malay.
Take it	Ambell	Eleven	Sabala
Not good	Tieda-Bayek	Twelve	Dua-balas
Sloth	Cebcho	Thirteen	Tiga-balas
Give thanks	Tarima. Caffe	Fourteen	Eupat-balas
Farewel	Tingal	Fifteen	Lyma-balas
One	Satu	Sixteen	Nam-balas
Two	Dua	Seventeen	Toussion-balas
Three	Tiga	Eighteen	De lappan-balas
Four	Empat	Nineteen	Sambalam-balas
Five	Lyma	Twenty	Dua-pola
Six	Nam	Twenty one	Dua pola-satu
Seven	Toussion	Twenty two	Dua pola-dua
Eight	De lappan	Twenty three	Dua pola-riga
Nine	Sambalan	Twenty four	Dua pola-en-pu
Ten	Sapola	Twenty five	Dua pola-lyma.

BALY is an Isle East, and not far from Java, inhabited by Gentiles. The Women there as yet continue the custom of burning at their Husbands Funeral more than in other places in India, especially where the Mahometans have dominion.

Our course from Java to the Celebes is North-east; distant from Bantam two hundred leagues or thereabouts.

CELEBES, *Cassiteria* of old, or that which *Ptolemy* calls *Solis Insula* or *Qua Nympharum rubens cibile dictiur*, is now best known by the Name of Makasser from her belt City so called: an Isle for quantity and quality very considerable; for it stretches from the Equator six degrees South: oval in form it is, and two hundred miles long at least: well peopled, but with bad People; no place engendering greater Demonomials or till of late worse Savages: agreeing with the old name *Ptolemy* gave the Men which was *Anthrophagi* or Men eaters. Howbeit *Mahomet* is now known among them; but by him a malo in p[er]iu: for, though he teach them there is one and but one God, yet seeing JESUS CHRIST is there unknown, at least unbelieved in, how little does that knowledge advantage them? But the greatest part of the Inhabitants are Gentiles, who

Nil prater Nubes & Celi lumen adorant.

And yet *Antonio Pavia* a *Lusitanian* Priest reports that he converted many here to Christ; but at this day those foot-steps are very rarely to be discovered. From Makaffer to Cambyna W. N. W. are four and twenty leagues; and to Nossafires eighty are reckoned.

An Isle fruitful, though under the most trying part of the burning Zone. The Sun yields them day and heat enough; but Night their complexion. The habit they wear differs not from their Grand-Father Adam's, a few Fig or Plantain leaves being tied about their middles, and elsewhere naked. The better sort to vary from the vulgar are tulipanted; and the better to set off their coal-black Beauties shirt their skin with a pure white Shuddero which does not lenifie the scorching heat so much as it serves for ornament. The Women have adulterated their first stamp, not only by deforming their Face and Body with paint, but by that vile lubricity their Souls are spotted with. Impudence goes here unmasked: for contrary to the practice of most places, in the night these drink Rack which is their Wine, and then seem amorous: but it were well Travellers would remember that ancient Verie very applicable to this place,

Nox e^c Amor Viniuum, nihil moderabile suadent.

for such is their damned Art, that these Syrens can sing safety to themselves, when by the same pipe and weed they smoak another to death: a trick they will be perfect in though they die for it.



Pythagoras made the Wantons of *Crotona* modest and the men moderate. To these let me add with the Poet, *Iam qui corrigat, alter erit.* This Artifice of these lewd ones may run parallel with that Maid who by customary eating of *Napellus* (the most dangerous Poisou, some-say, of all Vegetables) hurt not her self; but poisoned such as had carnal knowledge of her. So as verily, that which *Menander* applied to the lewd *Cypriots* or *Propatide* very properly alludes unto these Courtezans,

Who have no fear nor shame for their offence ;
But hardened are with brazen impudence.

Quae vero nec trubescu
Nec metuant.

resembling those mentioned by *Pliny lib. 7. cap. 2.* named *Bythia*, *que pupillas binas habent in singulis oculis, in quis erat vis ita Naturalis ut visum efficiant & interrimant quos diutius intinuerit, oculis prorsum iratis, &c.* No less lewd and cunning in this hellish Art was *Parisatis* the Queen-mother who poisoned *Scythra* Wife to *Arsaces* by carving her half a Bird with a Knife that was invenomed but upon one side, as you read in *Plutarch*. And which is no less mischievous, the men use long canes or trunks called Sempitans out of which they blow a little prickling quill, which if it draw the least drop of blood, it destroys immediately : Some venoms operate in an hour ; others in a moment ; the veins and body (by the virulence of that poison) corrupting and rotting presently, even to terror and amazement. You cannot chuse but think this a Hell upon Earth, though at our first approach upon sight of so godly an Island, we thought it an *Elisium* : but remembering That

In pia sub dulci melle venena latent,

we hastened away for better places; the *Moluccoes* I mean, which *Ptolemy* calls *Synde*: than which, no part of the Universe gives more delight or greater varietie of refreshment.

Bbb

By

By the way we cast our eys upon many Iles, and (as we sail due East) upon *Baly* in 8 degrees 30 minutes; and *Tymore* in 10 degrees South 20 minutes Easterly from the last: both, more rich in stones and Spices and white sanders much prized by the *Baianyan* than some greater illes about them. Leave we also *Conio* and *Serran* unspoken of; not that they are unworthy, but because we haste to the *Molucco*, in view now, and where we mean to rest a while.

The *Molucco* Iles called *Solis Insulae* in former Ages, confine *India*, and are five in number, *Molucco*, *Gillolo*, *Ternate*, *Tidore* and *Machan* or *Maran*: in which last, *Magellan* after his long voyage Anno 1520, ended his life through the treachery of those *Barbarians*, to whose Prince he had but a little before given aliftance. The *English* were the first that ever traded to these illes of any Christians: so as most of them have ever since acknowledg'd our King their Sovereign: but by the *Dutch* it seems our men are now thrust out, as if all *India* were theirs by title from the Creation.

Of these, *Gillolo* is greatest and *Ternate* the highest: all of them afford Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, Ginger, Pepper, Oyl, Aloes and Honey. Most of them have the *Aequinoctial* for their Zenith, and by those diurnal shouers and breezes which fail them not with the Suns voicinge the fruits ripen sooner, the earth smells more aromaticall, and the air seems more nutritive there than observed in most other places.

The Clove-tree differs in proportion according to the place whence it receives its vigour: some are comparable to the Bay which it resembles, the leaves only somewhat narrower; others to Box or such like trees of humble stature: 'tis most part of the year green, having leaves long and small, distending into many branches. It bllosomes early but becomes exceeding inconstant in complexion; from a virgin white varying into other colours: for, in the morn it shews a pale green, in the meridian a distempered red, and sets in blacknes. The Cloves manifest themselves at the utmost end of the branches; and in their growing evaporate such sense-ravishing odours as if a Compendium of Natures sweetest gums were there extracted and united. They are pruned thrice every year, and gratefully retort a treble vintage: yea, though but perfected in three years, yet counted an advantage: seeing Physicians say They are hot and dry in the third degree, corroborate the stomach, benefit concoction, and suck up moisture so exceedingly that no other plant will prosper in its neighbourhood.

The Nutmeg like trees most excellent is not very lofty in height, scarce rising so high as the cherry: by some it is resembled to the Peach; but varies in form of leaf and grain and affects more compass. The Nut is cloathed with a defensive husk like those of a bafer quality, and resembles the thick rind of a Walnut; but at full ripenes discovers her naked purity, and the Mace chasty entwines (with a vermillion blush) her endcared fruit and fister, which hath a third coat, and both of them breath out most pleasing smells. The Mace in few days (like choicke beauties) by the Suns flams becomes tawny; yet in that complexion best pleases the rustick gatherer. In these Iles only are found those rare and beautiful Birds of the Sun which are commonly called *Almanandina* or Birds of Paradise. He is of the bigness of a Parrot; the feathers upon his head so small as iather resemble hair than feathers; his Train thick and very long but curiously coloured, in some parts of his body green, in others yellow, feet he has none: yet his Wings be large and of a bright colour; in flying he mounts exceeding high and continues long in motion: a bird for its rarity much esteemed by Travellers, and not without superstition by the Natives.

Several other Iles of note there are, some of which, namely *Amboyna* was in the quiet possession of the *English* until dispossed by the treachery and cruelty of some *Dutch*; who under a shew of friendship invited our Factors to a Feast where most perfidiously and to the perpetual reproach of their Christian Profession amongst Infidels, not content with the possession of the place they entertained those innocent persons with most cruel and exquisite Tortures. These Iles are commonly called the *Molucco* Iles or Iles of *Banda*; those two being accounted the principal.

B A N D A in 4 degrees 30 minutes, and from *Amboyna* twenty leagues: and *Amboyna* almost in the mid-way betwixt *Banda* and *Molucco*. *Puloway* is from *Banda* three leagues. From *Puloway* W. N. W. are *Lantore*, the greatest of the Iles of *Banda*, *Batuan*, *Labatacke*, *Nero*, *Tyobassa*, *Cumber*, *Salano* and others: all which, especially *Puloway* and *Puloren* appear as if they were continued Wildernes of Nutmegs and Clove-trees, Pepper, Vines and Olives. Until some late violence was offered by our emulous neighbours, the two last commerced first with our *English* Merchants and contracted a perpetual Amity with our King: but in affront to them and us they have forcibly expelled our Merchants thence and now intitle themselves Lords of *Banda*; caring neither for our Interest nor what

what right the *Ternatean* nor *Banda* Kings have over them: albeit 'tis well known the Dutch traded thither after the English, and that till the year 1598. they had no Trade in any part of the Indies; in which year three Ships and a Pinace set forth from *Amsterdam*, being their first adventure into the *East-Indies*; which how they have improved is understood to the terror and admiration of the Natives. Near these is

BORNEO, (by some supposed) *Insulabona Fortune*, and *Porne* we find mentioned in *Plutolomy*, is an Isle Nadyr to the Equator, in shape it resembles an oval Shield: the major part inclines towards the North; for her Antarctic elevation is not above 3 degrees, whereas the Arctic extends to 7 degrees odd minutes. The first discovery of any Christian European is attributed to *de Bruyn*, who in the year of our Lord 1523. accidentally came to an Anchor at this Island. At this day it groans for the most part under Spanish servitude; who where treasure is to be had become ingenious and indefatigable: but what Artifices they use is well known, and that under pretence of sacred an infatiate thirst after Gold is too oft discovered: albeit, they cannot well be ignorant that *Calum nulla est reparabile gazi*.

It has many Villages, and consequently much people; but the one, as to outward things, are poor, and the other wretched in their Idolatry: So as did not that plenty of Gold, Diamonds, and other Merchandise, as Bezar, *Lignum Aloes*, Musk, Civet, Benj-min, Amber, *Sanguis Draconum*, Wax, Rice and Rattans or Canes make her magnificient, the place would not be so attractive as it is to Merchants and Travellers. Her best maritime Towns and Ports are *Socodana*, which is in 1 degree 35 minutes South, and from *Bantam N. E.* a hundred and sixty leagues or thereabouts; and *Bemeraffin*: the rest be scarce worth the regarding.

Bezar, or as the *Persians* call it *Pezar* and *Pa-zabar* is of two sorts; found both in *Asia* and *America*: Of *Asia* the best is had in *Persia*, *Pegu* and this *Borneo*; and is of more value than what is had in the new-found World. It is oft found in the stomach or maw of a Goat in *Pegu*, and upon the *Indian Mountains*. Some nevertheless, (how truly know not) affirm it is no other than the congealed tears of a Stag; and that such as are taken from Beasts feeding upon Theriacal Herbs are most sovereign and of greatest vertue to expel poison, and other noxious distempers. The shape also is various; for some resemble a Plum, some a Date-stone, others Doves-eggs; and some are like Chestnuts and Goats Kidneys; but all blunt-ended. No less different are they in colour; for some are red, pale green some, other-some dark yellow, and some sky-coloured: the last are best, consisting of many scales which like Onions circumvolve one another, and in which Nature has express far more curiosity than Arts best imitation: for, each inferiour scale (not unlike the Orbs) yields more splendor than the other; and as it diminishes its quantity increases its vertue according as is in tenuity or thickness. Many are counterfeit: but to discover the fraud, they use to pierce them with hot Bodkins; or after they have weigh'd them steeping them in cold water four hours, if they crack not they are held good; and to know them for such, they first wipe and ballance them; observing, that if they weigh never so little above the first weight 'tis a sure sign they are base and of small value. It is also observed, that the Bezars of *Borneo* are not above half the value of those which are had in *Persia*.

Lignum Aloes according to the Country where it grows has diversity of names. The *Javans* and *Malayans* name it *Carro*; the *Indians* and *Portuguezers*, *D'Aquila*; but the *Chymes* and *Cochinchynes*, *Calamba*. It is framed of large round sticks of a clouded grain, mixed with veins of an alth-colour: pleasant to the eye, and ponderous in the hand; but of a bitter relish, and fitter for the fire than taste: for, hot coals no sooner touch it, but to the honour of its own Funeral it expires and vapours out an odour so aromatick and comfortable as no other is used by the *Indians*, *Malayans*, *Siamites*, *Peguans*, *Cambogians* or *Borneans*, when they burn the Corps of their deceased Parents, which with them is the noblest manner of burial.

Musk is bred in the navel of the Cat, and is either yellow, brown, or black: the first is held the best, the last the basest: the choicest shews a deep Amber colour not unlike Spikenard, and is cloathed with a moist skin which sweateth out some bristly hairs, without stones, lead or like adulterate mixture; but withal of so strong a smell that to many it seems offensive; and tasted, penetrates a strong brain by its frager: sweet Spices takes away the scent; and put into the mouth if it suddenly dissolve, or in the hand if it be long a melting, those are the usual wayes to discover the quality.

Civet (a sort of Musk bred in a little bladder within the testicles of a certain Creature not unlike a Cat) is of different colours: deep yellow (as I have been told) is usually the best, and the worst is white, for that is greasy and sophisticate: nevertheless when it is new it's observed to be pale, and gradually turns yellowish.

Benjamin by the *Malayans* called *Menyan* and by other *Indians* *Benyan*, is either white or yellow, but both are itreaked: the gum issues from a tree which is high and small and furnished with fruitles branches; the leaves are not unlike the Olive. *Arabia* has good, but *Pegu* and *Siam* better; whereas that from *Sumatra*, *Priaman* and *Baronie* is course and bad, and more approved of at *Java* than in *England*.

Amber is of many forms, grey, brown, white and black: grey is reputed best, the black is worst, the other two be indifferent. The best sort of grey is pure and interlac'd with silv veins and not subject to sink; for the most part got in *Soffala*, *Magadoxa*, *Mombassa*, *Mombibi*, *uc*, *Madagascar*, *Mobelia*, *Melinde* and other parts of South Africk, found there at incertain hazards. Now concerning Gems, I will but name their proper places, for in these I borow the report from Merchants; *Emrald*, *Chalcedon*, *Onyx*, *Sardonyx*, *Sardis*, *Bezar*, *Amber*, *Hematite* and *Turquois* for the most part are had in *Arabia*, *Indostan* and *Perse*: *Pearls*, *Berylls*, *Saphyres* and *Adamants* at *Zeyloon*: *Jasper*, *Cornelion*, *Chrysolite*, *Agat*, *Chloropse*, *Jacinth* in *Allalabar*, *Narsinga* and *Cochin-chyna* (which *Cochin-chyna* extends from 1 to 15 degrees North lat. and is confind by *Chyampa*, *Tuncbin*, *Lays* and the Ocean: a Country rich and pleasant, the People Idolaters, yet civil to Strangers,) Diamonds come from *Borneo* and *Gulkynda*, *Bisnagar*, *Delly* and the Isles near the greater *Java*: Gold, Silver, Rubies and Porcellan from *Pegu*, *Siam*, *Bengala*, *Sumatra*, *Japan* and *Chyna*; enough to make poor Men rich, and rich Men miserable. Now albeit the best and most Orient Pearl in the World have for some years been got near *Bahrim* in the Gulph of *Perse*; where in some Oysters have been found no fewer than 100 Pearls great and small, generated (some say) of the morning dew of Heaven, which in serenes falls into the gaping Shell-fish, and there breeds no other wise than as kernels do in Hogs and stones in bladders or the kidneys: Nevertheless store of small Pearl is had in Oysters, Muscles and other Shell-fish all along the Coast of *India*, as I could partly observe in our passage: for the Natives in several places would adventure to the sides of our Ships though under fail with their small Canoos to chaffer with us; and I well remember, that amongst other things store of Seed-pearl was profured. Howbeit, sometimes great Pearls are found, as may appear by the report of a Sea-Captain, who not far from *Borneo* saw a Pearl was round and Orient and of the bigness of a Doves egg, of great price and probably superior to that which *Cleopatra* dissolved valued at 25000 Crowns, and drunk to aggrandize *M. Anony's* Welcome. *P. Martyr Decad. 8. 100*, That he saw a Pearl weighed 100 ounces which was offered to be sold the Duke of *Medina Sidonia* a Spanish Grandee: but the *Mogul* has Pearls of incredible bigness and value. To return. By a N. N. E. course in few hours we view *Mundano*, an Isle (as big as Sicily) branching from 6 to above 9 degrees North. North of which and neighbouring are the *Philippines*, so named in honour of *Philip II*, by *Lopez de Legazpi* who first discovered those Isles and planted there *An. Dom. 1565*, near them are the *Manilie*, by *Piol* called *Sayorum Insulae*, Isles for the most part nameless because numberless; of which, the best and greatest is *Luconia* under 14 deg. North lat. whence in a direct azimuth West is *Cambogia* a rich part of the *Asiatick* Continent; but North from *Luconia* are *Shyma* and *Shycoca*, best known to the Inhabitant of *Chyna* and *Japan*, as is *Formosa* which has 22 degr. an Isle 150 miles in length and 50 in breadth, first inhabited by the *Spaniards* and *Mularios*, who grew very numerous and rich; but of late the *Dutch* have thrust in by force amongst them, and there planted a Colony. The Situation is very advantagious for Trade, so near neighbouring *Chyna* and *Japan*, with innumerable other Islands, as is *Corea*; a long narrow Peninsula, famous in the site, but infamous in her Inhabitants, who are a People that live by spoil and doing mischiefs to their Neighbours, more subtile than the *Chynese* or the *Japanese*.

JAPAN, unless *Mercator's* fancy be true that it was *Aurea Chersonesus*, was unknown to old Geographers; albeit the Name *Corsye* be given it by *Niger* and *Zapanri* by *M. P. Fierius*: who rather than so great an Isle should be without a Name, makes bold with his Invention: but certain it is we owe the first discovery to *Motu*, *Pelsotus* and *Zeymorus*, banisht *Portugals*, who in the Year 1542. wandring abroad to seek their fortunes were by storm shipwreckt upon this Isle, from which time it was well known to them, but the *English* began to trade here not till the Year 1613. and the *Dutch* more lately: but whether it be an Isle or no is disputable: albeit some pretend to know its dimensions, and accordingly limit it 'twixt the degrees 35 and 48, and by like supposition the length to be 230 leagues and breadth 109. or thereabout; most of which is barren and course, but fruitful in Minerals. Towns of best note and Traflick are *Meucco*, *Ozaca*, *Tenze*, *Fyrando*, *Fucate* or *Falcate*, *Sacay*, *Cratez*, *Tenkedy*, *Oringaw*, *Anumueyo*, *Vosquuis*, *Macha*, &c. of which *Ataco*, a Mediterranean City is reputed the Metropolis, *Suruwa* the next best, and next that *Ozaca* honoured with the Court till about the year 1615. a great part

part of the City was fired; and not onely this, but many other Towns in that Province. *Mexico* is as big as *Florence*, but not so beautiful; and watered by a River of sweet water, the Buildings are but ordinary: of best note are the Fotiques which are filled with Manadas, to which the *Japonians* are exceedingly addicted: The *Jesuites* industrie though great, produces little advantage, the People are so miserably drawn away by the example of their idolatrous Neighbours the *Chynes*, whom in nothing else they seem to agree with, and albeit at first there was a seeming conversion to *Christianity* both in *Xavier's* time and since, yet have they oft apostacized, and the greatest number of Inhabitants being *Gentiles* have made many massacres and destroy'd such as were real Professors; infomuch as at this day there is little of *Christ* ther own'd; these Wretches rather inclining to the *Alcoran* which has of late years crept very near them, and best agrees with their sensual appetitie; for it gives a large toleration to carnal Men, and has nothing of austerity mixt with it, which best pleases.

The Government is Monarchical; above threescore petry Princes do homage and prostrate their Coronets before the Supreme Diadem. The Countrey is most part mountainous but full of Rivolts, which makes it abound with Corn, Gras and Minerals: The North and East parts are less peopled than the South and West. The old *Roman* execration *Abi in malam Crucem* and manner of execution is here in use; a punishment not more full of torture than ignominy: The People are valiant and reasonable civil, affec tors of novelties, and beyond measure jealous if occasioned, revengeful if injur'd, and devilish if exasperated: They pretend much to Learning and especially to skill in Geography, howbeit are ignorant of the *European* and *African* in the greatest part, and totally concerning the *American*; nevertheless have no small opinion of their Art in the division of the World, wherein they think themselves superlative and all others mistaken; for they divide the World into three parts, that is to say into *Chyna*, *Japan* and *Syam*, which sufficiently express their ability in that Science: but in Entertainments they are better skilled, for they sit long and fare well, and in eating use sticks or forks, and linst the Table as new Courses are served: In riding they mount upon the right side; their Alphabet exceeds not twenty Letters, whereas the *Malayan* has 26. they as the *Chynes* have also many Characters, of which every one stands for an entire word as we use in short Writing. At Funerals they wear white. They would but cannot deny themselves to be descended from *Chua*; for certain it is they were banished about six hundred years ago upon some insurrection in consideration whereof they continue an implacable animosity to each other: the *Indians* rob and prey upon the *Chynes* abroad on all advantages; yea, at home in their prayers abominant, and in all Complements and Ceremonies are opposite to one another as much as may be; no less than the *French* and *Spaniard*. Upon any trivial accusation the Children are so sensible of their Reputation that without any paine to evince the truth, they will whip off a joint from their finger with this imprecation, If true, I wish my hand may never heal again: Murder, theft, treason, and adultery are punisht severly, either by crucifying or beheading with a Cuttan. *Ozaca* is 80 leagues from *Burgo*: a Port of good note, and in nothing more observable than the Castle, which heretofore as reported was varnished, tyed and burnisht in some places with thin plates of gold; a regular fortification and of excellent stonc; the walls whereof were every where twenty foot thick, and the whole work circled with a large deep trench full of water: the Castle was entred by a dozen iron Gates and some draw-Bridges: Of late years it was made the prison of *Coya-zamma* Prince of *Tanze* eldest Son of *Tiquazamma* the late Emperour; whose Father *Fuxiba-zamma* subiected all the other Princes of *Japan* and made them by oath and pledge acknowledge him their Sovereign: *Coya-zamma* upon his Father's sudden death was unexpetedly seized by *Ogosho-zamma* who compelled him to marry his Daughter; after which, he was requited by Confinement to that haeful Prison. Over against *Ozaca* on the other side the River, *Sucay* a Town traded to by *Christian* is situate; *Edoo* not far thence is a Town strongly walled and well peopled: Fifteen leagues thence is *Oringoo*, a Town that affords good Anchorage: *Fyrando* is not less than 300 leagues thence if you coast thither: It is a *Cherjoneſe* and elevates the Arctick Pole 33 degrees 30 minutes: var. East 2 degrees 50 minutes: where and at *Fuccat* the English had for some time a noted Factory.

Fuccat or *Falcate* as some write, it is a pretty Town, watered with a sweet River, and made defensiv by a Castle; a Forrest of lofty Pines and spreading Sycamores for three miles space well-nigh compalls the Town; of force against the scorching Sun, delightful to the eye, yea more grateful than any other object, did not Idolatry render it ingrate; for under those green Trees where are many small but richly tyed Fotiques, they adore *Pagothas* in shape not unlike *Pan* and *Priapus*, yea, Satan himself in his ugliest refem-

resemblance : for where the Country is most inhabited and garnisht with greatest variety of Trees and Corn, &c. as 'twixt *Edoo* and *Suringa* there are erected most Fotiques, and there the people are the greatest Idolaters. In *June* and *July* they seldom fail of prodigious storms called Tiffons or Hurricanes that for 24 hours thunder in the Air, and Tor-natho-like in that time veer round about all points of the Compass ; dreadful to those on Land, but most to Sca-men and Merchants, who for lucre value nothing in comparision, seeing they lime at danger, trample upon hazard with disdain, force their passage through scalding Sands, vast Seas, Death's Shadow, climb the highest Mountains and Rocks, not terrified with the affrighting deserts ; and all this, in pursuite of the great Idol *Mammon*, with no les thirst panting after that dust of earth, than inflam'd creatures are greedy of the cool air to refresh their scorched entrails, so as we see *animus est insatibilis & inex-saturabilis*. Nevertheless, tho' this immoderate thirst after gain be dicommended, yet through this Womb of moisture the great pond of the World (as Bishop *Hall* terms the Ocean, in moveable houses they remove from one Country to another transporing and exchanging Commodities to publicke advantage.

In *Meaco* are the Temples and Colledges, in which some have numbered 3333 Chame-tire or little gilded Deumo's of sundry shapes which according to the custome of the Gentiles of old, part of whose Litany was *Dii Deaeque omnes*, and in *Plautus* his *Cistellaria*, *Dii Dae, ac Supri Iseri & Medioximi, adjuvate, &c.* these poor Heathens in like sort invocare : they call them Mannaades ; of which, *Shaka* and *Anida* say the Bonzees have the highest rank in their Catender. Nevertheless, by *Tycoszamma* a monstrous Image was erected there of Auricalk, so large as albeit his posture was sitting, the Chair was not les than 70 foot high and 50 broad : His Head was capable to hold fifteen men and the Thumbe in compass was 40 Inches, by which the rest may be conjectured. Near this grand Pagod is a Fotique, in the cloilfer wherof a memorial is registred, how that the ears and noses of 3000 of the captiv'd *Coreans* were there interred.

At *Dabs* such another Colos of concave Copper was raised : an Idol 24 foot high, notwithstanding his posture was such as his buttocks rested upon his legs after the usual mode of the Orient : But in such remembrances how can I proceed without an exclamation ? *Sedulus* furnishes me with one very proper for the occasion.

u mitemi ! qui vana colunt, qui corde sinistro
ligatis sibi sculpti Simulacra, suumque
temum fugunt, & qui fecere verentur.
us siro ei, que tanta animos dementia ludit ?
Velut in turpemque Boem, torvumque Drac mem,
ni-hominemque Canem supplex Homo pronus adoret.

Poor Wretched souls ! which doat on Vanities,
and hallowing dumb Idols in your Heart,
Fear not your great Creator to despise,
by adoring Works of your own hand and Art ?
What fury or what frenzy thus beguiles
your minds, foul ugly shapes so to adore,
With Birds and nasty Bulls and Dragons vile,
half dog, half man, prostrate their help t' implore ?

But of most remark was the Fotique at *Tencheday*, where if fame speak truth, Satan oft-times made an apparition. This Temple was of more than ordinary structure, and the Bonzees numerous. Amongst other sacrifices or forms of Worship, one was, That a Damozel every New Moon was by the Bonzee brought into the Temple and placed right against the Idol. The room was forthwith illuminated by a preparation of *Lignum Vitæ* with other costly perfumes put into Lamps of Gold : after a small space the lights (as it were by miracle) extinguish, and then in grols darknes the Plasma having assumed a bodily shape or other false representation accompanies her, at least as she imagines, and the rather, because certain scales like those of Fishes are left behind as an argument to perswade it was no phantasm : but unless the Bonzee second that Work upon that imaginary familiarity, the most is but a tympany or false conception. Nevertheless for her applause, at her issuing she is entertained with musick and songs, and the enthusiastick Girls refolves them several questions they propound, and is of more repute with them ever after. Now to this notable piece of imposture of Satan, who in this doubtless makes a *deceptio viuis & tacitus*, I shall make no other disquisition than by applying to the credulous what the gloss upon the *Ius Pontificium* expresteth in the like case or scruple ; *Credamus sed male credamus, quia sunt Phantasmati* ; Some believe, but they believe amis, seeing they are but Phantasmes, and *Vros* in the like case, *Eludit enim Diabolus aciem tum spectantium tum etiam cogitantium* ; the Devil eludes the sense as well of the beholders, as those that so imagine : for, *Imagine falsa Visibus humanis magicas tribueret figuram*, saith *Sedulus lib. 4. Cap. St. Augustine* affirms that Satan can neither create nor really change the shape of any creature God hath made : Which *Spondamus* opposes

opposes, by that of *Jannes* and *Jambres* contending with *Moses*, which were meer illusions. *Aquinas* also is of opinion, That both good and evil Angels have power to vary shapes: but that the good have assumed human shapes is recorded in sacred Writ, and that there have been apparitions of bad, we also read in prophane Stories. *Mora prefigia à Demone confete*, saith *Eusebius* of *Antioch*. But leaving this subject to the learned, I proceed. Due West from *Japan* is

C H I N A, the most Easterly part of the Continent of the greater *Asia*. A Kingdom no less great than wealthy, and as famous as great, but not well discovered; their jealousy and discourses to Strangers (for they suffer many to enter but few return) chiefly causes it.

This is subject to many several Names, scarce any two strange People according in one denomination; and no wonder, since amongst themselves they affect variety: yea, it is a custom for the King to new name both themselves and the Kingdom at their Coronation, as they best fancy.

In *Ptolemy* it is called *Sinarum Regio*, *Seres* by other Geographers: the *Moores* in *Indostan* call it *Cathaya*, the *Arabians* *T' synin*, the *Syaniets Cyn*, the *Malayans Tabenzo*, the *Japonites* *Than* and *T' syn*, the *Tartars Ham* (from the Metropolis *Quinay* which they call *Ham-cen*) *Alhacen Tagis*, *Paulus Venetus Mangi*; the Inhabitants (say *Perera*, *Riccius* and *Trigautius*) *Tamen*, and themselves *Tangines*. But how various so e're that be, this is not so uncertain that it is a spacious Monarchy, and extends from 17 degrees to 47 of North Latitude, which to the South *Cantam*, and to the North *Pequin*, two Roial Cities seem to terminate: on the East and South it has the Ocean; on the West the Deserts of *Indostan*: on the North the *Tartars*, and on the South-west *Cochyn-chyna* and *Pegu*: Square, and from every opposite side not much less than 1500 English miles as some have imagin'd; which granted, the whole compas will be 4000 and upwards. The Countrey is full of sweet and navigable Rivers; some of which are no less inhabited than Cities, which are reported to be 600, besides the *Jesuites* report it has 2000 wall'd Towns, 4000 unwall'd, 1000 Castles, and Villages scarce to be numbered: and many they had need to be, since they lodge (as some Fryars that inhabited there have undertaken to estimate) above threescore millions of Men, Women being uncounted: which if so, it has four times more than all *France* is supposed to have; and well considered excuses that conjecture *Brewwood* makes in his Enquiries, saying, That if the whole World were divided into 30 equal parts, the *Christians* will appear to be but 5 of the 30, the *Mahometans* 6, and the *Gentiles* 19 of that distribution. The whole Empire is divided into fifteen Provinces, governed by so many *Quon-su* and *Lansie* who have their *Tutors* and *Chyans*, as their Deputies are intituled. Each of those Provinces has a Metropolis; but every way more excellent than the rest are *Paquin* by some called *Pasquin*, *Nanquin*, or *Nanton*, *Cantam* or *Canton*, and *Quinay* by them called *Hun-cen*: of which four, *Paquin* hath now the precedency; albeit *Quinay* had formerly.

P A Q U I N elevates the North Pole 41 degr. 15 minutes; and by late Geographers is accounted the same City some call *Cambulu* watered by *Polsanga*, differing from the lat. of *Cambulu* which is placed in 45 degrees, and Countrey in which 'tis placed: but if *Pantoja* and *Dicami* lay right the *Chyna* Monarch is that same great *Cam* with *M. P. Venetus* and *Mundeville*, who doubtless were no further East than *Indostan* and *Battria*, and from the reports there met of the more easterly parts, by them made famous. The City *Paquin*, as described by some (which are without good authority) is not only the greatest and best peopled City in all *Asia* but all the World: if as some report it hath 30 Dutch leagues circumference, in which are many stately Buildings, and 2400 Mandarin Sepulchers, the meanest of which are not without some beauty; and a no less number of little gilded Chapels, beside 3800 Temples devoted to Idolatry: it has so many Gates and Porters as days in a Year; sixscore Buzars and above a thousand Bridges. This City is distant about a hundred miles from that marvellous wall some say *Corisnagol* others *Zaintzor* the 117 King built 1000 years since to keep out the *Tarar*; a wall 1200 miles long, twelve yards thick, and six fathoms in height, such as was seven and twenty years erecting, by a continued labour of 750000 Men; which nevertheless could not hinder the *Tarar* of late, who not only forc't his pallage but with little opposition hath over-run and subiecte this great Empire, as reported.

N A N Q U I N (the second City for grandeur) was once the Metropolis. It elevates the Arctic Pole 35 degr. and is distant from the Sea 8 leagues or therabouts. The City is 12 leagues about; circled with three strong walls and ditches: The King's Palace is vast; the other Buildings many (for 200000 are reckoned) but meanly beautiful: The Temples such as they be, are above a thousand; the streets fair, and the People industrious.

From

From *Pauquin* it is removed East six hundred miles English: most part of the way, navigable.

CANTAM is at the most Southerly end in 17° some observe 25° degr. lat. a Town rich and spacious: our Ships ride commonly in view of it; from which to *Pauquin* is little less than two months travel. Here Merchants are permitted to come ashore; but when they enter the City gate usually inroll their Names in a Book, to the end that upon a penalty they return aboard at night: but of late have a little more liberty: In this place Merchants trade for Gold, Musk, Silks of all sorts, Cabinets, Porcellane and sundry other rich Commodities.

QUINZAY or *Han-ceu* borders *Cochin chyna*; of old this City was the greatest; at this day the most remarkable for variety of antick rarities of any City in the Orient.

These are the most noted: and what is most notable in them are their *Means* or Idol-Temples. The Country is champaign and exceeding fruitful: the Rivers abound with Fish, which the Chynes not only banquet upon, but also upon Frogs, Snakes, Rats, Hogs, Dogs, and such food as many other Nations abominate: and for their better dispatch they fish with Cormorants.

The People are Olive-coloured: more black or white as they live in distance from the Aquinoctial: they wear their hair long and filleted, but their beards very thin even to deformity: their eyes are commonly black and small; noses little; nails well-nigh as long as their finger but serving to distinguish their generosity. The better sort are habited in silk and a slight sort of fatter; the meaner in black cloth made of cotton: both wear their coats long and quilted, made to tie under the left arm after the usual garb of Asia: their sleeves are long and at the wrist very strait: their shooes of such stuff as their coats; but some have them richly imbroidered, the foale is cloth or calico. The greatest variety is in their head attire: for some knit their hair in cawls of silks, of horse-hair some, but some with fillets of Gold or Silver: others wear high round caps made of fine twigs stichit with silks of divers colours; but others fancy an antick sort of hat which is high crown'd and round, but one half without any brim, and no colour so much pleases them as tawny. The women are modest; and amongst themselves differ not in apparel; in that a cambolin or vail of white linnen covers them; shewing nothing but their polt-feet, which from their infancy are straitened; so as to make them a la mode, many of them voluntarily become lame and crippled.

They tolerate Polygamy and that odious sin of Sodomy; yea, what else their idle depraved natures can imagine to please their effeminacies, and are not ashamed to expose them to publick view in prints and painting. They are a proud, lazie, jealous and voluptuous sort of People. Mulick, Poetry, Painting, and Stage-plays delight them exceedingly, and care not what they spend in luxury and fire works: they eat in porcellane; which as *Gonzalo de Mendoza* (a Gentleman sent thither by Philip 2 with a Present) reports, is not earth of a hundred years preparation as commonly spoken, but a chalky substance, which digg'd or soakt in water yields a kind of cream above; but below, the earth and sediment is course: out of that fine upper earth like cream, the purest sort of Chyna-ware is made; and the ordinary sort out of the other Earth, which is lets fat or oily: so soon as they be formed or bak'd in the Sun they paint and guild them very curiously, and so put them into the Furnace. Howbeit, *Pancrillus* saith that porcellane is a compound of Egg-shells, Lobster-inells and Gypsum, which is treatur'd 30 years in the bowels of the earth ere it be prepared. They have their dyet in many small dishes; love their meat minc'd, which they take up with two sticks of bone or ivory; but some have their nails so long as serves for that exercise; for to touch either their mouths or meat with their fingers is absurd. Their drink is commonly hot, and by its taste and colour appears to be Collier; they drink oft and little. The Louthays's will be served on the knee; sit on Stools and eat on Tables as the Europeans. And allicit, no Nation in the World be more idle and voraginous than they, yet are few or no beggars found amongst them: for if he be a young begger he has the whip; if old, or lame, or blind, he is provided for in the Hospital. Murder they punish with death, as also Theft; the least punishment is the strappado: yet what Laws they have most resemble the Imperial, which they vigorously execute. Their Laws it seems are consistent with the condition of the Country and disposition of the People, but the extream rigour and execution therof, may be resembled to the grape, which being gently prest yields wholesome Wine, but too much squeezing renders it bad and unpleasent: 'Tis a difficult matter for man to establish any one Law that will quadrat with the humour of all places. Their justice is severe, their prissons strong and their executions quick. The Mandarins are honoured; the Chyan's reverenced; the King little less than adored: no Subject has recourse save by Petition; his Wives, Children

Children and Eunuchs only have access to him: Ambassadors enter not without Presents of value: They are curious in Novelties and love to see strange Arts; which they delightfully practise: few has skill either in tillage, making China-dishes, or can paint, sing, play or do something that is useful and modest; the Mathematicks they affect: we see not Letters but Characters; of which they have above 40000: they write neither to the right hand nor to the left but down-right; not with pens but with pencils of horse hair, such as are in use with Painters: their language is most part monosyllables; few but have a gift in Poetry and Musick, and are studious in all the liberal Sciences. Scholars and Merchants are more honoured than men of War: no people in the World more honour their King than they; for they suppose him too glorious to look upon: they obey him well in every thing; fill his Exchequer yearly with above a hundred millions of Crowns; call him the undaunted Emperour, Lord of the whole World; Son of the Sun; and beauty of the whole Earth. Nor do any people in the World express more filial respect to Parents than they; for they obey them at all times, and in all places; marry not without their consent; leave their Childrens names to them; honour them by they never so mean; believe them be they never so poor; at their death express all symptoms possible of duty; and, in white Linen, as did the Jews of old, seldom mourn less than two or three years; the longer they mourn, they think the better they express a filial observance and affection. An obedience that hath a blessing with it; for as Homer well observes, *Iarentes non honoreantes brevis evi sum*; dishonourers of Parents are of short life, as in the Decalogue is inferred. They arrogate to themselves the invention of all Arts and knowledge in the liberal Sciences; and it cannot be denied but that some of them they have, as Logick, Rhetorick, Mulick, Arithmetick and Astronomie: they are, say they, the most ancient and immixt people in the Universe; have all from their Minerva, and borrow nothing from others: they boast how that they first invented Characters, Guns, Painting, Tillage, and Navigation. Now give me leave to say a word in our defence against the *Rodonentado*' of these Chynians, who as I suppose, in none of these parallel Europe. For their antiquity, I deny not but they have continued without much mixture (yet admirable if so, since both the *Tartars* and *Siamites* have over-run their Country) since the first seminary, begun by *Sem* in those parts; but if granted, others in that may compare with them; namely, the *Brittains*, *Biscayans* and others: for I regard not their Legend of Kings or such Conquests as they obtained long before the birth of Time, a hundred thousand years ago; unless we qualify it by the Ephemeris of the *Arcadians* whose year had but ninety daies; the *Spaniards* but four months; the *Massagets* fifteen; or of the *Egyptians* who had twelve years in one of ours; following the course of the Moon and not the revolution of the Sun, nor regarding the *Dies intercalares*: an error, most of the Oriental Ethnicks are plunged in. Very likely they imitate the *Chaldees*, who as *Dio. Sicul. lib. 3.* affirm the origin of their Characters or Astrologic, was three and forty thousand years before the overthrow of the last *Darin*; which did not *Annius of Viterbo* help in his Paraphrase upon *Berosus* would be laughed at: but *Xenophon* and others say, That the years they accounted by were Lunarie; upon which reduction it will appear that 43000 of their Lunar years make but 3634 of our Solar: their Hieroglyphicks, though more antient than Letters, come short of the *Egyptians*. Their Guns (the use of which *Bacchus* taught them) are not above a span long; so that they rather resemble Pistols than Guns, their bore and squaring being less than ours: and for their painting it cannot be denied but it is of good colours; but their designs are short of our invention: they draw the postures filthy and shadow meanly; which doubtless in painting makes the perfection. Horologic knowledge they want, as may be supposed by that story of the King, who upon first view of a Watch presented by an European was so surprized that he verily believed it a living creature, till by winding it up he perceived the spring the *primum mobile*. Their Husbandrie is without much Art: for albeit the grain be good, the soyle rich, and the Zone moderate; yet their corn is neither so various, nor so good, nor so certain as in our Harvests. Their Navigation is lame: they build many ships, yet without beauty or defence; nor have they much skill in sailing, having no good Logarithms nor Mathematick instruments to take the height of the Sun by: their Compas also is defective; for it hath but eight or twelve points to distinguish by, nor is the Magnet (till of late) known amongst them; having the Cynoiture and *Ursa minor* for their best directors: notwithstanding they say they see with two eyes, tho't of Europe but with one, and all other people are blind, or at least purblind like themselves in their censures.

They delight excessively in all sorts of game; and when they have lost, care not though they have Wives and Children, whom they willingly part with till they can redeem them. They are hospitable one to another, and believe a Resurrection: for sometimes

they will lend money to be repayed them in the other World: Inter-ludes, Maſquers, Fire-works and ſuch devices wonderfully take them: nor value they what money they expend in diſport, to their expectation be not frustrate. Their Houſes are meanly built, and as badly furnished: Howbeit, their Meani have no ſuch grandeur nor external beauty as in a Country ſo peaceful, ſo rich, and amongst a people ſo ſtudious and ſuperſtitious might be expected: yet though their ouſides be but ordinary, they many times are lined with excellent good Porphyre, Serpentine and like Marble. Their Colledges and Temples exprefe by ſome invention or other their infernal Art and familiarity with the old Magician; to whom they devote enthuſiaſtick Boyes who with their long ſpread Hair proſtrate themſelves afore the Mannada; and ſuddenly as if ſome Hag had terrified them, ſtart up and vibrate a Spear or other weapon, whiles the Spectators with dejected looks warble out a ſoft Dorig⁹ ſort of Muſick, departing not till the vaticinating Youths pronounce ſomewhat that points at his Worſhip and their Obedience.

They celebrate their Natalitia very ſolemnly, fortnights time ſpending the dayes in paſtime, and the night with feaſts: amongt the reſt they have choice fruits and wines, in which they takc a full liberty. The new Year they begin in March, and is no leſt obſerued there: at that time every Man ſtrives to exceed others in the fancy of their pageants and adorning their doors reſpectively with paper Arches and Images, and all the night long make them viſible by lights and lanthorns.

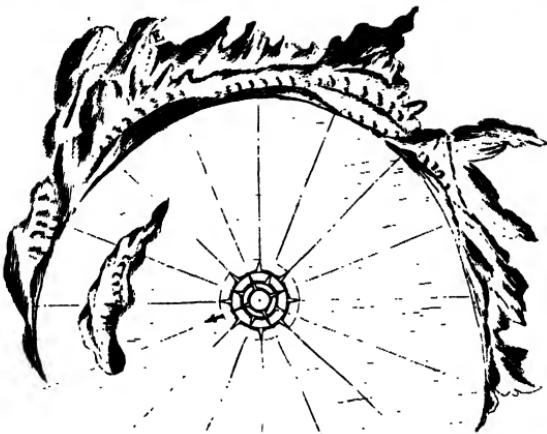
Their Weddings have more or leſt Ceremony according to the quality of the Persons. Their Funerals are after this ſort: when any dyes they firſt wafh, then perfume, and laſtly apparell the Corps and put his beſt cloaſhs on; then cover his head; and having ſet him in a Chair, his Wife entring the room firſt gives him a reſpect and then kiffes him; after that ſhe takes her farewel with as much ſorrow as can be imagined: ſhe is no ſooner gone but his Children enter in order according to their ſeniorities; they firſt kneel and then kiff the dead Mans hand, yea ſtrive to out-vie each other in their ejaculations, exprefſing their love by sorrowful countenances and gestures, as bearing their breasts and pouing out tears in abundance: being withdrawn, next his Kindred aſt their parts, and laſtly his friends and other more remote acquaintance: the third day they lay him in a Coffin of precious wood which they cover with a ſilk cloath, and over it place his picture: for fifteen dayes in that fort the Corps reſt, and each day a Table is ſpread with Meat, which nightly the Peopple have liberty to eat; for 'tis they that burn the Incenſe and offer Sacrifice: when they carry it to the Grave, Women are hired to howl, the better to move others to compaſſion: ſometimes upon his Coffin they place the Image of a dead Man whom they expect ſhould ſhew him the fureſt and readieſt way to Elyzium: that done, the Widow and Children for ſome days feeſle themſelves; and when abroad, go dolorouſly habited; for they put courſe Sack-cloath next their ſkin, have their cloaſhs made long and plain, and for three years ſpace are not ſeen to laugh or joy in any thing; but to the utmoſt of their power exerciſe their love by their continued lamentation, abſtinence from feaſts and paſtimes; and in all their Letters ſubſcribe themſelves, Such a ones diſobedient and unwarthy Widow, Child, or what may beſt ſet forth obſervance.

Having launcheſt too far, 'tis high time to look homewards: yet not till we have bid farewel to lovely Asia; into which when ſome have aduentured, this Motto may be remembred.

*Moribus mores tot ſunt quot in Orbe figure: Mans heart commands as many ways as Stars find reſting places:
ui ſapit, innumeris moribus aptus erit. Who travels muſt diſguife himſelf each way with Janus faces.*

How delightful and how magical the excellencies of the Orient are to moſt; yet Ovid's *Nefis qua nataſ ſolum, &c.* was ſtill the cloſe of my obſervation: So that upon the feveth of June (after long ſail, ſome ſtorms, and much paſtice) we again deſcried land: it bore N. N. W. from us, but at the Suns firſt bluſh the enſuing morning, we knew it was Digarroys, an iſle above fifty miles about, and in 20 degrees South latitude: there we anchored not, knowing that Mauritius was but yo leagues diſtant thence upon a W. N. W. course, a place where we doubted not of ſome refreshment. This Digarroy was firſt diſcovered by the Portuguſe: but except ſome Welchman gave it the name, know not whence called Digarroy, ſeeing that *Digarrad* in the britiſh dialekt fitly comply's with it, the condition being a defoliate iſland: defoliate in hu man inhabitants, for with other things 'tis repleniſht, as with Wood, Tortoifes, Dodo's and like Fowl. To our view it gave it ſelf not very high at a league diſtance: but this I alſo remember, that at the South-West end are ſhoads, which are long and dangerous. By benefit of a conſtant wind we ſoon arrived at the Mauritius.

The Bay of Mauritius in the
North-west side of the Ile.



MAURITIUS is an Isle situate within the burning Zone under twenty degrees five minutes Antarctic latitude; longitude from the Meridian of Cape Comyn twenty degrees and as many minutes, and variation four and twenty degrees and nineteen minutes. To what part of the World it belongs is questionable, seeing that it participates both with *America* in respect of the vast South Ocean, and inclineth towards the Asiatic Sea, washing *India*, *Java*, and other Isles; and with *Afrique* also, to which most properly it appertains; if you think fit to make her subordinate to that Empress of Isles *Madagascar* which seems to shadow her, and from whose Eastern banks she is removed an hundred leagues or thereabouts: But however doubtful to which three it appertains, of this there is no doubt; that for variety of temporal blessings she may compare with most places in the Universe. It was first discovered by the *Portugal*, whose industrious arm and ingenious fancy (e're *America* was discovered by *Columbus*) gave us the first full knowledge of the East, and names to many places formerly innominate. And amongst others, the name *Do-Cerne* unto this; but how properly I know not; if we should allude to that in *Plin.-l. 6. c. 31.* that *Cerne* being placed near the Gulph of *Perse*; and of the same name we meet with some elsewhere in old Authors amongst the Azores and other places. After that it varied into the names *Rodrigo* and *Cygnæ*, or *Cerne*, i.e. Swans, for so the *Dutch* reputed the Dodo's; lastly to *Mauritius*: which whether in memory of *Grave Maurice*, or of a Ship so named that by age or accident laid her ribs there I know not: but by equal authority I may deduce the name from some Cambryan (the reliques or glimmering of whose speech we found gasping in many of these remote quarters of the World) in the word *Maur-Tijs* or bigger Island fitly so named, if compared with those other lesser neighbouring Isles, *Dygarrois*, *Englands Forrest*, *Dosimo*, *S. Apollonia*, &c. and by a more euphoniacal concision *Maur ifus*. But grant it be so called by the *Hollander*, yet it follows not that they have more right to it than the *English*; they themselves knowing and acknowledging that the *English* landed there a dozen years before them; who no question had new-named it, but that they knew the *Portugals* had done it before. This also be remembred, that in the year 1505. when *Franciscus Almeida*, of all the *Portugals* the most renowned for Eastern Conquest and discovery, subiecting many maritim parts of *Egi-symba* in *Quiloa*, *Mombazza*, *Melinde*, *Mozambyc*, &c. reports that there and in some Isles (I suppose this one) where he erected Forts

and Castles of defence he found Crosses and other symbols of Christianity, which made him confident that Christ had formerly been served there; and therefore in humility would not esteem himself the first Christian discoverer, *Oforiu l. 4.* But how uncertain that may be, it is without any doubt that it is an Isle abounding with, and capable of, all things requisite for the necessary use of man, and requirable for the Zone 'tis placed in: the Land, especially where it respects the Sea is high, but elsewhere champaign and plain: the shape rather oval than round, and the circuit, of English miles not much above a hundred; the greatest extent being from the North-East to the South-West. The Air exceeding good; and the soil though incultivated, so full of vigour that it procreates without seed; withal, luxuriant in grafts and herbs, and such flowers as Nature usually diapers the Earth with when drest in her Summer Livery. Ambergrise is oft found floating about this Iland; how generated, whether from the Whale, thence call'd *Sperma Ceti*, or otherwise, is not yet resolved; but highly valued, agreeable to its virtue. Here also is Coral in abundance; the only Vegetable that has no leaves, 'tis a green shrub or Plant in the Salt Sea at first; and after hath white berries, which by force of the Sea and Air petrifie; and when its colour turns red, is then most valuable.

Ovid lib. 4. Metamorph. mentions it,

Nunc quoq; Coraliis eadem Natura remansit :
Durititem tacto capiant ut ab aere, quodq;
Vimen in a quore erat, has super aquora saxum.

— — — — — *Within the deep*
The Coral still her property doth keep;
Receiving hardness from the Air alone;
Being under Sea, a twig; above, stone.

Upon the *Mallabar* Coast it likewise grows, and in the Red Sea and some other parts of the *African* shore, and also near the *Philippine Islands*: being in estimation with all, and serves equally for use and ornament. *Theophrastus* in his *Histor. Plant.* l. 4. c. 8. observes, that in *Mari Cedrosia* (which is at the entrance into the *Persian Gulph*) *planaria naescuntur, & ex profundo pullulant; Ut olea, lauri, &c.* In the *Cedrosian* Sea are Plants that grow and bud under-water, the Olive, Laurel, &c. He might have made mention of the Coral also, which he omitted. Nor can it be denied that by reason of the temperature of the Air, and those daily breezes and showers which fall, the Earth is meliorated and fitted for grain of most sorts; as also for plants, fruits, flowers and what else may be thought fit by the ingenious Planter. And seeing Heaven and Earth conspire and contribute to the action and advantage of the life of Man; how much more abundant cause hath Man to magnifie his Maker, who is the liberal dispenser of those rare trees and fruits which naturally offer themselves to what Mans appetite can rationally covet: for we find it replenished with Trees of several sorts, some of which are good for Timber, others for Food, all for use; amongst the rest, I observed store of Ebony: *Virgil* in his *Georg.* reports that

— — — — — *Sola India nigrum*
Fert Ebenum. — — — — —

— — — — — *No place save India*
Black Eben wood doth bear, Men say.

Which granted, then consequently *Mauritius* must be reputed a member of the Indies. But that Ebony is found growing in other parts, and particularly in the *Egyptian Territories*, *Lucan l. 10.* gives us his authority.

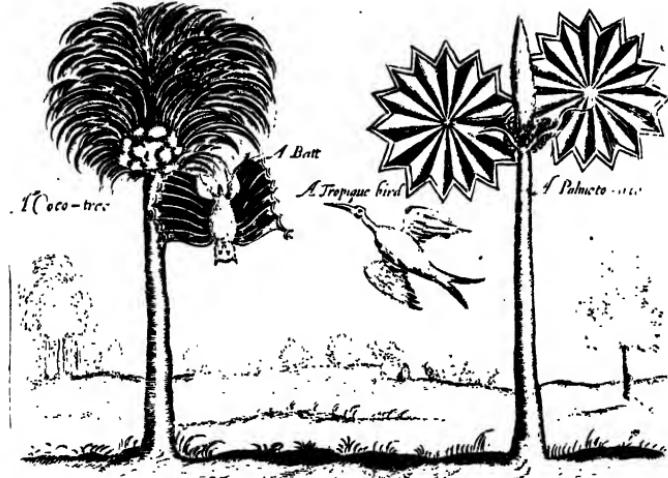
Nigri Meroc — — — — —
Lata comis Hebeni — — — — —

The Island Meroc
Rich in black Ebony.

Which reduces this Isle again to *Afrique*. Wood it is of different colour, and for use of no less variety; what we found here was black and red, as also white and yellow: black is most valuable. The Tree is commonly high and very straight; the outside covered with a smooth bark; here found in great plenty till of late years destruction hath been made, especially by the *Dutch* and *French*, who have imported such store thereof into *Europe* and other their *Indian* Plantations that it is much abated. Here also is that Phoenix in nature the Palmeto I mentioned but lately at the Isles near *Zeylan*; it is but one in the origin, we call it *Dactyl* or *Date* seeing that *Palma* translated is *Date* in English: a Tree which both for quality, duration, and fruit is usually attributed to Heroes and Conquerours: the trunk is slender but very high and round, not branching save near the top, as the

Toddy. Cocoes.

the Coco doth ; and those rather resemble round sedge than boughs, which are ever green. Under the sedge appears a soft pulp not unlike the Colitowers, which being cut and sod tastes very like it ; but for that the vegetative vertue consisteth in it, the Tree prospers not after that is severed, as Xenophon also observeth : but whilst that substance remains, it yields a liquor like the Toddy, in colour and relish not unlike Must or sweet Wine which issues out of the pierced bark, so as in an hours space the quantity of a pottle may be gathered. In some old Authors we read, there was Tree-honey as well as Bee-honey ; or as they call it Tears or blood dropping from Trees. By that description it should be the Palmeto Wine : which Wine and Amber coloured Nuts, being polished, were by the Persians usually set upon Tables or Cabinets amongt other curiosities, as Xenophon takes notice in his Travels : Seamen usually have a cane or quill which they suck with, so as two or three Trees being pierced, in an hours space replete the greediest appetite though he bouze his belly full : to drink with moderation it comforts the spirit, albeit cold in the digestion : it also purges and helps obstructions, and kills worms ; but immoderately taken intoxicates the brain and diposes to fluxes ; howbeit, exposed two days in the Sun turns acid, in which quality it is binding. Here are also Coco-Trees, male and female, both which bear blossoms : the female is only fruitful ; and not so neither unless a flowing branch be inoculate, or planted near it ; for by that mixture of seed she fructifies : the shape of which two Trees, according to my small skill, take thus resembled.



Their several vertues are thus summ'd up by Silvester.

The Indian Isles most admirable be
In those rare fruits call'd Coquo's commonly :
The which alone far richer wonder yields
Than all our Groves, Meads, Orchards, Gardens, Fields !
What, won't thou Drink ? the wounded leaves drop wine.
Lackst thou fine Linnen ? dress the tender vine,
Dress it like flax, spin it, then weave it well :
It shall thy Cambrick and thy Lawe excell.
Longst thou for Butter ? bite the pulpy part,
For never better came to any Mart.
Dost need good Oyle ? then boults it to and fise,
And passing oyle it soon becometh so.
Or Vinegar, to whet thine appetite ?
Why, fumme it well and it will sharply bite.

Or, wants thou Sugar? steep the same a stound,
 And sweeter Sugar is not to be found.
 'Tis what you will, or will be what you would:
 Should Mydas touch it, sure it would be gold.
 And God (all good) to crown our life with Bayes,
 The earth with plenty, and his name with praise,
 Had done enough if he had made no more
 But this one plant, so full of choicest store.
 Save that the world where one thing breeds satiety
 Could not be fair without so great variety.

Praises it very well deserueth: and concerning the Palmeto, the relish is so perfectly good that none of us who tasted of it thought it nauseous, but rather pleasant and dainty. *Lucan* in his *Pharsalia* had notice of it, *Quicq; bibunt tenera dulces ab arundine suco,*

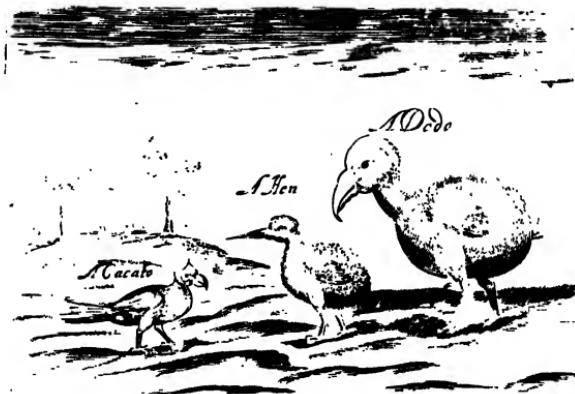
And Varrō thus in its commendation,

Indica magnanimis non arbore crescit arundo,
Illius & tenuis premitur radicibus humor,
Dulcia cù nequeunt succo contendere mella.

We also took notice, that we were no sooner gone, but that the Lizards which some from its resemblance call the Land Crocodile in little, but of a better nature, would make haſte to ſuck this diſtilling Nectar and were intoxicated with it: a creature ſo exceedingly delighted with beholding mans Viſage, and what in them lyes expressing ſo much affection, that we would not injure them in that ſenſeles condition. Parrats and other Birds alſo would be taſters, which made it of more repute with Paſſengers. Several other ſorts of Trees there are which differ no leſs in quality than form. One I took ſpecial notice of was above five yards about and of a reaſonable height, but umbriferous it was not; for albeit it had many branches, yet was it without leaf or flower: the bole ſo ſoft, as with a knife I could almoſt as eaſily write my name in it as with a ſtick one may in fand: in curioſity I put ſome of the wood into my mouth and chewed it; what the vertue may be I know not; but for half an hour my mouth was inflamed as if I had taken ſo much Vitriol. Near that was another which was low of growth, yet large ſpread in its branches; upon it hung fruit or ſeed like aſh-keyes, only theſe were larger and thicker, reſembling the Gynny Beans or Carravances, but laſe-guarded with ſharp prickles; by ſuch a defence one might have thought what was within ſhould have been conſiderable, the ſhell or codd was very hard, but being broke, found in it ſix or eight Nuts; each of which was leſs than a Doves-egg; but in colour and ſhape not unlike the Beazer; the kernell taſted like an Acorn; what the quality was I could not tell, ſave that by ſome experiment the Chiſurgion made, it was found in operation to be little better than Poyon. The *Africans* at *Sierra Leon* have ſuſh a Tree as this they call Ogou with which they invenom their Darts: this peradventure may be of that kind. Many other we ſaw here, ſome of which were like Pines, others like Lymes and Sycamores; and do not remember that we ſaw any Oak, Cedar, Fig or Cyprefs: nor was the fruit or ſeed they bore ſuch as we knew, though we could reſemblē them to Pine apples, Artichoaks, Plums, Nuts, Cherries, and the like; but as to their names or properties utterly ignorant; for the truth is, all or moſt of the Trees, Birds and Beaſts I ſaw in the oriental and ſouthern parts of the World far remote vary or differ in ſome part of their ſhape from the Trees, Beaſts and Birds with us in *Europe*: nevetherleſs in their ſeveral ſpecies and kinds may be known by that their reſemblance. Obſerve we could alſo that nothing was loſt; for what was food for Birds, the Tortoifes would eat; and what the Tortoifes refuſed, the Hogs did devour: ſo as by one or other all was taſted of. Again, this noble ile as it is prodigal in her water and wood, ſo ſhe correpſonds in what elſe a fruitful Parent labours in: not only boſting in that variety, but in feathered creatures alſo; yea, in the rarencs of that variety: I will name but ſome, and firſt the *Dodo*; a Bird the *Dutch* call *Walgb-vogel* or *Dod Eerſen*: her body is round and fat which occations the ſlow pace or that her corpulencie; and ſo great as few of them weigh leſs than fifty pound: meat it is with ſome, but better to the eye than ſtomach; ſuch as only a ſtrong appetitie can vanquish: but otherwife, through its oylinenes it cannot chufit but quickly cloy and naufeate the ſtomaſh, being indeed more pleauurable to look than feed upon. It is of a melancholy viſage, as ſenſible of Natures injury in framing ſo maſſie a body to be directed by comple-

mental

mental wings, such indeed as are unable to hoist her from the ground, serving only to rank her amongst Birds: her head is variously dressed; for one half is hooded with down of a dark colour; the other half, naked and of a white hue, as if Lawn were drawn over it; her bill hooks and bends downwards, the thrill or breathing place is in the midst; from which part to the end, the colour is of a light green mixt with a pale yellow: her eyes are round and bright, and instead of feathers has a most fine down; her train (like to a *Chyna* beard) is no more than three or four short feathers: her legs are thick and black; her talons great; her stomach fiery, so as she can easily digest stones; in that and shape not a little resembling the Ostrich: The *Dodo*, *Cacato* or *Parrat* and one of the Hens take so well as in my Table-book I could draw them.



Here are also Ayeries of Hawks and sundry others Birds; as Goshawks, Lannars, Hobbes, Passe-flamingoes, Geese, Powts, Swallows, Kites, Black-birds, Sparrows, Robbins, Herons white and beautiful; in their flesh good, but in their feathers more valuable: Cacatoes, a sort of Parrat whose nature may well take name from ~~readie wit~~, it is so fierce and so indomitable; Bitters, Hens and many other which I forbear to enumerate: but the Parrats in their feathers were curious and more esteemed for their much prattle. Such their curious liveries and such their language, as they are not unaptly called *Αρθητηλαντοι*, a right Epitheton.

*The Parrat humane language knows so well,
That to his Lord sayes, Save you and Farewel.*

*Pithecus humanas depromit voce loquelas
Atque suo domino Kai'pi valque sonat.*

One of which was by a good Poet celebrated with this Epitaph:

*Parrat, Birds light, her Lords well tongu'd delight
And painful figure of humane voice
Dies: Of Airs Citizens, the fairest sight.
The green Commander of the Eastern choice:
Whom Juno's Bird, with curious painted tail
Nor Phoenix of cold Phasis could prevail
To our beauty. Kings he could salute, and name
Caesar; to whom discourse he'd friendly frame.*

*Pitracce lux volucrum, domini facunda voluptas;
Humanæ solers imitator Pitracce lingue,
Occidit: Aeriz celeberrima gloria gentis;
Pitracce ille plage viridis regnator Eoz;
Quem non gemmata Volucris Junonua cauda
Vinceret, aspectu gelidi non Phasidis ales.
Ille saluator Regum, nomenque loquitus
Cæsareum; & queruli quondam vice functus amic.*

In the Rivers here we found no less variety of Fish; such as we took and tasted of I noted: The Man-atee was the rarest; for both in taste and shape it equally opposes feeder and beholder. This fish doth use both Elements: those very fins which steer them in the Sea, serve as stilts ahoire to creep upon; in which exercise their paps all'o befriend them: and though fish, differs little from Veal in taste, but more in shew; for the ribs and entrails as also their face some say is like the Elephant when the proboscis is wanting, but from

.the

the Cow have their denomination: for it is verily thought the Land has not that Creature which the watry Citizens resemble not. They affect shoald waters, and to be near the shore to graze upon: their eyes are very small; bulk about three yards long, and in breadth but half so much: famouſe for a gentle fish, delighting to iehold the viſage of Man; moſt valuable in a ſtone that is conſolidated in the head; which being pounded and put in Wine and drunk faſting is (as are the brains of Sharks or Tubcrons) ſoveraign againſt the ſtone and colick; yea, of moſe prize than his other ſix great teeth, which yet to him are far more uſeful. *Andrew Evans* Captain of our Ship struck one of them with a ſilketto wounded the fish in ſeveral places; as Victor he would neeſt get upon her back, but the triumph coſt him dearly: for the Man-atee labouring under pangs circling his body fo crouth the Captain by that forceable imbrace as the bruife made him ſpit blood to his dying day, which happened ſoon after.

Give me leaue to name what fish we took; Dolphins, Bonetaes, Albicores, Cavallocs, Porpice, Grampallic, which Mr. *Sands* thinks is the right Dolphin, none elſe being of that opinion; this ſome call the *Suf-marinus*, Mullet, Bream, Tench, Trout, Sole, Flounders, Tortoſe, Eel, Pike, Shark, Crab, Lobſter, Oysters, Craſh, Cuttle-fiſh, (which though its blood be as black as Ink cauſed by a high concoction, is nevertheless meat very delicious.) Rock-fiſh, Limpits, and a ſpeckl'd toadifl or poiyon fiſh as the Seamen from expeſience named it; which albeit laſt named came firſt to net and eaten too greedily by the heedleſs Sailors was an error coſt ſome no leſs than their lives, others for ſome time their ſcales: in ſhape it was not unlike a Tench, but more black and deformedly ſpotteſ.

Difce venenatos Leporis cognoscere potus
Pefſificri, mediis peperit quem fludibus æquor,
Viros Squammas & purgamenta marini, piftis olei.

The poiyonous Sea-fiſh drink learn to beware:
Whom the deep Channels of the Sea prepare.
Her Scales have bane, her Oyls like purging are.

Other ſtrange Fiſh we had which met with as strange ſtomachs; who either out of appetiſe or curioſity would not be afraid to taste: ſome had the ſhape of Hedge-hogs, other of Cats; ſome were globous, others triangulař; ſuch as *Gorreas* calls *Lepus Marinus*.

The Torpædo or Cramp-fiſh also came to hand, a fiſh (if *Pliny* writes truth) that by hiding it ſelf with mud and dirt catches leſſer fiſh very ſtrangely: for by his frigidity he benums ſuch fiſh as ſwim over or lodge near him, and ſo preys upon them. Amazed (not knowing that fiſh but by its quality) we were, when a ſudden trembling ſeized us: a device it has to beget liberty as well as to catch his prey; for by evaporating a cold breath it stuſifies ſuch as touch, nay which is more, as hold a thing that touches it.



Hear Oppian.

At duo ſe tollunt diſtenta per Ilia ramī,
Qui fraudem pro robore habent, Pifcūm; tuenrū;
Quos ſi quis traſat, perdit per membra vigorem
Sanguine concreto, rigidos nec commovet artus,
Solvuntur ſubito contracto in corpo re vices.

Along her ſtretched guts two branches rise,
With fraud nor strength endued; these patroneſe
The Fiſh: which whoſo wounds, his joints decay,
His blood congeales, his limbs move not, they ſay
His powers diſolve, he shakes and falls away.

The

The Remora or Echeneis is by *Fracastorius* said to be of the same nature: *Remora ex natura Torpedinis est: effundit e corpore suo humorum quendam viscosissimum & frigidissimum, qui cum aquam quo & circa gubernaculum Navis vehit, congelat, ut ad motum reddatur inhabilis, &c.* qualities I leave to better inquiry.

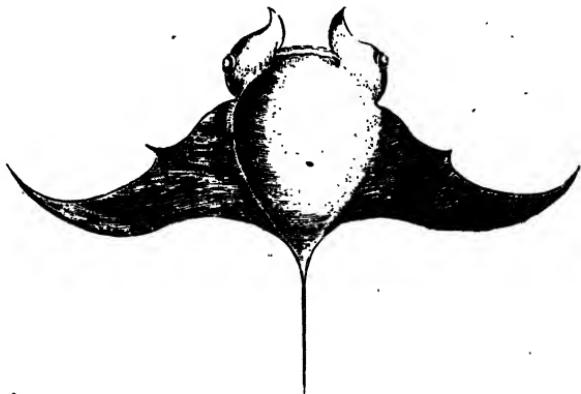


Albeit 'tis frequently so reported, and the Figure with a memorable story thereof painted in the Vice-Roy's Palace at *Goa*: which how far it may serve for proof I shall not here determine. But being dead has not this quality. Moreover, this Isle affords Goats, Hogs, Beeves, and land Tortoises: Tortoises so great, as suffer two Men with ease to sit; and so strong, as carry them: yea (as some report) fifteen Men have at once stood upon them. *Aristotle* concerning this Animal writes, that no oviparous Creature which either layes eggs or spawns do urine, the Tortoise excepted. Sailors affect to eat them; but are better meat for Hogs in my opinion: they make pretty sport, but are coarse food; so are their Rats, Bats and Monkeys: most of which useful and unuseful creatures were first brought hither by the *Portugal* for refreshment, in their return from *India*; but at this day the *English* and *Dutch* reap their Harvests. Birds had here at no charge and little labour are Hens, Bats, Herons, &c. The Hens flock together twenty and forty in a company; if you catch one you may catch all: the surest way is by shewing them a red cloth, for it seems that colour exasperates their spleen, as appears by the assaults they will make; for when one is struck down the residue budge not: they eat like parcht Pigs if you roast them. The Herons through a long continued security (ignorant of the deceits of Men, and unused to the smell of powder) are as easily taken; for if one be shot the other take not wing, neither knowing nor valuing danger, such is their care to condole their late associates: Bats are here in great numbers; but if my stomach deceive me not, worse meat cannot be tasted: a fierce ill-favour'd carrion, ever squeaking, and in offensive noise calling to one another, make bad melody. This is the only four-footed Beast that's volant, and therefore whether more properly to be rank'd amongst Birds or Beasts, as yet undecided. And in this further observable, That no Bird but the Bat doth urine: a rare creature, but so offensive to the Orgyes, that (as Poets say) nothing more destroys it than the smoak of Ivy, dedicated to *Bacchus*. Bats, flying fish and Seals be particles of nature and species of a doubtful kind, participating both of Bird and Beast: thei' vespertilio a large foot in length hang in swarms upon the boughs of Trees, by claws two inches long fixed at the extream part of their wings which are above twenty inches in length, their monkey faces in that posture ever turning downwards; as I have delineated upon the Coquo-tree a little before mentioned. For, as *Ovid. lib. 4. Met.* upon the *Meneides* transformation into Bats,

— minima pro corpore vocem
Emittunt peraguntq; leves stridore querelas,
Tetisque cum sivilis celebrant, lucemque perosae
Nocte volant, seroque tenent à vespe nomen.

*Their Voice like to their Body is shrill and faint,
In harsh Notes uttering their sad complaints,
Houses and Woods they haunt, hate light, and game
In the Night time, from whence they have their Name.*

We took another fish, an Eagle-fish I imagined it: the eyes were five quarters asunder: from one fin end to the other were above four yards: its mouth so wide and teeth so long as it resembled a small Port-cullice: the tail also was very long and small: a Fish take it all together, rather to admire than junket on.



In this Isle are several good places to anchor in: howbeit two are most frequented; that at the North-west side bears the form of a semi-circle and elevates the Pole Arctic 19 degrees 30 minutes: the other at the South-east directly opposite to the other, hath 20 degrees 15 minutes; and longitude from Cape *Comyn* 20 degrees 20 minutes; but from the Lizard 99: both which Bayes seem land-lockt and have oazy ground, so as Ships ride safe there in five, ten, fifteen or twenty fathoms, no where dangerous. The foil of it self is stony towards the shore; but at more distance has rich mould, covered with grafs and herbs, and bearing wood in abundance: it has also some Springs of good Water, and nothing wants that may either delight the eye or satiate the taste. And after so long a Voyage, give me leave to recreate a little.

Hic radiant flores & prati viva voluptas
Ingenio variata suo, fulgentibus illuc
Surgunt structa thoris: hic mollis p anditur herba
Sollicitum curis non abruptura soporem.
Turba salutantur latus tibi proterp' ades,
Hic avium cantus, lubentis murmurata tivi,

*Here radiant Flowers (the Meadows vive delight)
Vary their nature, rising to the sight
In shining beds, here spreads the tender Grass
Not breaking careles sleep of the dainty Lass.
The attendant Troops make thy large house resound,
But here Birds chirp, Streams murmur on the ground.*

The sleep charming Streams indeed gently drill from the Rocks and delightfully trickling along the Valleys not only by their meanders mellow the ground, but by their harmonious murmur afford an irresistible magick to ease and meditation; yea, so charm the sense by moving a gentle attention in the spirits, as without labour stills the Soul's natural and diffusive faculty. To conclude; notwithstanding all these excellencies, this *Insula Beatae*, this pleasaunce of *Afriack Isles Terra suis contenta bonis*, was then un-inhabited save by Beasts and Birds, in as much as it gives the better invitation to more suitable Inhabitants, without dread of Lion, Tyger, Wolf, Fox, Dog or such like offensive creatures; but upon condition to pay a grateful tribute to such as scarcity or foul weather direct thither for refreshment.

I have dwelt somewhat long in the description of this Isle, but may be excused by the delight I took there after long being at Sea and some sicknes at Land; so that I could have been content we might have rested there some longer time: nevertheless so soon as the wind came fair aboard away we went, and in three hours sail lost sight of the *Mauritius*. Now forasmuch as this delightful place is within the torrid Zone, I cannot but here as I did in another place take notice of that opinion *Aquinas* and several others both Fathers and Philosophers held; How all that vast space of Earth comprehended within the burning Zone was not only uninhabited, but even the Ocean it self especially under the Equator not navigable: A tenet which took rise from a vulgar error and observation, That forasmuch as Heat within the temperate Zone was more or less according as the place is in distance from the Tropick, the like reason over-ruled that betwixt the Tropicks it consequently increast, by how much it had its nearer approach towards the *Equinoctial*, where

where the heat as they imagined was intolerable. For answer : It is very true the Sun being limited his course within the burning Zone, by reason of that constant residence emits his beams and shines with utmost ardour upon those parts and People, whether his glances be oblique or perpendicular ; and from thence it is the Continent is more especially parcht through the extremity of heat and the inflammation of the Air. Nevertheless, such is the wonderful wisdom and goodness of God, that in some parts upon the *Terra firma*,¹ but principally in Islands and places well-nigh compassed with water, the Earth is commonly fruitful and the Sun delightful and advantagious : In which consideration give me leave eulogically to enumerate a few of those many attributes have deservedly been given that glorious Planet : in Gen. i. 14. it is called the great Luminary which the Almighty placed in the Firmament of Heaven to illuminate the Earth, and rule the day as the Moon whose light is borrow'd from the Sun, doth the night : And in the 19. Psalm the Prophet David declares, *In Sole posuit Tabernaculum suum, &c.*

• *There is the Sun's Pavilion set,
Who from his Rose-Cabinet
Like a fresh Bride-groom shews his face,
And as a Cyane runs his race.
He riseth in the dawning East,
And glides obliquely to the West.
The World with his bright Rayes repleat
All Creatures cherishest with heat.*

And Eccl. 11. 7. *Dulce lumen & delectabile est videre Solem,* Light is pleasant, and 'tis comfortable to behold the Sun. *SOL est fons lucis,* the fountain of Light, the King of Stars, inthrone in the midst of all the Planets, fountain of heat, heart of the World, visible image of the invisible G O D, *Semper ambulans, nunquam quiescens, & sua luce omnia illustrans, &c.* Ever in motion, never resting, and with his Light discovering all things. Nor is its Light less extensive than its Heat: for Light is the Chariot by which Heat is convey'd about the inferior Orbs; and though in its own body limited to Heaven, by its influence it goes to and fro and visits all the corners of the Earth: at once, irradiates every Province, views all Cities and other parts within the Hemisphere; imbraces both Sea and Land; with equal respect salutes the Cottages of Peasants and Courts of Princes; merrily frisks up and down without differencing Prisons from Palaces; gilds the Mountains, caufes the Valleys to glister; cheerfully dances upon Rivers, makes the Meadows fragrant and the Fields fruitful; solaces Youth as well as Age; revives, yea provokes decay'd Nature; and though inanimate of it self gives life to Vegetables, Infects, &c. It renders all things fair, saith *Virgil;* and *Orpheus* in his *Lyriques* sings, *Per Te virescunt omnia,* All things are made fruitful and flourishing by the Sun. Now from this and other properties, the *Genitiles* have this excellent Creature in adoration, which *Job* wisely reproves, saying, *If I beheld the Sun when it shined, &c. and my heart had been secretly enticed so as my mouth kissed my hand, should I not thereby deny God who is above?* imitated by the *Jews*, reproved in the 8 of *Ezekiel* 16 verse, where the 25 Idolatrous Elders set their backs towards the Temple and turning their faces to the East worshipped the Sun; this was by an erroneous attributing to the second what was due to the first: for it is the power of God that gives vertue to the Sun to exhale vapours, which vapours are formed into clouds containing rain; and it is rain that both qualifies the air and makes the Earth in due season to bring forth her increase; yet so, as those and all other subordinate caufes, together with the Sun and Nature it self would be altogether ineffectual, were it not for that operative faculty wherewith the Almighty hath endow'd those Creatures: for it is by his direction the Sun not only helps the generation of all sensible-bodies, but as St. *Augustin* observes, that nourishes and brings its Work unto perfection: therefore we must acknowledge with Saint *Ambrose*, *Bonus quidem Sol est in Ministerio non in Imperio,* The Sun certainly is good where it actuates as a Servant, not a Sovereign. Moreover, albeit by its benign influence ordained for the comfort of Man this Isle and many other places within this Zone are observed constantly verdant and admirably fruitful; nevertheless it has its shadow; for it cannot be deny'd but in the Mediterranean parts of *Africk* by the Sun's force and efficacy the Country is generally adulst, and the earth for want of moisture converted into sand, as *Alex.* observed in his travel from *Egypt* to *Libya* upon a visit of the Temple dedicated to *Yup. Hammon*; for five dayes neither Bird nor Beast, Tree nor grafts appearing, saith the Historian: A fit place for *Cham's* Posterity, and agreeable to that of the Psalmist where 'tis said, *A fruitful Land is made barren for the wickedness of those that dwell therein.*

The Sun's Excellencies and Properties.

in those Troglodit Regions the Earth for the most part being sapless and without springs; which makes both earth and air scorching and insufferable: For 'tis rain and springs that by moistning the superficies of the Earth produces Grafs and all other sorts of Vegetables. And it is a truth also that, *per motum solis fit generatio & corruptio in rebus inferioribus, & opus eius plus appareat in hoc Mando quam opus alterorum planetarum.* The Sun in his operations excels all the other Planets; and by his influence upon inferiors, both generates and corrupts, as common experience teaches. Albeit it is said of the Sun and Rain, that neither of them pierces the Earth above ten foot; for faith *Seneca*, when the Earth hath imbib'd what is sufficient, it shuts its pores, thereby opposing an unnecessary surplus. Howbeit, *Cardanus* and some others, allow the Rain to sink ten paces deep, yea deeper say some, thereby furnishing springs with Water, which have three original causes: transmutation of the air within the earth, percolation of the Sea, and Rain, Snow, Mists, &c. This consideration gave subject to a Poet for that Romance concerning the *Pisilli* their challenging the South wind, and to another, how

That barren Land.

*During all seasons doth unalter'd stand
Through Natures dis respect: for that bare earth
Unto a few small herbs only gives breath;
Which to the *Aethiops* is great cause of mirth.*

Withal let us observe here as I have upon occasion spoken in other places, That the heat is more intense and violent under the Tropicks by reason of the Solstice in *June* and *December* than under the Aequinoctial in *March* or *September*, at which times the Sun only cuts their Zenith: for under the Aequinoctial I have been four several times and the like under both the Tropicks, and so it was, whether *per accident* or otherwise I know not, but I could perceive the heat was more extrem under and near the Tropicks where the Sun for some short space of time seems to have its station: so that both by what I then saw and since heard from others of experience, the heat is greater at *Ormus* in the gulf of *Persia*, *Mocha* in the red Sea, and at *Borneo* and *Syene* near *Egypt* during the Summer Solstice, than we find it in most Asiatic regions under or near the Aequinox, as those Merchants that are conversant in *Zeylon*, *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, the *Celebes* and *Molucco* Isles, which are nady to the Aequinoctial, have related and by experience can best witness. Now the Reasons may be these: First, that through the like goodness of God the heat near the Tropick is very much allayed by those tempestuous storms of wind and rain which during that season usually rage in that Climat; not only for six weeks obscuring and consequently asswaging the beams of the Sun, but occasioning the overflowing of *Nile* and *Niger* with several other Rivers in *Afrie*, as also of *Ganges* and *Mahan* or *Suhar* and others in *India*; insomuch as they seem to have most Winter during the Summer season, I mean when and where the Sun is highest: for otherwise the heat under the Tropick both by reason of the commorance of the Sun for some time, and that the dayes there are longer than under the Aequator, in reason should be greatest. Whence we may likewise note, That the Sun when it returns to the vernal Aequinox, and for those following six monthes comes into our *Hemisphere* after he has made the Arctic Pole his Horizon; those Regions within the Polar circle (which have the same distance the Tropicks have from the Aequator) albeit more resembling night than day when the Sun is deprest and disappearing; yea by reason of a continued darkness and extremity of cold are places by us not to be indured; Nevertheless is by this re-appearing of the Sun and its constant residence for half the year above the horizon, the Earth receivcs plenary amends and becomes habitable, albeit the heat be moderate; yea, produces fruits proper for warm Countries, and such as will not matureate with us in *England*. Secondly, several other accidents I may note which contribute to the temperature of those torrid parts; for besides the Monzoones or Anniversary winds which for six monthes blow constantly one way and six the other, these hot Countries have frequent breezes which like the *Etesie* breath gently every morning and evening from the East and South, which qualifies the Earth and Air exceedingly: so as during that breez, the extremity of heat is very little perceived. Moreover, by the interposition of the Earth, the Nights, especially near the Sun, are equal or longer than the Day, during which the Moon that has power to govern the Night as the Sun the Day, abundantly compensates, and being commonly attended by mists, dews, fogs, and vapours lenifies the air and moderates the ardour of the Sun, as that Distick of the Poet speaks very properly.

Quodque Dies Solis violento excanduit zulu,
Humida Nox reficit paribusque refrigerat hols.

*What the hot regions Sun infanies by day,
The Night's cool dews do refresh allay.*

For together with the frequent showers of rain that fall through the rich mercy of the Creator, and under him attributed to the influence either of the *Pisces* and *Aries* or some other unknown Constellation, as also the Springs and Rivers that abound there more and more, consequently dispose to a better temperature: yea, the like is from the delight as well as shade the Trees afford, who by reason their sap retires seldom or never to the Root are all the year long attired in their gayest livery, and the Fruits in great variety to juicy and cooling as refresh very delightfully, agreeing with the description given by one of another like place, *Tota ha insula frugibus & arboribus abundant mansuetis, itaque semper viventibus, &c.* All which considered, it will appear that those parts are not only habitable, but seeing Nature is no where more prodigal, no place is more luxuriant for pleasure in any other part of the Universe: and *Ovid's Quorum qua media est non est habitabilis atra*, a position not to be credited. Nevertheless, not to the Natives but to such as repair thither out of colder Climates let me give this advice, That they study their preservation both in the careful ordering their habit and diet, especially till they be seasoned: for the air is very subtle and pure, and enters the pores intensly; the fruits also are exceeding luscious and tempt the appetite beyond measure; so as without due care and moderation, the strongest and healthiest bodies, by Flux or Feaver, will probably become quickly indisposed and indanger'd.

Being under sail, the fifth day we descried Land which bore South-west: by its height and position we imagined it was that we call *England's Forrest*, which next day we ascertained. This name was imposed Anno 1613. by Captain *Castleton* Commander of the *Pearl*; but who made the first discovery is doubtful, seeing some of late have given it *Seignior Mascarenus* his Name, purporting he was the first; yet other-some there be that call it *Pulo-puar*, an *Indian* Name; but by whom or when, so darkly writ, as is not legible. This pleasant Isle has above fifty *English* miles circuit: the South Pole is there elevated twenty degrees 55 minutes from the *Æquator*; its longitude from *Mauritius* is not more than 1 degr. and a half, and distant thence about seven and thirty leagues; but the variation of the Compas 23 degrees: the ground is very high and raiseth it self a good way into the middle Region: the earth every where green, especially in Trees which mount more than ordinarily to a sublimity. It had no creatures in it save Birds till our Captain sent his long Boat with some Hogs and Goats of both kinds a-hore, that by a happy multiplication the future Passenger might be relieved. Here is also plenty of Fish, of which the Eels are notable, some of them weighing thirty pounds, whereby we may judge them to be Congers; not odious in their corpulency, for to the taste they render themselves sweet and moist. Birds here are many and rare, but most of them being such as are spoken of in *Mauritius*, need no repetition.

In few dayes by the benefit of propitious winds we laucht far into the *Mare del Zur*, where Magellan's cloud *Sicula nebula* scarce visible without a glafs, and more resembling part of the *Galatea* than Stars they are of so small a magnitude, with several other Antarctic Constellations more and more discovered themselves unto us and approached our Zenith. But long those happy *Favonii* continued not: for the wind veering into a contrary quarter the Skie over-spread with clouds, so as the Sea laboured with a dreadful tumor. Seven whole dayes and nights this tempest lasted, and forced us all that while to lie by the Lee without more sail than the mizzen. Howbeit post multas una serena; still launching through the Ocean the Skie cleared up, and fair weather infused. For many hundred miles we were recreat'd with many shoals of Fish that with delight play'd about our Ships, and amongst others the Whale, some of which seem'd longer than our Ship, although of great burden. In bigness the Whale exceeds any other Creature, for usually it is towards forty cubits long and a fourth part in thickness: Yea, *Nearctus* told *Alexander* he saw one was 50 cubits: but *Pliny* in his Nat. History 32, that there are some be 600 foot long, which is well-nigh four Acres.



I have formerly said somewhat concerning this Sea Monster, and therefore shall only farther note, that by the greatness and force of this Leviathan the Almighty setteth forth his Omnipotency in the marvellous works of the Creation: as we have most elegantly prescribed in *Job 41.* and by Mr. *Sands* paraphrased.

*This wonder of the deep, his mighty force
And godly form, shall furnish our discourse.
Who can deserv him of his waves? bestride
His monstrous back? and with a bridie ride?
His heads huge door unlock? whose jaws with great
And dreadful teeth in triple rank are set,
Arm'd with refudgent shields, together join'd
And seal'd up to resist the ruffing wind.
The weather by the upper fortify'd,
No force their combination can divide.
His sneezing lets on fire the foaming brine:
His round eyes like the morning eye-lids shine,
Infernall lightning sallies from his throat,
Ejected sparks upon the billows float.
A cloud of smoke from his wide nostrils flies,
As vapours from a boiling furnace rise.
He burning coals exhales, and vomits flames:
His strength the Empire of the Ocean claims.
Loud tempests, roaring floods, and what affright
The trembling Sailors turn to his delight.
The flakes of his rough flesh so firmly bound
As not to be divorced by a wound.
His heart's a solid Rock, to fear unknown;
And harder than the Grinder's neather stony.
The sword his armed sides in vain assails.
No dart nor lance can penetrate his moles.
He brass as rotten wood, and steel no more
Regards than reeds that bristle on the shore.
Dreads he the twanging of the Archer's string,
Or singing stones from the Phenician sling?
Darts he esteem as straw asunder torn,
And shaking of the Javelin laughs to scorn.
He ragged stones beneath his belly spreads
For his repose as soft as downy Beds.
The Seas before him as a Caudron boil,
And in the fervour of a motion soyl.
A light stroke from the floods detectis his way
Who covers their aspiring heads with gray.
Of all whom ample Earths round shoulders bear
None equal this. Created without fear.
Wherever is exalted he disdains;
And as a King amongst the Mighty reigns.*

Aristot. 2. lib. Meteor. is of opinion that no great blasts of wind blow from the South; doubtless had he travelled in our company he would have retracted that opinion; for from that meridional quarter many gales and storms assailed us. *Ovid* in his 4. lib. de *Ponto* agrees with that learned Greek, and may be granted in our Hemisphere.

Rough Boreas our Domestick ruleth here,
And takes his vigour from a place more near.
But the mild South, from aduerso quarter sent,
Comes far, blows gently, and more impotent.

Hic oritur Boreas Oraque domesticus huic est.
& sumit vires à propiore loco.
At Nodus aduerso tepidus qui spirat ab Axa
est procul & rarus languidiorque venit.

But as it was, after threescore and ten dayes further sail we attained sight of Saint *Helena* where the Ocean bellows on every side so fretfully as the place might fear an inundation, had not the extraordinary height, but chiefly that Supreme providence which hath set the Sea its bounds, safe-guarded it. It has no neighbouring Isles great or small; but seems equidistant from those two noted Ports called *Rio Grandi* and *Cape Negro*, in *Brazilia* the one, the other in *Congo*; both in one elevation, and parallel with *Saint Helena*: from that in *America* distant 400 leagues; from the other in *Afric* not much less, if any, from that number.

It had its name given by *John de nova*, in, or about, the year after the incarnation of our Saviour 1502, so called for that in his return from *India* to *Lisbon* it was discovered the 3. of *May*; a day consecrated to the memory of *Helena* the Empress who first found the Cross, the most religious of Ladies in her time, Mother to the first Christian Emperour, *Constantine*; both of them glorious in their age, *Britians* both; both bright Gems of this our Nation.

This Isle is removed South from the Equator sixteen degrees: from the utmost Promontory of South *Afric* hath two and twenty degrees of longitude, and where the Needle varies five degrees and thirteen minutes, but from the lands end of *England* distant 4500 English miles; from the Cape of *Good hope* 1740; *Madagascar* 3000; *Surat* 6600; and from *Bauanum* 6900 or thereabouts. In that Bay, which takes name from the Chappel, the Isle has this resemblance.



But to what part of the inhabited World it appertains may be queried, seeing the vast *Aethiopic Ocean* so largely circles it. To *Afer* I may imagine (because it is nearest that Continent) rather than *Vespurini*. It is but small, not exceeding thirty English miles circumference, yet excessive high; for it vails its head often in the clouds, where opening a wide mouth it gulps down sufficient moisture to cool its ardor, which by reason of the Clime 'tis in, cannot but be sometimes temperate; and but for that affinity it has with the middle Region which envelops it as with a chil-cold Tulipant, and long nights it has, that extreme heat which the Sun darts constantly twice every year perpendicular upon this Isle, would doubtless make the entrails enflame (had it Sulphur) like another *Vesuvius*. Nevertheless the Land is not more eminent in its height than the ambient Sea profound in the depth; so deep that it admits ill anchoring save at the N. W. from the Chappel, where is 20 fathoms; so as that there are Mountains in the Sea as in the Earth is not to be doubted; seeing that upon the casting of the Lead, Log, or Plummets, upon the one side of the Ship is sometimes found 30 fathom, and upon the other side 60. Nevertheless it is so very deep here that the sounding Line or Plummets will scarce find ground; which is the cause that Mariners do sometimes carry their Anchors ashore that they may moor or ride the more securely. By reason of the depth I could hardly discern either

either flux or reflux near the shore; seeming as if we were in the mid Ocean where neither ebb nor flood is to be discerned. Howbeit, the salt water plashes and froaths to see it self so suddenly refisted: but the moist breath usually vaporizing in or upon the Seas makes it sometimes turbulent.

This Isle is hard to be ascended; not that the passage is craggy, but that it is so precipitous. The Sailors have an Ironick Proverb, The way is such, as a man may chuse whether he will break his heart going up, or his neck coming down: but being once up, scarce any place can yield a more large or more delightful prospect. The Land is very even and plain at the top, and swells no where to a deformed rising: some Springs above be sweet which below are brackish: the reaon may be, for that in their drilling descent they may relish of the salt hills through which it cuts an usual passage, so as they become salt both by their own composition and the salt breath which the Sea evaporates. Nevertheless, there are but two noted Rivets; one which bubbles down towards the Chappel, the other into the Lemmon Valley, so called from a Lemmon Tree and Chappel built at the bottom of the Isle by the *Spaniard* anno 1571. and by the *Dutch* of late pull'd down; a place once intended for God's worship, but now disposed of to common uses. There are also some ruines of a little Town lately demolished by the *Spaniard*, in that it became a Magazine of private trade in turning and returning out of both the Indies; no other Monuments nor Antiquities are there found. You see all if you look upon the ribs of a weather-beaten Carrigue and some broken pieces of great Ordnance which albeit left there against the owners liking serve some instead of Anchors. Human Inhabitants there are none; nor were of late, save that in the year 1591. Captain *Kendall* weighing Anchor sooner than was expected, one *Seger* a Marriner was accidentally left ashore: 18 months after, Captain *Parker* coming to an anchor found poor *Seger* alive, but so amazed, or rather overjoyed at his arrival, that he dyed suddenly; by which we see that sudden joy is not easily digested. Howbeit of Hogs and Goats here are plenty, who agree wellfavouredly and multiply even to admiration; happy in their ease and safety till Ships arrive there for refreshment. The Goats leap wildly from Rock to Rock, and to avoid the reach of our small Guns keep their Centinels.

pendentem summa Capram de rupe videbis
Cassuram sporis decipit illa Canes.

*The stately Goat o're steepst Rocks makes way
To frustrate greedy Dogs of hopeful prey.*

Here also with a little labour we got store of Pheasants, Powts, Quails, Hens, Partridge; and which was no less acceptable, divers sorts of Gras and Roots, as Wood-forrel, Thre-leaf'd Gras, Scurvy-gras and like acid Herbs sovereign against the Scurvy; the usual Disease from the Sea, and most predominating amongst Islanders: we had also Bafl, Parly, Mint, Spinage, Fennel, Annis, Radish, Mustard-seed, Tabaco, and some others, which by a willing hand, directed by an ingenious eye, may soon be gathered; brought hither, and here sown, by *Fernandus Lupius*, a Portugal, in the year of our Lord 1509. for the good of his Country-men; who nevertheless at this day dare hardly land to over-see their Seminary, or own their labours; the English and Dutch in the churlish language of a Cannon sometime disputing the property. Anno 1588. *Cardiff*, our Countryman, landed here in his circum-navigating the Globe; and found store of Lemons, Orenge, Pomgranads, Pomicitrons, Figs and Dates, but how the alteration comes who knows: for none of those grow there now that I could either see or hear of, one Lemon-tree excepted. To conclude: In the old Chappel here we buried our Captain, *Andrew Evans*, whose death's wound (as formerly told) was unhappily given him by a Mannatce at the *Mauritius*. He was an expert Seaman, and no less vigilant than expert: so as doubtless the Company had a great los of him. *Cretensis nescit Pelagus?* was an old Adage setting forth the excellency of those Islanders in Marine affairs: for it is without controversie, That in those times they instructed other Nations in the Art of Navigation; but upon the subversion of the *Persian* Monarchy by the *Greeks*, and of theirs by the *Romans*, the perfection of that Art was transferred nearer our Quarters: questionless the *Portugals* by their ingenious and industrious discovery of the Sea-passage into the *East-Indies* (somewhat less than two hundred years since) gave that Art its greatest perfection: but who is now the most excellent? let *Reckerman* decide the Question; which learned observator in his Treatise of the *Spanish* and *Portugal* discoveries makes this Result, *Hoc iamen certum est, omnibus hodie Gentibus Navigandi indu-*

fria

stria & peritia Anglos esse superiores. Of all Nations the English for Sea affairs are reputed the most excellent ; *Poss Anglos, Belgas, & inter hos Flandros, Hollandoes, Zelandos, &c.* and next the English the Dutch, amongst which, the chieftain in that Art are the Flemings, Hollanders, Zelanders, &c. So as by the judgment of that indifferent and learned Writer it appears the English have the first place for Sea knowledge and Navigation attributed them. And amongst the best Sea Commanders this late Captain of ours very well deserved with the rest to be ranked. But to return. That this is a very delightful Isle cannot be denied, and its admirable prospect and other pleasures were sufficient to induce our longer stay ; but stay we might not : So as after a Weeks refreshment we discharged our reckoning in a hearty farewell, and by the invitation of a prosperous gale upon a N. W. course swiftly cut our passage through the yielding Ocean ; insomuch as on the sixteenth of October we were once more Nadyr to the Sun, which at that time was in its Antarctic progress. Our latitude by observation was 13 degrees 13 minutes. The third day after, we had sight of Ascension Isle, so named by *John de Nova* in the year 1502. because upon that Feast day it was he first discovered it. The Isle is South from the Equinoctial about 7 degrees, little more than thirty miles in circuit : not well wooded nor watered, little else observable : from *Santa Helena* seven hundred and twenty miles English or thereabouts.

The seven and twentieth day we crossed the Equinoctial line the fourth time : the weather was hot, but qualified by the Monsoon that continued blowing one way save when the Tornado's interposed, which was more or less until we came into nine degrees North. We were miserably pestered with that variable weather, till then being frequently entertained with loud blasts of Wind, nasty showers of rain, with terrible thunder and lightning: but *Dens his quoque finem*. The eleventh of November we were parallel to *Cape de Verd* and those Isles Poets call the *Gorgades*, who feign that those three Islands were the habitations of the three Gorgons *Medusa*, *Stenia* and *Uriale* whom they make Furies rather than beauties; ill requiring *Perseus*'s report, that they were the much famoured Daughters of *Phorcis* the Sun of *Neptune*, their yellow hairs curling like snakes and dishevelling about their naked shoulders so much set forth their beauty and gained such admiration in the beholders as if they were transformed into *Statua*'s. But leaving these upon a more Westerly course we coasted part of the American Continent, viz. *Guiana*, *Florids*, *Virginia*, *New-England*, and other parts of *Norumbega*, which with the several adjacent Isles we past by, shall in this place have no other observation than that the Sea in many places as we sailed was so covered with green weeds and small berryes even where the water was not to be fadomed, that it rather seemed a field of Gras than the Ocean. But what was most to be noted, those Weeds or Branches like Nets were intangled and drawn along by the Barnacles which in those long Voyages usually breed upon the sides of Ships and exceedingly pester and retard their way in sailing : desiring rather in this place to vindicate the Truth which of long time hath been either defamed or so eclipsit, as the reality of the first discovery is not well known, being nevertheless attributed to *Columbus*. I shall therefore in the first place see what either by Prophetic pens or Reason otherwise is upon Record that may point towards that great, nay greatest part of the World, which for upwards of 5000 years and during those mighty contests for an Universal Supremacy by the Monarchs of the Earth was concealed ; so as until the only wise God thought fit to give more perfection to Navigation, it seemed totally unknown and undiscovered.

Plato who was contemporary with *Alex.* the Great, and flourished about the 350. year of the World, is one of the first. He in his Dialogue betwixt *Timaeus* and *Critias* discourses (but obscurely) of a large Occidental Island, which being without a Name, from the view he seems to make into the Atlantic Seas gives it the name of *Atlas*, land in greatness comparable to *Asia* and *Africa*, united. *Aristotle* his condisciple approves of his conjecture ; albeit he takes it only as a supposition. *Theophrastus* also in his Book of Rarities published two thousand years ago, amongst other things relates how that some Merchants sailing through the Straits of *Gibraltar* were by storm driven further West than they desired, by which accident they descried land, but found it uncopied. It is the opinion of most that land was the *Aeolis*, for the Isles *Columbus* first found out when he made his first discovery were fully planted.

Hanno the Carthaginian is the next. His Sea voyage is very uncertainly related : some suppose (and 'tis but an Hypothesis) that he doubled *Cape bona Speranza*, and amongst other places pretend the discovery of several Western Isles, but the course he steered is queried : some say South, others West. *Pomponius Mela* and *Lampridius* say the Land he discovered

was South : if South then not the West-Indies ; for it may be presumed that seeing the use of the Companys was then unknown, his way was not without ken of Land, but rather crept near the shore : for had he been in the mid Ocean he had been lost, and in humane reacion irrecoverable. *Virgil* in the 6. lib. *En.* foretelling the greatness of *Cesars Domini* on has this allusion.

— Ultra Garamantas & Indos

Jacet extra Sydera Tellus,
Extra Anni Solitique Vias ; ubi cœlifer Atlas
Aœm humero torquer, Stellis ardentibus aptum.

Stretching his great Command

Past Garamans and India, lyes a Land
Beyond both Year and Sun. *Atlas* the Skie
That bears, the Star fraught Pole doth wheel hereby.

About the right sense whereof is no small variance ; for *Servius* thinks the Poet only means the *Ethiops* which *Laudinus* dislikes, not allowing any part of *Ethiopia* to exceed the Tropiques ; to make which good he supposes that the word *Extra* signifies *pene Extra* ; and by like evation *Dantus* understands *Solem pro Die* and *Annum pro Noto*, no Grammatical procedure. But *Lod. de la Cerdia* with better consideration interprets *Virgil's* meaning, that *Augustus Cesar* should extend his Scepter beyond *Atlas*, into the more meridional parts of *Libya* or South *Afric*, into Lands without the Zodiac ; and so, the words *Extra Sydera* are to have *Zodiaci* adjoined : but granting that, it makes nothing for the discovery of *America*. After this, *Seneca* the Philosopher in his *Medea* gives us this prediction.

— Venient Annis

Secula scitis, quibus Oceanus
Vineula terum laxet, & ingens
Pateat Tellus, Typhisque Novas
Deterat Orbes. Nec sit Tertia
Ultima Thule —

— The Time shall one day be
Guided by Providence, when men shall see
The liquid Ocean to enlarge her bounds
And pay the Earth a Tribute of more grounds
In ample measure. For the Seagods then
Will shew New Worlds and Rarities to Men.
Tera (by his leave who all things doth command)
See Thule far less North than other Lands.

Dim lights to shew the way into the Western World : so that upon the whole it may be granted, the discovery of that vast Continent was reserved for a succeeding generation. The first we meet with is *Madoc* Son of Prince *Owen Gwynedd*, who for thirty years ruled *Wales* after his Father *Gryffith ap Conan* had at Saint *Davids* done homage to *William the Conqueror* for Lands he held on the other side *Severn*. He was in a direct line descended from *Roderic the Great*, a Prince famous for his success against the invading *German*, especially at *Beriken*, *Bangelu*, *Monegig* and *Anglesey* about the year 840. such time as *Burchred* ruled over the *Merciars* and *Ethelwulf* the *W. Saxons*. The Annals of those times acquaint us, That *Owen* was no sooner dead but that the custom of *Gavel-kind* (which some think has ruined most families in *Wales*) occasioned great division amongst his Sons, of which *Forwerth* or *Edward* surnamed *Dwyrydlyn* by reason of his broken nose was eldest, but withdrew by *Howel* and *David* the younger Sons by reason of that and other his imperfections. *Howel* also was objected against for that his Mother was of *Ireland*, 'twixt which Countries War was proclaimed : to *David* was best approved of though youngest, both in respect of his comely personage and ingenuity, but principally for that he had gained the affection of the Lady *Emma Plantagenet* Sister to King *H. 2.* Howbeit this indirect practice was soon after questioned by *Llewellyn ap Forwerth* who by the assistance of *Howel ap Meredith* and *Conan ap Owen* his popular Kinman gave battle to *David*, and having the better of the day possest himself of that Principality *Anno 1195*, and preserved it. These intestine broyles were no way pleasing to *Madoc* who by that discord foresaw their ruine (for what destroys a Nation sooner than division ?) and the *Normans* speedy conquest. Therefore to avoid that storm and provide for himself, he resolves upon a Sea-adventure hoping to find out some place abroad where he might plant securely and not be liable to invasion. So *Tradition* : and it is not unlike that so generous a Prince was not unacquainted with those Authors lately cited ; but to deviate a little, more certain it is the Song penned by *Ambrose Teleyssen* a Prophetic Bardh was then accomplished, writ *An. Dom. 490*. such time as *Aurclius Ambrosius* brother to *Uther pen-Dragon* repaired hither from *Armoric* to command in chief against the Saxon : in which, the Bardh foretels that at such time as they fell to discord amongst themselves and to Idolatry, the *Brittish* Splendor should be eclipsed.

*En Nar a folam
En hjaist a gadwane
En tir a gorblam
end gwyllys Wallie.*

*Usque laudabunt Dominum creantem;
Usque servabunt idioma lingue,
Arváque amittent sua cuncta
prater Wallica rura.*

Whiles *Cambrey's* Issue serve the *Lord* their Maker,
Whiles with no other Language are partaker,
Whiles so, with glory they their own shall keep,
Whiles other Nations in oblivion sleep.

'eyffen also in the same Song reproves the pride and avarice of the Clergy, who to ght the *Welsh* gave out that *Austin* the Monk was their first Converter, who had embraced *Christ* long before by the preaching of *Joseph of Arimathea* and *Simon Zelotes* as *Baronius* and other Annales witness: whence came that religious boast, That the *Britains* had preminency by having the first Christian King, Emperor and Monastery in the World; made good in *Lucius*, *Constantine* and *Bangor*. The Canzon was this:

*Gwae'r offeiriad byd
Nis angrifffia gwylod
ac my phregetha
Gwae my cheidw ygail
Ac eff yn Vigan
ac my'r arcilia
Gwae my theidw eye dderwaid
Rhbae bleidhie, Rhbenyaid
a'iffon g'wnppa*

Woe be to that Priest Y-born
That will not cleanly weed his Corn,
and preach his charge among.
Woe be to that Shepherd, I say,
That will not watch his Fold alway
as to him doth belong.
Woe be to him that doth not keep
From *Ramish* Wolves his silly sheep
with Staff and Weapon strong.

But to digress no further. *Madoc* having Ships, Men and provision ready, with his Prince's licence put to Sea from *Abergwily* in the year 1170. Wind and Sea favouring so good a design, after some weeks sail due West he descipted Land, probably Newfound Land; but whatever it was it over-joy'd him. *Madoc* then ranging the Coast, so soon as he found a convenient place, fated down to plant; after he had fortified, he left a hundred and twenty Men, and by Providence (the best Compais) and benefit of the Pole Star returned safely to his own Countrey: where having recounted his Voyage, the fruitfulness of the Soil, the simplicity of the Savages, the wealth abounding there, and facility of enlargement, after some months refreshment in ten Barques loaden with necessary provisions they put to Sea again, and happily recovered their Plantation. They found few of those they left there, living; caused either by too much eating, novelty of that Climat, (which though never so good, yet causes alteration in new Inhabitants) or treachery of the Natives; so as *Madoc* (having the affilance of *Eneon* and *Edwall* his Brethren) quickly put it into good order; where they stay'd some time in expectation of a fresh supply of Men, but their expectations proved vain: for in the overturn of that State by the indiscretion of that unhappy Prince *Llewellyn ap Gryffith* married to *Eleonor* Daughter of *Simon Monteford* Earl of *Leicester* and *Eleonor* Daughter of King *John*, *Gryffith* being slain Anno 1282 at *Builth*, *Madoc* and his Company returned no more; nor is there any record that the *Welsh* attempted to prosecute their former adventure. Nevertheless, albeit *Madoc* and his *Cambrian* crew be dead and their memory moth-eaten, yet their foot-steps are plainly traced; which the Language they left, the Religion they taught, the Reliques there found do clearly evidence: otherwise how come those *British* words (not much altered from the Dialect used at this day) amongst the *Mexicans*? whence had they the use of Beads, Crucifixes, &c? all which the *Spaniards* as we read in *Lopez de Gomera* and others found amongst those of *Azufano* and *Culhuacan* at their first landing in *America*: Yea, whence comes that tradition amongst the *Mexicans* that a strange People came thither in Corraughs who taught them the knowledge of God, and by whose instruction they became civilized? as related by *Columbus*, *Pozellus*, *Franciscus Lopez*, *Cortez* and other *Castilians*. That of *Fernando Cortez* who Anno Dom. 1519. was Ambassador and General for *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, is most remarkable; in some discourse twixt him and *Mutessuma* the second Son of *Anzal* and Father of *Quabuimoc* the last King of *Mexico* the Ambassador observing the *Indians* to have many Ceremonies which the *Spaniards* used, demanded who first instructed them: The answer was, That many years before a strange Nation landed there who were such a People as induced his Ancestors to afford

afford them civil reception; but how they were called or whence they came, could not satisfie. Another time in a Panegyrick which *Mutemuzza* returned them, he had this expression: One chief cause of my affection to your Nation is, I have many times heard my Father say how that he heard his Grandfire affirm, That some Generations before, his Progenitors came thither as strangers, in company of a Nobleman who abode there a while and then departed, but left many of his People behind: that upon his return most of those he left there, died: and that from him or some of them they supposed themselves to be descended. By which narrative it may be presumed, the People he meant were *Welsh* rather than *Spaniards*, and the Records of that Voyage writ by many *Bardos* and Genealogists confirm as much, as may appear by the learned Poems of *Cymric ap Grono*, *Guten Owen* (who lived in *Edward* the fourth's time,) and Sir *Meredith ap Rees*, (which last lived in the Year 1477.) of *Madoc* has this Eulogie.

Madoc wi' mydyc wedd;
Iawn genau Owen Gwynedd
Ni fuminiun dys, fyemaid oedd
Nada Mawr y ond y'm oroedd,

Madoc ap Owen was I call'd;
Strong, tall, and comely: not embrall'd
With home-bred pleasure; but to Fame,
Through Land and Seas I fought the same.

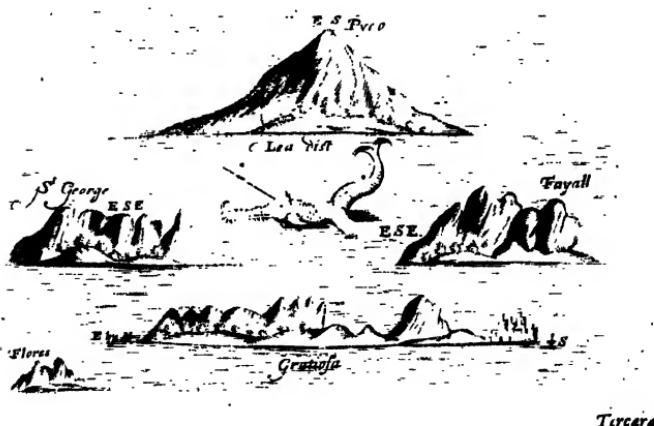
By their Language also: *Welsh* Names being given Birds, Rivers, Rocks, Beasts, &c. as *Gw'rando*, which signifies to hearken; *Pen-gwyn* a Bird that has a white head, and Rocks of that resemblance: Ifles there are called *Chorhoel*, there is also Cape *Britain*; *Gwyn-dew* white water; *Bara* Bread; *Mam* Mother; *Tate* Father; *Dowri* Water; *Pryd* Time; *Buch* a Cow; *Clugor* a Heathcock; *Llynog* a Fox; *Wy* an egg; *Calef* a Quill; *Trwyn* a nose; *Nef* Heaven, and others. Nor is it a phansie of yesterday, since Learned Men both of late and former times have taken notice; such are *Cynwrig ap Grono*, *Meredith ap Ryce*, *Guten Owen*, *Lloyd*, *Powell*, *Pru*, *Hackluit*, *Broughton*, *Purchas*, *Davys* and others, whose learning and integrity have credit, and abundantly convince the ingenious: so as no doubt had it been known as merited, then had not *Christopher Columbus*, *American Vespuus*, *Magellan* nor others carried away the honour of so great a discovery: nor had *Madoc* been defrauded of his memory, nor our Kings of their just Title to the West Indies; at least to that part of it which a secret Fate as it were renew'd their claim to by *Columbus* his profering the discovery to King *Henry* the Seventh. Nor then had his Holines nor his Catholick Majestie had that plea which they now ground upon the *Genoous* discovery, as the *Jesuits* and others have so vehemently disputed. Far be it from me in the least to detract from *Columbus*; albeit 'tis supposed that his confidence arose from anothers direction who by stres of weather was driven upon those parts, and to him communicated; or else from *Columbus* his apprehension of the improbability that so much of the 360 degrees shoule be Sea, as ordinarily Charts do make; and that he might as well discover Westward as the *Portugals* had done Eastwards to the other *Indies*: be it therefore remembred, that this his Voyage was after the other of our Countrey-man three hundred and two and twenty years: So as possession is the *Spaniard's* best plea; fearing justly he cannot arrogate to himself a right upon pretence of the first discovery.

Columbus was born at *Cupapo* or *Nervi* not far from *Genoa*: a Man of a modest nature, studious and well read in the Mathematicks, chiefly in Navigation: His first encouragement was (say the *Spaniards*) from perusing an Ephemeris writ by a *Spanish* Mariner, who had been forced into the West Indies by tempest and died at *Columbus* his houfe after his arrival: this some think was invented, to the end an *Italian* should not mafte so much glory. Whether *Columbus* had any light from Poets, or heard of *Madoc's* Voyage who knows? for what Nation formerly knew not the acts of *English*-men better than themselves? otherwise *Polydore Virgil* had not undertook to our shame and prejudice, the *English* Chronologie; nor *Vertegian* (alias *Raply*) the confidence to render well-nigh all the considerable Gentry of this Land from the Etymology of their Names, Teutonicques. *Columbus* well affirme of this discovery sent his Brother to King *Henry* the VII. to propofe the busines fo he would accept the undertaking: but the improbability of the design together with the obscure Quality of the Stranger, together with his too great frugality made the King give little credit to the propofition: for in his paſſage he had been imprifoned by Pirates who ſtript him before they ſet him at liberty. Upon the Kings refuſal he apply'd himſelf to the *French* King, who in like manner hearing that King *Henry* had refuſed, gave him the like diſmissiſ: fo as he had reſted under a final diſcouragement, had not *Ferdinand* the *Spanish* King accepted the motion, and given him the Command of two hundred Men in two ſmall Ships at the requeſt of *John Perez de Marchena* at that time Rector of the Monastery of *Rabida*, a great *Mecanas* of Learning and Induſtry: with

with which, after threescore dayes sail, (in that time having no small ado to quiet the mutinous *Spaniards*) Columbus descried Land, an Island called *Guanahani*, by Colon new named *Saint Salvador*, a part of *Mexico*, and Southward to the place where *Madoc* formerly landed: a discovery no less joying them than if thereby they had got the Empire of the World: a prize so worthy, that from the year 1492 to this they have brought home no less gold and silver than all *Europe* enjoy'd formerly. *Columbus* died Ann. 1506. in his fourth return out of the *Indies*.

Anno Dom. 1497. Americus Vespuus a Spaniard before his Voyage into the Orient also adventures South; where with small toil he found more Land, but part of what was formerly discovered. Nevertheless, as if *Colon* had done but little, he arrogates to himself the honour of the discovery by calling the whole Continent which stretches almost to either Pole, **AMERICA**: injuriously, seeing others preceeded him in the discovery. *Magellan* after that sails more Southerly than *Vespuus* in the year 1519 thorow that *Fretum*, which with better reason is called *Magellane*. And since that, many others have given their Names unto Ports, Hills, Rivers, Rocks, &c. only *Madoc* sleeps in oblivion. Howbeit, such as value *Madoc's* memory will not easily pretermis those living Monuments without some due acknowledgement: But I return.

The beginning of *December* we had sight of the *Azores* or *Flemish Islands*: which the Name seems to infer were first found out by the *Dutch*; for according to Tradition, a Merchant of *Burges* bound for *Lisbon* in the year 1440. was by streys of weather driven so far West as unexpectedly twixt the latitude of 38 and 40 deg. he descried several small Islands in view of one another, but at that time without shew of humane Inhabitants: These he called *Flemish Islands*. Howbeit, coming soon after ashore in *Andelnia* and reporting his adventure, the *Portugals* by his Compas easily found the way, and quickly planted them with Men and what else was necessary: at which time they gave them the Names of *Saint George*, *Saint Michael*, *Saint Mary*, *Fayall*, *Poco*, and the *Tercera's*; comprehended at first under the Name *Tercera*, but afterwards the *Azores*; so called from the many Ayres of Hawks they found there: albeit *Oreolinus* rather supposeth the Name derived from the *Spanish* word *Effer* which signifies to dry or wither: for the old Name given it by Geographers (if rightly apprehended and granted to be that which *Theophrastus* mentions in his Book of Rarities) was *Uxiana* and *Cassiteride*; but the new Denominations imposed by the *Lusitanian* are not improper: for *Tercera* is so called for that it resembles three illes, meaning the principal: *Fayall* has its Name from the Beech-trees with which it then abounded; *Poco* from the Pyramidal shape it bears; *Flora* for that it was over-spread with flowers; the rest from Saints to whose Patronage the Captain thought fit to recommend them. Of these, *Tercera* is greatest if not the fruitfullest; for it abounds with Wine and Oyl, Corn and Fruit, Oade, &c. *Angria* is her best Town, and *Brazel* the strongest Fort, which also commands the Haven; the best that Island has, though not very good to anchor in.



Tercera is not famous for any thing more than for the defence it gave Prior *Don Antonio* the titulary King of *Portugal* against the Spaniards, as may be read at large in *Cuneglass's* Treatise concerning the Union of those two Crowns. *Pico* is extraordinary high land and surges in a peak or spire like *Teneriffe*, so far above the Clouds as those that sail by find it oft envelopped with fogs, insomuch as the top is seldom to be discerned, so as its Motto may be, *Caput inter nubila conditum*: one of the highest Islands in the World it is reputed; some supposing that it mounts full five miles into the middle Region. But of more certainty it is, the circuit of the Isle is disproportionate to its height; for it exceeds not ten miles compass. The higher Earth is for the most part Sulphur, and shews many concave places whereout evaporates smoke and flame which now and then belch forth Brimstone. Notwithstanding, in the Valleys below there are delightful shades and chil-cold Rivolets, into which when the Fire is vomited, those contrary Elements echo their discontent, not a little to the terror and amazement of such as are unacquainted with those rancounters: from this contrariety it is I suppose, these Illes are more subject to dreadful Earth-quakes than other places. Most memorable was that about the year 1591. in Saint *Michael's* Island *Linschot* mentions, which endured shaking from the 20 day of *July* unto the 12 day of *August* to the extream affrightment of the Inhabitants, especially when by force thereof they perceived the Earth remove from place to place and *Villa Franca* the best Town it had turn topsy turvy: the Ships also that then rode at anchor in the Bay trembled and quak't; insomuch as the People verily thought Dooms-day was at hand, and that the Fabrick of the Universe was disjointing. Earthquakes, says *Aristote l. 2. c. 7. Meteor.* proceed from watry vapors included within the bowels of the Earth, which in seeking a passage to its proper element by making a tumultuary motion shakes the Earth; and 'tis observed that these concussions happen oftneſt in places within the temperate Zone, in regard that in cold places exhalations are not ſo much increas'd as they be in hot, where the Vapors are spent through excess of heat; chiefly where the Land is sandy, out of which exhalations evaporate with ease: contrarily, as here, where the ſoil is rocky and mountainous, many hollow Caves are found; which being fill'd with Vapors troublous the superficies, and gives not over until it make an eruption. Another Miracle the *Spaniards* report for truth, How that the Isle *Corvo* rose out of the Sea, till then being far under water. That and *Flores* were discovered by the *Spaniard*. But more certain it is that in the year 88. they had them in subjection; ſuch time as the Earl of *Essex* commanding her late Majeffies Sea-force, to retaliate the *Spaniard* landed in defignt of the Inhabitants and exercised what hostile Acts he thought needful: So as *Flores* and *Corvo* were fackt to purpose: S. *Michael* also was given the Souldier as free plunder, after the Admiral had for publick uſe first ſent thence aboard his Ship four hundred thousand Ducates and upwards in Plate, besides Merchandise of great value: ſo well recruited was that place, notwithstanding the Noble Earl of *Cumberland* had examined it eight years before when moft of the Westerly Illes submitted themſelves likewife to his mercy. *Fayall* the year following fel the *Englifh* no leſt ſmart upon the *Spaniſh* account, which made the Inhabitants execrate the Catholick ambition. In the year 1597. *Pico* was in like fort sharer in that quarrel, when Sir *Walter Raleigh* made the Isle a prey unto the incensed *Englifh*, the *Spaniard* then not ſo able as afterwards to requite what provocation was add'd further at *Orenoqua* in the *West-Indies*. I shall but give this further remembrance, that at S. *Michaels* the true Meridian is only found; for there the Needle shews no variation either Eaſterly or Weſterly, contrary to what is obſerved in other places: the reaſon is *inter Occulta Natura*, queſt at by many, but by none certainly diſcovered: albeit, ſome conjecture it is occaſioned by the magnetick vertue of the Earth which makes the variation more or leſs according to the diſtinctiōn of place or diſtance from either Continent: for where there is an equidistantcy, as in the mid-way 'twixt *Afric* and *America*, the Needle is oft-times found to vary leaſt, the two Continents equally attracting all along that Meridian: but undoubtedly it is a fallacious conclusion, ſeeing the variation is ſo small at the Cape of *Good Hope* and other places contiguous to the *African* Continent. Howbeit, the ancient Accounts of the firſt Meridian, from whence Coſmographers allume their longitude in former Ages, by *Ptolemy* and others, were placed at the Fortunate Islands, thoſe now called *Canarie*, and Cape *Verde*, where is very little variation: the rest of the meridional lines are 180°; and albeit drawn from N. to S. yet by the ſame Poles are terminated.

Leaving the *Azores*, the wind being fair and moderate we quickly entred the Cantabrian Seas, where after a little time we were chearliſhly entertained by loud winds that ſoon converted to a Storm of thrice four and twenty hours continuance; during which we took in our sail and lay a hull, toſt ſufficiently: but ſo good were our Ships that the great-

greatest fear we had was of being driven nearer the French Coast than we desired ; for in spight of Helm and Mizen the Tide or Current, if not both, drew us so night to *Hys-fant* (or as we pronounce it *Ushen*) a small Isle upon the most Western Point or Promontory of *Britain* (*Armoria* of old, but now *Britain-Britannia*) as we were not a little endangered. In that distres we likewise sought the Lord : who as he is the hope of all the Ends of the Earth, was pleased to appease the noise of the Sea and the waves thereof, *Psal. 65.* and in few hours more gave us the comfortable sight of our own Country ; not unlike that long lookt for *Ithaca*. And well rememb'ring that caution of the Poet,
Turpe mihi abire Domo vacuusq; redire, I have as my greatest Adventure thought fit to expose to publick view these observations, albeit the issue of youth and hast, which indeed were intended for the private satisfaction of that noble Lord *William Earl of Pem-brook*, and the Lord *Powys*, who gave me the first incouragement to Travel. To conclude, We came to an Anchor at *Plymouth*, and returned God hearty thanks for our preservation.

Reditus; suo Singula gradent.

E I N C I S.

A N
A L P H A B E T I C A L
T A B L E,

• Wherein the Names of Men are distinguished
by a different Character.

A bbas, Prince of Persia, made Gouvernour of Heri 282,* labours to supplant his eldest Brother 285. crowned 287. severity to his Son 288. conquers Larry-Joon 199,200. expels the Turk out of Mecopatamia 285,290. his policy 293. militia 303,304. guard 303. arbitrariness 293. civility to strangers 297. character 215. titles 216. revenue 292,293,313. death and burial 290.	
<i>Abbas-abau, a Suburb in Spahawn</i>	167.
<i>Abbas-abau, a pleasan house and garden in Hyrcania</i>	174.
<i>Aballync Emperour</i>	33.
<i>Abraham</i> 14,47,148,163,219,226,235.	
<i>Abdalla, King of Malacca, inconsiderately put to death by the Portuguese</i>	355.
<i>Abdul-cawn, General of the Mogols Army, invades Decan</i> 75. expulst thence 76. made Vice-Roy of Kalpi and Koor ibid. destroys the Coolyes 75. serves under Sultan Curroon 77,78. marches over Bellagate 75. marries his Son to the Mogols Grand-child 79. General against the Persians ib. made Gouvernour of Gonzarat 81. his Eunuch affronted 82. fights with Nahor-cawn 83. in disgrace at Courib. his Son secured 84. seizes upon Jompore, and falls out with Radgee Rhyem 86. forced from Elabasse and Brampore 86, 88. abandons Curroon 90. sent Prisoner to Brampore 95. released 99.	
<i>Abdul-cheries intimacy with the Persian Queen</i> 181. his tragick end	ibid.
<i>Abdul-Fazel slain</i>	71.
<i>Abubecr succeeds Mahomet in the Meccan Chalyp-ship</i> 266. marries his Daughter, and gives his to Mahomet 321. venerable with the Turk, accused by the Persian 271.	
<i>Abulfeda, an Arabian Cosmographer</i>	196.
<i>Abulghar</i>	59.
<i>Abufaid</i>	60.
<i>Acbarpore</i>	72 ¹ .
<i>Acscines</i>	70,151.
<i>Achein</i>	303.
<i>Achemenide</i>	238.
<i>Adell</i>	32.
<i>Adam and Eve, traditions concerning them</i>	18,47,49,66,163,266,342.
<i>Aden</i>	35,36,277.
<i>Adrabenus</i>	243.
<i>Aderbroyon</i>	60,271.
<i>Adsmeeer</i>	63.
<i>Agisimba</i>	31,32.
<i>Agamia</i>	292.
<i>Alcam</i>	275.
<i>Equinoctial circle</i>	10,11,33,388.
<i>Ethiopia</i>	12,13,14,37.
<i>sub-Egypto</i>	36.
<i>Agra, Metropolis of Induftan</i> 62,63. the Castle built	64.
<i>Ahahuerus, K. of Persia</i>	141,241,243.
<i>Ajaman</i>	34,35.
<i>Ahowaz</i>	266.
<i>Albanopolis</i>	155,343.
<i>Aladules</i> 200. slain by Selymus	276.
<i>Alamandure</i>	260,262.
<i>Albors, a Mountain where the Pyree stood</i> 197.	
<i>Albuquerque, a victorious Portugize in East-India</i>	35,40,101,108.
<i>Alcaba, a Temple in Mecca</i>	129,163.
<i>Alcanzar</i>	329.
<i>Alcoras</i>	320.
<i>Alcozir</i>	36,38.
<i>Alexander the Great, invades the Persian Empire</i> 245. having past the Hellepon, sacrifices at Achilles Tomb ibid. overthrows the Persian near the River Granicus ib. at Issus 246,249. and lastly at Arbela 247. visits Jerusalem and the Temple of Jup. Ammon ib. triumphantly enters Babylon and Shushan 248. the great Treasure he found in the Persian Exchequer 249. invited to Persepolis, which he inconsiderately fired 248. pursues Bellus 250. mourns for Darius ib. fights against	

THE TABLE.

Porus 151. admires the Ocean 252. Earth and Ocean compared ib. his no plus in- to the East ex-mined 254. returning he celebrates the Orgies 256. gives audience to 100 Ambassadors ib. his magnifi- cence ib. marries the Princess Statyra 257. mourns immoderately for Epehetion ib. at Babylon summons a Parliament of the whole World, and in the interim dies ib. his Corps conveyed to Alexandria 258. viewed by Caesar ib. his progeny destroyed by Antipater ib. his Empire divided ib.	Anziqui 9, 10
Alexandria in Egypt 270	Apes-tooth worship 342
Alfarabius his birth-place 185	Arabia 35, 102
Ally-Ballū beheaded 289	Arabians conquer Persia 266. invade Spain 269. defeated by Charles Martell ib.
Alliavas 173	Arabique 104
Almansors costly vanity 229	Argus flu. 181
Almeyda the General, in his return to Por- tugal, slain by the Savages at Cape bona- Speranza 19. his Conquests in India 379	Arbaelus rebels against his Prince 235, 236. attains the Crown ib.
Almotan-abbi 256	Arcken 266
Amadavar or Amadavat, chief City of Gou- zurat 43, 64, 255.	Aradevel 269, 270
Amangueyo 372	Aradoe flu. 185, 267
Amara mons 33	Ararat mons 58, 201, 202, 203
Amazons 10	Araxis flu. 181, 186, 190, 203
Ambassadors of Persia 283, 287	Arecoa 28, 334
Of Turke 287	Are Philenorum 249
Of Indostan 63, 76	Argarie Gulph 357
Of Chyna 217	Aris 194
Of Tartary 96	Armagun 346
Of England 174	Armenia whence derived 157. how divided ib. when converted 261. Religion 157
Of Spain 148	Armenian Prince 154
Of France 269	Aristotle 35
Of Venice 272	Aro 60
Amber 371, 372	Arot and Marot, two evil Spirits 327
Amber grease 386	Arrapachia 248
Amboyna 343, 370	Arracan 347, 358, 362
America when and by whom first disco- vered 393, 394	Arases, a Scythian, compasses the Crown of Persia 258
Annadagar 69, 78, 80	Artaxata 130, 131
Annobon 153	Artaxerxes his magnificence 243. victory over his Brother Cyrus 244. amorous in his old age ib.
Amurath invades Persia 283. forced to retreat 284, 285	Arzenion 272
Anamogyry 83	Asaph-cawn advanced by his Sister Queen Noormahall 75. writes to Mahobet-cawn 96. indangered by his Sister 97. gives his Daughter to Sultan Curroon ib. beaten by Mahobet-cawn 91. his cruelty to Mahobet 94. thought accessory to Sultan Bulloch's death 98. in favour with the Mogul 99
Anayras Temple 138, 207	Afencion Isle 393
Ancyra 263	Asbestos or linum Vireum 309, 333
Andrew the Apostle 195	Asharaffe 174
Angels defined in the Etoran 328	Affada 24
Angola 8, 9, 10	Affa-fetada 118
Angra 397	Affempore 82
Annanas an Indian Fruit 334	Afmeer 33, 63, 75, 81, 92
Annemar 70	Afsepose 152
Antarctic Constellations 389	Aitiages 140, 141. his Dream 237
Antabofa 22	Afrakan 189
Anteius his Palace 7	Atlantique Ocean 2
Antique Tomb 126	Atlantiades 7
Antioch accursed by Mahomet 327	Atlas 2
Antipodes 5, 11, 12	Atropatia 205
Anti-Taurus 275	Attack 67, 91
Amongill 22	Augustus Caesar 220, 259
Amar 61	Augustin bay 22
	Avicennas birth-place 194. labours in Na- tural Philosophy 210. place of burial ib.
	Audenagar 75, 76 The

THE TABLE.

<i>The Authors sickness in Persia</i>	233	<i>Barfuslidea</i>	190
<i>Aurea Chersonesius</i>	352	<i>Barman</i>	360
<i>Anua</i>	358	<i>Baroch</i>	80,83
<i>Anzarchians</i>	272	<i>Baro</i>	225
<i>Auxarian Mountains</i>	33	<i>Barongo</i>	359
<i>Ayder marries Ufan-Callans Daughter</i>	271	<i>Baronia</i>	208,210
<i>Aycor</i>	59	<i>Baruze</i>	363
<i>Aysaph</i>	218	<i>Bafstra</i>	266
<i>Azemia</i>	292	<i>Baffower</i>	82,93
<i>Azen-abaut</i>	167	<i>Baran</i>	376
<i>Azjaker</i>	275	<i>Barticala</i>	335
<i>Azmilli rubrigated in the Persian Kalender</i>	269	<i>Bais</i>	38,385
<i>Azores insule</i>	1,2,4,397	<i>Baiti</i>	42
<i>Azen-chan disgraced 74. restored to favour</i>	75	<i>Balebachow</i>	169
		<i>Bebey an Indian Lady poisons her self</i>	152
		<i>Bedor</i>	71
		<i>Begum</i>	75
		<i>Behet flu.</i>	68,101
		<i>Belgian a Mountain in Tartaria</i>	93
		<i>Bellaguate, a Mountain in E. India</i> 40,78,152	73,59
		<i>Belochus</i>	237
		<i>Belshazar dethroned by Darins</i>	238
		<i>Belus, a King and Astrologer buried at Babylon</i> 227. <i>his Statue of Gold</i> 2,2. <i>Temple built by Semiramis</i> 227, 230. <i>described</i> 242. <i>destroyed by Xerxes</i>	ib
		<i>Bengala</i>	65,83,93,96,361,347
		<i>Ben-Merodac</i>	237
		<i>Benjamin</i>	372
		<i>Benomotapa</i>	8,9
		<i>Berage</i>	70
		<i>Berar</i>	70
		<i>Berodach-Balandan</i>	237
		<i>Berry, an Arabique School</i>	125
		<i>Betele</i>	28,312,334
		<i>Beyramgano-chan slain</i>	62
		<i>Bezar</i>	371
		<i>Bilbo</i>	1
		<i>Bildith</i>	190
		<i>Bimberry, a Mountain in E. India</i>	67,97
		<i>Bindemyr, a Bridge near Persepolis</i>	128,136,138
		<i>Binny and Guinney</i>	7
		<i>Bipilipatan</i>	343
		<i>Birds of Paradise</i>	370
		<i>Bijnagar</i>	346
		<i>Bizantium</i>	244,362,365
		<i>Bizabode</i>	225
		<i>Blood-stone incomparable</i>	358
		<i>Bobba-hodgee</i>	126
		<i>Bowbeplow</i>	82
		<i>Bochar</i>	96,194,274
		<i>Bomahem</i>	205
		<i>Bonavista</i>	7
		<i>Bondy</i>	94
		<i>Bonies idolatrous Priests</i>	374
		<i>Booby</i>	31
		<i>Borno</i>	371
		<i>Boyall</i>	161
		<i>Bracmanni Indian Priests</i>	257,344
		<i>Bryce.</i>	

THE TABLE.

<i>Bramannorum Regio</i>	255, 256, 353	<i>Cape de bona Esperanza</i>	13, 391
<i>Brama</i>	353, 360, 362	<i>Cape de Coriemes</i>	24
<i>Brampore</i>	71	<i>Cape Goadell</i>	105
<i>Brava</i>	31	<i>Cape Guader</i>	Ibid.
<i>Brazzel</i>	17, 397	<i>Cape de Comreen</i>	100, 335
<i>Brin-John</i>	335, 340	<i>Cape falso</i>	13, 19, 20
<i>Brearwoods division of the World</i>	375	<i>Cape Guardefu</i>	32, 350
<i>Broder</i>	83	<i>Cape Palmas</i>	7
<i>Bucary</i>	86	<i>Cape Roma</i>	21
<i>Buccor</i>	85	<i>Cape Rozelgate</i>	101, 105
<i>Budat</i>	225	<i>Cape Tormentozzo</i>	20
<i>Bulloch imprisoned 91, 92. crowned murdered</i>	97, 98	<i>Caracalla's perfidy 259. stains the Roman Majesty 260. slain</i>	261
<i>Bundama flu.</i>	181	<i>Carracula</i>	157
<i>Burial-place of the Persian Kings</i>	150	<i>Carcash</i>	152, 213, 217
<i>Burials of several sorts</i>	57	<i>Caramania</i>	277
C			
<i>C Abian</i>	360	<i>Caromon-Shahoon</i>	150, 225
<i>Cabriz, a rare blood-stone</i>	359	<i>Caravans-raw</i>	117, 223
<i>Cabul</i>	77	<i>Carvell</i>	26
<i>Cabobarra</i>	35	<i>Caibhan</i>	222
<i>Cacato</i>	383	<i>Cassimer</i>	68, 69, 77
<i>Calagate</i>	101	<i>Caspian Sea</i>	185
<i>Calamba wood</i>	333, 371	<i>Caspian Strait</i>	171
<i>Calanus the Bracman 178. discourses with Alexander the Great 47. burns himself</i>	257	<i>Casta</i>	347
<i>Calderan Plains</i>	275	<i>Castle Island</i>	26
<i>Caliture</i>	346	<i>Cattatinga</i>	363
<i>Cullamina</i>	345	<i>Carbaya</i>	293
<i>Callicent</i>	336, 338	<i>Caucasus mons</i>	202
<i>Calpi</i>	70, 76	<i>Caucasic porta</i>	189
<i>Cambalec</i>	60	<i>Cavendish</i>	392
<i>Cambalu</i>	32, 59, 195, 375	<i>Cain</i>	209, 266
<i>Cambaya</i>	43, 64, 81	<i>Cayro</i>	36, 220
<i>Cambina</i>	368	<i>Casbyn</i>	208
<i>Camber</i>	363	<i>Celebes</i>	343, 368
<i>Cambericum</i>	343	<i>Cesarca</i>	263
<i>Cambodia</i>	345, 357, 372	<i>Cefaria</i>	261
<i>Cambyses his frantic pranks</i>	240	<i>Chaberis flu.</i>	347
<i>Cambism</i>	343	<i>Chabonchara</i>	271
<i>Camelions</i>	23	<i>Chacoporo</i>	182, 190
<i>Camels</i>	116, 205	<i>Chandis</i>	69, 95
<i>Campson-Gaurus 101. destroy'd by Sclym</i>	276	<i>Chapper-bennitz</i>	82
<i>Cam-Sylba Prince of Maurenabar slain</i>	275	<i>Charah</i>	206
<i>Canaria Insule</i>	2, 3	<i>Charas</i>	219
<i>Cananore</i>	335	<i>Charalters</i>	142, 315
<i>Candace's Eunuch</i>	32, 341	<i>Chatigan</i>	85, 93, 343
<i>Candabor</i>	79, 194, 195	<i>Chavilan</i>	353, 360
<i>Candu</i>	340	<i>Chemois mons</i>	333
<i>Candy</i>	342	<i>Cheban-chebaed</i>	94
<i>Can Azem his Daughter married to Prince Gulfroc 75. in disgrace ib. sent Ambassador into Persia</i>	76	<i>Chedar-laomer</i>	146, 148, 235
<i>Cangora, an Indian Castle</i>	77	<i>Cherbaugh, a famous garden</i>	162
<i>Canoa figured</i>	30	<i>Chersam</i>	70
<i>Camam</i>	376	<i>Chera</i>	Ibid.
<i>Cappa</i>	263	<i>Chefel flu.</i>	193
<i>Cape de Verd 7. 393. C. de Aguillas 14, 15</i>		<i>Cheyomarraz</i>	148, 151, 235
		<i>Chiringen</i>	364
		<i>Chinifful</i>	131, 205
		<i>Choasperis flu.</i>	128, 231
		<i>Chormandell</i>	343
		<i>Choul</i>	41, 68, 332
		<i>Chirac</i>	154
		<i>Christians in Socotra</i>	35
		<i>Armenia</i>	

THE TABLE.

<i>Armenia, Persia</i>	152, 158	<i>Cotton-wool</i>	365
<i>India</i>	339	<i>Coughton</i>	120
<i>Tartaria</i>	193	<i>Corfe-cast</i>	118, 266
<i>Chusitan</i>	116, 231, 266, 271	<i>Coulam</i>	335, 333
<i>Chathites removed to Samaria</i>	203	<i>Coy</i>	60, 276
<i>Chylmian, or Ruines of the Palace in Persepolis figured 143. described from to</i>	138 147	<i>Cozroes King of Persia persecutes the Christians 261. vanquish'd by Tigris ib. his Idols destroyed 262. dies before Ctesiphon</i>	263
<i>Chyna</i>	375	<i>Coshoce, King of Persia, a Parricide 261. Violates his Fairib with the Christians ib. forces a Christian Lady, and after that the Nymphs of Daphne ib. invades Armenia, and beaten by the Christian confederates ib. flies to Byzantium 262. restored to his Crown by the Christian Emperour ib. is baptiz'd 263. prays the Christian Emperour with a rich Cross, and after that apostatizes ib. takes the Cross away from Jerusalem ib. flies before Heraclius the Roman Emperour, who destroys his Idols 264. his three Armies overtak'd ib. assassinated</i>	265
<i>Chyneſes</i>	357, 364	<i>Corthoc, his blasphemous Epithetes 117. Vision of the 12 Towers</i>	265
<i>Chytor</i>	95	<i>Cranganor</i>	335, 340
<i>Ciaxares</i>	237	<i>Crallus, the Roman Consuls sacrifice 219 slain by the Parthians</i>	238
<i>Cidaris, a Persian regal tire for the head</i>	145	<i>Crefus, the Lydian King</i>	238
<i>Cingis-chan</i>	59	<i>Crotone</i>	369
<i>Cincapura.</i>		<i>Crater</i>	372
<i>Cinnamon</i>	342	<i>Crozier, a Southern Constell.</i>	33
<i>Circumcision</i>	306	<i>Crocodiles</i>	363
<i>Cirus Rex Persia 238, 239. his conquests ib. death 240. Epitaph ib. period of his Family</i>	127, 146, 185, 190, 206, 280	<i>Crux sancta</i>	338
<i>Cirus flu.</i>	127, 146, 185, 190, 206, 280	<i>Ctesiphon</i>	265
<i>Ciropolis</i>	127, 194	<i>Cucurran</i>	340
<i>Cities compared</i>	220, 221	<i>Cuface</i>	171
<i>Civit Cat's</i>	361, 371	<i>Cumber</i>	370
<i>Cloves</i>	370	<i>Cumbric Isles</i>	26
<i>Co Araxis flu.</i>	138	<i>Cuncam</i>	75
<i>Cheops flu.</i>	231	<i>Cunzar</i>	190
<i>Coat Armour of Persia</i>	301	<i>Curigan</i>	340
<i>Cochyn</i>	336	<i>Cuzel-baib their Institution 276. their Figure</i>	302, 303
<i>Cochyn-chyna</i>	347	<i>Curroon, youngest Son to Selym great Mogul</i>	
<i>Cocho-Nuts</i>	381	<i>74. to dislodge his Nephews claim causes them to be baptiz'd ib. changes his Name 77. goes General into Decan, and subjects Bharar and Chandis 78. exacts a Tribute from the Gulkunda Kings ib. accessory to Sultan Gulhoes death ib. flies into Rebell. on 79. endeavours to rob the publick Treasury 80. fights against his Father at Delhi 81. overcome ib. by Allahp-cawns intercession pardoned ib. again rebels 82. defeated by his Brother at Mando, retires into Decan and Bengala 84. defeated by Mahobet-cawn 86. retreats with his Wife into Patan, and after into Gulkunda 87. plots how to rob the Diamond Mine 88. returns to Decan ib. besieges Brampore ibid. again flies into Decan ibid. bidding Melcc farewell</i>	
<i>Coffee, a Persian drink</i>	113, 211		
<i>Colchis</i>	158		
<i>Colosses at Rhodes sold to a Jew</i>	267		
<i>Colombo in Zelon</i>	342		
<i>Colom' 24</i>	396		
<i>Columns of heads</i>	166		
<i>Comm' law</i>	153		
<i>Compaſſ, by whom invented</i>	351		
<i>Coom</i>	219		
<i>Congo</i>	8		
<i>Conio</i>	370		
<i>Connick flu.</i>	18, 1, 280		
<i>Coney Iſle</i>	12		
<i>Conſtandell-cawn 161. his Villany</i>	156		
<i>Conſtallations</i>	33		
<i>Cooneſha</i>	153		
<i>Cophi flu.</i>	70, 354		
<i>Copias</i>	362		
<i>Coptos</i>	39, 354		
<i>Corafan</i>	59, 186, 216		
<i>Corall</i>	380		
<i>Corbell</i>	225		
<i>Corca</i>	181		
<i>Coriats miftake 126. his burial-place</i>	42		
<i>Corrande</i>	225		
<i>Corpo ſantos</i>	8, 11		
<i>Corryhn</i>	225		
<i>Corvo</i>	398		
<i>Colman</i>	362		
<i>Coſtag in Mogeſian</i>	108		
<i>Coſtumbay</i>	83		

THE TABLE.

be marches to Asmeer	92.	is beaten from Agra ibid. expell Tatta ibid. draws his
Horse into Delly ibid. with joy entertains		Mahobet-cawn
Mahobet-cawn	97.	under whose con- duct he re-advances to Agra
upon his Fathers death, by foul means, obtain the		Crown
again alters his Name ibid. congratulated by sundry Ambassadors	99.	purposed by heavy judgments ib. his Coro- nation solemnized by the English at Su- rat
ib.		Curſcroon, otherwife called Cufhro, attempts the Crown
72. pardoned ibidem. rebels	73.	flies to Labor ibid. surprised by Ferry- men ibid. his lamentable condition
committed first to Allaph-cawns custody,		78.
and after to Cuurrons	77.	murdered
lamented	ibid.	78.
Cartizans	115, 132, 340, 369	
Caufuar	152	
Cat bobbaw	126, 127	
Cyne	240	
Cyron	362	
D		
Dabis	374	
Datul	41, 68, 332	
Dace	76	
Dairas	98	
Dallaqua	33, 36	
Daman	41, 68	
Damiscus	266	
Dametanza	103	
Damiadec	70	
Damke	42	
Damoan, a high Mountain upon Ararat	20	1, 203
Damon	41, 332	
Danda-Rajapuree	100	
Daniel the Prophet	141, 147, 207.	his Tomb
	281	
Darghan	267	
Darius Medus	238	
Darius Nothus	243	
Darius Histaſpes	240, 241	
Darius Codomanus	245.	fought with
by Alex. ib. beaten at Granicus in Bythi- nia ibid. his strange preparation	246.	over- come at Iſſus in Phrygia ibid. again at Ar- bela in Affria
247. his rich Throne of		state
2, 7, 2, 48. Cabinet 246. betrayed by		Bellus
Bellus	250.	his last prayer ib. royalty in- terred
ib.		
Daru	363	
D'Aquilla	371	
Date Trees	118, 119, 121, 380	
Daultabat	84	
Daya	363	
Dayta	98	
Deacow	124, 225	
Decan	68, 98	
Degardon	152	
E		
EArls of Cumberland	3, 8.	Pembroke
Efex		399
Earthquakes at Lar	120.	at Terceras
		398
Ebony		380
Echar proclaimed Mogul	64.	subjects Chytor
65.	goes on pilgrimage to Asmeer ib. sub- dues Bengal, Rantampore, and Patan	
67.	receives homage from several Prin- ces 69. takes Cajmeer 70. and Hasar	
73.	pardons his Son Sclym ibid. affli- cted with the death of his two Sons 74. buries his Mother ibid. beats his rebellious	
75.	son by mistake is poisoned ibid.	
		royally interred
Echbarre		ib.
Ecaratane	207.	built by Arphaxad ib. de- stroyed by Nebuchadonzer ib. re-edified
		by Decioes 236, 237. beautified by
Daniel		ib.
Eclifſer		95
Eemaisin		157
Ediffa		263
Edom		35, 38

THE TABLE.

<i>Ebberam accus'd by Mahomet</i>	327	<i>Ferro</i>	3, 4
<i>Elabass</i>	66, 71, 79, 85, 86	<i>Festivals</i>	325
<i>Elam</i>	122, 206, 291	<i>Fettibeg</i>	83
<i>Elamites</i>	137, 291	<i>Fettipore</i> 64, 65. described	73
<i>Elomdisia</i>	267	<i>Firando</i>	372
<i>Elephants</i> 75. described 362. worshipped	lb.	<i>Fire worshipped</i>	36, 147, 168, 193, 198, 219, 235, 264
<i>Elephantina</i>	240	<i>Fitzherbert</i>	13
<i>Elmedin accus'd by Mahomet</i>	327	<i>Flemish Isles</i>	397
<i>Elsheer sacks</i>	266	<i>Flores</i>	Ibid.
<i>Eltark</i>	103	<i>Florida</i>	393
<i>Emangoly-chawn Arch Duke of Shyrax, triumphs over Ormus</i> 129. and Larr 119. his Titles 131. state 132. entertainment ib. his rich Attire 133. esteem with the People ib. Revenue ib. Exercises 134. Death 285	325	<i>Flying fishes</i>	39
<i>Emodian mountains</i>	33, 254	<i>Forte Ventura</i>	2
<i>Emyr-Hamze Mirza victorious over Turk and Tartar</i> 280, 281. enters Casyb in triumph 281. his great success 284, 285. poisoned	286	<i>Fortunate Islands</i>	2, 198
<i>Emyr-Hamze Mirza expels the Turk out of Persia</i> 280. variance 'twixt him and his Brother Abbas 285. made blind	288	<i>Fool Poffs</i>	313
<i>England's Foref</i>	179, 189	<i>French Amb'iss. into Persia</i>	269
<i>Encon and Edwall sons of Prince Own Gwyneth accompany their Brother Madoc to Sest, and by storm driven into the West Indies</i>	394, 395	<i>Frens Africa</i>	7
<i>Ephesron marries Darius daughter</i> 257. his death and princely Funeral ib. his Monument	270	<i>Funerals of the Anzigu</i> 10. <i>Baltrians</i> 198. <i>Baryans</i> 46, 47. <i>Canarians</i> ; <i>Chormandians</i> 343. <i>Chyneſes</i> 378. <i>Cowers</i> 168, 198. <i>Japanians</i> 373. <i>Indians</i> 343. <i>Persees</i> 54. <i>Persians</i> 308. <i>Soudanians</i>	18
<i>Ercocco</i>	33		
<i>Erez</i>	190		
<i>Erythreus gave the Red sea its Name</i> 35. his place of Burial	106		
<i>Erzyrum</i>	283		
<i>Erzengre, a famous Persian Painter</i>	132		
<i>Escar-Macroon</i>	266		
<i>Eſtacher</i>	154		
<i>Ethaman Doulet disgraced</i> 74. upon his daughter's high marriage restored to favour	ibid.		
<i>dies</i>	78		
<i>Etnaria</i>	292		
<i>Evans a Sea Capt. hurt by a Mammee buried at Santa Helena</i>	384. 392		
<i>Semi-Eunuchs</i>	17		
<i>Eunuchs</i>	300, 306		
<i>Euphrates flu.</i>	108, 227, 289		
<i>Ezion-gheber</i>	36, 38, 349		
F			
<i>F Alcate</i>	372, 373		
<i>Fanatiques</i>	269		
<i>Farghan</i>	194		
<i>Farrabaut</i>	184, 184		
<i>Farriague</i>	56, 57		
<i>Fatyma's tombe</i>	221		
<i>Fatyma's tragique end</i>	- 180		
<i>Fayal</i>	397		
<i>Faza</i>	128		
<i>Ferro</i>	3, 4		
<i>Festivals</i>	325		
<i>Fettibeg</i>	83		
<i>Fettipore</i> 64, 65. described	73		
<i>Firando</i>	372		
<i>Fire worshipped</i>	36, 147, 168, 193, 198, 219, 235, 264		
<i>Fitzherbert</i>	13		
<i>Flemish Isles</i>	397		
<i>Flores</i>	Ibid.		
<i>Florida</i>	393		
<i>Flying fishes</i>	39		
<i>Forte Ventura</i>	2		
<i>Fortunate Islands</i>	2, 198		
<i>Fool Poffs</i>	313		
<i>French Amb'iss. into Persia</i>	269		
<i>Frens Africa</i>	7		
<i>Funerals of the Anzigu</i> 10. <i>Baltrians</i> 198. <i>Baryans</i> 46, 47. <i>Canarians</i> ; <i>Chormandians</i> 343. <i>Chyneſes</i> 378. <i>Cowers</i> 168, 198. <i>Japanians</i> 373. <i>Indians</i> 343. <i>Persees</i> 54. <i>Persians</i> 308. <i>Soudanians</i>	18		
G			
<i>Gacheen</i>	118		
<i>Gambra</i>	73, 353		
<i>Ganderſee</i>	80		
<i>Gardetzen</i>	70		
<i>Ganganna marches againſt Mirza Sulyman</i> 63. his garden 64, 71. made General 68. sides with Sultan Curroon 78. sent prisoner to Agra 86. mourns for his children 87. exasperates the Mogol against Mahobet-chawn 89. againſt made General 94. dies and is buried amongst his Anceſtors	95		
<i>Gandes</i>	77		
<i>Ganges flu.</i>	51, 62, 85, 98, 254, 343		
<i>Gangarine</i>	251		
<i>Geramants</i>	19, 31, 249		
<i>Garden-achoo</i>	154		
<i>Gaffary</i>	84		
<i>Gaza flu.</i>	356		
<i>Gazacot</i>	263		
<i>Gazars</i>	264, 265		
<i>Gazeben</i>	61, 96, 195, 267, 275		
<i>Gems</i>	372		
<i>Gentro</i>	73		
<i>Georgians</i>	152, 155, 157		
<i>Georgian Tragedy</i>	156		
<i>Ghabor</i>	122		
<i>Ghanoots</i>	70		
<i>Ghafſarpore</i>	Ibid.		
<i>Ghelac</i>	195, 198, 205		
<i>Gheer</i>	173		
<i>Ghez.</i>	170, 172		
<i>Ghezimeer</i>	96		
<i>Ghylan</i>	205		
<i>Giack, a fruit</i>	333		
<i>Gillolo</i>	370		
<i>Goa</i>	40, 68		
<i>Goadel</i>	105		
<i>Gog</i>			

THE TABLE.

<i>Gog</i>	<i>Magog</i>	32, 123, 193, 195, 201	<i>quishes Cozroc, and burns his Idols</i>	263,	
		42, 80	<i>264. his courage admired ibid. restores the</i>		
<i>Golian</i>		225	<i>Crest to Jerusalem</i>	265. <i>his death</i>	
<i>Gomera</i>		4	<i>Herbert's mount</i>	267	
<i>Gold its excellency</i>		354	<i>Hercules</i>	233	
<i>Gonzalvo-zarco</i>		2		108, 150, 227, 256	
<i>Gorgades</i>		393	<i>Hery</i>	194, 280, 282	
<i>Gongerat subjetted</i>		64	<i>Hesperide</i>	7	
<i>Gairo</i>		85	<i>Hierusalem</i>	124, 208, 247, 265	
<i>Cowers</i>		167	<i>Hiblyn slain by St. Azmulli's son</i>	269	
<i>Goyome</i>		125	<i>Hidaspe flu.</i>	70, 100, 205, 251	
<i>Gozan</i>		122, 195, 205, 233	<i>Hipalis</i>	70	
<i>Graciosa</i>		397	<i>Hiero</i>	2, 3	
<i>Grecy</i>		364	<i>Hieropolis</i>	262	
<i>Guder</i>		105, 202	<i>History of the Mogul</i>	66	
<i>Guardafu</i>		32, 36, 350	<i>Hocum-pocus</i>	125, 126	
<i>Gubelcama</i>		103	<i>Hodge-nazar, an Armenian Prince treats the</i>		
<i>Guiana</i>		393	<i>English Ambass.</i>	154	
<i>Gwynneir</i>		97	<i>Hobaro-mirza</i>	66	
<i>Gymny and Bymin</i>		7	<i>Homayon the Great Mogul intoxicated with</i>		
<i>Gulcunda</i>		68, 77	<i>Opium, is killed by a f. ill</i>	61, 62, 92	
<i>Gulph of Arabia</i>	<i>36. Argarica</i>	<i>337. Avelites</i>	<i>Homay-shawb, a famous garden</i>	129, 130	
	93, 337.	103	<i>Hormisda rages against the Christians</i>	262.	
<i>Gumbazellelo</i>		152	<i>disgraces Baramis his General, and is af-</i>		
<i>Gumboon in Persia</i>		112	<i>fascinated</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	
<i>Gundavee</i>		41	<i>Hummus</i>	164	
<i>Gunct derives his descent from Morris-Ally</i>			<i>Harrocane, a tempest</i>	7, 8, 39	
<i>271. venerably reputed of by the Persians ib.</i>			<i>Hydro flu.</i>	185	
<i>extirpates the Family called White-sheep ib.</i>			<i>Hyrac</i>	66, 271, 274	
<i>broaches a new Doctrine ib. marries Ufan-</i>			<i>Hyrcania</i>	181	
<i>Cassian's daughter ib. is murdered</i>		272			
<i>Curee</i>		159			
<i>Gulfasp</i>		54, 55, 198			
<i>Guzel-chan</i>		72, 74			
<i>Cwader</i>		105			
<i>Cwaler</i>		71			
<i>Gybon and Cyphon flu.</i>		195			
H					
H	<i>Abkaycawn</i>	66	J	<i>Aaroon</i>	122, 123, 267
	<i>Habyn flu.</i>	185		<i>Jacobits</i>	155
<i>Hadrmut</i>		103		<i>Taack, an Indian fruit</i>	333
<i>Hajea</i>		66		<i>Jackalls</i>	113
<i>Hais</i>		232		<i>Jackatra</i>	356, 364
<i>Haloen</i>		157		<i>Jacup son to K. Ufan-Cassian envies his Bro-</i>	
<i>Halvury</i>		172		<i>thers success</i>	272. <i>thought accessory to his</i>
<i>Hamadan</i>		150		<i>death ib. slain</i>	273
<i>Hambyer</i>		81		<i>Jallamexa</i>	50
<i>Hanimant</i>		342		<i>Jamchay</i>	357
<i>Hanno's discoveries</i>		15, 393		<i>Jambee</i>	363, 364
<i>Hansote</i>		83		<i>Jambulus</i>	36, 363
<i>Havilah</i>		202, 353		<i>Jambilichus</i>	37
<i>Haffar, a strong Castle</i>	<i>70. taken ibid. descri-</i>			<i>Jamboli</i>	365
	<i>bed</i>	88, 89		<i>Jamsheat</i>	143, 148, 151
<i>Heaven and Hell described in the</i>	<i>Alcoran</i>	327, 328		<i>Janagar</i>	84
				<i>Jangheer rebels against his Father</i>	70. <i>upon</i>
				<i>submission is pardoned</i>	<i>72. flies out again, and</i>
				<i>again is pardoned ib. attains the Crown</i>	<i>73. alters his name</i>
				<i>ib. is indangered by a Conspiracy</i>	<i>74. marries Noormallibid. displeased</i>
				<i>with his son's bad success in Decan</i>	<i>75. sends an Ambass. into Persia</i>
				<i>76. mourns for the untimely death of his son</i>	<i>78. declares his grand-son Bullochby his successor</i>
				<i>79. loses Candakooribid. comforted with Curroon's defeat</i>	<i>81. taken prisoner by Mahobet-cawn</i>
				<i>91. makes an escape</i>	<i>93. sorrows for the death of his son</i>
					<i>Perwees 94. gives audience to a Tartar Ambass.</i>

THE TABLE.

<i>Ambass. 96. dies and is magnificently buried</i>		<i>John de Novo</i>	15
<i>Jangomar</i>	97	<i>Joombaffer</i>	80, 84
<i>Japan</i>	300	<i>Joppa</i>	354
<i>Japarr. 2</i>	372	<i>Joon-pore</i>	63, 67, 86
<i>Jacqueline flu.</i>	364	<i>Jor or Joor</i>	354, 357, 363
<i>the Jarneo</i>	43	<i>Fortan</i>	304
<i>Jalques</i>	69	<i>Jovinian elected Emperor, declares himself a Christian</i>	260
<i>Jatkip</i>	105	<i>Jovis promontorium</i>	363
<i>Java</i>	103, 322	<i>Iraac</i>	266
<i>Jaubaffer</i>	364	<i>Irack</i>	217, 266, 271
<i>Jaxartes flu.</i>	80, 84	<i>Istigas</i>	216
<i>Jazirey</i>	123, 185, 193, 250	<i>Judgement in the Alcoran</i>	309
<i>Iberia porta</i>	217, 229	<i>Jungomer</i>	22
<i>Idolatry of the Africans</i>	189	<i>Jupiter Babylonicus</i>	226
<i>The Angolafes</i>	7	<i>Jupiter, Ammon's Temple</i>	240, 241
<i>The Banyans</i>	9	<i>Jupiter Belus</i>	226
<i>The Canarian</i>	47, 50	<i>Julian the Apostate slain by an invisible hand</i>	
<i>The Chyuefes</i>	3	260. his dreadful exit	ib.
<i>The Scythians</i>	376	Izmael Sophy's pedigree	272. revenges his
<i>The Chormandelians</i>	298	Father's death ibid. flies for safety into Ar-	
<i>The Gowers</i>	343	zenion 273. crowned King of Persia ibid.	
<i>The Javans and Sumatrans</i>	168	invades Tartaria 274. reduces Hyrcania	
<i>The Japonians</i>	363	276. chases the Turk out of Persia 277.	
<i>The Madagascars</i>	346	recovers Bagdad 278. repaid the Messias	
<i>The Mallubars</i>	22	by the Jews 273. dies, and at Ardaveil bu-	
<i>The Mobelians</i>	336	ried	276
<i>The Narsingans</i>	27		
<i>The Perfess</i>	345		
<i>The Indians</i>	53		
<i>The Persians</i>	338, 344, 348		
<i>The Peguans</i>	147, 198, 302		
<i>The Siamites</i>	359, 360		
<i>The Soldania's</i>	358		
<i>The Zeylonians</i>	19		
<i>Idalcan beaten</i>	341, 342		
<i>Jebun flu.</i>	346		
<i>Jeloor</i>	195, 267		
<i>Jelphcy</i>	66		
<i>Jelphlynes</i>	167, 292		
<i>Jeminae Baldrim</i>	155		
<i>Jemini flu.</i>	103		
<i>Jengapore</i>	62, 63, 66, 92, 254		
<i>Jew's transmigration</i>	97		
<i>Jezdgyrd</i>	122, 203		
<i>Jerel-bah</i>	53		
<i>Jerzelmerc</i>	79, 193		
<i>Ilmen flu.</i>	68		
<i>Imau mons</i>	185		
<i>Imbun</i>	59, 195		
<i>India</i>	103		
<i>Indian fruits</i>	40		
<i>Indus flu.</i>	333		
<i>Indus flu.</i>	69, 100, 217, 251, 254, 256		
<i>Industan 44. Language</i>	101		
<i>Indy</i>	357		
<i>Injule bone Fortune</i>	371		
<i>Injule Fortunate</i>	2, 397		
<i>Injule Solis</i>	370		
<i>Injule Satyrorum</i>	372		
<i>Joanna</i>	372		
<i>Joctan and his sons plantations</i>	24		
<i>John de Castro</i>	352		
	35		

K

<i>K Abian</i>	360
<i>Kablay-cawn</i>	60
<i>Kabangra</i>	205
<i>Kabon-kebayd</i>	94
<i>Kabul</i>	77
<i>Kadyon katun</i>	271
<i>Kalpi and Koov</i>	70, 75, 76
<i>Kalystan</i>	216
<i>Cankri</i>	82
<i>Kandabor</i>	76, 79
<i>Kapperbennitz</i>	82
<i>Kara Iissuph</i>	61, 271
<i>Karb-Ally</i>	268
<i>Kastow</i>	189
<i>Karigan</i>	85, 193
<i>Kavilan</i>	353
<i>Kavise</i>	83
<i>Kazeron</i>	154
<i>Kedar-laomer</i>	148, 235, 291
<i>Keldan</i>	217, 225
<i>Kemangh</i>	275
<i>Kerchy</i>	75, 78, 88
<i>Kerman</i>	61
<i>Kerry</i>	85
<i>Ketoakotan</i>	59, 193
<i>Keyomarras</i>	143, 143, 151, 235
<i>Kheloot Pherusky</i>	274
<i>King James and King Charles their monums</i>	13
<i>Kirman</i>	216, 271
<i>Kishmish Castle</i>	105, 106

THE TABLE.

Koemus	61	Macron	274, 292
Korasan	79, 185	Madagascar	21, 391
Kofas	106, 108	Madera	2
Kufa, the place of Mortis-Alby's burial 266. and Coronation of the Persian Kings	ibid.	Madoc ap Owen Gwynedd discovereth the West Indies	394
Kur flu.	128, 136	Mangadozo	31, 32
Kufistan	216	Mallacca straits	397. his cloud 33, 389. place of burial
Kyrizath	181	Magi of Persia	370
L		Magi of Persia	224, 241
L Abatcca	370	Magnice flu.	21
Lackery	225	Magnum	343
Lachnoon	63	The Magnet	343, 351
Lael-Cooly	75	Mahobet-cawn his character	73. has the custody of Sultan Guhro ib. fights against Rana-Radgee 75. sent General into De- can 76. victorious 78. made Governor of Brampore, Cabul and Bangs 79. at Dely defeats Sultan Curroon 81. se- cures Gan-ganna 86. again bears Curroon's party ibid. in discontent leaves the Mogol's Army 89. his son disgraced at Court 90, 91. the Lescar 91. takes the Mogol and Noor- mahall prisoners ibid. exacts contribution out of Bengal 93. laments the death of Prince Perwees 94. turns Anchorite 95. prosecuted by Q. Noormall 96. retires to Ranna-Radgee ibid. repairs to Curroon ibid. his General ibid. advances to Agra 98. where Curroon is crowned ibid. and Mahobet advanced
Lael-Sod	81	Mahomet advanced	99
La Gomera	2	Mahomet the pseude-Prophet, first an appren- tice to Ben-Hartah a merchant 320. a com- mon soldiier under Heraclius the Emperour, then a Commander over a party of Arabians, lastly a pretended Prophet ib. conquers Persia 321, 322. his life and death 265. his Alco- ran 322. Successors 266. his ring	267
Labore described	69	Mahomet-Ally-beg 211 his animosity against Sir Robert Sherley 212. inhumanity to his Lady 213. Character	214, 215
Lampon	364	Mahomet-Codobanda indangered by a con- spiracy withdraws into Georgia 280. crowned ibid. orders his sister's death 279. his answer to the Tosc. 282. miserable end of his chil- dren 280. disconsolate death	289
Lancerota	4	Malacca, the supposed place of Ophry	353,
Language of the Ethiopians	19	Malacca	356
The Madagascars	22	Malayan speech	366
The Mobelians	27	Maldives insule	340, 352
The Arabians	104	Mallabar Coast	335
The Indians	99	Mallabars drown themselves	334
The Armenians	159	Malua	58
The Persians	315, 316	Malym, an English Capt. 34. dies at Sea	35
The Malayans	173	Mananabo	363
Lantore	370	Mandevile	345
La Palma	2	Mando	225
Larr, a City and Province in Persia	119	Mandao	59
Larack	105	Mangalore	333, 335
Larry-Joon	171, 191, 198	Mangalore	80
Latty flu.	73	Manicongo	9
Lawram	360	Manilia Isles	343
Lawrefstan	61	Mannate or Cow-fish	24, 357
Lazarts	158, 261	Map	
Lazandey	118		
Leccaree	225		
Lescar	92		
Leventhイベg	279		
Lignum Aloes	333, 371		
Lignum Vite	374		
Linen Verum or Asbestos	333		
Loll-baut, an Indian garden	71		
Loore-bander	68, 90		
Lopp, Deserts	182, 193, 195		
Lopez Goncalvo	7		
Lucomia	372		
Lune montes	37		
Lizards	383		
Lizard, a promontory	3		
M			
M Acma	372		
Machen	370		
Machao	362		
Macafer	368		

THE TABLE.

<i>Map of Madagascar</i>	21.	<i>the Persian Empire</i>		<i>Mewar mons</i>	81
174. <i>Hyracania</i>	187.	<i>India intra Gangem</i>		<i>Mexico</i>	394,395
336 extra Gangem				<i>Mindano</i>	372
<i>Mercanda</i>				<i>Mineral Springs</i>	182. and Waters
<i>Marcus Antonius retreats with loss out of Persia</i>					201
<i>Mardash</i>				<i>Miccaroon</i>	226
<i>Maquerroon</i>				<i>Midjin</i>	289
<i>Marrab</i>				<i>Mocha and Moho</i>	35,37,103,350
<i>Martavan</i>				<i>Mocrib-cawn Governor of Surat drowned</i>	
<i>Martyropolis</i>					96
<i>Mascarenas</i>				<i>Mogestan</i>	108,
<i>Massad-Ally</i>				<i>Mogols</i>	59. their descent ibid. sepulcher
<i>Massetgets</i>					64. Nephews baptized
<i>Masser-Thormet</i>				<i>Mohack</i>	74
<i>Mafick-trees</i>				<i>Mobek-Ally-poor</i>	126
<i>Masua</i>				<i>Mobelias</i>	65
<i>Matlacala</i>				<i>Monim</i>	27
<i>Mattaran</i>				<i>Molucco Isles</i>	358
<i>Maurenahar</i>	59,96,195,215,	<i>267,275</i>		<i>Mombazza</i>	369
<i>Mauritania</i>				<i>Monsoon</i>	31
<i>Mauritius the Emperor slain</i>				<i>Momodabad</i>	9
<i>Mauritius Island</i>				<i>Mopskrine</i>	83
<i>Mavi Sultan of Damasca, General to the Caliph of Mecca over-runs Syria</i>	267.	<i>persecutes Mortis-Ally ib. forrares Egypt and the Rhodes ib. beaten by Ally</i>	268.	<i>Morad Prince of Indostan's death</i>	260
<i>Mavis against the Christians ib. cruelty puts to death eleven of Ally's grand-children ib. dies of the plague ib. annually executed in effigie by the Persians</i>				<i>Mortis-Ally marries Fatyma</i>	69
<i>Mayo</i>				<i>Kaliph ibid. persecuted by Mavy, vanquishes the Syrians, and dies ibid. place of burial ibid. most of his posterity destroy'd 268. a reputed Prophet 228. Romance of his Sufiace 171. his annual Feast celebrated in Persia ibid. his spoils of War</i>	211
<i>Mazaras fl.</i>				<i>Mordecai's buildings in Persia</i>	211. his sepulcher
<i>Meacco</i>					210
<i>Mecca</i>				<i>Mofango</i>	215
<i>Mecpore</i>				<i>Mosaique</i>	117,231
<i>Medapore</i>				<i>Mosul</i>	232
<i>Media</i>				<i>Mount Elly</i>	334
<i>Medinas El-nabi Mahomet's sepulchre</i>				<i>Mount Metros</i>	251
<i>Melec-Amber upon Nazamhaugh's death crowned King of Decan</i>	68.	<i>disbaffled by the Mogol 69. by stratagem clears his Country of the Enemy</i>	75,76.	<i>Mount Athos</i>	166,241
<i>Melecah</i>		<i>sides with Curroon 93. overthrows the Mogol's Army</i>	87.	<i>Mount Xerxes</i>	166
<i>Melesipore, the supposed place where St. Thomas was martyr'd</i>		<i>affists Curroon ibid. gives several imprisoned Officers their liberty</i>	93	<i>Mounds at Cape bona Speranza</i>	13
<i>Melinde</i>				<i>Mount Meshir or Mejha</i>	150,300,351,
<i>Meliotalk</i>				<i>Mount Sepher</i>	300
<i>Menan fl.</i>				<i>Mount Stella</i>	245
<i>Menantabo</i>				<i>Mount Taurus</i>	192
<i>Mengrelia</i>				<i>Mount Ararat</i>	38,202
<i>Mereghah</i>				<i>Mount Caucasus</i>	202
<i>Merdan</i>				<i>Moyechew</i>	126
<i>Merent</i>				<i>Moyentre</i>	154
<i>Melopotamia</i>	217, 232,	<i>248</i>		<i>Myown</i>	152
<i>Mesquint-Ally</i>				<i>Mozendram</i>	60,181,216,274,311
<i>Mesquits</i>				<i>Mulberries</i>	183
<i>Mesquitaran</i>				<i>Multhan</i>	83
<i>Methridates</i>				<i>Municipore</i>	86

Nabani.

THE TABLE.

N	
N	
Abandayon	154
Nabarbea	103
Nabuchadonoser	141, 150. conquests
judgment ib. buildings, statues's	237 226
Nager	99
Naglary	80
Nahodebegs rare bracelet	358
Nancy	43
Nanquin	375
Nantam	ib.
Navadar flu.	82
Narsinga	346
Narsinga patan	ib.
Narver flu.	82
Nassivian	276
Nasfar Thormet, or Throm	78
Naranee	225
Naryo's, their wantonness and pride	337
Nazareel	226
Nazar-jareb, a Garden in Spabawn	165
Nazzardin's birth-place	195
Nearchus	107
Nccapore	98
Nccaw	172
Negapatam	343
Negrays-bar	362
Neguz	31, 33, 218
Nehemiah 108. his place of burial	231
Nepti, or Naphi, a marvellous substance	182, 232
Nerebode flu.	70
Nero-road	371
Nestorius his heresie	158, 159, 193, 263, 321
Nezan-shaw, King of Decan	68
Nicader-oglan	60
Niracot mons 59, 93, 101. an Idolatrous Temple	50
Ninivry	227, 236, 249
Niriaed	83
Nifa, or Noyfa	62, 194, 208
Nishapore	195, 267
Nizubar	340
Noah's first seminary after the Flood	31, 70,
	202, 234, 250
Noah's-Ark where is refted	201, 202
Noah's-Dove a Southern Constellation	33
Noe Ciruitas	195
Nod, the place of Cain's banishment	209
Nogdibeg the Persian Embassador dies at Smally 42. buried at Surat ib. the Persian Kings speech concerning him	212.
Nogomalla	359
Normades, or Vagrant Shepherds	124, 170,
	193
Normalis first Husband 74. told her fortune by a Witch ibid. marries the great Mogol ib. alters her Name ibid. in hate to Mahobet-cawn, causes his Son to be abused 90, 91. taken Prisoner by Mahobet	
91. set at liberty 92. her Army ib. reproaches her Brother Alfaph-cawn 93. persecutes Mahobet 96. passionately mourns for her Husband's death 97. raises forces in her Son Sheryers behalf ib. who is made blind 98. she and her Daughter by Curroons order confined	99
Norumbega	356
Nossaferes	368
Nova	204
Newbengan	154
Numege	370
Nycaphiac flu.	194, 195
Nyger flu.	31, 36, 388
Nycubar	340
Nylob flu.	70
Nylus flu.	3, 288
Nymrod 104. usurps the Sovereign power 225. idoliz'd 226. builds the Tower of Babel 230, 235, 265. his place of burial	235
Nymus enlarges the Babilonian Empire 226	
builds Niniveh ib. dethrowned ib. desified	ibid.
Nyzapur	267
O	
O B-cawn flu.	70, 101
Obolloch	103
Ob-igarmy	169
Obell flu.	181, 185
Obia flu.	188
Ocean variously coloured 30. admired by Alexander 252. its depth ib. compared with the Sea and Earth	ibid.
Occa flu.	185
Ocem's 11 Sons slain	276
Ocen-beg Gheloly slain:	275
Odjea	87, 357
Og	59, 193
Ogorlu	273
Ogtai-cawn	59
Ogsian	270
Ojone	285
Olo ben Aeslam, Prince of Gazneben	270
Omar succeeds Abubear at Mecca 166	
persecutes Ally ibid. slain treacherously	
ibid. anathematized by the Persians	271
Omonall	190
Oneferritus	255, 351, 363
Onnepore	80
Onor	43, 340
Opodore	76, 80, 195
Ophyr, whence Solomon had his gold	31, 36,
37, 70, 109. place where, discurr	348
Opium	62, 312
Orcan	274
Orders in the Alcoran	330
Orenses	30, 119, 333
Orfaza	102
Orgyes	

THE TABLE.

Orgyes of Bacchus solemnized	252, 256, 347,	Perjob	58, 60
	348	Pengard	346
Oriental mode concerning Hair	295. and head Attire	Pengran	364
	296	Penguin Isle 12, 13. a Bird so called	ib.
Oringaw	372	Pepper	364
Orixa	90	Perisacaca, a Mountain in Peru	192
Ormus 105. when first inhabited ib.	Kings there 108. destroyed by the English and Per- fians	Periagonconna, a Persian Princess of a mas- culine spirit 271. advances her Brother to the Crown, and after kills him in a dispu- te. is beheaded	ibid.
Orontes mons	208	Perisan	83
Osman attains the Chaliph-ship of Mecca 267. subdues a great part of Africk ibid. new models the Alcoran ibid. poisoned 268. a Prophet with the Turk, but accurst by the Persian	271	Periardo	232
Osman Bassa invades Persia	203, 280	Periscany	172
Osman-cawn	76	Perisophoon	218
Oudee	87	Perse-Armenia	208
Ourmangel	118	Persepolis described	136, 137
Ouzbeg	951, 274	Pericles in India, Idolaters	53, 54
Owen Gwynedd	394	Perisia 154. variously named 291, 292. sub- jected by the Assyrians 25. Medes 239. Parthians ib. Greeks 246, 247. Arabians 205. Tartar 269. Turk 270. Armenian 271. recovers her freedom	ibid.
Oxidracans	151, 255	Perfians described 296. their Habit 297, Arms 307. Coat-Armour 298, 301. Ex- ercise 298, 304. humour 303. dye 303, 311. Reverence to their King 294. Crea- tive Revenue 292, 293. Mines 293. Religions 320. Circumcision 306, 307. Marriages 302. Burials 307, 308. Feasts 329. Let- ters 315. Language ib. Era 316, 315.	ibid.
Oxus flu.	123, 194, 250	Eunuchs	306
Ozaca	372	Perisan Ambassador buried at Surat	42
		Perisan Ambassador buried in Turkey 283. required	288
P		Perian Convert	39
Pacem	363	Perian Magi	224, 225
Paddar	70	Peru	348
Pagods destroyed	75, 87, 264	Peruvayn	348, 351
Palamban	364	Perwec, Prince of Indostan overthrows Sul- tan Curroos Army at Mando 81. mar- ches to Elabasse 86. relieves Bramore ibid. gains another victory over Curroon 86, 87. wounded ib. unhappily falls out with Mahobet-cawn 89. dyes 94. much la- mented	ibid.
Palmetta Wine	380, 381, 382	Pestilential vapour infects all Asia upon open- ing Symiramis Tomb 22. the like upon Apollo's	ibid.
Palm-trees	25, 29, 118, 119, 340	Peteopoly	347
Palus Meoris	201, 213, 252	Petra	36
Panch-Ally	230	Phasis flu.	173
Panch-Ob	63, 170	Pheribane	81
Pantado Birds	20	Phrygabat	154
Panthaea, a beautiful Lady	232	Philippine Insule	343
Paquin	375	Pile Caspia vel Semiramida	171
Paradice, the local place 232. destroyed by the flood ib. described in the Alcoran 229,	330	Perisidia vel Sufiana	124, 249
Parasanga	117	Caucasia vel Iberia	189, 196
Parrais	383	Plantain, a fruit	28
Parthian Empire began 258. determined 259	240, 256	Poetry duly rewarded	305
Passargard, or Persagarda	128, 231, 232,	Politicat	343
Passaman	365	Polygundy	304
Pass-flamingo	17	Polsanga flu.	60, 375
Pata	31		Polly
Patan	77, 85		
Patania	357		
Patenaw	85		
Pathang	62, 65, 76		
Pearl Island	106		
Pearl Fishing	372		
Pedyr	364		
Pegu 357, 358. great Army destroyed by Wa- ter 362. worship the Elephant 358. op- inions since their Apostacy	359		
Pelusium	36, 38, 277		

THE TABLE.

Polly-Medyna sainted and intomb'd	84	Rages in Media	210
Poleophylax, a Southern Constellation	33	Rain-bow in the night	40
Porcellan	370	Ranican, an Indian Castle	87
Porto-Santo	2	Rantam pore, a strong Castle in India	65
Portugal Agent at the Persian Court	275	Rantas	85
Portugals first discover the way by Sea into the East 15. of other parts 106. beat the Turk before Dieu 271. assist the Persian	278	Rantipore	90, 94
Possidum	36	Rafac	266
Pourmandel	76	Ravee flu.	69
Poison-fish	384	Red-Sea	35, 36, 38, 107, 350
Prafice	308	Regma and Raamah	101, 103
Praije upon Ganges	66, 92, 254	Reig	169, 224
Praism promontorium	23	Remora	385
Prester-John	31, 218	Rice	396
Priamus	363	Rhumefstan	275
Primero	23	Roma	22
Prometheus	193	Romle	272
Pseudofomum	343	Roop-Mathei, an Indian Lady poisons her self	66
Pulipotshaw	126	Rotas, a famous Castle	65
Pulopuar	389	Royal Customs of the Persian Kings	211
Puloway	370	Roxalana's Sons betrayed 278. miserably put to death	ib.
Pully-shaw	225	Rozelgate	105
Puloreen	370	Rue, a supposed Bird	20
Puloroon	377	Ru-fricco, the Portugal Admiral in East-India	100
Pycop	85	Rustans dead 149, 150. Monument ib. and place of burial	165, 166
Pyco	397	Ryuan	275
Pyree, Idolatrous Temples for the fire 56, 197, 198. destroyed by Yezdgird 260, 261. by Heraclius	264		
Pyramal a Magnus	340		
Pyxon flu.	232		
Pyxo-Tigris flu	237		

Q

Quabutimoc	390
Queen Candace	35, 341
Queen of Persia baptized	263
Q. Nannan-galla	28
Quilao	24, 27
Quinzay	295, 376

R

R Abayon	25
Rabilan, the Saracen, invades Italy 268. destroyed by the French Army	269
Racan of Arrakan	362
Radgee Bickermanfc	81
Radgee Cottz.	75
Radgee Jugonaths great wealth and legacy bequeathed the Mogol	69
Radgee Thormell	66
Radgee Mahall	77
Radgeopore	84, 98
Radgee Ranna Mardout, descended from Porus 64, 93 loses Chitor 65. submits to Jangheer the Mogol 76. dyes discontent, buried amongst his Progenitors	ib.

S Abanna	355, 357
Sabalassa	164
Sabbarchan	225
Sabbath, observed several days of the Week	191
Sablestan	194, 216
Sacalkand	275
Sacay	372
Sacs, a Persian General put to death	263
Saint Helena	391
Saint John de Vacas	41
St. Appollonia	379
St. Michael	398
St. Sebasfian	21
St. Thomas	345
Sala	185, 189
Salamanders	23
Salamo	370
Salvages at the Cape of good Hope	16, 17
Samarcand	96, 194
Sambell	63
Samoren	337
Sancazar	285
Sandy and salt deserts	170
Sangrurabut	209
Santa Cruz	9
Sapores, a cruel Enemy to Christians	260
Sarcab	152, 214, 217
Sardahan	169
Sardanapalus, an effeminate Prince	235- lofes

THE TABLE.

<i>loses both Life and Kingdom</i>	ib.	<i>his vast treasure</i>	249	<i>Sieavend, an Idolatrous place</i>	75
<i>Sarochia</i>		157		<i>Siba</i>	60,93
<i>Satans impostures</i>		49,374		<i>Siamites</i>	357
<i>Satigan</i>		85		<i>Sicary</i>	63
<i>Sawey</i>		219		<i>Sierra Leon</i>	7
<i>Scepter of old</i>		141,298		<i>Silk-worms</i>	183,184
<i>Scisme amongst Mahometans</i>		331		<i>Simeapura</i>	357
<i>Scorpions</i>		222		<i>Sindcroun flu.</i>	155,162
<i>Scytha-Saca</i>		195,202		<i>Sinus Arabicus</i>	36
<i>Scythians expell Persia</i>		217,150,171,227		<i>Persicus</i>	101,107
<i>Sea, variously coloured</i>	31.	compared	252	<i>Avalisticus</i>	32
<i>Sea-Carrell</i>				<i>Argarius</i>	357
<i>Semiramis</i>		228		<i>Gangiticus</i>	343
<i>Senacharib</i>		237		<i>Colchicus</i>	335
<i>Sepher mons Indie</i>		306,350			
<i>Sepulchres of the Persees</i>		57		<i>Sir Dodmore Cotton Ambass. into Persia;</i>	
<i>Sepulchres of the Moguls</i>		64		<i>his entertainment by the Sultan of Gun-</i>	
<i>Radeas</i>		93		<i>broon 112,113. Governor of Lar 119.</i>	
<i>Perian Kings</i>		150,151,207		<i>Duke of Shyras 27. Visiter of Spahawn 154.</i>	
<i>Melec-Bahaman</i>		200		<i>and King of Persia 17,175. has audience</i>	
<i>Prince Agowmadin</i>		191		<i>at Ahsaraffe ibid. at Cubyn meets the</i>	
<i>Prophet Daniel</i>		231		<i>King 211, dyes, and is honourably buried</i>	
<i>Q. Hester and Mordecai</i>		210		<i>213,214. his Epitaph</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Cyrus</i>		240			
<i>Ephestion</i>		205,210,257		<i>Sir Robert Sherley retiring into Persia to vi-</i>	
<i>Alexander the Great</i>		257,258		<i>dicate himself against Nogdibeg the Per-</i>	
<i>St. Thomas</i>		343,345		<i>rian Ambass. lands at Gunbroon 118. fa-</i>	
<i>St. Bartholomew</i>		343		<i>voured by the Duke of Shyras 105. pre-</i>	
<i>Mahomet</i>		321,322		<i>sent at the English Ambass. audience 175.</i>	
<i>Mortis-Ally</i>		268		<i>dis-respected by Mahomet-Ally-beg the</i>	
<i>Fatyma</i>		221		<i>Favourite 176. accompanies the English</i>	
<i>Avicenna</i>		231		<i>Ambass. to Casbeen 212. dyes ibid. his</i>	
<i>Tamberlane</i>		270		<i>Epitaph ib. his bones since removed to Rome</i>	
<i>Ufan-Caffan</i>		272		<i>by his Lady</i>	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Shaugh Izmacl</i>		276			
<i>Mahomet Codobanda</i>		287		<i>Sijmeer</i>	75
<i>Shaugh-Abbas</i>		290		<i>Socotora</i>	35
<i>Kings of Cambaya</i>		64		<i>Socodania</i>	371
<i>Delly</i>		92		<i>Soffala</i>	31,38
<i>Serripore</i>		81,93		<i>Sogdianica</i>	193
<i>Serebaya</i>		364		<i>Soldaria Bay</i>	12
<i>Serran</i>		370		<i>The Souldanians figured</i>	18,101
<i>Sefques</i>		64		<i>Solis Insula</i>	368,369
<i>Shark</i>		6		<i>Solis Ofria</i>	356
<i>Shaster</i>		47,54		<i>Sun adored</i>	43,44
<i>Shaugh-De</i>		209		<i>Sondivas</i>	93
<i>Shawey</i>		86		<i>Sophy of Persia, the signification</i>	273
<i>Shec-Sophy, a Persian Santo visited by Tam-</i>				<i>Slaughter</i>	93
<i>berlang</i>		270		<i>Spahawn, the Persian Metropolis</i>	160. <i>its</i>
<i>Sheriar, Son to the Mogol by Noornahall</i>				<i>Midan</i>	164
<i>attempting the Royalty 97. made blind</i>	ib.			<i>Spahawne</i>	154
<i>Shirbet</i>		113		<i>Spouts of Rain</i>	8
<i>Shock-Ally-begs house</i>		128		<i>Storms</i>	40,41
<i>Shoals of Judaea</i>		24		<i>Straits of Sundy</i>	352,364
<i>Shuhun</i>		231		<i>Snuchen</i>	33,36,37
<i>Shyma and Shycoca</i>		372		<i>Suckins</i>	37
<i>Sbyraz</i>		127		<i>Subon flu.</i>	358
<i>Shyrenaker</i>		68		<i>Sues, a Port at the bottom of the Red Sea</i>	36,
<i>Siacow</i>		170			277
<i>Siam 377. Strange Custom of the males</i>		338		<i>Sulficar its Romance</i>	171
				<i>Sultampore</i>	73
				<i>Sultany</i>	208
				<i>Sunachy</i>	208
				<i>Sumatra</i>	364
				<i>Sumbrero</i>	

THE TABLE.

Sambroo	316	Tercera's	397
the Sun's epithetes and properties	386, 387	Teresa Lady Sherley her gallantry in distres	
Sarac	42, 391		213
Sarunga	372	Ternate	370
Swalley road	40, 43, 44, 60	Tharish	358
Syghelinus Bishop of Sherborne, goes pilgrim to St. Thomas his Tomb	346	Thalican	27
Syligambis taken prisoner	246	Themistocles, being banish'd, withdraws into Persia 242, 300, rather than ingage against his Countrey voluntarily paylois himself	
T			
T ^h Ab flu.	121, 128	Theobartan	243
T ^h abryz	207	Thermopile	263
Tabrizan	205	Therizcan	241
Tagebant, a curious garden	169	Thomas the Apostle	32, 35, 40, 195, 343, 363
Talca, insulamoris Caffi	185	Thombell	93
Tallapoy, Indian Priests	358	Thomec	86
Tamas-Shaws coronation 276. death 279. If- sue	ib.	Thule	2
Tamerlane triumphs over Bajazet	60, 270	Thymare	152
buried ib. his Ifsue	61	Ticoa	363
Tanais flu. 37. mistaken by Alex.	250, 253	Tico	ibid.
Tanks or Conservatories of fresh water	43,	Ticobaffa	370
	117, 152	Tidore	370
Tanda	85	Tiglath Pillezar	206, 237
Tanghe Dolon	118	Tigranocerta	218
Tangrian	360	Tigremahou	32
Tangrolipix layes a foundation of the Turkish greatnes	269	Tigris flu.	108, 370
Tangut	195	Tilsoare	40
Tangus	358, 362	Timagoras, the Athenian Ambassador pur- nished	243
Tanor	340	Timore	370
Tappe or Tyndee flu	43, 71, 83	Tiroan	206
Tayrobana	255, 351, 365	Titles arrogated by several Kings	216, 217
Tarnassery	346	Tocharas	195, 26
Taron	274	Tocharistan	194, 216
Tartang	152	Tocceman overthrows the Turk.	279
Tartaria subjected by the Saracens	268	Toddy trees	29, 42, 381
Tartars over-run Persia	270	Togrulbeg	270
Tatarian Ambaff. his rich presents	96	Tombuto	7
Tatarian Prince abused	281	Topazo	35
Tatarian Prince in company with the English Ambassador	152, 153	Tornado's	6, 7, 393
Tatar figured	197	Toro	36
Taurumons	191, 192, 202	Torpedo	384
Tauris civitas 207. taken by the Turk	208,	Torrid Zone habitable	387
284. recovered by the Persian	287	Tortoise	46, 385
Taxapore	81	Toscar cawn	226
Tefsys	279, 282, 288	Transmigration of the ten Tribes	122, 123, 203, 237
Tckelles, a Persian Santon marches against the Turk 273. his success ibid. pur to death	ibid.	Trees adored	115
Temerisk, a Georgian Prince distres	150	Trepizond	195, 282, 287
Temple of Belus demolish't by Xerxes	242	Travanzor	339
Temple of Anaya	148, 207	Tribute of Diamonds	77
Tencheday 372. delusion of Satan there	374	Troglodites	17, 37, 240, 288
	49	Tropicque of Cancer & Capricorn	3, 10, 386
Tenduc	32, 59, 95	Tropicque birds	389
Teneriff	3	T'fusfa	54
Tenze	372	T'froy	82
		T'fogd	194, 275
		T'femb flu.	73
		T'finner	84
		Tuban	304
		Tuffon, a storm	8, 374
		Turks	

THE TABLE.

Turks shut up by Alexander 195. their first irruption out of Zagathai 265, 274. unknown till the time of Heraclius 264	White Sea 30. and Seas of different colour
Turkish Ambassador affronted in Persia 287	31
Turquemania 157	163
Tutta, or Tatta 68	153
Tutian-Cory 335	118
Tuz 96, 195, 274	1
Tyara 1, 0, 143, 145	70
Tyre and Tyrus 107	
T'zecander 6472	
T'zicary 6373	190

U

V Aldac 123, 231
Valentyne's Peal 41
Valerian the Emp. made Cozrhoc's foot-stool 219, 259
Van 230, 288
Vararancs 259
Variation of the Compas 398
Variaw 43
Varsably 273
Vasco di Gama 39
Vastat in Egypt accurst by Mahomet 327
Vazpracaen 206, 217
Vespucius 397
Villa Franca overthrown by an Earth-quake 398
Virginia 393
Vijapore 68, 78
Vlacuc-cawn 6, 294
Vlai flu. 128, 231
Vlcm-beg, a rebel Persian 276
Vlaches 124, 194
Vng 33
Vnche 126
Volga flu. 183, 189
Vologda 189
Vespuquis 372
Ur 219, 226
Ufan-Cassan King of Armenia 272. obtains the Crown of Persia ibid. his death and Issue ibid.
Ufuent in Britany 398
Ustreff-oglan 275
Utherpendragon 394
Uvacco 198
Uvalid the Saracen conquers Spain 269

W

W Afit 266
Wasset 82
Waters infections 121
Welsh remains in several exoticque places of the World 1, 1, 19, 249, 308, 399
Whales 12, 390

Whoomg 31
Whoomegli 163
Whormoot 153
Whight Island 118
Wili flu. 1
Wine, excellent at Sheraz 134. affected by the Persian 302, 303. restrained by the Turks and others 152, 190
Wives burn with their dead husbands 344
Woodcock and his Ship, lost in the Persian Gulph 111

X

X Abur-sha-Bulketiph 259
Xenophon's good Conduit 241
Xerxes his monstrous Army ibid. baffled at Thermopyle by a few Greeks 242. makes a shameful retreat ibid. revenges himself upon the Hellenes Idols, destroys the Temple of Belus ibid. is slain by a traitorous Eu- mochibid. his Strata trampled upon at Per- sepolis by the Greeks ibid.

Y

Y Edicanz 152
Yerolave 186
Rezd 267
Yezdgird ibid.
Yhezyd 268
Towmachana 105
Trakein 229
Ysluph 270

Z

Z A Zadracarta 193
Zadoc-cawn 190
Zagathai 65
Zagathai 185
Zagri 208
Zagrie 193, 202
Zair and Zembre 10, 31, 34
Zama 103
Zanziber 2431
Zarama 190
Zatus Rex Lazorum 261
Zebra 16
Zed-cawn invades Tartary 84, 85. made Vice- Roy of Kabul and Benge ib. in disfavour at Court 96. restored to favour, and made Ga- vernor of Bengal 100
Zel-Ally 69. a famous rebel in Persia 287
Zemnabeg 73
Zembre and Zaire 33

THE TABLE.

Zenal-cawn	<i>Ambassador to the Roman</i>		Zimba	24
Emperour	281. taxed for incivility	206	Zinderow flu.	155, 162
Zenus, the Venetian Ambass. to Persia	272		Ziorza	65
Zemyb	31		Zipangri	372
Zenzu	222		Zirmol	96
Zerkind	73		Zoac	235
Zertoost	54, 55, 197, 302		Zophilers	191
Zeyla	33, 37		Zoroaster	168, 194, 195
Zylon	340		Zulcadrelu	272
Zyelapore	83		Zulzimin	268
Zict-Borca, a Tartar Ambass. to the Mogol	96.		Zundavasto	55
his rich present		ibid.	Zyagram	36, 103

Dogulus Vimus. a b.

F I N I S.

Herbert's Travels.

